

# CHISHOLM'S HANDBOOK OF COMMERCIAL GEOGRAPHY

ENTIRELY RE-WRITTEN BY  
L. DUDLEY STAMP  
C.B.E., D.Lit., D.Sc., LL.D., EKON. D.

AND  
S. CARTER GILMOUR

SIXTEENTH EDITION

WITH MAPS AND DIAGRAMS



LONGMANS

LONGMANS, GREEN AND CO LTD  
 6 & 7 CLIFFORD STREET, LONDON W1  
 THIBAUT HOUSE, THIBAUT SQUARE, CAPE TOWN  
 605-611 LONSDALE STREET, MELBOURNE CI  
 443 LOCKHART ROAD, HONG KONG  
 ACCRA, AUCKLAND, IBADAN  
 KINGSTON (JAMAICA), KUALA LUMPUR  
 LAHORE, NAIROBI, SALISBURY (RHODESIA)  
 LONGMANS, GREEN AND CO INC  
 119 WEST 40TH STREET, NEW YORK 18  
 LONGMANS, GREEN AND CO  
 20 CRANFIELD ROAD, TORONTO 16  
 ORIENT LONGMANS PRIVATE LTD  
 CALCUTTA, BOMBAY, MADRAS  
 DELHI, HYDERABAD, DACCA

*Sixteenth Edition © L. Dudley Stamp and S. Carter Gilmour 1960*

### BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

A HANDBOOK OF COMMERCIAL GEOGRAPHY  
 BY GEO. G. CHISHOLM

*First Edition* . . . . . August 1889  
*Second Edition* . . . . . May 1890  
*Third Edition* . . . . . May 1892  
 Reprinted:

January 1894, October 1896, May 1899, June 1900,  
 March 1901, April 1902

*Fourth Edition* . . . . . 1903  
*Fifth Edition* . . . . . 1904  
*Sixth Edition* . . . . . 1906  
*Seventh Edition* . . . . . 1908  
*Eighth Edition* . . . . . March 1911

*New Impressions:*

July 1913, September 1914, June 1915, June 1916,  
 January 1918, January 1919, and February 1920

*Ninth Edition* . . . . . May 1922  
*Tenth Edition* . . . . . January 1925

REVISED AND EDITED BY L. DUDLEY STAMP

*Eleventh Edition* . . . . . January 1928  
*Twelfth Edition* . . . . . February 1932

CHISHOLM'S HANDBOOK OF COMMERCIAL GEOGRAPHY  
 ENTIRELY RE-WRITTEN BY L. DUDLEY STAMP

*Thirteenth Edition* . . . . . 1937  
*Fourteenth Edition (L. D. Stamp and S. C. Gilmour)* . 1954  
*Fifteenth Edition (L. D. Stamp and S. C. Gilmour)* . 1956  
*Sixteenth Edition (L. D. Stamp and S. C. Gilmour)* . 1960

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN  
 BY WESTERN PRINTING SERVICES LTD., BRISTOL



## PREFACE TO THE 16TH EDITION

IN a world of constant change, the revision of a book of the size and scope of Chisholm's Handbook of Commercial Geography must always be a formidable task, and the preparation of the 16th edition has been no exception to the rule. No pains have been spared to bring up to date the mass of statistical and other information embodied in its 900 pages. To touch on only one aspect of its many-sided contents, careful note has been taken of changes, actual and prospective, in the status of countries within both the British Commonwealth and the French 'Community'—General de Gaulle's new name for France's overseas territories. An added item for nearly every country is the name of the local currency unit and its sterling exchange value, accompanied in most cases by a brief analysis of the latest trade returns.

We are again indebted to Government and other public bodies for much courteous help, especially the United Nations Information Bureau in London, and the Petroleum Information Bureau. Suggestions from readers for improvements will always be welcome.

*June 1959*

*L. D. S.*

*S. C. G.*

## PREFACE TO THE 14TH EDITION

CHISHOLM'S HANDBOOK OF COMMERCIAL GEOGRAPHY was first published in August 1889. In his Preface to the first edition the author states that he has endeavoured to impart an 'intellectual interest to the study of the geographical facts relating to commerce,' and he refers to the address given by Mr. Goschen on his installation as Lord Rector of Aberdeen University in 1887, in which was stressed the importance of such intellectual interest with a view to success in business. The author states that he intends the work for three classes of persons, 'first, teachers who may wish to impart additional zest to their lessons in geography from the point of view of commerce; secondly, pupils in the higher schools and colleges that are now devoting increased attention to commercial education; and thirdly, those entering a commercial life, who take a sufficiently intelligent interest in their business to make their private studies bear on their daily pursuits.'

It is a remarkable tribute to the foresight of Chisholm that he judged aright; for each of these three classes his book became a standard work and may justly be claimed a classic. Yet he wrote at a time when the University study of the subject was virtually unknown and when the school teaching of geography comprised mainly a wearisome repetition of lists of capes and bays, towns and products. In the course of thirty-six years after the first edition he supervised no fewer than twenty-three new editions and reprints, and the book underwent a process of steady growth and evolution. The huge task of incorporating the changes occasioned by the First World War fell to him in his declining years, and after the appearance of the tenth edition in January 1925 he felt he could do no more. The remarkable vitality of the work led the publishers, with the author's agreement, to ask me in the autumn of 1926 to undertake a new revision. The eleventh edition accordingly appeared in 1928, and it was clear that the author derived keen pleasure from the fact that his child had found a foster-parent. It was intended that the next edition should be recast into almost a new work, but it was needed so urgently that another revision (the twelfth edition) appeared in 1932.

I then undertook the virtual re-writing of the whole from beginning to end, though I endeavoured to retain as much as possible of the old Chisholm. Much can be learnt from the history of commercial development, and it is for that reason that the text will be found to include considerable sections of historical material and it is hoped thereby to counteract any tendency to facile correlations based only on the present position.

The re-written Chisholm—which may be regarded either as a new work or as the thirteenth edition—appeared in 1937, less than two years before the outbreak of the Second World War. Again it became out of date, yet revision in the turmoil of war and its aftermath seemed impossible, and the book was allowed to go out of print. In 1949 another rewriting was begun and proved an enormous task. I secured more than the help of Mr. S. C. Gilmour: he has become the author of much that follows and no one has ever had a more painstaking and thorough collaborator. His long and varied experience of editorial work, his unrivalled knowledge of sources, and his personal contacts with experts in many lands have all proved invaluable. We both hope that we shall continue to receive those comments from readers which have proved so valuable in the past.

L. D. S.

LONDON SCHOOL OF ECONOMICS,  
W.C.2,  
*November 1953.*

## GEORGE GOUDIE CHISHOLM

M.A., B.Sc. (EDINBURGH), HON. LL.D. (EDINBURGH)

1850–1930

THE first forty-five years of his life George G. Chisholm spent in his native land of Scotland, labouring almost alone to build up a reputation for Geography. The subject had scarcely emerged from the eclipse which it suffered when the broad-minded philosophy of the cosmographers of the Middle Ages had passed into that petty collection of dull facts regarded as geography in the nineteenth century. It was characteristic of a man to whom 'inaccuracy was anathema' that he sought by the quality of precision to enhance the reputation of his subject. His early years were years of preparation, 'he never spared labour, and his unseen toil supplied much of the material on which others built more easily-earned reputations.' Thus Chisholm had reached his thirty-ninth year when his 'Handbook' was first published, and his forty-fifth when Longmans' *Gazetteer of the World* with its innumerable original references finally established his reputation. In the same year—1895—he left Scotland for thirteen years in London and became one of a line of distinguished geographers who have done much to advance this subject from Birkbeck College. In 1908 he became the first Lecturer in Geography in the University of Edinburgh, securing thus the first recognition of geography in that University. He then began to wield a great influence—as a lecturer to future teachers, later (though not till 1919) to B.Com. students and to those who sought the new post-graduate Diploma in Geography; as Secretary to the Royal Scottish Geographical Society and as Examiner to such bodies as the Institute of Bankers. In 1921 his work was recognised by the change of his post to that of Reader. Two years later, at the age of 73, he retired and received the highest academic honour the University could bestow—the Honorary LL.D.

Retirement allowed him to complete the belated post-war edition of his 'Handbook,' and it was not until later that I had the privilege of enjoying his personal friendship. He and his wife formed the habit then of coming south to enjoy the milder winter at Bournemouth, and it was the privilege of my wife and myself to

join them in a little dinner in a quiet London hotel on the occasion of his seventy-ninth birthday. In his unhurried, precise way he expressed his approval of the new edition of the 'Handbook' I had recently edited, and it was on that occasion that I promised, so far as lay in my power, that the work which had exercised so much influence on the progress of geography should not be forgotten by the English-speaking world. In less than a year Chisholm had passed away—in full possession of his faculties—suddenly—and but a few moments after the consultation of some work of reference in his well-stocked library in Edinburgh.

. This book is dedicated to the memory of a master, the results of whose pioneer work we all enjoy. Its appearance is in fulfilment of a promise made to that master himself.

L. D. S.

# CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	1
Economic Statistics . . . . .	16
Subjects for Investigation . . . . .	21

GENERAL FACTS RELATING TO THE	
PRODUCTION, DISTRIBUTION,	
AND EXCHANGE OF COM-	
MODITIES . . . . .	22
Climate . . . . .	22
Climatic Regions . . . . .	32
Soil and its Treatment . . . . .	53
Preservation of the Properties	
of the Soil . . . . .	57
Irrigation . . . . .	61
Labour . . . . .	64
Machinery . . . . .	69
Devastating Agents . . . . .	73

CIRCUMSTANCES CONNECTED	
WITH THE EXCHANGE OF	
COMMODITIES . . . . .	78
Categories of Transport . . . . .	78
Human Portage . . . . .	78
Animal . . . . .	79
Roads . . . . .	80
Railways . . . . .	83
Ropeways and cable-	
ways . . . . .	88
Inland Water Transport . . . . .	88
Ocean Transport . . . . .	91
Aviation . . . . .	102
Handling . . . . .	104
Posts and Telegraphs . . . . .	105
Commercial and Industrial	
Towns . . . . .	106
Commercial Countries . . . . .	115
Language, &c. . . . .	116
Instruments of Exchange . . . . .	116

## COMMODITIES:—

### I. Commodities dependent directly or indirectly on Climate

	PAGE
A. Products of the Temperate Zone:	
Wheat . . . . .	123
Maize . . . . .	132
Oats . . . . .	134
Barley . . . . .	135
Rye . . . . .	136
Buckwheat . . . . .	136
Pulses . . . . .	137
Potato . . . . .	139
Other Vegetables . . . . .	140
Fruits . . . . .	140
Wine . . . . .	143
Hops . . . . .	149
Beet . . . . .	150
Flax . . . . .	150
Hemp . . . . .	152
Wool . . . . .	153
Other than sheep's	
wool . . . . .	158
Woollen Manufac-	
tures . . . . .	159
Silk . . . . .	162
Silk Manufactures . . . . .	167
B. Sub-Tropical Products:	
Cotton . . . . .	170
Cotton Manufactures . . . . .	179
Tobacco . . . . .	186
Opium . . . . .	189
Tea . . . . .	190
C. Tropical Products:	
Coffee . . . . .	197
Cacao . . . . .	202
Rice . . . . .	203
Millets . . . . .	205
Minor Farinaceous	
Products . . . . .	205
Yams . . . . .	206
Sugar-cane . . . . .	206
The Sugar Industry . . . . .	207
Cinchona . . . . .	211
Vegetable Fibres . . . . .	212

	PAGE		PAGE
Fruits . . . . .	215	France . . . . .	379
Rubber . . . . .	216	Belgium . . . . .	391
D. Products of Various		Luxembourg . . . . .	397
Climates:		Netherlands (Holland) . . . . .	398
Vegetable Oils, Oil-		Germany . . . . .	404
seeds, Oil-cake . . . . .	221	Saarland (Saar) . . . . .	426
Essential Oils . . . . .	229	Poland . . . . .	427
Waxes . . . . .	230	Switzerland . . . . .	431
Gums and Resins . . . . .	231	Austria . . . . .	438
Spices, Stimulants,		Czechoslovakia . . . . .	442
and Condiments . . . . .	233	Hungary . . . . .	445
Dye-stuffs from the		Yugoslavia . . . . .	448
Vegetable King-		Roumania . . . . .	451
dom . . . . .	235	Norway . . . . .	455
Timber . . . . .	236	Svalbard (Spitsbergen) . . . . .	458
Furs . . . . .	239	Sweden . . . . .	459
Meat . . . . .	240	Denmark . . . . .	462
Miscellaneous Pro-		Faeroes . . . . .	465
ducts, chiefly of		Iceland . . . . .	465
Animal Origin . . . . .	242	Finland . . . . .	466
II. Fisheries . . . . .	249	Spain . . . . .	469
III. Mineral Products:		Portugal . . . . .	475
Coal . . . . .	256	Azores . . . . .	477
Lignite . . . . .	263	Gibraltar . . . . .	477
Petroleum and its		Italy . . . . .	478
Products . . . . .	264	Malta . . . . .	484
Gold and Silver . . . . .	271	Balkan Peninsula:	
Lead . . . . .	273	Bulgaria . . . . .	485
Copper . . . . .	273	Greece . . . . .	487
Zinc . . . . .	274	Albania . . . . .	491
Tin . . . . .	275	Eastern Europe . . . . .	492
Mercury (Quicksilver) . . . . .	276	The Baltic States . . . . .	492
Iron . . . . .	277	U.S.S.R. (Russia: European	
Salt . . . . .	288	and Asiatic) . . . . .	493
Minor Minerals . . . . .	289	Asia . . . . .	518
IV. Manufactured Articles in		Cyprus . . . . .	521
which various materials		Turkey (in Europe and Asia) . . . . .	523
are used:		Syria . . . . .	526
Leather . . . . .	295	Lebanon . . . . .	528
Paper . . . . .	297	Israel . . . . .	530
Earthenware and Por-		Jordan . . . . .	533
celain . . . . .	301	Iraq . . . . .	535
Glass . . . . .	303	Arabia . . . . .	540
Soap . . . . .	305	Saudi Arabia . . . . .	540
Chemical Industries . . . . .	306	Yemen . . . . .	542
Rayon . . . . .	309	Aden . . . . .	543
Radium and		Muscat and Oman . . . . .	545
Uranium . . . . .	311	Trucial Sheikdoms . . . . .	546
REGIONAL GEOGRAPHY:—		Bahrain Islands . . . . .	546
Europe . . . . .	312	Kuwait . . . . .	547
The British Isles . . . . .	321	Iran (Persia) . . . . .	548
Irish Republic . . . . .	374	Afghanistan . . . . .	551
		India and Pakistan . . . . .	554
		Nepal . . . . .	574

	PAGE		PAGE
European Powers in India . . . . .	574	Tanganyika . . . . .	681
Indo-Chinese Peninsula . . . . .	575	Zanzibar . . . . .	683
Burma . . . . .	575	British West Africa . . . . .	685
Thailand (Siam) . . . . .	580	Ghana . . . . .	685
Indo-China . . . . .	582	Nigeria . . . . .	688
Ceylon . . . . .	584	Sierra Leone . . . . .	692
Maldivé Islands . . . . .	587	Gambia . . . . .	694
Malaya, Federation of . . . . .	587	French West Africa . . . . .	695
Singapore . . . . .	593	Senegal, Ivory Coast . . . . .	697
Christmas Island . . . . .	595	Dahomey, Mauritania . . . . .	698
Cocos and Keeling Is. . . . .	595	Fr. Sudan, Upper Volta . . . . .	699
British Borneo . . . . .	595	Niger Colony, Guinea, . . . . .	
North Borneo . . . . .	595	General . . . . .	700
Sarawak . . . . .	596	Togoland and Cameroons . . . . .	701
Brunei . . . . .	597	French Equatorial Africa . . . . .	702
Indonesia . . . . .	597	The Gabun . . . . .	702
Portuguese Timor . . . . .	601	Middle Congo, Ubangi, . . . . .	
Philippines . . . . .	601	Chad . . . . .	703
Hong Kong . . . . .	606	Liberia . . . . .	704
China . . . . .	608	Spanish Guinea . . . . .	705
Macao . . . . .	615	Belgian Congo . . . . .	705
Formosa . . . . .	616	Portuguese Guinea . . . . .	709
Korea . . . . .	617	Angola (Port. W. Africa) . . . . .	709
Japan . . . . .	620	Mozambique (Port. E. Afr.) . . . . .	711
Ryukyu Archipelego . . . . .	628	Outlying Islands: . . . . .	
<i>Africa</i> . . . . .	629	British: Mauritius . . . . .	714
Egypt . . . . .	631	Other British . . . . .	715
Suez Canal . . . . .	639	French: Madagascar . . . . .	716
Sudan . . . . .	641	Other French . . . . .	717
The Eastern Horn . . . . .	645	Portuguese: Madeira . . . . .	717
Ethiopia (Abyssinia) . . . . .	645	Other Portuguese . . . . .	718
Eritrea . . . . .	646	Spanish: Canary Is. . . . .	719
French Somaliland . . . . .	646	<i>America</i> . . . . .	720
British Somaliland . . . . .	647	<i>North America</i> . . . . .	725
Somalia . . . . .	647	Greenland . . . . .	728
Libya . . . . .	648	Canada . . . . .	728
The Atlas Lands . . . . .	649	St. Pierre and Miquelon . . . . .	750
Algeria . . . . .	650	Bermuda . . . . .	750
Tunisia . . . . .	652	United States . . . . .	750
Morocco . . . . .	654	Outlying Territories . . . . .	777
Union of South Africa . . . . .	658	Alaska . . . . .	777
South-West Africa . . . . .	671	Mexico . . . . .	777
High Commission Territories: . . . . .		The West Indies . . . . .	784
Basutoland . . . . .	671	Cuba . . . . .	786
Swaziland . . . . .	672	Haiti . . . . .	787
Bechuanaland Prot. . . . .	672	Dominican Republic . . . . .	788
Federation of Rhodesia . . . . .		Puerto Rico . . . . .	788
and Nyasaland . . . . .	673	American Virgin Islands . . . . .	789
Southern Rhodesia . . . . .	674	British West Indies . . . . .	789
Northern Rhodesia . . . . .	674	Bahamas, Jamaica . . . . .	790
Nyasaland . . . . .	675	Leewards, Windwards . . . . .	791
British East Africa . . . . .	677	Barbados, Trinidad . . . . .	792
Kenya . . . . .	678	French West Indies . . . . .	793
Uganda . . . . .	679	Netherlands W. Indies . . . . .	793

	PAGE		PAGE
<i>Central America</i> . . .	794	New Zealand . . .	859
Guatemala . . .	797	Pacific Islands:	
British Honduras . . .	797	British: Fiji . . .	865
Honduras . . .	798	Solomon Islands Prot. .	866
El Salvador . . .	798	Condominium: New	
Nicaragua . . .	799	Hebrides . . .	866
Costa Rica, Panama . .	800	Gilbert and Ellice Is. .	867
Panama Canal Zone . .	801	Tonga, Pitcairn . . .	868
<i>South America</i> . . .	803	Australian: Papua and	
Brazil . . .	805	N.E. New Guinea . . .	868
The Guianas . . .	810	Nauru and others . . .	870
British Guiana . . .	810	New Zealand:	
Surinam (Netherlands) .	811	Cook, Niue, etc. . .	870
French Guiana . . .	812	Western Samoa . . .	870
Venezuela . . .	812	French: New Caledonia .	871
Colombia . . .	814	Tahiti, etc. . .	872
Ecuador . . .	817	American: Hawaii . . .	872
Peru . . .	819	Guam (Marianne Is.) .	873
Bolivia . . .	821	Samoa (Tutuila, etc.) .	873
Chile . . .	823	Trust Territory . . .	873
Argentina . . .	826	Netherlands: . . .	873
Uruguay . . .	832	Western New Guinea .	873
Paraguay . . .	834		
Falkland Islands . . .	836	APPENDIX . . . . .	875
<i>Australia and Polynesia</i>			
Australia . . .	837	INDEX . . . . .	879



## LIST OF MAPS AND DIAGRAMS

	PAGE
Typical Rainfall in various regions . . . . .	30
Climatic Regions of the World according to Herbertson (modified) . . . . .	34
Climatic Regions of the World according to Köppen . . . . .	35
Illustration of Hinterlands . . . . .	107
Currency Areas of the World, 1955 . . . . .	121
Consumption of United States Cotton . . . . .	183
Coal Production, United Kingdom, United States, and Germany . . . . .	260
Coal Consumption, United Kingdom, United States, and Germany . . . . .	261
Europe, Political Divisions, 1913 . . . . .	313
Europe, Political Divisions, 1937 . . . . .	314
Europe, Political Divisions, 1950 . . . . .	315
Great Britain: Coalfields and Iron Ore Workings . . . . .	329
England: Navigable Waterways . . . . .	353
France, Belgium and the Netherlands: Navigable Waterways . . . . .	381
Germany: Post-War Divisions in 1953 . . . . .	405
Germany, Navigable Waterways . . . . .	<i>Facing p. 408</i>
Italy: Frontier Modifications in Peace Treaty, 1947 . . . . .	<i>Facing p. 478</i>
Westward Advance of Russia, 1930-1950 . . . . .	494
Middle East Oilfields and Pipelines . . . . .	537
India and Pakistan in 1947 and 1953 . . . . .	563
Egypt in relation to other countries at the eastern end of the Mediterranean (with inset of Suez Canal) . . . . .	640
Africa: Principal Railways and Navigable Waterways . . . . .	661
Comparison of Meteorological Data, Canada, Europe, and Siberia . . . . .	731
St. Lawrence Seaway: Montreal-Lake Ontario . . . . .	734
The Network of United States and Canadian Railways . . . . .	756
Distribution of the United States Coalfields . . . . .	763
The Panama Canal as a Geographical and Commercial Centre (with inset of the Canal) . . . . .	802
South America: Principal Railways and Navigable Waterways . . . . .	808
Australia: Principal Railways and Navigable Waterways, distinguishing between the three Railway Gauges . . . . .	839
Meteorological Data for Stations in New Zealand and Europe . . . . .	862



# HANDBOOK OF COMMERCIAL GEOGRAPHY

## INTRODUCTION

The great geographical fact on which commerce depends is that different parts of the world yield different products, or furnish the same products under unequally favourable conditions. Hence there are two great results of commerce: the first, to increase the variety of commodities at any particular place; the second, to equalise more or less, according to the facilities for transport, the opportunities for obtaining any particular commodity in different places between which commerce is carried on. Among the difficulties of transport to be overcome we here include all the profits necessarily levied in the transference of goods from hand to hand (profits of exchange).

The variety of products in different places is due either to artificial production, whether by cultivation or manufacture, or to original distribution. The original distribution of minerals of economic value is an important matter for consideration in commercial geography, but under this head we must consider, not merely the latitude and longitude of the place of occurrence, but all the varied conditions, local, political, or historical, which help to render mineral deposits commercially available. Original distribution under the same provisos is likewise the prime consideration in the case of forest products, where the forests have not been planted by the hand of man.

In the case of cultivated products, soil and climate are considerations of first importance in determining the variety obtaining at different places. But even with reference to such products these are not the sole considerations. Facilities for finding a market, and all the conditions that affect these facilities, have also to be taken into account.

The cost, in labour, of bringing goods from one part of the world to another has been greatly reduced since the time of the earliest

commerce of which we can get a glimpse. On the whole, there has been a gradual development of the means of transport; but the rate of development has been very unequal in different regions and at different times, and in our own age it has attained the highest pitch yet reached. As this development has proceeded, the variety of products entering into commerce and obtainable at particular places has constantly increased. In the earliest periods the articles in which commerce was developed on a great scale, involving the longest and costliest journeys, were necessarily such as were of great value in proportion to their bulk. Such commerce supplied chiefly the luxuries of the rich, and commodities on which a high value was conferred by religion. Records of early Egyptian, Assyrian, and Phœnician trade speak of gold, silver, and precious stones, ebony and fine woods, ivory and inlaid work, incense and perfumes, balsams and gums, apes, peacocks, panther-skins, and slaves as the principal gifts of commerce. Indian dyes (indigo) appear to have reached Egypt in the time of the eighteenth dynasty (1700-1475 B.C.); Baltic amber was probably brought to Assyria in the time of Tiglath-Pileser II (eighth century B.C.); and Chinese silks are known to have reached the Indus through Afghanistan in the fourth century B.C., though probably without anything being known in the country where the goods were bought of the country in which they originated. The silks were no doubt gradually transferred from tribe to tribe on the route, and in this manner they are likely to have occasionally reached the West at a much earlier date.

The trade in bulky articles such as grain brought from a distance was necessarily confined to regions easily brought into communication with one another by good water carriage. From an early period in Greek history the necessity for this trade gave peculiar importance to the grain-growing regions on the northern shores of the Black Sea. Rome at the height of its prosperity first made Sicily a granary for central Italy during the later period of the Republic, and under the Empire grain was likewise obtained from Egypt and Cilicia, Mauretania, and Spain. Sea carriage within the Mediterranean rendered all these sources of supply easy of access; but where distant land carriage was added, especially for the material of an artistic product, the prices demanded were such as only the wealthiest could pay. Varro, in the first century B.C., mentions citron-wood along with gold as among the costliest luxuries at Rome, and about the same date as much as 1,400,000 sesterces (£10,500) was paid for Alexandrian tables made of *thya*-wood (the wood of *Callitris quadrivalvis*) with ivory feet.

Coming down to the most flourishing period of the trade of Italy with the East, that is, towards the close of the fifteenth century, just before the discovery of the sea-way thither, we find that the principal articles of commerce were silk, silk-stuffs and other costly

manufactures, spices and drugs. At Antwerp in 1560, after the seaway to the East had been fully established, and that city had attained the summit of its maritime and commercial prosperity, though the goods that were dealt in included leather, flax, tallow, salt fish, timber, corn and pulse, and other articles of general consumption, there was a remarkable choice of costlier articles, such as wrought silks and velvets, cloth of gold and silver, tapestries, dimities of fine sorts, jewels and pearls, dyes and perfumes, drugs and spices.

In Shakespeare's time we know from Shakespeare himself that sugar, currants and dates, rice, mace, nutmegs and ginger, as well as civet and 'medicinal gum,' were all familiar in England, while the manufactured products of the time comprised, among others,

Fine linen, Turkey cushions boss'd with pearl,  
Valance of Venice gold in needle-work.

Tobacco, though not mentioned by Shakespeare, was already in use in England. Of the articles mentioned, however, some that are now within the reach of everyone must have been, at the period referred to, comparatively rare luxuries. Without going beyond Shakespeare we get a hint that rice was dear. 'What will this sister of mine do with rice? But my father hath made her mistress of the feast, and she lays it on.' From other sources we learn the cost of some of the other tropical products mentioned. In 1589 a quarter of an ounce of tobacco cost in England 10*d.*, 1 lb. of sugar 20*d.*; and the difference in money value between then and now gives an inadequate idea of the actual difference in cost, for we find from the same source that a pound of sugar then cost (at least in the country) as much as a quarter (28 lb.) of veal or mutton.

The contrast between Shakespeare's day and our own is striking in many ways. Tea, coffee, and cocoa, besides other minor but still familiar articles, such as sago and tapioca, have all been added, along with a host of others, to the list of mercantile commodities. The price of tropical products has been so reduced that, for example, tea, sugar, coffee, cocoa, and tobacco are all in common use even in the Arctic homes of the Laplanders. In the trade of the world almost universally the articles of greatest aggregate value have come to be the natural products, raw materials, and manufactured articles in most general use—wheat and rice, meat, bacon and hams, butter and cheese, cotton and cottons, wool and woollens, iron and ironware, besides rubber and rubber goods, &c. Even in the export trade of India spices other than pepper have fallen very low in the list, and the principal commodities exported are mostly bulky raw or semi-manufactured commodities. One drug only, opium, continued till the twentieth century to take a leading place among the exports, and this would have been of comparatively small importance had it not been for one great market (China).

We thus see that the increasing variety of commodities entering into commerce is in a great measure an increase in the commoner articles of consumption. To get an idea of the extent of the variety that has been attained through the gigantic and complicated commerce of the present day, there is no better method than to examine the price-list of one of the great department stores or miscellaneous retail shops now so common.

The equalising tendency of commerce has already been incidentally illustrated by the reduction in price of tropical commodities just mentioned; but this tendency needs a little further elucidation.

The tendency may be described, first, as one towards equality of prices from year to year—in other words, to stability of prices; a tendency manifested most conspicuously in the case of those commodities the supply of which in any particular region, apart from commerce, is largely dependent on the weather. Between 1641 and 1741 the price of wheat per quarter (8 bushels) in England oscillated between 23s. and 76s.; in the period from 1741 to 1841, between 22s. and 129s., the highest prices being reached during the period of the Napoleonic wars; in the period 1842 to 1883 the limits of oscillation were only 39s. and 75s., the latter figure being reached only during the Crimean war. The early years of the present century again saw very low prices with the abundance of supply from the new lands. The world pattern which had been developing for so long was rudely upset by the outbreak of the First World War in 1914. Though the inter-war period of 1918 to 1939 saw a resumption of extended world trade, the outbreak of the Second World War witnessed the beginning of many far-reaching changes. The changing value of currencies in many countries—indeed in all, including the dollar and the pound—makes direct comparison with the past impossible. Instead of the free functioning of exchange rates currencies are now managed and controlled. The operation of free trade has been replaced by a complicated system of bulk buying by governments and prices rendered artificial by subsidies and in other ways. That part of the world dominated by Soviet Russia—constituting the lands behind the 'Iron Curtain'—is largely isolated from the rest of the world. In some ways countries tied to the United States dollar are divided from the countries of the sterling group. So the tendencies discussed in the following paragraphs are largely obscured.

In a free-trade world, excessive prices in one region are kept down by supplies sent from other regions where the commodity is cheap, and the sending away of the surplus from these latter regions tends to raise the price in them. The effect of this nature attributable to commerce is best recognised by observing the conditions that prevail in places where communications are very imperfect and commerce consequently limited. Thus, in 1885, when Quito, a town

in the Andes at the height of nearly 10,000 feet above sea-level, could be reached from Guayaquil, the principal port on the coast, only by means of pack-animals, which had to travel a distance of 320 miles, local produce was exceptionally cheap, but imported articles were excessively dear. Beef sold at from 2*d.* to 2½*d.* a pound, mutton 1½*d.* to 2*d.*, chickens 6*d.* to 7½*d.* apiece; ordinary labourers received about 6*d.* a day; carpenters, stonemasons, and other artisans about 1*s.*, finding their own food. On the other hand, dry goods, hardware, common cutlery, crockery, and imported furniture were from 25 to 50 per cent. higher than in foreign markets; and common ironware cost fully twice as much as in the countries from which it was brought. So also in the hills of the Upper Chindwin district in Burma, a thousand miles from Rangoon, the writer found as recently as 1925 that three chickens could be bought for 1*s.* 4*d.*, but the same sum was freely offered by the local inhabitants for an empty wine bottle.

As already noted, while the tendency of commerce is towards comparative steadiness in prices, yet the level towards which the price tends is not the lowest level in any place of production. Merchants sell abroad because they can thus get a better price than at home. It is their quest after higher prices that reduces the inequality under this head in different parts of the world. To them the advantage of an extended commerce is this, that the wider the commerce the greater is their choice of customers.

Hence there follows a third great result of the growth of commerce, namely, the development of the resources of different regions to the utmost extent possible under the existing conditions, whatever these may be, and with this development the keenest and most widespread competition, which is, indeed, only another aspect of the same great fact.

But in process of this development it becomes apparent that the equalising tendency of commerce is only a general tendency, which is apt to be masked now and again by disturbances, by great variations in price, due directly or indirectly to the operations of commerce itself. These disturbances may arise from inventions causing a sudden cheapening in the processes of production, such as the great textile inventions or those which gave rise to the modern methods of steel-making; they may arise from the introduction of cheaper means of transport, and the disturbance due to this cause is felt all the more keenly when the cheaper transport is to regions in which there is exceptionally cheap labour or cheap land, and still more when it leads to the rapid settlement of land of unused and extraordinary fertility; or they may arise from a vast and rapid expansion of the demand for some commodity—an expansion such as is only possible since commerce has come to be pursued on the extensive scale characteristic of the present time.

Such disturbances are sure to inflict hardship somewhere. The transition from domestic industry in spinning and weaving to the factory system is too far in the past in our own country for the attendant hardships of that transition to be remembered, or even generally known; but these hardships are still being felt in some parts of the world, as in India, Indo-China, and China. In India we have, first of all, seen hand-spinners and weavers considerably impoverished by the commerce in English machine-made cottons, and subsequently a vigorous competition with our own cottons in the East arising from the development of a local mechanical textile industry. As already mentioned above, other causes of disturbance to trade have been seen during the present century in the World Wars and the political and economic upheavals that came in their train, leading to the multiplication of tariff barriers and government controls, all designed to interfere with the natural flow of trade.

The disturbance that may be caused by the rapid expansion of the demand for a commodity is seen in the history of the iron trade after 1870, as reflected in the price of pig-iron 'warrants'—i.e., forms of receipt for warehoused goods, the title to which can be transferred by assignment. The average price of these warrants at Glasgow in the years 1869 to 1871 varied between about 53s. and 59s. per ton; in 1872 the average rose to about 102s., in 1873 to 117s., after which it fell steadily to about 54s. in 1877. The sudden rise was due to the fact that, vast as our own commerce and industry had already become in 1872, it was not yet equal to the demands that were then made on it for the further expansion of commerce by the laying of numerous railways, and the establishment of numerous factories in America and Germany. The annual increase of railway mileage in America rose steadily from 1,177 miles in 1865 to 7,379 miles in 1871. The annual exports of iron and steel from the United Kingdom to the United States increased steadily from 186,000 tons in 1865 to 1,064,000 tons in 1871; those to Germany, Holland, and Belgium increased year by year from 255,000 tons in 1866 to 1,015,000 tons in 1872. But in the subsequent course of iron prices the general equalising tendency of commerce can still be detected. The vast demand of 1871 to 1873 led almost immediately to such an increase in the means of producing iron that, when the next great expansion of the demand came about, it was met with greater ease. From 1877 to 1887 the extreme variations in average annual price of pig-iron warrants at Glasgow were only about 40s. and 54s. 6d.

Inevitable as the hardships attendant on such disturbances are, the improvements that bring about such incidental results are of value to the world in the long run, in so far as they afford the means of permanently lightening human labour in the production and distribution of the means of satisfying human wants. That they do



so for an ever-increasing proportion of the inhabitants of the world would appear to follow from the fact to which attention has already been drawn, the increasing proportion of the necessities of life and the articles of most general consumption entering into the aggregate commerce of the world. The large and quick steamers, the numberless railway trains, in short all the vast apparatus that now stands at the service of commerce, can be kept working only by transporting commodities consumed in the largest quantity, such therefore as satisfy the wants of the multitude. Between the two World Wars invention succeeded invention so rapidly that changes were almost continuous, and the nations were facing such problems as permanent unemployment. The late Lord Stamp, in his Presidential Address to the British Association in Blackpool in 1936, dealt with this question of the impact of science on society.

The full advantage of any permanent benefit to mankind from the developments of which we are now speaking is not reaped until every kind of production is carried on in the place that has the greatest natural advantages for the supply of a particular market. By natural advantages are meant such as these—a favourable soil and climate, the existence of facilities for communication external and internal so far as these lie in the nature of the surface and physical features, the existence of valuable minerals in favourable situations, and especially of the materials for making and driving machinery, these being among the products which are least able to bear the cost of carriage. All these advantages are more or less permanent, or at least such as are exhaustible are for the most part liable to exhaustion only by slow degrees. Unfortunately, the nations of the world are showing signs of ignoring this simple truth and are seeking to build up behind tariff walls industries which are not suited to the localities concerned and for which there are no natural advantages.

With natural advantages may be contrasted historical advantages, which are in their nature more temporary, though they are often in fact of long continuance. Perhaps the most important of all is a strong and stable government based on just and fixed principles not hostile to industry; and this, it may be observed, is one of those which may be very enduring in fact, as the disadvantage arising from the want of that condition is very apt to be.

Inasmuch as some advantages for commerce and industry are thus temporary in their nature, it is necessarily more or less perilous for a country to have its commercial and industrial prosperity based chiefly on advantages of this kind; and there are numberless examples in history to show the hardship and disaster that may result from the withdrawal of the advantages on which a temporary superiority was based. We may refer in illustration of this to the losses that fell upon Italian commerce after the discovery of the sea-way to the

East, the prosperity of that commerce being based in a large measure on the central position of Italy—a position which was permanent only so long as the geography of the world was imperfectly known. It is specially disadvantageous for any country when the temporary prosperity of any of its chief industries is based on a circumstance that must in itself be regarded as disadvantageous—such, for example, as low wages.

With reference to the temporary character of certain advantages for commerce and industry, it is likewise a fact of the greatest moment that, viewed broadly, the commerce and industry of the world have for more than a hundred years been in a transition stage the like of which has never been known before. Communications are being improved, the means of production are being accelerated and cheapened, uncultivated lands are being settled, and primitive peoples introduced to the inventions of the white races with a rapidity hitherto unparalleled—with incidental results, as we have seen, not always the most desirable. Commerce and industry thus tend to be governed more and more by geographical conditions, which accordingly demand the most careful and detailed examination, an examination much more thorough than can be attempted within the limits of this work.

The statement just made is often denied, and that in such a manner as to suggest not merely that the opposite is the truth, but too obviously the truth for that to be called in question. The difference of opinion results from a difference in the point of view, but the point of view of those who contend that geographical conditions are counting for less and less instead of more and more would seem to be less conducive to clearness. Those who hold this view will point out that now where an isthmus stands in man's way he cuts it; a mountain, he bores it. True, but those who think only of this fail to notice that in the case of those epoch-making achievements wide-reaching geographical relations determine what isthmuses to cut, what mountains to pierce, and a close study of the local conditions is made to decide where and how the works had best be carried out. Railways, we are told, make man no longer dependent only on inland waterways for the carriage of bulky produce long distances. True, but in the laying of railways through hilly or mountainous country more care than ever is being taken to avoid stiff gradients and sharp curves, and similar care is now taken in the alignment of great motor roads. The steepness of the gradient on the west side of the Kicking Horse Pass across the Rocky Mountains ultimately compelled the Canadian Pacific Railway to provide an easier descent at the cost of a somewhat lengthened route. In the north-west of Switzerland an even more striking change was made under the imperious demands of modern competition. A tunnel already existing at a high level through the Hauen-

stein has been superseded by another nearly at base level. In some cases the influence of the superficial configuration of a region or the traffic it supplies on the means of transport is seen in another way, as the determining cause of electric in place of steam haulage.

The opening up of the entire world by improved means of communication is leading capitalists to search out every part where development is possible and to remove obstacles to development wherever that can be done, but the very fact that man is acquiring greater power in dealing with nature makes clearer the limit beyond which he cannot pass in his modifications of the original conditions. Nowhere is this clearer than in the creation of oases, where lie side by side 'the desert and the sown.' Irrigation in recent years has been greatly extended in many parts of the world, but geographical conditions determine just where it is possible. The tendency towards an ultimate prevalence of geographical conditions in determining the distribution of commerce and industry is, it is true, a tendency to a remote result. The influences tending to localise industries in particular regions are indeed very varied and complex in their action, especially in modern times. On this subject the reader is referred to what is said under Commercial and Industrial Towns on pp. 106-15, and here it is enough to add that the chief means of thwarting the dominant tendency of geographical conditions in commerce and industry is not man's increasing control over nature, but his political action, which, either by tariffs or by other means, may direct commerce more or less into certain channels.

The advantages that may be expected to be reaped when the development of commerce has reached its goal are the enjoyment of the greatest possible variety of commodities at all the habitable parts of the earth (that is, the greatest variety possible for each place), and the utmost attainable stability of prices. When the network of commerce is complete in its main lines, when it has only to be gradually and regularly extended or made more intricate with the development of population, the deficiencies in the natural products of one region will be supplied with the least possible delay and at the least possible cost from any surplus that may accrue in other regions. It is true that this will take place only on condition that the region so supplied has something to give in exchange for that which is supplied; but with reference to this proviso, it is an important consideration that the stability of prices towards which a fully developed commerce tends is in itself in the highest degree favourable to that foresight which is the necessary condition of ensuring that stability. It facilitates a just estimate of the future. Rendering foresight easier it makes prudent conduct more certain of reward, and may be expected, therefore, to render its practice more general among the community.

Meantime, however, it cannot be forgotten that, however fast

commerce may seem to be hastening towards its goal, it is still very far from having reached that goal. What we now see, accordingly, is the greatest haste on all sides to secure such advantages as may offer themselves for the prosecution of commerce and industry; we see an extreme phase of competitive and aggressive commerce as between nation and nation, individual and individual.

It is only with nations that we have here to do, and we may now note the principal means by which nations, whether through their governments or through other institutions, endeavour to promote their own commerce and industry.

As the first of these means may be mentioned protective tariffs; that is, duties levied upon imports upon such a scale as to encourage the production of the goods so taxed in the country itself by the total or partial exclusion of such goods of foreign origin. It is obvious that by this method only certain branches of internal commerce of a country are fostered, and the external commerce of the country is hampered. But it may be pointed out that in so far as such duties may be necessary or may help to establish an industry in a region in which it is fitted by natural advantages to take root and flourish independently of such fostering, the imposition of duties of this nature tends in the direction of the goal towards which commerce as a whole is moving. The direct and immediate effect of high tariffs is, however, opposed to the tendency of the changes in progress referred to on p. 7, and especially of the rapid multiplication of means of communication. When efforts of one kind are being constantly made to cheapen the supply of commodities it is scarcely credible that those who consume the commodities will always consent to have their price raised by an arbitrary barrier.

This last remark is made solely from the point of view of commerce, and does not exclude the consideration that there may be other reasons for the imposition of tariffs. The term *key industries* has been applied to such as are considered essential for the good of the state. In our own country agriculture and certain chemical industries, in particular the manufacture of commodities required for the production of coal-tar dyes and high explosives, are among those which since the First World War have been regarded as belonging to this class.

Export duties are not so frequently levied as import duties, although they are becoming more common. Obviously, they can be levied only on those commodities in producing which the state levying the duties has by nature an advantage so great as almost to amount to a monopoly such as was enjoyed during the Middle Ages by England in certain kinds of raw wool, the export duties on which made up for centuries the great bulk of the revenue of the state.

Bounties—that is, payments made directly or indirectly on the exportation of goods—are another means sometimes resorted to by governments with the view of encouraging industries; and with reference to these also it may be said that if it can be proved that a bounty has ever served to establish an industry capable afterwards of being maintained on a self-supporting footing, then a similar plea may be entered in favour of this aid to industry. One of the commonest forms of bounty now in use is the paying of a subsidy to certain lines of shipping (generally, however, in return for services in the carriage of mails or otherwise). The sugar industry is the most important of those which have been affected by subsidies in recent years. Allied to bounties are rebates on taxes or costs to which the industry would normally be subject. Great changes in the extent of government interference with trade by way of protective duties or bounties are, apart from war, perhaps the most deplorable, because the most arbitrary, of the disturbances of the commercial relations subsisting at any period.

We have all experience now of the effects of war on industry and commerce, though we are even yet unable to gauge their full extent. They include immense destruction of life—and so of labour power—at the period of greatest vigour; the impairment of the health of multitudes not directly engaged in the war; fluctuation of the birth-rate in the belligerent countries;<sup>1</sup> destruction of property of all kinds; diversion to various destructive agencies of the labour normally devoted to providing for the future, especially by the creation of transport facilities, the erection of plant, and the manufacture of machinery; the sudden redistribution of capital, where that redistribution takes place within the state, the burdening for years to come of the bulk of the population with payments due to the smaller section of the people who form the state creditors, and, where that redistribution operates between state and state, changes in the relative advantages for production and commerce which may prove permanent. There is the loss of markets to a belligerent nation, a loss which may never be recovered as others step in as

<sup>1</sup> The following table, based on the United Nations' *Demographic Year Book*, shows the numbers of the live births per thousand of the population between 1938 and 1955 in certain countries. After an initial decline early in the war in the case of the European belligerents, the Allied rates mounted to a maximum in 1947, in the first flush of victory, but later fell away from that level.

	1938	1941	1942	1943	1945	1947	1950	1955
U.K. . . . .	15·5	14·4	15·9	16·6	16·3	20·7	16·1	15·8
Germany (a) .	19·7	18·6	15·0	16·0	—	16·5	16·2	15·7
France . . . .	14·9	13·4	14·8	15·9	16·5	21·3	21·0	18·5
Canada . . . .	20·6	22·2	23·4	24·0	23·9	28·6	26·8	28·4
U.S.A. . . . .	17·6	18·9	20·9	21·5	19·6	25·7	23·5	24·6

(a) Rates to 1943 for Germany as constituted in 1937. Later rates for Western Germany only.

suppliers and a permanent rearrangement of the channels of commerce results. It is not out of place here to refer also to the mutual hatred and distrust between nations resulting from war, inasmuch as industry and commerce nowadays depend so largely on credit, which implies mutual confidence. Politicians, capitalists, captains of industry, and the workers are alike bewildered as to the situation, and after two great World Wars we do not know the new level from which rebuilding may start in conditions that give some promise of security for the future.

Governments assist commerce by maintaining officers known as consuls in the principal mercantile towns of foreign countries; the officers so named being charged not merely with the duty of looking after the interests of subjects of the country represented by them in the sphere of their consular districts, but likewise with that of furnishing such information as is likely to be of use to the merchants of that country. In many cases commercial attachés do this work, the results appearing in such typically fine reports as are issued from time to time by the Board of Trade. The name consul is of Latin origin, and the present application of the title originated with the practice of maintaining such officials among the trading communities of Italy in the twelfth century. In modern times the former Austrian Empire had an academy controlled by the Minister of Foreign Affairs for the education of candidates for the diplomatic and consular services. Being primarily intended for those preparing for service in the East, it was known as the Oriental Academy; and the course of instruction embraced a legal training, military geography, and tactical science, as well as the teaching of 'Turkish, Arabic, Persian, Hungarian, French, Italian, English, Russian, Modern Greek, and Servian.'

British merchants and manufacturers have not the advantage of being able to consult British consular reports with reference to the extensive areas embraced by the Commonwealth, but this want is met more or less in other ways. First, the self-governing portions of the Commonwealth maintain representatives under various titles, who make it their business to disseminate information likely to promote trade between the United Kingdom and the countries which they represent. Then, in the case of the British dependencies, the Colonial Office issues from time to time reports similar in their content to those received from consuls in foreign countries. Thirdly, in recent years the home government has appointed trade commissioners to various parts of the world, including those within the Commonwealth.

The establishment of chambers of commerce, or voluntary associations of merchants in different localities, is now almost universal, and similar chambers are now being established by merchants of different countries in foreign cities where a large

amount of business is conducted. It is in keeping with modern tendencies that an Association of British Chambers of Commerce and an International Chamber of Commerce have been formed.

Another method of promoting national commerce now coming into more and more general use all the world over is the establishment of commercial libraries and museums, and those large fairs or exhibitions which have become increasingly popular in recent years. Exhibitions are a kind of temporary commercial museum, and floating exhibitions intended to convey samples of a country's commodities to various stations in distant markets are one of the latest means resorted to in different countries with the view of promoting national commerce.

In the United Kingdom the Imperial Institute, founded in 1887 as a national memorial of Queen Victoria's Jubilee, placed in 1903 under the Board of Trade, and now being reorganised under various government departments, includes a commercial museum of Commonwealth and Empire products and is actively concerned in spreading knowledge amongst the rank and file of citizens, especially young people. Most Commonwealth governments have in their London offices permanent exhibitions of the commercial products of their respective countries; whilst it has been proved that great exhibitions such as that held at Wembley in 1924-25 have been of more vital interest than museums. This was shown by the Great Exhibition of 1851 and was behind the attempt to repeat that success a century later by the Festival of Britain in 1951.

Commercial and technical education are other means of promoting national commerce of great importance. This is recognised by the existence of many professional institutes (such as the Institute of Bankers) which provide educational courses and conduct examinations. Nearly all of them include commercial geography in their requirements.

An inevitable feature of war, especially war on a gigantic scale as in 1914-18 and 1939-45, is the extension of government control of industry and even the direct participation of the government in industry. On the one hand it has to be kept in mind that such success in industry as was achieved by the government during the wars was secured at the expense of the taxpayer, whereas industry must be able normally not merely to maintain itself by its own produce, but also to provide for its own growth. On the other hand, one cannot forget that for a long time the tendency in many parts of the world, including the British Commonwealth and Empire, has been towards a great extension of the share taken by the state in industries of various kinds. The private ownership of railways, as in the United States, is now exceptional. The Canadian government is the owner not only of a large part of the railways in that country but of elevators and steamships; and ships for trading pur-

poses are owned by other governments. Under the Soviet system in Russia ownership and control are all-embracing. Our own government has been a large proprietor of shares in the Suez Canal since 1875; during the First World War it became a partner in the Anglo-Iranian (formerly Anglo-Persian) Oil Co., and gave financial support to companies manufacturing dyestuffs; in between the two wars, marketing boards, quotas, and subsidies multiplied; and after the Second World War nationalisation became a main plank of Socialist government policy.

Several of these means of retaining and promoting commerce remind us forcibly of the closeness of the bonds with which commerce is steadily drawing different countries together, and of the complicated action and reaction between different parts of the world to which commerce gives rise. The improvement of machinery, of processes of production, of means of communication, the better organisation of industry, the advancement of education in one country, demand similar advances in other countries. New wheat-fields in America necessitate improved systems of agriculture and the advancement of agricultural education in England, the introduction of better agricultural machinery into Russia. The perfecting of the processes in the refining of beet-sugar in Germany demands better organisation among the cane-planter of the West Indies and Guiana. The working classes more and more clearly recognise that any advantage secured for themselves in one country must be extended also to other countries. As long ago as 1885 the United States consul for Dundee stated that the longer hours worked in the Calcutta jute-mills were believed to be the determining cause of the depression in the jute industry of Dundee, arising from the competition of Bengal; and he added that both employers and employed were consequently anxious that the ten-hours-a-day Factory Act should be extended to India. On the continent of Europe a long agitation in favour of international legislation on this subject led, at least in part, to the establishment of the International Labour Office in Geneva. The power of Japan to compete in world markets on too advantageous terms would be obviated by a higher standard of living and hence higher labour costs in that country.

It may perhaps be looked upon as one of the hopeful features for the future that the importance of the considerations set forth in the preceding paragraph is coming to be more and more clearly recognised, and that the more enlightened among both masters and men are becoming increasingly convinced that it is only by mutual and world-wide co-operation that some of the most perplexing problems of industry can find a solution. 'After all,' said the Rt. Hon. G. N. Barnes in a speech on the Treaty of Peace Bill in the House of Commons on July 21, 1919, 'hard conditions of life are not due to any conscious cruelty on the part of any class or any



individual. They are rather due to fundamental causes which can be removed only by the co-operation of classes.' Instances of the readiness on the side of capitalists to co-operate in this way, especially in the way of providing good housing and garden accommodation, are already too numerous to particularise. If one result of the World Wars should be that all countries came to realise that the healthiest conditions in the widest sense of the term for all engaged in industry were essential to the highest prosperity of industry, and all governments accordingly made it a prime aim to do what in them lay to secure such conditions as a permanency, we should all then be able to acclaim at least one good as issuing from those calamities. The establishment of the Ministry of Health in Britain may be noted in this connection.

## ECONOMIC STATISTICS

One of the chief uses, if not absolutely the most important of all the uses of the study of Commercial or Economic Geography, is to enable us to form some reasonable estimate of the future course of commercial development, so far as that is governed by geographical conditions. Such an estimate must, of course, be based on one's knowledge of forces that can be seen in operation at the present time, and must be recognised as liable to be falsified by discoveries which it is impossible to foresee. The keenest and most widely informed have made forecasts which have proved to be utterly wide of the truth, but which could not be called unreasonable at the time. When Adam Smith wrote that 'the small quantity of foreign corn imported, even in times of the greatest scarcity, may satisfy our farmers that they can have nothing to fear from the freest importation' (*Wealth of Nations*, Book IV, Chap. II), no one could be expected to foresee the ultimate consequences of the inventions of the ingenious young instrument-maker, James Watt, whom Smith had befriended at Glasgow. When Dr. P. Colquhoun in his *Wealth of the British Empire* (2nd edition, 1815) demonstrated the utter inutility of the new British colony in Australia, even that can hardly be pronounced unreasonable in the light of the knowledge of the time. Such forecasts may serve to remind us of the tacit qualifications with which all attempts to anticipate the future are to be interpreted, but do not show the inutility of making such anticipations as the circumstances allow.

In attempting such forecasts statistical data are unquestionably an important aid. In Commercial Geography the value of figures is twofold. First, they help at any particular time to distinguish the important from the unimportant. Second, when we have figures for a series of years they direct attention to changes that have been in progress in the past, and may thus serve to suggest the most fruitful branches of inquiry with reference to any geographical causes that may have contributed to such changes, and help us to estimate with more chance of success their probable action in the future. In both ways they serve as a guide to what is most worthy of examination in our special subject. In order that they may illustrate changes in progress it is obvious that the series

are likely to be the more instructive the longer and the more continuous they are.

Figures stating values may be very misleading in making comparisons between different periods even in the trade of the same country. With a view to removing this misleading tendency various index-numbers, as they are called, have been calculated, and need explanation. For the individual commodities the index-number merely expresses the ratio of the average value of a given quantity of each commodity in a given year to the value which it would have had at the average price of the year or period which is taken as the base. This is simple, but such index-numbers are not index-numbers in the proper sense of the term, that is, numbers calculated to serve as an index of other numbers not definitely known. This is what is aimed at by the general index-number, which is based on the average price of many commodities, all articles largely consumed, such as wheat or wine or raw materials, but including such raw materials as bricks and hewn fir. In working out a general index-number the commodities may be regarded as of equal importance but in other calculations the commodities selected are not allowed to count equally, but are weighted or multiplied by different numbers in different cases.

If then the selected commodities may be taken as illustrative, the general index-number will thus serve to show how far values have been affected by some cause or causes having a wide-reaching influence, and the variations in the index-numbers for the individual commodities when compared with the general index-numbers will be the means of indicating how far some special cause or causes must have affected their fluctuations in value. It should be noted that the basal period is arbitrarily chosen. The old Board of Trade index used 1900. In 1921 the Board of Trade adopted an index-number on a new principle; new bases were adopted in 1938 and 1947.

Whatever be the cause of changes in index-numbers, the facts underlying those changes modify, and sometimes to an important degree, the significance of the values given for exports and imports. For example, if we take the average value of imports into the United Kingdom for each of the periods of five years from 1871-75 to 1906-10, we find that there is only one, namely, the period 1886-90, which shows a decline in value as compared with the previous quinquennium—in round numbers £390m. against £400m. But if we apply the Board of Trade index-number, base 1900, to these figures the values become changed to £333m. in 1881-85 and £379m. in 1886-90, showing an increase in the latter period of nearly 14 per cent. instead of a decrease of about  $2\frac{1}{2}$  per cent. Now with an index-number calculated as was the old Board of Trade figure by allotting a weight to each commodity proportional to the average value of annual consumption, this shows that during

the latter period considerably more supplies of food and raw materials must have been coming into the country than in the one before. That being so, we may be sure that those increased supplies would find their way into the hands of consumers. Stocks are not kept on indefinitely in the hope of better prices. Perishable goods cannot be. So far as the increased imports, then, were food-stuffs, they must have been a direct benefit to the consumers; so far as they were raw materials, increased supplies must have helped to maintain the demand for labour, for they were imported in order to be used, and manufacturers still found their advantage in using them in spite of the fact that they did not see their way to sell the products at former prices. It is not even a necessary consequence that the lower selling prices of the products meant lower profits to the manufacturers.

These considerations have a special bearing on the trade returns recorded in this volume. During and after the Second World War prices increased very greatly, so that imports and exports in 1950, for instance, were as a rule valued at very much more than in 1937, though the actual quantities of the goods imported and exported were often less. The Statistical Office of the United Nations has accordingly tried to introduce an index of quantity in trade, somewhat comparable with a cost of living index.

Further, when the tables of imports and exports are used for making comparisons of the trade of different countries one may be led into error in various ways. First, it is important to remember that such returns for the same country do not always refer to the same economic unit. When accessions of territory are gained by any country there is likely to be a change of this nature: similarly when territory is lost. Next, it is to be noted that there is no uniformity in the nature of the total given for the trade of a country, whether the commerce referred to be designated general or special. Under the name of general commerce all articles imported and exported are included, but under the head of special commerce only goods imported for home consumption and goods of home production exported are supposed to be reckoned. But this is far from being uniformly true. Very generally goods that enter into circulation in the country free from the control of the customs are taken as part of the special commerce of the country. Thus, in the tables of German trade for 1911 raw cotton, caoutchouc, and rice appear among the special exports to the aggregate value of more than £6,000,000, although obviously none of these is a product of Germany, and we cannot tell how great may have been the value of other re-exports when the goods are of such a nature that they may or may not have been German products. In our own country, on the other hand, no attempt has been made to distinguish goods imported for home consumption, but a distinction is always made

between exports of native origin and manufacture—whether free goods or goods subject to customs duty—and exports of foreign or Commonwealth origin. Note that goods that have undergone the slightest manufacturing operation, such as overseas wool combed in Great Britain, are included (rightly) among the goods of British manufacture. In two points the British tables are misleading or inadequate from causes which perhaps cannot be remedied. The general tables are exclusive of what is called transshipment trade, of which a separate statement is made. The transshipment trade is exclusively of articles imported and exported in bond, and may include, actually does include, a considerable amount of trade on British account, that is, the import of goods bought by British merchants and resold by them abroad.

Statistics of external commerce usually include statements as to the description of the goods exported or imported, the quantities, the countries of origin or destination of the goods, and the value. In the case of many articles, and especially those most largely imported and exported, such as food-stuffs and raw materials, the description of the article presents no difficulty, so that one may deal with returns as to such commodities in making comparisons between period and period in the trade of the same country, or between different countries for the same or different periods without fear of being misled. But in many cases it is otherwise, and difficulties in making comparisons for the same country for long periods are constantly being made by tariff changes necessitating different classifications, and even where there are no tariff changes alterations in the classification of goods are often made simply with the view of giving a more satisfactory statement of the facts of commerce. However useful such changes may be from one point of view, it has always to be remembered that they have the drawback referred to. This drawback arises, it should be added, even when increased care is used, and hence increased accuracy arrived at in the collection of the original data.

In England the earliest systematic collection of commercial statistics appears to have been made in 1697. From that time down to 1797, inclusive, the values entered for English commerce and, after the union of the Parliaments in 1707, for that of Great Britain, were official values based on the prices of 1694 and for new articles on the price of the first year of their introduction. The so-called values were, accordingly, not true values, but for each commodity served to give indications of changes in quantity from year to year, while the totals had little meaning at all. From 1798 in the case of exports declared values were added, not substituted, so that we have the absurdity in Porter's *Progress of the Nation*<sup>1</sup> of two tables giving professedly the same thing, the value to the last pound of

<sup>1</sup> Edition 1851, p. 356.

exports from the United Kingdom from 1801 to 1849, yet utterly divergent from one another, showing from 1820 onwards a steadily growing excess of official over declared values till in 1849 we have

Official Value	.	.	.	.	.	£164,539,504
Declared Value	.	.	.	.	.	63,596,025

In the commercial statistics of the Netherlands the use of official values was maintained until the end of 1916. The 'values' in Dutch returns were based on the prices of 1860 or thereabouts. In one case, Peruvian bark, the so-called value was, in a year just before the First World War, some seventy times the true value.

In the case of imports computed values, that is, values officially estimated in accordance with what were believed to be the current prices of the time, were introduced and used in Britain till 1870 inclusive, but from 1871 onwards declared values have been entered for imports also. This calls for great caution in extending comparisons of import values farther back than 1870. According to British practice import values are those at the port of arrival, that is, include freight but not merchant's profit, export values those at the port of shipment, 'free on board' (f.o.b.). Notes are given in the official tables as to the mode of valuation adopted by different countries. The problem of comparing the trade of the countries of the world has been much simplified by the conversion of national units of weight and volume into their metric equivalents in all publications of the League of Nations and its successor, the United Nations Organisation.

No student of commercial geography can be unaware how many subjects there are that still await investigation, and in many cases how far the means for obtaining the desired information are lacking. This deficiency is felt in a peculiar degree with regard to the trade, and more particularly the home or internal trade, of our own country, but in all countries one has often to regret that the available data refer to the country as a whole instead of particular regions which it would be useful to investigate. The late Lord Stamp in his important Presidential Address to the Geographical Association in 1937 dealt with the contacts between geography and economic theory. He pleaded for an understanding of economics by geographers and for a greater use of geographical facts and illustrations by economists. He pointed out that five types of geographic-economic studies could be distinguished: (a) the simple static, when a present-day geographic fact was explained by an economic fact—really no explanation at all; (b) the inductive static, when several such examples were used to formulate a general statement; (c) the simple dynamic, when the element of change and the historical factor were introduced; (d) the inductive dynamic; and finally (e) the formulation of general economic or geographical laws

based on a wide study of examples of the fourth class. He held that economic geographers had not yet reached the fifth stage and that an immense field of work remained to be explored.

Some of the suggestions for further investigations which Chisholm listed in earlier editions of this work might well be revived in the light of such a general programme; namely—

How far British rule in different parts of the world has contributed to the growth of the trade of foreign countries.

The conditions of commercially successful and unsuccessful irrigation.

The advantages of rural and urban centres for different kinds of manufacturing industry.

The effect on commerce of the construction of particular railways.

The relations of seaports to their hinterlands.

The influence on commerce of the possession by different countries of bulky commodities such as coal, timber, salt, ice, cement, wool, grain, and the like.

The effect of local labour, local supplies of raw material, and local markets in the development of manufacturing industries.

The exhaustibility of natural advantages for any particular kind of production, as evidenced by a rapid followed by a slower expansion of a local industry concerned in such production.

The effects of government interference in modifying the influence of natural advantages.

The gradual conversion of manufacturing industry from the lower to the higher branches.

## GENERAL FACTS RELATING TO THE PRODUCTION, DISTRIBUTION, AND EXCHANGE OF COMMODITIES

### I. CLIMATE

Under the head of climate we have to consider here only the main climatic factors affecting the production and distribution of articles of commerce. The commodities whose production is most immediately affected by climatic conditions are those derived from the vegetable kingdom; but those of animal origin, being directly or indirectly dependent on vegetation, are subject to the same influences. It is, however, climate as influencing vegetation, and more particularly as influencing cultivation, or the bestowal of human labour in promoting vegetation, that we have to keep chiefly in view in considering the effect of climate on the production of commodities.

For all kinds of vegetation there is required a certain amount of **heat** and a certain amount of **moisture**. The great source of heat is the sun, and of moisture the ocean, where evaporation is brought about through the heat of the sun. The winds, however, are the carriers of both heat and moisture, so that it is essential to study the direction of the prevailing winds in order to understand the distribution of temperature and rainfall over the globe. **Temperature** decreases on the whole from the vicinity of the equator towards the poles, but the rate of decrease is very unequal over land and water. Water being more slowly heated and cooled than the land, the diminution in temperature towards the poles is more rapid over the ocean than over the land in summer, less rapid in winter. The ocean and other large bodies of water for this reason have a moderating effect on the temperature of adjacent lands. This effect is brought about mainly or solely by the agency of the winds. With reference to land temperatures accordingly it is more important to consider the direction of the prevailing winds than the mere distribution of land and water. Winds depend on local differences in the pressure of the atmosphere. They tend to blow from regions of high pressure to regions of low pressure. Regions of low pressure occur over the warmest parts of the ocean near the equator, and in the interior of the great land-masses in summer, when they are most directly exposed to the rays of the sun. Over the ocean the region of high temperature and low pressure forms a belt,



towards which winds blow more or less from the north and south. The direction of these winds is, however, modified by the rotation of the earth, in consequence of which these winds, known as the **trade-winds**, blow more or less from the east, over some parts of the ocean with such regularity that, in the language of Sir Thomas Browne, 'sailing from Lima to Manilla . . . you may fasten up the rudder and sleep before the wind.' It is important, therefore, to observe and constantly to bear in mind that over a great width of the ocean in low latitudes extending on both sides far beyond the tropics, there is a strong tendency for the winds to blow away from the west sides of the continents and towards the east sides of the continents. The position of this wide belt, or rather of the two wide belts separated by an intermediate belt of calms corresponding to that of lowest pressure, is not constant. It moves north and south with the sun, along with the whole system of atmospheric pressures dependent on the height of the sun above the horizon. Wherever and whenever the trade-winds blow, however, they have a certain effect in mitigating the temperatures of the regions exposed to them.

Outside of the trade-wind region there is normally in the winter months an area of low pressure in the North Atlantic to the north of 60° N., and in the North Pacific a similar area more to the south. Towards each of these the winds tend to blow, but in consequence of the rotation of the earth not directly, but in great spirals in which the direction of movement is opposite to that of the hands of a watch. Hence south-westerly, and consequently warm, winds prevail at this season on nearly all the west coasts of Europe and a large part of the west coast of America, while northerly, and hence cold, winds prevail on the opposite coasts, that is, on the east coast of North America, and the east coasts of northern Asia. The contrast between the temperature of these coasts in corresponding latitudes is another great fact constantly to be borne in mind, as well as the fact that the benefit of the relatively high winter temperatures is carried by the winds a greater or less distance inland. Warm ocean currents flowing in the same direction as these winds blow help to maintain their temperature, but it is to be observed that without the winds these currents would have little effect on the temperature over the land. In the summer months the area of low pressure still exists in the North Atlantic, so that in that period also south-westerly winds prevail, though not so strongly on the west European coasts. In the North Pacific during the summer months an area of low pressure can scarcely be said to exist. In the southern hemisphere outside of the trade-wind belt the conditions are greatly altered by the fact that the amount of land is very small. It is enough to say that there the prevailing winds throughout the year, at least to the south of 40° S., are westerly. These westerlies

blow more constantly over the open oceans of the southern hemisphere than elsewhere and are often referred to as the 'Roaring Forties.'

The influence of the pressure of the air over the land in determining the direction of the prevailing winds is most marked where there are great bodies of land to the north or south of seas in lower latitudes, above all in eastern Asia and in Australia. In the interior of eastern Asia in summer are regions of very low pressure, in winter of very high pressure. Hence, in summer ocean winds, south-westerly, southerly, south-easterly, blow over all the south-east of Asia, including the islands, from the Indian peninsula to about the parallel of  $60^{\circ}$  N. During the winter land-winds, north-easterly, northerly, north-westerly, prevail in the same region. These are the **monsoons**, which have an important effect on temperature as well as on rainfall. The word monsoon is derived from an Arabic word meaning a season, and is still used, in India, as meaning the rainy season. The summer winds, though blowing from lower latitudes, do not tend to raise the temperature, because they come from the ocean; but the winter winds being land-winds as well as coming from higher latitudes have a marked effect in lowering the temperatures, more particularly in the temperate zone. For this reason also the winter temperatures in the east of Asia are much lower than those in corresponding latitudes in the west of Europe and Africa, a fact of great importance in commercial geography. In Australia similar results are due to the alternation of high and low pressures in the interior, but owing to the difference of hemisphere the seasons and the directions of the winds are reversed.

In consequence of the facts stated with regard to the prevalent winds, there is, in the temperate zones, and more particularly in the northern hemisphere, a general lowering of the mean temperature from west to east over the land, due chiefly to an easterly increase in the cold of winter, and partly compensated by an easterly increase in the heat of summer. The increase in the extremes of heat and cold is greatest in the eastern or broader of the two great land-masses, and the lowest temperatures on the earth have been recorded towards the east of Asia, some distance inland, since the sea everywhere has some effect in mitigating extremes of temperature. While the eastern land-mass thus exhibits greater cold and greater contrasts of summer and winter temperature in the east of Asia than are presented in the east of America, its western or European portion, being exposed to warmer winds traversing a warmer ocean than those which visit the western coasts of North America in high latitudes, is characterised by a more equable climate and higher winter temperatures than corresponding latitudes on the latter coasts; and, in general, we find that when we compare equal latitudes in the west of America and the west of Europe, the latter continent shows

the higher temperatures; but when we make a similar comparison for the east of America and the east of Asia, the higher temperatures are found in America.

By way of illustrating these great general facts by means of others having more bearing on the production and distribution of mercantile commodities, it may be mentioned that the northern limits of various cultivated plants whose range is somewhat rigorously determined by climate, such as the orange and the vine, are farther north in Europe than in the west of North America, and farther north in the east of North America than in the east of Asia; that whereas the whole of the west coast of Norway, extending to beyond  $70^{\circ}$  N., is at all times free from ice, the northern coasts of the peninsula of Alaska, in about  $57^{\circ}$  or  $58^{\circ}$  N., are regularly beset by ice in winter; but, on the other hand, whereas the eastern coasts of North America are rarely encumbered by ice south of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, in about  $46^{\circ}$  or  $47^{\circ}$  N., ice is to be seen in the Chinese Gulf of Pechili in lat.  $40^{\circ}$ ; and, again, Halifax, in Nova Scotia, in  $44\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  N., is nearly always open, and thus can serve as a winter-port for the Canadian Dominion; while the Russian seaport of Vladivostok, in the east of Siberia, to the south of  $43^{\circ}$  N., is closed by ice for about a third part of the year. With regard to cultivated plants, however, it must be mentioned that those which are able to profit by long and hot summer days during a very short summer can be grown in higher latitudes in eastern Asia than in eastern North America. Rye, barley, and even cucumbers, can be grown at Yakutsk in eastern Siberia, in  $62^{\circ}$  N. (the same latitude as the mouth of the Yukon in Alaska, and Frederikshaab in Greenland), the barley being sown in the first days of May, and ripening about the middle of July—within two months and a half.

The land surfaces of the **Southern Hemisphere** are too narrow to exhibit the easterly increase in the extremes of temperature, especially since they do not extend into those latitudes in which that increase is most marked. One circumstance is, however, noteworthy regarding the climate of the temperate zone of the southern hemisphere, namely that it is generally colder, at least on the land, than in corresponding latitudes of the northern hemisphere; so that the limit of cultivation of various plants is in a lower latitude to the south than to the north of the equator. A glacier descends in Chile to the water's edge in about lat.  $46^{\circ}$  S., a latitude corresponding to that of the middle of France in the northern hemisphere. In the Australian state of Victoria, the orange is not cultivated for its fruit except in the extreme north-west in a latitude one or two degrees nearer the equator than the latitude of southernmost Spain. In the South Island of New Zealand, which is in latitudes corresponding to those of northern and central Italy, oats is the principal crop, as it is in Scotland and Ireland.

As the winds are the carriers of heat and cold it follows that the physical configuration of the land, apart from the direct effect of elevation, may indirectly affect temperature. Mountains, by obstructing winds, in some cases afford protection from cold winds, in others prevent certain districts from getting the benefit of warm ones. Temperature is also greatly modified by evaporation and condensation of water vapour, evaporation always tending to bring about a lowering and condensation a rise of temperature.<sup>1</sup> Heat is lost during the night by radiation, and since there is greatest loss of heat in this way where the atmosphere is dry, clear, and rare, there are great extremes of heat by day and cold by night in the interior of continents, especially at high elevations. Low temperatures prevail at high altitudes, but it is to be remembered that these low temperatures are those of the air. There is no diminution, but the reverse, in the strength of rays of the sun on any body directly exposed to them.

It is important to be clear as to the meaning of the diminution of mean temperature with altitude. This is not a phenomenon observable equally at all times of the day and year. A statement as to the rate of that diminution, usually given as equal to about 1° F. for every 300 feet of ascent,<sup>2</sup> expresses the result of averaging differences of temperature in a vertical column of air or in adjacent vertical columns, at different times and in different situations, and in a great many cases it is of much more practical importance to observe that at certain times in certain situations the difference is the other way, the lower temperatures at the bottom, the higher on the upper slopes or even on mountain tops. This will be understood when it is borne in mind that various causes are at work affecting air temperatures. First it should be noted that the air is heated principally not by the direct rays of the sun, but indirectly through the warming of the surface of the earth which then imparts its heat in various ways to the air above. Naturally, therefore, when the surface of the earth is warm, the air is all the warmer the nearer it is to the surface, and this difference is all the greater on account of what occurs in connection with one of the modes of conveying the heat from the ground to the higher strata of the air, namely, by means of convection currents. The air nearest the ground expands in consequence of its greater heat and so becomes relatively light and rises. But as it rises it becomes subjected to less pressure and expands still more, and this expansion is accompanied

<sup>1</sup> The conversion of water into vapour, like the conversion of ice or any other solid into the liquid state, involves the expenditure of heat. That is, heat (in the scientific sense of the term) is used in the conversion, and is not available for raising or maintaining temperature. Meanwhile, of course, temperature may be maintained, and even raised, by external supplies of heat (as from the sun, or a fire).

<sup>2</sup> The rate is less in winter or at night, more in summer or by day.

by an instantaneous lowering of temperature permeating the whole mass. As long as the air rises and there is no condensation of the water-vapour in it into cloud, rain, snow or any other form of water, this cooling goes on at the rate of  $1^{\circ}$  F. for every 180 feet of ascent, a figure which does not express an average but states a fact observed with every rise of air, whether by day or night, in summer or in winter. The rate of cooling, however, is checked when any condensation takes place. But if the heating of the air above takes place from the ground upwards, so also in a large measure does the cooling at night. At night indeed every part of a column of air loses heat by radiation upwards into space, and the higher strata lose heat in this way most rapidly on account of the greater rarity and frequently also the greater dryness of the atmosphere. But the ground loses heat in this way, above all on clear nights, much more rapidly than any part of the air column, and that brings about a more rapid cooling of the air near the ground. The adjacent stratum is cooled by actual contact. The strata immediately above that are cooled by a more rapid radiation of heat downwards to the ground than upwards into space. The result is that, at the coldest part of a summer night, there is a regular increase of temperature from the ground upwards, a so-called inversion of temperature, at least up to the height of more than 2,000 feet above the ground, whereas the diminution of temperature in the same direction at the hottest period of a summer day may be equal to about  $2^{\circ}$  F. for every 300 feet of ascent, or double the average diminution (*cf.* page 26). This inversion of temperature is important in cultivation as it gives rise to the 'frost pockets', mentioned below, so well known to gardeners. Indeed 'micro-climates' may occur even within the area of an ordinary garden which profoundly influence the growth of plants.

From this account it will be understood that the lowering even of the mean temperature with altitude will differ according to the nature of the superficial configuration. Isolated peaks, exposed on account of their isolation to ascending winds from all directions, will show a much more rapid rate of diminution than mountainous country in which a large extent of the solid crust is raised to a high altitude. Where we have an extensive high level tableland, or even high valleys out of reach of ascending winds, air several thousands of feet above sea-level may be as near the ground, that is, as near the heating surface, as air above a plain only a few feet above sea-level, and the high ground in this case will be more intensely heated than the low ground by sunrays falling at the same angle on both. In such a case the only circumstances that bring about a lower mean temperature at the higher latitude are the greater rarity and generally also the greater dryness of the atmosphere. These conditions prevent the air from taking up heat as rapidly from the ground by day

and favour a more rapid cooling by night. The total lowering of the mean temperature, however, is reduced to a minimum. Hence it is that it is possible to cultivate wheat in western Canada in the same latitude as Snowdon at as great a height as the top of Snowdon. At Banff, Alberta, at the height of about 4,600 feet, considerably higher than the top of Ben Nevis, the ordinary English garden flowers such as larkspurs, campanulas, sweet-williams, stocks, pansies, and marigolds flourish even in September, and at the same season at Lake Louise, about 5,700 feet above sea-level, eschscholtzias, asters, and other flowers bloom freely.

The facts just mentioned cannot but suggest that it is difficult to attach any clear meaning to isothermal lines drawn on maps representing land with varied physical configuration, based on observed mean temperatures reduced by a common multiplier to so-called sea-level temperatures, and at any rate will serve to bring home to everyone that in economic geography we have to do not with sea-level temperatures but with the temperatures actually observed, a point emphasised by the late Professor Herbertson in his well-known paper on 'The Thermal Regions of the Globe.'<sup>1</sup> The isothermal lines drawn over the sea on two of his maps serve to indicate the great differences of temperature on different coasts in the same latitudes. The map showing, for different regions, the number of months with a mean temperature over 50° F., indicates how the temperature requirements of vegetation suited to the temperate zone are met, but it must be kept in mind that it does so only very broadly. It is not on mean temperatures even as actually observed that vegetation depends, but upon the actual temperatures experienced within a range that differs for different plants.

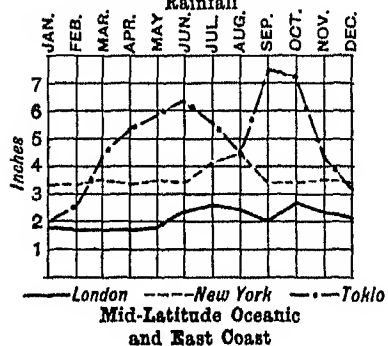
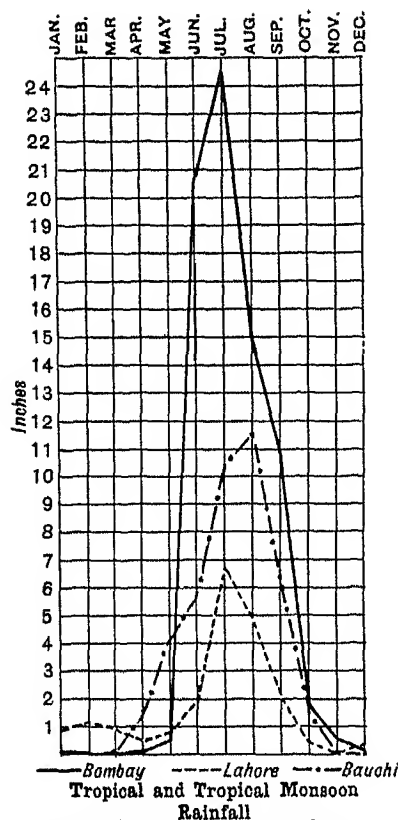
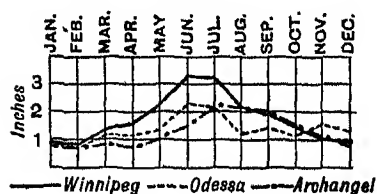
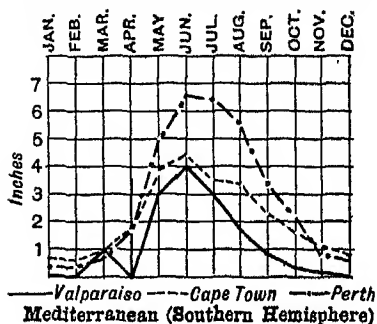
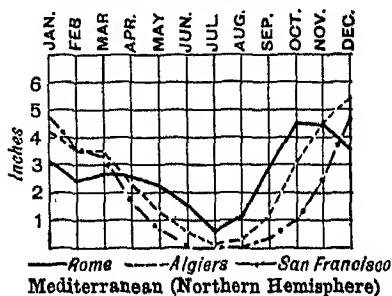
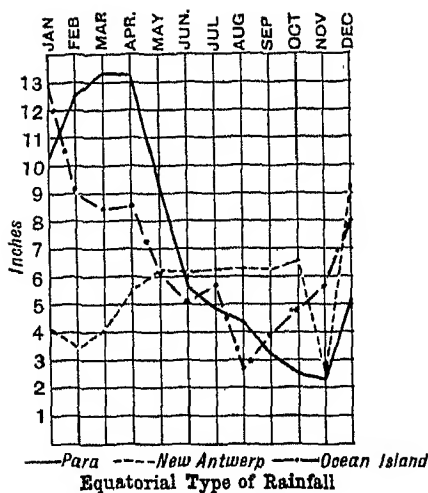
Differences in the range of temperature which different plants will stand make it important to observe the conditions in which exceptionally low temperatures are liable to occur on low grounds as compared with higher slopes. As heated air expands and rises so cold air contracts and sinks. In calm weather the air on mountain sides gets cooled by night more rapidly than on the valley bottoms. The radiation upwards is more rapid on account of the greater rarity of the air, and it starts from a lower temperature than at the valley bottom. Hence the air on the slopes becomes so heavy that it flows down the mountain or hill sides to the valley bottom, and there accumulates if there is no adequate outlet for it. Hence it is that, for example, in the choosing of sites for orchards in regions subject to low temperatures, the lie of the ground must be carefully studied. One must see that there is good air drainage, a free way of escape for descending cold air. Above all, one must avoid 'frost-pockets' or hollows in which cold air might accumulate like water in a lake. Where mountain valleys, in parts of the world with severe winters,

<sup>1</sup> *Geographical Journal*, vol. xl, pp. 518-29.

are shut off from the prevailing winds, the mean winter temperature is lower in the valley bottoms than higher up, and the celebrated Austrian meteorologist and climatologist, Hann, pointed out that in such valleys in the Alps the human settlements for that reason are found on the hill sides, not in the lower parts of the valleys. For the same reason, in part of the Appalachian mountains cultivation is mainly confined to what is known as the thermal belt, high enough up to escape the extreme rigours of winter. It is on the slopes of the hills, not in the valley bottoms, that wheat is grown round Yakutsk and in the upper Angara. In upland pastures sheep frequent the higher grounds at night.

As the great source of **moisture** is the ocean, for the most part the farther inland a region lies the less chance has it of receiving an ample rainfall, unless there are special conditions favourable to the condensation of water-vapour. Water-vapour is condensed through the more or less rapid lowering of the temperature, and one of the most frequently operative causes in bringing about that reduction of temperature is the presence of mountains, obstructing moisture-laden winds, and thus forcing them to ascend and become cooled by expansion. Consequently, regions on the maritime side of mountains often have sufficient rainfall when those on the other side have not. In the tropics there is generally a more marked distinction between rainy and dry seasons than in most parts of the temperate zone. This distinction is most marked of all in the monsoon regions, in which the winter winds are naturally for the most part dry winds, whereas those of the summer months come heavily charged with moisture and bring about a very high rainfall in the parts more directly exposed to them. In these regions accordingly we have the combination of heat and moisture specially favourable to vegetation, and this characteristic is particularly noticeable in the parts of the monsoon areas belonging to the temperate zone, which are in consequence greatly more productive than regions in the same latitudes elsewhere.

The distribution of rainfall throughout the year is illustrated by the diagrams on the next page. In studying maps of seasonal rainfall it should be kept in mind that seasons of heavy rain are also seasons of flood, and that even the normal floods of many regions with a high seasonal rainfall add greatly to the cost of road maintenance, and may render roads useless for long-distance travelling by making the dry-season fords impracticable. With the diagram illustrating the monsoon type of rainfall may be compared in the first place those for places in the trade-wind belt. The curves in the diagram of places on the east side of continents in that belt are all typical. During the summer months the areas of low pressure which are then found in the interior of continents have the effect of strengthening the trade-winds that tend to blow on the



← Mid-Latitude  
Continental and  
Cold Temperate



east side, which accounts for the marked preponderance of summer rain indicated by the diagram. On the east side of such regions accordingly we have a repetition of the combination met with in the monsoon areas. The rainfall curves in the diagram for places in the trade-wind belt on the west side of continents illustrate the variety of effects due to physical configuration and outline rather than the characteristic rainfall distribution of those regions. In those regions it must be remembered that the tendency for the winds to blow away from the land is partly counteracted during the summer by the areas of low pressure in the interior tending to set up an indraught from the west. That indraught is, however, mostly feeble, and the rainfall is consequently so scanty, except in very low latitudes, that those coasts are almost unpeopled, one consequence of which is that there are no rainfall stations to furnish typical curves.

The foregoing account of climatic conditions has been written in terms of what must now be called the old meteorology. The newer concept pays less attention to pressure and winds and considers rather the movement of air-masses of varying characteristics. The air-masses may meet along fronts and such fronts are marked by atmospheric disturbances. In particular the polar front marks the outer limit of the mass of cold heavy air over the polar regions. What has been called the intertropical front, where the air-masses associated with the north-east and south-east trades meet, is now referred to rather as a zone of convergence.

Enough has been said to indicate that climatic conditions vary widely from one part of the world to another not only in the amount and season of rainfall, the degree and degree of variability of temperature, but also in many other ways. At the same time identical or almost identical climatic conditions recur in several parts of the world—it may be in equatorial Africa, South America and the East Indies or it may be (with the seasons reversed) in the South Island of New Zealand and in Scotland. The important conception of 'major climatic regions' was introduced to British geographers by the late Professor A. J. Herbertson of Oxford. His regions were based on conditions both of temperature and rainfall. The Herbertsonian regions, or modifications of them, are widely used, though in America greater use is made of the climatic regions devised by the German climatologist, W. Köppen. Köppen's regions are defined with greater rigidity and delimited by arbitrarily chosen temperature limits which sometimes have little corresponding precision on the ground. Another mathematically precise classification introducing the idea of 'precipitation efficiency' rather than actual rainfall has been introduced by the American climatologist, Thorntwaite. On the other hand, the American ecologist, F. E. Clements, has stressed the importance of plants as indices of the

whole complex of significant climatic factors so that the observed natural vegetation becomes the best indication of a climatic region.

The importance of the concept of climatic regions in commercial geography is in the applicability of lessons learnt in one part of a given region to all other areas having an identical climate. The climatic conditions of parts of Canada are repeated exactly in Russia, and so lessons learnt by scientific experiment in the one area can be applied in the other. If the Canadians are very successful in breeding a new type of wheat which will ripen farther north and with a shorter summer than existing varieties, the results of these experiments are immediately of great value to the Russians. On the other hand, serious mistakes have often been made in the past in trying to transfer customs or procedure from one part of the world to another where they are not suitable. Thus some of the early English settlers in Ceylon saw no reason why they could not grow the crops which they had grown in England, so they took with them oats and barley and wheat and tried to grow them. When the Pilgrim Fathers went from some of the country districts of England and settled in New England they cleared the forests and built for themselves homes and cultivated the ground believing that they had the same soil and climatic conditions as they had left behind them in England. There are many areas where they settled where the soil was very poor, and to-day much of the land that they so laboriously cleared is being abandoned; it is not good enough, and really has never been good enough, for cultivation.

Many important commercial products can only be produced in one type of climate. The rubber-tree (*Hevea*) is a native of the climatic region of the Amazon basin of South America where it is always hot and always wet; the rubber-tree cannot be grown where there is a long, dry season or where there is a cold season, but it can be grown in all those parts of the world where the climatic conditions are the same as in its own home area. Indeed, nearly all the natural rubber of commerce comes to-day from gigantic plantations in Malaya, Indonesia, and Ceylon. Plantations were started near Calcutta, but a long dry season there makes the cultivation of *Hevea* impossible.

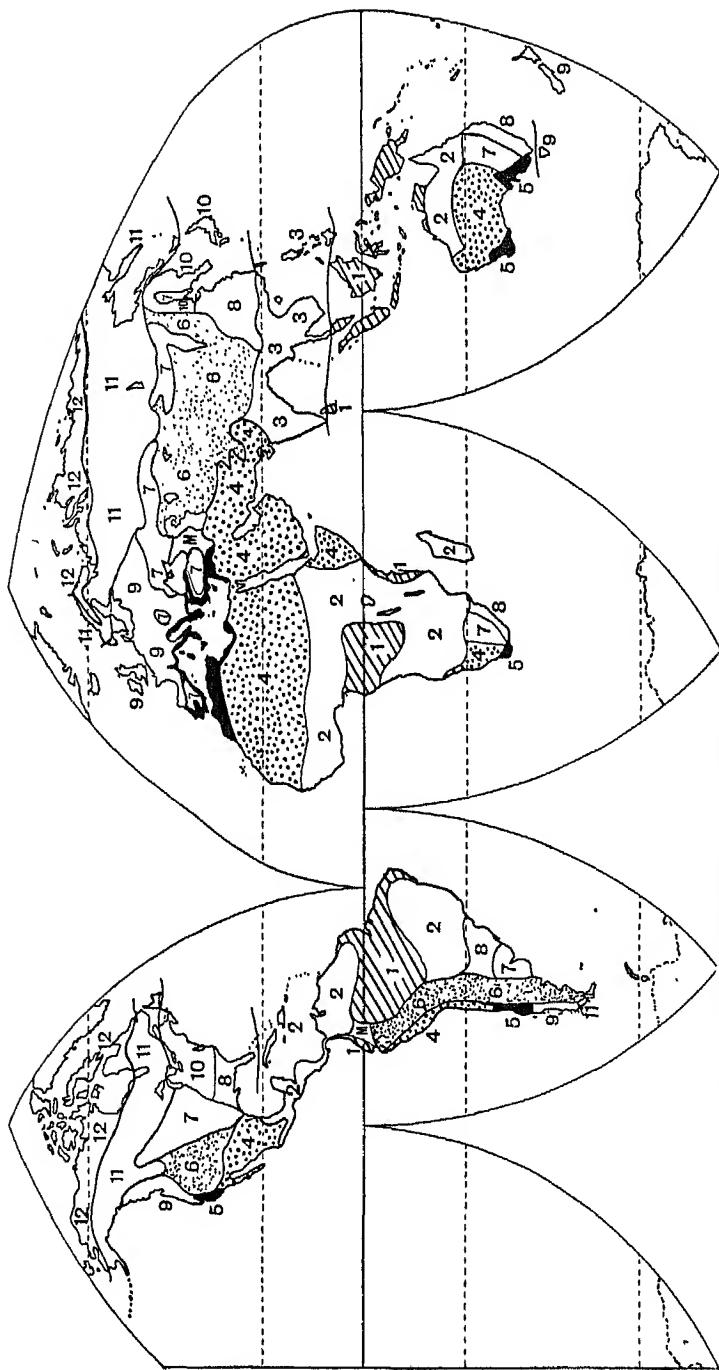
#### (a) CLIMATIC REGIONS OF LOW LATITUDES

**The Equatorial Regions.**—The Equatorial Climate (Köppen's AA'r) is found in a belt on either side of the equator, extending roughly between 5° north and 5° south of this line. The characteristic vegetation is tall, evergreen forest where it is always wet and always hot so that the forests are never leafless. It might be called also the climate of the hot, wet *selvas* (using a local name for the Amazon forests). The temperature is high all the year; there is

very little variation between the hottest month and the coolest month, and there is usually quite a small difference between day and night. The average for the year is about 78° or 80° F., and the range between the hottest and coldest month is usually less than 5°. Although the atmosphere is always hot and steamy and the temperature is uniformly high, the thermometer very rarely rises above 100° F. and frequently does not rise above 90°; on the other hand, it does not as a rule fall much below 70°. In the interior of the great forests there is little movement of the air, the climate is very tiring, but in situations near the sea or on islands it is often very pleasant, for the land and sea breezes give a welcome movement of the air—a cooling sea breeze by day and a land breeze by night. The rain falls at all seasons of the year and there is no dry season except in relative amount. In the early part of the day bright sunshine causes much evaporation and an upward current in the atmosphere; the ascending moisture-laden air becomes cooled and clouds form during the afternoon. The convectional rain which follows is often accompanied by thunder and falls in torrential downpours, usually of short duration. By the evening the sky is clear again. There are usually two seasons in the year which are wetter than the rest; in most cases the rains are at their maximum a short while after the period when the sun is shining vertically. Typical of the equatorial lands is the Belt of Calms or Doldrums where there is no marked wind or wind direction. Island stations have light and variable breezes but some regions near the equator are influenced by the trade-winds or monsoon-winds which are typically developed farther to the north or farther to the south. The equatorial region is nearly everywhere one of heavy rainfall, about 80 inches of rain a year being typical. There are three main areas: the Amazon basin of South America; the Congo basin of Central Africa; the islands of South-Eastern Asia and the neighbouring parts of the mainland, including Malaya.

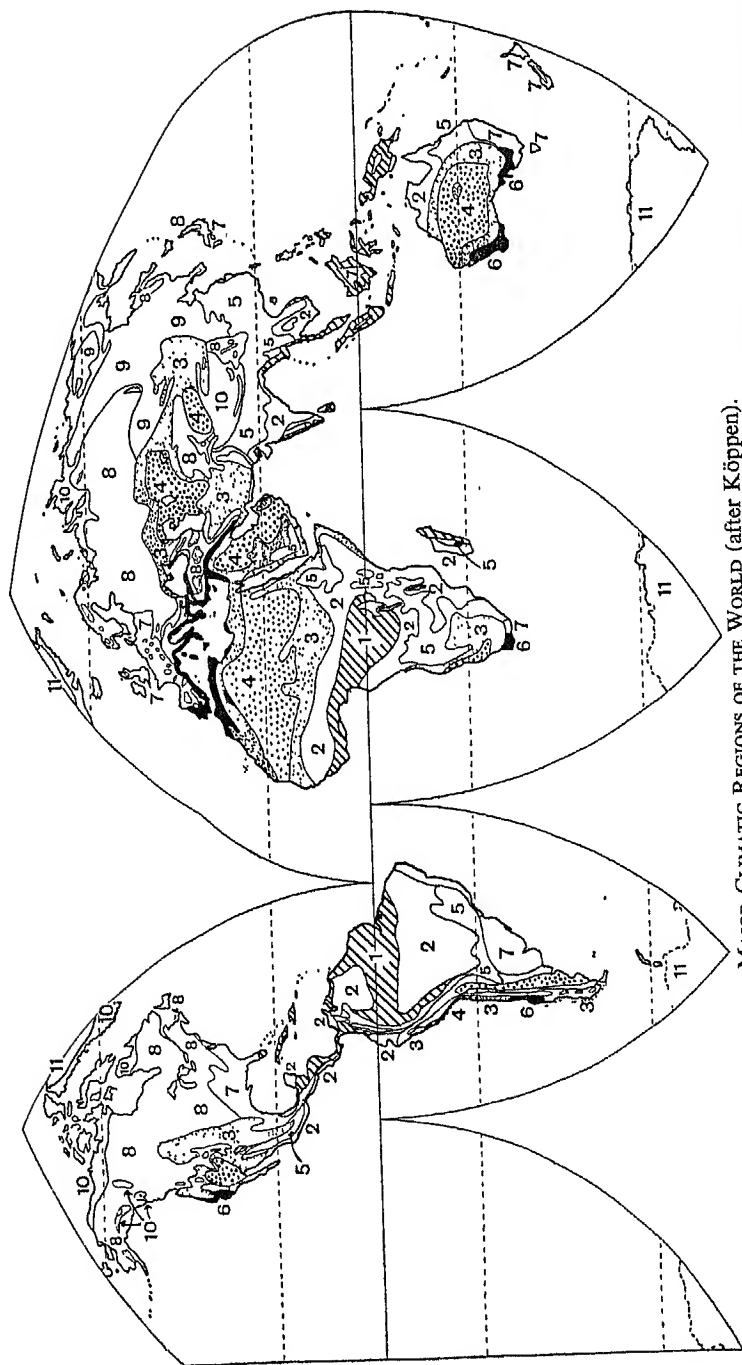
In high plateaus near the equator the temperature is very much lower and so the 'Ecuador type' of climate is found, typically on the high plateau of Ecuador at an elevation of 8,000 to 10,000 feet. Here the average temperature is only 55°, and this has been described as the 'land of eternal spring.'

There is a fierce struggle in the forest, not for moisture of which there is an abundance, but for air and light. Giant trees, nearly all having tall unbranched bolls with a crown of leaves at the top, form a close mass often so thick that little sunlight reaches the ground. Many of the trees are of hard-wooded species and there are two major difficulties in exploiting these forests. One is the great variety of trees, so that the extraction of one or more particular types of timber is extremely difficult. The other is the character of the timber itself—usually hard and costly to work



MAJOR CLIMATIC REGIONS OF THE WORLD (after Herbertson, modified by Stamp).

- |   |  |   |   |   |  |
|---|--|---|---|---|--|
| Climatic Regions<br>of Low Lat-<br>itudes | 1. Equatorial.<br>2. Tropical.<br>3. Tropical Monsoon.<br>4. Hot Desert and Semi-<br>Desert. | Climatic Regions<br>of Middle Lat-<br>itudes. | 5. Mediterranean.<br>6. Temperate Desert and<br>Dry Land.<br>7. Mid-Latitude Grassland.<br>8. East Coast Margins. | Climatic Regions<br>of High Lat-<br>itudes. | 9. Deciduous Forest.<br>10. East Coast Margins.<br>11. Coniferous Forest<br>12. Tundra |
|---|--|---|---|---|--|



MAJOR CLIMATIC REGIONS OF THE WORLD (after Köppen).

A. Tropical Rain-Climates {	1. Hot Wet Forest Climate.	2. Periodically Dry Climates {	Savanna Climate.	B. Dry Climates {	3. Steppe Climate.	4. Desert Climate.	C. Warm Temperate Rain Climates.	5. Warm Winter Dry Climate.	6. Warm Summer Dry Climate.	7. Cool Temperate Climate.	D. Boreal Climates {	8. Damp Cold Winter.	9. Dry Cold Winter.	E. Snow Climates {	10. Tundra Climate.	11. Frost Climate.

though often forming magnificent 'cabinet' wood. Some towns such as Manaos in the heart of the equatorial forests of South America actually import softer, more easily worked, building timber from the timbered regions of North America. The struggle for light and air has resulted in the existence of large numbers of woody climbers; the trees by which these have climbed may afterwards decay and leave the climber hanging from the branches of neighbouring trees and the coils forming tangled masses on the ground. This is one reason why the equatorial forests are so difficult to penetrate. Many smaller plants, including orchids and ferns, find a foothold in the higher branches of the trees (growing there as 'epiphytes') and thus reach the light. In the denser forests the ground may be almost clear of vegetation except decaying matter, but in open forests there is a luxuriant growth of broad-leaved herbs. In the denser forests the animal life is almost restricted to the treetops and all groups of animals can exhibit members especially adapted to this particular habitat. Where man is concerned the equatorial climate has been well described as a good servant but a bad master. In the dense forests of South America and much of the Congo the climate is still the master; and the forests are sparsely inhabited by races backward both physically and mentally. On the other hand, the Malays and the Javanese enjoy a life of comparatively high culture. The white man has made the equatorial climate his servant, particularly in Malaya, Ceylon, and the East Indies. The forests there have given place to plantations of rubber, oil-palm, tea, and coffee. For the white man, too, these are far from being the unhealthiest or most uncomfortable parts of the world. The great danger is the absence of variation in the climate.

**The Tropical Regions and the Tropical Monsoon Regions** (Köppen's Awg).—The word 'tropical' is commonly used in such a loose way that it conveys little more than the idea of heat, but geographers have assigned a more precise meaning to the word tropical as applied to the tropical climate. The tropical and tropical monsoon climates are found typically within the Tropics on either side of the equatorial belt—that is, beyond 5° N. or S. of the equator. In contrast with the equatorial regions there is a marked difference between the temperatures of the hot and cool seasons of the year. Near the equatorial belt or in maritime situations where the rainfall is heavy, the difference of temperature may be small, but in other parts there is frequently as much as 30° or 40° between the hottest and the coldest months. The difference between day and night temperatures is correspondingly large.

The tropical regions lie between the equatorial forests on the one side and the hot deserts on the other. From the point of view of rainfall there is a gradation from 80 inches a year or more on

the forest edge to 15 inches on the other edge; at some of the wettest stations in the tropical belt the rainfall may be as much as 200 inches a year. There is, however, a distinctly dry and distinctly wet season, and it is usually possible to distinguish between (a) a cool dry season followed by (b) a hot dry season, when the land becomes greatly heated and the highest temperatures are recorded, and (c) the rainy season.

With the coming of the rain begins a lowering of temperature, but the rain comes in the hot season of the year, while the cooler months are practically rainless. This season of intensive rainfall favours the growth of grass, but where there is sufficient moisture to give a constant underground supply trees also flourish. Thus in tropical and tropical monsoon lands four belts of vegetation may be distinguished: (a) Near the equatorial belt, provided the rainfall is sufficiently heavy, there is forest differing but little from that of the equatorial belt. (b) Where the rainfall drops below about 60 or 80 inches this passes into a forest in which the trees are deciduous, losing their leaves or having a resting period during the heat of the year. The forests of Burma and parts of India famous for their teak, sal, and other timbers belong to this region, as do many of the forests of West Africa. (c) Then comes the characteristic grassland of so much of Africa, the great stretches of grassland with occasional trees, or savanna. In India, where it is too dry for the growth of monsoon forest, its place is taken by rather a scrubby kind of woodland with a limited amount of grass. (d) Towards the desert areas the vegetation becomes poorer and poorer, the trees are replaced by spiny bushes and the grass is found only in sparse tufts.

In the drier parts the reliability of the rainfall from one year to another is a serious matter. Some years the fall is sufficient to ensure good crops, whilst in other years a poor rainfall results in famine conditions.

The animals are of two main groups—(a) the swift-footed, vegetable-eating animals such as the antelope and giraffe that take refuge from their enemies in flight; (b) the carnivores such as the lion and the leopard which prey upon the members of the first group.

Man in the savanna is primarily a hunter; just as the grassland is able to support vast numbers of grass-eating animals, so man is able to rear great herds of cattle and so becomes a pastoralist. The natural grass which flourishes in the savanna may be replaced by the cereal grasses and so man becomes an agriculturist. The more important crops of the tropical regions, like the occupations of man, vary (a) with the amount of rainfall, and (b) with the degree of development. India affords an example of a very densely populated region and Africa or parts of South America of the more sparsely populated tracts.

In areas with more than 80 inches of rain a year rice is the staple food of the people and almost the only crop, as in India. The main danger is not a lack of water but one of flooding; protective works are often necessary to prevent floods.

In areas with between 40 and 80 inches of rain a year rice is again an important food crop, largely replaced by maize in Africa, while sugar and oil-seeds are other important crops.

In areas with between 20 and 40 inches of rain (dry belts) the land is normally covered with scrubland, thorn forest or grassland; different types of millet or Guinea corn are the staple grains of the people as in all the warmer parts of India and in tropical Africa, though in regions such as northern India wheat and barley may be grown as winter crops; in India, indeed, the wheat crop is from a third to a half as large as the rice crop. Sesamum and various oil-seeds are cultivated and cotton is a characteristic crop. There is always the danger that the rain may be less than average and that famine may thereby result.

In the tropical regions cattle are reared in numbers and in Africa form virtually a measure of wealth of individuals or tribes. Unfortunately quantity rather than quality is the criterion adopted. In many parts of Africa the destructive tsetse fly is very much in evidence and limits cattle rearing. Sheep may be important, as they are in India.

**The Hot Desert Regions** (Köppen's BW) lie on the poleward side of the regions with a tropical or tropical monsoon climate. They are confined to high-pressure belts where the currents of air are descending and the winds blow outwards so that there are no moisture-laden winds coming in from the ocean. They are mainly on the western side of the land masses because on the eastern side a certain amount of rain is caused in these latitudes by the trade-winds. In the hot desert regions there are few clouds and the sun pours down with unmitigated force on the unprotected soil, while the absence of cloud also permits rapid radiation of heat and the nights are often very cold. There is thus a big contrast between day and night and between the hot season, when the sun is vertically overhead, and the cold season. There is further little or no rain to exercise a cooling influence on the temperature; many of the deserts are low-lying so that there is not even altitude to temper the heat of summer, with the result that the highest temperatures of the world are recorded in these regions. Thus, El Golea in the Sahara has an average temperature of 93° in July, whereas in January its average is only 39°, about the same as London for the same month. Jacobabad, in Sind (Pakistan), has one of the highest recorded average temperatures in the world for the month of July—98° F. On the margins of the desert nearest the equator the desert proper fades into semi-desert as soon as the rainfall



reaches 9 or 10 inches a year; this in turn passes gradually into the grasslands of tropical regions. On these margins of the deserts such rain as does fall comes mainly in the same season as it does in the tropical lands, that is to say, in the early summer. On the poleward margins, on the other hand, the desert fades gradually into Mediterranean scrubland where the rain comes in winter. Cairo with 1·3 inches of rain a year is an example of this type. The largest deserts occur in the Northern Hemisphere, for the simple reason that the land masses are there broader. The great Sahara stretches almost continuously from the Atlantic to the Red Sea and then eastwards over Asia to the borders of Baluchistan and the great Indian desert. North America has the deserts of the Mexican and United States borders, South America the Peruvian and north Chilean deserts that occupy the area between the Andes and the Pacific Ocean. In South Africa the Kalahari Desert stretches right to the Atlantic Ocean, whilst in Australia a large area has a rainfall of less than 10 inches a year, the great dry heart of the continent.

There are few deserts where absolutely nothing grows; over much larger areas there is some vegetation, often sufficient to support at least some animal life. The plants have various means of storing water; some have very long roots which go down to great depths and so find water, others have special stems and leaves in which water can be stored up, while many are provided with spines and thorns to prevent their being readily eaten by animals. Of special importance are the fertile areas or oases occupying hollows where an underground supply of water comes sufficiently near the surface to be accessible to vegetation. Some oases may consist merely of a clump of trees surrounding a pool or well, where the typical tree is the date-palm, but other and more important oases are areas of several hundred square miles and may support a big population as in the heart of Arabia.

The sparse population of the deserts falls into three groups: (a) the wanderers who move about from place to place, in the old days with camels, or for shorter journeys with mules, and act as carriers of goods from one desert margin to another, or at other times form bands of nomadic robbers; (b) the settled people of the oases who devote themselves to growing grain, rearing cattle, sheep, goats, horses and camels, and the cultivation of such desert plants as the date-palm—to this group belong many of the Arabs; (c) the settled population of miners, attracted by mineral deposits independently of climatic conditions, as for example in the nitrate fields of northern Chile or the goldfields of Western Australia.

In the desert regions some interesting influences of climatic conditions on man can be traced. The desert has often produced people with a philosophical outlook, such as the ancient Egyptians and the Arabs, learned in Mathematics and Astronomy. Over long

periods the inhabitants of oases may live peacefully and happily, but the result of a dry year, or especially a succession of dry years, or the failure of the underground water supply, is to drive the inhabitants abroad in search of other means of sustenance. Many racial migrations due to these factors may be traced in the pages of history; the arrival of the Shepherd Kings in Egypt, the wanderings of Abraham which led him to the Promised Land, the recent migrations in Arabia and the troubled politics of that country, may all be traced to these causes.

On the whole deserts have acted as barriers to civilisation and to the movement of human beings. The Sahara still separates the white and negro races of mankind; through the centuries it has been more difficult to cross than even the open ocean.

#### (b) CLIMATIC REGIONS OF MIDDLE LATITUDES

Outside the tropics there is usually a considerable difference between the western and eastern margins of the great continental masses. On the western margins the Mediterranean type of climate passes inland with decreasing moisture to mid-latitude desert regions, or in certain areas to grasslands, the so-called temperate grasslands which are characteristically found in the interiors of continental masses. On the eastern margins again is another type of climate.

**The Mediterranean Regions (Köppen's CSa).**—One of the most distinctive and best known of all the climatic types is that known as the Mediterranean, which is characteristic of the lands surrounding the Mediterranean Sea. Like the hot deserts which border them on the side nearer the equator, these regions are hot and dry in the summer, with out-blowing winds: in winter, however, they come under the influence of the westerly wind belt and enjoy moist, mild winters. This is the typical winter rain climate, contrasted with the typical summer rain climate of the tropical or tropical monsoon lands, but the Mediterranean regions are outside the tropics and so on an average are cooler. Sunshine is a typical attribute of Mediterranean lands: almost cloudless skies in summer, and even in winter fewer clouds than would be expected.

The Mediterranean climate is restricted to the western sides of the continents, roughly between latitudes 30° and 45°. The largest area is that found round the Mediterranean Sea, while others occur in North America (parts of California), South America (central Chile), South Africa (south-western Cape Province), and Australia (south-west of Western Australia, South Australia, and part of Victoria). Here during the hot summer the trade-winds in all cases are blowing off-shore. A typical Mediterranean climate could not exist on the eastern side of a continent where the trade-

winds blow from the ocean and are moisture-laden. Within the Mediterranean region there is considerable variation in the details of the climate especially round the large Mediterranean Sea. Eastwards the winters tend to be colder, but the coldest month has usually an average temperature of over 40°, whilst in the more typical parts of Mediterranean lands the coldest month has a temperature of over 50°. The summers are both hot and dry with a mean temperature of over 70°, in many areas of over 80°. The rainfall varies but is usually small, between 10 and 40 inches a year in typical cases; on mountains with exposed situations it may be much higher.

The climate does not favour shallow-rooted herbs and grasses which require light showers during the spring and early season when they are growing; it favours, on the other hand, deep-rooted trees and shrubs which are able to withstand the long dry summer. Many of the trees have small leathery leaves or leaves with a coating of wax to retain moisture, others, such as the olive, have leaves covered with fine silky hairs, all of which devices are designed to prevent excessive loss of moisture through transpiration in the hot summer. Some of the plants, such as the vine, have exceptionally long roots. In those regions where forests occur, even forest trees are specially protected; the thick bark of the cork-oak of Portugal is an example of this. The dry summer conditions of Mediterranean lands are ideal for the ripening of fruit; the typical ones are the citrus fruits (oranges, lemons, and grapefruit), together with a great variety of fruits from trees which lose their leaves in the winter, such as peach, pear, apricot, and apple as well as the olive, almond, fig, mulberry, and vine. Of grain certain types of wheat and barley will grow well, having been adapted by man to the climatic conditions. Deficiency of rainfall is often a serious drawback, and so irrigation has played a large part in many Mediterranean regions. The Mediterranean lands have harboured many of the great civilisations of the world, Greece and Rome, Crete and Carthage.

**The Mid-latitude Desert Regions (Köppen's BWk).**—The middle latitude deserts cover enormous areas in the heart of the land mass of Eurasia and considerable tracts of the heart of North America, but in South America they are represented only by the Patagonian Desert. In the Northern Hemisphere they occupy flat areas cut off from the ocean by mountain barriers and by distance. In general the mid-latitude deserts are characterised by wide ranges of temperature and a very low rainfall. Generally, too, they form large areas of high pressure with great masses of cold air in winter and areas of low pressure with in-blowing winds in summer. The scanty rainfall occurs mainly in the summer except in those regions which border the Mediterranean countries—*e.g.* Iran.

Elevation and latitude permit of a subdivision of mid-latitude

deserts into several types: (a) The *Tibet type* occurs on the high plateaus of Central Asia, over 11,000 feet, and in Bolivia in South America, again over 11,000 feet. Many parts of the Bolivian plateau are almost too well watered to be described as desert. (b) The *Iran type*, characterised by the enclosed plateau of Iran or Persia, forms a transition to the hot desert type. Similar areas occur in North America round Salt Lake City. (c) The *Gobi or Mongolian type* occurs at lower elevations farther away from the equator.

**Mid-latitude Grassland Regions** (Köppen's BSk).—The mid-latitude grassland regions are also called the Temperate Grasslands or the Temperate Continental Regions, but the word 'temperate' is an unfortunate one because it is in these regions that great contrasts are found between summer and winter.

There are great tracts in the heart of the land mass of North America and the land mass of Eurasia which are far removed from the moderating influence of the sea. There are no cooling sea-breezes to counteract the extreme heat of summer, nor are there warm ocean currents and pleasant westerly winds to mitigate the extreme cold of winter. When the land becomes heated in spring, low-pressure areas form and air-masses from the ocean come sufficiently laden with moisture to bring a moderate rainfall. This rainfall comes mainly in the spring and summer, and affords conditions more suitable to grass than to trees. So in these regions are found the great mid-latitude grasslands of the world—the Prairies of North America, the Steppes of southern Europe and southern Siberia. The winters are very long and very severe, the summers short but hot. Average temperatures below 0° F. are common in winter, but the three hottest months usually have temperatures over 60° and frequently over 70°. In the Southern Hemisphere the land masses are so much narrower that the extreme continental type does not occur. In South America, however, the Pampas, cut off by the high Andes from the westerly winds of the south Pacific, enjoy a comparable though much more moderate climate. In South Africa grassland is found on the surface of the lofty South African plateau. Here temperatures are much higher, snow being a rarity, and the existence of the grasslands is due largely to elevation. The Murray-Darling basin in Australia has also a modified continental grassland climate.

The grass is usually lower and less coarse than in the tropical grasslands, and the rolling plains are usually treeless. The contrast between the tender green of the spring, the brown, dried-up wastes of late summer, and the boundless sheet of snow in winter is characteristic of these regions of the Northern Hemisphere. The animals, as in the Tropical Grasslands, are divided into grass-eaters, swift of foot to escape from their enemies, and the carnivores, amongst which man must really be classed.

Primitive man, as a native of the grasslands, is primarily a hunter, as were the Red Indians of the Prairies. The second stage in human development comes with the domestication of such animals as the sheep and goat, the ox and the horse. Pastoral industries become of supreme importance, and man is nomadic, wandering about with his flocks and herds in search of fresh pastures. Droughts and a consequent shortage of pasture have repeatedly led, throughout history, to great movements of these nomadic peoples and raids on the settled population of surrounding lands. It is interesting to note that in the grasslands of the Southern Hemisphere the rearing of sheep is still the first industry, as in Australia, South Africa, and parts of the Argentine. In Canada and Russia the extremes of winter cold are too severe for sheep rearing to be really successful; but a climate so favourable to native grasses has naturally proved favourable to those grasses which man has helped to perfect as the main cereals. These grasslands have become the world's granaries, from which the deficiencies of the industrial countries are made up. Except in South Africa, where maize is the leading cereal, wheat is the crop of first importance in international commerce, followed by barley, oats, and rye. The Prairies, the Pampas, the Veld of South Africa, and the Downland of Australia are already well tilled; but there are still areas to be developed in Soviet Asia. One large area of rather dry grassland remains undeveloped in Mongolia and Manchuria, where Chinese settlement is penetrating gradually along the fringes.

In the grasslands of the Southern Hemisphere, particularly in the Argentine and Uruguay, cattle rearing is important; but there is a distinct tendency for 'bread' to oust 'meat' in the competition for these lands. There are no longer the numerous huge ranches that formerly existed; they are being broken up, and wheat-farming becomes of greater importance. Hence the need for finding new lands for meat production, and the utilisation of the Tropical Grasslands.

**East Coast Margins (Köppen's CW).**—On the eastern side of the land masses in the same latitudes as the Mediterranean lands of the western side there are regions which in temperature are roughly comparable, but where the rainfall comes mainly in summer. These regions are sometimes called the Warm Temperate Regions, but actually again the word 'temperate' is not very descriptive because of the contrasts which are often found between summer and winter. Nor is there one actual type of climate; any one of the particular regions has its own particular features and the areas are (a) the south-eastern states (the cotton lands) of the United States of America, (b) the greater part of China, (c) the south-eastern coastlands of Australia, and (d) of South Africa, and (e) the region of Uruguay and south-eastern Brazil in South America. The south-

eastern United States have a well-distributed moderate rainfall throughout the year, usually with a maximum in the latter part of the summer, when the rain-bearing winds from the ocean flow in towards the low-pressure areas created by the heat in the interior of the continent. The economy of this region is almost entirely bound up in the production of cotton. Central and northern China form part of the great 'Monsoon' region of Asia. The climate differs from that of India and southern China in the coldness of the winters. The rainfall, like that of India, is due to the development of a low-pressure centre, towards which rain-bearing winds from the ocean blow. While India is protected from the cold winds in winter by the Himalayas, China is not so fortunate. Bitterly cold winds blow outwards from the heart of Asia towards the sea throughout most of the winter, bringing the temperature over much of the country down to freezing-point or below. The temperature of Peking is well below freezing in January. Snow falls commonly over the greater part of central and northern China. The summers, however, are both hot and wet, favouring the growth of rice in the south, whereas millet and wheat are the principal grains farther north. Cotton is a leading crop in central China.

In the three continents of the Southern Hemisphere, climatic conditions in the three corresponding regions are somewhat similar (Eastralian type of eastern Australia). The rainfall is well distributed throughout the year, with a summer maximum derived mainly from the trade-winds. But the southern continents are not broad enough to develop large high-pressure centres in winter with cold, out-blowing winds; so the southern regions are much more temperate and have very much milder winters.

Though the natural vegetation varies from country to country high forest is typical: evergreen where the rainfall is sufficiently well distributed. These 'Rain Forests' often exhibit a luxuriance of growth rivalling the equatorial forests, but they are more open. Palms and tree ferns are noteworthy in many areas. In the Gulf States there are both broad-leaved and coniferous forests; from the latter the well-known pitch pine is obtained. China has been very extensively cleared of her natural vegetation, so that it is very difficult to know what was the original forest cover. It should be mentioned that Japan has this type of climate, but in her case the conditions are modified by the position of the country as an archipelago. Sufficient has been said to indicate that these regions are eminently suited to human occupation and development. The valleys of central China, with their rice, cotton, tea, and silk, resemble Monsoon India, or rather exceed it, in their density of population, and include the most densely populated agricultural tracts of the whole world. The density may be upward of 3,000 to the square mile—3,000 people who find their sustenance throughout

the year from the small tract of land afforded by one single square mile. The Gulf States of America are the world's storehouse of cotton with the Maize Belt immediately to the north. The eastern coastal strip of Australia and the warm coastal belt of Natal have both attracted relatively large populations. There are considerable untouched forest areas, however, in the interior of South America—untouched largely because they are swampy and unhealthy.

(c) CLIMATIC REGIONS OF HIGH LATITUDES

**The Cool Temperate Oceanic Regions** (Köppen's Cf).—On the western margins of the continents on the poleward side of Mediterranean lands are regions which lie constantly in the belt of the variable westerly winds—once called the 'Anti-Trades'—and so are under the influence of cool, rain-bearing winds from the ocean the whole year. The two characteristics, small range of temperature between summer and winter and a well-distributed rainfall throughout the year, are at once obvious. The westerly winds do not blow as steadily as the trade-winds, but rather as a succession of eddies and whirls—cyclones and anti-cyclones. Residents in north-western Europe know well the prime importance of the cyclones and anti-cyclones in determining local weather conditions. The largest area having this type of climate is north-western Europe, but British Columbia and the north-western United States form another important area. In the Southern Hemisphere there is a small tract in southern Chile, but no part of Africa lies sufficiently far south, whilst in Australasia only Tasmania and New Zealand (especially the South Island) are typical. In Europe, owing to the drift of warm water which is the continuation of the Gulf Stream, the mild winters characterising this type of climate extend exceptionally far north, there being no land barriers. Conditions are most truly oceanic, that is, the annual range is least, near the western coasts. The winters become steadily colder as one goes eastwards and the summers slightly warmer; so it is customary in Europe to distinguish two subdivisions: (a) the North-West European type, where the average temperature of the coldest month is above freezing—averaging about 40°; (b) the Central European type, where the average temperature of the coldest month is about or below freezing. The rainfall is well distributed throughout the year, but the total amount varies somewhat widely. In the west the mountains are the wettest part, the plains, lying to the east of the mountain ranges, are the driest. Some parts of the British Isles have a rainfall of over 80 inches, as in the Lake District, whilst in the east of England the rainfall drops to little over 20 inches, and is as low as 18 inches in eastern Germany.

This so-called Cool Temperate climate is the natural home of

the Temperate Deciduous Forests. The delicately tissueed leaves are easily injured by winter frosts, and the trees have made the winter their resting period. The very name of the 'fall' of the year, though replaced in England by the less descriptive 'autumn,' is indicative of the marked nature of the phenomenon of leaf fall. Many of the trees of these forests (see p. 236) yield valuable hardwoods, more easily worked than the timbers of equatorial lands, but hard relatively to the softwood timbers of the coniferous forests. Well-known examples are the oak, elm, maple, beech, and birch. Deciduous forests formerly covered most of north-western and central Europe, only interrupted by highlands clothed with evergreen forests or by tracts of moorland and heathland. In North America the mixture of several species of evergreen conifers—usually predominant—gives the forests a somewhat different aspect.

The Cool Temperate climate is the one perhaps most favourable to the development of the human race. It is sufficiently cold to necessitate manual work for the maintaining of bodily warmth in winter, but the summers are never so hot as to make outdoor work unpleasant. Individuals and races seem to develop somewhat more slowly than in tropical climes, but their maturity is more permanent when it is attained. Many of the great industrial countries of the world—Britain, France, Germany, Belgium, and the Netherlands—are situated in this region. Over the greater part of Europe the natural vegetation—the forest—has been cut down to make room for agricultural, pastoral, and industrial development. All the important temperate cereals—wheat, barley, oats, and rye—flourish, at any rate in the drier parts, with maize in the warmer parts. The natural fruits include apples, pears, and a number of others. In the drier regions sheep flourish on the hill-pastures; in the wetter areas the grass grows richly and affords excellent pasture for cattle. The corresponding area in North America is equally suited for development except that much of British Columbia is too mountainous for settlement; and in the deep valleys which separate the mountain ranges the rainfall is often extremely low, some parts getting no more than about 5 inches a year. The mild winters of such places as Vancouver form a pleasant and interesting contrast to the severe winters of the prairies of the heart of Canada. New Zealand—sometimes called the Brighter Britain of the South—forms an interesting example of modern development in the Southern Hemisphere of this type of climate. Only Chile's area, with too great a rainfall and too great an extent of mountainous country, remains undeveloped.

**East Coast Margins (Köppen's DW).**—The eastern margins of the great land masses are far colder in winter than the corresponding western margins. Many of the ports, *e.g.* Montreal and Vladivostok, are ice-bound, though the summers are hotter than in



corresponding latitudes on the west coasts. In the north-eastern United States, the Maritime Provinces and the St. Lawrence valley of Canada, there is a well-distributed rainfall which permits of dairy and arable farming. The corresponding region in Asia, in Manchuria, is a region where the monsoon winds still play their part; so it is the summers which are hot and moist, the winters extremely cold and almost rainless. The land masses of the Southern Hemisphere are not sufficiently broad for this type of climate to be developed.

The forests which normally clothe the two regions of the Northern Hemisphere are of mixed deciduous and coniferous species. The industrial development of those portions of the United States which fall in this tract and of the corresponding parts of Canada is such that they are no longer self-supporting in the matter of food-stuffs. The same development has not yet taken place in the Asiatic regions; indeed, Manchuria is a tract as yet considerably undeveloped. It is obvious that if such a wonderful result may be attained with this type of climate in America, there are vast possibilities in the future for Manchuria.

**The Cold Temperate or Sub-Arctic Regions (Köppen's Dfc).—**Stretching across the Northern Hemisphere as a broad belt is a region whose average temperature is low and where the greater part of the somewhat scanty precipitation is in the form of snow. The natural vegetation is everywhere of the evergreen, coniferous forest type. The really distinguishing feature is the shortness of the summer—insufficiently long for the ripening of cereals. Certainly a little oats and barley are grown, but the region is beyond the economic limit for the cultivation of wheat. In most typical stations only one month rises above 60°, and in many cases the annual average is below 40°. In certain parts near the ocean the range of temperature between summer and winter may be comparatively small, but in the heart of northern Asia there is actually a range of over 100° F.—the greatest in the world. A similar type of climate occurs on mountain ranges throughout Europe and North America. In the Southern Hemisphere only the extreme south of South America and the mountains of New Zealand have a climate sufficiently cold to belong to this type. Where agriculture is so little favoured, natural vegetation remains important. The peculiar structure of the thick-skinned resinous leaves affords adequate protection both against cold and excessive loss of moisture. The finest tree growth is in the warmer southern parts of the sub-Arctic belt; northwards the trees become scattered and smaller or grow but slowly. Thus it takes fifty or sixty years for timber forests to regenerate in the southern margins, but up to two hundred years in the poleward tracts. The Coniferous Forests, or Taïga, are the world's great storehouse of softwood timber, such as pine, fir, and deal. The great belt of forest

stretching across North America is the most important in the world; in Europe there are the forests of Scandinavia and northern Russia, whilst the same type reappears in the hills and mountains of north-western and central Europe. Across the north of Asia, that is in Siberia, the forested areas are largely inaccessible and suffer from the peculiar physical conditions of the land. The great rivers there flow northwards towards the frozen Arctic Ocean, and are themselves frozen throughout the winter. In the spring the upper courses in the warm south melt, whilst the central and lower courses are still ice-bound, with the result that flood-waters spread far and wide over the flat country and turn the 'Taïga' into a vast forested morass. This is reflected in the poor condition of much of the timber.

The sparsely inhabited and less accessible regions of the Coniferous Forests are occupied mainly, before development, by hunters and trappers, for the animals of the northern forests are protected from the cold by thick fur. The main fur-producing tracts are round Hudson Bay in Canada, and in the forest regions of Siberia. In the economy of a civilised world, logging and timber-working industries take first place in these tracts, the production of wood-pulp for paper being not the least important of the uses of coniferous wood. The trees are felled during the winter, dragged over the slippery snow to the water-courses, and floated down the rivers when the snows melt. Accessibility, the presence of streams suitable for floating, and the existence of water-power for saw-mills and pulping-mills are the factors influencing development. By far the most important areas are along the southern fringes of the forest in eastern Canada and in the countries of northern Europe. The influence of the abundance of easily worked wood is seen in the dwellings in the forested regions, from the rough log cabins of the Canadian backwoodsmen, the timber-workers of Finland and northern Russia, to the elaborate wooden chalets of the Swiss mountain forests.

The softwood forests of the smaller countries of Europe have been worked so long that it is difficult to maintain an output of timber and wood-pulp, and certainly almost impossible to increase that output. The only two countries in the world which still have very large reserves of softwood are Canada and the U.S.S.R.

**The Cold Desert or Tundra Regions** (Köppen's E and F).—Within the Arctic Circle the winters are very long and very cold—there are at least some days on which the sun never appears—whilst the summers are very short though warm. Though for certain periods the sun never sets, it never rises far above the horizon. It is too cold for forest; the natural vegetation is moss and lichen, with stunted bushes and small trees near the forest limit. Agriculture is practically impossible, for the ground is frozen for three-quarters of the year. The short, hot summer does, however, some-

times produce an amazingly prolific growth of grass and herbs, which can take advantage of the continuous sunshine of mid-summer; hence the introduction of the name 'Arctic Prairies,' substituted in Canada for the old term 'Barren Lands,' which scarcely does justice to the region. One of the great problems is the permanently frozen sub-soil or permafrost.

Though they are at present almost uninhabited, there seem to be future possibilities for the development of these lands, by the breeding of reindeer or caribou, the natural animal inhabitants, whose flesh and skins have a very definite economic value. Remarkable developments have taken place in Arctic Siberia, and the Russians have established several towns and numerous research stations.

Canadian-United States weather stations have been established in the Arctic archipelago north of the Canadian mainland, where the Tundra lands pass into regions of permanent ice and snow. The plateau of Greenland represents the ultimate development of the extreme type of Cold Desert climate. To this the Antarctic Continent corresponds in the Southern Hemisphere.

#### (d) HIGHLAND REGIONS

In ascending a mountain in the tropics we may be said to pass through, in a very broad and general sense, the main vegetation regions as from the equator polewards. Thus the tropical forests and grasslands give place upwards, very frequently, to a belt of hardwood trees, then to a belt of conifers above which come the alpine pastures which are the counterpart of the arctic pastures just described. There are other differences which are due to the effect of elevation and the consequent rarefaction of the atmosphere. From the point of view of commercial geography it is important to remember that, in a mountainous country, a wider variety of products can be grown than might otherwise be possible; thus on plateau regions in the tropics it is possible to cultivate crops which are otherwise only grown in temperate latitudes. It is possible too, as, for example, on the plateau of Kenya, for white settlement to take place in a region which would otherwise only be suitable for tropical agriculture.

From the causes indicated, population in most parts of the tropics is relatively scanty, and plantation products are mainly grown under the direction of Europeans, or (as in South America) people of European origin. Many of them are products of hill slopes at a greater or less elevation, such sites presenting combinations of soil and climate not to be found elsewhere. While the

temperature is more moderate than on the low grounds, it has all the uniformity characteristic of the tropics, and the slopes of tropical mountains exposed to warm ocean winds enjoy frequent and copious supplies of rain, combined with the advantage of excellent drainage, so that there is little fear of the roots of crops or trees suffering from excess of moisture. The only danger to be guarded against is the possibility of the soil being washed away from the roots at the same time. Indeed, soil-erosion is an ever-present problem.

To Europeans the residence on tropical hills is perhaps more healthy than residence on the low grounds in the same latitudes; but even at the elevation at which coffee is grown, a tropical climate is for them neither entirely healthy nor agreeable. The enervating effects of the heat and moisture render them unfit for work such as they could engage in with comfort in more temperate regions; and notwithstanding the uniformity of the temperature as indicated by the thermometer, the unpleasant sense of heat often alternates with as unpleasant a sense of cold, for the excessive moisture of the atmosphere renders one sensitive to variations of temperature which would scarcely be felt in a drier climate. Humboldt mentions in one place that he and his companions, after a short residence in the torrid zone, found that their senses had become so easily affected by the slightest change of temperature that they could not sleep for the cold on one occasion, even when they discovered, to their astonishment, that the thermometer indicated a temperature equal to 71° F. One of the authors has had similar experiences in Burma and elsewhere; after residence in Rangoon with average temperatures of 80°, night temperatures of 50° in the hills produced the feeling of intense and penetrating cold. An African traveller mentions that on the Senegal one could not expose oneself in the open air after sunset to a slight lowering of temperature without feeling the sensation of decided cold. In central Africa, within ten degrees of the equator, certain Africans keep themselves warm at night by spreading the mats that form their bedding on hollow clay benches heated by fires or glowing charcoal inside, just as is done in China.

In recent years much progress has been made in the study of medical climatology, especially in relation to clothing suitable for intense cold and great heat.

In the temperate zones not only is the temperature on the whole lower than within the tropics, but the variations in temperature are generally greater. As far as the more productive parts of the earth are concerned, it is chiefly in the temperate zones that frosts occur, and water-vapour is precipitated as snow. A snow-covering of longer or shorter duration is a regular annual occurrence in higher latitudes (from about 40° or 46° N., according to the locality), except in those western tracts which are most directly exposed to

the warm winds from the south-west. The deepest snows in cultivated regions are those which occur in the eastern provinces of Canada, where snow lies on the ground to a depth of from 3 to 5 feet. Both snow and frost may be regarded, on the one hand, as interruptions to field labour. Frost is also an interruption to communication by closing navigable rivers, and snow by blocking railways and roads. On the other hand, snow favours timber transport and sledge-travelling, and aeroplanes fitted with skis have overcome some of the difficulties of winter travel. To the native tribes of northern Siberia the aeroplane became a commonplace, even before they had seen a motor-car. In regions of scanty rainfall snow is in many parts of the world extremely important as a natural store of moisture for summer use, especially on mountain slopes, and all the more if forests are present to prevent its removal by gravitation. Elsewhere this store may result in injury by flood. Both snow and frost, moreover, must be recognised as beneficial to the soil, and hence favourable to cultivation. Snow, from being a bad conductor of heat (owing to the large proportion of occluded air), though it tends to preserve rigorous temperatures in the air above, protects the underlying soil against these rigours, and, when the time of melting arrives, saturates the ground with moisture, which brings vegetation rapidly forward. Frost, again, by expanding the water in freezing in every pore of the soil to which it reaches, pulverises the soil to an extreme degree of fineness, and thus enables the coming vegetation to send its rootlets to a great depth, and obtain in consequence all the greater nourishment.

Whether in the tropics or the temperate zone, physical exertion at a high altitude has an injurious influence, though the effect is different in different individuals. What is known as **mountain sickness** affects all who are subjected to hard muscular work above 10,000 feet. On the Oroya railway the time during which riveters were engaged did not average a week each. Many returned on the next train. Animals suffer in the same way. The cause appears to be a diminution in the supply of oxygen, bringing about an increase in the relative pressure of the carbon dioxide in the lungs, and thus a stimulation of the respiratory system. That may, on the other hand, be also the explanation of the favourable influence experienced by some at lower altitudes. Immigrants in Alberta at altitudes between 3,000 and 4,000 feet experience a stimulating effect of that region on their appetites as compared with their original British homes. These beneficial influences are readily explicable by a quickened respiratory action in the case of those whose hearts have the necessary vigour. On the other hand, immigrant settlers on the African plateau at similar heights sometimes find the need of spending holidays at lower elevations.

(e) UNDERGROUND WATER SUPPLIES AND  
TEMPERATURES

In connection with the subject of climate may be considered underground water-circulation and underground temperatures, inasmuch as both of these depend more or less upon climate, and both have to be regarded in some cases as influencing man directly or indirectly in the same way as climatic conditions. Everywhere at a greater or less depth water is present, saturating loose earth to the exclusion of air. The upper surface of this water-saturated layer, the level of which is indicated by the surface of water in wells, is known as the water-table, and its depth below the surface is determined by the amount and mode of precipitation and the rate of evaporation. The amount of water that penetrates to a sufficient depth to feed this layer varies according as the precipitation is in the form of fine or heavy rain, or of snow or hail, and according as the melting of snow or hail takes place when the ground underneath is frozen or not. The circulation of this underground water depends on the porosity of the rock and the slope of the water-bearing strata, which may differ greatly from the surface slope. It is from this underground water that springs are derived. In many places matters dissolved in the upper layers of soil are carried down a short depth and being redeposited, cause the formation of a hard layer known as hard-pan, which the roots of plants do not penetrate at all or only with difficulty. Where the soil lies horizontally this hard-pan may form vast underground sheets, such as those known in the Landes of south-western France as *alios*, in the plains of northern Germany as *ortsteine*.

Surface temperatures penetrate only to a slight depth. Daily variations in temperature cease to be observable at a depth of about three feet, and even the yearly variations are perceptible at most to a depth of 80 to 100 feet. The depth at which they can be detected is least in the tropics, about twenty feet, where the annual range of the surface temperatures is least, and greatest in the interior of the continents, where the corresponding range is widest. Below the level of this layer of constant temperature the temperature underground steadily increases at a rate that varies somewhat with different circumstances, among which the conductivity of the rocks is prominent, but is calculated to be on the average about 1° F. for every 60 feet depth. This is the cause of the variation in the temperature of spring water, that coming from the greatest depth having the highest temperature, and generally, therefore, the greatest abundance and variety of mineral content. Most medicinal springs are hot springs. The result of the small depth of the layer of constant temperature in the tropics is that spring water there is never refreshingly cool but always at temperatures of from 68° to 72° F.

On the other hand, in Iceland, where there are low equable temperatures and there is consequently a layer of constant temperature near the freezing-point close to the surface, the spring waters are so cold that instead of being allowed to irrigate the fields they have to be carefully led away from them, as their effect would be disastrous. The increase of temperature with depth below the surface has a great effect in mining operations and in tunnelling under high mountains. Men cannot work for any considerable time in dry air when the temperature is above  $120^{\circ}$  F., or in moist air when it is above  $105^{\circ}$  F., or even less. Now at Edinburgh a temperature of  $105^{\circ}$  might be expected at a depth of less than 3,500 feet, one of  $120^{\circ}$  at about 4,350 feet. This latter depth is one that is commonly attained by many mine workings, and there are mines over 7,600 feet in depth in South Africa, but it is only by the most careful ventilation that the working of such mines is practicable and a high mortality prevented. In the moist air of the Alpine tunnels great difficulty was met with in carrying on the work even at temperatures of  $90^{\circ}$  F., and the piercing of the Simplon tunnel would have been impracticable but for the cooling due to the expansion of the compressed air which was used to drive the boring tools.

## II. THE SOIL AND ITS TREATMENT

The soil exercises an influence on vegetation in various ways. In the first place, it supplies a portion of the food of plants. It supplies also substances which may not be themselves converted to any great extent into vegetable tissue, but which serve to carry about the food-stuffs from one part of the plant to another, or to effect the necessary changes in these food-stuffs, from whatever source they may be derived. And, thirdly, the nature of the soil affects the life of the plant by the effect it has upon the temperature of the roots, or other parts of the plant embedded in the ground; for some soils are more readily heated than others, and more readily give up their heat to bodies in contact with them.

Soils differ from one another in two classes of characters, physical and chemical, both of which are of importance to the vegetation belonging to them. Physically, soils differ from one another in the condition of their particles. They may be coarse or fine, porous or compact and tenacious. Other things being equal, the fine—loam or silt—soils are more fertile—that is, supply food more plentifully to the vegetation living upon them—than the coarse; for all the food which plants derive from the soil enters the small rootlets dissolved in moisture, and the finer the earthy particles the more easily are the necessary substances dissolved. This is one reason why the soil of deltas is almost invariably remarkable for its fertility,

for such soils are made up of the finer sediment carried along by a river. When, however, the mineral particles become so small as to be ultramicroscopic (i.e. clays) the soils take on quite a different character and become tenacious and non-porous.

The advantages or disadvantages of porous soils as compared with those which are compact and tenacious vary according to circumstances. One advantage porous soils nearly always have—that of being light and easily worked by the plough or spade. They are also easily permeated by water, and thus readily permit rain to sink into them, instead of running in great part off the surface, and at the same time favour the rise of moisture from great depths, by the action of capillarity (the action by which liquid diffuses itself through a lump of sugar). But this may be an advantage for certain plants or in certain climates, and a disadvantage for other plants and in other climates. It is a disadvantage to plants that require the retention of a great deal of moisture about their roots; and while it may be, and generally is, an advantage in climates in which showers are frequent and the atmosphere moist during the growing season, it is a disadvantage in climates of an opposite character, where it is of importance for the plant life that the moisture in the soil should be long retained within reach of the roots—that is, that it should neither sink away to a great depth, nor rise up too rapidly and quickly evaporate, thus giving the plants the benefit of the moisture for only a short time.

In moist climates porous soils are generally, in virtue of the superior dryness of their superficial layers, more easily warmed than heavy and compact soils, and that not only because water requires a greater amount of heat to raise its temperature to a certain degree than any solid substance, but because of the loss of heat by evaporation. Hence light porous soils are generally described as dry and warm, and those of the opposite kind, like clays, as wet and cold. Soils may be so compact as to prevent the access of air to the roots and hence infertile from that cause.

So great are the natural differences in respect of chemical composition that, to take wheat as an illustration, the soil of one region may yield a crop of 50 or even 70 bushels to the acre, whereas that of another yields, with a climate equally favourable, no more than 12 or 15 bushels, or perhaps even less. The composition of the soil often varies very greatly from local causes within limited areas; but there are, on the other hand, many wide regions noted for being covered with a soil either characteristically rich or characteristically poor. Everywhere, it ought to be mentioned, the soil is due to the crumbling away of solid rock under atmospheric weathering (which varies according to the climate) more or less modified by the vegetable, and even the animal, life that comes to occupy it. Large deltas are generally remarkable for their fertility, not only, as above



indicated, in consequence of their physical nature, but also because they contain ingredients derived from the whole basin of the river by which they are formed, and hence are likely to contain all the constituents which a variety of plants require as food. For a similar reason, great alluvial plains like those of the Ganges and the Po are generally remarkable for their fertility, and so also are the beds of former lakes, such as the basin of the Red River of the North, in the United States and Canada.

Organic matter, or humus, the product of decay of vegetable matter, mixed with earthy (mineral) constituents, renders a soil of great fertility, rich in plant food. A wet soil, however, hinders the intermixture of the vegetable remains with the earthy particles and causes the formation of what is called acid humus, of which peaty soils are the most familiar example. The moisture of such soils is not readily taken in by the plant tissues, and hence those soils are adapted only to a special kind of vegetation of a dry woody habit like heaths. In some places humus is formed very abundantly in tropical forests, where vegetation is continuous and the accumulation of vegetable waste proportionately rapid. But it is not readily formed in all tropical forests. If the climate has long dry spells and the forests are rather open, the falling leaves dry up, get hard and crisp, and are easily broken by the wind, so that their elements are dispersed in the form of gases. To this cause is ascribed, in a great measure, the infertility of a large part of Brazil. Where there is a regular winter accumulation of snow, this covering has, among other important effects, that of burying the fallen vegetable matter and saturating it with moisture so as to favour the formation of vegetable mould. The action of earthworms in promoting the formation of a soil rich in this ingredient, by covering the surface deposits with layers of earth brought up from beneath, has been made a matter of almost universal knowledge by the well-known work of Darwin.<sup>1</sup>

Many lavas or rocks originally poured out from the interior of the earth in a liquid state decompose into a soil of exceeding richness. Soils of this kind form some of the most fertile tracts, not only in Java and Japan, Campania and eastern Sicily, and other

<sup>1</sup> It is singular that the anticipation of Darwin's observation in a book so popular as Gilbert White's *Natural History of Selborne* should, apparently, be so little known, and that Darwin himself should have forgotten White's remark. The passage referred to occurs in Let. LXXVII (edn. of Capt. T. Brown, 1833; Let. XXXV in the edn. of E. T. Bennett, revised by J. E. Harting, 1875), where we read:—'Earthworms, though in appearance a small and despicable link in the chain of Nature, yet, if lost, would make a lamentable chasm. For . . . worms seem to be the great promoters of vegetation . . . by boring, perforating, and loosening the soil, and rendering it pervious to rains and the fibres of plants, by drawing straws and stalks of leaves into it; and, most of all, by throwing up such infinite numbers of lumps of earth, called worm-casts, which, being their excrement, is a fine manure for grain and grass.'

regions where there are volcanoes still active, but in many regions where there have been no volcanoes within historic times. Among the latter are soils covering considerable areas in Hungary, and the much more extensive tract which forms a large part of the wheat-growing area of Oregon and Washington in the United States, the tract occupying both sides of the Columbia River, where the soil results from the decomposition of a broad basaltic plateau; also the coffee soils of Sao Paulo in southern Brazil, due to the disintegration of diabase rocks rich in potash and other fertilising ingredients. In some cases, so rapid is the decomposition of lava, that some of the vineyards on the slopes of Mount Vesuvius occupy lava fields which came into existence within the nineteenth century.

Among other soils noted for their fertility occupying extensive areas in different parts of the world may be mentioned the black soil (chernozem or black-earth) of southern Russia and central Asia, the yellow loessic soil of northern China, and the black cotton-soil of the Indian plateau, which last differs from all the others previously mentioned in being very stiff and heavy, and owes a large part of its fertility to its being so peculiarly suited to the character of the climate where it is found, in that it is very retentive of moisture.

The soils known as laterites, from being of a colour and having a porous nature like red bricks (Lat. *later*, a brick), are characteristic of tropical and sub-tropical climates, being due to the rapid decomposition of the rocks under the influence of rapid changes in temperature, and the alternation of wet and dry seasons. They owe their red colour to the presence of iron, and when fully formed iron and alumina remain as the chief constituents. The lime, potash, and magnesia which may have been contained in the rocks from which they are formed all disappear, and in the high temperatures of the tropics even the silica gets dissolved and washed away, frequently being redeposited as a cementing substance in underlying sands. When the process is thus carried out to its full extent such soils are almost worthless, but this takes place only in exposed situations where the rainfall is very high, though the term laterite is freely applied to many red earths in which the solvent action has not gone so far, and which, accordingly, vary in their properties, some being fertile, others not. If the term is applied generally to the red earths of the tropics, then laterites have been estimated to cover 49 per cent. of the area of Africa, 43 per cent. of that of South America, and 18 per cent. of that of Asia. But this estimate includes under the head of laterites the red soil which is found to be particularly favourable to the coffee-tree on the slopes of the mountains of eastern Brazil, south of Rio de Janeiro. In many parts of Africa the infertility which characterises this soil is due rather to its physical than its chemical characters. The solution of the silica has proceeded only so far as to coat the particles

of earth with a thin glaze, giving rise to a soil so porous that the rain runs through it very readily, and as such soil is found in that continent over wide areas to a great depth, in those parts the soil dries up with remarkable rapidity, unless refreshed with frequent showers.

The soil of arid regions is in many cases chemically very rich, so that when water is supplied the ground is exceptionally productive. For this there are two reasons. The soil is largely wind-borne, and being collected from wide areas is likely, as in the case of the soils of river deltas, to possess a great variety of ingredients. Second, such vegetation as does grow naturally in those regions produces an exceptional growth of underground parts, and those parts of a plant are always richest in nitrogen. Hence, though the soil may be comparatively poor in humus because of the scantiness of the vegetation, its nitrogen content is not correspondingly feeble, and may be considerably in excess of that found in humid areas.

In the arid or drier parts of the earth the soil is frequently highly infertile, and even poisonous to vegetation, from the excess of salts found on the surface, due to the fact that the moisture which does penetrate beneath the ground dissolves the salts in the earth, and then, rising up again and evaporating, leaves the salts as an incrustation behind. Vast areas of this description are found in the interior of Asia and south-eastern Europe, of Australia and South America, while smaller tracts of the same nature exist here and there as patches amongst the fertile regions of California and the Canadian Prairies, where they are known as 'alkali spots.' The formation of such salt incrustations is one of the risks attending irrigation.

It will be clear from the above account that soils depend very largely on climatic conditions; indeed, the great soil groups of the world correspond largely with the great climatic regions. This generalisation was first generally appreciated in Russia by Glinka and the many soil scientists or pedologists who followed him. Within a major soil group local variations may depend largely or mainly on the characters of the underlying rocks. This is notably the case in a cool, moist climate such as Britain where many of the soils are 'aclimatic.' Soil science has made much progress in recent years and one method of study widely followed is that of the 'soil profile.' Many soils, traced from the surface downwards, exhibit a surface horizon of 'leaching' (the A horizon), a lower horizon of secondary enrichment (the B horizon), and a lowest horizon of slightly altered parent rock (the C horizon). These three horizons are particularly well seen in the ash-grey soils or podsoils of northern latitudes—soils of the northern coniferous forests, often lacking in fertility owing to the extensive leaching from the surface layers.

**Preservation of the Properties of the Soil.**—However rich a soil may be by nature, sooner or later its fertility will be impaired by cultivation unless means are taken to prevent this deterioration.

The substances that serve as the food of one crop are removed when that crop is carried away and consumed elsewhere, and as the same kind of plant always requires the same kind of food, the fertility of a soil is in general reduced very rapidly when the same crop is grown repeatedly on the same land, and when nothing is done to restore the ingredients that are thus removed. Under a careful system of cultivation two plans are adopted to counteract this tendency of the soil to lose its fertility. One is to vary the crops that are cultivated in succession on the same piece of ground, which spares the land in two ways. First, since different plants withdraw from the soil different substances as food, or at least varying proportions of the same substances, a crop requiring chiefly one kind of food is made to follow a crop which requires chiefly another kind. Secondly, it is not always necessary to remove from the ground the whole of the cultivated plant, and the parts of the plant not required may be returned to the ground, and help to restore to it some of the ingredients required not only by this crop but by crops of other kinds.

Obviously, however, this method is an imperfect one, and the only way to maintain permanently the fertility of the soil is to restore by fertilisers the ingredients that are withdrawn by successive crops. But here it must be noted that the quantity of matter that has thus to be returned to the ground is small in comparison with that which is carried away as produce of the soil, even though the plant-food contained in the manure is generally a small proportion of the bulk of the manure itself. It has been found by experiments made in England in the cultivation of wheat that the use of 200 lb. of a particular kind of manure made a difference of nearly 600 lb. in the weight of grain yielded by an acre of land, as compared with a piece of land, of the same extent and the same natural qualities of soil, that had borne wheat without manure nine times in succession; and this difference, it will be observed, does not take into account the weight of straw and other parts of the crop. The reason of this is, that though all plants derive some of their nourishment from the soil, and the amount of their produce is generally more or less governed by the amount of nourishment obtainable from that source, yet in all cases the chief constituents of plant-food are derived from either air or water.

Small as the total proportion of plant-food derived from the soil is, the constituents of such food are very varied; but the three essentials to plant-growth most likely to be lacking in cultivated soils are nitrogen, phosphoric acid, and potash, and hence manures containing these substances are most important as articles of commerce. All three are contained in animal excrements and in animal refuse of various kinds, and these, accordingly, are generally the most convenient manures to apply to the ground where mixed farming

(part crop-growing and part cattle-feeding) is carried on. It had long been known that leguminous crops such as clover, lucerne, beans, peas, and lentils not merely required no nitrogenous manures but even served to replenish the soil with soluble nitrogen for subsequent crops, but an important stimulus to the cultivation of such crops for use as green manure was given by the discovery in the eighties of last century that this was due to the fact that bacteria present in nodules on their roots and rootlets served as the means of fixing nitrogen derived from the air. The name of commercial fertilisers is given to various compounds, nitrates, phosphates, and potassic salts, or mixtures of these, artificially prepared, containing the above-mentioned ingredients along with others, as well as to natural compounds which are found in deposits of greater or less abundance in various parts of the earth, and are worked as minerals, though they may be to a large extent of vegetable or animal origin. These enter into world trade to the amount of millions of tons annually; in 1956-57 the world's demand for nitrogen compounds amounted to 6½m. tons. This is exclusive of the still larger quantities, at least of nitrogen and phosphorous compounds, that become available as animal excrements after first being employed as feeding stuffs.

Of the artificial fertilisers, the bones of animals variously treated have long been used. Being to a large extent composed of phosphate of lime, they are of great value as manure, not only on account of the phosphoric acid which they contain, but also on account of the nitrogen always present, and also because of the lime itself; for though this last substance is not so important as phosphoric acid as a plant-food, it is often of the highest importance as a manure from the fact that, by bringing about certain chemical changes, it helps to make the constituents of plant-food which are present in the soil available to the vegetation. For, seeing that, as already stated, all the elements which a plant derives from the soil enter the rootlets in a state of solution, no constituent of plant-food is of any use to the plant unless it be first dissolved; and among other uses which lime has as a fertiliser one of the most important is this: that it is one of the best materials that can be employed for neutralising the acidity of the soil and rendering available substances which the plant would otherwise be unable to withdraw from the soil. For use as manure, bones are in some cases merely ground into a coarse meal, in other cases steamed so as to remove most of the nitrogen but to leave a high proportion of phosphorus, and in yet other cases treated for the same purpose with sulphuric acid so as to produce what are known commercially as superphosphates, although in this branch of manufacture mineral phosphates are mainly used. Since 1886 a fine meal or flour obtained by grinding basic slag, which contains from 30 to 35 per cent. of phos-

phate of lime, has become more and more used as a phosphatic manure. For many years there was an enormous trade in the export of Chilean nitrate (sodium nitrate) from the desert regions of northern Chile. The mineral phosphate (guano) derived from the droppings of birds is a product of many tropical islands and mineral phosphates are mined elsewhere. All these mineral fertilisers have severe competitors in the artificial fertilisers produced by the factory. Thus sulphate of ammonia forms a valuable nitrogenous manure, and since the early part of the present century various nitrogen compounds have been made from the air for the same purpose, mainly with the help of the intense heat of the electric furnace.

Notwithstanding the manifest advantages of the adequate use of manure in maintaining the value of the soil, its employment in sufficient quantity to ensure the preservation of a high degree of fertility is far from being general. Manure is, as a rule, but little used, first, where the population is sparse, and, secondly, where the population is poor. Where the population is sparse land is cheap, and the cultivator may find, and usually does find, it more profitable, at least at first, to derive as large crops as he can from the ground without manure, and begin to cultivate new ground when the first shows signs of being exhausted. Moreover, where the population is scanty, there are for obvious reasons fewer opportunities of obtaining animal manure, which in regions possessing a dense population is the kind most readily available. In the United States, the use of manure has gradually spread westwards, following in the wake of cultivation. The eastern states, which were those first cultivated, were in the beginning cultivated without manure, and as these lands became partly exhausted, others farther west became the chief regions of agricultural production; but at the same time, as the population from the development of commerce and industry thickened in the eastern states, the use of manure to restore fertility to the fields of that region became more and more general.

Cultivation on this system, involving the use of a greater and greater extent of land, is known as extensive cultivation, as opposed to intensive cultivation, which consists in putting more into the land to get more out of it; and the furtherance of the latter system—that is, the increasing use of manure—is always a sign of advancing agriculture and industry in general. The great productiveness of wheat in the countries of western Europe is due to the practice of this system.

In India, though the population is dense, manure is still little used; but the principal reason of this is that the employment of manure, besides always involving a certain amount of expense, does not yield its full benefit in the way of increased produce in one or two crops. However desirable it may be to maintain the

tional value. For a river when highest in flood is always most highly charged with fertilising sediment; and so rich is this in the valley of the Nile, for example, that wherever 'red water' can be supplied there is no need for manure. Formerly in the Ganges valley, again, embankments were in few places required to restrain its inundations, for the alluvial silt which it spilled over its banks year by year afforded to the fields a top-dressing of inexhaustible fertility. If one crop were drowned by the flood, the cultivator calculated that his second crop would abundantly requite him. But the most urgent need of water is in those dry seasons when the river floods are deficient, and the policy in India for many years has been the replacement of inundation canals by perennial canals. There are now scarcely any of the old type left. The usual system now, in India as elsewhere, is to build a dam across the river, often in an upper part of its course, and then to lead canals from the artificial lake so created. Branch canals lead from these, and then distributaries, all controlled, conduct the water to the fields. Spare water seeps back gradually into the river course.

In other cases, various more or less costly methods have to be employed to render water available. Water may be raised by buckets from wells or rivers. Large tanks (these may be of concrete, as on the banana plantations of the Canary Islands, and should not be confused with the so-called tanks of India which are small lakes made by damming a stream) may be constructed to store the superfluous waters of one season or period against the deficiencies of another.

In some places the structure of the country is such that when holes are dug in the ground to a certain depth water rises freely to the surface often with great force. Wells so made are called **artesian wells**. Such wells have been sunk in many regions where the rainfall is deficient. Large areas, as of Australia, formerly wholly or nearly barren, have been made more highly productive. Usually, however, artesian water is too highly charged with mineral salts to be suitable for irrigation, but it is excellent for watering stock.

Irrigation water can be much more profitably used in agriculture than an equal quantity of rain. It can be preserved in tanks till the exact period at which it is needed. It is thus kept from sinking into the ground to a great depth, and so becoming lost to vegetation, as happens to much of the rain that falls upon the earth where the soil is highly porous. At the same time it suffers infinitely less loss than generally diffused moisture through evaporation—a matter of peculiar importance in those bright and warm regions where irrigation is specially required. For crops of great value it is even sometimes found of advantage to distribute the water to the fields entirely by underground pipes. By the adoption of this method evaporation is almost wholly prevented. It is often difficult to teach the peasant

cultivator in arid regions that too much moisture can be injurious to his crops: there is actually an optimum quantity which if exceeded results not only in waste of precious water but also in a decrease in production.

It will be seen that though irrigation is almost always costly, the advantages derived from it are correspondingly great. They are chiefly: (1) The supply of water by irrigation is more certain and regular than that by rain even in regions where the rainfall is generally plentiful, and that of itself increases crop production. (2) Irrigation water is often more or less rich in fertilising ingredients; in India, as a general rule, irrigation doubles the weight of crops off the same land. (3) Irrigation by flooding is sometimes of service in washing away noxious constituents from the soil. (4) Irrigation often enables valuable crops to be grown in place of inferior ones. (5) It renders cultivation possible in some cases during the whole period of the year for which the temperature is sufficient. In southern California, as well as in western Arizona, crops may be started at whatever season suits the convenience of the grower, except two months in the year, and this holds true for market-gardens as far north as San Francisco; in some areas five cuts of alfalfa may be taken off the same field in a single season. In Algeria three crops of potatoes may be grown in succession in one season on irrigated land. It naturally follows that the density of population in irrigated regions often reaches a very high point. In the irrigated portion of the Spanish province of Murcia, for example, the density is nearly 1,700 to the square mile, as compared with 147 per square mile for the average of Spain generally.

It is one of the chief advantages of terrace cultivation—that is, the cutting of hill slopes into terraced fields rising step-like above one another—that fields so made are irrigated with great facility. Hence this mode of laying out fields is largely practised in the warmer parts of the world, and in some cases a marvellous amount of labour is spent on them. Describing the ascent from Hodeida to Sana in Yemen, Major-General Haig wrote: 'The whole mountain side, for a height of 6,000 feet, was terraced from top to bottom. The crops had all been removed; only some lines of coffee trees here and there were to be seen, but everywhere above, below, and all around, these endless flights of terrace walls met the eye. One can hardly conceive the enormous amount of labour, toil, and perseverance which these represent. The terrace walls are usually from five to eight feet in height, but towards the top of the mountain they are much higher, being sometimes as much as fifteen and eighteen feet. They are built entirely of rough stone laid without mortar. I reckoned on an average that each wall retains a terrace not more than twice its own height in width. So steep, in fact, is the mountain, that the zigzag continues almost the whole way to the top.' Typical of many



parts of monsoon lands in Ceylon, Java, China, and Japan are the irrigated terraces for rice cultivation.

The extension of irrigation works in many of the drier parts of the world—Egypt, Iraq, India, Turkestan, the United States, Canada, Australia, and South Africa—has been a special feature of modern development. But irrigation after all is confined to limited areas, and many arid or semi-arid areas must rely on what is called **dry farming**. By this is meant the treating of the land in such a way as to conserve the moisture it contains, the essential thing being to prepare the surface in the form of a mulch. This term is applied to any covering of the surface that tends to resist the action of capillarity and protect the moist earth underneath against the direct rays of the sun. Even stones spread thickly over the ground may serve as a mulch, and in the drier parts of the Mediterranean region stony tracts are regularly sown which in a moist, cool climate like that of the British Isles no one would think of cultivating. In gardening operations mulches are made with leaves, manure, straw, and similar materials, which, though very effective as mulches, have the drawback of preventing the continual stirring of the land and consequently the aeration of the ground underneath. But this continual stirring itself provides an excellent mulch in the form of a dry powdery surface soil, and it is by the frequent use of the plough, harrow, and other implements of tillage that dry farming is generally carried on. In loose light soils this treatment is supplemented by the use of an implement known as the sub-surface packer to consolidate the earth underneath the surface and so retard capillary action. Dry farming has long been practised in the drier parts of India, southern Russia, and elsewhere; in particular it is widely followed in the arid regions of the United States, Canada, and Australia. The folly of attempting to farm in some of these arid tracts has been freely demonstrated, and the general tendency has been for the ‘pioneer fringe’ to move back; but the value of dry farming methods is fully appreciated in all regions near the economic margin for farming, notably in South Africa, though the danger of wind storms and of sudden rain storms in promoting soil erosion will be apparent.

### III. LABOUR AND ITS EFFICIENCY IN THE LOCAL PRODUCTION OF COMMODITIES, AND NATURAL FACTORS AFFECTING LABOUR SUPPLY

**Labour.**—The influence on production of what is usually designated labour varies with the quantity required and the quality available to furnish a given amount of product. In such industries as coal-mining the quantity required to produce a certain value is high—more or less two-thirds of the total cost. In the case of

coal in Britain it has been variously estimated at between 64 and 80 per cent. of pithead cost and this throws much light on the relation between wages and price of coal. The National Coal Board's figure for the labour cost in 1957 was slightly less—60 per cent. Before the First World War the average cost of labour in finished articles of engineering was estimated at 45 per cent. of the total, in textile products at only 15 per cent. The quality of human labour cannot always be measured. Where it is measurable, it is by the amount of product per head turned out in a given time, whether without the aid of machinery or in association with machinery of the same type; and it is obvious that a high production per head in any region or industry is what renders possible a large surplus of time or labour for employment in other industries or for leisure, which latter use may be itself contributory to a high rate of production in working hours.

Human labour may be broadly divided into slave, or forced, and free labour, the latter being that which is now generally employed in the production of commercial commodities. There are, however, great diversities in the condition even of free labourers in different parts of the world. One of the most obvious is that of money wages. The highest wages are those paid in 'new' countries such as the United States and Canada, Australia, Uruguay, and the Argentine Republic; the lowest are paid in tropical countries, and in particular in those regions in which there is an exceedingly dense population dependent mainly on agriculture.<sup>1</sup> Wages should never, however, be considered apart from the cost of living.

The highest-paid labour is as a rule also the most efficient, that is, able to produce a greater result within a given time. In an official report published in 1919 [Cmd. 442] on the relative efficiency of Lancashire and Indian operatives in the cotton industry it was stated that the ratio of efficiency was as 2½ to 1. In Cawnpore nine men were still required to work a mule of 800 spindles where, it was said, only three would be necessary in a Lancashire mill. A Lancashire weaver at that time minded four looms by himself, whereas in India 50 per cent. of the weavers would only mind one loom. The limit is now placed not so much by the powers of the operatives as by regulations made either by government or by their own trade unions to prevent their exploitation.

The reason of the difference of efficiency is to be found in various causes. Much is undoubtedly due to difference of race and climate, but much also to difference in food and dwellings and to difference

<sup>1</sup> Thus in Oudh, one of the most densely peopled territories in India, the average monthly wage for an able-bodied agricultural labourer in 1901-3 was 3·0 to 3·7 rupees, or about 4s. to 4s. 11d.; in 1916 about 12 rupees. In Burma, the most sparsely peopled province in proportion to its resources, it was 14·1 to 15·1 rupees, or about 18s. 9d. to 20s. 1d. (*Imp. Gaz. India*, new ed., iii, p. 472). In Burma the rate had increased to about 30 rupees in 1926.

in intelligence, the highest-paid labourers being those who can afford to live in the best houses and eat the most nourishing food. This last consideration has led increasingly to sound social legislation, involving large expenditure, which, however, is probably remunerative. Seeing that all the countries of the world now work more or less for one another, the people of the world generally would benefit by the world-wide spread of such legislation. In other words, what is sometimes considered the unfair advantage accruing to Japan through low labour costs would disappear with an increased standard of living there. (Cf. reference Calcutta jute mills, p. 14.)

But the condition of the labourer also is very inadequately indicated by the difference in the rate of wages, since the wants of the labourer are very greatly affected by different circumstances, and above all by climate. In a region where the winters are severe, the labourer has to spend more in providing himself with adequate protection against the weather by means of good housing, clothing, and fuel than he has to do in a region where the climate is less severe, without being better off in health and comfort than a labourer in the more favoured region. The food required in a temperate climate, and especially one of the colder temperate countries, moreover, is of a much more expensive kind than that suitable to a tropical or warm temperate climate. Even in Japan, which lies in the same latitude as the east of the Mediterranean, and has a much severer climate, the farm labourers live almost entirely on rice, barley, or wheat, beans, peas, and other vegetable food; in summer they wear little more than a cotton garment or two, with straw sandals and wooden clogs for footwear. It is worthy of being pointed out, however, that those parts of the world in which the highest wages are paid are also those in which many of the most important necessities of life are cheap. Cheap land ensures relatively cheap food, which may more than make up for the dearness of manufactured articles to the working-man; and the advantage of high wages is still further increased if the climate is mild, as in Australia.

Even free labour is subject to many restrictions imposed by custom and religion, by government interference, or by the voluntary organisations of the labourers. In all Christian countries custom and religion have established the Sunday as a day of rest; and though this abstention from ordinary labours on Sunday is probably nowhere rigorously adhered to, it is more generally observed in the British Isles and the countries of British origin than elsewhere. In Roman Catholic countries, and the countries belonging to the Greek Church, the days devoted to religious festivals take a more prominent place in interrupting the ordinary course of labour than they do in Protestant countries. In Mohammedan countries Friday (even in pre-Mohammedan times a day of rest in Arabia) is specially

devoted to religious services, but it is less rigorously observed as a day of rest than the Sunday in Christian lands.

The interference of government with the employment of labour in free countries is in some cases in the form of enactments limiting the number of hours of work to be exacted in a day; in other cases in other modes. The Factory Acts in the United Kingdom professedly limited the working hours in factories only for women and children. The provisions in those Acts that expressly applied to adult male workers were only such as were intended to secure health and safety. Since the First World War, however, there has been a general limitation of the number of hours' work for men. The employment of the young is now limited in Great Britain under the Education Acts, culminating in the Act of 1944 which provided for raising the school-leaving age in 1947 to 15 (later 16) and for at least part-time education to 16 (later 18). The Employers' Liability Act of 1897 rendered employers liable in certain cases for injuries sustained by persons in their employment, whether there may have been any contributory negligence on the part of the injured or not. This was developed until in 1946 compensation for industrial accidents became a contributory social service extending to all persons employed under contract, without limit of income. There is similar legislation in many European countries. In Switzerland the limitation of hours expressly applied to men as well as women and in Germany the Imperial Industrial Code empowered the Imperial government to limit the hours for men and women alike where excessive hours were deemed injurious to health. The former German Empire was the pioneer in the insurance of workmen against illness (under an Act of 1883), against accidents (1884), and in providing for old-age pensions, beginning at the age of seventy (1889). In the United Kingdom old-age pensions, beginning at the same age, were introduced in 1908, and later measures led to the National Insurance Act of 1946 which consolidated existing schemes of insurance against sickness, unemployment, and old age. Such insurance was made compulsory and universal. Relief for the married worker was provided in 1945 by family allowances in the form of a weekly grant for each child after the first, in addition to free milk and subsidised meals at school. In the United States labour legislation has been a matter reserved to the individual states, and in such legislation Massachusetts was often the leader. Under the Roosevelt administration of 1933-45 the Federal government formulated a series of 'codes' for the major industries.

**Trade unions** and similar voluntary organisations among labourers impose various restrictions on the labour of their members for the sake of what is believed to be the general interest of the body, the efforts of these organisations being directed mainly to the obtain-

ing of as high wages and as short working hours as are possible in any given state of trade and industry. Such organisations are most highly developed in countries, like the United Kingdom, in which manufacturing industry is most highly advanced; but unions having similar objects have existed at all times in many countries. Among the labourers of China trade guilds exercised important functions of various kinds. Chinese emigrants have carried the system with them into the lands to which they emigrated. In India the caste system as now developed acts to some extent in the same way. As a trade union each caste 'insists on the proper training of the youth of its craft, regulates the wages of its members, deals with trade delinquents, and promotes good fellowship by social gatherings'. (Hunter's *Gazetteer*, 2nd ed., vi, 197.)

The kind of labour known as **coolie labour** is a form of free labour, but a peculiar one. The term has been applied particularly to emigrants from India and China who bind themselves to work for a term of years (generally five) on plantations in European tropical and sub-tropical colonies. They are entitled to regular wages while their term lasts, and in some cases to a free passage back to their own country when their term has expired. Contracts for the engagement of coolies in India and China are allowed only under certain regulations, and it was sometimes found necessary, owing to the treatment to which the coolies were subjected, for the government of the country from which they were derived to prohibit such engagements with certain countries altogether. Of recent years indentured labour of this type has become less common.

Somewhat similar contracts are made even with bodies of European labourers, the chief difference being that in their case the work on which they are engaged is generally the execution of some great public undertaking. They were very largely employed in the United States on the construction of railways until an Act of Congress in February 1885 made the importation and migration of foreigners and aliens under contract illegal. In new countries at an early stage immigrants are generally welcomed, for labour is urgently needed, but a time comes when there is a tendency to restrict immigration, as in the United States and parts of the British Commonwealth, though the Second World War gave renewed impetus, temporarily at any rate, to immigration schemes in the Commonwealth. A tendency to make arrangements for land settlement by families of particular nationalities found expression also, before the war, in the migration of Italian and German families to the South American states.

Slave labour of the old-fashioned kind is now virtually extinct. At one time or another slavery has been practised in all countries, and even in Europe down to the nineteenth century. It was only in the latter part of that century that the system was ended in the

tropical colonies of European countries, Great Britain having set the example in 1833 by passing an Act for the emancipation of the slaves in countries under British rule. So far as the production of commercial commodities was concerned, the immediate effect of the abolition of slavery was in many cases disastrous. The freed negroes (for people of African origin formed the bulk of the slaves affected) preferred, wherever plenty of land could be had, to live the life of the peasant subsistence farmer, instead of working for wages, however high, on plantations. The consequence was that in Jamaica, for example, the annual value of the exports fell from an average of nearly three millions sterling during the period 1832-36 to less than two millions in the period 1842-46. In densely peopled islands like Barbados, where the negroes when liberated were obliged to work in order to gain a living, the effect was not so bad. In other parts of America in which slavery has been abolished subsequently, the effects have varied similarly according to circumstances, being little marked in respect of the quantity of production, at least where there were facilities for replacing slave by free labour and especially by the labour of white men. In parts of Brazil, for instance, the change from slave to free labour was eagerly welcomed by the entire body of the inhabitants, inasmuch as the work was done 'better, quicker, and with more care' by free men than by slaves, so that the benefit of emancipation was at once realised.

There are other forms of forced labour besides that maintained by the system of slavery. The system of serfage, according to which individuals with separate rights and separate property were yet attached to particular estates, for the owners of which they were compelled to work, and were usually sold with the estates, subsisted in Russia till 1861; and forced labour for certain purposes was up till much later exacted by the Dutch government in the East Indies, and by the government of Egypt. In Latin America multitudes of the population are kept in virtual slavery by the system of peonage, by which the poorer people are encouraged to contract debts to their employers, and care is taken to prevent them from obtaining release from those debts. In India, one of the most difficult tasks of the administration is to protect the peasantry against similar abuses on the part of money-lenders.

In those countries where freedom of political views is restricted use is made of political prisoners to provide forced labour. This was long the case under the old Russian Empire and work carried out by exiles to Siberia was of this nature. Modern cases of the same sort are too well known to be mentioned specifically though it is often difficult to establish how extensively forced labour is used.

**Machinery.**—The nature of the change that has been made in the conditions of production in manufacturing industry through the

introduction of machinery is sufficiently illustrated on pp. 180-82, where some account of the influence of modern machinery in the cotton manufactures is given. Here it will be enough to call attention to the fact that the changes due to this cause have all come about within little more than a hundred and fifty years, and that this applies even to the most important agricultural implements made of iron, which, along with agricultural machinery properly so called, have during the same period effected a parallel revolution in the condition of agriculture. The cast-iron ploughshare is an invention little more than a hundred and fifty years old (it was patented in England by Messrs. Ransome of Ipswich in 1785); and it was after the beginning of the nineteenth century that the cast-iron plough came into general use in America. In the present century steam as the prevailing means of driving machinery has largely given place to electricity and to various forms of internal combustion engines. Before steam came into use wind-power (chiefly in level countries) and direct water-power (chiefly in mountainous and hilly regions) were largely employed. Water-power, now used indirectly as hydro-electric power, has again come to be of first-rate importance. Even solar heat has been used as a source of power where the sunshine is sufficiently constant. The vast amount of tidal-power that might conceivably be utilised has again and again engaged the thoughts of engineers, but so far little has been achieved in this direction. Locally this power is used for such purposes as the deepening of harbour entrances, as at Venice and elsewhere, but the difficulties in applying it to the driving of machinery have not been successfully overcome. Only in the most favourable conditions could it be made available for any considerable portion of the day, and there is the added difficulty that the power is supplied three-quarters of an hour later every day. A tidal mill was described as seen at work by Arthur Young in the Gironde in 1788, but it is a tribute to that keen observer's insight that he remarks that it is doubtful whether the power thus applied would prove as economical as that derived from steam. The development of atomic power is now engaging much research.

The utilisation of machinery in production is in some cases dependent more or less on physical conditions, in others on the supply and attitude of labour. The extensive employment of agricultural machinery is influenced very largely by the surface features, great level plains being obviously peculiarly favourable to its use. But even where the superficial configuration presents no great obstacles to its use the climate may prove a hindrance, soft wet soils being unsuitable or at least difficult for heavy machines. In coal-mining it is only the thicker and more continuous seams that are well adapted for coal-cutting machinery. This is one reason why, in the early years of the present century, the use of such

machinery increased much more rapidly in the United States than in the United Kingdom. In the States, the seams of bituminous coal worked are only such as can be worked easily, whereas in the United Kingdom, with its older industry, most of the seams very easily worked in the older mines have been worked out. It is in the newer, larger, and deeper collieries of this country that coal-cutting machinery has since been making up lost ground.<sup>1</sup> Where labour is very abundant and cheap the use of machinery may not be economic. Thus, in the countries of the Far East the proportion of machinery to the number of employees is very small, and it has on occasion been found economically advantageous to replace expensive machinery with low-priced hand machinery. This is still the case, it would seem, with mechanisation of African agriculture. The employment of machinery even where it would be economic is frequently retarded by the opposition of the workers to its introduction. In rapidly developing new countries or regions this hindrance is less marked, and that is another reason why coal-cutting and many other machines, even when invented in this and other old countries, have first been generally adopted in the United States. The attitude of the workers in old countries is at least intelligible. Their first thought with regard to machinery is apt to be that it is a means of displacing labour and so reducing its price; and though in the long run the effect of machinery may be to ease the burden of labour and increase the abundance of produce available for the labourer, its immediate effect is often to inflict hardship on some. If the workers cannot all share in the benefits of machinery from the first, it is natural that they should at least desire to have the incidental hardships of its introduction mitigated as far as possible. That gives importance to efforts which have been made towards such mitigation by large employers.

Particularly in the present century, the economic distribution of power has been greatly affected by the progress of invention, which has made sources of power commercially available that were not so before. In illustration of this one may refer to the very extensive use of oil, alcohol, and gas as sources of power. The use of oil has a geographical significance not merely in connection with the distribution of mineral oils and oil-shales, but also because of the ease of handling when the special requirements of its transport have been considered. The use of gas is important because it allows of inferior

<sup>1</sup> Percentage of coal cut by machinery:—

	1891	1900	1906	1913	1924	1938	1948	1955
U.S. . . .	5.3	24.9	34.7	50.7	69.5	87.5	90.7	93.0
U.K. . . .	—	1.5	4.1	8.6	19.0	59.0	76.0	86.0

The marked increase in the percentage in both countries is notable, but the figures are not strictly comparable, because of the different methods of mining and statistical analysis.



coals being employed for the production of fuel in this form, and the use of alcohol stimulates the production of potatoes as a cheap source of this spirit. But it has been chiefly with the aid of electricity that this kind of economy has been effected, and probably in no other direction has greater progress been made since the publication of the first edition of this work in 1889. Electricity is a means of transmitting and applying power developed either by fuel or gravity (moving water or air). When the great mechanical inventions were first introduced they were applied chiefly by means of water-power. Afterwards this gave place, except under the most favourable conditions, to the more reliable steam-power. The transmission of power originally derived from falling or rapidly flowing water by means of electricity has given value to many water-powers which were formerly useless. Power is transmitted economically distances of at least 300 miles. In certain industries electricity, most frequently developed from water-power, is already completely victorious over steam. These are the industries in which excessively high temperatures have to be produced, as in the smelting of aluminium ores, the manufacture of calcium carbide and the fixation of atmospheric nitrogen, or great resistances (including strong chemical affinities) have to be overcome, as in the grinding of wood to wood-pulp and the dissociation of elements in certain very refractory chemical compounds. In these cases immense water-powers are the sole means available for developing the electricity with the necessary economy.

But electricity is in some ways an advantage even where coal or other fuel is burnt in order to develop it. Though there is a loss of energy in converting the power latent in coal into the form of electricity and then converting electrical into mechanical energy, electrical power can be transmitted to a distance with less loss than steam-power. This leads to several economies. The coal can be used to develop electrical energy where it is cheapest. It can be used for that purpose in one great establishment on a large scale, instead of in many places on a small scale; and in the end each one who uses the power can take for his requirements just as much as he needs and when he needs it. It thus becomes possible, where a great installation has been set up providing power up to a certain maximum required only occasionally, to make a certain proportion below this maximum, the so-called off-peak electricity, available at a cheaper rate for industries capable of making use of it whenever supplies can be obtained. Such a system replaces numerous steam-engines, each of which required its own attendants and had to be kept ready for work even when there was no work for it to do. Electricity applies the power with great smoothness and steadiness, an advantage of great importance, for example, in the textile industries and in steel rolling mills in which it has become extensively

used. When used for locomotion its advantages are various. More rapid acceleration is possible with electric locomotives than with steam, and that is one great reason why it is becoming so largely used on railways with a dense traffic and numerous stoppages, inasmuch as it facilitates a more frequent service of trains. In the United Kingdom the use of electricity in industry was doubled during the First World War. Since then the increase in its use has been specially marked since the linking up of the whole country by the 'grid' system, whereby electricity generated economically on the coal-fields or at favourably located power stations, preferably waterside, can be readily transmitted to towns less fortunately situated.

**Devastating Agents.**—War, the great occasional disturber of production and commerce, has already been considered (p. 11); but there are disturbing agents with which one has to lay one's account as more or less normal though not regular in their action. These may be classed under two heads—physical destroying agents, the most important of which are directly or indirectly due to climatic conditions; and destructive forms of life, whether vegetable or animal.

Among the physical destroying agents we may mention first, **frost**, from which most tropical and sub-tropical plants, such as coffee (p. 197), tobacco (p. 187), cotton (p. 172), suffer greatly when they happen to be exposed to it.

In certain regions, and especially in those which have a climate at once warm and arid, **hail** is often much more destructive than we could expect from the character of the hailstones which usually fall in England. Reference is hardly needed to the destructiveness of **violent winds** at sea, but it may be noted that great devastation is sometimes wrought on land by the hurricanes of the North Atlantic, north of  $10\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  N. off the West Indies and Florida; the typhoons of the South China Sea, principally between the south coast of China and Formosa; the cyclones of the Indian Ocean, and especially the Bay of Bengal, occasionally raging nearly as far south as  $6^{\circ}$  N.; and above all the tornadoes of North America, where such storms reach farthest north and farthest into the interior of the land. These violent storms occur mainly at the change of the monsoons—from April to June, and from September to November in the Indian Ocean; in spring and autumn elsewhere.

To certain crops, and especially those which depend greatly on the amount of blossom that comes to maturity, like fruit-trees, cotton, coffee, &c., great damage is often caused by unseasonable winds of less violence; but more destructive on a large scale than any of the agents yet named is **drought**. The regions liable to suffer most heavily from this cause are those which lie on the borderline between regions in which an abundant, or at least sufficient, rainfall can always be depended on, and those in which the rainfall

is too scanty to admit of settlement without irrigation, but in which the rainfall, though sufficient in most years, is apt from time to time to fail. In the densely peopled regions of India and China situated in such 'famine zones', the failure of rain has often caused the loss of millions of human lives. Perennial irrigation and the improvement of communications have mitigated but not removed the dangers. In the less populous regions in the interior of North and South America, and in Australia, the destruction caused in this way is confined to sheep and cattle and other kinds of livestock. Despite the protection afforded by artesian wells and storage reservoirs, after the great drought of 1914 the number of sheep in Queensland dropped from 23.1m. in 1914 to 15.9m. in 1915.

Great destruction is sometimes wrought by **inundations** on the banks of great rivers like the Hwang-ho, Mississippi, and the Ganges, or even like the Danube and some of its more important tributaries; also on low-lying lands in the neighbourhood of the sea. Stupendous embankments have been constructed along the Ganges in Lower Bengal to guard against this danger, but these restrain without altogether preventing the excesses of the inundations; and the same may be said regarding the similar works that have been executed in the United States and the Hungarian plains, on the banks of the rivers above named. Among the more memorable excesses of the sea may be mentioned that by which the greater part of the land converted into the Zuider Zee (about 2,000 square miles; now largely reclaimed) was submerged in successive inundations in the twelfth to fourteenth centuries, and that by which an area of about 3,000 square miles at the head of the Bay of Bengal was overwhelmed and many thousands of people lost their lives, during a cyclone in November 1876.

**Volcanic outbursts and earthquakes**, though fortunately comparatively rare occurrences in their more awful forms, may also be mentioned as physical agents which occasionally produce widespread destruction. The Japanese earthquake of September 1923 resulted in the death of nearly 100,000 people, inclusive of those who perished in the fires which followed.

The **living destructive agents** are probably on the whole more injurious than any of the physical agents above mentioned, inasmuch as many of them are extremely persistent, being very difficult to extirpate, and renewing their attacks on particular crops or on various forms of vegetation, animals, and man year after year. The mere enumeration of such destroyers would fill a volume, and whole volumes have been devoted to accounts of individual pests. Here we can only allude to a few of the more important.

The **vegetable pests** consist mainly of minute **fungi** which affect various parts of a plant and indicate their presence by the discoloration they produce. Such are the fungi producing the diseases

known as rust in cereals and mildew on the vine and many other plants, each subject to attack by its own fungus. Another is the fungus (*Hemileia vastatrix*) which has almost completely destroyed the cultivation of the coffee-tree in Ceylon.

Of **animal pests**, the most destructive, on the whole, are insects. Among these may be mentioned locusts, different species of which infest treeless regions in both the Old World and the New. From time to time they invade cultivated fields, where they arrive flying in thick solid masses, filling the air, darkening the sun, forming an immense unbroken cloud which may take more than an hour to pass. When they settle they consume every green thing to be seen, the working of their jaws meanwhile causing a sound which can be heard at a great distance. Systematic campaigns against the young locusts have lately been successful in preventing threatened devastation in East Africa. Equally sweeping in its destruction is the insect known in the United States as the army-worm, which is the larva or unwinged stage of a kind of moth, and owes its name to the fact that on the march the 'worms' all keep together like an army of soldiers, and usually advance in a straight line. Of grass or young grain that comes in their way they eat up every vestige, but when grain has grown enough to form a head, they eat only the leaves, and then climb up the stalk, cut off the head, and drop it to the ground. Among insects destructive to particular objects of cultivation may be mentioned the Hessian fly (*Cecidomyia destructor*, Say), which attacks wheat and barley, and has proved peculiarly destructive in various parts of the United States, so as to lead to the abandonment, for a time at least, of wheat cultivation in certain districts; the Colorado beetle, which wrought great ravages among the potatoes in the United States in many years subsequent to 1861; the phylloxera, which for a time put an end to the cultivation of the vine in several Departments in France (p. 145); the boll-weevils and boll-worms (really moth caterpillars), which for many years have done enormous damage to the cotton crops of the United States and Egypt. Other insects are the carriers of disease to domestic animals, as well as to human beings.

To the lower forms of animal life belongs the parasite which produces the silk-worm disease. Among destructive animals of a higher type, sparrows have multiplied so rapidly since they were introduced into Australia that they have become a regular plague to the farmer. A still more serious plague, both in Australia and in New Zealand, has grown out of the introduction of the rabbit, the multiplication of which has in some instances compelled squatters to abandon their sheep-runs, and cultivators their holdings, and has caused different Australian governments to expend hundreds of thousands of pounds in efforts to extirpate it, or rather to keep it down, since extermination seems impossible. Rats have proved

equally destructive among the sugar-canes of Jamaica. The mongoose, a small but fierce carnivorous animal somewhat like a ferret, which was introduced into that island with great success to destroy the rats, has since become almost as great a pest itself through its raids on domestic poultry. In many of these cases the most serious results have accrued where man by the introduction of plants or animals from other localities has upset the local 'balance of nature'. But in the parts of the Argentine Republic that have a similar climate to the pastoral regions of Australia, the native vizcacha, an animal with similar habits to those of the rabbit, is quite as destructive, and has likewise been the object of all sorts of devices to compass its extermination.

Minute organisms are the causes of many diseases in man which have a serious effect on production in the regions where they are prevalent, and it is fortunate that in recent years remarkable progress has been made in the knowledge enabling man to combat those diseases. Some of these organisms are conveyed to man by insects. Malaria, yellow fever, sleeping sickness, and elephantiasis all belong to this class. Malaria is almost confined to those areas in which the mean temperature exceeds 60° F. for the summer months, and on the whole it increases in virulence towards the equator. It is now known to be set up in man by a microscopic organism introduced into the human system by mosquitoes belonging to the genus *Anopheles*, and in consequence of this discovery the disease has already been extirpated in many places in which it was formerly rife. Two methods are adopted in fighting against the disease. One is to destroy the mosquito, which is done when the insect is in the larval state. In that stage it lives in water, and where the water which might rear the larvae cannot be drained away, a thin film of oil on its surface will prevent the larvae from breathing. Spraying from the air with DDT has also given excellent results. The other method is to destroy the animal parasites in the human body by doses of quinine. The discovery of the whole process of infection threw light both on the well-known connection between the various forms of malaria, including ague, and stagnant water, and also on the fact that all marshy districts were not malarial. Even where the mosquito was present the malaria parasite might be absent.

In Cuba and in Panama, the war against yellow fever was waged with such success by Colonel W. C. Gorgas, a United States doctor, that it has now been exterminated. The insect carrier in this case is the *Stegomyia fasciata*, and the immediate excitant a microscopic spirochaete. More stubborn is the resistance offered by sleeping sickness, a disease known to have been endemic in Africa for hundreds of years. From time to time it appears to break out as a scourge, and has carried off thousands in Uganda, the Congo region, and other parts of Central Africa. It is due to an internal

parasite (*Trypanosoma*) for which the tsetse fly acts as receptionist, host, and transmitter. The main species of the fly are *Glossina palpalis*, carrier of *Trypanosoma gambiense*, and *Glossina morsitans*, carrier of *Trypanosoma rhodesiense*. The former is the better known; it was responsible for the deadly epidemic of sleeping sickness in Uganda around the end of last century. This tsetse fly, *G. palpalis*, which is almost exclusively the carrier of *T. gambiense* from man to man, is confined to the immediate vicinity of expanses of water—a limitation of habitat very helpful to anti-sleeping sickness measures. *G. morsitans* has a much wider range and serves as the intermediate host of *T. rhodesiense* not only between man and man but between animals, and also between man and animals. *Nagana*, the animal disease analogous to sleeping sickness, is even more deadly than its human counterpart, and there are vast tracts of Africa which are practically banned to livestock because of the prevalence of tsetse fly. Large sums of government money have been and are being spent on research and experimental remedies, including drugs, bush clearance, spraying insecticides from the air, and the reduction of game animals. Antrycide, a drug introduced in 1948, has value as a prophylactic, if cattle are temporarily exposed to infection, and has also curative value in the early stages of *nagana*.

Elephantiasis, of which the leading symptom is a swelling of the skin and the adjacent cellular tissue, is prevalent on the coasts of West Africa, India, southern China, the South Sea Islands and Brazil. Due to a filaria or microscopic worm carried by a group of the genus *Culex*, it has so far baffled efforts for its extirpation.

Other diseases sometimes appearing as widespread epidemics include plague, which is of two types, the bubonic, characterised by a swelling of the glands, and the lung form. Both are due to bacteria, of which the carriers are rat-fleas. There is no limit to its geographical range. The Black Death of 1348–49, which was of the lung type, raged in the high valleys of the Alps as much as on the plains, in Greenland as much as in Italy. It is diffused along the lines of commercial intercourse, but fortunately modern sanitary regulations are sufficient to cope with it, at least in the temperate zones. Cholera was long endemic from Bombay to southern China, but more particularly in Lower Bengal, and occasionally spreads like the plague along the lines of human intercourse. Again and again the great annual religious concourse at Hardwar, where the Ganges enters on the plains of India, has been the source of an outbreak which has spread far and wide, and in the latter years of last century with a rapidity which corresponded to the improvement in the means of communication. An epidemic which started there in March 1892 reached St. Petersburg in less than five months, and before the end of August reached New York. In this case the protection now afforded by good sanitation is complete. Improved

sanitary conditions have almost extirpated in Europe the once nearly universal disease of leprosy—another disease due to bacillus infection. The disease still has a grip on southern Asia, also on Africa, notably in the great river basins, and has been introduced into America. Scurvy, which at one time took so heavy a toll on seamen—on his pioneer voyage to India and back in 1497–99, Vasco da Gama lost 100 out of a crew of 160—was gradually eliminated after the discovery, in the latter part of the eighteenth century, of the means of warding off the disease by a diet of fresh fruit or fruit juices (lime juice) and vegetables. Of recent years influenza has taken a toll of human life comparable with the plagues of the Middle Ages. Indeed it is one of the serious aspects of modern life that as man's medical skill conquers one disease after another, others arise which were previously either little known or were mild in their attacks.

#### IV. CIRCUMSTANCES CONNECTED WITH THE EXCHANGE OF COMMODITIES

**TRANSPORT.** Transport methods vary considerably from country to country, and from region to region, being dependent upon a number of geographical and historical factors; they may be conveniently grouped into eight categories, as follows:—

1. Human portorage, including wheeled vehicles moved by human labour.
2. Animals, used (*a*) as beasts of burden; (*b*) for draught purposes.
3. Modern roads; and the internal combustion engine as employed in motor-cars, omnibuses, and lorries.
4. Railroads, including (*a*) light trackways and tramways; (*b*) railways proper, worked by steam, electricity, or other method.
5. Ropeways and cableways.
6. Inland water transport—rivers and canals.
7. Ocean transport.
8. Air transport.

**1. Human portorage.**—In central Africa, in various parts of south-eastern Asia, and even in densely peopled districts of China, the movement of goods overland still takes place to a large extent by means of human porters, or by wheeled vehicles drawn or pushed by men. Prodigious loads are sometimes carried under exceedingly difficult climatic and topographical conditions by coolies, as in the tea traffic between south-west China and Tibet, where the normal load per man is 200 lb., and two mountain passes more than 7,000 feet above the level of the starting-place have to be scaled; about 120 miles are covered in some twenty days. The wheel-barrow is still in common use in northern China, where

human labour is cheaper than animal labour, and where every inch of the land is so precious that the narrowest possible roads are used, such as will accommodate a wheel-barrow but not a two- or four-wheeled cart. Human labour was also the principal means of transport in Japan until the revolutionary changes of the past half century.

**2. Animals.**—Even in the most highly civilised countries animal transport is still of great importance, especially in rural districts, though in general it may be said that in those countries where western civilisation has advanced furthest, mechanisation of transport is tending more and more to displace the animals. In most European countries, and in those which have derived their civilisation from that of Europe, by far the most serviceable animal is the **horse**, used as a draught beast, but in central and eastern Europe the **ox** is of greater importance—perhaps a comment on the greater velocity of life in the West, the horse being valued for its speed, the ox for its strong, steady, if rather leisurely, pull. In southern Europe, and the regions round the Mediterranean generally, the **ass**, which thrives better than the horse on the scanty herbage, is an animal of much more consequence than in the rest of Europe, and hence is more cared for and of finer aspect and better qualities; but in the mountainous parts of those regions the **mule** is preferred to both on account of its sure-footedness and endurance, and to the ox on account of its sharing with the ass the power of thriving on coarse browsing. These qualities have secured the introduction of the mule (which was used by the ancient Greeks) into all mountainous countries with a moderately warm and dry climate, both in the Old World and the New.

In the most populous parts of Asia and in central Africa various breeds of oxen are the principal beasts of burden; and next to these, in Asia, come **buffaloes**, horses being for the most part neither numerous nor of good quality. The water-buffalo is also found in south-eastern Europe.

Among animals of regional importance, **reindeer** are used in northern Asia, Europe, and North America, notably to draw sledges over the snow-covered ground; **dogs** are also employed, as by the Eskimos, for the same purpose. In the mountainous parts of central Asia, including the Himalayas, a peculiar species of ox, known as the **yak**, which is found both wild and domesticated, and is characterised by long fine silky or slightly curly hair hanging down from various parts of its body, is used as the mule is used in southern Europe. In some parts of the same region **goats** and **sheep** are employed for the carriage of light burdens, and goat-carts may still be seen in the Alpine region of Europe. In the Andes of South America, the **llama** is the principal beast of burden. The Asiatic **elephant**, which haunts the forests of south-eastern Asia from the



south of the Himalayas to the borders of China, and the large tropical islands from Ceylon to Sumatra and Borneo, is invaluable as a beast of burden throughout that region, wherever there are no proper roads. Where roads do exist, it does not accomplish so much work in proportion to the amount of food which it consumes as the horse, ox, or buffalo, but it can make its way across marshes and through forests which could not be traversed by any of the other animals mentioned. Throughout India, the catching of wild elephants for training is under government supervision; the chief area is now, however, in Burma, where the animals are used mainly for timber haulage in the forests. The African elephant is rarely trained for labour, though it was so by the ancients (e.g. the Carthaginians), and, in north-eastern Africa, down to the Middle Ages.

The **camel**, in desert and semi-desert regions, is even more indispensable as a beast of burden than the elephant amidst forest and marsh. Provided with one or two humps of fat, which serve as reserves of nutriment, and with its stomach lined with hundreds of little cells or compartments capable of holding water, a camel when well fed and supplied with water at starting can accomplish immense journeys on the most meagre fare, and almost without drink. By no other animal is so much merchandise carried over long distances. Until the recent advance of the motor-car and the aeroplane, it was the sole means of commerce between the oases of northern Africa, as well as between the North African coast and the fertile territories of the Sudan, and it is still largely employed in western Asia. It was introduced into Australia, and was used on exploratory journeys, but has been replaced now by the motor-car. Camels were seldom used singly, but in caravans, often consisting of several hundreds, not only for the sake of carrying a large quantity and variety of merchandise, but also for the sake of having a sufficiently large body of men to defend the caravan against marauders.

The simplest method of using animals for transport is to employ them as beasts of burden, like the pack-horses which formerly carried most of Britain's internal trade; but this method is far from being the most efficient. An immense advantage is gained by employing the beasts to draw wheeled carts. One animal, broadly speaking, can pull at least four times as much as it can carry. Even in roadless and trackless country, teams of oxen, as in South Africa and in the Argentine, are employed to haul agricultural produce in strongly built wagons. For the most part, however, the use of wheeled vehicles involves the making of **roads**.

**3. Roads.**—The development of road vehicles during the last 150 years, and the rapid progress of new methods of transport during the present century, have involved vast changes in the technique of road construction.<sup>1</sup> Roads that were adequate in

<sup>1</sup> See J. W. Gregory, *The Story of the Road*. London, 1931.

foundation, surface, and width for the meagre traffic of horse-drawn carts a hundred years ago are almost useless for modern high-speed motor traffic. Until comparatively recent times most roads have been dependent upon locally obtained raw materials for their construction; consequently, in clay areas, where natural road-metal is absent, communication was apt to be difficult in winter because of mud, and unpleasant in summer on account of dust. This is still to a large extent true of considerable areas of the earth's surface, such as the Hungarian Plain, western Siberia, and the plains of Australia and the Argentine. There are many well-known descriptions of eighteenth-century English roads running across the clay belts of this country to be found in the works of travellers such as Defoe and Young. Heavy lumbering carts with their numerous horses cut the roads into deep ruts, and the laying of stones only served to make progress more dangerous and uncomfortable for travellers on horseback or in wheeled vehicles. Under such conditions it is not surprising that Edinburgh was 10 to 12 days' coach journey from London, Exeter 4 days, Birmingham 2 days, and so on. It is true that the formation of the Turnpike Trusts, which devoted part of the toll-money collected from vehicles to the maintenance and improvement of the road surface, helped to improve many of the main roads of Britain, but little real advancement was possible until scientific principles, which had been almost dormant since the building of the Roman roads, were introduced into road construction. The two names most deservedly famous in this connection are those of Telford and Macadam, two Scotsmen who laboured in the early part of the nineteenth century.

Telford's method consisted of laying a foundation of solid stone blocks and covering this with a layer of small broken stone, thicker in the middle than at the sides so as to produce a camber which, with the provision of adequate ditches on each side, would effectively drain the road. He spent eighteen years in the Scottish Highlands building over 900 miles of roads and, in addition, is justly famed for his reconstruction of the Shrewsbury-Holyhead road during the years 1815-30. Macadam's system was based on the principle that if a road is made of suitable material and is well drained it can be laid on the natural subsoil without the intervention of Telford's costly stone pavement. His roads were made of a sheet of broken stone of uniform size, each piece an inch or two in diameter, the road being cambered to throw off surface water. He found that such a sheet of broken stone, after rolling by traffic, became firmly bound together as an impermeable mass, and so resisted the ravages of water. Limestones, which yield a fine powder when pieces are ground together, were found to be the most suitable rock; rain-water and this powder formed a natural cement—or the process could be hastened by a light road-roller and a water-cart.

Both Telford's and Macadam's roads were effective so long as horse-drawn wagons with iron-tyred wheels formed the bulk of the traffic. So soon, however, as the perfection of the internal-combustion engine permitted the development of the motor-car, they became inadequate owing to the unsuitability of their surface. A rubber-tyred wheel, caused to rotate by an engine, exercises a disruptive effect upon a road surface composed of small stones, especially during wet weather, when the rubber acts as a sucker and pulls out any loose stones; whilst the dust raised by the passage of swiftly moving vehicles in dry weather rapidly becomes an intolerable nuisance, as it does in those parts of the world, such as south-eastern Europe, where the motor-car has preceded the construction of suitable road surfaces. The removal of the fine dust particles, too, contributes to the rapid disintegration of the road surfaces. A motor road requires a surface so coherent that it resists disruption by the uplifting of stones by the tyres, and the scattering of the finer particles as dust. Such surfaces are usually prepared either by the use of concrete, as in America, or, as is more commonly the case in Britain, by employing 'tarmacadam'—broken stones coated with tar—sealed with tar or bitumen. The use of tar on roads was one of the first remedies for the problem of dust; the tar also acts as a waterproof coating and so delays the decay of the road through the penetration of water and the disruptive action of frost. In America heavy oil is used in the same way.

Many varieties of stone can be used for the purpose of road-making, but limestones and close-grained igneous rocks, such as basalt, are the most reliable. Coarse-grained rocks, such as granite, do not make good macadam because the large individual crystals tend to crack; granites are, however, successfully employed in rectangular blocks called 'setts', especially in industrial districts where much heavy traffic has to use the roads. The unequal weathering of the constituent crystals keeps the surface slightly rough, and so suitable for horse traffic. Blast-furnace slag, crushed into pieces and tarred, is also much used for macadam in districts where it is produced. Gravel is also commonly used where it is available, especially as a surfacing material.

There is no doubt that the modern motor road is unsuitable for horse traffic, owing to its smoothness. In rural areas the difficulty is sometimes resolved, especially on hills, by the provision of a rougher macadam trackway on either side. Latterly however, a rough surface has been shown to prevent skidding by motor vehicles. In cities there are increasing signs that horse traffic may eventually, owing to its slowness, be severely restricted, if not entirely prohibited.

Some idea of the extent of road traffic at the present time may be gained from statistics published by the Society of Motor Manufacturers and Traders. The world total of motor-cars and commer-

cial vehicles in use in 1956 was 103m.—nearly a quarter of them coming within the latter category. The United States had far and away the largest number—65m., little less than two-thirds of the total. Cars alone in the United States numbered 54m. or roughly one for every three of the population. The United Kingdom came second with almost 4m. cars (one in 13 of the population) and about a million and a third commercial vehicles (one in 38). Compared with pre-war figures (1938) the United States total of cars and commercial vehicles showed an increase of 220 per cent., and the increase in the world total was still more—240 per cent. It is significant that while the number of cars declined during the war years in Europe, Asia, and Africa, the number of commercial vehicles everywhere increased. Under the stimulus of both World Wars, the building of lorries has grown by leaps and bounds, and both in the 'old' and in the 'new' countries this type of vehicle now plays an important part in everyday life. In Britain the motor lorry, by providing cheap and fairly rapid door-to-door transport of small loads, has made great inroads into the traffic formerly carried by the railways (cf. pp. 352 *et seq.*); in countries less well covered by a rail-net, and in countries, such as the 'pioneer belts' of Africa and elsewhere, where the railway has not yet arrived, this vehicle is of great help in promoting economic development. Rough roads that will carry a lorry are far more cheaply and quickly constructed, and much less trouble to maintain, than are railways. The use of six wheels instead of four, and the mounting of vehicles on 'caterpillars', are devices that have been developed to overcome the difficulty of rough pioneer roads.

Finally, the motor-omnibus, capable of carrying anything from one to six dozen passengers, has done much to promote the spread of intercourse between rural and urban areas, and has been an important factor in the outward spread of large cities such as London. There is a tendency for omnibuses to replace trams (pp. 87–88) in many towns nowadays, both in Britain and on the Continent.

**4. Railways.**—The difficulty of hauling large quantities of bulky commodities over the ordinary country roads in the days before Telford and Macadam was responsible for the growth, in the eighteenth century, of numerous railways in the coal-mining and iron-working districts of Britain, especially in Northumberland and Durham, where the boulder clay soil provided an indifferent foundation and where gradients down to the rivers were steep. Even the Romans had laid stone tracks for their wagon-wheels; it was a short step from this to the laying of timber baulks covered with iron plates (hence the term 'platelayer', still employed on our railways for track-maintenance men) and so to actual iron rails, flanged to keep the wheels from slipping off. Transfer the flanges from the

rails to the wheels, and the idea of the modern railroad is complete. Between 1801 and 1825 no fewer than 29 'iron railways' were built in Britain, mainly in connection with collieries, ironworks, or canals (p. 90), horses being used as the means of hauling wagons along the rails. The coincidence of this period with that of the development of the steam locomotive has produced the railways that we know to-day. James Watt began building stationary steam engines on a commercial scale in 1775, and between 1801 and 1825 such men as Trevithick, Hedley, and Stephenson were responsible for applying Watt's invention to the problem of locomotion. The first steam railway for general purposes was that between Stockton and Darlington (really designed to give an outlet to the Tees for the coal from Wotton Park in Durham) opened in 1825. The Liverpool and Manchester line followed in 1830. In 1831 the first passenger train ran on the American continent—from Albany to Schenectady in the state of New York; and in 1835 the first railway on the mainland of Europe was opened, between Brussels and Malines.

Topographical controls of railway routes are more obvious than those affecting roads. The problem of the railway-builder lies midway between those of the road engineer and the canal builder. High-speed express-train working becomes difficult when frequent gradients steeper than about 1 : 100 are encountered—though it is possible to work trains by the normal method up gradients of 1 : 22, as on the Kicking Horse Pass line through the Rockies. It has been estimated that the cost of working a given train-load over a mile of track on a gradient of 1 : 50 is twice that of working the same train over a mile on the level. Hence the most elementary factor in geography—the relief of the land—is of great importance in controlling the routes which the lines shall take. In Britain the Tyne gap, Aire gap, and Shap routes may be cited as examples of the intimate control of railway routes by physical features; one may notice also that railway routes frequently do not follow the lines of the roads which preceded them. Thus the railway across the Cheviots does not follow the course of the old road connecting the valleys of the Rede and the Jed across Carter Bar; farther afield, it may be recalled that the railway from Florence to Bologna does not follow the old direct route across the pass of La Futa; the line from Sofia to the Maritza valley does not follow the Roman road through Trajan's gate, and so on.

The superior utility of railways over roads has in many cases justified a vast expenditure in subduing the face of nature in order to make routes for the lines where the features of the country did not afford them. Railway tunnels from 7 miles to over 12 miles long have been driven through the Alps, and in the Andes heights of over 15,800 feet are reached by railways in Bolivia (on the metre-gauge line from the Chilean port of Antofagasta) and in Peru (on

the standard gauge Central Railway). In mountainous countries, too, abnormal types of railways have made their appearance; notably rack-railways, of which type the Abt system is most commonly used, in which the locomotive can use the rack or toothed rail on steep sections (even on gradients as steep as 1 : 2) and on level tracks can proceed in the ordinary manner. The first mountain rack-railway was that up Mount Washington in New Hampshire, U.S.A., completed in 1868. Since that date numerous examples have been built in various parts of the world, especially in Switzerland. Many such railways have been built for purely tourist purposes, such as the Snowdon Mountain railway, but one European main line, the connection from the Adriatic coast to Serajevo, employs the system in its ascent of the Dinaric Alps, and so also do several main lines in South America—as from Arica to La Paz.

Mountains are not the only obstacles to continuity of railway lines. In order to extend the facilities for communication by rail without break of bulk, even wide stretches of sea and lake are in some cases crossed by train-ferries: specially constructed vessels with rails laid on their decks, carrying whole trains. The channel separating Denmark from Sweden has long been overcome in this manner; for some years a goods train-ferry has been in operation between England and the Continent *via* Harwich, and in 1936 the first passenger ferry service between London and Paris was opened *via* Dover-Dunkerque.

The mode of development of a railway system or net may take on two quite different forms, according to whether the country is an undeveloped or a long-settled region. In a virgin area, like the Canadian prairies seventy years ago, large-scale settlement is almost impossible owing to lack of means of communication. Thus, until the completion of the Canadian Pacific Railway in 1885, western Canada was practically uninhabited, and settlement closely followed the first lines of railway. In such a case the railway may quite definitely be said to have developed the country; even to-day little wheat is grown more than twenty miles from a railway. In the same way the railway lines of the Argentine Pampa, and of the Middle West of the United States, have provided a basis for settlement. Quite different is the state of affairs in an already developed country such as Britain. Here the railway routes were dependent on pre-existing conditions—the distribution of population, especially the position of towns and industries, and the existence of developed natural resources, such as minerals and harbours. The initial function of the railway in this country—which had so recently undergone a rapid transformation consequent on the 'Industrial Revolution'—was that of connecting places which were already important. The lines at once stimulated the industries of the regions they served, and this growth encouraged the construction of further

rail connections. Junction points began to attract population and industry, and at certain junctions whole new townships sprang up, such as Crewe and Swindon. The railways, too, helped to foster the growth of their seaport terminals, and in several cases were responsible for the entire construction of new ports, such as Southampton and Immingham.

Geographical factors affect in various ways the working of railways. It is obvious that a railway locomotive must haul the vehicles containing the load as well as the load that has to be transported, but it is only the load on which freight is earned. Hence it is desirable to have a railway wagon reasonably light in proportion to the paying load. Large wagons present this advantage, so that the use of large wagons is economic where sufficient loads can be regularly obtained for them. But it is not everywhere that convenient loads for large wagons and long heavy trains are available. Where there is a large amount of bulky goods such as grain, coal, ores, and timber to be conveyed to single points the advantage of large wagons is great, and it is greatly enhanced when there are such loads in both directions. It is said that the idea of reducing transport expenses by the adoption of larger wagons originated in the grain-growing regions of the north-west of the United States. Much has been said for many years on the advantage of introducing large railway wagons into Great Britain, but the problem where wheat is grown in enormous quantities and mostly transported to one or two great markets, is entirely different from that of collecting wheat in forty or fifty counties and redistributing it in ten thousand towns and villages. In America it has been found profitable in some cases to use 50-ton steel trucks, nowhere more advantageously than on the lines connecting Pittsburgh with the lake ports, where the trucks can be filled in one direction with iron ore, and in the other with coal. There it was estimated that the substitution of these trucks for the older 30-ton wooden ones effected a saving of 315 tons dead weight on a 1,500-ton train, and one of nearly £9,500 in freight on thirty double journeys in the course of the year.

On the continent of Europe trucks are employed which are smaller than those in ordinary use in America, but larger than most of those in Britain, where the normal size is twelve to thirteen tons. Though the British and Continental track gauges are the same, the original British structure gauge (based on the size of a load of hay, and governing the dimensions of tunnels, etc.) does not admit of the use of the wider Continental rolling stock. Before the British railways were nationalised (see p. 356), the Great Western Railway introduced trains of 20-ton wagons (each  $24\frac{1}{2}$  feet long by 8 feet 8 inches high) for the carriage of coal from South Wales, and a similar experiment was tried still earlier by the old North-Eastern

Railway. Even 40-ton trucks have been used; but the experiments have not been generally successful under the conditions obtaining in this country. There are nearly 7,000 goods stations in Britain, and to nearly every one of these a truck may be sent every night, in many cases carrying only from half a ton to two tons. Since nationalisation, the British Transport Commission, which became operative on January 1st, 1948, has adopted 16-ton all-steel trucks as the standard of replacement for mineral wagons.

Where the conditions favour heavy traffic, great savings can be effected by having long trains even though these may be made up of small trucks, but the savings of course are all the greater where there are long trains of large trucks. Long trains also are more common in America and on the Continent than in Great Britain, and for the same reasons as large wagons. It is to promote this economy that certain railway centres in America, known as basing-points, are made the foci of railway rates for large districts round, goods being carried between these points at exceptionally low rates, and the rate being thus cheapened for the whole district served from any focus.

In the early days of railway construction several gauges were used, but since the abolition of the G.W.R. broad gauge (5 ft. 6 in.) in Britain in 1892, all main lines have been on the standard gauge of 4 ft. 8½ in. This is also the gauge of continental Europe (except Spain and Russia), and of North America. Several countries, notably Australia, Argentina, and India, suffer from a mixture of gauges.

The construction of light railways, by which are usually meant railways so constructed as to involve comparatively small original cost and outlay for upkeep, has been carried on in France since 1865, and in other continental countries as well as the United States from later dates. The Belgian system, begun in 1885, is one of remarkable completeness, utilising, to a large extent, the country roads. In 1896 an Act was passed in Britain authorising and regulating the construction of light railways, but fortunately little was done before the internal combustion road vehicles began to develop so rapidly as to render most light railways obsolete.

About 1870 began the extensive development of **tramways** as passenger carriers in Britain. Nearly all the original tramways were private enterprises and the vehicles were horse-drawn. In 1882 an Act was passed enabling local authorities to purchase any electrical installation at the end of twenty-one years without making any allowance for goodwill. This, and other deterrent legislation, hindered the application of electricity to tramways in Britain, and though the term was subsequently altered in 1888 to forty-two years, the influence on investors remained. In 1928-29 there were 221 tramway undertakings and 2,420 miles of track in Britain, and the number of tramcars was over 14,000. By 1938 the mileage of tram-



ways and light railways was down to 1,183 and the number of tramcars was under 9,000. In 1955 the number of trams was 2,300. This decline marked the lead taken by British towns in rejecting trams in favour of the more flexible motor-omnibuses. In some areas the rails have been removed but the overhead electrical installation is still used to drive 'trolley buses'. In America the privately owned motor-car has rendered almost useless the street-car systems.

Britain has been slow to adopt main-line railway electrification. After the First World War the Southern Railway developed the world's largest electrified suburban railway system, and electrified the main line to Brighton and some other South Coast resorts. The third-rail system was used. More recently sections of the Eastern Region have been electrified, and other extensions are planned.

**5. Ropeways and Cableways.**<sup>1</sup>—For general transport duties and especially for refuse disposal, ropeways are of great advantage. The main feature is that the loads, up to five tons weight, are suspended from an overhead rope or ropes and are carried clear of ground conditions. There are two systems—the Monocable for duties up to 150 tons per hour, and the Bicable for duties up to 500 tons per hour with individual loads of up to five tons. With the Monocable system an endless haulage rope runs over sheaves mounted on trestles and serves both to support and to transport the load. The Bicable system utilises a fixed carrying rope and a light haulage rope to move the cars which run on the track rope. Bicable ropeways can be entirely automatic in action and angles can be introduced on the line at any point. The ability to transport materials over obstacles which either forbid alternative transport or cause excessive detours is one of the major features of ropeway practice.

A cableway is a specialised version of a ropeway and serves both to lift and traverse a load. Because of the very long spans which are possible and the high speed of operation, cableways are universally used for dam construction and are often used for stock-piling and general duties. Loads may be up to thirty tons.

The pneumatic transmission of telegrams in light boxes through tubes by increasing the atmospheric pressure or diminishing it (by suction) was adopted as far back as 1853, and in 1913 the system was extended by the London Post Office to parcels.

**6. Inland Water Transport.**—Water carriage has, within the last hundred years, undergone as great a revolution as land carriage. The simplest form of water carriage is that in which rafts are allowed to drift down the course of a river. The use of boats on rivers, both for down- and up-stream navigation, must, however, have been one of the earliest of human inventions; and in some parts of the world, as in Russia and the valley of the Ganges, the want

<sup>1</sup> With acknowledgments to the Chairman of the Aerial Ropeways Association.

of roads was, to a large extent, long made up for by the abundance of navigable rivers. Such rivers being means of transport given wholly or largely by nature are apt to have their importance exaggerated in the minds of geographers, but it should now be recognised that nature has generally done more for a country in providing it with facilities for railway construction than with navigable rivers, in so far as these are merely inland waterways and not, so to speak, extensions of the seaboard, that is, directly accessible to sea-going vessels. Railways have the advantage over rivers not merely of greater speed, but the even greater advantage of intercommunication with different parts of the country, and these advantages in most cases more than compensate the disadvantage of dearer haulage. And with respect to intercommunication with different points, it is important to note that a railway generally has a great advantage even over a river on a parallel course. A waterway is of no use unless there are places on it where goods may be landed and lifted, but good navigable rivers are apt to flow for long stretches through marshy and unstable country without landing places. It is this character that greatly diminishes the value of the Po as a waterway, and the Mississippi flows in places for mile after mile without the possibility of discharging goods, where the parallel lines of railway have numerous stations. The utility of a river as a waterway is, moreover, affected by the weather to a much greater extent than are railways. Nearly all rivers are subject to great variations in level. The St. Lawrence is in this respect an exception, as the steadiness of its flow in the open-water season is maintained by the chain of great lakes of which it is the outlet, but it is a unique exception. Hence traffic on most rivers is apt to be stopped or impeded by high and low water, high water rendering them unnavigable on account of their impetuosity, low water from inadequate draft. Then again, where the winter is severe there is a regular stoppage of traffic through ice. Nevertheless, large rivers on which steamers can be used still form important means of communication, and especially in countries not yet fully opened to modern commerce. The best of such rivers have one great advantage over railways, that it is easier on them to transport great quantities at one time. A train load of more than 7,000 tons—considerably less in the United Kingdom—may be regarded as something quite exceptional, but on the Rhine, for instance, it is easy to exceed that in barge-trains. If they served no other purpose they would still be of commercial value as tending to keep down rates on competing lines of railway.

**Navigable canals** are another means of transport dating from the unrecorded periods of human history, and they also have had their importance diminished by the introduction of railways, though in some regions they have played a very important part in the development of commerce. Level countries and regions are naturally

those which abound most in canals, and in such, one of the chief uses of rivers is to feed navigable canals, as in more mountainous districts one of the chief uses of rivers is to afford water-power. The most important canals of modern times, however, are the *ship-canal*s connecting different seas.

Somewhat delusive expectations of economy in transport from the use of inland water carriage are sometimes entertained. These are all based on the admittedly low cost of mere haulage at a slow rate. It is estimated that on an ordinary good wagon road a single horse-power will drag about 3,000 lb. at the rate of 3 feet per second (approximately  $1\frac{1}{2}$  tons at two miles an hour); on a railway about 30,000 lb. ( $13\frac{1}{3}$  tons) at the same rate; in water up to as much as 200,000 lb. (90 tons). But in making inferences from this general fact it should be borne in mind (1) that the cost of increasing the rate of speed is much greater by water than by land; (2) that the average rate of transport on canals is greatly reduced by the delays at locks; (3) that the economy of water transport is greatly reduced by the fact that even canals do not afford the same facilities as railways for conveying goods over the face of the country without break of bulk; (4) that canals are in most cases of too small dimensions for modern requirements; and (5) that the maintenance of an adequate supply of water in canals may be difficult and expensive.

With regard to the first of these points it is noteworthy that some of the earliest experiments with steamboats were made with the view of increasing the speed and economy of transport on canals. Since the screw propeller was introduced, these experiments have been renewed with greater success, seeing that its use is not so likely to injure the canal banks. To prevent destruction of the banks, mechanical propulsion is prohibited on many canals, including some of those of Britain. In other cases concrete banks have been made. A few attempts have been made to increase the speed by the use of locomotives on the canal banks. This mode of traction was tried on the Forth and Clyde Canal in 1839, steam locomotives being used. More recently electric motors running on rails on the banks have been employed both in France (on the Burgundy Canal) and Belgium (on the Charleroi Canal); but in the latter case the experiment has been abandoned. This method is, however, used in taking vessels through the locks of the Panama Canal. Electric propulsion with the aid of overhead wires has been tried with success on a section of the Staffordshire and Worcestershire Canal. The current consumption, with a load of 33 tons, was found to be one unit per mile; the cost, at 1*d.* per unit, 0·03*d.* per ton-mile.

In view of the importance of the second consideration above mentioned, the map (p. 354) of the English waterways has been drawn up so as to show the numbers of locks. The delays due to this cause have given rise to various projects for economising time

in surmounting differences of level in inland navigations. Hydraulic and pneumatic lifts are employed. In 1875, an hydraulic lift, with a lifting power of 100 tons, working through a height of 50 feet, was completed to connect the Weaver navigation at Anderton, in Cheshire, with the Trent and Mersey Canal. It has since been rebuilt and electrified, with two single tanks. A more complicated structure, with a capacity of nearly 600 tons and a somewhat higher range of working, was completed in 1899 on the Dortmund-Ems Canal at Henrichenburg not far from Dortmund. Inclined planes have been employed from a very remote date in China. In April 1910 the Grand Junction Canal substituted inclined planes for the flight of ten locks which formerly overcame a height of 75 feet at Foxton in Leicestershire. The boats ascended and descended inclined planes simultaneously in wet docks which moved up and down on rails, a stationary steam-engine effecting the lift. By this means two boats were moved up and down simultaneously in 12 minutes, while formerly one hour and 20 minutes was required for passing a couple of boats in either direction. The Foxton lift was closed in November 1910, as there was not enough traffic to warrant the cost of working it.

The difficulty of intercommunication by inland waterways without break of bulk arises from the fact that it is not practicable to construct canals in as many directions as railways, and the full advantage of such intercommunication, even where it is possible, can in many cases not be enjoyed, owing to the inevitable differences in canal dimensions. The larger the waterways the greater is the economy in the transport, but the construction of large canals is in many cases quite impracticable, in many others not economically practicable.

**7. Ocean Transport.**—Marine navigation is the mode of navigation which presents the greatest combination of advantages. Besides the advantage of cheap haulage for low speeds offered by navigable water generally, the ocean offers a free road traversable in all directions, one on which it is possible to increase almost indefinitely the size of vessels, the size being limited mainly by accommodation available at ports and the dimensions of such canals as Suez and Panama. These advantages far outweigh a somewhat greater risk of loss at sea than on land from storms and other causes. It is in this mode of water carriage that the most important developments have taken place in modern times. These developments affect the size of the vessels employed, the range of navigation, the precision with which a course can be laid down and followed, and the power used for propulsion.

The navigation of the sea in small boats for trade purposes is not yet quite extinct. The islanders of the Pacific Ocean and the Eastern Archipelago undertake short voyages in a great variety of

small boats, and some of the islanders in the trade-wind region of the Pacific regularly set out in fleets of small boats on long expeditions, in which they go far out of sight of land, guided only by the constant direction of the low waves caused by the steady wind. Such adventurous enterprises unaided by the modern appliances for navigation are, however, the exception. In ancient times the Phœnicians were the most adventurous seamen, at least in European waters. About 1000 B.C. their vessels traversed the entire Mediterranean, and even went beyond the Pillars of Hercules (Straits of Gibraltar), possibly as far as the Scilly Isles; and about the beginning of the sixth century B.C. Phœnician seamen in the employment of Pharaoh Necho, King of Egypt, are credited with having made a voyage round Africa. But the most adventurous of their expeditions were mainly coasting voyages. Ancient writers of the first century A.D. mention as something recent the discovery of the use that could be made of the monsoon winds in sailing from the mouth of the Red Sea to India at one period of the year and back at another. It is at least certain that a trade of this nature was regularly organised within that century, though even these voyages were probably not wholly on the high seas. Before the close of the Middle Ages, however, vessels sailed with the monsoons from the east coast of Africa direct to India and Ceylon.

In modern times ocean navigation has been greatly facilitated by the use of the mariner's compass. This instrument, there can be no doubt, was known to the Chinese at a much earlier date than to Europeans. So far as can be ascertained, it was first known in Europe towards the close of the twelfth century. The Neapolitan Flavio Gioja (with doubtful warrant) gets the credit of having improved it in the fourteenth century, and since then it has undergone a long series of improvements, especially in the nineteenth century, when the increasing use of iron in shipbuilding rendered it necessary to devise methods for neutralising the disturbing effects of that metal on the compass needle. It was not till sailors became accustomed to this instrument that they became bolder in their ventures. The Portuguese voyages in the fifteenth century, which added greatly to the knowledge of the west of Africa, were still for the most part coasting expeditions. It was in the last decade of that century that Columbus discovered America (1492), and Vasco da Gama the sea-way to India (1497-98)—a discovery hardly less important in the history of commerce, on account of the effect it had on the fortunes of the great trading centres of Italy and southern Germany.

For hundreds of years after the first use of the compass in Europe mariners were still without the means of determining with precision their course on the high seas. Improved chronometers, almost as indispensable for this purpose as the compass, date only

from 1736, following John Harrison's invention of the compensation pendulum.

**Steam navigation**, by which so great a revolution has been effected in sea-carriage, originated, like steam railways, in the nineteenth century. Trials of steam-engines for the propulsion of vessels were, indeed, made before the end of the eighteenth century. But the patent for the first steamboat which proved a success, so far as locomotion was concerned, was taken out in 1801 by Symington, and a boat constructed on this patent had a few trials on the Forth and Clyde Canal. The first really successful steamboat voyage was that made in 1807 from New York to Albany on the Hudson in a vessel constructed by Fulton, who had worked independently on the problem of steam navigation since 1803. In 1819 a ship crossed the Atlantic using steam as an auxiliary, and in 1838 two ships, sailing about the same time from Cork and Bristol respectively, made what are considered the first commercially successful steam-voyages across the Atlantic. In 1820 an iron vessel made a voyage from London to Paris, and in 1832 an iron vessel, the *Elburkah*, made the voyage from Liverpool to the Niger.

About the middle of last century steamers began somewhat rapidly to displace sailing vessels, and in the sixties iron came to be more and more substituted for wood as the building material. The invention of mild steel (p. 283) made it possible to use steel in place of iron, and this material was first used in the Cunard liner *Servia* in 1881. The great advantages of iron or steel vessels over wooden ones are their greater strength, endurance, and lightness in proportion to the load. Wooden vessels seldom lasted for more than 12-15 years, whereas the life of a steel vessel may exceed 40 years. The weight of a wooden ship was nearly as great as that of its cargo, whereas a steel vessel can carry a load of from two to four times its own weight; river steamers, which are not so strongly built, an even larger proportion. Formerly the proportion was greater in sailing vessels than in steamers, in which latter a large amount of room is required for the machinery and the fuel. This is one reason why the sailing vessel is still used for certain purposes.

Early in the present century, motor-ships were introduced as an alternative to steamships, and an oil-tanker registered in 1911, the *Volcanus*, was the first ship to be driven by a Diesel oil-engine running on the heavy crude oil which is a distinguishing feature of that type of motor vessel. As we shall see presently, motor and Diesel ships have since found increasing favour, though steamers still constitute by far the greater part of the world's shipping tonnage.

During the First World War the introduction of reinforced concrete (concrete strengthened internally with steel rods) as a building material, and of prefabricated ships (made up of parts manufactured at inland steel works and put together on the coast), had

some influence on the local distribution of the shipbuilding industry. Concrete ships of upwards of 1,000 tons burden were constructed in large numbers during that War, when the saving of steel was important; but they have not come into general use since then, nor have prefabricated ships.

Here may be noted the meaning of tonnage. Cargo tonnage is taken to be the weight of cargo carried, expressed in long tons (2,240 lb.) or short tons (2,000 lb.). Actually 40 cubic feet of cargo is normally reckoned as equivalent to 1 ton. Gross tonnage refers to space measurement, not to weight, 100 cubic feet being reckoned as 1 ton; it is the capacity of the entire space between the frame of the vessel and the deck, together with any closed-in space above deck. Net or register tonnage refers also to space measurement, but from the gross tonnage is deducted the space occupied by engines, gear, crew's quarters, and officers' quarters; it represents, indeed, the space available for cargo and passengers. As in gross tonnage, 100 cubic feet are reckoned as 1 ton. Displacement tonnage refers to the weight of water actually displaced by the vessel when fully laden; it is really the weight of the vessel and its contents when fully laden.

There has been a steady increase in the size and speed of vessels, especially passenger vessels, built for the great routes of commerce. The ships in which the great voyages of discovery were made in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries were, according to our standard, very small. The largest of the three caravels with which Columbus discovered the New World was of only 100 tons burden (cargo tonnage). But let us not be misled by such figures as to the average dimensions of the merchant vessels of the period. Small vessels were often purposely chosen for voyages of discovery, as being better fitted for the exploration of unknown coasts. This is still true in Antarctic exploration. Even in the twelfth century, an average-sized merchantman in the Mediterranean appears to have had accommodation below deck for about 250 tons of cargo, besides a considerable cargo above deck.

Nowadays, ordinary cargo steamers ('ocean tramps') are built with a cargo capacity (dead weight) of 5,000 to 9,000 tons, and to run at a speed of 10 to 11 knots. The average liner is of more than 10,000 tons burden; and so greatly has the speed been increased, that the average of such liners is from 12 to 16 knots or nautical miles per hour. The largest ships are many times that size and twice as fast. In 1939 two liners of over 80,000 gross tons were regularly crossing the Atlantic, and a third was nearing completion. The first of these, the French *Normandie* (83,423 tons), launched in 1935, set up a new record for the transatlantic crossing, with an average speed of over 30 knots per hour, but the 'Blue Riband' of the Atlantic was wrested from her in 1938, when the British *Queen Mary*

(81,237 tons) made the crossing at the rate of 31·69 knots. The third and largest, the British *Queen Elizabeth* (83,673 tons), saw her first service as a troopship in the Second World War, and the other two mammoths were among the many great merchant ships used for that purpose. All three survived the war, but soon afterwards the *Normandie* was destroyed by fire in New York harbour.

Since then the 'Blue Riband' has been captured by a smaller but more heavily powered vessel, the *United States*, built not only for passenger and cargo traffic but for possible war service. With a tonnage of only 53,329, she crossed the Atlantic on her maiden voyage in July 1952 at the average speed of 35·59 knots, covering the 2,942 nautical miles between the Ambrose Light-vessel and Bishop Rock in 3 days, 10 hours, and 40 minutes. On the return voyage the speed averaged just over 36 knots.

From the mammoth 'Queens' there is a big drop in gross tonnage to the next largest liners, which are the *United States*, as noticed above, and the French *Liberté* (formerly the German *Europa*), 51,839 tons; but there are five with a gross tonnage of between 30,000 and 45,000, and over a score between 25,000 and 30,000, including the largest motor ship, the *Britannic* (27,666 tons). Oil tankers now rival the biggest liner tonnages.

The increase in the size of steamers has been, in part, a natural result of the increase of speed. The more rapid rate of progress has been achieved, to a large extent, at the expense of an increased consumption of coal or oil; so that on a long voyage a large amount of space is required merely for the accommodation of the fuel. But the higher speed is not solely due to this cause. Improvements in the construction of marine engines have in some cases given increased speed with economy of fuel. One of the most important of these improvements was the invention of the tri-compound or triple-expansion marine engine, in which the steam is passed in succession into three cylinders, so as to act on three pistons and utilise its expansive force to the utmost. By such improvements the consumption of fuel had in 1897 been reduced since the early days of steam navigation from between 5 and 7 lb. to about 2 lb. per indicated horse-power per hour. In recent years the steam turbine has been applied almost universally in marine engines. In such engines the steam, instead of acting on opposite sides of a piston reciprocally, is made to impinge continuously on a series of blades fixed to a revolving drum. By such an engine a speed of upwards of 36 knots was attained on torpedo-destroyers in 1918. Here also may be noted the increasing use of oil-fuel and Diesel oil-engines in ocean steamers, and of petrol motors on inland waterways, as well as barges drawn by tugs at sea. In June 1920 two of the largest ocean-liners were equipped for the use of oil-fuel, for though oil was dearer than coal it presented in addition to



other recommendations the great advantages at sea of reduced bunkering space (little more than half that required for coal), the reduction of the crew by about 50 per cent. in consequence of no stokers being needed, and a great reduction of the time required for replenishing the fuel supply. The British Navy has also largely been converted to oil-fuel, and many liners have followed suit.

Until the Second World War the proportion of motor-ships to steamers was rapidly increasing, especially in foreign countries. In 1924 the gross tonnage of motor vessels building was stated to be nearly a third of the total tonnage building, though in British yards it was only a quarter. In 1929 the tonnage of motor ships building in the world was more than half of the total vessels under construction. In 1939, motor ships represented nearly a quarter (24 per cent.) of the world's total tonnage, and sailing ships had dropped to 1.3 per cent. During the war the proportion of motor ships dropped to 20 per cent., and that of sailing ships to 1 per cent., while the proportion of steamers rose to 79 per cent. This was due to the large numbers of steamers (burning oil-fuel) built in the United States during the war. But in 1956 motor-ship tonnage was over a third of the total, and among ships launched in that year motor ships provided 60 per cent. of the tonnage.

One consequence of the increase in the size and speed of ships has been the increase in the size and depth of the harbours belonging to the great seaports, or the establishment of outer ports for the accommodation of vessels unable to reach older ports in the neighbourhood. While such changes are brought about, it is obvious that in the competition between different countries, a great advantage belongs to those which are rich in deep and capacious natural harbours, or such as require least outlay to adapt them to the requirements of the present day.

Another less obvious but very important consequence of the same improvements has been an incalculable increase in the security of sea voyages. This has been brought about in two ways. First, the large vessels and especially the large steamers of the present time are much less liable to be wrecked by storms than the smaller vessels of past days. Second, it is the introduction of steamers that has made it possible to sweep pirates away from the sea, a service for which the world is indebted chiefly to the British Navy and mercantile marine. People who are acquainted with only present conditions cannot but be astonished on learning of the losses that formerly took place on ocean voyages. Of the 86 ships sent to the East by the English East India Company in the first 21 years of its existence (1601-21) only 36 returned with cargoes, the others having been captured, lost, or become worn out. In the ten years 1590 to 1599, 33 large carracks left India for Europe, but of these only 16 reached Lisbon. On the route from India to Japan at that time

we are told that out of nine starting on the three years' enterprise, only four might be expected to return. The average life of a carrack is given as apparently about three years.

Heavy as were these initial losses it was possible, only a few decades later, to take out a marine insurance policy from Macassar or Bantam to London at a rate of 5 per cent. This is the rate quoted in a policy, of which Lloyd's have a reproduction, dated February 1656. It is the oldest marine insurance policy in the United Kingdom, but others still older are on record elsewhere.

**Ocean Trade Routes.**—The route by which goods are conveyed by sea to their ultimate destination depends not only on the relative situation of the place of origin and the destination of the commodities, but on many circumstances, some connected with the nature of the commodities, some with the type of vessel used.

To understand how the nature of the commodities carried affects the route, two important considerations must be borne in mind. First, it causes expense to transfer goods from one vehicle (whether ship, railway wagon, or cart) to another. It is therefore an advantage to convey goods directly from the port which serves the district where the goods are obtained to that which serves the district in which they are ultimately sold. But, second, it is cheapest to convey goods in the largest possible vessels, provided that those vessels can be filled. This frequently makes it cheaper on the whole to incur extra costs in unloading and reloading (handling expenses), and send goods first in smaller quantities to a great port, from which they are sent in large vessels to another great port, from which again they may be sent by sea to some other port nearer their final destination.

It is bulky goods, and especially such as involve great labour in handling, like coal, timber, ores, and clays, that are most likely to be carried direct, for the quantity of such goods that may be required in a small district may be enough to fill a larger or smaller ship, and thus bring about the greatest possible saving in handling. That is why so many small British and Irish seaports import timber directly from abroad, why small ports in Cornwall and Devon send off entire cargoes of China and other clay, and why formerly so many British ports sometimes exported coal in small vessels and so many small foreign ports received British coal. Such bulky commodities as these are often useful as return or ballast cargoes, helping to reduce the freight charge in one direction by forming the whole or part of a cargo in the opposite direction. The importance of coal to British commerce in this way has often been emphasised, but salt, cement, clays, and even bricks also aid British commerce in the same way. China clay sometimes serves as a return cargo from England even to the United States. Though in value bricks form an absolutely insignificant article of export from the

United Kingdom, the weight of bricks annually exported before the First World War was probably one-fourth or one-fifth of the weight of cotton piece goods exported. It was return cargoes of wood-pulp and other timber products that favoured the temporary rise after that War of an export trade in coal from the United States to Sweden.

On the other hand, the economy of carrying in large ships explains why tea, coffee, spices, and other commodities sent from the East to the United Kingdom come almost entirely first to London, it may be in ships that are largely filled with bulky commodities. Of all these commodities much greater quantities are used in London itself than in any other centre of the country; but great quantities are also sent away by rail from London, and great quantities by sea to both British and foreign ports with which London carries on a regular trade. The daily shipping reports show how many ships come to the large ports laden with 'general cargoes,' that is, cargoes composed of many kinds of goods brought together to get the advantage of carriage in large ships. Naturally, most 'liners' which run to definite schedules, on definite routes, carry general cargoes. 'Tramps', on the other hand, tend to specialise in bulk cargoes. The goods for which sailing-vessels are still sometimes used are also those bulky goods which have been instanced as likely to make up whole cargoes.

It is obvious that the advantage of carrying in large ships will be the greater the longer the distance that goods are so carried. That is one way in which the relation of the place of origin to the destination of goods affects the route followed. It is one reason why the Eastern goods mentioned come chiefly to London in the first instance, and also the reason why the bulk of Australasian and Cape wool imported into England comes first to London, even though not a pound of it is worked up there, but all has to be sent away either to Bradford or some other town at home or abroad.

Economy of transport is a secondary consideration in the case of perishable goods, such as fresh meat, vegetables, fruit and flowers, butter and eggs; or goods of high value in proportion to their bulk, such as mails; or smaller but valuable manufactured goods. These are taken by the quickest routes in spite of the increased cost per mile, and may often be transferred from sea to land, and then again from land to sea if necessary, for the sake of speed.

The table opposite, based on *Lloyd's Register of Shipping*, shows the British and World totals of shipping at intervals from 1900 to 1950. The increase in the average tonnage of steam and motor ships, and the lessening fraction which British ships form of the total, will be noted. Later figures show the same tendency. In 1956 the returns were: World total of steamers and motor ships, 33,052 vessels of 105.2m. gross tons; British Commonwealth, 8,105 vessels of 23.6m. gross tons. In other words, in the first half of the twentieth century

Atlantic more or less obliquely to both trade-winds, and, keeping well to the west of the Azores, had a good chance of favourable winds—the prevailing south-westerlies—up the Straits of Dover.

Steamer routes are almost independent of winds and currents. Where practicable, the shortest route from port to port is adopted by steamers, and that is a route following an arc of a great circle of the earth, in other words, a circle of which the centre of the earth is the centre. Hence, where the route is from north to south or the reverse a meridian is followed, but where the route is from east to west it is only on the equator that the route lies along a parallel of latitude. As these parallels become shorter and shorter towards the poles, the shortest or great circle routes deviate more and more from the parallels as the poles are approached. The farther north an east to west route lies in the northern hemisphere the more will it curve towards the north from the parallel connecting places at the ends of the route; in the opposite hemisphere the more will it curve to the south as one nears the south pole. In the northern hemisphere, if the route is to a port lying north-east of the starting-point, the great circle route will be represented on a map drawn on Mercator's projection<sup>1</sup> by a curved line lying to the north-west of the straight line connecting the starting-point with the destination; if the course is from north-west to south-east, the curve will lie to the north-east of the line joining the two ends. If the course is from south-west to north-east in the southern hemisphere the curve on the map will lie to the south-east, and if from north-west to south-east it will lie to the south-west of the respective straight lines joining the points of departure and arrival.

It is only on a globe that great circle routes can be at once seen and measured. This is done by means of a flexible strip of brass called a quadrant, marked in degrees of the earth's equator according to the scale of the globe for which it is constructed. Each degree (approximately 69 miles) represents 60 nautical miles,<sup>2</sup> the unit in which ocean distances are usually stated.

To take great circle courses, however, is not always practicable. The relations of sea and land may prevent it, and so also may the character of the climate. For example, the great circle route from Cape Town to Wellington, New Zealand, goes to the south of the Antarctic Circle, and for that reason a more northerly though longer route is preferred.

Among frequented ocean routes those in which great circle sailing causes the most marked deviation from the parallels of latitude are those of the North Pacific, where very wide stretches of

<sup>1</sup> Mercator's is the only projection on which all directions referred to points of the compass are shown by straight lines. That is why this projection is nearly always used for marine charts.

<sup>2</sup> One nautical mile = 1.1507 statute mile.

ocean have to be crossed between the ports of North America and those of eastern Asia. Yokohama is in a more southerly latitude than San Francisco, yet a steamer sailing for Yokohama from San Francisco (under  $38^{\circ}$  N.) begins by sailing north-westwards, and describes a curve which rises to about  $48^{\circ}$  N. The route from Vancouver or Puget Sound to Yokohama passes just south of the Aleutian Islands. In the narrower waters of the North Atlantic the rise of the east-west great circle routes to the north of the parallels is not so striking, especially since Newfoundland lies in the way on any great circle from the south of Ireland to any American port north of Cape Hatteras. The trend of the coast-line south of that cape is almost on the line of a great circle passing thence to the south of Ireland, and hence it happens that the routes to all American ports between Nova Scotia and the Gulf of Mexico are almost identical from about the meridian of  $60^{\circ}$  W. (i.e. just west of Newfoundland) eastwards to the English Channel, and this is accordingly the busiest tract of the ocean. On the busy tracts of the transatlantic traffic, Atlantic lanes, as they are called, are prescribed for the sake of safety for east and west bound vessels respectively, varying according to the period of the year.

In some cases the route is slightly modified by the position of coaling-stations or oiling-bases. Next to the North Atlantic route, the most frequented is that through the Suez Canal, which is the meeting-place of all European and North Atlantic lines to East Africa and the Far East, and most of those to Australia and New Zealand. The part from the Straits of Gibraltar to the mouth of the Gulf of Aden is common to most of the lines following these routes. On this section the chief fuelling-stations are Gibraltar, Marseilles, Algiers, Port Said, and Aden. These fuelling-stations are also great *entrepôts*. At Gibraltar and Port Said many goods are landed by vessels entering the Mediterranean from the west or east respectively for ports of the Mediterranean or the Black Sea, at which the vessels landing the goods do not call. Aden is a place at which goods for East Africa can be dropped by steamers belonging to eastern Asiatic and Australasian lines, and goods from East Africa can be picked up by steamers of the same lines. Colombo is the fuelling-station and *entrepôt* where the lines that pass round the south of Australia diverge from the Far Eastern route. Singapore is the chief fuelling-station and *entrepôt*, and Jakarta a minor but still important port, for vessels going farther east, and at one or other of these the lines diverge that go round the north of Australia. The main route to the east continues on to Hong Kong, Shanghai, Nagasaki, and Yokohama, all great fuelling-stations and the first two great *entrepôts*, Hong Kong for southern China, and (until the Communist régime) Shanghai for the Yangtse valley and northern China. Important branch lines proceed from Singapore to the ports

of Indo-China, to North Borneo and to Manila in the Philippine Islands.

In the North Atlantic Ocean, Las Palmas, Tenerife, and Madeira are important ports of call both on the route to Cape Town and on the route to all the South American ports south of Cape St. Roque, at the eastern shoulder of the continent. St. Vincent, one of the Cape Verde Islands, is also a well-known fuelling base for ships trading with South America (see p. 718). Norfolk, on the coast of Virginia, a place of shipment of the excellent steam-coal of the Pocahontas coal-field, distant about 400 miles by rail, is frequently visited for coal by vessels returning from the Gulf of Mexico to the English Channel or the Irish Sea; and since the opening of the Panama Canal the adjacent port of Newport News has become a great coaling-place on that route. St. Thomas, one of the American Virgin Islands, and St. Lucia, one of the Windward Islands (British), are fuelling-stations in the West Indies too, visited on routes from North to South America or from Europe to Central and northern South America. St. Michael in the Azores may serve the same purpose both for steamers plying between north-western Europe and the West Indies and between North America and the Mediterranean.

In the South Atlantic the chief coaling- and oiling-stations are Cape Town and Buenos Aires. On the American seaboard of the Pacific the great fuelling-station between San Francisco and Concepcion Bay (Chile), where coal-mines exist close to the sea, is Balbao, at the entrance to the Panama Canal. Honolulu is a fuelling-base on the routes from western North America to Australia and New Zealand, and Durban is of importance on the Indian Ocean, drawing its supplies from the Natal coal-fields.

**8. Aviation.**—The most striking development in twentieth-century transport has been the coming of the aeroplane. The English Channel was first crossed by a heavier-than-air machine in 1910. Both aeroplanes and airships developed rapidly and became only too familiar during the First World War. The airship did not long survive. The German type, the Zeppelin, named after its designer Count Zeppelin, met with some success in civil transport, but British and American experiments were abandoned after repeated disasters, and German interest also practically ceased in 1937 when the latest Zeppelin burst into flames in New Jersey after a transatlantic flight.

On the other hand, heavier-than-air machines—both landplanes and flying boats—became a more and more important factor in modern transport. Between the two great wars the world was covered by a network of regular air services, trans-oceanic and trans-continental as well as national. British and Dutch, French, Belgian, and American companies were prominent in developing

long-distance routes. When the Second World War broke out, the principal British company, Imperial Airways, was operating regular services, mostly with flying boats, linking up with the Middle East, India, Burma, Siam, Singapore, Hong Kong, and Australia, as well as with Central, West, and South Africa. In 1940 Imperial Airways was merged with British Airways into a single Government-owned, non-profit-making corporation, known as British Overseas Airways Corporation (B.O.A.C.). This was employed in the war in maintaining lines of communication, opening new routes, and transporting military personnel, supplies, urgent dispatches, &c.; its aircraft flew over 57m. miles on war service, and carried nearly 300,000 passengers and a quarter of a million tons of cargo and mail.

The Civil Aviation Act of 1946 created two new corporations—British European Airways and British South American Airways; but in 1949 the latter was merged in B.O.A.C., which in addition to the long-distance Empire services is responsible for the routes to Canada and the United States pioneered during the war. Each corporation is Government-owned, with its own Board of Directors appointed by the Minister of Civil Aviation, who has the right to say what routes shall be flown. Only the corporations or their associates can operate scheduled services; but private companies may run charter services, and some private companies are operating scheduled air services as associates of British European Airways (B.E.A.).

International as well as national controls have been set up. Following an international conference in Chicago at the end of 1944, the Chicago Convention came into force in 1947. Provision was made for an International Civil Aviation Organisation (I.C.A.O.), which in June 1957 numbered 71 member states. Its chief task is to develop international rules to govern civil air operations in the interests of the safe and orderly development of civil flying. Within the British Commonwealth there has also been set up a Commonwealth Air Transport Council.

In 1955 the distance flown on world scheduled services, outside the Soviet Union and China, was 1,404m. miles, compared with 186m. miles in 1938—a seven-fold increase. Including Alaska, the United States accounted for more than half the total in 1955, its scheduled flights extending to 780m. miles. The most extensive system of internal air services in the world has been built up by the United States, favoured by its large territory, free from the artificial barriers of political frontiers. The United Kingdom, though it cannot compete with the States in either extent or population, operates through the B.E.A. and the B.O.A.C. a world-network of services. All told, including domestic services, 67·7m. miles were flown on United Kingdom scheduled operations in 1955; 2·9m. passengers

were carried, and 117,000 short tons of freight and mail. In general air traffic between the United Kingdom and abroad, more than half the passengers were carried in aircraft registered in the United Kingdom.

The development of air transport has been made possible by the increased speed and range of modern four-engined civil aircraft, of which the latest example is the jet-propelled air-liner. Their pressurised cabins enable them to fly at about 40,000 feet, above storms and bad weather, at speeds of four or five hundred miles per hour.

**Handling.**—A serious element in the cost of transport is what comes under the head of handling or the transference of the goods from one means of transport to another, or to the place where they are required by the purchaser. So greatly has the cost of transport been cheapened that in some cases the final handling is dearer than the carriage of the goods for great distances. It has been stated that a ton of coal is carried the thousand miles from Buffalo to Duluth for about the cost of shovelling it from the side-walk into the cellar. It is these handling charges, together with the cost of the delivery of goods to the customer or the collection of goods from the customer by cart or motor-wagon, that make up the terminal charges which British railways reckon and which in certain cases form a very high proportion of the total freight rate. The importance of avoiding numerous handlings of commodities in the course of transport thus becomes obvious. Before the opening of the Panama Canal it was necessary for the goods to be loaded and unloaded six times between New York and the wharves at Guayaquil on the coast of Ecuador. The general tendency of the modern developments of transport has been to reduce the number of such handlings and to introduce more economical methods. The fact that railways, on which the same wagon may be sent over thousands of miles on interconnected lines, reduce the necessity for handlings has already been implicitly referred to as one of the great advantages of this means of transport. Among modern methods of handling may be mentioned the use of large grabs or mechanical shovels capable of lifting ten tons at a time, the equipment of wharves and railway sidings with powerful cranes worked by electric motors, the use of endless bands for the horizontal transmission of commodities like grain from warehouses to ships, and of bands or chains provided with hooks or other holders for lifting. Large truckloads of coal and other commodities can be emptied through shoots into the holds of vessels, and it is possible to load a vessel of nearly 10,000 tons with iron ore in 20 minutes. On the Aire and Calder Canal trains of boats containing coal for export at Goole are made in sections of 35 tons, and each section is lifted separately and emptied at once of its contents. It is one of the advantages of grain that it can be handled like water, so that it can be sucked up



from the holds of vessels. Petroleum is transmitted for long distances from the oilfields in great pipes (pp. 267-70).

**POSTS AND TELEGRAPHS.** Cheap postage is another of the gains to commerce that have accrued since 1800. The penny post was introduced in the United Kingdom in 1840, and though the two World Wars have increased the nominal postage rates, they are little if any more in relation to the value of money then and now. The International Postal Union owed its foundation to a conference held at Berne in 1874. The practical use of the electric telegraph dates only from 1846 (more than twenty years later than the introduction of steam railways), but the apparatus necessary for its working is so much less costly than that of railways that the spread of the electric telegraph over the world has been even more rapid than the use of steam for locomotion. The first message through a submarine cable (between the South Foreland and the coast of France) was sent on November 13, 1851. In 1866 was laid the first permanently successful submarine cable across the Atlantic Ocean. Since the completion of the cable from Vancouver by way of Fanning, Fiji, and Norfolk Islands to New Zealand and Australia in 1902, all the oceans have their opposite sides connected by this means. Communication by wireless telegraphy on the Marconi system was established between the Lizard, in Cornwall, and the Isle of Wight, a distance of 200 miles, in January 1901, and in 1907 regular communication by the same means was established between Clifden, County Galway, Ireland, and Glace Bay, Nova Scotia. On March 1, 1920, Carnarvon in Wales and Belmar, N.J., U.S.A., were brought into like relation. Now all large and most small vessels, and likewise all aeroplanes, are provided with wireless apparatus; and wireless stations are constructed capable of communicating with all parts of the world. The telephone first became known in its present form at the Philadelphia Exhibition in 1876. Since 1914 rapid progress has been made with wireless-telephony, and by 1919 this was associated with direction-finding apparatus, making it possible for ships to ascertain their positions at sea, by taking bearings on shore wireless stations. In the following year it was so far developed that songs could be heard quite distinctly more than two thousand miles away. The first wireless conversation between London and the United States was held on January 15, 1923. Regular telephonic communication was established early in 1927. It would be difficult to exaggerate the importance of broadcasting information and news by wireless, which is now general in all the more important civilised countries. The effect is most marked in the less accessible portions of regions like Australia and Rhodesia, where individual farms may be separated by a score of miles and formerly received a newspaper perhaps once a week or once a month, but are now in instantaneous receipt of news from the

great centres. A still more recent development in wireless is the beam system whereby messages, instead of being broadcast, can be projected in a definite direction. The beam system was used between England and Canada in 1926.

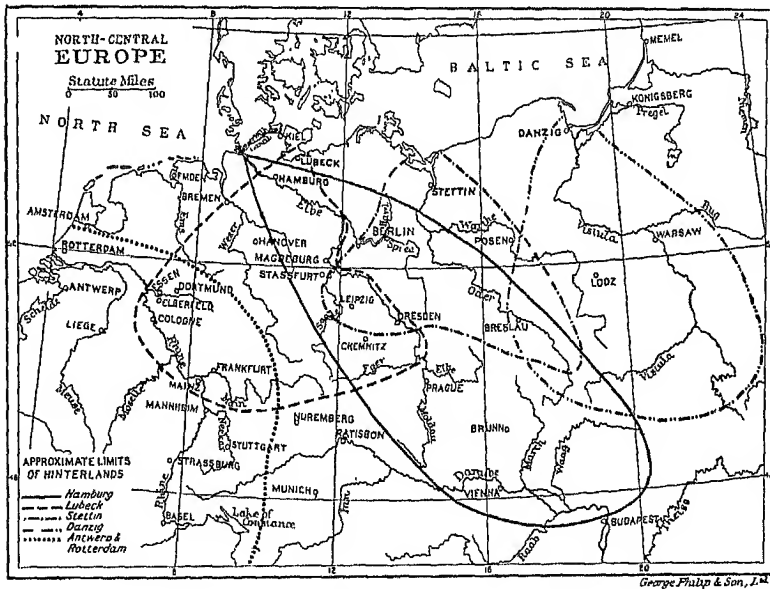
**COMMERCIAL AND INDUSTRIAL TOWNS.** Clearly there are certain places in which it is most convenient for the exchange of commodities on a great scale to take place. These are great business centres, commercial towns; and the situation of these towns in many cases shows that there are special conveniences for exchange that have favoured their rise and growth. All towns are more or less centres of exchange. Whatever else they may be, they are places where stores of goods in common request are kept, so that the inhabitants of the district around may be able to supply their needs, though since the Second World War individual freedom to buy has been limited by government controls, now much reduced.

The special advantages leading to the growth of great business centres may be of very various kinds. The mere fact that a town lies about the middle of a densely peopled district is likely to make it in many cases the most convenient place of exchange for the products of that district and the articles brought from more distant parts to be used within it. Hither are brought in large quantity the various products from the parts in which they most abound, and hence they are sent out again in smaller quantities, along with quantities of other kinds of goods, to the parts in which they are required.

So, too, towns that are situated where the form of the surface in the country round about causes a number of roads to converge are likely to grow up into more or less important business centres. If a town is situated in a comparatively open expanse enclosed by hilly country through which valleys have allowed roads to be made in different directions, it will naturally be the centre of business for the districts to which these roads lead, and its importance as such will probably be in proportion to the productiveness of the surrounding regions. Since roads from a level country will naturally converge towards passes which lead over hills or mountains, towns are apt to arise, in such situations, at the meeting of hill and plain. In like manner, many towns have grown up at spots where for any reason there was a convenient crossing-place on a river by ford or bridge, and many others exist at the confluence of navigable rivers, at marked bends on rivers, or where the superficial configuration leads to the convergence of numerous railways, as at Chicago, Toronto, Winnipeg, or Atlanta.

Business towns likewise spring up in many situations in which the circumstances necessitate a change in the mode of carriage. Of this class of towns, seaports are the most numerous examples. Where goods have to be transferred from any mode of land carriage

to ships, there must necessarily be a town to accommodate those engaged in this transfer. Hence it is that so many of the large towns of the world are seaports, the relative importance of which depends chiefly on the productiveness and accessibility of the regions served by them, or, in a single word, of their hinterlands, and the facilities which they afford to shipping.



HINTERLANDS.

The term hinterland is one that may be used with reference both to a single seaport and to a seaboard on which there are several seaports, and may be defined as the land which lies behind a seaport or a seaboard and supplies the bulk of the exports, and in which are distributed the bulk of the imports of that seaport or seaboard, either generally or in relation to certain uses. The necessity for the first clause in this definition arises from the way in which the outline of the land sometimes determines the port with which an inland region communicates in its relations with different parts of the world. Thus the West Riding of Yorkshire may be included in the hinterland of Liverpool for Irish and even a considerable amount of transatlantic trade, but for North Sea trade it obviously belongs to the hinterland of Hull, Goole, or Grimsby. The Elbe basin forms the chief part of the hinterland of Hamburg in relation to all North Sea and oceanic traffic, but is included in that of Lübeck in relation to the Baltic. Toulouse belongs to the hinterland of Bordeaux for

all traffic except that of the Mediterranean, for which it would naturally make use of Sète or even of Marseilles.

The word, which is of German origin, was introduced into English about 1884, in connection with the discussions that arose on the occupation of parts of the West African coast. It came at once into general use from the fact of its meeting an obvious requirement. A later extension of hinterland has been to include the land tributary to an urban centre, independently of whether that urban centre is a port.

From some of the examples just given, it will be observed that the hinterlands of different ports may overlap even in relation to the same seas. This arises from the influence on a seaport of shipping facilities and facilities for communication with the hinterland. The hinterlands of Hull and Goole to a large extent coincide, but where the economy of transport effected by the use of large ships is the chief consideration, Hull will be preferred on account of the superior facilities for shipping there afforded, but where smaller vessels serve the requirements of a particular trade, Goole may and probably will have the preference in consequence of being nearer the hinterland. The trade of Quebec may encroach on the hinterland of Montreal, but its distance from that hinterland will prevent it from doing so except in the case of such traffic as is greatly promoted by rapidity of transit, such as passenger traffic and traffic in the more perishable or more valuable and less bulky commodities. Trade rivalries and the nature of the internal means of communication also affect the competition of ports in the same hinterland, as in the case of Grimsby and Hull. Lastly, it should be pointed out on this head that the extent and importance of a hinterland may be greatly increased by improvements in the means of internal communication, by improvements in the port itself, and particularly by adjustment of inland freight rates.

The frequent necessity for change in the mode of carriage also helps to explain why many towns have grown up at the foot of pass-roads, and the same circumstance likewise explains the precise situation of many towns situated on rivers. Many such towns are situated, or were founded, at the highest point to which rivers could be navigated, or could be ascended by vessels of a certain size; many, where a rapid hinders, or a fall prevents, further navigation. To one or other such points goods are, or were formerly, conveyed by boats, and a town sprang up where they were landed. Other towns on navigable rivers are situated where there is a sudden change in the direction of the stream, because at that point goods had to be landed which were not intended to follow the new direction taken by the river. Even where the navigation of rivers has ceased to be important, the study of navigable rivers must have a permanent place in economic geography on account of their having

determined the original sites of towns, where subsequent growth is due to other causes, in a large measure to the provision of other means of communication. It has been said by Moulton that the location of every city of importance in the eastern part of the United States, with the single exception of Indianapolis, was determined by the possibilities of water transport.

Since the development of machinery, many large towns have sprung up where there is abundance of coal, or coal and iron, or oil, or extensive water-power, the mainsprings of modern industry; and all such towns are more or less business centres. Yet they are often far from being business centres in proportion to the extent of their production. Where numerous manufacturing towns exist on a great coal-field the business of exchange may be centred in one of them that is not pre-eminently itself a manufacturing town. The great magnitude of the business of exchange in such a region is adverse to the carrying on of manufactures in its business centre, for the cost of land, owing to the requirements of merchants and others for offices, &c., becomes so great that it is too expensive to erect large factories. Hence it is that Manchester, in which, according to the estimate of a local manufacturer, is sold probably three-fourths of the cotton-yarn spun, and even a larger proportion of the cotton cloth woven in the United Kingdom, is less of a manufacturing town than many of the smaller towns round about.

What has just been said makes it clear that a variety of influences must be kept in mind as affecting the localisation of industry. These work in combination, in some cases one or two of them having the chief efficacy, in others another group, and unfortunately neither individually nor in association is it possible to measure them. The main localising influences may be considered under the heads of the market, the labour supply, the cost of land, the situation of raw material, the nature and situation of the sources of power, the value of the commodities produced in relation to the cost of their production, and finally the supply of capital.

In connection with influences coming under any of the heads enumerated, two general facts are worthy of note. First, the psychological action of the sense of opportunity as a stimulus to exertion can hardly be exaggerated. 'What is wanted,' says Bertrand Russell, 'in order to keep men full of vitality is opportunity, not only security.' Marshall remarked 'that a man's energies are at their best when he is emerging from poverty and distress into the command of great opportunities'. It is the great function of capital to create opportunities, but economic development is likely to be most rapid where opportunities are most obvious and easiest to turn to account. The second general fact referred to is that great economies can always be effected where it is profitable to work on

a large scale, though that does not imply that there are no economies peculiar to small-scale production.

It is obvious that the profitableness of large-scale operations must depend on the adequacy of the market, which again is governed by various conditions as (1) the number of people where the industry is carried on; (2) the purchasing power of the people, a great contrast in this respect being presented by China, India, and Africa as compared with Canada, the United States, and other countries in which the purchasing power is enhanced by the diffusion of education, and probably still more by the extent of the undeveloped resources; (3) the nature of the commodity for which a market is sought—cheap goods for peoples of small purchasing power, more valuable commodities for regions in which individual wealth is greater; (4) facilities for transport as enlarging the range of the market. Here it may be noted that the aim of a protective or preferential tariff is to preserve a large home market for the favoured industry or industries. Where the protection afforded is absolute, the whole country embraced by the tariff forms a local market for the protected industry.

As to labour, reference should be made to what has already been said (pp. 64–78), but we may note further that much depends on the opportunity for organising labour, and that while abundant labour necessarily involves the presence of a more or less important market, the degree of its importance must vary in proportion to the purchasing power of the labourers. The cost of land is another fact intimately related to the value of the market as influenced by populousness and purchasing power. Further, a dense population is a great advantage in all matters involving mutual aid. This advantage is usually paid for when a high price is given for land. The consideration as to the value of commodities is intimately connected with that as to labour organisation. Industries concerned with the manufacture of very valuable products of highly skilled labour, such as calculating machines, typewriters, electrical apparatus, &c., may be carried on with advantage in any of a thousand places in a fairly populous region furnishing a large part of the demand, but in such a region the spots affording the greatest facility for distribution will naturally be selected. The supply of capital is another item more or less related to the number of the population, but far from being directly proportioned to its density.

The influence of coal in promoting the growth of towns has been both direct and indirect. If the mines are large and numerous in one locality, the population of miners with their dependants and the shop-keepers required to supply their wants will form a considerable town, but this population is generally increased more or less by the industries to which the presence of the coal gives rise. It is evident, however, from a consideration of the facts of industrial distribution

in different parts of the world, that the influence of coal in attracting industries to the coal-fields varies in different circumstances. The great coal-fields of England and Scotland, of Germany, Belgium, and the north of France have all become seats of varied industry, but in the United States, the greatest coal-producing country in the world, most of the manufacturing towns lie hundreds of miles away from the coal-mines, even where the power which they use is now mainly derived from coal, and some of the leading textile manufacturing towns of both Germany and France are also at a great distance from the mines.

To understand the very powerful influence that coal has had in attracting manufacturers to the place of its production, one must bear in mind one broad fact, that raw materials tend to attach industries to their place of production in inverse proportion to the amount of the raw material that enters into the final product. A raw material which enters wholly into the manufactured product without leaving any waste can in itself, that is, apart from other favouring circumstances, have little effect in planting an industry where the raw material is found or produced, except where the intrinsic value of a heavy or bulky raw material is extremely small. This is true not only of original raw material but also of such half-manufactured raw materials as are not more bulky and expensive to transport than the materials from which they are made. It is true, for example, of pig-iron and steel blooms and billets, which can be so freely sent great distances both by land and sea to feed the higher branches of the iron industry carried on where other conditions may be more favourable. Conversely, the presence of a raw material of which a large proportion is waste has a tendency to attract the industry making use of it to the material, or at least those stages of the industry which are necessary to get rid of the great bulk of the waste. Hence it is that a large variety of timber products are made by local sawmills in the neighbourhood of the forests from which the timber is obtained, that pulp-wood is locally made into wood-pulp and even paper, tanning and dyeing extracts made locally from wood and bark, sugar generally locally manufactured at least to the stage of 'raw' sugar, coconut kernels dried into copra, cacao beans extracted and dried, metallic ores partially refined on the spot into mattes, and so on. Now when coal is used as fuel, and that is its principal use, no part of the coal enters into the finished product, so that, if it has to be transported, the cost of carriage is an extra which would be wholly saved if the industry for which it is dispatched could be carried on with advantage where the coal is produced, an extra which is all the more serious on account of the great bulk of coal in proportion to its value. True, the tendency of coal to localise industries from this cause may be counteracted by other localising influences, and has been greatly

lessened in recent years by the *indirect* use of the coal as carbo-electricity. As a striking illustration of the way in which some of the advantages just mentioned may combine to localise an industry away from the coal even where coal is used in large amount, one may take brick-making as carried on on a very large scale at Peterborough, England. The raw materials are clay, water, and coal. Neither the water nor the coal enters into the final product, but the clay does so wholly, yet the industry is carried on where the clay, not the coal, is found. But brick-fields cover a great extent of ground, and it would probably be difficult to find land as cheap on the coal-fields as that where the clay lies, and, what is more important, to carry the clay to any coal-field would be carrying it farther away from the great market for the bricks, namely London.

On p. 258 estimates are given of the percentage use of coal for different purposes in the United Kingdom and the United States between the two World Wars, and in Germany before the First World War. The large proportion consumed in the iron and other metal industries is striking. The heaviest consumption is in the blast-furnace and in the making of mild steel and ingot iron; hence it is natural that these industries should be specially attracted to the coal-fields. It is these industries that form the chief exception to the general rule in the United States that the manufacturing towns are not on the coal-fields. Even in the smelting of iron it sometimes happens that the ore is carried to the coal. In other cases so little of the ore enters into the raw iron that there is less waste of haulage in bringing the coal to the ore, especially if the limestone, another material required in smelting as a flux, no part of which enters into the product, is more conveniently accessible from the ore deposits. In yet other cases the advantage of using the means of transport in both directions, instead of having in one direction empty railway wagons or ships in ballast, leads to a reciprocal trade with a smelting industry at both ends. Sometimes again all three raw materials are collected at some convenient point in relation to the transport of the materials, the labour supply, and the means of distribution of the product, as at Middlesbrough in England, and Buffalo, Cleveland, South Chicago, Gary, and Duluth on the Great Lakes of America.

Among finished articles using steel without waste of the raw material, rails and structural steel in particular may be mentioned as manufactured very extensively where the steel is produced, but this is because these are industries that benefit largely by large-scale organisation as well as through the economy arising from using the steel before it has lost the heat given to it in the process of manufacture. Still, the increase in bulk in structural steel adds so much to its cost of transport that it is usually found advantageous to carry on this industry near tide-water or even near a very large



market in spite of the local lack of both coal and iron. The bulkier the final product and the more skilled labour counts for in its production, the less powerful is coal as a factor in determining the seat of an industry, and in such cases the tendency is for the industry to be carried on in the vicinity of the principal market or markets. It is for these reasons that the manufacture of agricultural implements is largely carried on in agricultural districts, as in the east of England and the north-west of America. The large areas required for the plant in these industries, and indeed for many modern industrial plants with their 'horizontal' layout, are another reason for their deserting the more crowded industrial centres. In the textile industries, if other conditions are equal, the advantages of local coal (or water-power) may be decisive provided the local supplies of soft water are good, but there are abundant examples to show that these industries also are easily deflected from the source of power.

Where the advantage of local coal is the main cause or one of the main causes of establishing industries employing a good deal of labour, other industries to which cheap coal is not of such vital importance may be set up in the same places on account of the labour supply thus afforded. The contiguity of various industries favours all of them in so far as it facilitates the shifting of the workers from industry to industry, or at least from one branch of an industry to another, according to the vicissitudes of trade. Further, light industries using female labour often grow up side by side with heavy industries using male labour, or in areas where the male labour is otherwise employed, *e.g.* in ports.

Central stations for the generation of electric power by coal or central gasworks for the manufacture of gas from coal have become very numerous in recent years, and are now greatly encouraging the dispersal of industries.

All the circumstances mentioned above are manifestly subject to change, and so contribute to fluctuations in industry and commerce. Markets may become more valuable through increase in population or the development of resources previously unused, by improvement in the means of transport, and in other ways. The supply of labour, both skilled and unskilled, may be changed by migration, that of skilled labour locally increased by education and experience. Capital, where scanty and dear in proportion to the undeveloped resources, may be cheapened by local accumulation, by increase in security, or by increasing knowledge in the investing countries of the security actually afforded. In the case of primary raw produce an important distinction must be made between those products which are completely or economically exhaustible, such as minerals and natural fertilisers worked like minerals, and those which can be reproduced indefinitely; and again, among the latter,

between those which can be reproduced annually or even several times in a season (such as clover, alfalfa, &c.), and those which can be reproduced only at intervals of years, such as timber and pulp-wood trees.

As already indicated, the prosperity and relative importance of towns at the present day are in many instances due to other circumstances than those which determined their original situation and favoured their early growth. The very fact that a town exists and has attained a moderate size makes it a more or less convenient centre of exchange, and hence may make it worth while to increase its facilities for this purpose. Growing up, in the first place, it may be, at a point to which roads naturally converged, it became of sufficient importance to have new roads made from it. So in modern times railways have been made to towns because the towns already existed; and now the prosperity of the town is determined by the railways. In many cases the introduction of railways has favoured some towns at the expense of others, which may before their introduction have had a more favourable site. But the importance of such natural advantages as have been indicated in the foregoing pages is still to be seen in situations where towns grow up in new countries. In the older countries what may be called geographical inertia (not leading to change) or geographical momentum are significant.

The great business centres of the present day in populous countries with modern means of transport are normally places in which the staple commodities can be procured at any time in any quantity likely to be wanted; though since the Second World War government restrictions and controls have become a limiting factor in many cases. In less populous and less commercially developed countries, it is still the custom, as it once was more generally, to hold periodical fairs at certain places at stated times. At these fairs merchants congregate from a greater or less area, in proportion to the importance of the transactions carried on, and the local dealers supply themselves with all they are likely to want till the next fair. The places chosen for fairs are naturally, in many cases, such as present peculiar facilities for communication in several directions. In eastern countries, great fairs are often at the same time great religious festivals, as at Mecca in Arabia, Allahabad and Hardwar in India, and the place of the fair is determined chiefly on religious grounds.

All Mohammedans, poor or rich, are enjoined by their religion to proceed at least once in their lives to the sacred city of Mecca. The poor live by the way on alms, but most of those who are better off take with them all their possessions, thinking them well spent in accomplishing this object of devotion, or, if they are rich enough to have goods to spare at the end of their journey, hoping to in-

crease their wealth by trade, which they can do all the more easily because thousands of pilgrims are compelled to part with all they have left for whatever they can get. In certain cases these pilgrimages have been of use in introducing the products of one region into another. The Arabian coffee-plant, for example, is said to have been introduced into southern India by a pilgrim on his return home.

Big trade fairs, both general and particular, are also a feature of business publicity in the Western world. One of world-wide fame is held periodically at Leipzig. A British Industries Fair was held annually for many years in both London and Birmingham, but was discontinued in 1957.

**COMMERCIAL COUNTRIES.** The facilities for exchange that have given to certain towns a high degree of importance as business centres have during certain periods secured to particular countries a peculiarly commanding position in the commerce of the world. In the Middle Ages the most valuable commerce was that between eastern Asia and Europe; and as long as this was carried on through western Asia or by the Red Sea, Italy had peculiar advantages for securing the bulk of that commerce. The ships of Genoa and Venice visited all the coasts of the Mediterranean, the Black Sea, and western Europe, and the commerce with the heart of Europe was carried on by way of the Alpine passes. It is owing to the former pre-eminence of the Italian cities in this trade that so many places in the east of the Mediterranean have Italian names or names of an Italian form. The name *Levant* for the east of the Mediterranean is itself a name of Italian origin; the names *Negroponte*, *Montenegro*, and others are Italian; and *Aleppo* is an Italian form of the local name of that town.

Before the close of the fifteenth century some of the land routes for commerce with the East had already been closed through political events, but the discovery of the sea-way to India round the Cape of Good Hope gave the most serious blow to the eastern trade of the Italian cities. In 1504, a contemporary chronicler records, the galleys of Alexandria returned in February to Venice empty—a thing that had never been seen before, and in March those from Beirut were found to be empty likewise. The chronicle is continued till 1512, and speaks constantly of the scarcity of spices in Venice; in 1506 it is specially noted that at a fair in that year the Germans had bought very little. As early as 1504 a project for cutting a sea-canal through the Isthmus of Suez, with the view of regaining for Venice its lost supremacy, began to be urged. The trade with Germany continued during the whole of the century, and also the following century; but it was in a state of decline. At first eastern commodities were to be purchased at Lisbon, but soon the towns of Flanders and Holland (*Antwerp* and *Rotterdam*)

secured the bulk of the commerce with central Europe. As commerce has grown more world-wide, as the New World has become more populous and more wealthy, the advantage of situation has come to belong to the British Isles, which are nearly in the middle of the land-surface of the globe. This is far from being the sole advantage which Great Britain possesses as a mercantile country, and the nature of its advantages will be more particularly considered elsewhere (pp. 326 *et. seq.*).

**LANGUAGE, &c.** The language of commerce, when carried on between peoples speaking different tongues, is generally of a very mongrel character. In the days when Italian trade was predominant in the Levant, there arose in all the coasts of that region a trade language, the basis of which was a corrupt Italian, but which borrowed numerous words from the local dialects in different places. This language is known as the *lingua franca*, and is still spoken in many of the eastern Mediterranean towns. The dominant languages of commerce at the present day have all begotten corrupt forms of speech of a similar nature. In Chinese ports a mongrel kind of English is spoken, which is known as 'pidgin' English (*pidgin* being the Chinese pronunciation or corruption of *business*). A 'negro English' is spoken in many places on the west coast of Africa, another kind of corrupt English in New Guinea. Arabic is spoken with many corruptions, and much admixture of words derived from other languages throughout the Mohammedan world. Swahili, the language of the mixed Arab and Bantu race in tropical East Africa known as the Swahili, is the common medium of intercourse throughout that region, and even among many Congo tribes, and the Hausa language acts as a sort of *lingua franca* over practically all Africa north of the equator and west of the Nile valley. Hindustani, a dialect of Hindi, has become the *lingua franca* all over northern India and has been carried by Indian seamen (lascars) and Indian traders to most of the great ports of the world, and the Malay language predominates in the Eastern or Malay Archipelago. Spanish is the prevailing language of the New World south of the United States, except in Guiana and Brazil. The wide predominance of Spanish commerce in former days is still seen in the survival of a few Spanish words in more than one *lingua franca*, of which English or some other language forms the basis. More and more, however, with the increase of telegraphy, telephony, and rapid communication, the commercial languages are becoming restricted to those of Europe—English, French, German, Spanish, Italian, and Russian.

**INSTRUMENTS OF EXCHANGE.** Another indispensable means of carrying on trade on a great scale is the existence of some common measure of value. Such a common measure, when it is used for no other purpose, or when chiefly used for that purpose, is

money. In intercourse with uncivilised peoples it is still necessary in at least some cases to resort to barter—that is, to the exchange of articles that are intended for other purposes than media of exchange. In the old trapping days of the Hudson's Bay Company, at the time when beaver-skins were of great value in Europe, a trade gun would buy from the Indians as many beaver-skins as could be piled up on each side of it. Coloured beads, which were worn as ornaments, were another very common means of purchase. In the interior of Africa services and native produce are even now sometimes paid for in kind; in the absence of trading stores a bag of 'mealie meal' (maize flour) is a recognised unit in payment for labour. But the use of regular currencies is now very widespread, and most native races have developed a sense of the European standard of values.

But even where trade is carried on by barter the need for some common measure of value soon comes to be felt, and hence some article of exchange in very general use is adopted as a standard with which the other articles of barter are compared. Thus, in western Africa a piece of cotton-cloth of about six yards in length came to be very generally recognised as a unit of value, and as one yard forms a smaller unit, a piece of cloth six yards long is still usually made up into six folds.

The articles that have been and in some cases still are used as money in different parts of the world are very various. Of all non-metallic kinds of money, that which came into most extensive use was the cowrie-shell (*Cypræa moneta*), which was very largely used in the trade of Africa and southern Asia, as well as in the islands of the Pacific. The home of this shell is the Pacific and Indian Oceans, and shiploads of it were conveyed from the Maldivé Islands, the Philippines, and other island groups to the European ports carrying on trade with the African tribes among which it circulated. In Uganda, at the end of last century, a single cowrie-shell worth 1-800th of a rupee had definite purchasing value, and when a Hut Tax of Rs. 3 was imposed in 1900, cowries came pouring in by the million. At the other extreme, the island of Yap, in the western Carolines, not only had shell money but hoarded communal wealth in the form of large millstones of aragonite (a form of carbonate of lime quarried in the Pelew Islands 200 miles away) measuring up to 18 feet in circumference and weighing up to 3 tons. In ancient Mexico the currency of the country consisted of 'bits of tin stamped with a character like a T; bags of cacao, the value of which was regulated by their size; and, lastly, quills filled with gold-dust'. Even on the Atlantic coast of the United States it was stated, as recently as 1888, that oysters were used as money in a certain district on Chesapeake Bay, an oyster forming the regular subscription of a daily newspaper.

Of all forms of money the most convenient, and those in most general use, are paper notes and metallic coins, and the printing of notes and coining of metals are in all countries a prerogative of the government. Coins are seldom made of any one metal. For convenience of manufacture various alloys are used, but all coins on their issue from the mint ought to possess a definite weight of the principal metal in their composition, whether gold, silver, or copper. The proportion of that metal to the total weight of the coin is called the fineness of the coin.

The value of a coin does not always depend solely on the amount of fine metal which the coin contains. Coined money is of two sorts, which are called respectively standard money and token money. In the former the fine metal used is the standard metal of the country—that is, the metal which ultimately fixes the value of all the coins used in the country. In order that any particular metal should form a perfect standard, the metal in question must be received for coinage in unlimited quantities by the state, the coins made with that metal must be made unlimited legal tender; that is to say, payment in such coins must be declared to be a valid discharge of any debt, however large, whilst there must also be freedom to melt and export the coins. If gold, therefore, is the standard metal of any country, any mining company can take as much gold as it raises to the mint of that country, and receive in exchange the same quantity of gold in the form of coin, with a small reduction, it may be, for the expense of coining. In these circumstances, it is obvious that the value of the gold is represented exactly by the value of the equivalent coin, and the value of the coin will rise and fall with the value of the gold.

It is otherwise, however, with token money. The value of the fine metal in such money is fixed by law in relation to the value of the standard metal. The non-standard metal is not received in unlimited quantity for coinage at the mint; and when the money made with it is merely a token money, it is not made legal tender except in payment of small sums. In the United Kingdom the standard money (sovereigns and half-sovereigns) was withdrawn from circulation during the First World War. Gold remained the standard until abandoned in September 1931, but the greater part of the circulation since the First World War has consisted of full-legal tender paper notes; and this is true of most countries. Where silver or copper coins are mere token money, they represent in face value a greater value, and sometimes a much greater value, than that of the fine metal contained in them. If otherwise there would be a natural tendency to melt the coins for the sake of the metal they contained.

Everybody is familiar with the fact of variations in the price of commodities. Now in gold-standard countries there are not only

variations in the value of these commodities in relation to gold, but also in that of gold in relation to them. In countries not on the gold standard, such as Britain, it is, of course, natural to refer to values in 'sterling' or in the case of the United States to U.S. dollars. Where there has been a greater or smaller change in one direction (whether a rise or fall) of all or nearly all commodities, it will be right to say absolutely that, whatever the cause may have been, there has been a change in the value of gold. When distant dates are compared (intervals of a generation, or one, two, or three centuries, for example) it is nearly always found that such a change in value has occurred. This is not the place to elucidate the nature and cause of such changes, but it is important to bear in mind that, whereas statistics of commerce in which values are expressed in the same standard coin afford a more or less satisfactory means of comparing different countries at the same period, they are far from being so satisfactory as a means of comparing the commerce of the same country at widely different dates. The sum of £5m. considered in respect of 'purchasing power' was very different in (say) 1880 from the same sum in 1920, and the difference was still greater after the Second World War. These considerations make it extremely difficult to compare pre-war and post-war trade and resort is often had to the *weights* of the chief commodities.

Money in the form of coin is used only to a very limited extent in the discharge of pecuniary obligations, whether the parties belong to the same country or to different countries. The equivalent of coin in paper is the more usual mode of payment in the case of all but small transactions, and the proportion of debts discharged in this way is generally greater in proportion to the commercial development of the country in which the transactions occur.

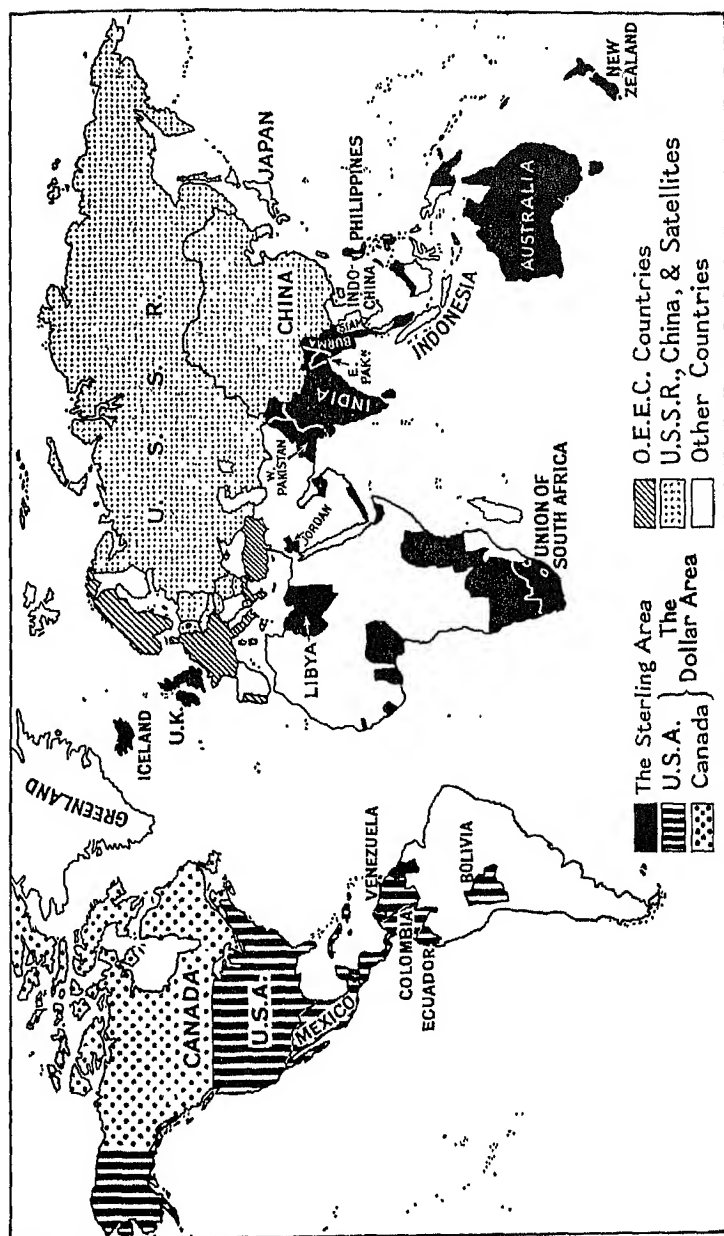
Whatever the form of a paper circulation may be, its efficiency as a perfect substitute for coins depends on the fact of the holder of the paper being able to obtain the equivalent in coin whenever he wishes it. In payments made within the bounds of any particular country, the most usual substitutes for coin are bank-notes and cheques. Bank-notes are promises of a bank to pay; in England only the Bank of England can issue them. Cheques are orders to a bank to pay, made by persons who have money to their credit in the banks on which the orders are made. In large transactions, payment is very often made in the form of a bill of exchange, which is a demand upon a merchant to pay at a certain date a certain sum of money for goods which he has received. Such a demand is usually presented to the merchant on whom it is drawn for his acceptance, which he signifies by his signature, and when accepted by him it becomes a valid claim against him. The details in connection with the use of bills of exchange are far too numerous to be mentioned here. It is usually in connection with such bills that

the rate of exchange between different countries is spoken of. Bills of exchange are very generally made use of in settling debts between persons belonging to different countries, because they are a cheaper method of doing so than using coins for the purpose. If gold coin or bullion were sent, the cost of its carriage would have to be paid for; it would have to be insured, and other expenses would have to be incurred. It is obviously, therefore, a cheaper method for a merchant who has a claim against him in another country to send over an equivalent claim which somebody else may have on some one in that country. He buys that claim in the form of a bill of exchange, and the price which he has to pay for it varies according to circumstances. It varies according to the credit of the person or persons who accept responsibility for the bill, according to the date at which it becomes due (being obviously of less value if payable three months after date than if payable at sight); and even with the 'best' bills—that is, those secured in the most satisfactory way by the credit of the responsible parties—it varies according to the state of trade between different countries. When the bills procurable in one country, A, payable by importers in another country, B, are greater in value than those available in B and payable by importers in A (which is equivalent to saying, when A has exported to B a greater value than B to A), then A will have more bills than are necessary to meet the claims of B. Those holding such bills in A will, accordingly, be unable to get as good a price for bills as those in B who hold bills on A. They will be glad to sell them at as good a price as they can get, for they run the risk of being unable to find a customer for them, and hence being obliged to bear the expense of having coin sent over to them in discharge of their claims. Holders of bills in B which are payable in A, on the other hand, will find that there is a great demand for their bills on the part of persons who fear lest they may have to bear the expense of sending coin over in discharge of their debts, and the holders will ask as high a price as they can exact.

Enough has been said to make three facts of importance manifest; first, that the rate of exchange for the equivalents of the same coins may be different in one country from what it is in the other (which, in fact, it usually is); second, that there may be differences in the rate of exchange between countries having the same standard coin (as England and Australia); and third, that in normal circumstances the extreme limit of fluctuation in the rate of exchange for bills payable at sight, above or below the exact equivalent of the coinage of the one country in the coinage of the other, must be the cost of transmitting the coin itself.

Much that is said in the preceding paragraphs is no longer applicable all over the world because of varying degrees of currency control adopted by most countries, especially during and since the





## CURRENCY AREAS OF THE WORLD 1939 AND SOME OTHER GROUPINGS OF ASSOCIATED COUNTRIES

The organisation for European Economic Co-operation (O.E.E.C.) comprises sixteen countries, viz. the thirteen shown above with distinctive shading and described in the key as O.E.E.C. countries (Austria, Belgium, Denmark, France, Greece, Italy, Luxembourg, Netherlands, Norway, Portugal, Sweden, Switzerland and Turkey) also three countries included in the Sterling Area (the United Kingdom, Irish Republic and Iceland). Since October 1949 Germany has been represented by the Government of the Federal Republic (Western Germany).

Second World War. A map has been included to show the chief currency regions of which a good example is the 'Sterling Area'. Within this area sterling—i.e. the British pound—is freely exchangeable and may be freely remitted from one country to another. Government permission, on the other hand, is needed before sterling can be remitted outside the sterling area by residents. For private use, such as pleasure journeys from Britain to the continent of Europe, only small amounts are permitted; for business purposes the Government Agent, such as the Foreign Exchange Control of the Bank of England, decides whether a request for foreign currency is justified or not.

## COMMODITIES

### I. COMMODITIES DEPENDENT DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY ON CLIMATE

#### *A. Products of the Temperate Zone*

**WHEAT.** This, the most valuable of all the grains of temperate climates, has been cultivated from the remotest antiquity. The remains discovered at the lake-dwellings of Switzerland belonging to the Neolithic period, or New Stone Age, show that at that time, long before the beginning of written history, as many as five different varieties of wheat were already in cultivation. The crop early acquired an important place as an object of agriculture in all parts of the temperate zone in the Old World where the climate was favourable to it, and gradually extended its domain at the expense of other crops which in certain regions were more easily grown, but which yielded a less valuable grain. Though in the New World wheat, like most other grain crops, was unknown in the time of Columbus, its cultivation has since spread there to such an extent that Europe now makes up by supplies obtained thence the greater part of her own deficiency in this cereal. In Australia also this grain is now in general cultivation, and in fact there are few parts of the world with a suitable climate and a sufficient population where wheat is still unknown.

A crop so valuable, so widespread, and so long in cultivation could not fail to exhibit a great number of **varieties** and to show the result of past care in improved quality. The varieties of wheat cultivated at the present day yield larger grains than those of the ancient lake-dwellings. The number of the varieties now grown is probably in a literal sense countless, new varieties constantly being produced. Very often these varieties, as in the case of other cultivated plants, manifest strong local preferences, and do not flourish except in particular regions. The seeds of English wheat fail in India; and, on the other hand, the wheat-growing region of northern India, in which the crop has to ripen during the cool season before the advent of the scorching heats of summer, has developed varieties of wheat which ripen in a shorter period than those of colder climates, but which pine and dwindle when an attempt is made to grow them in England. It is still more important that varieties have been de-

veloped which ripen in the short summers of the Canadian north-west and Siberia. Not only does the behaviour of the crop under cultivation thus vary in different regions, but there is also a difference in the composition of the grain derived from crops grown in different parts of the world.

The **best soil** for the cultivation of wheat is one in which clay predominates, but which is not too stiff and heavy. As regards **climate**, wheat demands a higher temperature than any of the ordinary cereals of the temperate zone, except maize, so that its northern limit lies to the south of those of oats, rye, and barley. Further details of soil and climate best adapted for wheat are given in the following extracts from the report in the Tenth Census of the United States.

‘As regards soils, we may say in a general way that light clays and heavy loams are the best for wheat. On the one hand, very heavy clays often produce good crops, both as to yield and as to quality; and, on the other hand, the lighter soils may yield a good quality—it is simply smaller in quantity. The best crops, however, come from moderately stiff soils, but any fertile soil will produce good wheat if all the other conditions are favourable. Good wheat-lands agree in this: that they are sufficiently rolling for natural drainage, are at the same time level enough to admit of the use of field machinery, and are easily tilled, admitting the use of light field implements in their tillage, and thus allowing of a very large production of grain in proportion to the amount of human labour employed.’ It was because of the cost of ploughing clay land (requiring a three-horse plough in place of the usual one- or two-horse) that heavy soils went out of cultivation in England before the use of tractors again altered the position.

‘For commercial as well as agricultural success, climate is an all-controlling condition. Wheat is normally a winter annual. For a good crop the seed must germinate and the young plant grow during the cool and moist part of the year, which season determines the ultimate density of growth on the ground, and consequently mostly determines the yield. It ripens in the warmer and drier parts of the year, which season more largely determines the quality, plumpness, and colour of the grain. In climates with winters so cold that all vegetable growth is suspended, we have two distinct classes of varieties, known respectively as spring and winter wheats [*i.e.* wheats sown in spring and in winter]. . . . In California, and in similar climates, as in Egypt, this distinction does not exist in respect to their cultivation, although the varieties partake more of the character of winter wheats than of spring, both in their mode of growth and in the character of the flour made from them. But in all climates, and whatever variety may be grown, the crop must be sown and have its early growth in a cool part of the year. Wheat branches [“tillers”] only at the ground, and produces no more heads than stalks, and it

only sends out these branches early in its growth or during cool weather, and when the growth is comparatively slow. A cool, prolonged, and rather wet spring is therefore best for the ultimate yield of the crop, a warm, rather dry, rapidly growing, and early spring diminishes the yield; there are then fewer stalks, and the heads are fewer.' It is thus clear why the great mid-continent grasslands of the world (see pp. 42-3), with their spring rains, favour wheat cultivation.

'In a country of cold winters, for good crops it is better that the ground be continuously covered with snow. Bare ground, freezing and thawing, now exposed to cold and dry winds, and now to warm sunshine, is exceedingly destructive to wheat. It "winter-kills" in two ways: it may be frozen to death by cold, dry winds, or, as is more often the case, particularly in soils rich in vegetable matter, it "heaves out", and by the alternate freezing and thawing of the surface soil the roots are lifted out of the soil and the young plant perishes.' A little before the time of harvest, some moisture is required to 'swell the grain'.

'The quality of the grain is largely determined by the climate, a hot, dry, and sunny harvest-time being best for wheat of the first grade. The wheat of sunny climates—those of California, Egypt, Northern Africa, and similar countries—has always ranked high for quality. The particularly bright character of American grain depends upon the climate rather than upon the soil. The sunny climate of the whole United States south and west of New England is favourable for this, and from the time of the first settlement of the colonies the bright colour of American grain as compared with that of Northern Europe, particularly that of Great Britain, has been remarked.'

The following table, based on figures in a report published by the Commonwealth Economic Committee, gives examples of the average yields of wheat in bushels per acre in different countries in 1955-56. A bushel weighs 60 lb.

Countries.	Bushels.	Countries.	Bushels.	Countries.	Bushels.
Netherlands .	58	Italy .	27	United States .	20
Denmark .	57	W. Germany .	43	Canada .	23
Belgium .	56	India .	12	Argentina .	20
United Kingdom .	50	Pakistan .	11	Australia .	19
France .	34	Japan .	33	New Zealand .	43

<sup>1</sup> The pre-war average (1934-38) for U.S.S.R. in Europe and Asia was 14 bushels.

Exclusive of the U.S.S.R., the world average in 1954 was 17 bushels per acre.

The countries that stand highest in the list are mostly such as have a dense population and a system of agriculture that has been undergoing continuous improvement for generations—countries, accordingly, in which manure is cheap relatively to the value of the land, or those with rich soil only recently brought under cultivation.

Some cases of an exceptionally low yield per acre are worthy of special notice as illustrating the effects of different causes. In Victoria and Australia generally the low out-turn is to be ascribed mainly to the climate, which has but a scanty rainfall, and so is unfavourable to the tillering of the wheat and the filling of the ear, though it is warm and sunny, which is highly favourable to the quality of the grain. In recent years great improvements in yield have been effected. In South Australia the average yield was 13·5 bushels per acre in the decade 1943–53; during part of last century it was about 5. In Russia the low average of the out-turns was, at least until recently, in great part due to the backward state of cultivation, for the soil on which much of the Russian wheat is grown is one of the best in the world. A large part of the wheat-growing area of Russia may, however, like those of Victoria and South Australia, be described as lying on the margin of adequate rainfall, so that the yield of crop varies greatly with the amount of the rainfall, and the same is true of such areas as the western Prairies of Canada and adjoining parts of the United States. In the years 1914–54 the yield of wheat in Victoria varied from a minimum of 1·38 to a maximum of 22·6, in New South Wales from a minimum of 2·98 to a maximum of 21 bushels per acre. In Manitoba the average yield in 1900 was less than 9, in 1901 more than 25 bushels per acre. These may be compared with the returns for Tasmania and New Zealand, in which the rainfall is more ample, and in which the extreme yields in 1914–54 were respectively about 9<sup>1</sup> and 27 and 22<sup>2</sup> and 43 bushels. In Argentina several causes combine to bring about a low average yield. In some years droughts destroy the crops (especially in the west of the wheat-growing area), in other years floods, in others frosts (especially in the south), but more than all these, locusts (especially in the north). Hence here also there are great variations in the calculated yield. In 1896–97 it was estimated at about 5 bushels per acre, as against 16½ in 1893–94, 14 in 1919–20, 18 in 1938–39, 12 in 1941–42, 18 in 1953.

The superiority of wheat as a food-grain for man depends chiefly upon the quality of the bread made from the flour, which is generally regarded as more palatable than any kind of bread made from other grains, even though these may be little, if at all, inferior to wheat in nutritive properties; but this superiority is so generally recognised that it is difficult for us to realise the fact that wheaten bread was a rarity even in some parts of England within the last century and a half. It is still a rarity, at least for the poorer classes, over a large part of the European mainland, though it is now coming more and more into use even among the poor. This result is solely due to the rapid extension of commerce since the introduction of steam-power. Europe, while constantly increasing its consumption of wheat

<sup>1</sup> In 1939–40; the lowest on record. Usually not less than double.

<sup>2</sup> The lowest yield on record from 1868 to 1949 was 18 bushels in 1897–98.

relatively to population, has been growing less and less able to supply its own wants in this article, and thus becoming more and more dependent on supplies from elsewhere. The consequence is, that the international commerce in wheat and wheat flour has not only come to exceed that in all other grains, but has grown to a magnitude rivalled only by that in a few other articles, such as cotton and wool, the two great clothing materials of the world. The great wheat-importing countries are those of the west of Europe, in which manufacturing industry is so highly advanced that there is a relatively large population dependent on supplies from abroad; and the United Kingdom stands at the head of the list, taking the largest share of the wheat export from all the great wheat-exporting countries, so that an account of the British wheat trade will serve to give a general view of the wheat supply of the whole world.

Early in the eighteenth century England could not only supply all her own wants in wheat, but in good years could even spare more than a quarter of a million bushels for export, and it was only towards the close of the century, after the great development of the cotton manufacture had begun, that the importation of grain became a regular necessity. The amount of the import continued on the whole to increase, notwithstanding the existence of import duties, which were generally fixed on a scale which imposed a very high duty when the price of wheat sank to a point which was then considered very low. In those days the chief supplies for the United Kingdom were derived from France and other countries belonging to the continent of Europe. From February 1, 1849, a uniform import duty of one shilling per quarter was established, and on June 1, 1869, even this was abolished, both wheat and flour being admitted into this country from that date duty free.<sup>1</sup> Meanwhile the dependence of the British Isles upon foreign wheat continued to grow, and so did the sources of supply, which also became more widespread. It has been estimated that shortly after the middle of the nineteenth century the United Kingdom produced on an average between 70 and 80 per cent. of all the wheat consumed in the country, whereas during the decade which preceded the Second World War the ratio was only just over one-fifth. During the first half of the decade it was still less; in the second half it rose to nearly one-fourth, home production being stimulated by the overthrow of the almost traditional British free-trade policy by the National Government in 1932, and the institution of a wheat quota.

The following table presents some of the most important facts relating to the British import trade in wheat since 1881. Up to 1900 the figures relate to the quantities *shipped* from each country; thereafter they are limited to the quantities *consigned* from each country—*i.e.* to supplies originating in each country.

<sup>1</sup> A duty of 3*d.* per cwt. on wheat, 5*d.* on flour, was levied in 1902–3.

*Imports of Wheat into the United Kingdom  
(including wheat flour in equivalent weight of grain).<sup>1</sup>*

Countries of Supply.	Average Annual Supplies in Percentages of Total.									
	1881-1885.	1886-1890.	1891-1895.	1896-1900.	1911-1913.	1927-1929.	1930-1932.	1936-1938.	1948-1950.	1954-1956.
United States: Atlantic Ports Pacific Ports	35.4 18.1	32.5 15.6	41.6 10.5	49.7 9.9	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —
Total U.S.	53.5	48.1	52.1	59.6	24.6	25.0	12.0	6.1	5.9	12.6
Argentine Republic	—	1.5	8.0	8.4	13.7	25.3	15.9	7.1	0.7	7.3
Canada	3.5	3.4	5.1	7.8	20.5	32.5	31.4	41.1	76.7	55.8
Russia	11.7	18.5	14.3	9.6	9.0	0.7	13.7	5.4	—	0.7
India	12.3	11.8	9.5	4.3	18.1	1.8	1.0	4.2	—	—
Australasia	5.2	2.4	3.0	1.7	10.9	11.9	18.3	26.6	15.5	11.6
Austria-Hungary	2.6	3.0	1.5	1.5	0.1	0.1	—	—	—	—
Germany	5.5	4.1	1.0	1.3	0.6	1.1	2.1	0.3	0.1	—
Others	5.7	7.2	5.5	5.8	2.5	1.6	5.6	9.2	1.1	12.0 <sup>2</sup>
	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Average Annual in Millions of Cwt.										
Total	76.78	77.79	96.58	95.37	118.8	121.7	123.7	110.7	98.1	94.5

<sup>1</sup> For purposes of conversion, the United Nations Food and Agriculture Organisation reckons that wheat yields 75 per cent. of its weight in flour. Grain of all kinds may be shipped either bagged or in bulk, but by the latter method about 12 per cent. additional weight can be carried and the cost of the bags is saved. Bulk transport is facilitated by the use of elevators. <sup>2</sup> Mostly from France.

These vast imports early led to a lowering of the British price of wheat, the mean of the yearly averages of the price of the imperial quarter (8 bushels) sinking from 54s. 6d. in 1871-75 to 22s. 10d. in 1894. This led to a rapid contraction in the area devoted to wheat, which in 1860 occupied about 4m. acres in the United Kingdom, and in 1895 under 1½m. acres. During the First World War efforts were made to increase the home production, but in post-war years acreage and production dropped again, the area in Britain in 1931 reaching a new low level of 1¼m. acres. Under the quota system introduced by the National Government in the following year, the acreage rose to 1,875,000 in 1935, and under the strict government control practised in the Second World War it reached nearly 3½m. acres (1943). This high level was not maintained, but in 1950 the acreage was still over 2¼m. In 1955 the import of wheat and flour (reckoned as its wheat equivalent) was 99m. cwt., and in 1956 it was 105m. cwt., compared with the pre-war import of 112m. cwt. (1938), while the export of British-milled flour, which in 1938 was equivalent to nearly 3m. cwt. of wheat, had dwindled to about 200,000 cwt.

If we now look at the **sources of supply** as shown in the table, we see that in the last quinquennium of the nineteenth century more than 75 per cent. of the total supply was shipped from the United States, Canada, and Argentina, the United States alone shipping just under 60 per cent. of the total. After 1900, the more exact system of assigning imports to the countries of supply reduced the lead of the United States; and the further decline, as the twentieth century advanced, in the American share of the total was due at least in part to the



development of the United States as a great manufacturing country. Canada and Argentina, on the other hand, gained in importance as sources of wheat supply to Britain, and Australia also became an important contributor. In Argentina, which first appeared in the British import tables as a source of wheat in 1883, the expansion was due to the opening up of a new region of virgin soil. Its share of the British imports of wheat was very erratic before the Second World War, and in the three years 1936-38 Canada and Australasia provided, on an average, over two-thirds of the total. During the war years Canada strengthened her already predominant position, and Australia and Argentina, though far behind, were other important sources of supply; while at the close the United States came more to the fore again. In 1952 Canada supplied 72 per cent. of the United Kingdom imports of wheat and flour (reckoned in terms of wheat), and in 1958 more than half. The United States, Australia, France and Argentina—in varying order in good and bad years—are the other chief contributors, and Russia has also been an appreciable source of supply in some years.

This limitation of British wheat imports to practically three or four countries was the result of war and the aftermath of war. The pre-war sources of supply covered a wide range of countries, including not only those listed in the foregoing table, but many others, notably Roumania and France. The inclusion of France as a regular and considerable contributor is an example of the intricacies of modern trade, for in the pre-war quinquennium, as in some post-war years, France did not grow enough wheat for home requirements, her imports being greater than her exports.

Despite the many contributories, normally, to Britain's wheat supplies, it remains broadly true that she is largely dependent on the newer countries of America and Australia; and the prospects of supplies from these sources—their continued maintenance, increase, or decrease—are of vital importance. Apart from political and financial considerations, which do not come within the scope of this work, the outlook is reassuring. Canadian experience is in many ways typical of the course of development, and a brief resumé will give an idea of the problems not only there but in the newer lands generally.

Wheat growing in Canada, though not confined to the Prairie Provinces, had its birth there, as a modern industry of world importance, following the building of the Canadian Pacific Railway in the 'eighties of last century. Grain crops, with wheat always in the forefront of the picture, were the mainstay of the pioneer settlers who flocked into the prairies, and farming was subject to the advantages and disadvantages of pioneer enterprise. The soil was virgin and fertile; land was abundant and cheap; the right type of settler might hope for a free grant of a quarter section (160 acres—a quarter of a

square mile). Big 'bonanza' farms of, say, 5,000 acres played a part in the development; but the typical farm was the holding of 160 acres, owned by the man who worked it with the help of his family and went all out to make it a success. Adverse factors were the 'extensive' as opposed to the 'intensive' type of farming, careless cultivation, and the tendency to crop the land year after year without observing a proper rotation or making good the loss of fertility. This 'wheat-mining', as it came to be called, meant low yields and threatened at one time a serious position in the Prairie Provinces through soil exhaustion. There was also the proverbial danger of having all or most of one's eggs in one basket. Happily, remedial measures were adopted, and if the danger has not been wholly exorcised a much healthier situation has been created by the spread of mixed farming, more thorough cultivation, measures to preserve soil fertility, and the development by scientific research of strains of wheat resistant to rust, drought, and other menaces. In the short-term view there must always be fluctuations of crop yield, but in the long view, production is seen as a gradually mounting switchback. Local consumption naturally has increased with the spread of manufacturing industry and the growth of population, but by far the greater part of the production is exported. The very large share of Britain's imports of wheat supplied by Canada has already been noted; yet it is only a fraction of the Canadian production of wheat. In 1947, when the wheat and flour imported into Britain from Canada amounted to over 86m. bushels, the Canadian wheat crop was about 340m. bushels, and in the ten years ended in 1947 the crop averaged over 400m. bushels, while in 1952 it reached the record total of 688m. bushels, of which the three Prairie Provinces produced 664m. In 1954 it was down to 309m.; in 1956 up again to 538m.

The United States has been affected by more and greater changes than Canada has yet experienced. In 1870, more than half the population from ten years of age upwards who were gainfully employed were engaged in agriculture; in 1949-50, the proportion was about one in eight. Improvident farming has led to heavy loss of soil fertility and extensive soil erosion. But in the States, as in Canada, remedial measures have been adopted and recent years have seen record wheat crops, more than enough for home needs, vast as these have become. In 1947 a bumper crop of 1,267m. bushels was harvested, of which over a third was exported. Development has reached a different stage from that in Canada. In 1950 the United States had 5,382,162 farms. One-third of them are either small holdings or family farms, worked with little if any hired labour; the other two-thirds are known as 'commercial' farms, some of them highly mechanised and worked mainly by seasonal contract labour. About seven-eighths of the agricultural produce of the United States that comes on to the market is from these 'commercial'

farms. More than 300,000 farms in 1950 extended to over 500 acres each, and the number of such farms has been increasing, not only absolutely but relatively to the whole. In 1920 the average size of all farms was less than 150 acres; thirty years later, the average had increased to 215 acres.

The tendencies of modern farming practice, though not the exclusive concern of the wheat industry, have had an important bearing on its development. In both Canada and the United States it now exemplifies at every stage the triumph of modern methods of production, handling and transport. Countries which are developing manufactures and mechanising every industry naturally try to convert their raw materials into at least partially manufactured goods before export. A considerable proportion of the wheat exported from Canada, Australia, and the United States is in the form of flour. Sometimes other reasons than industrial policy call for prior manufacture. Hungarian millers are noted for the superb quality of their flour, not only because of the excellence of their wheat, their machinery and their methods, but because of the dry climate. Flour of equal quality cannot be made in the moist climate of Britain even from the same wheat treated by the same processes. Climatic conditions also determined the popularity of Indian wheats in Italy and other Mediterranean countries in former days; these hard Indian wheats yield the most suitable flour for macaroni and vermicelli.

India's share (using the name India in its old sense) in bringing down the price of English wheat in the closing decades of last century was due, not to the opening up of vast new lands, as in North America, but to the cheapness of labour in old and populous countries. The climate of those regions in which wheat cultivation is chiefly pursued—the Punjab, North-West Province, and former United Provinces—is on the whole as favourable to the growth of wheat as the climate of the United States wheatlands, though in India insufficient rainfall often necessitates irrigation. The Indian crop is now grown for home consumption; in most years there is little or no surplus, and wheat figures among the imports.

World production is estimated at about 200m. tons (7,500m. bushels)—five to six times the estimated total in 1883-4. In 1955 the total was 130.4m. tons (nearly 5,000m. bushels), exclusive of estimates of 45m. tons (1,700m. bushels) in the Soviet Union, and 22.5m. tons (840m. bushels) in China. Europe and Asia head the list of production by continents, each providing about 35 per cent. of the total. North America is third, with about 20 per cent., and South America (chiefly Argentina) contributes roughly another 5 per cent. The remaining 5 per cent. is divided between Australasia (chiefly Australia) and Africa (chiefly North Africa).

The following table, the particulars of which, except in the case of North America, are mainly derived from Scherzer, shows that there is

not a month in the year in which a wheat harvest does not take place in some part of the world.

*Date of the Wheat Harvest in Various Countries.*

January	. Australia, New Zealand, Argentine Republic, Chile.
February	. India.
March	. India, Upper Egypt.
April	. Mexico, Cuba, Lower Egypt, Syria, Persia, Asia Minor.
May	. Morocco, Algeria and Tunis; the northern parts of Asia Minor, China, Japan, Texas, Florida.
June	. The Mediterranean peninsulas and the south of France; California, Oregon, Utah, and the greater part of central and eastern United States territory south of 40°; Afghanistan, Japan.
July	. France, Hungary, southern Russia, the northern parts of the United States of America, Ontario, and Quebec.
August	. England, Belgium, the Netherlands and Germany; the Prairie Provinces of Canada.
September	. Scotland, Sweden, Norway, Russia.
October	. Finland, northern Russia.
November	. Peru, South Africa.
December	. Burma, South Australia.

**MAIZE or CORN** is the only grain-crop which was introduced into the Old World from the New, and it owes the name of Indian corn, by which it is frequently known in England, to the fact that it was the only cereal of importance cultivated by the American Indians before the arrival of Europeans. It weighs nearly as heavily as wheat (56 lb. to the bushel, against wheat's 60 lb.) and is usually a more prolific crop. World production in 1954 outside U.S.S.R. (now encouraging maize) averaged 25 bushels per acre, against the 17 bushels per acre of wheat; and on this basis it may be reckoned that maize yields, on an average, 50 per cent. more than wheat in volume and 40 per cent. more in weight. Its cultivation spread very rapidly in the tropical and some of the warm temperate parts of the Old World when it became known there, but much more rapidly in Africa, and even in the east of Asia, than in Europe, where the countries then most advanced in agriculture and industry were those in which the climate is least suitable for its cultivation.

Among other countries from which the cultivation of maize is excluded by the character of the climate is England, where the summer is not sufficiently long, warm, and sunny. The ideal climate for this grain is one with a summer  $4\frac{1}{2}$  to 7 months long, without frost, the middle portion hot both day and night, sunny skies, sufficient rains to supply the demands of a rapidly growing and luxuriant crop, falling at such intervals as best to provide sufficient moisture without ever making the soil actually wet. It is thus essentially a summer crop, and one that requires summer rains (or irrigation), though not very heavy and frequent rains. It is therefore unsuited to those countries which, like California, Chile, and most of those round the

Mediterranean, though admirably adapted for the growth of wheat, are characterised by summers of remarkable dryness. It was this circumstance that seems chiefly to have caused the slow progress of its cultivation in Europe (except in Portugal), although it was gradually found to be very well adapted to the central parts of that continent, including northern Italy, and above all to the eastern parts (Roumania, with the adjacent parts of Russia), where the greater part of the rainfall of the year occurs in summer, and where the summers are at the same time remarkably sunny. The same characteristics render the climate of a great part of the United States eminently suited to this crop, which is, in fact, the principal corn-crop of the country; so that when a native of the United States speaks of 'corn' simply, it is always maize that he means, just as an Englishman means by the same word wheat. The States grow nearly half the present world crop of about 150m. tons; U.S.S.R. about one-tenth. In the Commonwealth of Australia maize takes second place to wheat among grain crops in Queensland, and in New South Wales it ranks third after oats, though both are far behind wheat. In South Africa it is the leading crop. The principal use of maize is as feed for cattle and pigs—the grain, meal and young juicy plants all being used. In the United States 'Corn Belt' the bulk never leaves the farm on which it is grown, save 'on the hoof'.

The quantity and value of the maize imported into the United Kingdom (chiefly for the feeding of cattle and horses) are next to those of wheat among grain crops. Down to the end of last century more than half the import was usually derived from the United States, which was followed by Roumania. Then Argentina came to the front, and for a time before the Second World War supplied 90 per cent. of the imports, which amounted to over 70m. cwt. After the war imports did not reach half that quantity till 1958; supplies from Argentina, though still important, lost their commanding position, and the United States has regained its pre-eminence. For two or three years at the turn of the half-century the Soviet Union took second place. Among Commonwealth sources of supply the Union of South Africa is pre-eminent, and has outstripped Argentina; Canada too has been improving its position. But supplies from all these countries are very variable; maize is an outstanding example of the kaleidoscopic nature of the sequence of world sources of supply.

In the British Isles maize is used as human food only to a very limited extent, and chiefly in the form of the so-called 'cornflour'; but in many of the countries in which it forms a staple crop it is used as human food much more largely and in various forms. In the United States specially grown 'sweet corn' forms a favourite vegetable, the grains being eaten like peas in this country along with meat, and a preparation known as hominy—a kind of porridge made from coarsely ground maize—is locally used. 'Corn on the cob'

was becoming popular in Britain also before the Second World War. In Mexico maize is still, as it always has been, the principal food of the people, being coarsely ground at home and made into a kind of cakes called tortillas, which are eaten warm. The polenta, which forms a chief part of the food of the inhabitants of Italy, except in the extreme south, is generally made from maize-meal; and so too is the mamaliga of the Roumanians. In Trans-Caucasia the heads of maize are cooked under the name of kukurus. Maize is the staple food grain in nearly all the damper parts of Africa; and in South Africa 'mealies', as the corn cobs are called, and mealie meal enter considerably into the diet of the white races. Various kinds of beer and spirits are also made from maize, which is now used to some extent even by English beer-brewers.

**OATS.** This crop can be cultivated with advantage over a wider range in latitude and on a greater variety of soils than wheat; but the climate best suited to it is one that is moister and has cooler summers than that best adapted for the latter crop. Such climates produce grain of better quality for all the purposes for which oats are grown, and, moreover, produce a much greater weight of grain per bushel, the variations in this respect being much greater than in the case of wheat. Whereas wheat does not often weigh much more or much less than 60 lb. per bushel, oats grown in one place may weigh 50 lb., in another place only 26 lb. per bushel (F.A.O. average, 32–34 lb.). This is all the more important since there are also great variations in the amount of meal yielded by oats, only the best qualities yielding as much as half their weight. Oats are consequently grown chiefly in the more northerly and moister parts of Europe. Being more easily grown than wheat, the crops of oats rival or exceed the crops of wheat in a number of European countries, though not along the Mediterranean coast, where the summers are not suited to oats. The largest crops are grown in the United States, Russia, Canada, France, Germany, and the United Kingdom. Oats are the leading cereal crop in the British Isles—not greatly in excess of wheat as a whole, but with a pronounced lead both in Scotland with its cool summers (too cold for wheat except in favoured localities) and in Ireland with its damp conditions. Whilst wheat in England is almost restricted to the drier east the cultivation of oats is widespread. The total quantity of oats imported into the United Kingdom is but a fraction of the imports of wheat and flour, ranging from under 1m. to 2½m. cwt. Before the First World War, Russia was regularly the leading country of supply. In recent years the position has been very variable; in 1946–47 Canada was the chief source of supply, in 1948–49 Australia, in 1950 Russia, in 1955 Canada and Australia; while in 1956 there was a U.K. net export. Oats are also a considerable crop in Argentina. About one-fifth of the world production of 60m. tons is grown in the U.S.S.R.

In those countries in which this grain is chiefly grown, it generally forms a part of the food of the people. In Scotland it constituted, in the shape of oatmeal porridge, oat-cakes, and other forms, the chief food of the people as late as the end of the eighteenth century; but it is mainly as provender for horses that oats are now grown, this grain being proved by experience to be the best for that purpose. In ancient times the grain was not much grown—no doubt in consequence of its unsuitableness for the climate of the countries round the Mediterranean, where the civilised nations of antiquity had their seats. It is not mentioned in the Bible, but it was cultivated in a small way in Italy, as food for horses, as early as the beginning of the Christian era. In central Europe it was a grain of much greater antiquity, for it is found among the remains of the lake-dwellings of Switzerland, but not, according to Prof. Heer, among remains of as great age as some of those which include grains of wheat.

**BARLEY.** This is in several respects a highly remarkable crop. By some writers it is believed to be the most ancient of cultivated grains. Several varieties of it (including two of that kind which is known in England as *bere* or *bigg*, having six instead of two rows of grain in the ear) have been found among the remains of the lake-dwellings of Switzerland. Its range in climate is wider than that of any other cereal, cultivation having led to the development of some coarse varieties which ripen their grain within a shorter period than the hardiest varieties of oats. Hence, of all cereals it is that which reaches farthest north in latitude, and highest up on the mountain slopes. In Norway it is cultivated even in 70° N. On the other hand, it flourishes well in any soil and under any climate that is suited for wheat, and it is in such climates that the best barley is grown. Thus it happens that it is the associate of oats in the northern countries of Europe, which are on the whole too cold for wheat, and the associate of wheat in the southern countries of Europe and the other countries round the Mediterranean, which are too dry in summer for maize, but where the barley, like the wheat, is of excellent quality. In the United States the state that grows the largest proportion of barley is California, which, like the Mediterranean countries, has a climate unsuited both for maize (except on irrigated land) and for oats.

Barley appears to have been the chief bread-plant of the ancient Hebrews, Greeks, and Romans, no doubt because it was the most productive of the grains suited to the Mediterranean climate, for the quantity of grain which it produces to the acre is usually greater than that of wheat (in England it averages rather less). In 1950 the world average was 1,056 lb. per acre (about 5 per cent. more than the average for wheat), or 22 bushels of 48 lb. Barley-bread was once common in Scotland, where it is still used to some extent, and it is likewise eaten in Scandinavia; but nowadays barley is principally grown for the sake of the beer made from malt, that is, from barley-

grain which has been allowed to sprout and then been killed. It is for this purpose that it is so largely grown in England; and for the same reason it is a very important crop in Germany and the other beer-drinking countries of Europe. About an eighth of the world supply of 60-65m. tons is grown in the U.S.S.R. Europe produces about a third of the whole, and this is supplemented by an import. Recently the import of barley into the United Kingdom has been a fifth or less of the wheat and flour import, the principal countries of origin being Canada (up to 90 per cent.), Australia, Iraq, and Russia. The barley supplied by Asia Minor, not great in amount, is noted for its high quality. In Scotland and Ireland considerable quantities are used in the making of whisky.

**RYE.** This is the least familiar of all the grain-crops grown in the British Isles, but there is probably no other cereal except wheat that is cultivated so largely on the mainland of Europe as a bread-plant. It is grown on a smaller scale (world production 35-40m. tons) than the cereals previously considered, and more than half the total is credited to the U.S.S.R. Of all the bread plants it flourishes on the poorest soil and in the most inhospitable climates, though the optimum conditions are similar to those for wheat. It is a great boon to the vast tract stretching from Holland, through northern Germany, into central Russia, which is mainly covered by a poor, sandy soil. Throughout that region it is the prevailing bread-plant. In the United Kingdom, where grown at all, it serves chiefly as a fodder crop, for which purpose it is useful in the south of England in the period between the exhaustion of the supplies of root crops and the maturing of clover and lucerne. In the United States the use of the grain in the making of bread is diminishing, as the immigrants from northern and eastern Europe have got used to wheaten bread in place of the nourishing but sour rye bread of the old lands; but rye-whisky is popular and so is wheaten bread flavoured with rye. The straw, which is largely used for packing and making certain kinds of paper and pasteboard, is there regarded in many places as the most valuable part of the crop. Formerly, however, it was otherwise.

**BUCKWHEAT.** This is a grain-crop almost unknown to the agriculture of the United Kingdom, but of importance in many other parts of the world. It does not belong, like most of the grain-crops, including all those already mentioned, to the great family of the grasses, but is an ally of some of our common weeds, such as snake-weed and persicaria, and a more distant ally of the common dock or sorrel. It is a native of eastern Asia, and was introduced into Europe only at a late period. Its French name, *sarrasin*, appears to indicate that in that country it first became known through the Saracens or Arabs. The grain is said to be very nutritious, and the crop has these recommendations, that it can be grown with hardly



Second World War were credited respectively with a half and a third of the then world production of 12m. tons. China finds her market within her own borders, but Manchuria does a big export trade with other Far Eastern countries, and early in the present century extended her exports to Europe. In the pre-war quinquennium 1934-38 she provided 90 per cent of world exports of soya-beans totalling 2½m. tons. Not only the export of this bean but its cultivation has spread to Europe and North America. Such rapid headway has it made in the United States (in the cotton belt and the southern part of the maize belt) that in 1955-56 the harvested area was over 18½m. acres and the production over 10m. tons—nearly half the then world total of 21·7m. tons, rivalling the figures for China and Manchuria combined. Apart from direct human consumption, the soya-bean is useful for cattle food and for its oil content (see p. 225).

The **groundnut** or earth-nut (*Arachis hypogaea*, Linn.) is so called because the pod ripens underground. It is popularly known also here and in America as the monkey-nut or pea-nut. Though cultivated chiefly as an oil-seed (see p. 224) it is also largely used as a fodder-plant and, increasingly, as human food. It is of remarkably wide range in latitude, being grown from the heart of the tropics to as far north as 37° in the United States, the northern limits of the cotton belt; and it thrives in very poor sandy soils. World production in 1955-56 was over 12½m. tons, India and China being each credited with between a third and a fourth, while French West Africa, Nigeria, and the United States provided jointly another fifth.

Among other pulses of more or less importance in agriculture and commerce are **lentils**, **vetches**, and **lupines**, all of which are cultivated for their pods in southern Europe and the Mediterranean region generally; lentils also in India. Lentils are celebrated for the nutritious character of their seeds and the meal derived from them is the basis of many invalid and other patent foods advertised under various names. In central and western Europe vetches and lupines are cultivated solely for use as green fodder, lupines being a crop of special importance in certain localities, from its being adapted to very light, sandy soils. In common with nearly all members of the pea and bean family, these crops enrich the soil; bacteria occupying nodules on the roots are able to 'fix' atmospheric nitrogen and convert it into nitrates available as plant food. (Cf. p. 59.)

The long flat dried pod of the **carob-tree** sold in our shops under the name of **locusts**, and sometimes called St. John's Bread, from the fact of its being supposed by some to be the locusts stated in the New Testament to have been eaten by St. John the Baptist in the wilderness, is the fruit of a tree (*Ceratonia siliqua*, Linn.) belonging to the Mediterranean generally, but especially abundant on the island of Cyprus. The pods have now become a considerable article of export from that island, and are sent to England to be used

for cattle-fodder. So rich are the Cyprus carob-pods in sugar that a sweet juice can be extracted from them capable of being used in preserving fruits, as well as for the other purposes to which sugar is applied. **Mezquite** is the name of several species of American trees of the genus *Prosopis*, producing a sweet pod something like that of the carob-tree. The most widely distributed species (*Prosopis dulcis*, Kunth), to which the Spaniards gave the name of the carob (algarrobo), after the similar tree of their own country, has pods nearly or quite two feet in length; but this is rather a tropical tree than a tree of the temperate zone. The species to which the name mezquite is given in North America (*P. juliflora*, DC, and *P. pubescens*, Benth.) have smaller pods, which, as well as the beans contained in them, are much relished by cattle. They are abundant in the north of Mexico and in the United States from Texas to California, and in western Texas, especially since forest fires have become less frequent.

**POTATO.** This important plant is one of the gifts of the New World to the Old. The cultivated species, which is known to botanists as *Solanum tuberosum*, Linn., and is hence a member of the same genus as our common weed the woody nightshade or bitter-sweet, is a native of the high and dry regions of the Andes from Chile to Venezuela, and its introduction thence into other countries has proved of immense importance on account of its extreme productiveness, its easy cultivation, and its remarkable powers of acclimatisation, varieties of this plant being capable of cultivation from the tropics to the farthest limits of agriculture, even beyond the polar limit of barley. There is much uncertainty as to the date of its introduction into Europe. It is believed to have been known in Spain in the first half of the sixteenth century, and is commonly said to have been introduced into Ireland by Sir Walter Raleigh from Virginia in 1586. Sir Walter Raleigh did not introduce any plant from Virginia about that time, though colonists originally settled in America by him may have done so. In any case, the plant first known in England as the potato was the batatas or sweet potato.

Whatever the date of introduction, it was long before the potato rose into favour in most European countries. In Ireland it was earlier cultivated than in Great Britain. In England its cultivation did not become general till the eighteenth century, and it was only in the latter half of that century that it came to be widely cultivated in Germany (where more potatoes are now grown than in any other country, except Soviet Russia), as well as in France, Austria, and Hungary. It even required the exercise of the autocratic powers of Frederick II of Prussia to effect its introduction into the sandy districts of Pomerania and Silesia. In north Germany the potato is said now to make up over half the food of the working-classes. It has long been known to be the staple article of diet of the Irish peasantry.

Owing to the great bulk of this commodity compared with its value, the foreign trade in it is carried on mainly with neighbouring countries. The greater part of the requirements of the United Kingdom are home grown, the import being of early potatoes, earlier than the home crop; they come from France, the Channel Islands, Spain, Netherlands, and Canary Islands. In the Channel Islands, cultivation of early potatoes is a staple industry, especially in Jersey, which is almost one large potato-field. The United Kingdom does a useful export trade in seed potatoes (over 50,000 tons). Poland and Ireland are the two chief producing countries per head of population (about a ton per head in either case). Germany, with a production of about half a ton per head, uses considerable quantities for the manufacture of alcohol (almost entirely for industrial purposes) and starch.

One great objection to the cultivation of the potato is its liability to disease, which in some years, as in 1845-46 in Ireland, has caused great distress in countries depending mainly on this crop. Great progress has, however, been made with disease-resisting varieties. Thus, formerly, potatoes would not thrive in the Fenland of eastern England, now the largest potato-growing tract in the country.

**OTHER VEGETABLES.** Amongst other vegetables which enter considerably into international trade may be mentioned onions and tomatoes. Onions are imported into Britain from (mostly) the Netherlands, Spain and Egypt—in quantity a steady 200,000 tons a year, valued in 1956 at £7½m. Imports of potatoes, ranging between 100,000 and 200,000 tons around the half-century, more than doubled in 1955, and in 1956 reached over half a million tons, valued at £19m. Tomatoes, a fairly constant import of nearly 200,000 tons, were valued at over £23m. in 1956. They come chiefly (80 per cent.) from the Canary Islands and the Channel Islands. Other vegetables—turnips, mangolds, carrots, parsnips, &c.—are mostly of too little value to justify the expense of distant transport, and are chiefly produced at home. The area under turnips, swedes and mangolds in the United Kingdom is nearly as large as the area under potatoes, and the weight of production is nearly double.

**FRUITS OF THE TEMPERATE ZONE, including nuts and edible seeds.** Despite a normal apple crop of 600,000 tons in the United Kingdom, post-war imports have ranged up to nearly 200,000 tons, and though this is not much more than half the pre-war import, the value has more than doubled (£14m.). Before the war Canada was sending 40 per cent. of the import, the other chief suppliers being Australia and the United States. Post-war trade conditions have greatly reduced the imports from both Canada and the States. Australia now heads the list, followed by Italy, New Zealand, and South Africa. There is also a considerable import of pears and a

smaller import of plums, apricots, cherries, and strawberries. In addition there is a large modern trade in canned or bottled fruits.

But the bulk of the fruit trade of the United Kingdom is in fruits which cannot be grown at home, from lands with a Mediterranean climate or from the Tropics. The principal Temperate Zone fruits of this nature are the citrus fruits (oranges, grapefruit and lemons), grapes, currants and raisins, figs, almonds and other edible nuts, chiefly walnuts and chestnuts.

The orange (*Citrus aurantium*, Risso) is believed to be a native of China, where the tree is still cultivated with great care in the southern half of the country. From China it had already spread to other parts of southern Asia before the discovery of the sea-way from Europe to that part of the world, and from some part of southern Asia it was introduced into Europe by the Portuguese in 1548. It is now cultivated in several varieties in a great many places in tropical and sub-tropical countries. Its northern limit in North America extends in the west to about lat. 37° N., in the east to about 31½° N.; the bulk of the production is from California and Florida. In Europe its northern limit rises in western Portugal to about 40° N., and then, except in the valley of Andalusia, merely skirting the coast of the Iberian Peninsula, ascends to its highest, about 44° N., in the north-west of Italy. In Asia it begins in the west about lat. 37° (a degree and a half south of Izmir), and sinks in the east to about 34°. In the southern hemisphere, the limit is about 37° S.

The other species of the citrus genus of commercial importance are the **lemon** (*C. limonum*, Risso), the smaller-fruited **lime** (*C. limetta*, Risso), and the large thick-rinded **citron** (*C. medica*, Risso). The last species was the first to be introduced into Europe (not long after the beginning of the Christian era), and owes its specific Latin name to the fact that it was known to the Romans as a tree abundant in Media (the tract on the south-east of the Caucasus). All the species appear to be native in India. A hardier species of the genus is the kumquat (mandarin) of Japan (*C. japonica*, Thunb.), which is grafted on a wild stock that remains uninjured by frost. It yields a small fruit resembling the orange in flavour, though slightly bitter. Of recent years the larger fruited **grape-fruit** has become of commercial importance, and is largely cultivated in California, Florida, the West Indies, South Africa, and Israel.

Imports into the United Kingdom have not yet caught up with the pre-war quantities, though values have increased. It may give some idea of the magnitude of the trade to note that in 1956 the imports of oranges alone, which easily head the list of fresh fruits arriving in this country, amounted to 331,000 tons and were valued at over £19m. In the previous year they were larger still.

Formerly almost the entire quantity of oranges and lemons imported into the United Kingdom was derived from Spain and

Italy—the lemons more particularly from Sicily. The supplies were only available during one season of the year. Now oranges are available throughout the year from one or other of the chief exporting countries, the main suppliers to this country being Spain, Israel, South Africa, and Cyprus. As to quality, the Maltese, Jaffa, Azores (St. Michael), and West Indian oranges were the most celebrated, the last being considered by some to surpass those of all other places, but the export is small and many varieties have been perfected in the newer countries. In India the oranges of Nagpur and the Khasi Hills have a high reputation, in the Argentine Republic those of Tucuman. **Limes** are grown for export, and for the making of lime-juice, more abundantly in the British West Indies (chiefly in Dominica, also in Montserrat) than in any other part of the world.

**Figs** can be cultivated in the Mediterranean region over a somewhat wider range than the orange, the tree which produces this fruit not being so sensitive as the orange to frost. Large quantities are grown for export in Algeria, also in the eastern part of the Mediterranean, and above all in Asia Minor, in the district lying to the north of those to which the orange is confined. The valley round Smyrna (Izmir), which carries on no orange cultivation, produces figs of peculiarly fine quality. Greece also produces excellent figs, both on the islands and the mainland; and so also does southern Italy. The necessity of cheap labour for packing the figs, which are exported almost exclusively as a dry fruit, is no doubt an obstacle to the cultivation of the fig, especially in those regions which are suitable also for the more valuable orange. The **apricot** is said to be to Syria what the fig is to Smyrna and Ephesus. The improvement in methods of drying and, above all, the growth of canning have made this fruit, as well as the **peach**, of great importance also in the newer 'Mediterranean' lands of California, South Africa, and Australia.

**Grapes** are of course produced wherever the vine is grown, but they are exported as a fruit chiefly from those districts which do not produce a grape suitable for wine-making. Large quantities of table-grapes are grown in this country, and elsewhere beyond the limit of regular vine-culture, in greenhouses. They are imported chiefly from South Africa, also from the Netherlands, Belgium, Italy, Greece, Spain, and (normally) the United States. **Raisins** and **currants** are dried grapes. Raisins are imported into this country chiefly from the United States, Australia, Asia Minor, and Greece. **Sultana raisins** are made from a seedless grape largely cultivated in Asia Minor and on some of the adjacent islands. **Currants** are the dried form of a still smaller seedless grape obtained from a variety of vine which appears to be one of the most exacting of all plants as regards soil and climate, and one that exhibits in the most marked manner the effect of local influences. The currant-vine is almost confined to the kingdom of Greece, and its product, formerly the most

valuable export of that kingdom, but now surpassed by tobacco, still holds second place. Even in Greece its domain is limited, and however carefully the vine may be cultivated, it is impossible to get equally good fruit in all the districts in which it is grown. The smallest, but sweetest and best flavoured currants are grown on the islands; on the mainland the best qualities are grown only at the head and on the south shore of the Gulf of Corinth. It was on this gulf, in the neighbourhood of the town of Corinth, of which the name currant is a corruption, that this variety of the vine was first cultivated on the Greek mainland. In between the two world wars, the output was carefully restricted, but competition arose from certain of the 'newer' countries where currants (and likewise sultanas) are now successfully produced (*e.g.* Australia).

**Almonds, walnuts, and chestnuts**—all, it would appear, originally products of the interior of Asia Minor, in the neighbourhood of the Black Sea—have all spread far west, and more or less north. Almonds are chiefly imported into Britain from Italy, Spain and Portugal, Morocco and Iran, but are also produced in considerable quantity in France. Walnuts and chestnuts have penetrated much farther into the heart of Europe, and are imported into this country chiefly from France and Spain. Among other southern fruits of slight importance in commerce are the **prickly pear**, the black-spotted pear-shaped fruit of a cactus, introduced into southern Europe from the drier parts of tropical America; the **black mulberry**, the **pomegranate**, and the **pistachio nut**. **Avocado** or **alligator pears**, the fruit of a West Indian tree, have become popular in salads.

**WINE.** From a geographical point of view, and more particularly, as will appear further on, from the standpoint of commercial geography, the vine is one of the most interesting of all economic plants. Its original home seems to have been somewhere in western Asia or the south-east of Europe. According to Hehn, the region from which it spread is the luxuriant country to the south of the Caspian Sea, part of the ancient Media. 'There in the woods the vine, thick as a man's arm, still climbs into the loftiest trees, hanging in wreaths from summit to summit.'<sup>1</sup> But it appears to be indigenous as far east as Afghanistan and as far west as the Carpathians.<sup>2</sup>

How early the must, or juice of the grape, was converted into wine we know from the Hebrew Scriptures; and the virtues of this product in process of time caused the spread of vine-culture wherever civilisation advanced along the shores of the Mediterranean, as well

<sup>1</sup> Hehn's *Wanderings of Plants and Animals*, p. 73 (Eng. ed.).

<sup>2</sup> Remains of vine-leaves have been found in prehistoric tuffs at Montpellier and elsewhere in the south of France, and grape-pips round the lake-dwellings of Switzerland, while fossil relics both of the vine and fig (*Ficus carica*) have been found in the Quaternary travertine of Miliana in Algeria.

as eastwards, through the drier parts of Asia. By Europeans the vine of the Old World was introduced into America, where, however, there are native species (*Vitis labrusca*, L., &c.), now cultivated as wine-plants. The spread of vine-cultivation is still going on, and the vine is rapidly extending over the whole domain suitable to it throughout the world.

The limits set to its cultivation by climate are somewhat rigorous; for though there are many varieties of the vine, as of all cultivated plants, there are none adapted—like some varieties of maize, for example—to a comparatively short summer. A moderately high temperature, extending far into the autumn, is essential to the maturing of the grape, so as to make it fit for wine-making. In Europe, a mean temperature of about 60° in the month of September is one of the conditions of successful cultivation; and it is this fact chiefly which explains the form which the northern limit of the vine as a wine-plant assumes in both the Old World and the New. In western Europe, where the temperature is subject to moderating influences both in summer and in winter, the northern limit is in about 47½° N., a little to the north of the mouth of the Loire, but it gradually rises eastward as the summers get warmer, until in the western part of the republic of Poland it reaches its highest latitude anywhere in the world, about 52½ or 53° N. As we go still further east the summer in equal latitudes gets shorter though warmer, and hence the September temperature declines. Consequently, the wine-limit gradually sinks to the shore of the Sea of Azof, where it is further south than in the west of France. The extremely sunny character of south-eastern Russia causes it, however, once more to rise a degree or two, but it again sinks in Asia to about 40° or 41°. The corresponding limit on the American continent has a similar form, but exhibits the advantage belonging to Europe in respect of climate. It begins in California about 37° N., rises to above 42° N. in the Canadian province of Ontario (owing partly to the moderating influence on climate exerted by the Great Lakes), but declines again slightly in the United States. In the southern hemisphere the limit is about 40° S.

But while the range of cultivation of the vine is thus limited on the north and south, it is important to observe that the habit of the plant gives it one great advantage within those limits. The roots of the vine-stock penetrate the soil to a great depth; and this fact, besides placing the roots beyond the reach of frost, which is important in those regions in which a summer of sufficient length is succeeded by a winter of great severity (as in some parts of Russia and central Asia), enables it to draw on deep stores of moisture, and thus without irrigation to flourish and to continue to produce its tender leaves, even in those parts of the Mediterranean in which the summers are nearly rainless and almost all other vegetation is then at a standstill.

Lastly, with respect to the range of the vine as a wine-plant, it is to be noted that the limits above described are not fixed solely by climate. They are fixed partly by commerce. They are not the limits within which the vine can grow and yield grapes whose juice can be made into wine, but the limits within which wine of tolerable quality can be produced—that is, wine sufficiently good to have a commercial value. In former times the vine was cultivated as a wine-plant in the valley of the Severn, and in several of the southern counties of England, as well as north of its present limits on the mainland of Europe, but the advance of commerce bringing better wines from more favoured regions has caused vine-growing to be given up in those places. It was only the employment of a large amount of capital for the production of wines of high quality that made it possible for the Marquess of Bute to grow the vine for that purpose near Cardiff with good results in favourable years, and in the end the experiment was given up.

The amount and quality of the wine obtainable from grapes in different places vary greatly from different causes. In the first place, the fruit of the vine is greatly affected by differences in the soil and climate. A sunny climate without excess of rainfall is that which is best adapted to it, and hence it is often grown, especially in the more northerly districts, on hill-slopes exposed to the sun, the slope favouring the draining away of superfluous moisture. The excess of summer rains prevents the cultivation of the vine for wine-making in monsoon countries such as India and China. The best soil for the vine is one both warm and retentive of moisture—that is, one that retains enough moisture without being wet; and it is the combination of these characters that makes chalky and other limestone soils so suitable for viticulture. But, secondly, the preparation of wine of high quality from the must is an industry that demands great skill and experience, and consequently is practised on a great scale only where the industry is of long standing, and where the state of industry is sufficiently advanced to afford the necessary capital and labour. And, thirdly, the vine is subject to many diseases, some of which have at times committed such ravages in vineyards as greatly to reduce, and occasionally almost to extinguish, the wine industry in certain districts. A fungus (*Oidium Tuckeri*, Berk.) after about the middle of the nineteenth century committed extensive ravages in the Mediterranean region and among the vineyards of Madeira. Since about 1863 the vines of France and many other countries have suffered even more severely from an insect enemy—the well-known phylloxera, which reached Madeira in 1878 and took ten years to extirpate there. In France alone upwards of a million acres of vineyards were reported to be infected by the disease due to this insect in 1885, and more than 2m. acres had already been destroyed.

France still leads the world in production of wine, but it is



necessary to go back to 1875 for the maximum area (nearly 6m. acres) on which the vine was cultivated in that country. In the next ten years, 1876-85, production averaged 940m. gallons—less than half the output in 1875. Following the phylloxera ravages, which reached their height about 1890, many vineyards were replanted with American vines, which are less liable to the attacks of the insect. By 1902 the area under vines had fallen to less than 4½m. acres, but the vines were stronger, and in normal years much more productive, relatively to area. In the first quinquennium of the century, production averaged 1,126m. gallons, and though it suffered a sharp setback during the First World War, afterwards it advanced again till in 1934-38, when the area had further fallen to under 4m. acres, production averaged 1,378m. gallons. Averages do not tell all the story. Vintages are always very variable, being much affected by the weather as well as by disease and pests. In France the yield ranges between extremes of about 100 gallons and over 300 gallons per acre.

The effects of the Second World War were much the same as the First. Countries overrun by war could not maintain their output of wine, while countries outside the field of conflict increased theirs; but after the War the former mostly recovered the lost ground, while some of the latter had difficulty in retaining their gains. The adjoining table shows for each of the main producing countries, exclusive of Russia, the output in the year immediately preceding the War (1938); the year which saw the end of hostilities (1945), when world production was at its lowest; and the extensive recovery during the next decade (1955). The arrangement of the countries is alphabetical, under continents. To appreciate the experience attributed above to countries which were not overrun by war, it should be noted that the high level of their output was reached during the War, not in 1945, when world production in general was at a low ebb. Spain, for instance, had an output of 471m. gallons in 1943; Portugal 319m. gallons in 1944; Argentina 235m. gallons in 1943.

The 1955 figures show the full measure of post-war recovery up to that year. World production was greater than in 1938, and nearly all the leading countries—France, Italy, Spain, Portugal, Argentina—exceeded their pre-war output. On the other hand Algeria illustrated what has been said about annual crop fluctuations by dropping to two-thirds of its 1938 production; while several other countries, though exceeding their pre-war figures, had appreciably lower productions than in some of the intervening years.

**France** does not only take the first place as regards the quantity of its wine-production. Its most celebrated wines—such as the **clarets** or Bordeaux wines, from the best vineyards of the basin of the Gironde; **champagne**, grown on the chalk hills of the old province of that name; and **burgundy**, named from another old pro-

vince—are among the best of old wines. The last named is grown at its best on the 'golden' slopes of the Côte d'Or, where that range looks down on the warm valley of the Saône.

*Annual Production of Wine, in Million Imperial Gallons<sup>1</sup>*

	1938	1945	1955		1938	1945	1955
<i>Europe:</i>				<i>Africa:</i>			
Austria .	21	13	26	Algeria .	473	206	316
Bulgaria .	52	54	<sup>2</sup>	Fr. Morocco .	17	5	42
France .	1,320	629	1,343	Tunisia .	43	14	25
Germany .	50	40	53	South Africa .	33	52	63
Greece .	103	54	81				
Hungary .	68	69	<sup>2</sup>	<i>N. America:</i>			
Italy .	919	644	1,289	Canada .	4	4	6
Portugal .	241	224	252	United States .	120	160	150
Roumania .	218	123	<sup>2</sup>				
Spain .	352	304	355	<i>S. America:</i>			
Switzerland .	8	13	17	Argentina .	204	160	389
Yugoslavia .	103	70	117	Brazil .	18	21	25
Others .	<sup>3</sup>	<sup>3</sup>	220	Chile .	79	65	86
				<i>Australasia:</i>			
<i>Asia:</i>				Australia .	20	14	24
Cyprus .	5	3	3				
				<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>4,471</b>	<b>2,941</b>	<b>4,882</b>

<sup>1</sup> Based on the Commonwealth Economic Committee's Report "Fruit" (1957).

<sup>2</sup> See "Other." <sup>3</sup> Listed separately above under Bulgaria, Hungary and Roumania.

The export trade in French wines is large and valuable. Until the ravages of the phylloxera began there was only a trifling import to set against this large export, but since 1880 French imports of wine have exceeded the exports. In 1938 imports were 354m. imperial gallons, exports 23m. During and after the war the difference was much less, but in 1955 it was greater than ever—402m. against 37m. There is not, however, the same difference in value, the imported wine being chiefly an inferior commodity from Algeria, Italy, and the north-east of Spain. The explanation of this two-way trade is twofold. First, the fixed habits of the people lead to a larger consumption of wine per head in France than in any other country; second, France retains the reputation which it has long had in foreign countries, and especially in England, for its light wines.

In quantity Algeria easily leads the world as an exporter of wine, providing about two-thirds of the world total of such exports. France comes next, and not far behind are Portugal, Spain, and Italy. Morocco and Tunisia are also big exporters. Greece, Yugoslavia, Germany, South Africa, Australia, Cyprus, complete the tally.

Of the **wines of Italy**, though some were celebrated in classical times, only a few are favoured by connoisseurs; one of the best known is Chianti. Some of the **Spanish wines** have long been in high repute,

especially in England, the most noted being those strong southern wines which take the name of **sherry** (formerly sherris) from the town of Jerez de la Frontera, near the seaport of Cadiz, in which district the best sherry is still produced, as it was in the days of Falstaff. A greater quantity of wine, however, is produced in the north-east of Spain, in the provinces of Barcelona, Zaragoza, &c. The wines of Portugal are, except light wines near Lisbon for local consumption, chiefly grown in the basin of the Douro, and that which is exported is shipped at Oporto. In England these wines are known as port; indeed, by law, the name 'port' may not be used except for these wines. Of the wines of Central Europe the most celebrated are those of **Hungary** (especially Tokay). **Germany**, though low in the list of wine-producing countries in respect of the quantity of its output, is noted for the fine quality of the vintage of some of its valleys, and above all those of the warm valleys of the middle Rhine and its tributary streams, the Moselle and the Neckar. The celebrated Taunus wine is grown on the slopes of the hills that shut in on the north the broad flat valley between the Vosges and the Black Forest.

In the **United States** the cultivation of the vine, despite recent increases, has not attained the extent that might have been expected, but it has had attention, especially in **California**. During the prohibition period, manufacture of wine was forbidden and thousands of acres of wine-grapes were destroyed. The repeal of prohibition in 1934 gave a new impetus to vine cultivation, and in 1954 California produced 607,000 tons of wine grapes, 478,000 tons of table grapes and 1,285,000 tons of raisin grapes; in all, 2,370,000 tons of grapes.

In **Algeria** the spread of vine-culture since 1878, when it was in its infancy, has been very rapid. The vine was introduced into what is now the **Cape Province** in 1653, soon after the arrival of the first European settlers. The part of South Africa where the first settlements were made has a climate very similar to that best adapted to the vine in Europe, and there it has proved very productive. Large quantities of the fruit are used as table grapes or converted into raisins. The production of wine has increased and, in addition to a considerable home consumption, wines of the hock, claret, and burgundy types are popular in England. A proportion of the grapes is also used in making brandy and other spirits, but the production under this head has greatly declined. There are several government vineyards where experiments are carried out. The **Australian** production of wine is increasing, but not the export, though several wines, especially of the burgundy and port types, have found favour in the home market. South Australia, Victoria, and New South Wales are the chief states in which the vine is grown.

The **British trade in wine** is affected by the existence of a customs duty which varies according to the proportion of spirit contained

in the wine. The countries from which the greater part of the British import is derived are France, Spain, and Portugal, despite a preferential tariff in favour of Commonwealth wines. About five per cent. of the wine imported is re-exported, being sent to all parts of the world. The quantity of wine retained for home consumption in the United Kingdom, relatively to population, steadily declined from .56 gallon per head in 1876 to .30 gallon per head in 1886, which remained the minimum till 1900; in 1955 it had fallen to .25 gallon per head. For the sake of comparison it may be mentioned that in France the consumption in 1876 was rather more than 30 gallons per head; but that was the year after the unparalleled crop of 1875. In 1877 the rate dropped to 28 gallons, and later it declined still further, but before the last war it was between 35 and 40 gallons, and had been known to exceed the latter figure.

**HOPS.** The hop-vine is a slender-stemmed, twining and climbing plant cultivated for the sake of its clusters of small greenish flowers, used as a seasoning for beer, to which they impart a bitter flavour. In cultivation it is allowed to twine round upright poles or cords or wires. There are two kinds of flowers on different plants, one which can and one which cannot produce seeds, and it is only the former that can be used for the purpose mentioned. The countries in which the plant is most largely cultivated are England, Germany, the United States, and Czechoslovakia: annual world crop about 60,000 tons. With a pre-war production averaging about 12,000 tons, the United Kingdom imported another two or three thousand tons and exported only a few hundred tons. After World War II, home production increased for a time (18,000 tons in 1950) and though it was back to 12,000 tons in 1954, imports practically disappeared and an export trade developed, reaching 5,400 tons in 1951 before declining to 2,000 tons in 1956.

The obstacle to further extension of home production lies in the fact that hops are a very exhausting crop, requiring to be grown only on the richest soil and needing a plentiful labour supply at harvest time. In England, the crop is mainly grown in the weald of Kent, where 'hop-pickers' drawn from the poorest districts of eastern London combine work with a summer holiday. Besides Kent, the principal county producing this crop is Hereford. It is not grown at all in the northern counties. Besides being grown only on rich soil, the crop is in England generally very plentifully treated with manure, so that the average quantity produced to the acre in this country usually compares well with the yield elsewhere.<sup>1</sup>

In Germany hops are chiefly grown in Bavaria, especially in the division of Middle Franconia. Before the Second World War this crop extended very rapidly in Alsace-Lorraine. In Czechoslovakia

<sup>1</sup> In the five years 1948-52, English crops averaged 13.5 cwt. per acre, United States 9.12, Australian 14.2.

the chief hop-growing area is the Czech or Bohemian plateau around the famous beer-brewing centre of Plzn or Pilsen. The hop as a cultivated plant was introduced into England from Belgium (Flanders) only in 1525.

**BEET.** This is the common name for several varieties of a widely cultivated species of plants (*Beta vulgaris*, Linn.). They have large broad leaves and long tap-roots, and it is principally for the sake of the latter that they have been introduced into agriculture. One variety is extensively grown in this country, under the German name of **mangold** or mangel-wurzel, as food for cattle, like the turnip. Requiring a hotter and drier climate than this latter crop, it is mostly grown in the southern and eastern parts of England, and, being sensitive to frost, it is banished from those parts of the island in which the summers are short or the situation too exposed.

Another, and now a much more important variety, the sugar-beet, became in the course of the nineteenth century the great rival of the sugar-cane in the production of sugar. This variety is now cultivated over a very large area that has steadily grown in central Europe, stretching from France, through Holland, Belgium, Germany, Czechoslovakia and Poland to Roumania and South-western Russia (the Ukraine). Under the protection of high duties sugar is extracted and refined in the United States from beets grown in many states in the north and west, and there are now hardly any parts of the world with a suitable climate in which sugar beet is not cultivated. See the Sugar Industry, p. 208; also, for British experience, p. 325.

**FLAX.** Flax is a plant remarkable for the variety of useful products which it yields, as well as the variety of uses to which these products can be put, and hence is well called by botanists *Linum usitatissimum*, Linn. The fibre of the bast, or inner bark of the stem, which is tall and slender like that of the cereals, but not unbranched, is from eight to upwards of fifty inches in length. This fibre is itself called flax, and from the earliest times has been spun and woven into a fabric known as **linen** (from the Latin name of the plant). Manufactured flax fibres have been found in the remains of the prehistoric lake-dwellings of Switzerland. The seed (linseed) yields an oil largely used in making paints, and, in its greatest purity, in making varnish. The crushed cake that remains after pressing out the oil is an excellent food for cattle. Also the seeds, when ground, afford the linseed-meal which is so much used medicinally. The tow, which is composed of the shorter fibres of the flax, those not used for weaving, is spun into twine and cords, and linen rags furnish one of the best materials for paper-making.

Flax is grown through a wide range of climate. It thrives both in India and in the colder parts of Russia, in the United States and Canada, and especially in Argentina—these five being easily the countries of largest production. They supply, it is estimated, .80-90

per cent. of the 3-4 million tons of linseed produced annually, while the Soviet Union alone provides three-fourths of the million tons or so of the output of fibre.

The crop presents many difficulties. It is very variable, much dependent on weather conditions from year to year. Its chief commercial value in any given area derives from either the fibre or the seed: where, as in India, the plant produces the best seed for oil, the fibre is nearly valueless; and where the fibre is good, as in Russia, the seed is of less value, though in that country flax is grown both for the oil and the fibre. Far more crops are grown for linseed than for flax. Crop returns do not always distinguish between the two, but whereas the total acreage, at its wartime peak, was upwards of 21m. acres, the peak area cultivated for flax was estimated at 6½m. acres. In Argentina, India, Canada, and U.S.A. cultivation is almost entirely for seed (see under Oil Seeds, p. 223); in the Soviet Union it is mainly for fibre. Though the flax plant is adapted to extremes of climate, the best fibres flourish in a temperate climate, such as that of Europe. Belgium, especially, is noted for the quality of its flax. Flax of excellent quality is grown in considerable amount in the north-east of Ireland, and throughout the island it is a culture of great antiquity.

The soil best suited for the growth of flax for the fibre is one that is tolerably firm and moist. This latter circumstance is what renders the flat surface of Russia and Ireland so well suited for its growth. But there are other conditions besides soil and climate which have an important influence on the extent of flax cultivation. Flax is one of those crops which require the employment of a good deal of labour on the field before the fibre is ready for the factory. For the unprepared flax straw there is in England no market, and to be made ready for the market the flax has to undergo a number of processes which are apt to make extensive demands on the labour attached to a farm at a time when it is much needed for other purposes. In the first place, instead of being cut like grain, flax has to be pulled up by the roots. Next, if it has been allowed to seed, it must be rippled—deprived of its seed-vessels by means of an iron comb. After that the straw has to be retted, that is, steeped in water for about a month so as to rot the soft tissue but leave the fibre and the woody core. The quality of the fibre depends largely on this operation, for which the water should be soft and stagnant or nearly stagnant. Finally the straw is scutched, or subjected to the action of a machine with revolving blades, which gets rid of the woody core of the fibre.

It is the labour required for these processes that chiefly prevents the cultivation of flax in England and Scotland. Both before and during the Second World War efforts were made to extend its cultivation in Britain, but with little success, though the plant is quite suited

to the climate and there is every inducement to grow it, for though the quantity imported of flax alone has dropped from 40,000 tons in 1938 to 36,000 tons in 1956, the value has gone up from £3.4m. to £7.1m. An extensive linen industry has its chief seats in the north-east of Ireland around Belfast and at Dundee and Dunfermline, Scotland. On the continent this industry was most highly developed in Germany (where Westphalia is most noted for the quality of its linens), Czechoslovakia (especially Bohemia), and Belgium.

**Lawns** and **cambrics** are among the special fabrics made from flax. The latter is named from the French town of Cambrai, where the manufacture is still carried on. The canvas of sail-makers, formerly, as the name (see below) indicates, made from hemp-fibre, is now, in the United Kingdom at least, made chiefly from flax or cotton.

**HEMP** (*Cannabis sativa*, Linn.) is a plant the bast of which yields a fibre similar to that of flax, only coarser and stronger. It is used chiefly (in England almost solely) for ropes and cordage, and the fabric woven from it, which takes the name of canvas, from the Latin name of the plant, was principally used in making sails. The finer kinds of fibre are, however, used in making a cloth similar to linen, and hemp yarn, like linen yarn, is frequently combined with other yarns in weaving. Like flax, true (soft) hemp is adapted to a wide range of climate; but the soil and climate best suited to it when grown for the fibre are similar to those required for flax, and the mode of cultivation and after-treatment of flax are likewise suitable for hemp. Russia, credited with an annual output of 25 to 50 per cent. of the world total of true hemp, is far and away the biggest producer. Italy has the reputation of growing the finest quality, and until recently was also the second largest producer, but its output has declined with falling prices. In the United Kingdom hemp is now rarely seen.

The term 'hemp' is also applied to a number of other fibres, some tropical, some extra-tropical in their origin, adapted to the same uses as the true hemp fibre. By far the most important of these are two tropical products, manila hemp and sisal. Other tropical 'hemp' products are sunn hemp and Deccan hemp (pp. 214, 603). Sunn hemp is grown more for its derivative stimulants than for its fibres. Among plants belonging to temperate climates, the so-called **New Zealand flax** (*Phormium tenax*, Fort.) is much better suited to the purposes of hemp fibre than to those of flax fibre; it is, indeed, sometimes called New Zealand hemp, but its ordinary name now is **phormium**. The fibre is derived from the leaves, which are long and narrow like those of the yellow iris. The plant grows very abundantly in New Zealand and is very easily cultivated. It thrives on inferior boggy soil, almost useless for other purposes,

and it has been grown in several of the south-western counties of Scotland. The use of the fibre in manufactures is, however, impeded by the difficulty in freeing it from a gum by which it is invested, and the industry is maintained with difficulty. Exports of phormium fibre from New Zealand reached a maximum of 27,877 tons in 1905. Since then production has declined. In 1940 eighteen mills, employing 216 people and treating 29,872 tons of leaves, turned out 3,613 tons of dressed fibre and 443 tons of tow. During the war, production sank lower still, and the annual export of phormium fibre was under 500 tons. In 1950 the exports of both fibre and tow amounted to less than 800 tons.

Of the other fibre-yielding products of the temperate zone, the most important is **esparto**, or, as it is called in North Africa, **alfa**. These are the commercial names of various grasses (chiefly *Stipa tenacissima*, Linn., but also *Lygeum spartum*, Loeffl., and *Ampelodesma tenax*, Linn.), derived from northern Africa (Algeria and Tunisia) and southern Spain, and used chiefly in paper-making. In Spain esparto fibres are also employed in making ropes and cordage as well as in plaiting. Imports of esparto into the United Kingdom in the five years 1934–38 averaged 313,671 tons. In the five post-war years 1948–52, the average rose to 326,000 tons, and a post-war maximum of 389,000 tons valued at £15m. was reached in 1951. In the next five years, 1952–56, the average dropped to 274,000 tons, and only in 1952 did the value exceed £10m. In the last year of the quinquennium, 1956, the import was 266,000 tons, valued at under £6m. Practically all these imports come from North Africa—Algeria, Tunisia, Libya, and Morocco.

**WOOL.** Wool is the name given to a kind of hair found in greater or less quantity on almost all mammals, on a few of which it forms the principal covering of the body. From ordinary hair it is distinguished by two important properties. First, while a hair is almost quite smooth on the outside, each fibre in wool is covered with minute overlapping scales, the edges of which are turned in one direction like those of the slates on a roof. These scales are, however, extremely minute, so that they cannot be discerned by the naked eye or by the touch, unless a woollen fibre be drawn between the fingers in the direction opposite to that in which the edges of the scales are set. Second, each fibre of wool is finely crimped or curled, so that when drawn out it becomes greatly lengthened, returning again to its original length when the strain is removed. It is the spring due to this curl which imparts to woollen fabrics that elasticity which distinguishes them from those made from cotton, linen, and other fibres. Another distinguishing property of wool is its power of felting—that is, of becoming matted in such a manner as to be capable of being made into a kind of cloth without weaving, but merely by rolling, beating, and other processes.



The animal that furnishes by far the largest proportion of the wool of commerce is the domestic **sheep**, the woolly covering of which is almost entirely a product of domestication. Several different species of wild sheep are indeed known, one of these, the moufflon, still surviving in a few of the mountainous parts of southern Europe; and some of the species of wild sheep which inhabit the elevated regions of central Asia are known to produce, like other natives of the same part of the world, considerable quantities of winter wool. But no wild species of sheep possesses the well-known woolly fleece, which is one of the principal products for the sake of which the domestic sheep is reared. When the sheep was first domesticated it is impossible to say. The pictures on the ancient Egyptian monuments bear witness that the Egyptians owned domestic sheep at a very remote period, though there are no pictures of this animal so old as some of those of the horse and ox.

In all countries suited for rearing it, the sheep is now the most numerous of domesticated animals, and in most of these it is chiefly for the sake of the fleece that it is reared. The climate best adapted to the sheep as a wool-producer is one that is comparatively dry and equable, or at any rate free from extremes of cold. The grassy tracts of the Mediterranean countries are accordingly peculiarly favourable to it, and it was in that region that the **merino** sheep, the variety which now produces fine wool in all parts of the world in which it thrives, originated. This variety, which is characterised by its dense and soft fleece, and fine but strong and very curly fibre, was first known in northern Africa, and was thence introduced into Spain about the middle of the fourteenth century. In Spain, which even in Roman times was renowned for the excellence of its fleeces, the variety was still further improved by careful rearing. In the seventeenth century the finest cloths of western Europe were all made from Spanish wool, and Spain retained its reputation for wool till long after that period. At the present day, however, Spanish wool, owing to the neglect which the sheep-rearing industry along with others experienced for centuries in Spain, is far eclipsed by the produce of other countries, and in quantity it takes a very unimportant place in the commerce of the world.

The country which first bore the palm from Spain for its wool was Saxony, into which the merino sheep was introduced towards the middle of the eighteenth century. Upon the rearing of this variety the Saxon sheep-owners bestowed the greatest care, and in consequence of that care, rather than because of any superiority in climate, the so-called 'electoral'<sup>1</sup> wool rapidly attained the first place in the market. Silesian wool, produced in the Prussian

<sup>1</sup> So called because in the eighteenth century Saxony was an 'electorate'—that is, its ruler was one of the princes entitled to vote in the election of the emperor of the Old German Empire.

province of Silesia, soon came to rival it from the same cause, and another rival is sometimes found in Bohemian (Czechoslovakian) wool. With regard to English wool, it must be explained that wools generally are classed in two great divisions, adapted for different purposes, the length of fibre or staple having been formerly the distinguishing character between the two, and it is mainly the long-stapled variety for which English wool has a reputation. The English breeds of sheep which take their names from the counties of Leicester and Lincoln are among the finest of the 'long-stapled' class. To illustrate the effect of local conditions on the quality of sheep's wool, an effect which is very marked in many parts of the world, it may here be mentioned that, while these breeds produce in the counties named, and in Yorkshire and Nottinghamshire, a highly lustrous wool, their fleece rapidly loses in brilliancy in other counties. In the Middle Ages wool was by far the most valuable of the English exports. It is still the principal agricultural export of the United Kingdom, though for many years the production of British wool has gradually declined—from an annual average of 159m. lb. (greasy basis) in 1871-75 to 111m. lb. in 1934-38. Exports were better maintained during this period; until shortly before the First World War they increased considerably, and though not increasing at the same rate in later years they continued to form a growing percentage of the diminishing production. In the quinquennium before the Second World War they averaged 43m. lb., or nearly 40 per cent. of the production.

The decline during the Second World War, and the subsequent climb-up again, are shown in the following table. The figures for production are on a greasy basis—*i.e.*, for wool in its natural condition. The export figures are for partly greasy and partly clean wool; if the exports were all on a greasy basis, their calculated percentage of the home production would be still larger. It may be noted that in the Board of Trade returns the exports of raw wool described as "Produce and Manufactures of the United Kingdom" include not only British home-grown wool but imported wool which has been treated for export. The figures in the table are for home-grown wool only.

*Production and Export of British (Home-grown) Raw Wool*

Production		Export		Percentage Exported
Year	Million lb.	Year	Million lb.	
1937-38 .	104	1938 .	30·1	29
1943-44 .	90	1944 .	1	1
1947-48 .	75	1948 .	10·3	14
1954-55 .	111	1955 .	29·1	26
1955-56 .	104	1956 .	29·8	29

In 1956, the exports of close on 30m. lb. were valued at nearly £8½m.

Estimates of the production of raw wool in the leading wool countries of the world, at different periods of the present century, together with estimates of the world totals and of the number of sheep in 1955-56, are given in the following table.\*

	Production of wool in million lb. (greasy basis)					Million Sheep
	1900	1909-13	1934-38	1947-48	1955-56	1955-56
Australia . . . }	514	700	995	973	1,399	139.1
New Zealand . . . }		198	300	362	462	40
Union of South Africa	46 <sup>1</sup>	158	250	205	300	38
Argentina . . . }	398	359	376	460	363	49.5
Uruguay . . . }		157	114	150	200	23
United States . . .	301 <sup>2</sup>	314	451	328	304	31.1
United Kingdom . .	141	134	111	75	104	23
Russia (U.S.S.R.) .	—	320	219	250	556	124.9
World total . . .	2,025	3,187	3,788	3,784	4,803	894

<sup>1</sup> Cape of Good Hope only.

<sup>2</sup> North America.

The estimation of wool production on a greasy basis greatly modifies the value of the figures for comparative purposes. The wool on the sheep always includes a varying proportion of grease and dirt, which must be removed before the wool is ready for use. Each fibre of the wool has a natural covering of grease, which is known as the yolk, and which on the living animal has the important property of preventing the wool from becoming felted. Occasionally the wool is scoured before export, but this practice, which is apt to result in the felting of the wool when packed in bales for long voyages, is becoming rarer. More frequently the fleece is washed to get rid of the dirt, the yolk being still retained. Very often, however, the wool is exported in its natural condition. The amount of clean wool, that is, the amount of fibre available for manufacturing purposes, thus varies greatly according to the difference of practice in this respect, as well as according to other circumstances.

Of the world production of raw wool in 1955-56, as estimated in the foregoing table, it has been calculated that merino wools account for 1,896m. lb., crossbred wools for 1,850m. lb., carpet wools for 1,057m. lb. The predominant position of Australia among the world sources of supply stands out clearly in the table. Merino sheep were introduced into Australia about the close of the

\* With acknowledgment to the Commonwealth Economic Committee's Report on "Industrial Fibres" (1957).

eighteenth century, and care has been taken to propagate them. They have thriven admirably, and certain parts of Victoria and New South Wales now produce a wool unequalled for softness and lustre, and at the same time, unlike the original merino, very long in staple. This wool now commands the highest price in the London market. As the merino sheep, however, yields very poor mutton, the growth of the trade in frozen lamb and mutton has led to the rearing of increasing numbers of sheep crossed with English breeds, yielding better mutton, and producing a different variety of wool. Crossbreds require plentiful pasture with a good rainfall, whereas merino sheep, though badly affected by drought, thrive best on light pastures with light rainfall.

Next to Australia for wool, though far below it, is the Soviet Union; New Zealand comes third, with crossbreds as the mainstay of its production. Argentina, ranking fourth, faces Uruguay across the River Plate, and the combined supply from the La Plata region rivals that of the Soviet Union. The United States, which had the second largest output before the Second World War, has since lost ground both actually and relatively, and has a considerable import, largely of carpet wools from India and Argentina, as well as of the finest types (from Britain). The Union of South Africa has a large output in relation to its population, and is now level with the United States. The rearing of merinos has been fairly established there since about 1812, but the South African wool is neither so fine nor so long in the staple as that of Australia; until the outbreak of war in 1939 the chief markets for it were in continental Europe (France, Germany and Belgium). It is now the most valuable export from the Union apart from gold.

For Australian, New Zealand, and the best South African wool the chief market is the United Kingdom, which derives from the Commonwealth and River Plate the great bulk of the wool needed for the home manufacturers. Before the war, the different branches of the British woollen industry were making use of nearly eight times as much imported as home-grown wool; and of the total quantity of imported wool (including that which is re-exported) that of Australasian origin had averaged between 60 and 70 per cent. for over seventy years. As in Australia, large numbers of crossbred sheep have come to be reared in recent years in Argentina. A great deal of the best blood of British breeds has been introduced into the country, and the cross-bred wool of that country is now unsurpassed. The chief markets for the River Plate wool are the United Kingdom, Germany, the United States, France, Italy, and Belgium. Formerly River Plate wool was considered 'dirty' and went to continental Europe: this whole position has now changed.

In the latter part of last century London was almost the sole market for Australian wool, but now the bulk of the wool is sold

by auction in the chief Australian capitals. One result of this is that a large proportion of the wool from that part of the world is sent direct to New York and the principal Continental ports. Normally between 80 and 90 per cent. of the wool grown in Australia is sold in the local market prior to export. In 1895 only 50 per cent. was sold thus.

Apart from the main sources of supply, the United Kingdom draws considerable quantities of raw wool from India (whence the wool obtained is generally of poor quality, used chiefly for making carpets or blankets), France, Chile, and the Irish Republic.

**Other wools.** The principal animals besides the sheep yielding materials for the woollen manufacture are the **goat**, the **alpaca** and **vicuña**, and the **camel**. The fibre derived from all of these is more nearly allied to wool than to hair, though there are gradual transitions between the properties of the one and those of the other fibre.

Of the varieties of goat, those most famous for their wool are the **Angora goat** and the **Cashmere** (Kashmir) **goat**. The former is a native of the steppes of the interior of Asia Minor, and its wool, known as **mohair**, is remarkable for its length, fineness, softness, and silky appearance. The goat has been introduced with great success into **South Africa**, and mohair has long been an important export of the Union of South Africa. The **Cashmere goat** is the animal that furnishes most of the material for the costly Cashmere shawls, so called from having been first made in the kingdom of Cashmere or Kashmir. The material used in the manufacture is not the ordinary covering of the goat, but a fine downy under-covering which grows in winter on this and other animals (such as the yak) belonging to the higher slopes of the Himalayas.

The **alpaca** is an animal closely allied to the llama, and, like it, a native of the lofty plateaus of the Andes. It has long been domesticated for the sake of its wool, which is remarkably soft and elastic. This wool, though long used in spinning and weaving by the Peruvians, was at first found to be unsuited for spinning by the processes now used in the great manufacturing countries; but the difficulties in the way of its being so used were at last (about 1836) overcome by Mr. (afterwards Sir Titus) Salt, of Bradford, who thereby founded an important industry.

The wool of the **vicuña**, another ally of the llama and alpaca, is of even more value than that of the latter animal, but, since the vicuña is found only at elevations above 13,000 feet, it is not domesticated, and the supply of wool from this source is consequently small and decreasing.

**Camel's hair**, formerly used chiefly for making painters' brushes, is now employed in the manufacture of coarse shawls, carpets, blankets, and other fabrics, the yarn made from it being usually mixed, however, with other yarns. A fine and light-coloured camel-

hair is imported from China, a coarser and darker-coloured kind from Russia, and as this latter kind is very strong and does not readily stretch it is largely used in making belting for machinery.

**WOOLLEN MANUFACTURES.** In point of antiquity the origin of the spinning and weaving of wool belongs to the same remote period as the industry in cotton and linen. In point of extent the woollen industry is, in temperate countries at least, the great rival of the cotton industry, and in most of them is the more important of the two. In temperate and cold countries, in which close-fitting garments are worn, wool is much the most suitable material for clothing, not only because it is a bad conductor of heat (due largely to the large amount of air occluded), and woollen clothes consequently retain the heat better than others, but also because moisture is less readily absorbed by the woollen fibre, and perspiration more readily passes through woollen tissues than through tissues of another kind. Where, as in the tropics, and in warm countries generally, clothes are worn more loosely, this circumstance is of less consequence. It is natural, therefore, to find that in all temperate countries, except China and Japan, wool is the principal clothing material, and its use is further promoted by the fact that such countries also furnish the raw material of the manufacture.

The treatment of wool in manufactures is in many respects like that of cotton, but some differences require notice. First of all the wool has to be thoroughly freed from the yolk or natural grease which invests it, since that would prevent it from taking the dyes, and otherwise interfere with the processes which it has to undergo. Dyeing may follow, and then the fibres may be oiled artificially to make them more easily workable. The nature of the next steps depends upon the use to which the wool is to be put, or more particularly upon the kind of yarn that is to be made from it. Formerly all long-stapled wools were combed, or so treated that the fibres were laid as nearly as possible parallel to one another, and were then spun into a kind of yarn known as worsted, which is used in hosiery and in the manufacture of fabrics which have not to undergo the process of fulling. All short-stapled wools, on the other hand, were carded and spun much in the same way as cotton, and the yarns so made were the only ones capable of being used in making milled or fulled cloths, in which advantage is taken of the felting property in wool to thicken and shrink the cloth after weaving, and afterwards by means of teasels to raise the nap of the cloth in such a way that, in the most highly finished fabrics, a uniform surface is presented to view without any appearance of the intercrossing of fibres that takes place in weaving. All kinds of wool were therefore formerly divided into (*a*) combing, (*b*) carding or clothing wools, according to the purpose for which they were fitted. Machines have been invented capable of combing wools having a staple as short as

one inch, and, on the other hand, wools with a staple of as much as five inches long may be used in making milled cloth. Wools are still divided into combing and carding or clothing wools, but the former term is no longer synonymous with long-stapled, the latter with short-stapled wools, and the distinction as between wools is no longer so absolute as it once was. But the distinction between worsted yarns and carded or clothing yarns still holds good, and it is to the industry concerned with the latter that the term 'woollen manufacture' is specially applied.

Among the principal varieties of woollen cloth in the special sense of the term are: (1) broadcloths, so called from the great width of the web, the finest quality of cloth; (2) cashmeres, a fine thin twilled fabric, much used for ladies' dresses; (3) tweeds, a fabric of looser texture than broadcloth and less highly milled, first and still mostly made in Galashiels and other towns belonging to the Tweed basin, chiefly used for men's clothing; (4) doeskin, a strong twilled cloth also used for men's clothing. Blankets, flannels, Scotch bonnets, and some kinds of shawls also belong to the woollen manufacture in the special sense of the term.

The name worsted is said to be derived from the parish of Worstead in Norfolk, where a colony of Flemish weavers, who are credited with having introduced the manufacture of worsted into England, settled in the twelfth century. Merinos and serges are among the chief kinds of worsted fabrics made entirely of sheep's wool, but such fabrics are perhaps the exception among those in which worsted yarn is used, at least in the United Kingdom, this kind of yarn being mixed more frequently than carded yarn with yarns made from other materials. The fibres chiefly used for mixing with that of the sheep are mohair, alpaca, and camel's hair. Hosiery and the making of carpets may also be classed as departments of the worsted branch of the woollen industry, though the best carpets (Turkey, Brussels, Axminster, &c.) are made on a ground of strong linen or hemp, and only inferior kinds (such as Kidderminster, Scotch, &c.) entirely of wool. Artistic hand-made carpets are produced in Ireland, chiefly in Donegal, and still more valuable ones in Persia and other Eastern countries.

Besides woollen and worsted yarn another kind originally derived from wool is now employed in the woollen industry in the production of a coarse but cheap kind of woollen cloth. The raw material in this case is obtained by tearing up cast-off woollen clothing and woollen rags into fibres, which can be re-spun into a yarn, not very strong indeed, but capable of being woven. This material is known as shoddy when made from fragments of loose texture, and mungo when made from the remains of finer fragments, such as old dress-coats, tailors' clippings, and the like. This industry, besides using up all the available woollen rags of British production,

gave rise in England to a considerable import trade in rags of this nature.

In the Middle Ages woollen manufactures attained their highest development in Flanders, which had the advantage of being within easy reach of abundant supplies of wool, especially from England, and being able to send its manufactured products to the best markets by sea, river, and land. In the middle of the twelfth century Flemish woollens were already worn in France and Germany. A writer of the thirteenth century says that all the world was clothed in English wool wrought in Flanders. It was from Flanders that English kings at different times introduced artisans into England with the view of improving the woollen manufactures of their country. Towards the close of the eleventh century this was done by William the Conqueror; it was again done by Edward III in the first half of the fourteenth century, and again by Henry VII towards the close of the fifteenth.

England had already begun to export considerable quantities of woollen cloth in the sixteenth century, but the cloth was often, if not mostly, undressed and undyed, these finishing processes being performed in Holland as late as 1603, and for the finest fabrics down to the middle of that century. Early in the following century the woollen industry of England had risen to such importance that woollen manufactures formed upwards of 40 per cent. of the value of the exports, and about 1780 this industry is spoken of as having 'long been the glory of England and the envy of other nations'. Soon after that it began to share in the improvements brought about by the introduction of machinery into the cotton manufactures, but as the leading industrial countries of the world all produce quantities of woollen goods, the British woollen industry (in the wide sense of the term) never acquired the predominance attained by the British cotton manufactures. In 1921 the factories engaged in woollen, worsted, and shoddy manufactures in the United Kingdom employed about 237,000 persons, considerably less than half the number in the cotton industry. Nearly half of these were employed in the woollen (including shoddy) factories, the remainder in the worsted. At the Census of Production, 1949, the woollen and worsted industry employed 179,000 operatives; cotton, spinning and weaving 257,000. Native English wools are best adapted for the worsted industry, which helps to account for the fact that it is in this branch that England has long had a special reputation, as shown by the export trade in woollen and worsted yarns; through all the fluctuations of the past hundred years, worsted yarns have been an easy first.

Exports of combed wool, made up into bundles known as tops, increased from 6.4m. lb. in 1890 to over 50m. lb. before the Second World War, and though at the end of the war they were down to 16m. lb., they rose higher than ever, averaging 63m. lb. in the five years 1950-54, and further increasing to 81.5m. lb. in 1956.



*Woollen and Worsted Yarns: British Exports in millions of lb.*

Average of years.	Woollen yarn.	Worsted yarn.	Alpaca and mohair yarn.
1862-66 . . .	1.5	27.8	1.5
1906-10 . . .	2.7	55.4	16.3
1926-30 . . .	6.6	37.8	7.6
1936-38 . . .	6.6	25.8	3.9
1945 . . .	1.6	6.3	0.5
1952-56 . . .	5.1	18.1	2.2

Despite their steady decline this century, the exports of worsted yarn are still far greater than those of woollen yarn. But, as the following table shows, the exports of woven woollen fabrics have far outstripped those of woven worsted fabrics.

*Woollen and Worsted Woven Fabrics: British Exports in millions of square yards.*

Average of years.	Woollen tissues.	Worsted tissues.
1857-61 . . .	25	134
1901-05 . . .	56	103
1911-13 . . .	101	71
1921-25 . . .	129	63
1931-35 . . .	62	32
1936-38 . . .	72	38
1945 . . .	28	13
1951-55 . . .	64	35
1956 . . .	71	33

In certain parts of the European mainland it is now customary to have woollen yarns, as well as wool and woollen fabrics, 'conditioned'—that is, tested as to weight, measurement, and condition in recognised establishments for the purpose. The submission to this test is voluntary, but so general is the practice that at Roubaix, where there is one of the largest of these establishments, nearly all the yarn used in local factories is conditioned. A similar establishment was opened at Bradford, Yorkshire, in 1891, and is provided with ingenious testing apparatus partly due to local invention. It serves primarily to protect the buyer against an undue amount of moisture in the wool purchased.

**SILK.** Next to wool, silk is the most important of animal products used in weaving. The great bulk of the silk of commerce is derived from an animal called the **silkworm**, but which in reality is the caterpillar stage of a kind of moth, whose favourite and best food consists of the leaves of the white mulberry (*Morus alba*, L.). It is hence called *Bombyx mori*, or the mulberry bombyx. In the body of the silkworm the substance that becomes the silk fibre exists in the form of two jelly-like masses, which harden on exposure to the air. When the 'worm' is about to pass into the chrysalis stage, it sends out this substance by two minute openings at the head, and the two streams, at once uniting, form an extremely fine thread, which the worm coils round itself, so as to form what is called a cocoon. From the cocoons the silk of commerce is directly obtained, but the

thread of a single cocoon is much too fine for use in spinning and weaving, and hence in reeling off the fibre the threads from several cocoons are united, individual threads being sufficiently adhesive to make this an easy matter. For the finest qualities of silk fibre, the product of from five to seven cocoons is used; for coarser qualities, the product of eleven or twelve, or even twenty or more.

After being reeled off from the cocoons the silk is made up into hanks, and in this condition forms the raw silk of commerce. The outer husks of the cocoon and a part of the silk in the interior are incapable of being reeled off, and in addition to that, numerous fragments of thread remain as refuse after the process of reeling. These are exported from silk-producing countries under the names of husks, knubs, and waste, and such material is now largely employed in the manufacture of silk fabrics, especially in the United Kingdom. Cocoons also are exported, but generally in comparatively small quantity; for since 100 lb. of cocoons yield only about 9 lb. of raw silk, it is obvious that the carriage of the silk in the latter form must be much more economical than in the form of cocoons.

Since mulberry-leaves form the principal food of the silkworm, the animal can be reared in all climates in which the mulberry thrives. Silkworms are usually reared under cover, the trees being stripped of their leaves in order to supply them with food, and the animals can thus be protected from cold and other influences of the weather that might be injurious to them. The range of climate suitable for silkworm rearing is consequently a wide one. Still, the character of the climate is very important. The health and productiveness of the caterpillars are greatly affected by the temperature, and as the rearing of the insect from the egg to the formation of the cocoon is completed within seven weeks in spring, there are great fluctuations in the amount of raw silk produced, according as the weather is genial or not. In China the rearing of the 'worms' begins about the beginning of April, and the yield of silk is apt to be greatly diminished if during that month the temperature sinks much below 60° F. In Japan the 'autumn crop' free from the vagaries of spring is now as important as the spring crop. But the geographical distribution of raw silk production does not depend solely on climate. This industry is almost confined to the Old World, and indeed to Asia and Europe, notwithstanding that there are many regions elsewhere in which the climate is all that could be desired for the purpose. This limitation in the range of production arises from the nature of the labour connected with the industry. The tending of the silkworms previous to the spinning of the cocoons, and the subsequent operations necessary to prepare the raw silk for the market, demand not only a considerable amount of labour, but likewise the utmost carefulness and delicacy on the part of those employed. Silkworm-rearing is therefore generally confined to those

parts of the world in which the labourers are not only content with low wages, but have inherited from previous generations a capacity for watchfulness and delicate manipulation, and have been trained in these habits from a very early age. Thus the United States, though the largest manufacturer of silk goods in the world, is entirely dependent on imported raw silk.

Chinese history or legend ascribes to Si-ling-she the honour of having discovered the art of spinning and weaving silk about 2700 B.C. The rearing of the silkworm is generally distributed over **China**, but is principally carried on in the middle provinces (about latitude  $30^{\circ}$  to  $35^{\circ}$  N.), and in the southern province of Kwang-tung. In addition to the produce of the carefully reared and tended mulberry moth, there is a large amount of silk obtained in China from various other moths, and from the mulberry moth in a state of nature. It used to be reckoned that about one-fourth of the total production and one-tenth of the export came under the head of **wild and coarse silk**.

With no estimate of home consumption, it is difficult to assess China's present position among silk-producing countries, but its exports have been left far behind by those of **Japan**, which easily dominates world trade in silk. The production of raw silk in Japan was subject to greater fluctuations than in China, a natural consequence of its more northerly latitude and greater liability to cold springs, until the development of the autumn crop. The Japanese have readily adopted European inventions and the bulk of the silk is reeled not by hand but in steam filatures. There has been similar development in China, at least as regards the export trade. Whereas in 1894 China's exports of filature silk were only about 5 per cent. of her exports of hand-reeled silk, mid-way between the two World Wars most if not all of the exports were filature silk.

In **India** the rearing of the mulberry silkworm appears to have been introduced as early as the sixth century of our era, but the industry is far from having attained the importance which it possesses in China and Japan. The mulberry was chiefly cultivated in Bengal, where the East India Company made special efforts to foster the production of silk as far back as 1767, and Bengal silk became an important article of export. Nowadays Mysore provides a large proportion of India's output of cocoons. Falling prices have made conditions difficult for the peasant operators. The Indian Government plans to limit imports of raw silk and to foster both home industry and the export trade by extensive grants. Considerable quantities of silk are obtained from 'wild' moths, principally found in Assam, the old Central Provinces, and the more sparsely peopled region in the west of Bengal. The general name of tussore silk is given to their produce, and most of the silk so called is distinguished by its natural fawn colour. Wild silk, chiefly derived from

various species of *Anaphe*, is also produced in different parts of Africa.

The export of silk from **Indo-China** is negligible; indeed, there is a sizeable import from Japan. A certain amount of raw silk is exported from **Persia (Iran)**, where the rearing of the silkworm, now principally carried on in the narrow strip between the Elburz Mountains and the Caspian, is said to have been introduced about the same time as it was into India. Of other Asiatic seats of silkworm-rearing the principal are Trans-Caucasia, Asia Minor, and Syria.

In the early days of the Roman Empire silk had already come into use in Europe as a material for garments worn by the rich, and before the commencement of the Christian era the raw material had been imported into Italy, where it was woven into tissues. But it was not till the sixth century A.D. that Europe was able to make a beginning with the rearing of silkworms. Justinian, who was at that time emperor of the East, and his consort, Theodora, encouraged the new branch of agriculture, of which **Greece**, and more particularly the Peloponnesus, became the principal seat. The peninsula just named is said to have obtained its modern name of Morea from the Greek word for a mulberry-tree. Silkworms were also introduced by the Arabs into **Sicily** and **Spain**, and during the Arab (Moorish) domination in southern Spain the production of silk was very extensively pursued. It is still carried on in Murcia and Valencia in Spain, in various parts of Greece, and in other parts of the Balkan Peninsula; but in the five years 1934-38 the total estimated production of all these regions, measured by the weight of cocoons produced, was only about one-fifth of that of Italy, which provided 80 per cent. of the silk produced in Europe. And now, in Italy, the great silk-producing region is not the island into which the silkworm was first introduced, but the great plains of the north, Lombardy, Piedmont, and Venetia, in many parts of which the long rows of mulberry-trees, stripped bare of their leaves in summer, are a spectacular reminder of the nature of the industry pursued there.

Nowadays **France** ranks below not only Italy but Greece and Bulgaria in the weight of cocoons it produces, though in the middle of the nineteenth century its production of silk—chiefly associated with the Rhône valley—exceeded the Italian production. In 1856 the business of silkworm-rearing in France began to be adversely affected by the outbreak of a disease among the worms; and the ravages of this disease, which at a later date spread to Italy, Spain, Greece, and even the silk-countries of the Far East, were such as to bring down the silk-production in France in 1876 to less than a tenth of what it was in 1853. After 1876, matters improved, chiefly in consequence of an important service rendered to the industry by science. The distinguished French chemist Pasteur, being appointed by the French government to inquire into the

nature and origin of this disease, discovered that by examining the moths with the aid of the microscope it was possible to distinguish those which laid healthy eggs. Since then the microscope has been recognised as an indispensable instrument in the rearing of silkworms. Each moth is caused to lay its eggs on a separate piece of linen in a corner of which the moth is afterwards wrapped. If afterwards the moth is found to show signs of disease the eggs are destroyed. While France has been able thereby to check the ravages of the disease, other countries which received it later have had the means of checking its spread at an earlier stage.

World production of raw silk in 1938 (exports only in the case of China) was estimated at 120m. lb. (about 53,000 tons). Japan provided nearly 80 per cent. (95m. lb.) of this total, and was followed by China (7m. lb.—sea-borne trade only), Italy (5·4m. lb.), Korea (4·7m. lb.), U.S.S.R. (4m. lb.), and India (2m. lb.). Faced with the competition of rayon fabrics and, later, nylon hosiery, the output of raw silk had been declining for some years, and the Second World War had a disastrous effect on the industry. Mulberry trees had to give place to food crops, and any hope that the development of aviation would provide a reserved market for silk, for the manufacture of parachutes, was disappointed: nylon proved to have a greater tensile strength. For the rest, with all its many and admirable qualities, silk is mainly a luxury product, and by the end of the war the annual output had dropped to 24m. lb.—one-fifth of the 1938 figure.

Since the War there has been some revival. Production in 1955 was estimated at nearly 60m. lb., including International Silk Association estimates for China (10m.), the Soviet Union (5m.), and Korea (1m.). Japan still dominated the position, producing two-thirds of the total, with nearly 30m. lb. machine-reeled and 10m. lb. hand-reeled. In all cases other than those already mentioned, production was relatively small; Italy headed the list with 2½m. lb. In Italy, as in India, despite extensive government aid, great difficulty has been experienced in maintaining the industry against the high costs of production in relation to world prices.

World exports of raw silk, which before the War approached 100m. lb. a year, were down to 14·5m. lb. in 1955. Even this was an increase on earlier post-war years, thanks to larger exports from China. Japan provided 80 per cent. of the total and China 12 per cent., while Italy's share dropped to 6 per cent. Exports of silk waste in 1955 amounted to close on another 8m. lb., of which China provided an estimated 37 per cent., Japan 35 per cent., Italy 12 per cent., and India 11 per cent.

The United States is still Japan's best customer, but on a much reduced scale; in 1938 she took 84 per cent. of Japan's export of raw silk, in 1955 only 63 per cent. of the much smaller quantity available.

Japan's other customers in 1955 were chiefly France, Indo-China, Italy, and the United Kingdom. Italy's exports of raw silk went chiefly to Switzerland, Germany, and France. China, apart from her markets in the Soviet Union and Eastern Europe, has an outlet to the free world through Hong Kong.

**SILK MANUFACTURES.** The silk fibre as it is wound from the cocoon, being a continuous thread, does not require to go through the processes necessary in spinning wool, cotton, and other fibres. The making of true silk yarn is known as **throwing**, and consists merely in giving the fibre a slight twist, which enables it to combine better with other fibres. For stronger fabrics several fibres of raw silk are united, being twisted into a fine cord. The processes undergone by silk waste to convert it into yarn are essentially the same as those adopted in spinning the other fibres mentioned above. The yarn so made is distinguished as spun silk from the thrown silk made by the other process.

Of the specially named fabrics made from silk, the chief are satins and velvets, the former being tissues so woven that almost the only threads appearing on the outer or 'right' side of the tissue are weft threads, which present a uniform glossy surface; the latter, tissues in which the outer surface presents to view a short soft pile, made by passing the warp threads over fine wires, which are afterwards drawn out. The loops then remaining are either left as they are, in which case the tissue is called pile velvet, or cut to form cut velvet. This fabric is now imitated in cotton and mixed tissues.

Though Italy was one of the earliest seats of the silk manufacture in Europe, and though during the Middle Ages this branch of industry developed to a high pitch in Venice, Lucca, Genoa, Bologna, and other Italian towns; though, too, that country, as we have seen, stands far ahead of all others in Europe in the production of the raw material, in the manufacture of silk fabrics it ranks far behind France, and its silk is exported largely in the form of thrown silk. The higher branches of the silk industry are now, however, more important than at the end of last century.

In silk manufactures **France now surpasses all other countries in Europe.** The centre of the industry in France is Lyons, and the history of the industry in Lyons and the regions around offers some very interesting illustrations of the influence of political events, of inventions, and of fashion on the prosperity of manufactures, and the commerce depending upon manufactures. The silk industry of Lyons began to flourish after the capture of Milan by Francis I of France in 1515, that monarch having then induced several silk artisans of Milan to settle in Lyons. Encouraged by that monarch, and at a later date by Henry VI, and favoured by the extension of silkworm-rearing in the valley to which Lyons belongs, the industry rapidly rose to a position of great importance, and the first blow inflicted upon it was

due to the persecution by later French kings of the Huguenots, or French Protestants—a persecution which drove many of the French silk-workers out of France, and sowed the seeds of the industry in many other parts of Europe, even in Russia. From this blow, however, the French industry revived, and about the beginning of the nineteenth century it received a great impetus from the invention in Lyons of the celebrated apparatus named, after its inventor, the Jacquard loom for the weaving of figured patterns.

Originally invented for use in the making of silks, in which tasteful patterns greatly enhanced the value of tissues worn only or chiefly by the rich, this apparatus has since been applied to looms constructed for the weaving of other fabrics (linen, &c.); but its principal application is still probably in the silk industry, to the development of which, especially in France, it has greatly contributed. When the sewing-machine came into general use, fashions of ladies' dresses became more elaborate and more changeable, so that there has been much less demand for the fine and costly but lasting tissues which used to be the glory of the French looms. Silks of an inferior and less durable quality, and mixed fabrics having the appearance of silk, were sought after; and since the looms of Germany and Switzerland were more speedily adapted to meet the wants of this new taste, the French industry suffered greatly in the competition. Subsequently the French manufacturers adapted themselves to the new requirements of the trade, but the competition of the cheap Japanese silks has beat all producers. Moreover since the First World War the great competitor has been 'artificial silk', or rayon—a name which in British trade parlance covers all textile fibres not of natural origin, including nylon (see p. 309). None the less, before the Second World War the rising standard of living throughout the world was leading to increased use of real silk as well as of the competitive synthetic fibres.

The **German silk industry** is associated more or less with all the manufacturing regions of the country; but Krefeld is the town most completely identified with this branch of manufacture. In **Switzerland**, Zürich and Basel are the chief seats of the manufacture. At Lyons, Krefeld, and elsewhere, there are **conditioning** houses for silk, similar to those for wool mentioned on p. 162.

In the **United Kingdom** the silk manufacture is not so highly developed as the other branches of the textile industries, and in the silk industry proper—that is, the industry in which thrown silk as distinguished from yarns spun from silk waste is employed, a great decline has taken place since the latter part of the nineteenth century. Of this decline there are several explanations. In the first place, the British Isles have not the advantage, like the chief silk-manufacturing countries of the Continent, of being able to produce any of the raw material as an article of commerce. Also,

since the opening of the Suez Canal, Britain has become less of a market for Eastern silk. The industry has thus developed with more vigour in some of the regions in which the supplies of the raw material were more ready to hand; and when the duty on silks in this country was abolished, under the treaty with France in 1860, the British manufacturers found themselves completely beaten, even in the home market, by those of France. On the other hand, in the years between the two world wars the silk industry, hand in hand with rayon manufactures, made great strides in the United Kingdom. The chief centre of silk manufacture and of certain styles of rayon is the district embracing Macclesfield (Cheshire) and Leek (Staffordshire). Lancashire and Yorkshire have also won fresh fame by their rayon fabrics, and these counties are the seat of the spinning of silk waste and the weaving of 'spun' or schappe silk.

Under the protection of a high duty, the silk manufacture has advanced with rapid strides in the United States, which now surpasses France in this industry. The chief seat of the manufacture is Paterson, in New Jersey, within fifteen miles of New York. The great Japanese industry is associated especially with the heart of the country; production and spinning are carried on in the numerous small basins, weaving is especially important at Kanazawa, and Kobe and Yokohama are the great commercial centres and ports.



## COMMODITIES (*continued*)

### I.—B. *Sub-tropical Products*

**COTTON.** Cotton consists of the tufts of woolly fibres which envelope the seeds of a shrubby plant. When the seed-vessel has opened, the tuft swells out to the size of an apple, and remains for a time firmly held by some of the withered parts of the plant, which partly close in upon it, but remain open enough for the cotton to be easily picked. The seeds are of about the size of small peas slightly flattened. Of all the products of a sub-tropical climate cotton is commercially the most important, and its importance dates back to the earliest times of which there is any record. The first mention of it is found in Indian books written more than eight hundred years before the Christian era. The first European writer who is known to have mentioned it is Herodotus, who wrote in the fifth century B.C., and speaks of a tree which he knew by repute as growing in India, and bearing instead of fruit a wool like that of sheep.<sup>1</sup>

The wide diffusion of the plant in prehistoric times is even more remarkable. While most of the chief cereals, along with flax and hemp, were introduced from the Old World into the New, and the New World gave to the Old maize, tobacco, and the potato, cotton was found by the earliest explorers, from Columbus to Cook, growing almost everywhere in the area in which it is now found.

At the present day its cultivation is almost universal in tropical and sub-tropical regions, but it is in the latter that it attains its widest extent. The United States, India and Pakistan, Egypt, Mexico, and Brazil, are the most important countries of production so far as international commerce is concerned; Russia and China are large producers of cotton for home consumption, and occasional factors in the export trade. In all these countries except India and Brazil, the districts where cotton is chiefly grown lie outside of the tropics, and in India, the cotton districts, though mainly tropical, are generally at least one thousand, and in some places two thousand feet or more above sea-level. Its northern limit in the New World is about 37° N.; in the Old World it is largely grown in Russian Turkestan to the north of 40° and even, in Chinese Turkestan, in the oasis of Turfan between 42° and 43° N., but this is below sea-level.

<sup>1</sup> One cotton-plant, probably *Gossypium arboreum*, was certainly known at a very remote date in Egypt. See Parlatore, *Le specie dei cotonei*, p. 16.

The world acreage under cotton reached a new peak in 1937-38, with an estimated total of 93m. acres, yielding 18,000m. lb. The half-dozen or so leading countries mentioned in the last paragraph accounted for over 90 per cent. of both acreage and production. During the Second World War, the growing importance of food production led to a big decline in the acreage devoted to cotton, which reached a low level of under 54m. acres at the end of the war, with a low level production of 10,000m. lb. (1945-46). Since then, production has rivalled the pre-war figures. In 1949-50 the area under cotton was nearly 70m. acres and the production exceeded 15,000m. lb. Official restriction of the area planted in the United States—the dominating factor in world supply—was largely responsible for a setback in the following year. With the removal of these restrictions in 1951-52 and the extension of cultivation in other countries, the area under cotton in the world went up to 81m. acres and production to over 17,000m. lb. With crops continuing to increase and stocks to accumulate, the United States introduced acreage restrictions again in 1954-55, but in the following year world production reached a new high level of 18,865m. lb.

The cotton-plant is not everywhere precisely the same. The genus *Gossypium*, to which all the cotton-plants properly so called are referred by botanists, is a genus containing several species which differ in size, in the colour of their flowers, and, what is most important from a commercial point of view, in the length, strength, and fineness of the fibre forming the tufts.

All the cultivated varieties are now believed to be reducible to three species—*G. herbaceum*, Linn., and *G. arboreum*, Linn., both believed to be natives of the Old World, and *G. barbadense*, Linn., believed to be a native of the New World. The species now most widely cultivated, both in the Old World and the New, is *G. herbaceum*, for the *G. hirsutum*, Linn., the species to which the ordinary American 'uplands' cotton used to be referred, is now regarded as a mere variety of that species. It grows to the height of about four or five feet, and produces a soft and silky wool composed of fibres of moderate length, that is, from nine-tenths of an inch to an inch and a third long. It is a native of India, Indo-China, and the Eastern Archipelago, and has been introduced into all other parts of the world with a suitable climate—into the United States some time in the latter part of the eighteenth century. There it succeeds better than in its original home, yielding on an average a fibre of about one inch in length, as against one of about nine-tenths of an inch in India, and whereas cotton grown from Indian seed improves in the United States, that grown from American seed degenerates in India. It is the product of this species, as cultivated in the United States, that is generally known in the European markets simply as American cotton. The best of all cotton, however, is

that derived from *G. barbadense*, and known as **Sea Island cotton**, from the fact that in the United States it was first cultivated on the string of flat islands which line the coast of Georgia and South Carolina. It is that which produces the cotton with the finest quality of 'staple' as it is called—in other words, that which has the longest, finest, and strongest fibres, and which in the mass has the most beautiful appearance. The length of the staple in this species may be as much as two and a half inches, though the mean length is said to be only 1·6 inches. If allowed to grow on from year to year this species of cotton may attain the height of from fifteen to twenty feet; but being, like other species of cotton, cultivated mostly as an annual, it is seldom allowed to grow to a greater height than two or three feet. The colour of its flowers is yellow. This species appears to thrive best on a slightly saline soil and where there are saline ingredients in the atmosphere, and to require a greater amount of moisture and a longer period in which to mature than the ordinary species. It is still cultivated on the islands from which it takes its name, as well as in the northern parts of Florida, and has been successfully introduced into the Leeward Islands, Egypt, Tahiti, the Fiji Islands, and Queensland. A tree cotton known as **caravonica cotton**, said to be a hybrid between Sea Island and rough Peruvian cotton, has been grown for a considerable number of years in tropical Queensland, and has been introduced into other parts of the tropics. Its fibre is of long staple, strong and moderately rough, and as the plant has to be resown only every eight or nine years, its cultivation is recommended by the small amount of labour involved.

As regards climate, all the species of cotton-plant require for their successful cultivation a long summer free from frost, and with a moderate but not excessive amount of moisture. The cotton-plant is generally reckoned among those which prefer a dry warm soil, but it will put up with considerable differences in soil under diverse climatic conditions. To frost it is peculiarly sensitive; and as it generally requires about seven months or 200 frostless days to yield a paying crop, this fact alone has a great influence on the extent of its domain. Very equable, warm, but not excessive temperatures, especially during the period of most vigorous growth, appear to be those most favourable to the plant, and plenty of bright sunshine seems to be absolutely essential to the production of fibre of good quality.

Before recent restrictions, the **United States** was growing 40–50 per cent. of the world's cotton, for the most part in the south-eastern states. At the date of the census report of 1880 there was little cotton grown to the west of 99° W., and little to the north of 37° N. It is still true that the bulk of the cotton crop is grown to the east of 99° W., but changing conditions in the interval have

altered both the extent and the pattern of the cotton lands very appreciably. Before the war of 1861-65 South Carolina produced about one half the total cotton crop of the United States and Georgia about one-fourth; in 1949 the two together produced about one-fourteenth of the total. In 1880 Texas, which itself extends up to and beyond the 99th meridian, was already among the leading cotton states; in 1949 it easily headed the list, with 37 per cent. of the total—between three and four times as much as the next largest crop (Arkansas). Also in 1949, three states still further west, New Mexico, Arizona, and California, provided between them  $12\frac{1}{2}$  per cent. of the total; California (8 per cent.) ranking fourth among the cotton-growing states of the Union.

Pests are a big trouble. In 1892 the cotton-boll weevil entered Texas from Mexico and spread eastwards and northwards until it had ravaged the greater part of the cotton belt. Hence there have been great changes in the areas of maximum yield. The cotton belt is that in which summer rains prevail; but the areas of greatest production are at a considerable distance from the sea-coast, the rainfall in the maritime strips, including Florida, being generally excessive for this crop, except for soils of the lightest character. The mean temperature during the months in which the plant is most rapidly growing and maturing its produce—June, July, and August—is remarkably uniform throughout this region, that of June varying in different parts from  $74^{\circ}$  to  $81^{\circ}$  F., July  $75^{\circ}$  to  $84^{\circ}$  F., and August  $75^{\circ}$  to  $84^{\circ}$  F. Cloudless days occur during June and July in the ratio of about 1 in 4 in the more maritime and easterly parts of this region, in the ratio of 1 in 3 in the more inland and westerly, and in later months more frequently.

The total area of the 'cotton belt' of the United States is estimated at 700,000 square miles (448m. acres). In the last two decades of the nineteenth century, the area actually under cotton nearly doubled—roughly from 13m. to 25m. acres. In the first two decades of the present century it increased to 37m. acres, and in 1926 reached a peak of 46m. acres, with a yield of over 9,000m. lb. In 1937-38, though the acreage was down to 34m. acres, the yield was again over 9,000m. lb. (half the world production), but during the Second World War food crops in the United States, as in most other countries, took the place of cotton to such an extent that at the close, in 1945-6, both acreage and production were reduced to half the 1937-38 figures. Since then, as already noted, the rapid recovery, playing its part in a world glut of cotton, has led to restrictions. In 1955-56 production was 7m. lb. from 17.5m. acres.

Yields fluctuate. The belts of greatest relative production are the Mississippi 'bottoms', or strips liable to occasional inundations on the left bank of the Mississippi from Memphis to Vicksburg, and the 'black belt of Alabama', which runs from east to west across that

state, somewhat to the north of its middle line. In this belt the use of manure for cotton was considered, till the latter years of the nineteenth century, quite unnecessary, and yet the yield was at least twice as great as the average of the United States generally. There is a similar 'black prairie' region in the heart of Texas.

The annual average yield throughout the cotton belt has much increased in the last few decades. What used to be a maximum, enjoyed only in the best years, has become practically a minimum. Whereas the average used to range from about 170 to 225 lb. per acre, in the years 1937-38 to 1950-51 it ranged between 222 and 311 lb. per acre, and in 1955-56 reached 417 lb. per acre.

On the uplands and the Mississippi 'bottoms', where cotton is chiefly grown, the soil is generally rich in lime; and it is found that the extent of this branch of cultivation and the productiveness of the plant tend to increase, other things being equal, in proportion to the abundance of this constituent of the soil.

Throughout the United States cotton is, or was, generally planted in rows, the individual plants fairly wide apart to allow of cleaning the crop. In slave times this was done by means of the hoe, but now mule cultivators have come into universal use. In all the moister parts at least, the earth is ridged up at both sides about the roots to facilitate the escape of any excess of moisture. In latter years, however, the practice of thick sowing has been introduced, with the result of an increase of 30 per cent. in the yield. To a rather dry climate the cotton-plant has a certain power of adapting itself, yet an unusually dry season always involves a short crop, as an unduly wet one leads to a crop large in amount but deficient in quality. Among other things that have to be attended to in careful cotton cultivation is, as in all other cases, the selection of the seed; and, second, the treatment of the plant in such a manner that the fruit, and consequently the cotton-lint, is produced in greatest abundance. Hence the bush is not allowed to grow too luxuriantly, but is prevented from producing too much leafage and stalk by pruning, and where necessary by topping, that is, removing an inch or two from the end of the stem. The time of sowing in the United States is the end of March or some time in April; the time of picking, from August to the end of the year, or, in the absence of frost, even later. Picking is done by hand, and is the most expensive operation in cotton-production. It is light work, however, in which women and children can be employed. One picker will pick on the average 100 lb. of seed-cotton per day.

The use of manures in cotton-growing in the United States began in the older cotton states, above all in Georgia and the Carolinas after the civil war of 1861-65, and has been gradually spreading ever since. Investigation has shown that the plant is one of those which in ordinary circumstances rewards the outlay on

a portion of the peninsular area of India. It is of great fertility, and is said to have borne crops for thousands of years without manure. In one respect this soil agrees with the best soils of the American cotton region, namely, in the presence of lime. But the characteristic which renders it of such peculiar value in a region with so dry a climate is its remarkable tenacity of moisture. Instead of allowing the rain to sink away like the best cotton-soils of America, it becomes during the rains a tenacious mud. In dry weather the whole surface of the ground where this soil occurs becomes seamed with inter-ramifying cracks, between which the soil forms hard lumps, but these lumps still retain water imprisoned in their spongy cells. Hence, wherever this soil prevails irrigation is not required for cotton-culture.

The yield per acre of cotton in India and Pakistan is generally much less than in the United States, but is considerably higher in Pakistan than in India. In the five years 1951-52 to 1955-56 it ranged from 91 to 115 lb. per acre in India, and from 156 to 203 lb. per acre in Pakistan. Generally, though not uniformly the better cottons have a prolonged period of growth. In those parts of India in which cotton cultivation is dependent on the summer rains, cotton cannot be sown till after the beginning of June, and growth is stopped by winter frosts in the north and on the black soils of the northern part of the table-land by the tearing of the roots through the cracking of the soil in the latter part of October. In southern Gujarat, east of the Gulf of Cambay, where some of the best native Indian cotton is grown, the picking does not begin till February. In southern Bombay, round Dharwar, sowing does not begin till August, and the picking goes on in March and April. In India manure is less used than in the United States. The staple of Indian cotton is generally short, from  $\frac{1}{2}$  to  $\frac{3}{4}$  of an inch, as against one inch or more for the ordinary American cottons, and this renders it unsuitable for many of the branches of the manufacture carried on in Lancashire. Picking is done by women who pick about 45 lb. per day.

During the present century, while the quality of Indian cotton generally has been greatly improved, there has been considerable extension of the area under cotton, especially through irrigation in the north as well as in the old Central Provinces, and there has been an increase in cotton of good quality in the extreme south of the peninsula; though the Second World War, as elsewhere, caused a big setback in both acreage and production. About 1906 a variety of cotton known as Cambodia cotton was introduced from Indo-China and has proved well suited to the red soils east of the Cardamom Hills, when irrigated and heavily manured. The cotton, having a staple of one inch in length, is capable of being used as a substitute for American cotton, and this fact, together with its yield of 200 lb. per acre, caused its cultivation to be eagerly taken up there.

Large quantities of the long staple American cottons are now grown in the irrigated lands of Northern India and Pakistan (Punjab and Uttar Pradesh), though the best types of American cotton deteriorate when grown there.

In Egypt cotton cultivation is necessarily confined to the areas of perennial irrigation. The rich soil gives a higher average return than the United States; in 1951-52 to 1955-56 the annual yield ranged from 389 to 510 lb. per acre—average, 448. The staple is from 1·2 to 1·5 inches and the cotton is the best grown on a large scale; before the Second World War it fetched 50 per cent. more than the average of American cotton and twice that of Indian. After the war, Egyptian still headed the price list of cotton in large supply, but though in July 1947 it was treble the pre-war price, both American and Indian approached it more nearly in value than before the war. In recent years much of the production has been of the sakel or sakellaridis type with a staple of  $1\frac{1}{4}$  to  $1\frac{3}{4}$  inches. This high quality is no doubt to be ascribed to the fertility of the soil, and partly to climatic conditions. The skies are mostly bright, and the temperature rises and falls during the period of growth with remarkable regularity, as is shown by the following figures showing the mean temperature at Cairo from March to October:—

	March.	April.	May.	June.	July.	Aug.	Sept.	Oct.
Temp. F. . .	62°	71°	79°	84°	85°	84°	79°	74°

Egyptian cotton is sown in March or April, and the first picking, which is the best, takes place in September. The picking is done by boys and girls, who pick about 30 lb. a day. The combination of conditions met with in the Egyptian delta seems not to be found elsewhere. Egyptian cotton has been tried in Sind, where the climate is sufficiently bright and dry, but the quality there grown is inferior, probably in consequence of the high temperatures of the earlier part of the season. The excessive heat of Upper Egypt has been found to be prejudicial to the strength of the fibre grown there. Egyptian cotton has also been tried in Texas, but though the temperature curves of some parts of Texas (as at San Antonio) are wonderfully close to that of Cairo, in those parts the climate is not equally bright and dry. On a small scale Egyptian cotton has been grown under irrigation with fair success at Phoenix, Arizona, and in a few other parts of the arid region in the south-west of the United States, but less than 1 per cent. of the crop is of this type.

Cotton is a striking example of the changes which time often brings in the world pattern of an important commodity, as regards its sources of supply and commercial distribution. During the period 1786-90 the British West Indies furnished more than 70 per cent., the Mediterranean countries 20 per cent., and Brazil about 8 per cent. of the imports of raw cotton into the United Kingdom; the share of the

United States and India together was under 1 per cent., and Egypt contributed nothing at all to the import from the Mediterranean. A hundred years later, in 1886–88, when the import had increased seventy-fold, from about 25m. lb. to 1,750m. lb., the share of the United States had risen to 75 per cent., that of India to 12 per cent. and that of Egypt to  $9\frac{1}{2}$  per cent., while the share of Brazil had sunk to  $2\frac{1}{4}$  per cent., and that of the British West Indies to insignificance. Fifty years later still, before the Second World War, the average annual import of raw cotton into the United Kingdom in the quinquennium 1934–38 was down to 1,390m. lb., and the United States' share of the smaller total had dropped to 41 per cent.; but Egypt's share was up to 20 per cent., and India's was 14 per cent., these three countries between them supplying 75 per cent. of the total. Brazil had come to the fore again, with an average of 8 per cent., and Peru supplied 6 per cent., the balance of 11 per cent. being provided mostly by the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan (5 per cent.) and by British African colonies and protectorates. The British Cotton-Growing Association (founded at the beginning of the century) and the Empire Cotton-Growing Corporation (incorporated in 1921 with a Government grant of £1m. and the right to levy funds on the industry) have lavished both zeal and money on the encouragement of cotton-growing in Colonial territories, with some positive increase in production but little percentage addition to normal world supplies. Apart from the Sudan (now independent), where the Gezira irrigation scheme has been a great success, cotton-growing has become the dominant industry in Uganda.

The initial decline in world production due to the Second World War was naturally reflected in the movement of trade. In 1947 the imports of raw cotton into the United Kingdom were down to 714m. lb.—little more than half the pre-war average. In 1949–51 they increased to over 1,000m. lb. a year, but then came a prolonged slump. Already the dollar exchange problem had been limiting British purchases; in the three years 1949–51 the import of American cotton had fallen from 40 to 30 to 22 per cent. of the total imports. There was much uncertainty about the future. With world production rising to surplus levels, the United States Government, pledged to support local agriculture, bought and stocked cotton from the farmers at uneconomic prices by world standards. Moreover India, Hong Kong, and other territories formerly a market for British cotton goods were manufacturing more and more for their own needs; and in some cases were even sending cheap cotton goods into Britain. Altogether the Manchester cotton mills were faced with increasing difficulties, and in the five years 1952–56 the imports of raw cotton into the United Kingdom averaged only 718m. lb. Apart from the United States, leading sources of supply were the Sudan, Egypt, Brazil, Pakistan, and Nigeria. Uganda's chief market was India.



It is to commerce alone that we owe the extraordinary development of the cotton production in the United States and Egypt, and the great extension of this branch of cultivation in India. Of the cotton grown in Egypt the greater part is exported to Europe. Indian cotton is also exported, although a large proportion is now used in home mills, and even yet Georgia and North and South Carolina are the only states of the Union which consume a large proportion of the cotton they grow—the manufacturing areas being mainly in the north-eastern states.

The form in which the cotton is exported is that of bales, or large bundles of cleaned cotton, that is, cotton-wool freed from its seed by a process called ginning; and it is an interesting fact, illustrative of the variety of circumstances that affect the development of commerce, that the early extension of cotton-production in the United States was due to the invention of an improved process for effecting this purpose. Previously the process of getting rid of the seed was a laborious one, and hence one that demanded on economic grounds the cheapest available labour; and in 1792 so little was it thought probable that the United States would ever grow any considerable quantity of cotton, that, in negotiating a treaty with Great Britain in that year, the United States ambassador agreed to a provision (struck out, however, by the senate) which forbade the export of cotton from the United States to this country. In 1793 the invention of the saw-gin by Eli Whitney (an invention since then greatly improved upon) imparted such a stimulus to the cultivation of cotton in the United States that that country rapidly became the chief source of supply of raw cotton in the world. The growth of cotton in India and Egypt received a great impetus from the scarcity of the raw material due to the civil war in America in 1861–65, and the effects of that impetus were permanent in both countries.

Inventions by which the process of manufacturing cotton were cheapened have likewise been, as is well known, among the chief causes that contributed to the vast development of the commerce in this commodity in various forms; and it is a fact of great consequence in the history of British commerce that all the more important of these inventions originated in England.

**COTTON MANUFACTURES.** The early history of the cotton manufacture in Europe is far from being fully known. The Arabs are said to have introduced the cultivation of the plant into Spain in the eighth century. It is an ascertained fact that in the middle of the following century cotton manufactures on a considerable scale were carried on in the Moorish towns of Cordoba, Granada, and Seville. It is no doubt to this fact that cotton owes its name, which is of Arabic origin. Augsburg is known to have exported cotton fabrics of its own manufacture in the fourteenth century.

The first recorded importation of cotton into England was in 1298, for the making of candle-wicks (a manufacture, it must be remembered, of much greater relative importance in days when candles were the chief means of artificial lighting than now). In 1352 we find the first mention of Manchester cottons, but the fabrics so called were not what we know as cottons. Even as late as the seventeenth century a coarse kind of woollen cloth, a web of frieze, was known as cotton (Manchester, Kendal, and Welsh cottons of this kind are all mentioned), and the *New English Dictionary* expresses a doubt as to whether the term in this sense is of the same origin as the word in its present meaning. Later the term appears to have been applied to mixtures of wool and cotton or linen and cotton. That true cotton was used in Lancashire about 1640 appears from the fact that about that date there is mention of Manchester cotton buyers in the Levant. Pure cottons the English weavers were unable to make till long after. The use of cotton in manufactures extended very slowly. Between 1697 and 1749 the import of the raw material into England remained almost stationary, and there can be no doubt that about the latter date, and for some years after, the manufacture of cotton goods on the continent was greater than in England. A change in this respect was brought about by the inventions that took place in England towards the end of the eighteenth century, and revolutionised first the cotton industry, and ultimately textile industries of all kinds.

Without entering into details, it is impossible to give an idea of the nature of these inventions, but a few dates are worth noting. The most ancient method of spinning was by means of a distaff and spindle, the former an implement for holding the fibre to be spun, the latter for receiving the spun, that is, the more or less twisted fibre that forms the yarn. This arrangement was superseded by the spinning-wheel, the origin of which is uncertain. Not improbably it was used in the East long before it was known in Europe, but several forms of it appear to have been invented on the European mainland in the sixteenth century. Before the great era of inventions this machine had become common to the whole continent. The spinning jenny of Hargreaves, invented in 1764, patented in 1770, was the first machine by which more than two yarns could be spun at once. Arkwright's water-frame (so called because soon after its invention water was used as a motive power in driving it) was an improved device for the same purpose, patented in 1769. In its improved form it is known as the throstle. Crompton's mule, a sort of cross between the jenny and the throstle, constructed in 1779, was a much better contrivance than either, and is a machine still used for the spinning of worst yarns. These three machines changed in a great measure the condition of the cotton industry in Great Britain. The spinning-jenny was, indeed, an instrument that could be used in domestic spinning, and the chief

effect of its invention was that the old spinning-wheel was thrown away into lumber-rooms, and the jenny adopted in its place, with the result of greatly increasing the output of yarn in each family. Arkwright's machine, however, was one more suitable for working in large factories; and factories began to multiply when, in 1785, it was declared that Arkwright had no claim to the patents he had obtained, so that anyone might adopt the inventions patented in his name. The result was, that, whereas in the old days of the spinning-wheel the weaver might have to spend the morning going about to half a dozen cottages to obtain yarn enough to employ him for the rest of the day, now so much yarn was produced that the supply greatly exceeded the demand; the hand-loom weavers could not use it all.

The next step was the invention of the first power-loom by Mr. Cartwright, a clergyman having little knowledge of mechanics, and none of weaving. His first machine was patented in 1785, and an improved form in 1787; but even this second form had to be improved upon by further inventions before it could be made capable of weaving cloth as rapidly and cheaply as a hand-loom.

Later a new spinning-machine known as the ring-spinning-frame was invented. It was first put in operation in the United States about 1832, but not until much later was it applied with success in the United Kingdom, where, however, it rapidly grew in favour for the production of warp. In all machines improvements in detail are almost uninterrupted, and all processes conducted by machinery were greatly accelerated by the introduction of steam-power to drive the machines. This was first applied in the cotton industry at Papplewick in 1785. In the case of spinning, the result of the change since the time of the early inventions is illustrated by the following facts. When the hand-wheel was still in use it required six or eight spinners to keep a weaver employed, and the earnings of a family amounted to only a few shillings a week. Even the mulc was first employed as a domestic machine, and the earnings of a family in spinning were raised in some cases to as much as £6 per week. Before the close of the eighteenth century the cost in wages of the production of a pound of yarn of medium fineness was reduced to less than a halfpenny.

All these inventions were extensively applied in England a considerable time before they were introduced on the continent of Europe. In applying them England was peculiarly favoured by its abundance of coal and iron, and its admirable situation for commerce. Moreover, the wars which raged on the continent of Europe from about the time when these inventions began to take effect down to 1815 interfered with the development of industry on the continent much more than in Great Britain. The consequence was that England became pre-eminently the seat of the cotton industry, and even in 1801 manufactured more cotton than the entire

continent of Europe. The value of cotton goods exported from Great Britain was officially estimated in 1785 at less than a million sterling; in 1815 it was estimated at upwards of twenty-two millions, and though, in accordance with what is mentioned on pp. 19–20, it must be remembered that these estimates give no satisfactory indication of growth in value, they do indicate a very remarkable growth in quantity. After that the volume of the British cotton industry, as indicated by the quantity of raw cotton entered for consumption in the United Kingdom, went on increasing with but slight fluctuations until the present century (see p. 178). In all the quinquennial periods from 1831–35 to 1906–10 there were only two in which there was a decline as compared with the previous periods, the only considerable decline being in the period of the American civil war 1861–65. On the average about four-fifths of the quantity of cotton manufactured in the United Kingdom was exported. So far as external trade is concerned, this country rapidly acquired and for long retained an unquestioned predominance in the cotton industry, in spite of the fact that we are wholly dependent on imported raw material—a predominance that was never approached in the woollen industry, even when we had almost a monopoly of one of the most prized varieties of the raw material.

The reasons for this predominance may be attributed partly to the special natural advantages which we enjoy for the industry; partly to the general causes favouring concentration of an industry developed on a very large scale; but still more perhaps to the fact that this is an industry enabling us in a peculiar degree to turn to account our great advantages for maritime trade. No class of goods has a wider market than cottons. They are consumed in all parts of the world. From any one centre of production most of the markets must be reached from the seaboard, and for such markets no country has on the whole advantages equal to our own. In turning these advantages to account in the cotton industry we were greatly assisted by our free-trade policy.

A decline set in after the First World War. In 1913, cotton piece goods exported from the United Kingdom were valued at nearly £98m.; by 1938 the figure had fallen to £32m. In 1945 the quantity exported was only 40 per cent. of the pre-war figure, though the value had fallen no more than 10 per cent. The 1951 figures afforded a more striking illustration of the change in relative values brought about by the war and its aftermath. The quantity of cotton piece goods exported was 75 per cent. of the quantity in 1938, but the value had gone up from £32m. to £132m. As many as fifteen countries within the Commonwealth took piece goods to the value of over £1m., ranging up to £26m. in the case of Australia, while ten foreign countries took piece goods to the value of over £1m., ranging up to £4m. But the difficulties which beset the cotton trade after 1951

(see p. 178) were reflected not only in the imports of raw cotton but in the exports of cotton piece goods. In the five years 1952-56 the value of such exports dropped steadily till in 1956 it was only £61m. —less than half the 1951 figure. Only eleven Commonwealth countries and five foreign countries took piece goods valued at over £1m. in 1956, and the maximum individual value, still on Australia's account, was under £9m.

In terms of the distribution of the trade by continents, about 40 per cent. of the U.K. exports of cotton piece goods in 1956 were taken by Africa (chiefly Commonwealth countries), and 24 per cent. by Australasia, these two regions absorbing two-thirds of the total. Asia, with China and the Soviet Union mostly closed to British trade, and India largely self-supporting, took 11 per cent., the two Americas 9 per cent., and Europe 13 per cent.

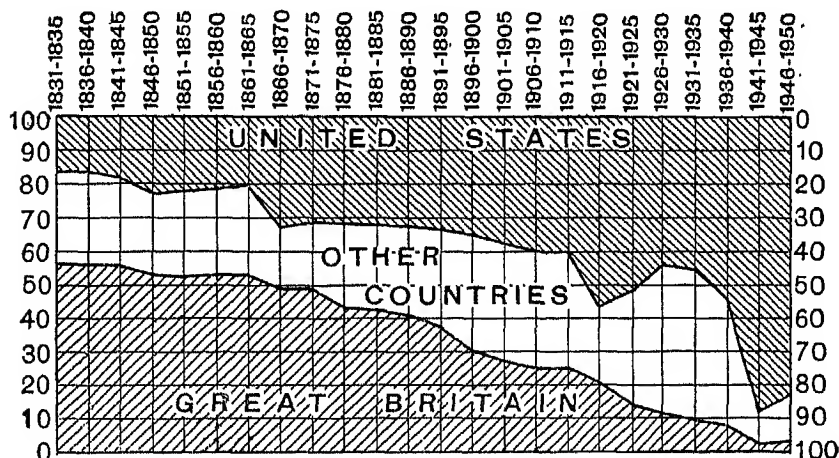


Diagram showing percentage of consumption of American cotton in Europe and the United States in quinquennial periods from 1831-35 to 1946-50. The interval between two adjacent horizontal lines represents a consumption in countries named of 10 per cent. of the total American supply.

During the long development of the British cotton industry there have been great changes in the destination of its products. In 1820 the continent of Europe received more than half the total quantity of cotton fabrics exported from Great Britain, the United States (which then had less than one-fifth of the population contained by them in 1880) received nearly one-tenth, and Eastern Asia little more than one-twentieth; in 1880 the continent of Europe received scarcely one-twelfth, the United States less than one-fiftieth, and Eastern Asia (chiefly British India) more than one-half of the whole. Of yarn Great Britain supplied large quantities to the continent of Europe; the proportion of the whole amount exported thither declined from

above 95 per cent. in 1820 to 48 per cent. in 1891, but it rose to 67 per cent. before the First World War and was about the same before the Second World War. Eastern Asia, which in 1820 received no appreciable quantity of British yarn, received in 1891 33 per cent. of the amount exported, though the proportion afterwards declined to 16½ per cent. before the First World War and less than 1 per cent. before the Second World War, largely as a result of Japanese competition.

Such facts point to a more rapid growth of the industry in other countries, and, so far as Europe and the United States are concerned, the diagram on the preceding page indicates very clearly that an ever-increasing proportion of America's output of raw cotton is consumed at home. The diagram shows that foreign competition is not merely a matter of recent years. Although the decline of British supremacy was hastened by the First World War, it had become inevitable. Foreign competitors were at first engaged in the easier task of conquering the home market, and only later began to compete more keenly in neutral markets. On the opposite page is a table showing the consumption of cotton in 1938-39 in all parts of the world that now work up cotton by machinery on a large scale. India, Japan, and China have all comparatively recently entered the field as competitors in the machine cotton industry. The table does not distinguish between the older and the newer seats of the cotton industry in the United States; but the growth of cotton spinning in the southern states of the Union, as well as in India and Japan, is peculiarly instructive. In the southern states the number of cotton spindles increased from 1·2m. to 4·8m. between 1887 and 1900; in India from 2·9m. to 4·9m. between 1890 and 1901; in Japan from 325,000 in 1892 to about 1m. in 1897. By 1956 there were 12m. in India whilst Japan's total increased from 2·4m. in 1914 to 7m. in 1930 and 8·5m. in 1956. In China the number of spindles in 1956 was estimated at 6·3m. In the case of the cotton industry of India and the United States the question of tariff hardly affects the matter. Till 1922 cotton yarns were admitted into India duty free, yet, in spite of dear coal, cotton spinning by machinery has continued to grow from its inception. The first mill was started in 1851. The geographical advantages of local supplies of raw material, abundant labour, and a local market have been decisive. Japan had a five per cent. duty on imported yarns, and has, besides the local market, the advantage of local supplies of coal to counter-balance the necessity of importing the great bulk of its raw material. In the export trade its competition was almost world-wide before the Second World War, and now already that branch of Japanese trade has shown vigorous revival. In the United States the southern industry competes chiefly with that of the north, against which it enjoys no protection. Again the preponderating advantages are geographical. The growth of the

industry, particularly in India and Japan, greatly affected the industry of Lancashire, which had to turn its attention more and more to the higher (finer) counts of yarn, and the production of a greater proportion of woven goods for the Eastern markets.

*Mill Consumption of Raw Cotton in year ending July 31, 1956.<sup>1</sup>  
(Figures in thousands of bales of ginned cotton<sup>2</sup>)*

Consuming Countries.	Countries of Origin				Total.
	America.	India and Pakistan.	Egypt.	Various.	
<b>EUROPE:</b>					
United Kingdom . . . . .	189	140	63	1,220	1,612
Soviet Union . . . . .	—	—	38	4,853	4,891
Western Germany . . . . .	181	30	72	979	1,262
France . . . . .	215	95	97	826	1,233
Italy . . . . .	185	71	76	457	789
Belgium . . . . .	26	73	11	331	441
Czechoslovakia . . . . .	—	127	155	113	395
Poland . . . . .	—	—	31	359	390
Spain . . . . .	167	—	7	214	388
Netherlands . . . . .	30	18	14	1,212	1,313
Others . . . . .	213	30	137	1,212	1,592
Total, Europe . . . . .	1,206	584	701	10,815	13,306
<b>ASIA:</b>					
India . . . . .	22	4,381	116	388	4,907
Pakistan . . . . .	13	1,050	2	9	1,074
Japan . . . . .	705	436	69	983	2,193
China . . . . .	—	157	47	3,501	3,705
Others . . . . .	338	110	6	818	1,272
Total, Asia . . . . .	1,078	6,134	240	5,699	13,151
<b>AMERICA</b>					
U.S.A. . . . .	9,024	33	45	27	9,129
Canada . . . . .	113	3	—	243	359
Mexico . . . . .	—	—	1	447	448
Brazil . . . . .	—	—	—	952	952
Others . . . . .	70	—	4	921	995
Total, America . . . . .	9,207	36	50	2,590	11,883
<b>OTHERS</b> . . . . .	73	32	262	205	572
<b>Grand Total</b> . . . . .	<b>11,564</b>	<b>6,786</b>	<b>1,253</b>	<b>19,309</b>	<b>38,912</b>

<sup>1</sup> By courtesy of the International Federation of Cotton and Allied Textile Industries.

<sup>2</sup> Bales of cotton vary in weight according to the countries of origin. Mostly they are between 400 lb and 500 lb., but the Egyptian bale is 991 lb.

It was the increased production of finer yarns in the United Kingdom that led to the increase noted on p. 184 in the proportion of British yarns sent to the mainland of Europe, and this was why the number of cotton-spinning spindles in Great Britain remained so long much greater than in all the other countries of Europe put together. In the United Kingdom and elsewhere in Europe the numbers were respectively: 1914, 56m., 44m.; 1939, 36m., 50m.; 1956, 24m., 45m. A similar change has been brought about in the northern seats of the American industry by the development of the southern. But in neither case did the change stop there. Both India and the southern states of the Union began to manufacture the finer yarns in greater and greater quantity. In 1900-01 more than 20 per cent. of the weight

of yarns produced in India was of counts above 20s. By 1918-19 under the stimulus of the scarcity of supplies from Lancashire during the First World War this had risen to 35 per cent. A steadily increasing quantity of woven goods has also been produced by mills in India. Likewise in the south-east of the United States and in Japan, a steadily increasing proportion of spindles has been devoted to the higher counts. Notwithstanding all the changes, in 1956 Britain still had over a sixth of the world's spindleage (24m. out of 131m.) and nearly four-fifths of the 'mule spindles' (world total 23m.) necessary for the finer qualities.

In the spinning of raw cotton into yarn by the ordinary processes there is about one pound lost as waste in every six pounds of raw cotton, and there is further loss in the manufacture of cotton cloth. For some time this waste has been treated in large quantities on the continent of Europe in such a manner as to make it available for the spinning of either pure or mixed yarns, and this industry has also been introduced into the United Kingdom. Cotton waste is also largely exported for wiping and polishing.

**TOBACCO.** The tobacco of commerce consists of or is obtained from the dried and otherwise prepared or 'cured' leaves of several species of a genus of plants known to botanists as *Nicotiana*, and now cultivated more or less in almost all parts of the world that have a warm enough summer. The use of tobacco in smoking and other ways is due to the presence in the leaf of a principle known as nicotine, which enables it to act as a stimulant and narcotic, but which, being an active poison, is capable of exercising most injurious effects if swallowed. Besides being used as a luxury, tobacco is used to a small extent in medicine, and more largely as a **sheep-wash** for the destruction of insects which infect the fleece. The species of tobacco most usually cultivated is the *N. tabacum*, Linn., which grows to the height of from four to six feet, and produces several clusters of white or beautiful pink flowers.

The tobacco plants are all natives of America, and the use of the leaf in smoking was widespread in that continent at the time of its discovery, in 1492. The practice was quickly adopted by the European discoverers, and by them was introduced into Europe, where, notwithstanding the prohibitions and denunciations of popes and crowned heads, it spread, at first slowly, afterwards more rapidly. In Europe the plant is said to have been first cultivated for its ordinary uses in Holland in 1615, but it soon extended to other countries. The increasing fondness of the people for the enjoyment of this luxury induced governments to encourage the cultivation for the sake of raising a revenue out of it. In Great Britain the cultivation of tobacco was forbidden at an early date for the sake of encouraging it in Virginia, where it became an important object of agriculture and article of commerce almost



immediately after the foundation of the colony. In Ireland, the cultivation of the plant was allowed till the reign of William IV, when an Act was passed prohibiting it there also, for the sake of the convenience of raising the revenue; and both in England and Ireland the prohibition was continued till 1886, when the cultivation of the plant was again allowed under certain conditions which were further relaxed in 1910.

Like maize, barley, and potatoes, tobacco is adapted to very diverse conditions. It can be grown anywhere in the tropics, and has been cultivated with success even in some of the counties of Scotland. The period within which it comes to maturity varies according to circumstances, and the limitation of its range arises principally from the necessity of protecting it during growth against frost. This is particularly necessary in the early stages, when a single white frost is enough to spoil the whole crop; and this is one reason that recommends the usual practice of sowing the seed in small beds, from which the tobacco is afterwards planted out in the fields, for in these seed-beds the seedlings can be sheltered from frost by being covered with dried leaves or some other light material. Stagnant water about the roots is also quickly destructive to the plants.

*Tobacco: Production and Exports in million lb. In pre-war crop order.*

Country.	Average, 1934-38.		1954.		Country.	Average, 1934-38.		1954.	
	Crop <sup>1</sup>	Export <sup>2</sup>	Crop <sup>1</sup>	Export <sup>2</sup>		Crop <sup>1</sup>	Export <sup>2</sup>	Crop <sup>1</sup>	Export <sup>2</sup>
U.S.A.	1,301	437	2,243	454	Japan	141	8	248	13
China	1,382	34	1,340	1.5	Greece	126	97	149	116
India	1,102	47	600	76	Turkey	122	64	220	142
Pakistan		202	202	—	Burma	100	4	92	0.4
U.S.S.R.	494	8	—	2.4	Italy	96	12	146	28
Bulgaria	288	53	65	2.6	Canada	63	11	185	32
Indonesia	229	106	144	41	Cuba	48	27	111	42
Brazil	204	69	323	60	Rhodesia & Nyasaland	42	34	163	132

<sup>1</sup> Wet weight.

<sup>2</sup> Dry weight.

Adaptable as tobacco is to a great variety of conditions, it exhibits in a peculiar degree the effect of this diversity in the differences of the characteristic qualities of the product. The tobacco obtained from a variety of the plant adapted to one soil and climate is widely different from that which is obtained from a variety adapted to a different soil and climate. These diversities are well illustrated within the wide area of the United States, in which Wyoming was the only region without tobacco cultivation down to 1880. The chief tobacco states of the Union are North Carolina, Kentucky, Virginia, Tennessee, South Carolina, and Georgia, especially between about 36° and 38° N.

The total area under tobacco in the world is estimated at about 9m. acres, producing over 8,000m. lb., compared with 6,500m. lb. before the Second World War. The greater part of this production is

consumed locally; only about one-fifth of it enters into world trade. The foregoing table shows the production and export of the chief tobacco-growing countries in 1954, compared with the pre-war (1934-38) annual average. While up-to-date figures are lacking for some countries and there is evidence of decline in disturbed areas, there is also evidence of notable development among some of the smaller producing countries.

It will be seen that some of the chief producing countries play only a minor part in the tobacco trade of the world. The United States leads in respect of both production and exports; it not only outstrips China and India, the other two outstanding sources of world production, but it supplies from a half to a third of the tobacco entering into international trade. On the other hand, China and India export comparatively little, whereas some of the minor producing countries are world famous for their products. Cuba is especially noted for the quality of its cigars, which take the name of Havanas from the place of export. The genuine article carries a government guarantee; spurious 'Havanas' are made in several countries. Jamaica too has gained a reputation for its cigars, and since the outbreak of the Second World War has displaced Cuba as the main source from which the United Kingdom imports cigars. Sumatra and British North Borneo vie with one another in producing the best cigar wrappers, a fact due partly to soil and climate, partly to care in treatment. Hungary enjoys the reputation of producing the best European-grown tobacco.

In recent years Africa has come to the fore as a minor but increasing source of supply, the chief producing countries being South and South Central Africa and Algeria; in Rhodesia and Nyasaland tobacco is the main agricultural product for export, and the crop is the biggest in all Africa. Egypt manufactures a particular kind of cigarettes which are known by its name on the world's markets, but it imports practically all its tobacco.

Under the regulations permitting the cultivation of tobacco in Britain, crops have been grown from time to time with some success, but commercially they are negligible. The United Kingdom imports more tobacco than any other country, mostly for home consumption. All but a minute percentage is unmanufactured, much higher duty being charged on manufactured tobacco (largely cigars and snuff). Before the Second World War the imports of unmanufactured tobacco amounted (1938) to 345m. lb., of which 75 per cent. came from U.S.A. In 1946 the quantity was up to 433m. lb., with the United States supplying 85 per cent. Currency restrictions, especially in connection with dollar imports, reduced the total in 1948 to 281m. lb., and only 60 per cent. came from the United States; but in 1956 the imports were up again to 318m. lb., though the United States' percentage was down to 50.

Before the Second World War, Germany was the second biggest importer of unmanufactured tobacco, and Holland third, the Dutch imports being largely for manufacture into cigars for export (over 20m. cigars were exported in each of the years 1938 and 1939). After the war, German imports ceased for a time and Dutch imports were very greatly reduced (partly because of the troubled conditions in the Netherlands East Indies, which had been a chief source of supply); with the remarkable result that the United States, the world's largest producer and exporter of tobacco, became in 1945 and 1946 the biggest importer after the United Kingdom, though very far behind (annual imports about 80m. lb.—chiefly Oriental leaf from Turkey and Greece for blending, and cigar leaf from Cuba and Puerto Rico). By 1954 the old order was restored: Germany (134m. lb.) and the Netherlands (121m. lb.) were again the leading importers after the United Kingdom. But the U.S.A. was also importing over 100m. lb. and France nearly 100m. lb.

It is noteworthy that in the British Commonwealth the largest producer after India, though far behind, is Canada. Supplies are grown in Southern Ontario and Quebec, mostly for home consumption, which has much increased in Canada as in the United Kingdom and the United States, notably in the form of cigarettes and cigars. Though Canada produces more tobacco than Rhodesia and Nyasaland, it exports far less unmanufactured tobacco.

**OPIUM.** Opium is the hardened juice of a cultivated species of poppy called *Papaver somniferum*, Linn., which is believed by some to be only a variety of the wild species *P. setigerum*, DC., a native of the shores of the Mediterranean. There is reason to believe that the cultivated form has existed in India for a period not far short of three thousand years. The juice is contained in the seed-vessel, the wall of which is scratched so as to allow it to exude. It then hardens, and is picked off. Opium is chiefly used as a stimulant or narcotic, and is either swallowed in small quantities or smoked (by itself or in prepared mixtures), or taken in the form of certain preparations made from it. Of these the most important are laudanum, which is made by soaking opium in spirits of wine, and solutions of morphia, which is the narcotic principle of opium.

Formerly, India was the country in which opium was chiefly grown as an article of foreign commerce, and its cultivation in British India was made a monopoly of the government, which once derived from it an annual revenue of about ten millions sterling. It was grown in the Ganges valley, round Patna and Benares, and on a fertile table-land further west, corresponding to the old kingdom of Malwa. Towards the end of 1906 edicts were issued by the Government of China having for their object the suppression of the use and cultivation of opium in that country within ten years, and in 1911 the Government of India agreed to bring the export entirely to

an end in 1917 or earlier, if proof was given of the absence of native-grown opium in China. There is now no ordinary trade in opium between India and China. In 1923 the Government of India adopted the certificate system recommended by the League of Nations, whereby any export of opium must be covered by a certificate from the Government of the importing country, approving the consignment as being needed for legitimate purposes. Also, in 1926, the Government of India undertook to reduce the export of opium to Far Eastern countries by 10 per cent. per annum until it was extinguished.

As a result of these various measures, the area under cultivation for opium in India dropped from 615,000 acres in 1906-07 to 43,000 acres in 1930-31 and 4,812 acres in 1938-39. During the Second World War, official demands for opium for medical and scientific purposes sent the acreage up again, and in 1943-44 it was returned as 36,415 acres. Cultivation is virtually restricted to a tract in the former United Provinces (now Uttar Pradesh) near Ghazipur, where the Government maintains an opium factory.

Outside of China and India, opium is chiefly consumed in Mohammedan countries, where it has a fairly general use as a substitute for wine and spirituous liquors. Iran (Persia) and Asia Minor are the principal countries of western Asia in which this drug is cultivated, and in both it forms an article of export. In quality the product of Asia Minor surpasses that of any other part of the world. In the countries of western Europe opium is chiefly used in medicine, and the English supply is mainly derived from Asia Minor (Smyrna).

According to a report issued in 1948 by the Permanent Central Opium Board, which functions under the United Nations, world production of raw opium in 1936—the latest year to which a world total was assigned—was 3,761 metric tons. Of this, all but 10 per cent. was accounted for by China (1,612 tons), Iran (1,347 tons), and Turkey (426 tons). Production was mainly for home consumption; world exports were returned as only 400 tons. India's export was only 11½ cwt., and British India's production only 169 tons; but the inclusion of the Indian States would add another 200 or 300 tons to the totals for both local and world production.

TEA is the name given to the dried leaves of one or more shrubs or trees allied to the camellia. The agreeable stimulant to which tea owes its value in commerce is, chemically, almost identical with that found in the two commodities next considered, coffee and cocoa. These three commodities likewise agree in requiring for their cultivation at least warm summers with frequent rains, although they differ greatly in the degree of cold they will stand. They also agree in requiring more or less cheap labour to prepare them for the market, and this necessity in many cases excludes them from regions

where the climate is quite suitable. Lastly, they agree in being derived from trees which take a certain number of years to come into profitable bearing, and this circumstance would appear to have some effect on the fluctuations of prices of these commodities, and hence indirectly on their geographical distribution. The fluctuations in price are very striking in the case of coffee. No doubt several causes have contributed to these fluctuations, but it may be suspected that one cause is to be found in the long period of waiting for returns. High prices are likely to stimulate the laying out of coffee plantations in all parts of the world that meet the requirements of climate and labour. When these plantations come into bearing there is likely to be an over-supply, leading to a fall of prices that tends to throw out of cultivation the plantations in those parts of the world that are least favourably situated. Somewhat similar fluctuations are observable in the case of cacao (cocoa) prices, but not in the case of tea, the price of which fell almost uninterruptedly from 1865 to 1904. Here we have to note another geographical effect. During the period of falling prices the area under tea steadily expanded in India, and latterly also in Ceylon, but the increasing production of these two parts of the world told severely on China, which lacked modern methods of transport, and only by slow degrees and to a very limited extent introduced modern machinery for preparing the leaf. In 1881 China's exports of tea were about 300m. lb. a year; before the end of the century they had dropped by nearly a third. The decline continued into the present century, accelerated by the disturbed conditions in China, and in the quinquennium before the Second World War the exports by sea—by far the greater part of the exports—averaged only 90m. lb. During the war they dropped still lower. It is thought that even now China may be producing more tea than any other country, but there are no data for a worthwhile estimate.

Considering the extensive consumption of tea, coffee and cocoa one may well be struck by the comparatively small areas required for their production. J. C. Willis in his *Agriculture in the Tropics*, published in 1914, when coffee-growing was nearing its zenith, estimated the crop area at about 5m. acres, or 7,800 square miles—little more than the area of Wales. In the five pre-war years, 1934–38, the annual production averaged about 2·2m. tons, which also seems comparatively small for the world supply, in view of the fact that it was less than half the weight of wheat and flour which the United Kingdom alone imported annually. Willis's estimate for cacao was 240,000 tons (in 1911) from 1·8m. acres or 2,800 square miles—the area of the West Riding of Yorkshire. Since then the production of cacao has trebled. Tea is the smallest crop and covers the smallest area of the three products. In the absence of official estimates for China, total figures must be partly guesswork, but

the area under tea in the world may be put at 2.5m. to 3m. acres, and production as about a million tons—over 2,000m. lb.

The tea-plant comes into full bearing in the fifth year. It generally grows to the height of from three to eight feet, but sometimes much higher. One variety, which grows wild in Assam, and is by some regarded as the stock from which all other tea-plants are derived, attains the dimensions of a tree. The name of the plant and its product is Chinese, which is due to the fact that it was in China that the plant was first cultivated, and that Europeans first became acquainted with it. Even in China the plant is said to have been unknown till the middle of the fourth century of the Christian era, and it did not come into general use in that country till four or five centuries later. The first European who is known to have mentioned it is the traveller Pinto, who visited Canton in 1544. As late as 1664, the English East India Company, when it wished to make a present of some tea to the King of England, had to buy a small quantity from the Dutch, and when it was first imported into England, in 1665, it was sold at the rate of £3 per lb.

Tea is one of the hardiest of all sub-tropical plants. Severe frosts, such as it is exposed to in northern China, check its growth and diminish its yield, but do not kill it. The plant is hence suited for a wide range of climate, but the climate best adapted for it is that which is warm, moist, and equable throughout the year. Like the cotton-plant the tea-shrub requires regular supplies of moisture during the summer months, but is easily injured by an excess of moisture settling about its roots; so that the ground on which it is grown ought to have good drainage. All these conditions are best obtained on the slopes of mountains within the tropics or in sub-tropical regions, and it is in such situations that tea is chiefly grown up to an elevation which varies with the latitude.

The soil best suited to the tea-plant is virgin forest soil, a light, rich, friable loam containing a good supply of vegetable mould or humus, or of organic matter in some other form; and such soils are also most readily obtained in the situation just described. The presence of iron either in the soil or subsoil is desirable, and hence reddish soils are preferred to others equally suitable in other respects. It is noteworthy that, unlike cotton, tea is chiefly grown, in the principal producing countries, on soils remarkably poor in lime.

But the successful cultivation of the tea-plant depends not merely upon soil and climate. In its preparation for the market, tea demands much hand-treatment, so that it can be profitably grown as a marketable commodity only in those parts of the world which, besides having the other conditions suitable, have plenty of cheap labour. It is for this reason that China, India, Ceylon, Indonesia, and Japan are the principal countries of its production.

In China the first crop of leaves is gathered at the end of the

third year, but care has to be taken not to exhaust the plant by stripping it too closely. Thrice in the year the leaves are picked—in the third, fifth, and eighth month. The best leaves are the young ones, and as the youngest are first picked, the earliest gathering is the best. Women and children are mainly employed in this work. Having been first dried in the sun, the leaves are then trodden out by naked-footed labourers, in order to break the fibres and extract the moisture. This done, they are heaped up and allowed to heat for some hours, until they have become a reddish-brown colour. They are next rolled up by hand, and are afterwards again exposed to the sun should the weather be propitious; but if not, they are slowly baked over charcoal fires. The object of the rolling is to mass the leaf in a state conducive to rapid fermentation, which is brought about by exposure of the leaf to a temperature of 104° F. for about an hour, and has the effect of reducing the proportion of tannin in the leaf from ten or twelve to about five per cent. The fermentation is finally stopped by drying in the sun or by baking over charcoal fires. With this process the preparation of the leaves in the form in which 'black tea' is mostly sent to the market is complete, and they pass from the hands of the growers to those of the native merchants. By these purchasers they are carefully sifted, the leaves of different sizes and ages are separated, and the stems and damaged leaves are removed. In the preparation of 'green tea' there is no fermenting process, but the leaves are merely roasted in an iron pan while being stirred with a stick, and then rolled a little, these operations being repeated several times in succession and the tea finally dried off. Rolling machinery is very little used in China, but the severe competition brought about by the development of tea cultivation in India and Ceylon has, since about 1898, led to its introduction.

Tea is also prepared in China in the form of bricks and tablets for convenience of land transport by porters or pack-animals. The ordinary brick-tea is made only of the refuse of the tea prepared by ordinary methods—inferior tea-leaves, stalks, and tea-dust. But of late years the finest tea-dust has been compressed by steam machinery into tablets of tea of excellent quality, which are exported to Russia. A kind of tea known as 'flat tea' is prepared in Japan from unrolled leaves picked from bushes that have been partly blanched by being grown in the dark for two or three weeks before picking.

The introduction of tea-cultivation into India was due to government incentive. Experimental plantations were started by the Indian government on the hills of Assam, and at different points on the southern slopes of the Himalayas, between 1834 and 1849, and a grant of land was made by the government to the first private tea company formed in India, in 1839. It is only since 1851, however, that tea-planting in India has been a marked success. During the

intervening century the area under cultivation has increased to about 800,000 acres.

Assam alone harvests some 350,000 acres—nearly half the total area of Indian tea-plantations; but tea is also extensively grown at various points on the Himalayan slopes, in Bengal, in Uttar Pradesh, and even in the Punjab; also on the Nilgiri Hills in southern India, and to a very small extent in Lower Burma. In northern India the limit in height of profitable cultivation is mostly about 3,500 feet above sea-level, but on the Nilgiris the best elevation is from 4,800 to about 5,600 feet.

There are three main varieties cultivated in India—the Chinese plant, which yields a comparatively weak tea, and furnishes a small yield; the native tea of Assam; and a cross between the two, which last is most in demand among the planters. The method of cultivating and preparing tea in India is much the same as in China, except that the bushes while bearing (that is, during the southern monsoon, March to November) are picked about once every ten days, and that the rolling is performed by machinery. The average yield of an acre under tea in India varies greatly in different localities, but improved methods of cultivation have brought about a long-continued and marked general increase. In 1882 the average for the whole of India was under 300 lb. per acre; in 1910 it was above 450 lb. In the pre-war quinquennium 1934–38, when the average annual production was 414m. lb., the yield per acre averaged close on 500 lb., and by the end of the half century both production and yield were about half as large again. Even before the war, world production was so high that a number of countries, including India, Ceylon, and the Netherlands East Indies, entered into an International Tea Agreement to regulate exports. Government bulk purchases and rationing regulated supplies in the United Kingdom during the war and early post-war years, but when controls were removed in 1952 it was found that supplies had again overtaken demand, and the Agreement came to an end in 1955. The United Kingdom has always taken the great bulk of India's exports of tea, which before the war amounted to about 350m. lb. and increased to 450m. lb. in 1954, out of a total estimated production of 644m. lb.

About 1880 the cultivation of tea in Ceylon began to extend with extraordinary rapidity in consequence of the failure of the coffee-plantations. The soil and climate have been found to be admirably suited to the shrub, which has yielded in some localities as much as 1,000 lb. an acre, though the average is about 600 lb. Cheap coolie labour, no longer required on the abandoned coffee-plantations, has afforded the means of preparing the product for the market at the smallest possible cost. Leaf-rolling machinery is in general use, and all the operations up to the export stage are performed on the estates. In 1883, for the first time, Ceylon's exports of tea exceeded



1m. lb., and so rapid was the growth of the plantation industry that by the end of the century they had risen to nearly 150m. lb. During the present century, production—nearly all for export—has risen to 367m. lb. (1954). A third or more of the tea exported is shipped to the United Kingdom.

The production of tea in Indonesia made great strides after the first plantation was made in Java in 1827. Before the Second World War the output was about three-fourths of that of Ceylon. Over 80 per cent. of the total was grown on plantations managed by Europeans or Chinese, the remainder being grown by the native population on small holdings. The most important area is between 1,000 ft. and 4,500 ft. above sea-level in western Java, and the output both there and in Sumatra was increasing until first the Japanese occupation, and then the destruction following on revolutionary disturbances, caused a serious setback to the industry and for the time being practically put a stop to commercial dealings. There has since been some revival of production, but only to about half the pre-war figure, and in 1954 (one of the best years) the estimated output of 103m. lb. was not much more than one-fourth of the Ceylon figure.

The cultivation of the tea-plant is said to have been introduced into Japan and Korea early in the ninth century A.D., and before the Second World War Japan had a tea-export trade surpassed only by India and Ceylon, Java and China. Here too the war led to a great falling off both in production and in exports, but a steady recovery increased production in 1954 to 150m. lb.—well above the pre-war level. Japan tea is mostly prepared as green leaf (the leaf being simply steamed, rolled and fire-dried). Almost the whole of the export is taken by the United States.

Omitting China and U.S.S.R. as uncertain quantities, the great bulk of the world's tea is produced by the four countries just considered—India and Ceylon, Japan and Indonesia. The known world production in 1954 was reckoned at 1,470m. lb., of which India and Ceylon provided 70 per cent., Japan and Indonesia 17½ per cent. If Pakistan's 55m. lb. be added, the total is over 91 per cent.

The cultivation of tea has been developed with more or less success in many other countries, but it will be seen that all told their supplies are relatively small. Chief among them are the British territories of East and Central Africa, providing some 3 per cent. of the total, mostly from Kenya and Nyasaland. Portuguese East Africa provides nearly 1 per cent., and Formosa over 2 per cent., leaving only percentage fragments for other countries. The Soviet Union is extending its acreage in Trans-Caucasia and is already a considerable source of supply. Tea of excellent quality has been grown in the German settlements of southern Brazil. The high price of labour in the United States generally makes tea an unprofitable

crop as a marketable commodity, but it has been grown for home use on a small scale on many of the farms in the southern states and in California.

Before the Second World War the exports of tea from the chief exporting countries totalled over 900m. lb., and after dropping during the war by about one-third they increased again to 1,077m. lb. in 1954. Imports into the United Kingdom amount to half the world trade. Although during the war individuals were rationed and purchase by merchants in open market gave place to bulk purchase by Government, the war increased rather than diminished the popularity of tea as a beverage in the United Kingdom. The estimated consumption per head of the population dropped of necessity from 9.3 lb. in 1938 to 7.0 lb. in 1943, but rose again to 8.8 lb. in 1946 and (after derationing in 1952) to 9.6 lb. in 1954. In the Irish Republic the consumption per head was the highest in the world in 1954—9.8 lb. New Zealand was third, with 7.4 lb. and Australia fourth with 6.8 lb. No other country approached these figures. Next to Australia was Morocco, with 3.5 lb. per head, then Canada, with 2.9 lb. In four countries the consumption was between 1 and 2 lb. per head—Netherlands and Ceylon (each 1.8 lb.), Egypt (1.7 lb.), Japan (1.3 lb.). In the United States it was only 11 oz., though the States import more tea than any other country outside the United Kingdom and there has been a tendency for tea to be more widely used because of the high price of coffee.

An interesting example of the working of supply and demand was provided by tea in 1955. The increasing popularity of the beverage, coupled with a crop shortage, sent prices soaring and encouraged the Governments of India and Ceylon to increase their export duties, which in turn sent prices higher still, with the result that purchases by individual consumers began to decline till, with an improvement in supplies, prices and duties were reduced again.

## COMMODITIES (*continued*)

### I.—C. *Tropical Products*

**COFFEE.** The coffee of commerce consists of the seeds (the so-called "beans") of several species of trees or shrubs, chiefly of one species known to botanists as *Coffea arabica*, Linn., which if left to itself grows to the height of twenty-five or thirty feet, but in cultivation is frequently kept down to the height of from three to eight feet in order to facilitate the gathering of the fruit. The seeds are enclosed in dark cherry-red pulpy berries, each of which usually contains two. The tree comes into full bearing in six years, and remains profitable for from thirty to forty years, after which the soil is worn out. The **best soil** for the coffee-tree, as in the case of tea, is said to be virgin forest land rich in vegetable remains, the accumulations of past ages. A warm and moist climate is required for it, but the heat must not be excessive. An almost ideal climate for coffee is found in Yemen, the home of the original Mocha coffee. Here, winter and summer alike, a thick mist ascends every morning from the low grounds on the coast to the slopes on which the coffee is grown. About midday the plantations themselves become enveloped in mist, which lasts till after the time at which the greatest heat of the day is usually experienced elsewhere, and then disappears. So regular is this occurrence that in certain places there are scarcely twenty days in the year on which the mist fails to rise. By night, on the other hand, the air ascending from the hot plains helps to prevent an excessive lowering of the temperature, so that we have, as it were, a hothouse culture with natural self-regulating arrangements.

For the most part, coffee-trees, at least when young, must be cultivated either under cover or under the shelter of trees better fitted to stand extreme heat. Bananas and erythrinæ are frequently grown for this purpose, and in Brazil a tall, coarse pea, which enriches the ground with valuable manure when it dies down, is often planted with the same view. On the other hand, the coffee-tree cannot stand continued frost; and though it has to endure occasional frost in Paraguay, in most coffee-growing countries the mean temperature of the coldest month is above 52° F., and the mean minimum temperature about 42½°. On this account, its range in

latitude is more contracted than that of tea. Coffee, indeed, is not grown to any great extent outside of the tropics, although the most important place of production, the coffee region of Brazil, lies just beside the southern limit of the tropical zone.

Even within the tropics, the cultivation of coffee is generally restricted to comparatively limited areas; the reason of which is that coffee is a product grown almost solely as a mercantile commodity, that is, for consumption outside of the regions in which it is produced, and, at the same time, is one that demands a large amount of labour in preparing it for the market.

The preparation which the coffee-beans have to undergo before they are ready for the market consists in their separation from their coverings and the processes of drying and 'curing.' In making the finest kinds of coffee the berries are, first of all, **pulped**, or stripped of the outer pulpy covering, in a machine specially devised for the purpose. The **curing** process which then follows consists in exposing the beans to the sun for six or eight days; and as the beans after being pulped are extremely sensitive to injury from rain or dew, great care must be taken during this stage to protect them from these influences. When cured the beans are, in most coffee districts, sent to coffee-works erected in the larger towns or the sea-ports to be **hulled** or **peeled**—that is, divested of two coats in which each of the beans after pulping is still wrapped. Before being put into bags for shipment the beans are winnowed, graded, and sorted, the sorting being not only according to quality but also according to size, since beans of the same size can be more equally roasted before being ground.

The use of coffee as a beverage appears to have been very limited till within the last two or three hundred years. The oldest work known to have collected traditions regarding the origin of the practice is an Arabic manuscript belonging to the year 1587; and from this it would appear that the original home of the coffee-tree is to be found in the southern parts of the highlands of Abyssinia, where it is undoubtedly a native. Thence it was introduced into south-western Arabia, and through the Arabs it became known to Europeans. It is to this fact that the tree owes its specific name of *arabica*, while the generic name, and the ordinary name of the plant and its product, is derived from that which was given to it by the Arabs, and this again is possibly derived from Kaffa, the name of one of the highland districts of Abyssinia whence the tree was originally brought. The introduction of coffee into Arabia must have taken place at least as early as the eleventh century, but even in the middle of the sixteenth century the beverage was still unknown at Constantinople. About a century later still (in 1652) the first coffee-houses were started in London, and these soon became favourite resorts of the wits and men of letters of the time; but in

England the drinking of coffee was gradually given up to a large extent in favour of tea, which was introduced even more recently. On the mainland of Europe, on the other hand, coffee has come more and more into favour; and it is also largely consumed among the people of the United States. The order of leading countries as coffee-drinkers was modified by the Second World War. While consumption per head of the population increased in some cases, in others the impact of the war led to a big decline. Below is given, in descending order, the consumption in lb. per head in a dozen countries in 1954, with comparative figures for 1938.

	1938	1954		1938	1954		1938	1954
U.S.A.	. 15.2	14.7 <sup>1</sup>	France	. 9.8	8.6	Italy	. 1.9	3.2
Sweden	. 18.5	14.3	Canada	. 3.7	6.2	S. Africa	. 3.4 <sup>4</sup>	1.6
Belgium	. 12.9	10.2	Holland	. 9.8	5.6	U.K.	. 0.7	1.3
Denmark	. 16.8	9.8	Germany	. 5.0 <sup>2</sup>	3.6 <sup>3</sup>	Australia	. 0.6	1.1

<sup>1</sup> Exceptionally low.

<sup>2</sup> Undivided Germany.

<sup>3</sup> Western Germany.

<sup>4</sup> Average 1937-39.

The United States stands in much the same commercial relation to coffee as the United Kingdom does to tea. Not only have its people become the biggest coffee-drinkers, but it imports more coffee than all the other coffee-importing countries put together. It is interesting to note that in 1946 the United States consumption of coffee was 19.4 lb. per head against the United Kingdom consumption of 8.8 lb. of tea per head; this corresponds roughly with the comparative amounts of coffee and tea needed to prepare equal quantities of the two beverages. Naturally the proportion of the respective amounts of tea and coffee consumed per head in the two countries varies somewhat with the fluctuations of trade and social custom, but broadly the foregoing comparison holds good.

The coffee-growing countries of the world fall into three main groups—South and Central America, the dominant factor in world supply; India and Indonesia, more important in the past than in the present; East and West Africa, young and growing sources of supply in the colonial territories of Britain and France, Portugal and Belgium. In all, the area under coffee before the Second World War was estimated at over 12m. acres and production at about 44m. cwt. Exports in the pre-war quinquennium averaged about 33m. cwt., of which Latin America provided over 80 per cent., and Brazil alone over 50 per cent. Acreage, production and exports all declined during the war, especially in Brazil and Venezuela. In other countries the position kept fairly stable, and in Brazil production has been creeping up again, though still short of pre-war output; while exports have regained their pre-war level in nearly all countries, and in some have gone far beyond it.

Brazil has occupied an outstanding position in respect of coffee production and export for a century past, generally averaging two-

thirds of world production and from a half to two-thirds of world exports. The coffee-tree was introduced into northern Brazil early in the eighteenth century, but not till about 50 years later into the region where it has since flourished so well. The coffee-producing region in Brazil lies between about 21° and 24° S., and is divided into two zones, one of which is traversed by a system of railways connected with Rio de Janeiro, and the other by a system connected more directly with the more southerly seaport of Santos. The coffee-growing area is, in general, the plateau with rich volcanic soils sheltered behind the coast range at a height of 600 to 2,500 feet above sea level. In 1906-7, a year of very high production, Brazil furnished 80 per cent. of the world's total. In 1917 the area under coffee in Brazil had grown to 4½m. acres, and in later years it nearly doubled that acreage. The result was over-production, and in 1931 the Brazilian Government placed the sale of coffee under federal control. To bring supplies down to demand, large quantities of coffee were destroyed—78m. bags over a period of 14 years.<sup>1</sup>

Brazil's restrictive practices, while helping to maintain prices, encouraged other countries to increase their output, and in 1937 Brazil reversed her policy; but the Second World War brought wider control through an Inter-American Coffee Convention, to which the United States was a signatory. The area under coffee in Brazil dropped from over 8½m. acres before the war to about 5½m. acres, and production from 28m. cwt. to under 10m. cwt. The decline was not due wholly to the war; planters were relying less on coffee, and yields suffered from a succession of bad seasons.

In general, the war benefited the coffee-planting industry. Adverse weather conditions were not confined to Brazil, and with smaller crops and increased consumption in the United States, the pre-war surplus stocks were gradually reduced. At the end of the war, a Pan-American Coffee Conference recommended the removal of all restrictions and controls. Production in Brazil was soon up again to over 21m. cwt., with exports around 20m. cwt., dropping however to 13m. cwt. in 1954 as the old troubles recurred.

No other country comes anywhere near Brazil as a producer of coffee, but the other countries of Latin America together provide most of the balance of the world's supply. Colombia is easily second, with exports of 5m. cwt. in 1938 and nearly 7m. cwt. in 1954, as compared with Brazil's 20m. and 13m. respectively. El Salvador, Guatemala and Mexico each export about 1m. cwt. In point of quality, no coffee surpasses that of the district of Alta Vera Paz, in northern Guatemala, where the cultivation is carried on with peculiar care. The Blue Mountain coffee of Jamaica is also famous.

Before the war, the Dutch East Indies (now Indonesia) ranked

<sup>1</sup> The Brazilian bag of coffee weighs 60 kilos (132 lb.), or about 17 bags to the ton: so that the quantity of coffee destroyed was over 4½m. tons.

next to Colombia, with annual exports of between 1m. and 2m. cwt. The Japanese occupation of the islands and the post-war revolution almost killed the trade for the time being, but there was a recovery by 1954 to  $\frac{3}{4}$ m. cwt. The introduction of the coffee-tree into Java dates from 1650, when it was carried by the Dutch from Arabia. Plantations are generally at a height of from 2,000 to 4,000 ft. above sea-level. Formerly about two-thirds of the coffee grown in Java was grown on government plantations, but later the production of private plantations greatly increased. Coffee in Java suffered from disease, as did coffee in Ceylon, but the replacement of *Coffea arabica* by the disease-resisting Liberian coffee (*C. liberica* or *C. robusta*) enabled the industry to recover in Java. In Ceylon, as previously noted (p. 194), the industry practically died out and was replaced by tea planting.

The cultivation of coffee in India is said to have been introduced about two centuries ago by a native Mohammedan on his return from a pilgrimage to Mecca; but it was only after 1840 that it spread with any great rapidity. The coffee plantations are mainly in Mysore and Madras on the eastern, and therefore more sheltered, slopes of the Western Ghats, to the south of about 15° N. The most desirable elevation on these mountains is from 2,500 to 3,500 ft. above sea-level. The tree is also cultivated on much lower ground farther east, but it is nowhere grown with success in northern India. At no time has production or export been more than a very small percentage of world supply, and in the early decades of the present century the proportion declined to less than one per cent. In the quinquennium before the Second World War, the area under coffee averaged 185,000 acres and the production 325,000 cwt. Both acreage and production were well maintained during the war, and in 1945-46 the crop was over  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. cwt. Later, production dropped again, but in 1954 the output once more exceeded  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. cwt. Exports, which had averaged 180,000 cwt. before the war, dropped to 24,000 cwt. in 1945 and fell as low as 18,000 cwt. in 1953, but in the following year jumped to 203,000 cwt.

In Africa, coffee-growing made considerable strides both before and during the Second World War. Kenya coffee (*arabica*) early gained a high reputation on the London market, and in 1938 Kenya, Uganda, and Tanganyika together exported, in roughly equal quantities, nearly 0·9m. cwt. During the war, more pressing needs, combined with a series of dry seasons, led to a drop of 50 per cent. in Kenya's exports, but Tanganyika's exports were well maintained, and those from Uganda increased; with the result that in 1952 the combined exports of coffee from these three territories totalled 1  $\frac{1}{4}$ m. cwt., and in each of the next two years, 1·3m. cwt. Uganda is now the biggest coffee-grower and exporter in the Commonwealth. Still more marked was the development in Madagascar and French West

Africa, in Portuguese West Africa, and in the Belgian Congo. The combined export of these four territories increased from 1·9m. cwt. in 1938 to 2·6m. cwt. in 1946, and 4·2m. cwt. in 1954. It will be seen that altogether the seven territories named exported 5·5m. cwt. in 1954. Africa's total exports were about 6·2m. cwt., or 18·6 per cent. of the world total of 33·3m. cwt.

**CACAO.** Cacao, or cocoa, as it is more frequently but rather unfortunately called, is the product of an American tree *Theobroma cacao*, L., not to be confounded with the coconut-palm or the coca shrub. The tree comes into full bearing in twelve years (in favoured regions earlier) and continues to yield good returns for about thirty years, after which the yield begins to decline. The form in which it enters into commerce is that of cacao-beans, which are the seeds contained, to the number of fifty to one hundred and fifty, in a red or green fleshy fruit from six to ten inches in length. These beans or seeds, which form an important article of diet among the natives of tropical America, are composed to the amount of half their weight of a fat known as cacao-butter, which has the valuable property of never becoming rancid, however long it is kept. The extraction of this fat has become a considerable industry. Being rather difficult of digestion, however, this fat is generally removed, as far as possible, in preparing cocoa for drinking or chocolate. Among the constituents that remain are flesh-forming compounds, on account of which cacao is highly esteemed for its nutritiousness.

Before entering into commerce the cacao-beans have, like those of coffee, to undergo a preliminary treatment, and the quality of the article depends greatly on the care bestowed on the necessary processes, the price of well-prepared beans being often more than double that of beans prepared in a more slovenly fashion. The first process is one for setting up fermentation, which removes a disagreeable bitter flavour, destroys the power of germination in the seeds, and prevents mustiness. The best cacao-beans are fermented for a period of five or seven days, by placing them in a heap along with plaintain or other green leaves—a process during which so much heat is developed that the hand cannot be held in the heap for an instant. Later the beans are dried in the sun, and are then ready for shipment. When roasted and split, or broken, they form 'cocoa-nibs'.

The cacao-tree must be grown where there is little or no wind, which would break the heavy seed-vessels. It succeeds best under a higher temperature than coffee, and requires a great deal of moisture and a considerable depth of soil—much greater than that necessary for sugar. It therefore generally grows nearer the equator than coffee, and mostly on low grounds. Like coffee, it is liable to suffer from direct exposure to the rays of the sun, and is mostly grown under the shade of other trees. During the present century the main area of production has shifted from tropical America to West Africa.



In the former Gold Coast (now Ghana), cocoa has had a meteoric rise from nearly zero to easily the largest crop of cocoa in the world; and in Nigeria also the crop has become important. Latterly pests and diseases, notably 'swollen shoot', the only known remedy for which is to cut out the diseased trees, have ravaged the farms.

Between the two world wars, consumption (largely in the form of chocolate as a confection) nearly trebled. World exports of cocoa increased from some 250,000 tons in 1913 to 736,000 tons in 1939. West Africa provided over two-thirds of the latter total, the Gold Coast contributing 38 per cent., Nigeria 16 per cent., French West Africa (mainly the Ivory Coast) 7 per cent., the French mandated territories in the Cameroons and Togoland 5 per cent., and the islands of Fernando Po (Spanish) and São Tomé and Príncipe (Portuguese) 3 per cent. On the other side of the Atlantic, Brazil, with 18 per cent., ranked next to the Gold Coast as a source of supply, while the Dominican Republic (4 per cent.), Ecuador and Venezuela (4 per cent.), and Trinidad and Grenada ( $1\frac{1}{2}$  per cent.) made up the exports from Latin America and the Caribbean to well over a quarter of the world total.

Most of West Africa's exports are classed as 'Ordinary', and most of the supplies from the other side of the Atlantic as 'Fine', these being the two recognised grades of cocoa in the industry. Production and exports, though reduced by the Second World War, soon recovered from the setback, production ranging ordinarily between 700,000 and 750,000 tons (748,000 tons in 1954), and exports between 600,000 and 700,000 tons (662,000 tons in 1954). Analysis of the exports according to source of supply gave much the same results in 1954 as in 1939. West Africa still accounted for just over two-thirds of the total, but the Gold Coast percentage was down to 32 and there was a corresponding increase in the French percentage.

African Marketing Boards control sales and keep reserve funds, but so long as swollen shoot remains unconquered, the position is precarious. In 1952 over 15m. trees had been destroyed in the Gold Coast out of an estimated total of 40m. trees affected, and in Nigeria over  $1\frac{1}{2}$ m. out of more than 6m. trees affected. By 1955 over 40m. trees had been destroyed in the Gold Coast.

**RICE.** Rice is the characteristic grain-crop of the plains in the monsoon area of the tropical and sub-tropical parts of south-eastern Asia. There are many varieties of this crop, some of which require very different conditions from others; but those which are most abundantly produced not only demand a high summer temperature, but have to be grown in fields capable of being flooded at certain stages of their growth; and it is these conditions which are afforded in the great river deltas and low-lying seaboard tracts subject to inundation during the summer rains of the area referred to,

the fields in which the rice is grown are embanked to retain the water as long as may be needed, and where not sufficiently level by nature are carefully levelled by art; and if the rains or the overflow of rivers are not sufficient to inundate the fields, the necessary water must be furnished by irrigation. The amount of flooding required or capable of being endured varies at different stages of growth. While the seedlings are in an early stage of growth, two inches of water are ample; but when the stem is strong, high floods are almost unable to drown it. During flooding growth is astonishingly rapid, as much as nine inches having been known to be added to the height of the stalk in twenty-four hours.

From the highly peculiar conditions under which rice grows, it follows that where grown at all it is grown to the exclusion of almost every other crop; and outside of the regions above indicated, the cultivation of rice is for the most part locally restricted to small areas, presenting exceptional facilities for artificial inundation. There are, indeed, certain varieties of rice, known as upland or hill rice, which thrive on a drier soil, in India even at an altitude of 8,000 ft.; but these varieties occupy comparatively small areas.

Yet, notwithstanding this local restriction of the rice-crop, it forms the staple food grain of about one-third of the human race, and exceeds all other grain crops both in volume and in weight. No tropical grain yields so large an amount of food from a given area of land; and hence the lowlands of Asia adapted to this crop are the most densely peopled parts of the continent. Rice weighs only 45 lb. a bushel against wheat's 60 lb., but on world averages for the five years 1934-38, before the disturbance of the Second World War, an acre of rice yielded 35 bushels against wheat's 15 bushels—that is, two-and-a-third times as much by volume, and one-and-three-quarter times as much by weight. On this basis, though the area under rice (215m. acres) averaged only about two-thirds the area under wheat (320m. acres), the weight of the rice crop would be a sixth greater than that of wheat, as it actually was—149m. tons of rice compared with 128m. tons of wheat (F.A.O. returns).

Japan (at least until recently), the Philippine Islands, parts of the East Indies, and Indo-China are lands within whose borders the great bulk of the entire population live mainly on rice. In India and China there are certain regions, and these in many cases the most populous, where rice is likewise the mainstay of the inhabitants. Still, it is estimated that, in former British India as a whole, only about one-third of the population is rice-eating, and, since the former native states lie mainly outside of the regions suitable for rice-cultivation, it may safely be inferred that a smaller proportion of the inhabitants of those territories live on rice.

Relatively to this vast consumption, rice does not enter very largely into the commerce of the world. The great countries of Asia

for the most part supply their own wants as regards this commodity within their own borders, and the trade in rice is principally a home trade. The density of population in most of the great rice-producing regions of the world does not allow of any great surplus for Europe and America, and normally the supplies for these parts of the world are mainly obtained from the three comparatively small countries of Burma, Siam, and Cochin-China—the least densely populated of all the great rice-growing regions. Of the total export of rice formerly credited to India, between 80 and 95 per cent. was from Burma, until 1937 a province of India, although the rice-fields there cover only about one-sixth of the area of those of Bengal. Rice is grown here and there in southern Europe, above all in Italy (Piedmont, Lombardy, and Venetia), so that rice is among the principal Italian exports of home production. It is also cultivated in the United States, on irrigated land in California as well as in Louisiana, on the Mississippi delta, and in Arkansas and Texas.

A distinction should be drawn between the coarse rice which enters into international trade for industrial uses, such as the preparation of starch, and the smaller trade in finer qualities for food for white folk. Table rice for Britain comes from Spain, Australia, and India as well as from the great exporters. Britain's total rice import in 1956 was 84,000 tons valued at £4.2m.

**MILLETS.** This name is given to several grain-crops, the most important of which are tropical. The two kinds most largely grown are the Great Millet (*Sorghum vulgare*, Pers.) and the Spiked Millet (*Pennisetum typhoideum*, Rich.). They are both among the leading crops of India and form the staple food grains of the drier regions of both India and China. Great Millet is also largely grown in Africa under the name of durra. It is sometimes known as Guinea corn. Neither product enters largely into the commerce of the world. A species of sorghum is widely cultivated in the United States and elsewhere for green fodder. The so-called millets of the temperate zone, including *Setaria italica*, Beauv., agree only in yielding grain of a small size.

**MINOR FARINACEOUS PRODUCTS.** **Tapioca** is derived from the long tubers of the manioc plant (*Jatropha Manihot*, L.), a native of Brazil, but now largely cultivated elsewhere in the tropics of the Old World as well as the New. The tubers, before being subjected to heat and pressure, are highly poisonous, but the meal, a granular substance derived from them, and known as tapioca or cassava, according as it is the result of one or other mode of treatment, is wholesome and nutritious. This meal forms a staple article of food in Brazil and in many parts of tropical Africa, but normally it is imported into this country chiefly from Indonesia (Java) and from British Malaya, by way of Singapore. **Sago** is obtained from the pith of palms of the genus *Sagus*, principally *S. Rumphii*, Wild.

and *S. laevis*, Reinw., largely cultivated in the eastern half of the Eastern Archipelago, including Borneo, whence it is imported by way of Singapore in sacks made out of the leaves of the palm itself. So easy is the cultivation of the palm, a single family is able to attend to a plantation containing 400 trees. West Indian sago is the produce of cycads. **Arrowroot** is derived from various sources. That which is distinguished as the true arrowroot is obtained from the rhizome of *Maranta arundinacea*, L., a native of tropical America, but now cultivated also in the Old World. This arrowroot is chiefly obtained from the West Indian island of St. Vincent. Other kinds are derived from India and elsewhere.

**YAMS** are the thick tubers of several species of *Dioscorea* which send up long slender annual twining stems. The tubers vary in weight from 1 lb. to 100 lb. according to the species. When cooked the tubers acquire a mild taste like that of a potato and form the staple food of native races in many parts of the tropics—notably the wetter parts of West Africa and the South Sea Islands. They should not be confused with the **Sweet Potatoes** (*Ipomoea Batatas*) also grown in tropical and warm temperate lands and eaten in the same way as potatoes.

**SUGAR-CANE.** The sugar-cane belongs botanically, like the cereals, to the family of the grasses, but its seed or grain is commercially of no value, and the plant is cultivated solely for the sake of the juice which is found in its stem, and which yields sugar. It is a tall plant, growing to the height of from ten to fifteen feet, and some of the stalks attain a thickness of more than an inch. Every year these stalks are cut down just before flowering, but the root-stock is perennial, and continues to throw up fresh shoots every year in sufficient quantity to be remunerative for thirty years in succession, though the usual rule is to renew the plants after five years. The range of the sugar-cane in latitude is wider than that of coffee, but not so wide as that of tea. In the northern hemisphere it is grown successfully to the north of lat. 37° in the south of Spain, and in the southern hemisphere, in Natal and New South Wales, to about lat. 30° S. A moist soil being required for sugar-cane, the situation in which it is grown is very different from that of tea or coffee, but with too much moisture the juice will be watery.

Originally a product of Eastern Asia, the sugar-cane was made known in the West by the Arabs, who appear to have introduced it first into Egypt, then in the ninth century into the Mediterranean islands, and later into Spain, the only part of Europe where it still flourishes. To-day the sugar-cane is cultivated in all tropical and many sub-tropical countries. The largest producer of cane sugar for export is Cuba. In the pre-war quinquennium 1934–38 its average annual production was given in the United Nations (F.A.O.) returns as over 2.6m. tons—one-sixth of the world total of 16.2m.

tons of refined centrifugal cane sugar. The F.A.O. post-war returns are based on the weight of raw sugar, which is rather more than the weight of refined sugar; but the outstanding fact is the increase in both acreage and production of the principal sugar-cane crops, except in Indonesia (formerly the Dutch East Indies) and Formosa (which has been changing over from sugar to rice). The pre-war area harvested was over 10m. acres; in 1954-55 it was over 14m. acres. Pre-war production averaged 16m. tons; in 1954-55 it was over 21m. tons. In addition there has been an increase in the output of non-centrifugal sugar (mostly village-made Indian *gur*) from about 3½m. to 4½m. tons.

These figures do not show fully the increase since 1934-38. Cuba's output in 1951-52 was 7·1m. tons against 4·5m. in 1954-55. Such indeed was the profusion of supplies that it was difficult to find markets for them all. Elaborate schemes to regulate exports and prices were negotiated, and though production has gone on increasing in many countries, Cuba cut down her 1951-52 production by over 2½m. tons—more than the total production of any other country except India. Brazil, whose area under sugar-cane (2½m. acres) exceeded Cuba's reduced acreage, but whose yield per acre was only half that of Cuba, was the second largest producer (2·1m. tons). India, with a production of 1·5m. tons of centrifugal cane sugar, was also credited with 2·7m. tons of *gur*. Other countries with a production of over a million tons of centrifugal cane sugar were Australia (1·3m.), Philippines (1·2m.), and Puerto Rico (1·0m.). South Africa, the West Indies, Mauritius, and British Guiana are other leading producers in the Commonwealth, which altogether provides a third of the world production of cane sugar, centrifugal and non-centrifugal.

As in production, so in the sugar export trade, Cuba dominates the world. Despite the curtailment of her crop, she exported in 1954-55 over 4m. tons (30 per cent. of the world total). No other country reached the million mark, but ranging from that figure down to half a million tons were Hawaii, Puerto Rico, Philippines, Australia, Formosa, Dominican Republic, and Mauritius.

**THE SUGAR INDUSTRY.** Sugar, now regarded as a necessary of life by the very poorest in almost all parts of the world, was unknown to the classical nations of antiquity. Even about four hundred years ago refined sugar, in the form of loaf sugar, was still unknown. The invention of the process is ascribed to a Venetian about the end of the fifteenth or beginning of the sixteenth century. As late as the beginning of the eighteenth century the total amount consumed in Europe in one year is estimated to have reached only about 50,000 tons. Now the United Kingdom alone consumes some 2½m. tons annually, exclusive of molasses as well as of *glucose*, a kind of sugar derived from the starch of maize or potatoes, and used as a

sweetener in jam-making, in brewing, as an invalid food, and for many other purposes.

Down to the nineteenth century the sugar-cane was almost the sole source of supply of the sugar consumed in Europe. Since then **sugar-beet** has become a formidable rival. The presence of sugar in beet-root was discovered by a Berlin apothecary named Marggraf, as far back as 1747. Before the close of the same century another Berlin chemist, named Achard, devised a method of extracting the sugar from beet; but the first attempts to do this were not commercially successful. At a later date great improvements were introduced in the method of extraction by the French Comte de Chaptal, and after 1820 the making of beet-sugar became firmly established in various countries in Europe. As time went on, production increased until in 1913 the world's supply was derived almost equally from the two sources. It will be instructive to compare the advantages of these rivals.

On the side of sugar-cane are easy culture in tropical and sub-tropical climates where labour is at its cheapest; natural richness in sugar; and a perennial root stock. Beet suffers under the disadvantage of requiring high cultivation (more especially plentiful supplies of potash manures), of requiring to be re-planted year by year, and of being grown where labour is relatively dear. On the other hand, as a result of modern selection, a given weight of sugar-beet is now actually richer in sugar than a corresponding weight of cane. Beet has the advantage of being grown where population is dense, and where accordingly the market is close at hand both for the raw material used in the refineries and also for the manufactured product; where, too, in consequence of that density of population, manure is abundant, or the advanced state of commerce renders it easily procurable; and where the abundance of capital, and the consequently low rate of interest on money, favours the erection of the best machinery for dealing with the raw material. Moreover, it has the further important advantage of yielding a refuse material of much higher value than that obtained from the sugar-cane. The canes after being deprived of their sugary juice are chiefly used for fuel; but the refuse beet, the beet-pulp, as it is called, besides being a useful manure, especially as returning potash to the ground, is a valuable food for cattle—a circumstance of special importance in thickly peopled countries.

There are other indirect advantages in connection with the sugar-beet industry. The extraction and refining of the sugar are conveniently complementary to the growing of the beet both as regards place and time. The amount of waste in the raw material makes it important to have the factories near the farms, all the more since that waste matter ceases to be waste when returned to the farms. That favours the establishment of at least one manufacturing

industry in country districts. At the 1907 industrial or occupations census of Germany, 40 per cent. of the refinery employees were in towns of less than 2,000 inhabitants, and an additional 33 per cent. in towns of 2,000 to 20,000. Then the factory work is confined to three months in the year, September to December, when agricultural work is slack, so that the agricultural industry can easily spare labour for the factories, all the more easily since the refinery labour is to agricultural only in the ratio of 2 : 13.

The sugar-beet industry enjoys further advantages in the methods and machinery used for extracting sugar from the beet. The roots containing the sugar are first treated in one of two ways, either of which extracts from their substance a larger proportion of the juice contained in them than is usually derived from the sugar-canes. One method is to subject them to the action of powerful presses; but a still better method is that known as the diffusion process, the invention of a German named Robert, but improved and first made practically useful in France (by Charles, and afterwards by Peret of Roye). According to this process slices of the beet-root are subjected to the action of hot water either in a number of different tanks or in one continuous cylinder, but in either case in such a manner that the water ultimately gets thoroughly saturated with juice. The after-treatment of the beet-juice differs in some respects from that of cane-juice, but is in the main similar. The improvements in the cultivation and treatment of sugar-beet are such that whereas in 1836-37 18 cwt. of beet were required to produce 1 cwt. of raw sugar, now the world average is only 8 cwt. (see page 210).

In the case of the sugar-cane, the stems of the plant are as a rule merely crushed between rollers which still leave in the cane a considerable proportion of the juice. The juice that is pressed out is boiled and otherwise treated, part of the substance then forming the crystals of sugar, while the remainder flows away in the form of a syrup known as molasses. From the country of production cane sugar is usually exported in an unrefined condition, in which it is called raw sugar, and the raw sugar is further treated and refined, more syrup flowing away during these further processes. An economy has been effected by a change of system in some cane-growing districts. Instead of each planter extracting the sugar from his own cane, different estates are connected with a single sugar-factory, the juice from the canes being pumped through pipes leading to reservoirs belonging to the factory. This is known as the *usine* or factory system. Even this method does not produce the most economical results unless the separate estates are large enough to be equipped with the best crushing machinery. Otherwise it is found best to convey the cane itself to the central factory to be crushed there.

An inexact but instructive indication of the comparative yields of sugar from cane and beet is provided by the *International Yearbook*

of *Agricultural Statistics*, issued by the Food and Agriculture Organisation of the United Nations. According to the original data, world production of sugar-beet in the pre-war quinquennium 1934–1938 averaged 75m. metric tons a year and world production of beet sugar 9·5m. tons. Provided that no substantial part of the beet was used for other purposes, about 8 tons of it was needed to produce a ton of sugar. In the same years world production of sugar-cane averaged 168m. tons, and of cane sugar 16·5m. tons—about 10 tons of cane to the ton of sugar. Post-war revision of the 1934–38 returns increased the divergence, and analysis of the 1954 returns shows averages of 10·7 tons of sugar-cane and 7·3 tons of sugar-beet per ton of sugar.

During the present century, scientific research has led to improvements in growing and extracting cane sugar as well as beet sugar, and the Commonwealth Economic Committee, in a post-war survey of plantation crops, asserts that cane sugar can usually be produced more cheaply than beet sugar, which would have difficulty in competing with it without the support of subsidies or protective tariffs. This support has long been given, not only in countries whose traditional economic policy is protectionist, but in the United Kingdom. Sugar-beet is chiefly grown in Europe, and especially in Germany, France, Italy, Poland, Czechoslovakia, the U.K., and other highly industrialised countries, which favoured it with the double object of ensuring home supplies of sugar and encouraging agricultural industry. National support has been supplemented by elaborate international agreements, affecting both beet sugar and cane sugar, and aiming at the control of production and prices in face of supplies tending to overtake demand.

As already stated, the production of beet sugar increased until in 1913 world supplies rivalled those of cane sugar. Between the two world wars cane sugar regained the predominance. Of the world production of some 25m. tons of centrifugal sugar in the years immediately preceding the Second World War, cane sugar accounted for about 60 per cent. During the war, world production declined to about 20m. tons, the decline of beet sugar in the war-ravaged countries of Europe being especially marked. But there was rapid recovery in the years following the close of hostilities—more rapid in the case of cane than of beet—and by 1948–49 total production had regained the pre-war level. In the next few years it rose to 38m. tons, or 50 per cent. above pre-war, both cane and beet sharing in the increase in much the same proportion.

Besides the two great sugar-producing plants, sugar is obtained in greater or less quantity from various other sources. In the eastern parts of Canada and in the north-eastern states of the U.S.A., sugar is largely obtained from a juice which flows out on tapping the trunk of various species of maple and above all the sugar-maple



(*Acer saccharinum*, Linn.). From this source is obtained a small proportion of the native-grown sugar of the United States, but one which has a special use as a sweetmeat or as syrup. In tropical countries sugar is largely obtained from various species of palms—in India from the Indian date palm, the Palmyra palm, the coconut palm, the toddy palm, and the sago palm.

**CINCHONA.** Cinchona is the name of a Linnæan genus of tropical trees, several species of which yield a bark highly prized in medicine, chiefly as a sovereign remedy for the malarial fevers incident to tropical climates. The bark yields extracts, the best known of which is quinine. Compounds from these extracts are also used. The species of Cinchona are all natives of the eastern slopes of the Andes, from about 7° N. to 22° S., occupying, generally in scattered groups, a belt of from about 3,000 to 10,000 feet above sea-level, a belt in which they are exposed to copious rains, enjoy a tolerably constant temperature, and plenty of sunshine. The species most valued for their bark include *Cinchona succirubra*, Pav., yielding the red bark of commerce; *C. calisaya*, Wedd., and *C. ledgeriana*, Moens, yielding the more valuable yellow bark; and *C. officinalis*, L. They flourish best within eight or ten degrees of the equator at from 4,000 to 7,000 feet above sea-level, where the mean temperature is from about 55° to 70° F. In higher latitudes they are confined to a lower elevation.

The great value of this bark led to numerous attempts to introduce the trees into other parts of the world. Originally, the region from which it was introduced into Europe belonged entirely to the domain of the old Empire of Peru, and subsequently to the Spanish viceroyalty of Peru; and hence it became known by the name of Peruvian bark. After the establishment of the various South American republics, that of Colombia furnished the chief supply. The first attempts to introduce the tree into tropical parts of Asia were made by the Dutch. The first tree was introduced into Java in 1852, and a few years later the cultivation of the cinchona was a successful government industry on that island, where it is now prosecuted by private individuals as well as by the government. To India the tree was brought direct from South America by Mr. (afterwards Sir) Clements Markham in 1860. A government cinchona plantation was soon after established on the Nilgiri Hills, and a second was afterwards set going in Darjeeling, in lat. 27° on one of the rainiest parts of the Himalayan range.

But it was the Ceylon plantations which first greatly affected the international commerce in this bark and its price. Down to about 1880, Colombia remained the chief source of supply for the London market; but so rapidly was cinchona cultivation extended in Ceylon that the British imports of the bark from that country increased from 7,452 cwt. in 1881 to over 115,000 cwt. in 1886. Later, the Colom-

bian supply dwindled to insignificance, and the supplies from Ceylon and India also fell away, partly on account of disease and partly because prices ceased to be remunerative. Before the Second World War, the supreme source of supply was Java, which in some years provided over 90 per cent. of the world total. A large proportion of the United Kingdom import was in the form of quinine and quinine salts from the Netherlands, the imports of cinchona bark being only a fraction of what had been received from Ceylon in 1886. With Java and the Netherlands both in enemy occupation during the war, cinchona and quinine were in very short supply. Both then and for a time after the close of hostilities, the United Kingdom was dependent on spasmodic imports from different sources, including not only South America but Central America, the Belgian Congo, and (in 1946) the Union of South Africa and British Malaya. In 1947, imports were up to the pre-war level in quantity, amounting to 16,000 cwt. of bark and over 2m. oz. (1,150 cwt.) of quinine and quinine salts; but since then they have fluctuated considerably. Balancing the imports of quinine and its salts are exports under the same name, not merely re-exports, but classed as exports of British manufacture.

**TROPICAL VEGETABLE FIBRES.** Of these the most important (apart from cotton) is **jute**, which is derived from the bast chiefly of two species of a genus of plants known to botanists as *Corchorus*. These are slender-stemmed annuals, from about eight to twelve feet high. The cultivation of the plant on a great scale for the sake of the fibre is almost confined to northern and eastern Bengal, especially the latter, in the Ganges Delta. Here the annual production ranges between 1m. and 2m. tons; in none of the few other countries in which jute is grown does the production amount to more than a few thousand tons. In Bengal it grows in every variety of soil, but by preference on the alluvial sand-banks thrown up by rivers, for which situation it is peculiarly adapted by the fact that, except in the early stages of growth, it can stand heavy flooding without injury. The fibre, which is extracted from the stem by various processes, including that of retting, has long been woven on Indian hand-loom into gunny cloth—'the brown paper of the wholesale trade,' as it has been called. Wherever and however made, the cloth is almost universally used as sacking for agricultural produce; no satisfactory substitute has yet been found, and though the bulk handling of grain in the great wheat-growing countries has lessened the demand to some extent, jute still plays an essential part in agricultural industry throughout the world.

Till about 1835 the use of this material in weaving was almost confined to India; then it began to be imported into Dundee, where it has risen to be the chief article used in spinning and weaving. For a time Dundee was the only seat of jute-factories, but the industry

no entirely satisfactory substitute for jute has yet been found. Much has been done to modernise the Dundee factories.

Jute yarn, either alone or in combination with other yarns, is now also employed in the manufacture of various other fabrics, such as carpets, furniture-coverings, curtains, and even plushes and velvets.

Next in importance to jute among tropical fibres in European commerce is **Manila hemp**, so called from the chief place of export. It is obtained from the long leaves of *Musa textilis*, Nees, a plant belonging to the same genus as the banana and plantain, found wild on the Moluccas and Philippine Islands, and cultivated almost exclusively on the latter. Along with constant humidity and a high but fairly regular rainfall it needs a well-drained soil, and is often put on steep mountain sides. The fibre is from six to nine feet in length, and is separated from the leaf by hand-labour or by mechanical strippers. Though more difficult to work and more brittle than hemp fibre, it is capable of being made into ropes of great tenacity and endurance, and it is very largely exported for that purpose. The finer fibres are woven by the people of the Philippine Islands into delicate tissues, and in Europe they are likewise used (often in combination with silk) in making curtains, coverings for furniture, and other fabrics.

In Eastern countries (India, China, Japan, and the Eastern Archipelago) fibres derived from the bast chiefly of two varieties of *Bœhmeria nivea*, Hook., a species of plants belonging to the nettle family, have been used from the earliest times in spinning and weaving. The fibres, known in India as **rhea**, in the Malay Islands as **ramie**, and to Europeans by the name of **China grass**, are pre-eminent amongst vegetable fibres for strength, fineness, and lustre, and produce an almost silky-looking fabric, called China cloth or grass cloth, which in China is very generally used for the making of summer clothing. Its various qualities render it fit for being used in making, besides ships' cables, all sorts of woven fabrics, from the coarsest to the finest—sail-cloth, table-linen, 'alpaca', velvet, and even lace and cambric. The chief obstacle to its use at present is its high price, arising from the difficulty with which the fibre is separated. The fibres are attached to the core of the stem of the plant and to one another by a gummy substance which cannot be removed by the ordinary process of retting and has to be abstracted by treatment with chemicals. When examined under the microscope the individual fibres are seen to be interrupted at intervals by enlarged nodes, making the fibres difficult to work.

Since about 1880 a fibre known as **sisal** has been largely used (first in America) for the making of binder-twine. It is derived from the fleshy leaves of various species of *Agave*, but chiefly the *Agave rigida*, Mill., a native of Yucatan, which has been widely introduced into other parts of the tropics with a similar climate, notably East

Africa—where Tanganyika is now the world's largest producer—and Indonesia. Even before the Second World War the production and exports of sisal exceeded those of Manila hemp, and during the war, when the Philippines were in Japanese hands, and afterwards, sisal went further ahead, till in 1956 world exports totalled 468,000 tons, of which Tanganyika supplied 186,000 tons.

Of other tropical or sub-tropical fibre-plants none has, as yet, attained any considerable place in international commerce. One of them, a leguminous or pod-bearing plant, *Crotalaria juncea*, Linn., yields from its bast the **sunh hemp** of India, not unlike jute; production—not all for fibre—in 1956 was 123,000 tons. In the same country the *Hibiscus cannabinus*, Linn., a member of the same family as the cotton plant, is largely cultivated, especially in the north, for its fibre, which is also obtained from the bast, and is known as **Deccan** or **gambo-hemp**. Several trees belonging to the same family furnish a soft silky wool, which, like the true cotton, is an investment of the seeds, but which, being too short for spinning, is used for stuffing cushions and other similar purposes. These are known as **silk cotton trees**, and the most important are *Bombax Ceiba*, Linn., a native of tropical America, *Bombax malabaricum*, DC., a native of India, and *Eriodendron anfractuosum*, DC., a native of India and the Eastern Archipelago, from which latter region the product of this tree has been introduced into commerce by the Dutch under the name of **kapok** or **vegetable down**. On account of its extreme buoyancy it is used in making life waistcoats. The fibres of the leaves of the screw-pine, *Pandanus odoratissimus*, Linn., a native of southern Asia, Madagascar, and the islands of the Pacific, enter into commerce under the name of **vicua**, or **vacoua**, as a material for coarse sacking. Those from the outside of the stem of the palm, known to botanists as *Attalea funifera*, Mart., are exported from Brazil, under the name of **piassava**, as a material for brushes and brooms. Under the same name the fibres of *Raphia vinifera* are exported from West Africa. The ubiquitous coconut palm furnishes, among its numerous other products, the fibre called **coir**, which is commercially by far the most important of all these minor fibres. The fibre forms a thick matting on the outside of the nut, and after separation and treatment is exported as a material not only for brooms and brushes, but also for the making of door-mats, socks, and even stair-carpets, as well as for various other purposes. Sometimes there are local manufactures.

**TROPICAL FRUITS.** Oranges, limes, dates, and some other fruits are all imported into the United Kingdom and other parts of the temperate zone more or less from the tropics, but the supply from within the tropics is in most cases less than the supply from without. The **banana** is the only fruit which enters into world commerce mainly from the tropics, and this is a trade that has grown important as the result of increased knowledge of cold storage and

careful organisation. They are the product of the large plant known to botanists as *Musa sapientum*, L., and its varieties, including a hardy dwarf variety known as *M. Cavendishii* or *chinensis*, suitable for cultivation in the temperate zone, and now largely cultivated in the Canary Islands. All the varieties require high temperatures, a great deal of moisture, and a deep soil. When these conditions are satisfied they are grown almost universally in the tropics in small plots by the peasants. South and Central America (notably Ecuador and Costa Rica), the West Indies, Canaries and West Africa are the principal parts of the world in which cultivation is carried on extensively, as a plantation industry for export. The United States, the United Kingdom, and certain European countries are the principal markets. The trade has grown to enormous proportions since the construction of special steamers with the requisite cold storage where the bananas can be kept at the exact temperature of 52° F. The bananas grow in 'hands', of 10–12 fingers along a main stem forming a 'bunch'. The average 'bunch' is over 100 bananas, each plant yielding one bunch. Other species of *Musa*, including *M. paradisiaca*, L., which yields the plantain, are also grown to a large extent in the tropics as food, but do not enter into world commerce. The name plantain is, however, loosely used in many parts of the world as practically synonymous with banana.

The import into the United Kingdom increased from about 1½m. bunches in 1900 to upwards of 22m. in 1938. They were nearly all for the home market, and reckoning only 100 bananas to the bunch the average annual consumption was 50 per head of the population. The weight of the 22m. bunches, as given in the trade returns, was 6·1m. cwt., so that on a world-wide range of supplies the bunches averaged between three and four to the cwt., or about 70 to the ton.

For three years during the Second World War, 1942–3–4, the importation of bananas into the United Kingdom was prohibited, and later the Ministry of Food bought all supplies till private trading was again allowed in 1953. In 1956, imports (6·3m. cwt.) were fully up to pre-war level. Almost all came from the British West Indies, Nigeria (Cameroons) and the Canary Islands.

**RUBBER** was formerly known as caoutchouc or india-rubber. Of the older names, the first is a South American name, and suggests the region whence knowledge of the substance was introduced into Europe, and whence still come limited supplies. Columbus, on his second voyage (1493), noted it as being used in Haiti for the making of balls. Torquemada mentions in 1615 that it was then derived from a Mexican tree, and used by the Spaniards to waterproof their cloaks. The Portuguese found it in use at an early date in Brazil for the making of syringes (whence its Portuguese name of *seringa*). But the substance and its uses first became generally known in

Europe through a paper read to the French Academy by La Condamine in 1736. For more than eighty years after that almost its sole use in Europe was for the purpose which the second name suggests, namely the rubbing out of pencil-marks. At the present time it would be difficult to say how small a fraction of the consumption of rubber that use represents. The 'india' prefixed to the term 'rubber' indicates the source from which the chief supplies of the material were then obtained. The first important extension of the use of rubber was due to the invention in 1823 by Mackintosh of the waterproof fabric named after him. A still greater extension followed when Goodyear in America in 1842, and independently Hancock in England in 1843, discovered the method of hardening caoutchouc by treating it with sulphur. This is known as the process of **vulcanising**. A small proportion of sulphur (5 to 7 per cent.) incorporated with the rubber makes a compound adapted for a great variety of mechanical purposes. A larger percentage (39-84) makes the equally familiar hard black compound known as ebonite. What above all has stimulated the modern growth of the rubber industry has been the twentieth-century development of motoring and aviation. It is estimated (1956) that two-thirds of the world consumption of rubber is absorbed by the manufacture of tyres and tubes.

Rubber is the coagulated latex or juice derived from a variety of trees, all tropical. To prevent putrefaction the coagulation must be effected within about 24 hours of the collection of the juice. For many years the largest supply was obtained from trees of the allied genera *Hevea* and *Micrandra*, growing in the Amazon valley, in Brazil, Bolivia, and Peru, not in clumps, but widely scattered amongst a great variety of other trees, as is usual in well-watered parts of the tropics. The species from which most was obtained is the *H. brasiliensis*, Müll.-Arg. (*Siphonia elastica*, Pers.). Rubber from all these trees is known from the place of export as **Pará rubber**. The trees yielding the best juice are those growing on tracts of land which are annually flooded. Those growing where the roots are always submerged yield too watery a juice, and those that grow on higher ground beyond the reach of floods a juice too viscid. Another Brazilian tree, *Manihot Glaziovii*, Müll.-Arg. (an ally of the shrub yielding tapioca), furnished Ceará rubber, which owes its commercial name to the province from which it is derived. Rains are occasionally plentiful in its habitat, but the region is exposed to prolonged periods of drought. In Central America and the northern parts of South America, an inferior caoutchouc is obtained from *Castilloa elastica*, Cerv. In India, rubber has been obtained from a species of fig, *Ficus elastica*, Roxb. (Assam rubber); in Borneo, from a species of *Willughbeia*; in other parts of the Eastern Archipelago, from *Urceola elastica*, Roxb.; in Africa, principally from various species of twining plants belonging to the genus *Landolphia*, but

also, in Lagos and other parts of West Africa, from *Funtumia elastica* (= *Kickxia elastica*, Preuss). All the species mentioned are trees, most of them confined to latitudes well within the tropics, the only exception being the *Ficus elastica*, which, however, grows in a part of India with a characteristic tropical climate.

Largely owing to the practice of what the Germans call 'robber economy' (whereby the rubber-bearing trees are ruthlessly cut down and killed in order to obtain the maximum yield), wild rubber has come to form a very small percentage of the world's supply. The bulk of the supply is now obtained through the produce of regular plantations, in which it is possible by careful tapping to obtain a steady supply of juice from the same trees for many years in succession, and to effect other economies not practicable by the old mode of collection. Experiments began to be made with both Pará and Ceará rubbers as far back as 1876 and 1877. Through the authorities of Kew Gardens both trees have been introduced into most suitable parts of the tropics in both the Old World and the New. At first the progress of rubber-planting was slow. The Hevea rubber tree takes ten years to mature, and at the end of last century it was still considered doubtful whether plantations with expensive European company management would pay. But the foresight of business men has been justified. In 1913, the year before the outbreak of the First World War, nearly half the total production of 101,000 tons was plantation rubber. In 1923, five years after the close of that war, the total production was estimated at 410,000 tons, more than 90 per cent. being plantation rubber.

Before the Second World War, in the five years 1934-38, total production averaged just on a million tons a year, of which only about 2 per cent. was wild rubber, coming mostly from Brazil. All but a still smaller percentage of the plantation rubber was produced in Asia—more than three-fourths of it in Malaya (43 per cent.) and the Dutch East Indies (36 per cent.), while Ceylon, Siam and Indo-China between them furnished another 15 per cent. In the early stages of the war, production was intensified; in 1940 it amounted to over 1,400,000 tons. World totals for the later years of the war are not available, owing to the Japanese occupation of the principal rubber-growing countries; but in 1942 Ceylon's production reached 116,000 tons (nearly double the pre-war average), and in tropical Africa it rose to 40,000 tons (over five times the pre-war average). The production of wild rubber also increased—from 20,000 tons (pre-war average) to nearly 50,000 tons.

This increased production could not make up for the loss to the world at large of the main supplies of rubber. To meet the shortage, synthetic rubber was manufactured on a large scale in the United States, and both the quality and the price of the manufactured article made it a formidable rival to the natural product. Before the

war, world output of the synthetic product was estimated at 68,000 tons; in 1944 it was over 900,000 tons. To ensure maintenance of the new industry for possible future need, it was made obligatory in the United States to include a certain percentage of synthetic rubber in any rubber content of manufactured articles. The effect on the plantation industry was all the more marked because, before the Second World War, the United States bought about half the total world supply of rubber, the other half being absorbed mostly in Europe (the United Kingdom 15 per cent.), Japan and Canada. The limitation of the United States market for plantation rubber naturally had a depressing effect on prices, and that at a time when the rehabilitation of the industry in the Far East involved largely increased costs. Before the war rubber fetched from 7*d.* to 8*d.* a pound on the London market; when the market was freed from control after the war, the price was 9*d.* a pound, rising later to 1*s.* Happily the damage suffered by the plantations during the Japanese occupation was much less than had been feared; production made a rapid recovery, and the post-war problem was not one of shortage but of the absorption by industry of all the available supplies, natural and synthetic. The Korean War and the rearmament programmes of the great powers transformed this situation, and new demands sent up the price to 2*s.* 9*d.* per lb. in 1950 and 4*s.* 3*d.* per lb. in 1951, only to decline heavily again in the following year, when demand eased off.

These post-war developments only serve to illustrate the varied conditions which have been experienced from time to time in marketing the supplies of plantation rubber. From the early years of the present century, with supplies increasing by leaps and bounds, while demand also increased widely but erratically, there were periods of under-production and over-production, of booms and slumps, with the latter predominating. In 1909–10 the British import price rose to nearly £30 per cwt. (over 5*s.* per lb.); in 1913 it had fallen to £13 per cwt. (just under 2*s.* 4*d.* per lb.). Another boom after the First World War was followed by another slump. Over-production was averted by restricting output in the British rubber-growing countries. Later the restriction was removed, and in 1931 the price of rubber fell to less than 2½*d.* per lb. An International Agreement to regulate both production and export came into force in 1934, but it could not be carried out during the war, and though in the United Kingdom the Ministry of Supply was the sole importer of rubber from 1941 to 1946, free marketing was permitted again in 1947.

The price fluctuations which make rubber such a speculative asset soon developed again. Rubber is particularly sensitive to the winds of change. The effect of the Korean War has already been noted. The threat of a recession in 1956 caused prices to drop between January and May from 3*s.* to 1*s.* 9*d.* per lb., only to be



followed in December, when the Suez crisis threatened a shortage, by a rise to 2s. 10d.

In 1957 development had reached a peak. Some 11–12 million acres were under plantation rubber, much of it old stock which is gradually being replaced by high-yielding trees. World production and consumption of natural rubber was reckoned at 1.9m. tons, and the market also absorbed over 1.1m. tons of synthetic rubber, the consumption of both products amounting for the first time to over 3m. tons. Indonesia is credited with being the biggest producer of natural rubber, though the disturbed conditions in that country make exact estimates impossible. Malaya is a good second, followed at a considerable distance by Thailand and Ceylon. These four countries provide some 85 per cent. of world production, and the first two alone nearly 75 per cent.

In the United States, government insistence on a proportion of synthetic rubber in rubber manufactures has been withdrawn, and the use of synthetic is dependent on competition with the natural product. The two are serious rivals, and the production of synthetic is extending in Western Europe, including Britain; but confidence is growing in planting circles that there is room for both products in the industrial world, and that natural rubber may hope to hold its own under efficient management.

**Gutta-percha** is the hardened juice of several other tropical trees of the family of Sapotaceæ. The chief supply in this case comes from the East Indies. Formerly, that known to botanists as *Dichopsis Gutta*, Benth., furnished the bulk of the supply, but this tree was so ruthlessly destroyed in obtaining the juice that it was almost exterminated and the genus *Payena*, especially *Payena Leerii*, Kurz, now contributes most of the product. Gutta-percha is used for many of the same purposes as rubber, and is capable in many respects of the same treatment. Mixed with carbon, it can readily be vulcanised like rubber, by the addition of sulphur, either to the soft or hard state. The former practice of destroying the trees to get the juice is now largely given up. They may be tapped and preserved like rubber trees. Another variety of gutta-percha, known as balata, is obtained from South America, mainly British Guiana, and is the product of another member of the Sapotaceæ, the bullet tree *Mimusops balata*, Crueg. With the increasing use of rubber from *Hevea brasiliensis* the use of other types has decreased.

## COMMODITIES (*continued*)

### I.—D. *Products of Various Climates*

**VEGETABLE OILS, OIL-SEEDS, AND OIL-CAKE.** Almost all vegetable oils are extracted from the fruit or seed. The plants supplying oil vary widely in their character, ranging from small herbs to tall trees. Almost all of them belong to warm countries, that is to say, either to tropical lands or the warmer parts of the temperate zone, or if they are not confined to these regions, are there of most importance for their oil. Oil has been extracted on a commercial scale from forty or more trees and plants. The most important commercially are the coconut palm, the oil palm, groundnuts, linseed, soya beans, and cottonseed, which furnish 90 per cent. of the international trade in vegetable oils. Other important sources are the olive, rapeseed, sesame and sunflower seed, castor, tung, and perilla.

Two of the chief uses of almost all vegetable oils, except drying oils, are the manufacture of soap and the manufacture of margarine and other butter substitutes. Some vegetable oils, such as olive-oil, groundnut oil, poppy, sesame, and cotton-oil, are largely used as table oils for cooking, preserving, &c.; others, including rape, cotton, and olive, are used for lighting, though for this purpose they have largely been replaced by mineral oils; others, such as rape, hemp, and palm-oil, are employed in lubricating machinery; others are used in medicine and perfumery; others in making candles; others, known as drying oils, of which linseed is the most important, in mixing colours for painting, as well as in various manufactures.

**Olive oil**, though not the most important commercially, is the finest of the edible oils. The first crushing gives the highest grade oil, which does not need refining; the yield is about 15 per cent. The residue yields, by solvent methods, oil for soap-making and other industries. In the first ten years after the Second World War, the production of olive oil in the main producing countries averaged 890,000 tons, representing, at the usual rate of extraction, nearly 6m. tons of olives. In addition, the world crop includes a considerable quantity of olives grown for direct consumption; in California, for instance, table olives are grown in at least the same quantity as olives for oil. Normally, light and heavy crops alternate, as in consequence do the supplies of oil, which in the post-war decade

already quoted ranged from less than half-a-million tons to well over a million tons. The output of inedible industrial oils is about 10 per cent. greater than the edible.

The olive tree, originally a native, in all probability, of western Asia, is suited rather to a warm temperature than a sub-tropical climate, with dry summers, and the site best suited to it is that which has a dry and, above all, a gravelly limestone soil, and is well sheltered. These needs are met in many parts of the Mediterranean region (including Portugal), throughout which (except in Egypt) the tree is highly characteristic. Indeed, it may be fitly taken as marking both in altitude and in latitude and longitude the limits of this type of climate in different parts of the world, the tree having now been introduced wherever that type of climate prevails.

The number of olive trees in Spain is estimated at over 200m. (nearly one-third of the world total), and in Italy 160m. In Spain there are extensive forests of it on the southern slopes of the Sierra Morena and on a tract fifty-six miles long in the upper part of the Guadalquivir valley, east-north-east of Cordova. In Italy its principal seats are Apulia, the western seaboard of Calabria, Tuscany, and the west side of the Gulf of Genoa. In France the area (in the lower part of the Rhone valley) devoted to it is much smaller, but the cultivation is more careful. In comparatively recent years, the Tunisian Sahel, an area of about 230 square miles, with Sfax as its chief port, has become an important source of supply. There, on the estates producing the best quality, it is planted in the ratio of only about  $6\frac{1}{2}$  to the acre, whereas in Spain and Italy the ratio is as much as 50 to 110 to the acre. It is a slow-growing tree, taking from fifteen to twenty years to attain its maximum yield, but thereafter giving its fruit for centuries.

In the Black Sea region the distribution of the olive illustrates in an interesting manner the influence of climate. The tree is absent from the south of Russia, except on the southern slopes of the Yaila mountains in the Crimea, which afford the necessary protection against cold northerly winds. Under the shelter of the Caucasus Mountains it occurs in Trans-Caucasia, where it grows both wild and under cultivation in many districts. In the north of Asia Minor the olive thrives admirably along the whole coast from Trebizond to Samsun, and in ancient times extended to Sinope; that is, it occupies or once occupied the whole of that part of the coast looking north-eastwards and participating in the shelter afforded by the Caucasus Mountains. It is excluded, however, from that part of the coast which looks north-westwards and is liable to be swept by cold winds from southern Russia.

The olive tree is grown in many other parts of the world, but in none of them is olive-oil a product of outstanding importance. In 1946-56 Spain and Italy together produced 62 per cent. of the average

world production of 890,000 tons of oil; Greece, Portugal, Tunisia and Turkey together produced 30 per cent., leaving only 8 per cent. for the combined contribution of all other countries, principally Algeria, Morocco and Syria. In quality the bulk of the Italian oil is inferior to that of France (the Provence oil), but the oils of Lucca in Tuscany and of Liguria are unsurpassed.

In most countries, production both of olives and of olive oil is largely for home consumption. The chief importing countries outside Europe have been the United States and the South and Central American republics, especially Argentina, but increasing production of other edible oils in South America has affected this trade adversely. During the Second World War, the United Kingdom imports of olive oil almost disappeared, and the following decade saw only a partial recovery of the trade: an annual average of 2,500 tons as against the pre-war average of 10,000 tons.

**Cottonseed oil** has given economic value to a by-product of the cotton-growing industry long treated as waste. The seed is costly to market, but the setting up of crushing plants in the producing countries has revolutionised the position. World exports of cottonseed in 1938 totalled 780,000 tons; in the six years 1950-55 they averaged less than half that quantity. In 1938 world exports of cottonseed oil were 61,400 tons; in 1950-55 they averaged 165,000 tons, and in both 1954 and 1955 exceeded 300,000 tons, nearly all from cottonseed lands, chiefly U.S.A. The potential is immense. World output of cottonseed (mostly in the United States, U.S.S.R., China, and India) is 15m. tons, and the oil content  $2\frac{1}{2}$ m. tons. The oil is largely used as a substitute for olive oil; the flavour is practically the same.

In 1955 over 75 per cent. of the seed exported came from the Sudan, Nigeria, Syria and Nicaragua, while the United States supplied over 75 per cent. of the oil exported. United Kingdom imports of the oil are limited by the restrictions on dollar trade, and seed is not so readily available as in the past; countries like Uganda, with crushing plant, prefer to extract the oil themselves. But the United Kingdom is still the largest importer of what seed is available, and the refining of the oil has become a great industry at Hull. Besides the refined oil the seed yields much oil that is mixed with beef products to form compound lard, and the inferior kinds are used in the making of soap, candles, and gramophone records. The refuse cake or meal is used as both a cattle-food and a fertiliser, and the hulls in the form of bran can be used without any other feed to fatten the cattle.

**Linseed**, as already noted (p. 150), is another name for flax seed; it yields 33 per cent. of oil, and is the product for which the flax plant is mostly widely cultivated. World production in 1938 amounted to  $3\frac{1}{2}$ m. tons, Argentina providing nearly  $1\frac{1}{2}$ m. tons, the

Soviet Union  $\frac{3}{4}$ m. tons, and India  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. tons. Fully half the total production entered international trade, the great bulk of the Argentine crop being exported and about half the Indian crop. The United States headed the list of individual importing countries, but collectively the United Kingdom and other countries of Western Europe absorbed the greater part of the available supplies.

During the war production kept up well; in 1955 it was  $3\frac{1}{2}$ m. tons. But Argentina, instead of being first, was then fifth, with under  $\frac{1}{4}$ m. tons, while the United States led with over 1m. tons. The U.S.S.R. was still second, with 900,000 tons, and Canada had become third, with all but  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. tons, slightly ahead of India. Canada's crop in 1956 was estimated at a new record—875,000 tons.

As in the case of cottonseed, there has been a big switchover in trade from linseed to oil. Between 1938 and 1955, world exports of linseed dropped from 1.6m. tons to 461,000 tons, while the exports of linseed oil rose from 108,000 to 365,000 tons. Argentina, which now exports little or no seed, provided over 40 per cent. of the world exports of linseed oil in 1955; India, which has also stopped exporting seed, provided another 20 per cent., and the United States nearly 20 per cent. The States also provided over a quarter of the seed on the export market.

In the United Kingdom, imports of linseed fell from 276,000 tons in 1938 to 45,000 tons in 1955, while imports of linseed oil rose from 18,700 tons to 107,000 tons. Contrary to the general tendency, Canada, though developing big crops of linseed, was content to sell the seed instead of keeping it for crushing, and after her bumper crop in 1956 U.K. imports of linseed trebled, while imports of oil fell 40 per cent.

The property of drying on exposure to the air, which gives linseed oil its special importance in making paints and varnishes, adapts it for many other uses. [When treated with sulphur it forms linoleum, a soft substance which can be used for many of the purposes of rubber or gutta-percha. In composition with various fabrics, and in particular mixed with ground cork, it is largely used for floor coverings.

**Groundnuts** (see p. 138) contain an oil which is largely used for margarine. They constitute one of the biggest world crops of oil seeds, covering over 31m. acres and yielding about 12m. tons of unshelled nuts a year. India and China supply more than half; the United States, French West Africa, and Nigeria a fifth—between  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. and 1m. tons each. The unshelled nuts yield, in commercial practice, about 30 per cent. of oil, and the shelled nuts about 40 per cent. The best oil is expressed from the unshelled nuts, but usually the nuts are shelled before export, to save freight, the shelled nuts being about 70 per cent. of the weight unshelled.]

In 1938, out of a world crop of 8.5 m. tons of unshelled nuts, 3m. tons were exported as nuts and (likewise from the countries of pro-

duction) 80,000 tons of oil. India supplied over half the total, and West Africa most of the balance. During the war, production kept remarkably steady, but exports dropped to about a third of the pre-war level before rising in 1954-55 to about a half. Groundnuts are not only used to express oil; they are good to eat for man and beast, and in the general shortage of foodstuffs they were used increasingly for that purpose. In 1946 India restricted the export of groundnuts, and since that year Nigeria has headed the list of exporting countries. In 1955, out of exports of 1m. tons of shelled nuts, Nigeria provided 400,000 tons and French West Africa 160,000 tons. There has been a big increase in local production of oil, of which over  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. tons (equivalent to a million tons of unshelled nuts) were exported in 1955—nearly half from India, a quarter from French West Africa, and 10 per cent. from Nigeria. Europe takes the bulk of all the exports, the groundnuts going mostly to France and Britain, and the oil mostly to France, Germany, and Britain.

**Soya-beans** (pp. 137-38) have a low oil content—about 15 per cent. as expressed commercially. The oil has long been used for cooking in China, and with the discovery early in the present century of methods of ridding it of a rancid flavour it began to be used in the West in the manufacture of compound lard and margarine. A big trade soon developed, but the quantities coming on to the world market declined towards the end of the period between the two world wars—from an annual average of 200,000 tons of oil in the five years 1924-28 to 180,000 tons in 1929-33 and 125,000 tons in 1934-38. Manchuria contributed about 60 per cent. of the total, and when that country was shut off by the Second World War, Europe received very little. A compensating factor has been a big development of the United States crop of soya-beans, attended by a corresponding development in that country's soya-bean exports, which in 1955 reached 1.8m. tons. Exports of soya-bean oil also increased to 225,000 tons in 1951, and though down to 60,000 tons in 1955, rose again in 1956. Japan is the leading market for soya-beans.

Two palm trees yield large supplies of oil—the **coconut palm** and the **oil palm**. The coconut palm flourishes in the coastal belts of tropical countries, especially around the shores of the Indian Ocean and in the Western Pacific. Before the Second World War, coconut oil constituted one-fourth of the vegetable oils and one-fifth of all oils and fats entering international trade. It is expressed from copra, the dried flesh of the coconut, the yield being as much as 63 per cent. of oil suitable for soap and margarine. The pre-war production of copra averaged  $2\frac{1}{2}$ m. tons a year, and exports took the form of both copra and oil. In 1938, an average year, copra itself entered into world trade to the extent of  $1\frac{1}{2}$ m. tons (oil potential 1m. tons), and oil expressed from copra was exported to the amount of  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. tons. Until the 1939-45 war upset world economy, the Dutch East

Indies, the Philippines and Malaya supplied about three-fourths of the copra exported; exports of oil came chiefly from the Philippines, Ceylon and Malaya. The trade in both copra and oil was widely distributed, the biggest share going to the United States. During the war, with so many of the chief sources of supply in Japanese occupation, world trade dwindled to small proportions, but by 1955 it was back at its pre-war level, a decrease in the exports from Malaya and Indonesia being balanced by a notable increase in the exports from the Philippines. World production of copra reached 3m. tons.

The oil palm, or Guinea oil palm (*Elaeis guineensis*, Jacq.), is indigenous to West Africa between 10°N. and 10° S. Since the First World War it has also been widely cultivated in the Dutch East Indies (Indonesia) and Malaya. Its fruit yields two distinct oils—palm oil, which is expressed from the pericarp or fibrous matter surrounding the kernel, and palm kernel oil, which is crushed from the hard kernel. The pericarp yields a very varied percentage of oil, which is usually expressed locally and exported for use chiefly in soap-making and the tinsplate industry, though also used to some extent for edible fats. Palm kernels yield about 45 per cent. of oil and are usually exported whole, the oil being extracted in the importing country; it resembles coconut oil and is used for making margarine and soap.

Before the Second World War the exports of palm oil rose to  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. tons, of which South-east Asia supplied over half and West Africa nearly half, with the Dutch East Indies and Nigeria as the two outstanding sources of supply, and the United Kingdom and United States as the chief importing countries. Exports of palm kernels totalled over 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ m. tons, of which the Dutch East Indies and Malaya supplied only a small part, the great bulk coming from West Africa, with Nigeria as the dominant contributor (nearly half) and Europe (particularly Germany) as the supreme market. Apart from South-east Asia, supplies were fairly well maintained during the war, and after the war the exports of palm oil increased, reaching 600,000 tons in 1954. But whereas in 1938 the Dutch East Indies headed the list, after the war (as Indonesia) they failed to recover and Nigeria took the lead with 33 per cent. of the total, the Belgian Congo coming second and Indonesia third. There was a change, too, in distribution, for while the United Kingdom continued to rank as the chief importer of palm oil, the United States took only 5 per cent. The exports of palm kernels also increased (to over  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. tons), with Nigeria supplying more than half and the United Kingdom taking from 40 to 60 per cent. Most of the remainder was absorbed by France, Germany, and the Netherlands.

**Rapeseed**, which comprises various species of the Brassicas (Cabbage) family, including the summer variety known as colza, is one of the most widely grown oilseeds, especially in Eastern Asia.

It yields 35 per cent. of a lubricating oil, which is also widely used for edible purposes, and during the war it more than held its own among world crops, the cultivated area increasing from 16-17m. acres to 20m. acres, and production from 4m. to 5m. tons—most of it grown in China (over 60 per cent.), India (25 per cent.) and Japan. By 1955-56 the area was over 25m. acres, producing nearly 6m. tons. Commercially it takes a minor place among oilseeds, under 5 per cent. of the production entering into world trade whether as seed or oil. Pre-war exports of seed amounted to about 100,000 tons, and of oil to 25,000 tons (equivalent to about 75,000 tons of seed). Big fluctuations are characteristic of the trade. During the six years 1950-55, exports in 1953 reached 140,000 tons of seed and 61,000 tons of oil, together representing 320,000 tons of seed—6 per cent. of the production. In 1954 they were down to 48,000 tons of seed and 17,000 tons of oil, together representing 100,000 tons of seed—2 per cent. of the production. Distribution of the exports is very variable. Though not the dominant factors in production, Sweden, Poland, and France grow considerable quantities of rapeseed.

The **sesame seed** of commerce includes till, gingelly, and benniseed, all of which yield a high percentage (nearly half) of an edible oil favoured for confectionery. Like rapeseed, it is widely grown for home consumption, chiefly in Eastern Asia, but does not enter largely into international trade. China and India had far and away the biggest share of the pre-war production of  $1\frac{1}{2}$ – $1\frac{3}{4}$ m. tons, and produce the bulk (70 per cent.) of the 2m. tons grown in post-war years. Prominent among secondary sources of supply are Sudan, Mexico, and Uganda. The comparatively small exports (5 per cent.) are provided by and distributed among many countries.

**Sunflower seed.** The Soviet Union is the dominant factor in the production of this seed, but does not normally contribute to international trade in it or in sunflower seed oil. In 1938 the Soviet Union as now constituted had 8m. acres under crop out of a world total of 10m. acres, and produced over 2m. tons of seed out of a world total of  $2\frac{3}{4}$ m. tons. In 1955-56 the Soviet acreage was estimated at 10·5m. acres and the production at 4·9m. tons. World acreage and production had increased still faster—to 18 $\frac{3}{4}$ m. acres and 7·1m. tons. In Argentina the area under sunflower in 1950 had jumped up to over 4m. acres, yielding over 1m. tons. But acreage and crops both declined again, partly because of adverse seasons and partly because of politico-economic conditions. Argentina still ranks next to the Soviet Union, but so far (1957) the 1950 record has not been repeated; in 1955-56 the area under sunflower was 3·4m. acres and the production  $\frac{3}{4}$ m. tons. Trade in the seed, as distinct from the oil, is everywhere small. Like groundnuts, sunflower seed is used locally for food. It yields about 25 per cent. of oil, the best grades being suitable for foodstuffs, others for soap, paint and lubricating.



**Tung oil**, or Chinese wood oil, has a reputation for unique drying properties, which give it value in the manufacture of paints and varnishes, linoleum and oilcloth, and have led to its cultivation outside China. The oil is expressed from the fruits of the tung tree, which have a commercial yield of about 16 per cent. Chinese production of the oil is down to an estimated 75,000 tons a year and exports to 30,000 tons compared with a seasonal production of 120,000 tons before the Second World War and average exports of nearly 80,000 tons. Normally the chief customer is the United States, which itself has a production of 5–20,000 tons dependent on seasonal conditions. The only other considerable producer is Argentina (around 13,000 tons in 1954 and 1955), but interested countries include Paraguay, Brazil, and Nyasaland. In 1954–56, United Kingdom imports ranged from 8,000 to 10,000 tons.

Another vegetable oil with drying properties, useful for varnishes, &c., is derived from **perilla seed**, the commercial rate of extraction being about 37 per cent. Perilla, a plant which is akin to peppermint and spearmint, is mostly grown in Eastern Asia, especially Manchuria, where cultivation spread rapidly before the Second World War and covered some 400,000 acres, yielding nearly three-fourths of the average world production of 170,000 tons. The Manchurian crop was grown largely for export, and in the years immediately before the war it provided for overseas markets an average of 64,000 tons of seed and 14,000 tons of oil. The seed went to Japan and thence, as oil, to the United States. Production since the war seems to have declined, and up to 1957 there were no signs of the revival of trade in its wider aspects.

**Babassu kernels**, derived from a palm tree growing wild in Brazil, are as rich in oil as copra (63 per cent.) and the oil is not unlike coconut oil. They are extremely hard, and the difficulty of cracking them has hindered their utilisation. Pre-war production of the kernels averaged 40,000 tons, and post-war harvests have increased. In 1955, Brazilian mill production of babassu oil was over 40,000 tons. The potential production is enormous, but the present output is practically all utilised by home industry.

**Poppy-seed** is a by-product of the white or opium poppy of Asia and a major product of the black poppy, which is grown in Europe for edible and industrial use. It yields over 40 per cent. of oil. Europe's annual production of the seed before the Second World War, about 50,000 tons, is now only half that quantity. Only small quantities enter into international trade. They are mainly European in origin and are imported by the United States and Germany.

**Oil-cake** is a general name for the masses of crushed seeds that remain after the oil has been pressed out of them, and it is now very largely used in the feeding of cattle, which it fattens very rapidly; frequently also as a manure. It is chiefly derived from linseed,

rapeseed and cottonseed, but also from coconut, in which form it is known as **poonac**.

**Essential Oils.** Essential oils are volatile, aromatic substances, usually but not always liquid, obtained from various grasses, plants, trees and shrubs. They are mainly used in perfumery, particularly the manufacture of soap, medicine, dental preparations, disinfectants, and for flavouring confectionery. The most important of these oils, forming a class by themselves, are the turpentine oils. World production before the Second World War amounted to 150,000 tons a year as compared with 10,000 tons of all other essential oils. **Spirit of turpentine** is obtained by distillation from the resin of various firs, pines and other cone-bearing trees. It is very largely used to dissolve resins, and in the making of paints and varnishes, as well as for cleaning. Until the end of the Second World War British imports were nearly all from the United States; thereafter they declined greatly because of the British shortage of dollars and Portugal became the chief supplier. In 1938 over 20,000 tons of turpentine were imported into the United Kingdom; in 1953 only 4,400 tons.

Among other essential oils are the citrus oils (from the peel of sweet and bitter oranges, lemons, grapefruit and limes); many varieties of flower oils such as attar of roses, jasmin oil and geranium oil; peppermint oil, citronella, cinnamon leaf and cinnamon bark oils; and camphor. There are many others, making up a valuable total; imports into the United Kingdom alone were valued at nearly £6m. in 1956, though all told they amounted to only 2,540 tons. It has already been noted that world production, apart from turpentine, is of no great quantity. Even the essential oils in largest supply—sweet orange and lemon oils, citronella and peppermint—imported to the value of £2.2m., accounted for only about 1,000 tons.

The United States is the chief source of supply of **grapefruit** and **sweet orange oils**, **peppermint** and **spearmint** (the latter now largely used in canning peas); and it shares with Sicily the main production of **lemon oil**. The post-war dollar problem has led to a movement to increase production in British territories, particularly East Africa, the West Indies, and Mauritius and Seychelles. **Lime oil** is already produced mainly in the Commonwealth (West Indies and West Africa), and Ceylon is the source of **cinnamon bark oil** and **cinnamon leaf oil**, both of which, especially the latter, are also produced in the Seychelles. **Clove oil** comes from the islands of Zanzibar and Pemba, and Kenya is producing appreciable quantities of **geranium oil** and **cedarwood oil**. Southern India, France and the French Colonies, and Indonesia also figure prominently in the supply of various essential oils. **Camphor** is mainly derived from a species of cinnamon (*Cinnamomum camphora*) which grows in Japan, Formosa (where it is a government monopoly), central China and the Malay Peninsula; it is extracted by distillation from the wood and leaves.

Small quantities of certain essential oils are produced in the United Kingdom, particularly **lavender**. English lavender is the finest in the world and is used in the making of the highest quality perfumes.

**Waxes.** The waxes of commerce are of animal, vegetable and mineral origin. Under the last head comes **paraffin wax** (p. 265). Waxes of animal and vegetable origin are not a very big factor in British trade. Imports of them into the United Kingdom in 1938 were 5,000 tons, valued at about £ $\frac{1}{2}$ m. In 1956, imports of beeswax and of carnauba and candelilla wax, amounting to 2,360 tons, were valued at £1 $\frac{1}{4}$ m. **Beeswax**, with which **honey** may be considered, is an almost universal product. In Italy its use in connection with Catholic ceremonies has led to a considerable import, and in Europe generally the production of both honey and wax is less than the consumption. The deficiency is made good in part by the bees of the New World—another case of reciprocal benefits, for the honey bee was introduced into the New World by the Spaniards. Before the upset of war and currency difficulties, Canada and the West Indies, the United States and Central America supplied much of the honey imported into the United Kingdom, while Australia and New Zealand were also leading contributors; by 1950 Australia was supplying more than three-quarters of the total, with the West Indies, Argentine and Chile well behind. On the other hand the beeswax imported into the United Kingdom came, and continues to come, mostly from Equatorial Africa, principally British East Africa.

The chief vegetable waxes entering into world trade are **carnauba** and **candelilla**. Carnauba wax is found mainly in the form of a glutinous powder on the leaves of the carnauba or wax palm (*Copernicia cerifera*, Mart.); it is an important export from Brazil, the only country which supplies it in commercial quantities. Carnauba wax is in great demand and the price is high, but attempts to produce it synthetically have had little success. Other attempts to introduce it into the British tropical dependencies are still in the experimental stage. It is mostly used in making polishes, floor waxes and carbon paper. The high price of carnauba wax has increased the consumption of candelilla, which is found as a coating on a weed (*Pedilanthus pavonis*) growing mostly in Mexico but also in southern Texas. It is used for dressing leather, for furniture and shoe polishes, and as a substitute for beeswax and carnauba.

Less important, commercially, are **Japanese wax**, obtained from the berries of certain sumac trees (chiefly *Rhus succedanea*, Linn.) grown in Japan and China; and **myrtle wax**, which comes from a North American shrub (*Myrica cerifera*, Linn.) and is used in the manufacture of varnishes and gramophone records. The wax obtained from the **wax-palm of the Andes**, and the **insect white wax** of China, are both important in internal trade, but are not exported.

**Gums and Resins.** Resin is a general name for a variety of substances which are all originally fluids in the tissues of plants but become solid, are all more or less clear or translucent though generally with a tinge of colour, are all inflammable and insoluble in water, but generally are soluble in organic solvents and the essential oils such as turpentine. As a rule they exude in a fluid state from the trunks and branches of trees, but sometimes they are found in cavities inside the trees or in the ground where the trees have grown. **Gums** resemble resins in appearance and origin, but are soluble or swell in water, and are insoluble in alcohol and essential oils.

There is a valuable trade in these gums and resins. Imports into the United Kingdom alone in 1938 amounted to nearly 100,000 tons, valued at close on £2m., and in 1956 to nearly 79,000 tons valued at over £8m. The largest and most valuable of the imports in each of these years was **rosin** (colophony); in quantity it accounted for well over half the total, and in value approaching a half. It is used in the making of paper, soap, varnishes and printing inks, and for many other familiar purposes. Rosin is obtained by distilling turpentine, and is the substance left after the oil of turpentine has been separated. Both are produced mainly in the United States, and that country supplies nearly half the United Kingdom imports of rosin. Substantial amounts are also produced in France and Portugal, and the latter country challenges and sometimes surpasses the United States as a source of United Kingdom imports.

The other resins of commerce are mainly used in the making of varnishes and lacquers and for burning of incense. One of the best known among the imports into the United Kingdom is **copal** (*Copaifera copallifera*), frequently known as gum copal. It is obtained from both the Old World and the New, but the Belgian Congo dominates the market, with medium grade supplies. East Africa produces a small quantity of high quality copal. United Kingdom imports of all types of copal in 1956 amounted to under 3,000 tons compared with over 10,000 tons pre-war. But the post-war average value of over £6 10s. a cwt. is over five times the pre-war value.

One of the most valuable resins imported into the United Kingdom is **lac**. The quantity in 1956 (5,000 tons) was a sixth less than in 1938, but its value was nearly sixfold (about £1½m. against £¼m.). Lac is entered in the Trade Returns under three names—sticklac, seedlac, and shellac. The resin is secreted by the lac insect (*Tachardia lacca*), parasitic on a number of host-trees, among which *Sechleicheria trijuga*, *Butea frondosa* and *Zizyphus jujuba* are the most important. The main source of supply is India (chiefly in Bihar and Orissa and the former Central Provinces, now Madhya Pradesh), with much smaller production in Siam and Indo-China. The twigs of the tree encrusted with the resin form **sticklac**; when the resin is separated from the wood and washed free from lac dye, &c., it appears in the

form of grains known as **seedlac**; and when it is melted and strained and made into thin irregular sheets it is called **shellac**. Lac in its various forms is used in making varnishes, lacquers, sealing wax and in the electrical industry, as well as in the manufacture of gramophone records—now its most important use.

**Gum arabic** is largely imported into the United Kingdom for use in the confectionery trade (which absorbs 60 per cent. of the total), in pharmacy, as an adhesive for postage stamps, and in high-class stationery. Poorer grades are used in the lustreing of silk, crêpe, &c., as 'dressings' for fabrics, in calico printing, and in making matches. Among numerous other uses, it enters into the making of fine colours and lithographic ink. Imports in 1956 were nearly 13,000 tons (about twice as much as in 1938) valued at more than £1.6m. (over seven times the value in 1938). Gum arabic is derived from various species of *Acacia* growing in different parts of the world. The best kind is imported into Europe, mostly from northern Africa and in particular from the old Anglo-Egyptian Sudan. It is derived mainly from *Acacia senegal* (or *Acacia verec*, Ait.), a tree found throughout the Sudan, using that term in its geographical sense as applied to the whole region south of the Sahara, between the Senegal and the Nile. An allied species is found in the arid portion of India immediately to the north-west of the Deccan Peninsula. The trade in gum from the Senegal region is in French hands, and that particular gum is imported into other countries mainly from France. Other important species of the gum are *Acacia seyal*, also found mainly in the Sudan in its narrow sense, and *Acacia drepanolobium*, which is found in the Sudan but is more important in Tanganyika, where it forms about 95 per cent. of the production. Nigeria also produces gum arabic on a commercial scale.

**Gum tragacanth** is more expensive and is imported into this country in smaller quantities than gum arabic—in 1956 just over 450 tons valued at nearly £½m. It is used in calico printing as a vehicle for applying discharges (chemical agents for removing colour), and for pharmaceutical and other purposes. It is not found in the Commonwealth, but is the product of several species of *Astragalus*, belonging to the countries around and beyond the Mediterranean; Iran is the main source of the United Kingdom imports.

Two other gums are **Karaya**, which comes mainly from India and is a product of a number of *Sterculia* species; and **Kauri gum**, the resin of the New Zealand pine, which is a species of *Dammara* (*D. australis*, Lamb). Neither is now of great trade value. **Karaya gum** found some favour in the United States, where it was used in the manufacture of sauces and ice-cream. The United Kingdom imported 440 tons of it in 1950. **Kauri gum**, the finest of all resins for varnishes, is now scarce. Not only have the New Zealand pine forests been much reduced, but the gum from the living tree is of minor

value. The best Kauri gum is a fossil product dug in lumps from the site of ancient forests, now forming the Fern Country of the North Island; and this ground has been pretty well worked over. Imports into the United Kingdom declined from 2,000 tons in 1934 to 650 tons in 1950.

Other gums and resins entering into commerce include **dammar**, the product of a cone-bearing tree (*Dammara orientalis*, Lamb.) which grows in the Malay Archipelago; **sandarach**, the product of another cone-bearing tree found in North and South Africa, Australia and North America; **mastix**, the product of a species of Pistacia found above all on the island of Chios; and **amber**, the product of an extinct conifer, found mainly on the Baltic coast of Prussia and used largely for ornamental purposes, especially in China. Of the resins burnt as incense, the most important are **true frankincense**, the product of various species of tree belonging to the genus *Boswellia*; **myrrh**, the product of a species of *Balsamodendron*; and **bensoin**, derived from the bark of *Styrax bensoin*. This last is also used medicinally.

**SPICES, STIMULANTS AND CONDIMENTS.** The most important spices are all products of the torrid zone—principally pepper, ginger, cloves and mace. Imports of all four and of other spices into the United Kingdom in 1938 were about 8,000 tons valued at £340,000, and in 1956 about 10,000 tons valued at £2.6m.

**Peppercorns and black and white pepper**, which make up the great bulk of the pepper of commerce, are all derived from one species, a twining and climbing plant, *Piper nigrum*, Linn., largely cultivated in southern India, the Malay Archipelago, and Indo-China. Its spice is the most generally used of all spices, among both rich and poor. The peppercorns are the whole berries, and black and white pepper the result of grinding them; for white pepper the peppercorns are first deprived of their outer skin by steeping them in water for several days. Nearly the whole of the pepper imported into this country comes from the Malay Peninsula, but more than half of this import is the product of Java, Siam, and Indo-China, collected at Singapore. Another species (*P. longum*, Linn.) produces **long pepper**, which is the dried unripe fruit of that shrub; **cubebs** are the berries of another species (*P. Cubeba*, Linn.); and a fourth species, the **Betel** (*P. Betel*, Linn.), furnishes the leaves which are used along with areca-nut and other ingredients to compose the favourite stimulant chewing-mixture of the people of India. **Cayenne pepper** is the product of a totally different plant, being the ground pods of different species of *Capsicum*, one of which has smaller pods, used entire in pickling, under the name of **chillies**. Originally natives of South America, they are now grown in tropical countries in the Old World as well as the New, and even in the warmer parts of the temperate zone, as in Spain and Hungary. Before the Second World

War the United Kingdom was the great market for all kinds of peppers, and re-exported usually from one-third to two-thirds of her imports, but during the war, when the Japanese occupation of the principal countries of supply led to a world pepper famine, this re-export trade disappeared. After a fluctuating revival, imports in 1956 were about 4,000 tons and re-exports 630 tons.

**Ginger** is the dried root-stock of a plant (*Zingiber officinale*, Rosc.) native to south-eastern Asia, but now largely cultivated also in the West Indies and in British West Africa. Almost all the British imports are from the British West Indies, Sierra Leone and Nigeria. The West Indian article has the higher average value. Before the war there was an even larger import of ginger preserved in syrup as a confection, and this came mostly from Hong Kong and China.

**Cloves** are the flower buds of *Eugenia caryophyllata*, Linn., dried before opening. Zanzibar's two islands, Zanzibar and Pemba, particularly the latter, provide the bulk of the world supply. They have about 3½m. clove trees, whose average yield of cloves is nearly 10,000 tons a year. Local industry includes the distillation of clove oils, and the clove tree has been the main factor in the economy of Zanzibar. A serious outbreak of the 'Sudden Death' disease since the Second World War has affected the outlook. Secondary sources of supply, hitherto, have been Madagascar and the Moluccas—the latter the original home of the clove tree.

**Mace** is closely associated with **nutmegs**. Both come from the same tree, *Myristica fragrance*, Willd.; nutmegs are the kernel of the fruit and mace the investment of that kernel. This tree also came originally from the Moluccas, but has been introduced into the West Indies. It is noteworthy that Indonesia produces the better nutmegs, and the West Indies the better mace.

Among other spices, the cinnamon of the shops comes from two different trees, consisting in both cases of the bark (ground or unground) of the smaller twigs. The dearer and better product is derived from the *Cinnamomum zeylanicum*, Nees., or Ceylon cinnamon, and is distinguished in commerce as **true cinnamon**, though it was not discovered till the thirteenth century, and probably the cinnamon of the ancients was the **cassia lignea** of commerce, the product of *Cinnamomum loureirii*, Linn. The Ceylon cinnamon is very exacting as to soil and climate, and much of it has been replaced by coconuts. The tree is also grown in the Malay Archipelago, and has been introduced into the West Indies and South America. The cassia lignea is much more widespread, growing wild (as well as cultivated) in the tropical and sub-tropical parts of both the Old and the New World; but the commercial supplies come mostly from China.

**Kola nuts**, which contain caffeine, and are largely used as a stimulant in tropical Africa, are derived from various species of the

Cola tree, particularly *Cola acuminata*, Schott and End. This tree has also been introduced into the New World. The coca shrub (*Erythroxylum coca*, Lam., and other species) is native to tropical South America on the eastern side of the Andes. Ever since the discovery of those regions its leaves have been known to impart, when chewed, an extraordinary power of enduring fatigue; they now enter into commerce as the source of the alkaloid cocaine.

Most of the other spices come from the British West Indies, the most important being pimento: the unripe dried berries of *Pimenta officinalis*, Lindl. Popular names for it are **Jamaican pepper** and **all-spice**—this last from its mixed flavour of cinnamon, cloves, and nutmeg. Among the minor spices in European trade may be mentioned **cardamoms** (*Elettaria cardamomum*), the most valuable of all Indian condiments; they are grown to such an extent on the mountains of southern India that the range forming the background of the state of Travancore has been named Cardamom Hills. **Vanilla** (*Vanilla planifolia*) is the pod of a twining orchid originally belonging to Mexico and South America, but long since introduced into the tropics of the Old World, notably the islands of Reunion, Mauritius, Rodriguez, Seychelles, and Ceylon, which now rival Mexico in the production of this commodity. **Cummin**, the seed of a plant (*Cuminum cyminum*) native to the upper Nile regions, but introduced at an early stage into southern and eastern Asia, now plays little, if any, part in European commerce. **Star-anise**, the seeds of a tree (*Illicium verum*, Hook. f.) in south China, is imported into Europe as a flavouring for spirits. The chief spices and condiments grown in Europe are **fennel**, **caraways**, **coriander**, **aniseed**, and **mustard**.

#### DYE-STUFFS FROM THE VEGETABLE KINGDOM.

Vegetable dyes have been largely replaced in modern industry and trade by dyes made from coal-tar products. Dye-woods are the heart-wood of certain trees, chiefly grown in tropical countries. **Logwood**, a wood of a dark-red colour yielding an extract which is used in dyeing blue, brown, and black, comes from *Hæmatoxylon campechianum*, Linn., a lofty tree very abundant in the district of of Campeachy, in the Mexican province of Yucatan, but mainly exported from the West Indies and British Honduras. The other principal dye-wood is **fustic**, a wood yielding a yellow colouring-matter, used in combination with other materials to produce dyes of different colours. It is the product of *Morus tinctoria*, Don., and is exported mainly from Nicaragua under the name of **mora-wood**.

Other dye-stuffs of vegetable origin are either parts of herbs from which dyes may be extracted, or extracts used in dyeing, whether derived from herbs or from the wood of trees. The fine blue dye, **indigo**, is obtained chiefly from a shrub *Indigofera tinctoria*, Linn., a native of the tropical parts of south-eastern Asia, and of South America and Egypt. Commercially its place has been largely taken



by the synthetic **indigotin**. Of former rather than present importance also are madder and safflower. Madder is variously known as **madder**, **madder-root**, **garancine**, and **munjeet**; garancine being the colouring principle extracted from the madder-plant, and munjeet being the Indian madder (*Rubia cordifolia*, Linn.). The European madder, *Rubia tinctorum*, Linn., used to be the principal source of certain red and yellow dyes. Other red and yellow dyes were obtained from the flower-heads of the **safflower** (*Carthamus tinctorius*, Linn.).

**Cochineal**, a red colouring-matter, is obtained from the dried bodies of an insect (*Dactylopius coccus*, Costa), allied to the insect which yields the lac of India (p. 231) and to the kermes insect, which lives on the kermes oak in the Mediterranean region and yields another red dye, the 'scarlet' of the Bible. Cochineal is still imported from the Canary Islands, where the various species of the *Napolea* plant upon which the insect feeds are largely grown for the sake of this product. Also imported from the Canary Islands, as well as from tropical Africa and tropical America, is a lichen (*Roccella tinctoria*, DC.) from which two dyes are obtained. One of these, a blue dye, is **litmus**, the colouring for the well-known litmus paper used as a test for acids, which change the colour from blue to red. Another dye used for chemical tests is **turmeric**, an extract from the underground stem of *Curcuma tinctoria*, Roxb., an oriental plant. **Gamboge**, the hardened sap of another tree belonging to south-east Asia, is, like turmeric, a yellow dye; both are used in making coloured varnishes.

**TIMBER.** The timbers of commerce are usually classified as 'softwoods' (derived from coniferous trees—Gymnosperms), and 'hardwoods' (derived from deciduous and evergreen broad-leaved trees—Angiosperms). For the most part the two classes consist of relatively 'soft' and 'hard' timbers, but the distinction is botanical and there are notable exceptions to the applicability of the two terms, some of the softest and lightest known timbers being technically 'hardwoods'.

Timber is, for the most part, exported on a large scale only where there are exceptional facilities for water transport. Most of the timbers of commerce are 'softwoods' obtained mainly from **firs** and **pin**es. They are in general use for building purposes; also enormous quantities of pulpwood are consumed, especially in Canada, in the manufacture of woodpulp for newsprint. Canada, Brazil and Russia are the only countries now having a large reserve of 'natural' softwood, but many countries of Europe have a steady output from plantations. Two-thirds of the world's production of timber comes from the northern forests, mainly softwoods, which stretch across Europe, the U.S.S.R., and North America; one-third is from the tropical forests, mainly hardwoods, which stretch across Africa,

South-east Asia, and Central and South America. The proportion of softwood timber which finds its way into international trade is still greater—something like 90 per cent.; and the balance of commercial timbers is made up mostly of temperate hardwoods. Although there are vast reserves of tropical hardwoods, they provide at present only a small percentage of the world's trade in timbers. They include beautiful cabinet woods, but the trees in tropical forests are very mixed, and it is difficult to extract one particular type.

**Trade in Softwoods.** The chief softwood exporting countries are Finland, Sweden, Canada and the United States; though this last not only exports but imports largely, especially from Canada, and on balance is a net importer. Formerly Russia, Latvia and Poland were big exporters, but now their exports are much reduced and this is one of the factors in the post-war shortage of softwoods. The United Kingdom has suffered also from its shortage of dollars, limiting the purchases of timber from Canada and the United States.

No total figure for the quantity of timber imported into the United Kingdom can readily be given. The trade returns quote wood and timber imports in several measures of quantity: standards, piled cubic fathoms, cubic feet, tons, and cwt. No attempt is made to estimate the quantity in a common denominator, and the figures here put forward in an endeavour to sum up the position do not claim to be impeccable. Softwoods are mostly calculated in standards, and are listed as hewn, or sawn, or planed, or boxboards, as the case may be; the great bulk arrive sawn. Sleepers of all kinds are also recorded in standards, but roundwood logs of pine, spruce, &c., are reckoned in piled cubic fathoms, as also are pitprops. Hardwoods are measured in cubic feet. There are various measures for a standard of timber; one of the commonest, the Petrograd standard, is equivalent to 165 cubic feet. It is not the largest, and its adoption for conversion purposes in connection with United Kingdom imports will not give an exaggerated idea of the quantity. A piled cubic fathom is 216 cubic feet. If these rates be applied for purposes of conversion on a rough and ready basis, with due recognition of the possibilities of error, the sum total of the imports of timber into the United Kingdom in 1938 is found to have been about 550m. cubic feet, while in 1956, though the imports were considerably more than in some of the intervening years, the total was still only about 356m. cubic feet, due largely to the general shortage of softwoods, which accounted for about nine-tenths of the whole.

If figures for the total imports by quantity are difficult of precise assessment, but in general confirm the impression of a post-war shortage of softwoods, there is no doubt about the increase in value. In 1938 the value of all imports of wood and timber was returned as under £43m.; in 1956 the smaller quantity imported was valued at £160m., or nearly four times the pre-war figure.

**Hardwoods.** Analysis of the hardwood imports is particularly instructive as showing the effect of the dollar shortage in changing the avenues of trade. Before the Second World War, the United Kingdom imports of hardwoods averaged (1934-38) nearly 46m. cubic feet a year, of which the United States and Canada supplied 55 per cent., British Colonies 6 per cent., and the rest of the world 39 per cent. In 1956 these imports, which had followed a switchback course in the interval, falling or rising considerably, were less than 40m. cubic feet, of which Canada and the United States supplied under 10 per cent., while the Colonies (principally West Africa) had jumped up to over 50 per cent. Among other leading contributors were French Equatorial Africa, France, Yugoslavia, and Japan.

Among the temperate hardwoods, **oak** is normally a large export both from North America and from central Europe. Elm, beech, walnut, and maple are among the other important timber-trees of the temperate zone, and the spotted wood of the New England sugar-maple, known as bird's-eye maple, is highly esteemed for cabinet work. Prominent among tropical hardwoods is **mahogany**, the wood of *Swietenia mahogoni*, L., a large tree belonging to tropical America, including the West Indies. The best quality is obtained from Cuba. When grown on marshy ground, like most of that of British Honduras, the timber is comparatively soft. Under the name of mahogany various red cabinet woods are now largely imported from West Africa. **Teak** is of the highest value for shipbuilding and in construction generally, being as hard and durable as oak, and having at the same time this advantage over oak, that while the latter timber is said to promote rust, teak contains an oil which tends to preserve iron by preventing rust. It is chiefly imported from Burma and Siam, but is largely grown in other parts of the East Indies. It is obtained from regions of moderate rainfall, between 40 and 80 inches. As the wood when full of sap is heavier than water, the tree has to be killed by cutting off a ring of the bark, to allow of it being floated down stream. **Ebony** is a name given to the wood of various trees. The hardest, blackest, and most valuable kind is the product of *Diospyros Ebenum*, Koe., a native of India. **Rosewood** is another name given to several different kinds of timber, the best being derived from various species of *Cæsalpinia*; the best of all, it is said, from *Cæsalpinia brasiliensis*, Sw. The term **cedar** is used with equal laxity, being applied to a number of trees whose wood is thought to resemble that of the true cedar of Lebanon in colour or appearance or both. The cedar of Lebanon furnishes none of the timber of commerce. The **white cedar** is derived from *Juniperus oxycedrus*, L., *Cupressus thyoides*, L., and other trees; the **red cedar** (used in making pencils) from *Juniperus virginiana*, L., and *J. bermudiana*, L. Most of the cedarwood of commerce comes from the West Indies and Central America. Red woods derived

from two gigantic species of Eucalyptus—**jarrah**, or *Eucalyptus marginata*, and **karri**, or *E. diversicolor*—are imported from Western Australia for the manufacture of paving blocks, furniture, and other purposes. The wood of the jarrah is also very useful in making piles to be sunk in water, as it has remarkable durability in water both salt and fresh. They both grow in restricted areas in the south-west of the state.

**FURS.** The fur trade deals in the skins of a great variety of animals differing greatly in size and value. Its products are collected in a few big markets where merchants and manufacturers can supply themselves with the kinds best suited to their requirements. The regions from which the furs are collected are almost exclusively the temperate and cold parts of the world, the finest sorts being all from the colder regions. Most of the furs come, therefore, from the northern hemisphere, where there is the greatest area of land in high latitudes. The furs from North America and the adjacent seas are collected, to a large extent, at the **New York** market, but in still greater quantity reach the **London** market, which also receives large supplies from the southern hemisphere as well as from Europe. The furs of Siberia and northern Russia are principally collected at Gorky. Another major market is that of **Leipzig**, which owes its importance to its central situation, not only as regards the source of supply, but as regards the region in which furs are mostly worn, fur garments being more in demand in central and eastern Europe than in western Europe, where the winters are relatively mild. They are also largely worn in some parts of China.

To enumerate all the animals that contribute a share to the fur trade would be to mention nearly all the land mammals belonging to the colder parts of the earth, as well as a good many of those belonging to more temperate regions, and several marine mammals. Among those which supply the greatest number of skins to the trade are **squirrels**, **hares**, **rabbits**, **musk-rats** (a kind of beaver belonging to North America), **coypus** (a beaver-like animal whose skins are imported, under the name of nutria skins, mainly from the region round the River Plate in South America), **cats**, and **seals**. Before the Second World War, rabbit skins were imported into the United Kingdom alone in numbers up to 26m. in one year, undressed (mostly from Australia and New Zealand), and 10m. dressed (mostly from Belgium). Among the mammals which yield the furs of greatest value are the **sable** (from Russia and Siberia, and from North America), the **stoat** or **ermine** (from Europe and Asia), the **sea-otter** (from the west coast of North America), the **black** or **silver fox**, and the true **fur seal**. The coat of the blubber-seal is of but little value, and the true **fur seal**, which yields the valuable sealskin of commerce, is a species belonging to a group distinguished from other seals by the possession of external ears. This species is obtained

chiefly on the Pribilof Islands, two small islands in Bering Sea, where they come annually to breed. Under the regulations of the Government of the United States only limited numbers may be killed there every year. The species is also hunted by Canadian sealers in Bering Sea and the North Pacific.

The fur trade of British North America was for a long time the monopoly of the Hudson's Bay Company, founded in 1670. Two hundred years later the company sold its rights to the Dominion of Canada, though still retaining certain stations and a portion of the land. Now there are several other fur-companies operating in the same region. The Russian fur trade has been from the first to some extent in the hands of the Russian government. An important development in the fur trade in the present century has been the breeding of certain fur-bearing animals, notably the silver fox, on farms, especially in Canada.

**MEAT.** Not very long ago considerable quantities of the meat supply of the United Kingdom were obtained from the larger domestic animals imported alive; and Eire still supplies annually in normal years more than 400,000 cattle and 150-200,000 sheep and lambs, of the total value of over £30m. By far the largest supplies of imported fresh meat are now, however, obtained by the process of refrigeration. This process was first tried, with more or less success, about 1875 in America in the chilling of beef, a process by which the meat is cooled only to a temperature of 29° to 30° F., and is not hardened. Both beef and mutton are also carried in large quantities frozen at temperatures of from 10° to 15° F., in which case they have to be thawed out before being ready for consumption. The principal market for these products has always been the United Kingdom. If it had not been for these supplies it is probable that the cost of living would have been greatly enhanced in this country, and a more or less serious check given to the development of our manufactures.

The chief sources of frozen meat are Australia, New Zealand, and the Argentine Republic. Chilled beef comes mainly from the Argentine. Chilling preserves the quality better than freezing, but the geographical factor comes into play; from the greater distance of Australia and New Zealand, meat carries best when frozen. The trade in frozen mutton began in earnest in 1881. In that year the import first exceeded 10,000 carcasses (all from Australia). Before the First World War the mutton and lamb carcasses imported (1913) had increased in number to some 13m., and the total import of chilled or frozen beef and mutton was over 14m. cwt. Before the Second World War the total had further increased to over 19m. cwt., with an import value of some £43 m. Beef provided nearly two-thirds of the whole in quantity, but little more than half the value. Including meat imported in other forms, it was estimated that the

imported supplies constituted 40 per cent. of the total consumption of meat in the United Kingdom.

The Second World War was responsible for many changes in the production and distribution of meat supplies, and post-war currency difficulties, involving continued government controls, prevented any early return to normal trade conditions. In 1956, imports of chilled and frozen beef and mutton were still below the pre-war total, amounting to 15½m. cwt.; but the import value had nearly trebled, amounting to £123m. The imports of frozen beef (over 8·6m. cwt.) still exceeded the imports of chilled or frozen mutton and lamb (over 6·8m. cwt.), but the values were almost identical—beef £61m., mutton and lamb £62m. Only one or two outstanding features in a kaleidoscopic situation can be noted. During the war, the saving of shipping space was especially important, so chilled beef was replaced by frozen beef, which could be packed more closely; and boned and boneless beef and veal, which formed less than 10 per cent. of the pre-war imports of beef and veal into the United Kingdom, increased to over 70 per cent. in 1942, dropping back again in later years.

The first half of the twentieth century saw other than war changes. Early in the century the biggest supply of meat to this country came from the United States in the form of beef and live cattle, but before the Second World War the supply from that source was very small, and the United States itself had become a large importer of Australian and South American meat. It is noteworthy that the modern development of Argentina's livestock and meat industry has been accompanied by the restriction of ranching and the extension of arable farming, much of the meat being produced on the relatively small farms, where fodder is grown to fatten the cattle. Normally Argentina leads easily in the supply of beef to the United Kingdom, and New Zealand in the supply of mutton and lamb, with Australia taking second place in both categories, though liable to severe setbacks on account of drought.

Other forms of meat—canned products; bacon, hams and pork; poultry, rabbits, &c.—make a bigger addition to the total than is perhaps commonly realised. In 1938 they added 12m. cwt. to the 19m. cwt. already quoted for chilled and frozen beef and mutton, and more than doubled the value, bringing the total for meat imports to over £90m. In 1956 they added 80 per cent. to the meat imported, increasing the 15½m. cwt. of chilled and frozen beef and mutton to total meat imports of 28m. cwt.; and they added 140 per cent. to the value, raising the £123m. quoted above for the chilled and frozen beef and mutton and lamb to a grand total of £294m. It will be noted that despite the big increase in value, the quantity of these supplementary meat imports in 1956 (12½m. cwt.) was only about the same as in 1938.

Pork, bacon, hams and lard for the British market were all formerly derived mainly from the United States, but now most of the pork comes from New Zealand, the Irish Republic, Denmark and the Argentine, though supplies tend to be erratic except from New Zealand. Denmark supplies from two-thirds to three-fourths of the bacon imported; Holland and Poland most of the balance. Well over half of the poultry imported comes from the Irish Republic.

The tropical grasslands, particularly those of East and South Central Africa, have been the subject of optimistic forecasts of new sources of meat supply on the grand scale. In the past, any such hopes have been overshadowed by the prevalence of the tse-tse fly, which infests cattle with *nagana*, the fatal animal disease corresponding to sleeping sickness in man (p. 77); with the result that cattle are practically barred from vast areas of Equatorial Africa. The use of Antrycide, one of many drugs under experiment, combined with attacks on the habitat of the fly through bush clearing, aerial spraying, etc., holds out hope that areas hitherto denied to stock can, with reasonable precautions, now be opened up; but the end of the war against tsetse and trypanosomiasis is not yet in sight.

**MISCELLANEOUS PRODUCTS CHIEFLY OF ANIMAL ORIGIN.** There is a large world trade in eggs, for which the United Kingdom was easily the best market before the Second World War. It imported about 3,000m. a year; or, at the rate of 16,000 eggs to the ton (the rate adopted by the United Nations Food and Agricultural Organisation), about  $3\frac{1}{2}$ m. cwt.—half the world total of eggs entering international trade. Moreover, the United Kingdom imported a considerable, though much smaller, quantity of eggs not in shell—mostly liquid or frozen, and only to a very small extent dried. It is significant of the demands for transport during the war that while the imports of eggs in shell and of frozen or liquid shelled eggs fell away greatly, the imports of dried eggs increased enormously. Now both world production and trade in eggs in the shell are greater than ever, the increase being especially marked in home production. In the United Kingdom this was always greater than the import, and after the war it went on increasing till in 1956 it exceeded the pre-war production and imports combined. As production increased, imports declined, and though still large (460m. in 1956) they were eclipsed by West Germany's imports (3,500m.) and sank to third place after Italy (645m.).

The majority of eggs imported are those of domestic fowls, but the gathering of eggs from coasts and islands frequented by sea-birds, principally in northern seas, is an important source of livelihood in many places. It is not merely for food that eggs are imported. They have various important uses in the arts. The white of egg (egg-albumen) is employed in book-binding and the finishing of fancy leathers; as a clarifying agent in sugar refining and making wine; as a

means of preparing one kind of photographic paper, and for other purposes. The yolk of egg is employed in making the finer kinds of tawed leather.

Imports of **butter** into the United Kingdom before the war amounted to close on 10m. cwt. Cold storage has made possible world-wide supplies, and while Denmark supplied nearly a quarter of the total, New Zealand sent more than a quarter and Australia one-fifth. During the war, New Zealand and Australia supplied nearly all the greatly reduced imports, and in 1956 they provided two-thirds of the 7m. cwt. imported, while Denmark supplied one-fourth. A formidable rival of butter is **margarine**, made from animal fats, vegetable oils, or a mixture of both, and flavoured with lactic acid ferments so as to be almost indistinguishable in taste from butter. Since the war the annual consumption of margarine per head in the United Kingdom has exceeded the consumption of butter. Imports of margarine have never approached the imports of butter. Before the Second World War they increased to over 100,000 cwt. (mostly from Holland), dropped to a very low level during the war and early post-war years, then suddenly jumped in 1954-55-56 to an average of nearly 700,000 cwt. About ten times that quantity of margarine is manufactured in the United Kingdom, and despite the recent jump in imports over 100,000 cwt. of the home production is exported.

**Cheese** was formerly supplied more largely by Canada than by any other country, but before the Second World War New Zealand was supplying more than half the United Kingdom imports of 3m. cwt., while Canada sent nearly a quarter, and Australia and Holland usually between 5 and 10 per cent. apiece. A cool summer climate is a favourable condition in the cheese-making districts of both New Zealand and Canada (chiefly Quebec). During the war, cheese was notable for being imported in even larger quantities than in peace, reaching a peak of over 6m. cwt. in 1942. New Zealand retained the lead in most years, and Canada also supplied much larger quantities, but the most notable development was the appearance of the United States as a leading contributor. In 1956, imports were nearly 2½m. cwt. New Zealand supplied two-thirds, Australia a tenth. Supplies from Canada and the United States were limited by the shortage of dollars.

**Fresh milk** is mainly only an article of local trade; but **condensed milk**, made by adding sugar, or some other ingredients with or without sugar, to the milk, whole or skimmed, and then evaporating the milk more or less, was imported before the war to the amount of 1½m. cwt., chiefly from Holland and Denmark, Canada and New Zealand, while imports of milk powder brought the combined total to 2m. cwt. During the war years, the United States became the chief source of supply, and both condensed milk and milk powder were imported in much larger quantities. In post-war years, home



supplies increased and dollar shortage cut imports. In 1956 the imports were only 1m. cwt., mostly from New Zealand and Australia.

**Ghi**, or butter clarified by boiling, is an article of commerce in India and neighbouring countries. **Koumiss**, the fermented milk of mares, is a favourite drink among certain nomadic tribes in central Asia, and is now largely made in Russia also, on account of its being esteemed a remedy for tuberculosis. An imitation koumiss is made for the same use in other countries from asses' and cows' milk.

Of animal products not used as food the most important are **hides and skins**, which enter largely into world trade both in the raw state and as leather at various stages of manufacture (see p. 295). Hides are preserved for and during transport either by being steeped in brine or by some process of drying. They are known respectively as 'wet' and 'dry'. The annual import of 'wet' cattle hides into the United Kingdom before the Second World War averaged about 1m. cwt., and of 'dry' hides about  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. cwt., both supplied by a world-wide range of countries, headed in the case of 'wet' hides by Argentina and in the case of 'dry' hides by Australia and the Union of South Africa. Imports of sheep and lamb skins averaged well over  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. cwt., mostly from New Zealand, Australia and South Africa. Goat skins, mostly 'dry' and mostly from India, with British East Africa and Nigeria as the other chief sources of supply, were imported to the average annual number of nearly 10m. skins.

During the war, and the early post-war years, the import of 'wet' hides was not only maintained but largely increased—in some years the supplies from Argentina alone were as great as the pre-war total. In 1947 the import reached a peak of nearly 2m. cwt., but it reverted in 1951–56 to the pre-war standard of around 1m. cwt. The import of 'dry' hides declined in the later war years, and after a temporary recovery averaged only about  $\frac{1}{4}$ m. cwt. Both Australia and South Africa dropped low in the list and were replaced as the chief British sources of supply by Kenya, Tanganyika, and Nigeria, where much attention has been given to improved methods of drying, with great benefit to the quality of the hides. During the war, the import of sheep and lamb skins also fell below the pre-war average, but later recovered, with New Zealand, Australia and South Africa still the main contributories. Goat skins were likewise affected, and supplies from India and Africa fluctuated considerably after the war, the sequence of the individual countries as sources of supply varying from year to year. 'Wet' goat skins disappeared from the United Kingdom trade returns after 1941, only 'dry' goat skins being imported.

Of other animal products, **bones** are used in making a great variety of useful and fancy articles, and bone-ash enters into the manufacture of pottery. Bones are used also in making glue, and,

being largely composed of phosphate of lime, in making manures. The United Kingdom imports are drawn mostly from India and Argentina, and amount to around 40,000 tons a year.

**Ivory** is the dentine or tooth-substance forming the tusks of elephants, hippopotamuses, walruses, narwhals, and other animals. **Elephant ivory** is distinguished by its lozenge-shaped curvilinear markings. **Hippopotamus ivory** is denser and harder than that of the elephant, and of a superior and more enduring whiteness, but the solid pieces of this kind of ivory are all small, so that it can be used only in making small articles. **Walrus ivory** is inferior to that of the hippopotamus, and that of the narwhal is coarse and of little value. The total annual consumption of ivory in Europe, the United States, British India, China, and Japan was estimated towards the end of last century at, in round figures, 1,100 tons valued at £1m., the biggest consumer being the United Kingdom (350 tons). Almost all of it was elephant ivory (1,000 tons), three-fourths coming from Africa, the rest chiefly from the East Indies. The remains of the Siberian mammoth, which had supplied ivory to China for seven centuries, continued to yield a little. With the reduction of big game in Africa and measures for its preservation, trade in ivory has since declined. The annual imports into the United Kingdom before the Second World War were 100 tons or less, and during the war they almost disappeared. At mid-century they totalled 40 tons.

Under the name of **vegetable ivory** are imported the seeds of two palms, *Phytelephas macrocarpa* (Ecuador, Peru and Colombia) and *Hyphaene thebaica* (the Dum palm of the Sudan and other parts of North Africa). The seeds, known in the former case as corozo nuts, have only a fraction of the value of true ivory, and are used for making buttons and toys.

Among animal products of minor commercial value, **horns and hoofs** are imported into the United Kingdom chiefly for making combs, buttons and knife-handles; **horse-hair** as a stuffing for upholstery; **cow-hair** to make felt for roofing and for boilers and pipes of steam engines. The United States is the leading country of supply. Between 1,000 and 2,000 tons of **pigs' bristles** are imported annually for making brushes. **Feathers**, mostly for beds, are imported in still larger quantities, but surprisingly are much less valuable. They come from a world-wide range of countries, with Eire heading the list. Trade in ornamental feathers is largely dependent on the vagaries of fashion. In 1913, South Africa's exports of ostrich feathers reached a peak of 1m. lb. valued at nearly £3m.; in 1914, on the outbreak of war, the bottom dropped out of the market, and the fashion was never revived. The number of domesticated ostriches in the Union dropped from  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. before the First World War to 40,000 before the Second World War, and in 1943 exports of ostrich feathers ebbed to 17,000 lb., valued at £13,000. Since then there has

been some fluctuating recovery: exports in 1950 were 102,000 lb., valued at £163,000; in 1951, 63,000 lb., valued at £110,000.

**Sponges** consist of a horny internal skeleton of marine animals whose living portion consists of a coating of slime, which has to be removed before the sponge becomes an article of commerce. The animals yielding the best sponges live at a depth of only fifteen to twenty feet, and hence, when not covered by sea-weeds, can easily be seen from the surface. The sponges are generally obtained by divers, but a submarine vessel from which the fishers can seize the sponges by means of specially constructed tongs and deposit them in a basket on the bowsprit has been devised. An electric light with reflectors enables them to see the sponges through a glazed spy-hole. The best sponges are all obtained from the eastern half of the Mediterranean Sea, from the Gulf of Gabes in the east of Tunisia to the coast of Syria. In this area is also included the Dalmatian coast of the Adriatic as a sponge-yielding region. The fisheries are carried on mainly by Greeks, Sicilians, Arabs, and Dalmatians, and are best organised by the Greeks, who make the longest voyages in search of sponges and have their headquarters on the little island of Kalimno, off the coast of Asia Minor. Outside of the Mediterranean, the only important source of sponges is off the shores of the Bahamas, Cuba, and Florida, where the sponges are all of inferior quality.

**Tallow** and **stearine** (stearine is the harder ingredient in tallow) are most largely imported from Australasia (especially New Zealand) and the cattle countries of South America (especially Argentina). The former is used principally in the manufacture of soap, the latter in the making of candles. **Isinglass**, which is the finest form of gelatine, largely used in confectionery and in the arts, as well as for clarifying wine and beer, is obtained from the sound or swim-bladder of various kinds of fish, and is imported into this country chiefly from India, Brazil and (pre-war) Japan. In Russia it is largely made from the sound of the sturgeon, and in the United States from other species of sturgeon which abound in American rivers; but neither of these countries supplies much of this commodity to the United Kingdom. The thicker and less refined kinds of gelatine, including **glue** and **size**, do not enter largely into foreign commerce, but are made in large quantities from native and imported hides and bones for boiling. Even leather which is not made by tanning can be used in the manufacture of glue, but not tanned leather, for the chemical action of the tannin or tannic acid destroys the gelatine.

The most important of the **animal oils** of commerce are the produce of the **whale-** and **seal-fisheries**. One, called **train oil**, is derived from the blubber or coat of fat which invests these animals under the skin. Originally this kind was mainly obtained from the **right or Greenland whale** in the seas off the west coast of Greenland

and the northern coasts of Norway, and in the Arctic Ocean generally to the north of Norway and Iceland; but whaling in these waters had largely ceased before the First World War. The seal fisheries off Labrador and Newfoundland, and in the Gulf of St. Lawrence, were and still are prosecuted in ships specially equipped for the purpose. In the past few years there has been a considerable revival of these fisheries.

When the northern whale-fisheries showed signs of exhaustion Norwegians and others actively prosecuted whale-fisheries in the south Atlantic Ocean, both off the coast of South Africa and South America (especially round the Falkland Islands), and in the Ross Sea of Antarctica; and the southern area is now far more important than the northern. The former Dundee whale- and seal-fisheries and those of Peterhead are extinct, and so also are those of New Bedford, Massachusetts, which died out after the opening up of the Pennsylvanian oilfield. By international agreement the post-war catch in southern seas is limited to about half the pre-war average, and is rationed on the quota system. **Sperm oil** is derived from the cachalot, or sperm whale, which contains immense quantities of oil in a cavity in its enormous head. The **sperm-whale** being found in almost all parts of the ocean, this kind of oil is imported from many parts of the world. Train oil is used principally for margarine, but sperm oil, a finer and more valuable kind, yields in cold weather a kind of waxy body called **spermaceti**, which, mixed with a little beeswax, is used in the making of candles and by itself in the making of cold cream, salves, &c. A finer kind of train oil than that derived from the right whale is obtained in large quantities from the **bottle-nose whale** (*Hyperoodon rostratus*). Neither the cachalot nor the bottle-nose whale furnishes whalebone, but the former yields besides oil another valuable product, namely **ambergris**, which is largely used in perfumery, and is sometimes found in the body of the animal, sometimes floating on the surface of the water. It is a result of disease.

Of true fish oils, the most important is cod-liver oil, which is largely made in Great Britain from oil first processed aboard modern trawlers. Canada, Iceland and Norway also turn out considerable quantities from the great cod fisheries of those countries. Another important fish oil is halibut-liver oil, and a true fish-oil is made from the menhaden (*Brevoortia*); see page 250. The oil is chiefly used in leather-dressing, but also in rope-making and painting. Other animal-oils are derived from tallow, lard, bone-fat, &c. From the **dugong**, a kind of oil capable of being used for the same purpose as cod-liver oil, as well as in cooking, has been extracted in Queensland.

The following are among the animal products which, though of considerable commercial value, either do not enter into the foreign commerce of the British Isles or are too small an item to be separately enumerated in the trade returns. **Coral** is the name given to the

skeleton of a whole group of marine animals; but the red or pink coral, the skeleton of *Corallium rubrum*, is the only one of note, due to its use in the making of trinkets and other ornaments. The coral industry is specially an Italian one, and its chief seat is Torre del Greco, at the base of Mount Vesuvius, in the Bay of Naples. Formerly the chief supplies of coral were obtained by diving in the Bay of Naples, as many as five hundred boats having often set out from Torre del Greco; but the industry has lost much of its importance. The coral banks both in this bay and to the south of Sardinia have been largely exhausted, and the banks along the coasts of Algeria, Tunis and Tripoli are now more productive. **Coral** is also obtained on the coast of Catalonia; round the Cape Verde Islands; in the Adriatic, especially on the east coast; and in other places. A considerable quantity of coral was formerly exported directly or indirectly to China, where it was used in the official dress of the mandarins.

**Pearls and mother-of-pearl** are derived from various shells, especially of the oyster family, belonging principally to tropical seas. The mother-of-pearl is the internal part of the shell, and pearls are secretions of the same kind of matter round some small parasite or particle of inanimate foreign matter which acts as an irritant. Among the most noted pearl-fishery banks are those in the Persian Gulf, in the Gulf of Manar (Ceylon), in the Sulu Archipelago, in the neighbourhood of the Moluccas and the Aru Islands, in Torres Strait and along the north-west coast of Australia, at Tahiti, and in the Gulf of California. By providing a suitable irritant inside the shell of the oysters, the Japanese have succeeded in producing 'culture pearls,' practically indistinguishable from those formed without an artificial stimulus. Pearls are also obtained from various river-shells, especially *Unio margaritifera*, which is met with in many European rivers, including some of those of Scotland and the north of Ireland.

**Parchment**, the skin of sheep, and **vellum**, that of calf, prepared for writing on, no longer have the value that belonged to them before the invention of paper, but are still manufactured for use in formal documents and in book-binding. The so-called **catgut** consists of the dried and twisted intestines of sheep and other animals. It is used in making the strings of musical instruments, racket-cords, and cords used by clock-makers, polishers, &c. The intestines of larger animals serve to make **gold-beater's skin**.

The **ests** of a certain kind of swift (*Collocalia esculenta*), which breeds in caves at various places in the Eastern Archipelago, are looked upon as a luxury in China, where they are imported in millions annually. The nests are entirely made from a peculiar saliva secreted by the bird.

## COMMODITIES (*continued*)

### II. FISHERIES

With the oceans covering five-sevenths of the earth's surface, fisheries have, since the dawn of civilisation, held a high place in the world's economy. As a source of food supply they have grown in importance with the growth of communications. In Britain, the fishpond was prominent in monastic days, but with the coming of the railway era a century ago, sea fish began to find their way to the remotest country districts. A like development is still in progress in Germany, Czechoslovakia, and Russia, where the populations are slow to acquire a taste for sea fish.

Two main lines of advance may be distinguished in the modern industrial development of world fisheries. The more obvious is the taking of fish for immediate human consumption, as in the British trawl fishery, most of whose catch—usually kept on ice at sea—goes into consumption within 48 hours of being landed, not least widely through the agency of 30,000 fried fish shops. In contrast with this are such fisheries as the California pilchard fishery and the Icelandic herring fishery, from which the catches in the past have served primarily as raw material for extensive meal and oil plants. The meal provides animal feed, the oil is used by margarine factories in Europe.

The Food and Agriculture Organisation of the United Nations estimated that in 1955 the world catch of fish (including fresh-water fish) was nearly 28m. metric tons. Half a dozen countries, each providing over 1m. tons, accounted for nearly 15m. tons, or over half the total. Japan headed the list with 4.7m. tons—nearly a third more than before the Second World War. The United States came next, with a catch of 2.7m. tons in 1955. The U.S.S.R. was credited with 2.5m. tons and China with 2.4m. tons. Norway and the United Kingdom followed with respective landed catches of 1.64m. tons and 1m. tons.

Another 9½m. tons was provided by 28 countries with catches of between 1m. tons and 100,000 tons. These, with the six major countries of supply, provided 88 per cent. of the total. Canada contributed 865,000 tons, India 839, Western Germany 734, Spain 676, Indonesia 651, Korea 573 (North 313, South 260), France (including

Algeria) 459, Denmark 418, Iceland 407, Philippines 363, South Africa 333, Angola 290, Portugal 287, Netherlands 276, Pakistan 271, South-West Africa 239, Chile 214, Siam 213, Italy 198, Sweden 190, Brazil 172, Peru 170, Malaya 137, Viet-Nam 130, Poland 126, Turkey 111, Faroes 106, Burma 100.

The most valuable fishing-grounds in the world consist of a chain of submerged plateaus or 'banks' in the North Atlantic, elevated considerably above the bottom of the surrounding sea, off the coasts of Canada (Newfoundland, Labrador, Quebec, and the Maritime Provinces), the New England States, and the French islands of St. Pierre and Miquelon. They very quickly attracted the attention of the early explorers who visited America. At the present day, the fisheries on the 'banks' in the open sea are free to all, but the rights of 'in-shore' fishing are limited by treaty. The treaty regulating the rights of United States fishermen in Canadian waters, and those of Canadian fishermen in United States waters, is the Treaty of London of 1818, as interpreted by the Arbitration Tribunal at the Hague in 1910, according to which the waters within three miles of the coast are reserved for the fishermen of the country to which the coast belongs; but French fishermen are allowed to fish on all the coasts of Newfoundland from Cape St. John (lat. 50° N.) on the east coast round the northern peninsula of the island, and as far as Cape Ray at the southern end of the west coast. The rights to land and dry fish enjoyed by the French under the Treaty of Utrecht were renounced under the Anglo-French Convention of 1904.

Although they have been eclipsed by the Pacific Coast fisheries (including Alaska), those of the New England States, notably Massachusetts and Maine, are still very important. The principal fish caught are cod, mackerel, hake, herring, rosefish, haddock, pollack, whiting and flounders. Others include the menhaden (*Brevoortia*) and the alewife (*Pomolobus*), which somewhat resemble the shad and are caught in immense quantities off the eastern coast of the United States from Connecticut to the Carolinas.

On the Pacific Coast the specialities of the fishing industry are the catching and canning of pilchard, salmon and tuna (tunny) for export. In recent years both the size of the pack of tuna and its value have rivalled the size and value of the salmon pack. The salmon fishing industry is chiefly pursued in the States on the Columbia River (Oregon) and the Sacramento (California); in British Columbia on the Fraser, Skeena, and Naas Rivers, as well as several inlets; and, in recent years above all, in the rivers and creeks of Alaska. The sardine, mackerel, herring and halibut fisheries are also important commercially. Notable, as an example of the value of scientific control, is the restriction of the Pacific halibut fishery, which, instead of reducing the yield, is actually increasing it.

the fish caught in Irish waters is relatively small, and when the Irish herring fisheries were of notable importance before and after the First World War, the main production was by drifters from Scotland and England.

The English fisheries are more miscellaneous than the Scottish; they include herring and mackerel, pilchards and sprats among fish caught near the surface, and plaice, soles, haddock, cod and turbot among the demersal or bottom-frequenting fish, whereas in the Scottish fisheries the herring is without a rival, haddock and cod coming next. Pilchards, which are the mature form of the true sardine, are a speciality of the Cornish coasts, and though they are no longer caught in the old numbers, research has shown them to be more abundant than the present unimportant inshore fishery would seem to indicate. Besides the fishing ports already mentioned, Fleetwood, North Shields and Milford are important in England and Wales, and Wick, Lerwick, Fraserburgh, Peterhead, Stornaway and Leith in Scotland. Aberdeen is the greatest trawling centre north of the Humber. The great market is Billingsgate, in London, which tends to set the tone of trade in the country. Oysters are largely produced at Whitstable on the north coast of Kent, and at Colchester near the mouth of the Colne, in Essex. Salmon fishing in Scottish, Irish, and some English rivers is largely 'preserved' for sport and is a source of considerable wealth. There is also a valuable commercial salmon fishery, though industrial development along the banks of salmon rivers like the Tyne and the Tees has by pollution destroyed once important salmon fisheries.

The principal Norwegian fisheries are those of cod and herring. The cod-fisheries are carried on chiefly when the fish come in early spring to the spawning areas round the Lofoten Isles; to a lesser degree the fishery concerns itself with feeding cod on the Finmarken coast. The cod are mostly salted for export, but filleted fresh fish, frozen, are taking a place in world markets. The herring-fisheries are mainly in the neighbourhood of Bergen. Fish canning, especially of brisling, or sprats, is important, and between the two World Wars Norway built up an enormous export industry in canned fish of many varieties.

In the fisheries of France, sardines and anchovies, and also oysters, are of special importance. The sardine and anchovy fisheries are carried on mainly on the Mediterranean coast, the sardines of Provence being esteemed the best. The great market for the Provence fisheries is Beaucaire on the Rhone, east of Nimes. On the Atlantic side the chief seats of sardine-packing are Bordeaux and Le Mans. Sardines and anchovies are likewise caught and prepared for export on the coasts of Spain, Portugal and Italy. Oysters are produced mainly on the coasts of Brittany and other parts of the Atlantic sea-board farther south. Since about 1856 artificial oyster-



breeding has been pursued in France with great success, chiefly in the basin of Arcachon (to the south of the Gironde), and in the bay of Morbihan (on the south coast of Brittany).

Besides the sardine and anchovy the only important food-fish of the Mediterranean waters is the tunny. This fish (*Thunnus thynnus*) is a relative of the mackerel (*Scomber scomber*); it attains a length of 12 or 13 feet, and a weight of 1,000 to 1,200 lb. It appears in immense shoals in the beginning of summer, especially on the coasts of Sicily, Sardinia, and southern France. The fishery is carried on chiefly on the coasts of Sicily and Sardinia, which are visited by thousands of fishermen, foreign as well as Italian, during the fishing season. On the Atlantic coast the white-fleshed tunny (*Alalorga*) is important for the canning industry.

Russia has very important sea fisheries, and in recent years has been the second biggest producer of salmon; the fishery concessions on Asiatic rivers, chiefly to the Japanese, were important. Its river and lake fisheries, particularly in the Caspian, are also noted for their sturgeon; caviare, or the roe of the sturgeon prepared as a delicacy, is one of the most important fishery products.

As regards Asia, mention has already been made of the magnitude of the Far Eastern fisheries. Sardines, herrings, and bonitos (a large fish of the genus *Sarda*) rank high among the products of the Japanese fisheries, which also include, in the Yellow, East and South China Seas, one of the greatest demersal or ground fisheries in the world. The Philippines fishery is substantial, and, in general, fisheries play an important part in the economy and diet of the peoples of South-East Asia. In another category is trepang, a kind of sea cucumber (the French *bêche-de-mer*), which is extensively fished for the Chinese market along all the coasts of the Eastern Archipelago and Northern Australia. The production of seaweed (*Algæ*) for the valuable alginic acid seems likely to develop on the Australian coasts.

The foreign commerce in fish is by no means proportioned to the productiveness of the fisheries, most kinds of fish being produced mainly for markets near at hand. The fish exports of the British Isles are chiefly herrings. Before the First World War nearly five-sixths of the British catch was exported, but the industry has never fully recovered from the loss of markets in 1914-18, due chiefly to the political and economic changes in Russia and the autarkic policy of Germany. Before the Second World War the annual landings of herrings in the United Kingdom were about 250,000 tons—less than half the pre-1914 catch. Increased landings of other fish kept the total up to about a million tons a year, of which 200,000 tons or more were exported. Within their narrower limits herrings were still the mainstay of the export trade, and this remained true after the Second World War. Both in 1950 and in 1951, about two-thirds of the exports both of fresh fish and of cured fish were herring, and so

were four-fifths or more of the canned fish exported, Germany being the chief market.

In other respects the Second World War brought about big changes, alike in the export and in the import trade of the United Kingdom in fish. Exports dropped heavily. In 1938 they amounted, all told, to 219,000 tons (fresh or frozen fish 54,000 tons, cured or salted 160,000 tons, canned 5,000 tons). In 1951 the total was under 59,000 tons—little more than a quarter of the pre-war figure; and so far (1957) there has been little or no recovery. In 1952–54 the annual exports ranged around 60,000 tons, and in 1955–56 they dropped below 50,000 tons. The decline was especially marked in the export of herrings, and in the last two years was intensified by a mysterious shortage of supplies, the effects of which were felt in the home market as well as in the export trade.

Imports were not affected to the same extent. In 1938 they totalled 186,000 tons (109,000 tons fresh or simply preserved, 77,000 tons canned) and in 1951 were about the same, after having risen in the interval to 300,000 tons—a commentary on the shortage of meat. In 1953 they were down to 110,000 tons, but increased again to 157,000 tons in 1956. Of the two main classes of imported fish, the fresh or simply preserved exceeded in both 1951 and 1952 the pre-war figure of 109,000 tons, and in the next four years averaged just on 100,000 tons. Cod, plaice and herrings are the chief supplies. Norway has been easily first among the supplying countries, as listed in the Board of Trade returns, but the biggest item in the list is not assigned to any particular country, being attributed to 'Deep Sea Fisheries', meaning direct landings by foreign fishing vessels.

Very different has been the experience of the imports of canned fish. As shown by the figures already quoted, the pre-war imports of canned fish were over 40 per cent. of the total. About three-fourths of these canned imports consisted of salmon, which was easily the most valuable item in the whole of the import trade in fish. Practically the whole of the canned salmon came from Canada, the United States, the Soviet Union, and Japan. For the time being the war knocked out the last-named country as a source of supply, and difficulties developed in the trade with Russia, while restrictions on dollar expenditure reduced trade with Canada and the United States. In the early 'fifties the import of canned salmon dropped from its pre-war level of nearly 60,000 tons to between 5,000 and 10,000 tons, though in 1956 it increased to nearly 20,000 tons. Throughout these post-war years, despite the drop in quantity, the value of the canned salmon imported remained one of the biggest items in the account for imported fish. Pilchards and sardines were other important canned imports.

Apart from the United Kingdom, the great markets for Norway's cod-fish are the same as those for the dried and cured cod-fish which make up the bulk of the export from Newfoundland, namely

Spain, Portugal, and Italy, Roman Catholic countries in which there is still a very large consumption of fish. St. John's in Newfoundland, Bergen in Norway, and Bordeaux in France are the centres of this trade. Dried and cured cod are also sent to the West Indies and South America.

The deep-sea fisheries of Germany grew rapidly after the last decade of last century, largely in consequence of state encouragement, exemplified by the provision of fishery harbours, such as those of Wesermunde, Cuxhaven, and Hamburg-Altona; by the freeing of fishing boats from harbour and pilotage dues; and in other ways. There were great developments in the trawl fishery for herrings, and a new drifter fleet was built up under the policy of self-sufficiency. Since the Second World War, Germany has taken steps substantially to redevelop her herring fisheries.

Several experiments have been made with the carriage of refrigerated fish, but the trade has not yet been developed to the same extent relatively as the trade in frozen meat, though 'quick-frozen' stocks are always held. English fish is now generally obtainable from 'cold-storage' depots in the larger cities of the tropics.

## COMMODITIES (*continued*)

### III. MINERAL PRODUCTS

**COAL.** Coal consists of vegetable matter which has been buried and sealed up out of contact with the air in past ages, and has then undergone a series of chemical changes, the general result of which is to get rid of a large proportion of hydrogen and oxygen and to increase the relative proportion of carbon in the remaining substance. In pure woody fibre the proportion of carbon present is little more than half, whereas in ordinary **bituminous coal** it may amount to from 85 to upwards of 88 per cent. The substance known as **lignite**, or brown coal, consists of vegetable matter much less altered than in ordinary coal, and contains a smaller relative amount of carbon, say 70 per cent. In certain situations, the process of removing hydrogen and oxygen has gone further than in the formation of bituminous coal, and as much as 94 per cent. of carbon may be present. There is then formed a kind of coal called **anthracite**, which is lustrous on the surface, does not soil the fingers, is difficult to light, burns with little or no flame, but produces an intense heat when it does burn. **Coke**, an artificial product made by heating bituminous coal in closed vessels or ovens, and removing the more volatile constituents, contains as high a proportion of carbon as anthracite, but the product acquires in the process a highly porous or vesicular structure along with hardness and density. It is these properties that make it so valuable in the blast-furnace, its hardness enabling it to resist crushing by pressure, and its porosity presenting a greater amount of surface to the action of heated air. Formerly the removal of the volatile constituents was effected by carbonising the coal in beehive ovens, which produced excellent coke but did not conserve the gases which were given off, and destroyed such valuable constituents as tar, benzol, and ammonia. These ovens have now been almost entirely replaced by others which separate all the by-products.

Supplies of coke are derived to-day from three main sources.

(1) In the manufacture of gas for lighting and heating, gasworks produce large quantities of coke which are mostly used for domestic purposes as fuel for hot-water boilers, closed stoves, and central heating. The coal is carbonised in various types of 'retort', both

horizontal and continuous vertical, the latter being the more modern, and producing a more reactive and hence more suitable coke for domestic uses. (2) The collieries manufacture for sale to industrialists a harder and more lumpy kind of coke, used almost exclusively for blast furnaces and metallurgical purposes. The 'ovens' for making this quality of coke are large vertical chambers, each of which may contain as much as 10 tons. (3) In recent years there has been a marked tendency for steelworks to build their own batteries of coke ovens, with double benefit: they can select for carbonisation coal which will yield a coke of the particular quality they require, and the ovens can be heated—in part at any rate—by blast furnace gas, thus releasing the high-grade coke oven gas for the steel furnaces and other purposes at the works.

In 1937 the quantity of coal carbonised was over 41m. tons, divided almost equally between gasworks and other producers; and the resulting quantity of coke and breeze was 27m. tons. There was little variation in these figures during the war years, 1939–45; afterwards the quantity increased slightly, and in 1955 the production of coke and breeze in Great Britain was 34·8m. tons—15·5m. tons from gasworks and 19·3m. tons from coke-ovens.

It is known that coal was worked at several places in Roman Britain, but it seems to have been little used in Anglo-Saxon times. The first proper coal-mines are said to have been opened at the close of the twelfth century (1198) in Belgium, and it is long before we hear of a trade in Newcastle coal. In 1615 that trade employed 400 vessels in distributing coal over England. In 1660 the total coal production of England was estimated at less than two and a quarter million tons, or about two-fifths of a ton per head.

The vast increase in the use of coal in recent years has been due chiefly to the requirements of modern factories, of railways and steamers, of blast furnaces, gasworks, and electrical installations. At the beginning of the nineteenth century, after the invention of the steam-engine and its application to spinning machinery, but before the invention of steamboats, as well as before the introduction of railways, and before coal gas came into general use for lighting, the production of coal in England is estimated to have been 10m. tons, equal to about five-eighths of a ton per head for the estimated population of the United Kingdom. The contrast between these figures and the position in the half-century prior to the Second World War is shown, along with other comparative data, in the diagrams and tables on pp. 260–262.

The Royal Commission on the Coal Industry (1925) gave figures showing the approximate consumption of coal in the United Kingdom in 1924,<sup>1</sup> and these have made it possible to draw up the

<sup>1</sup> Report of the Royal Commission on the Coal Industry (Cd. 2600, 1926, p. 11).

*Percentage Analysis of the Consumption of Coal*

UNITED KINGDOM (1924).	GERMANY (1913).	UNITED STATES (1923).
Domestic . . . 12.9	Domestic . . . 9.1	Domestic . . . 12.8
Pig-Iron manufac- ture . . . 5.4	Briquetting plants 3.5	Coke ovens . . . 15.6
Electric power pro- duction . . . 3.0	Coke ovens . . . 23.4	Iron and Steelworks 5.6
Factories . . . 26.8	Public purposes . . 2.9	Electric power pro- duction . . . 6.8
	Industrial . . . 10.0	Factories (General industrial) . . . 21.5
Miners' Coal . . . 2.5	Factories . . . 14.1	Agriculture . . . —
Coal Mines . . . 6.3	Agriculture . . . 4.0	Mines . . . 2.4
Railways . . . 5.1	Mines . . . —	Railways . . . 28.8
Bunker Coal, ex- ternal trade . . . 6.7	Railways . . . 9.3	Bunker coal, exter- nal trade . . . 1.0
Do., coasting trade 0.5	Navigation . . . 5.3	Do., coasting trade 0.6
Gas . . . 6.3	Gas . . . 5.3	Gas . . . 1.0
Export . . . 24.5	Export . . . 13.1	Export . . . 3.9
100.0	100.0	100.0

above table, showing a percentage analysis of the total, along with more or less corresponding figures for Germany in 1913 (taken from or based on those given in W. A. Bone's *Coal and its Scientific Uses*, pp. 478, 479) and the United States in 1923.<sup>1</sup> So far as these figures correspond with one another the most striking differences are under the heads of export, railways, and bunker coal, and are significant of geographical differences between the three countries. Long before 1914, the British export of coal had been expanding at a more rapid rate than the production, and in 1913 the coal<sup>2</sup> exported from the United Kingdom was 26.7 per cent. of the total production of 290m. tons. This heading is one indication of the same geographical advantage as is revealed also by the high proportion of bunker coal used in the United Kingdom, while the high proportion of coal used on the railways in the United States is equally significant of the enormous land area and internal land trade in that country.

The table on the facing page shows the change in the conditions in both countries between the nineteen-twenties and the nineteen-fifties. At the outset the British export of coal, despite the First World War, was still large. After the Second World War Britain was struggling to produce enough coal for home consumption, the trouble being shortage not of coal but of miners.

The year 1913 marked the climax of the prosperity of the coal-mining industry in Great Britain. During the war years 1914-18 the industry was under Government control; export prices rose so high

<sup>1</sup> The Mineral Industry, 1925, p. 149 (Bituminous coals only).

<sup>2</sup> Inclusive of coke, cinders, and patent fuel.

that much of the export trade was lost and foreign fields were stimulated into active development. In 1920 the output had fallen to 230m. tons and exports to 19 per cent. of the output. A gradual recovery followed, only to be succeeded by the disastrous year 1926 when, owing to labour troubles, production fell to 125,539,300 tons and exports to 20,596,571 tons.

*Home Consumption of Coal in Mid-century: Percentage Analysis*

UNITED KINGDOM		1956	UNITED STATES		1953
Electricity Power Stations		21	Coke Plants . . . . .		26·5
Industrial Works . . .		18	Electric Power Utilities .		26·4
Household Fuel . . .		15	Industrials:		
Coke Ovens . . . . .		13	Cement mills . . . . .		2·0
Gasworks . . . . .		13	Steel & rolling mills		1·5
Railways . . . . .		6	Others . . . . .		22·8
Collieries . . . . .		3·6			26·2
Miners' Free Coal . . .		2·4	Retail Deliveries . . . .		14·4
Miscellaneous . . . . .		8	Class I Railroads . . . .		6·5
		<u>100·0</u>			<u>100·0</u>
(218m. tons)			(426m. tons)		

In 1937 the royalty rights in coal mines were nationalised at a cost of £66,450,000. Production in that year reached 240m. tons and exports 43m. tons. But in 1938 production fell again to 227m. tons (exports, 38m. tons), and in 1939 any hopes of early recovery were dashed by the Second World War. The output of saleable coal declined to 174m. tons in 1945, and for some years after the fighting ceased not only were home supplies severely rationed but the export trade in coal was almost suspended, with disastrous effects on the national economy. Coal used to provide one-tenth of the total exports in value and four-fifths in volume. In the words of the Royal Commission (1925): 'By furnishing outward cargo for a large amount of shipping it cheapens freights for the imports.'

Out-of-date conditions in some of the mines and discontent among the miners were both limiting factors in production. In the hope of meeting the need, the coal-mining industry was nationalised in 1947. Wages were increased, hours of work reduced, and a five-day week was established, while schemes for improving the equipment of the mines were put in hand. Production in 1947 fell just short of the Government 'target' of 200m. tons, and in 1948 a beginning was made with the revival of the export trade, though the restrictions on home consumption remained. In 1956 the production of saleable coal reached 222m. tons, but exports were only 10m. tons (they had varied from 14m. to 16m. tons in the previous five years), including under 1½m. tons used as bunkers. The effect of the better conditions

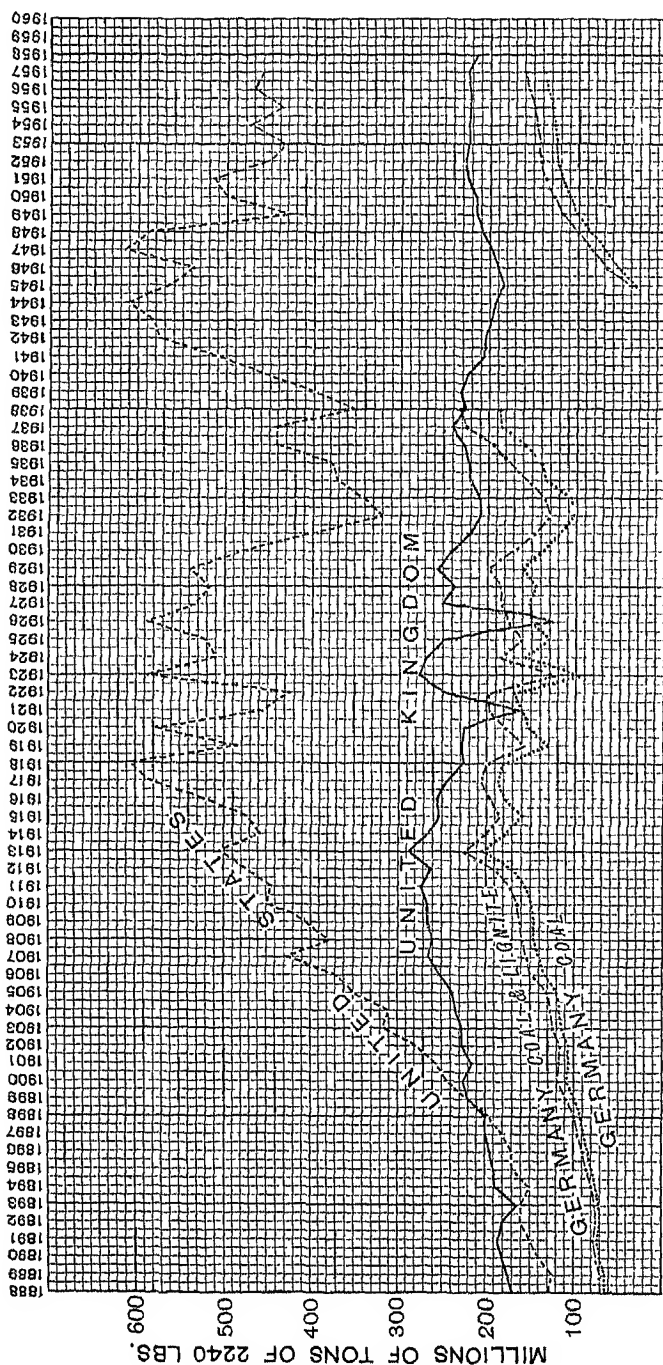


DIAGRAM I.

COAL PRODUCTION SINCE 1888.

In drawing the line for coal and lignite (Germany) the lignite has been estimated in accordance with German practice in the ratio of 9 : 2 coal. Germany from 1922 includes the Saar Basin; after 1945 West Germany only.



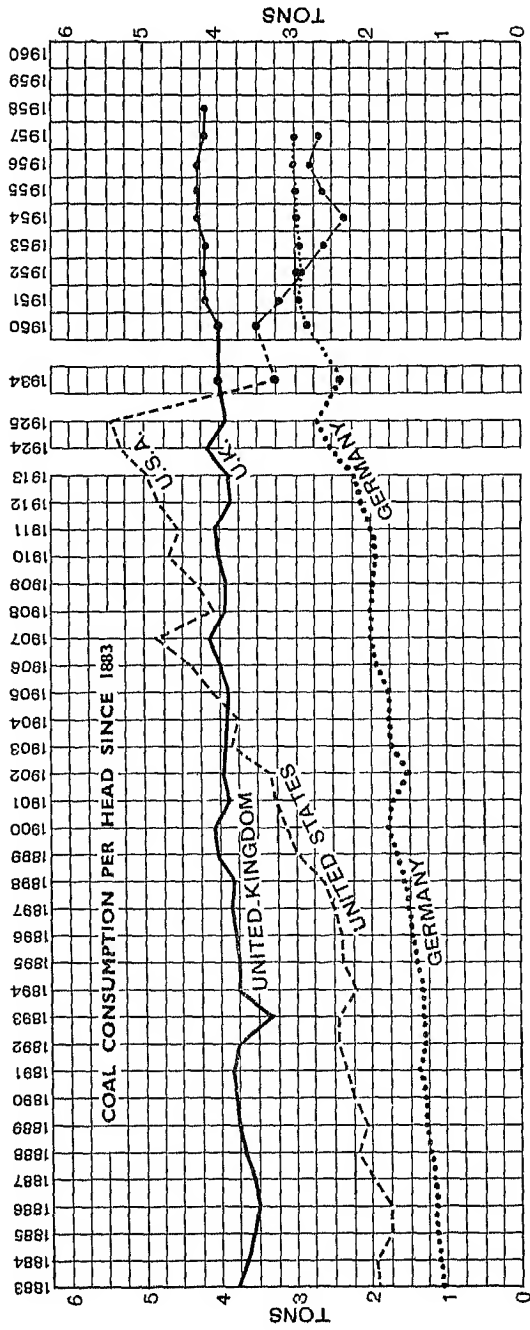


DIAGRAM II.

of labour in sending up the price of coal was felt both at home and abroad, and will necessarily be a factor in future development.

There have been many speculations as to the future of the coal supply of the world as a whole and of particular countries. The vast extent and content of the known coalfields of the world as shown in

Country.	Estimated Reserves. <sup>1</sup> Thousand Millions of Tons (Anthracite and Bituminous Coal only).	Average Annual Production of Anthracite and Bituminous Coal in Millions of Tons. <sup>2</sup> (For Sub-Bituminous Coal see Lignite, p. 263)				
		1881-85.	1906-10.	1935.	1945.	1955.
United Kingdom .	307	158.9	261.7	222.3	182.8	221.6
Australia . .	17	2.5	9.3	10.9	12.8	17.7
Canada . . .	373	1.6	9.7	8.7	10.5	9.1
India . . . .	76	1.2	11.5	23.6	29.2	38.2
Pakistan . .						
New Zealand .	2	0.4	1.9	0.8	1.0	0.8
Union of South Africa . . .	216	—	5.2	13.4	23.2	31.6
Austria . . .	0.5	7.7	14.8	0.2	0.1	0.2
Hungary . . .						
Czechoslovakia .	31	—	—	10.7	11.5	21.8
Poland . . . .	76	—	—	28.1	26.0	93.0
Netherlands . .	7	—	—	11.7	5.0	11.7
Belgium . . .	11	17.3	23.3	26.1	15.6	29.5
France . . . .	14	19.4	35.6	47.2	32.8	54.5
West Germany .	369	53.6	142.6	140.7	40.6	130.5
East Germany .						
Spain . . . . .	14	1.0	3.6	6.9	10.6	12.2
China . . . . .	263	—	—	12.0	25.0	91.0 <sup>3</sup>
Japan . . . . .	22	1.1	14.3	37.2	22.0	41.7
U.S.S.R. . . .	1,739	3.8	24.6	93.7	160.0 <sup>3</sup>	271.7
United States .	2,237	95.5	405.9	378.0	562.4	440.0

<sup>1</sup> From *Energy Resources of the World*, U.S. Government, 1949, but figures relate mainly to 1937.

<sup>2</sup> The coal production of the world is subject to big fluctuations. Estimated at 1,320m. tons in 1913, it was down to 1,072m. tons in 1935; after greatly intensified production during the Second World War, the output of true coal dropped in 1945 but was still around 1,150m. tons, and in 1953 it was up again to the highest level of the war years, with an output of over 1,500m. tons.

<sup>3</sup> Estimate.

the first column of figures set out in the above table removes, indeed, any fear of the using up of the coal-supply of the world to the remote future. With regard to the coal supply of any particular country<sup>1</sup> or region, however, it must be borne in mind that so far as the prosperity of such country or region depends on cheap coal, that prosperity will

<sup>1</sup> The second Royal Commission on the Coal Supplies of the United Kingdom estimated the total quantity of available coal in the United Kingdom in seams of 1 foot in thickness and upwards, down to a depth of 4,000 feet, at 100,915m. tons in proved coalfields and 39,483m. tons in unproved coalfields—a total of 140,398m. tons. Later estimates, on the same basis, by Sir Aubrey Strahan (1912) gave 178,727 millions of tons; whilst Professor H. S. Jevons in 1915 gave an estimate of 197,000m. tons. Extensions of fields have since been proved, hence the higher figure in the table.

be more or less affected as soon as the price of coal begins to rise relatively to other countries or regions. As to the future of the coal production where large deposits of coal still remain to be utilised, it is impossible to prophesy; the conditions which determine whether a coalfield is worked or not are too numerous and uncertain. Much depends upon the quality of the coal, the situation of the coalfield, the ease with which the region can be supplied with coal from elsewhere, or with power from other sources, and much also on the habits of the people. As falling water is now so important a competing source of power, it should be mentioned here that where there is plant for continuous development of power by this means one British horse-power hour (=500 foot-pounds=746 watts) is equivalent to the consumption of 2 lb. of coal. With continuous working, therefore, on 300 days in the year, a horse-power year would be equivalent to the consumption of over 6 tons in that time. Thus Canada's developed water-power resources represent a saving of coal of 66m. tons per annum.

The chief geographical considerations in connection with coal, apart from its distribution locally and the accessibility of the seams, arise from the cost of carriage and the consequent economic motive of avoiding carriage wherever and so far as possible. When coal is made dear by difficulties of transport, there is every inducement to make the best provision practicable to secure its efficiency where it cannot be dispensed with. In Switzerland the most efficient steam engine was developed and used much earlier than in Great Britain. In other cases coal may be replaced by some locally cheaper even if less efficient fuel or by the use of water-power. Even where coal is the source of the power used, its carriage may be largely avoided by the electrical transmission of the power, and the higher transport costs become the greater is the inducement to resort to this method of utilising fuel. This has been well illustrated in the last few years in Britain in connection with the development of the electricity 'Grid'. Most of the primary generators are either on the coalfields, *i.e.* the electricity is pit-head carbo-electricity, or are situated where they can receive bulk supplies of coal direct by water (*cf.* pp. 72-3).

**Lignite**, as the name indicates, is a woody kind of coal, sometimes of a brown colour; in Germany it is known as brown coal (*Braunkohle*). It is produced mostly in Germany (more than half the world supply), and largely also in other Central or Eastern European countries, in Australia and New Zealand, and in Canada and the United States. World production is upwards of 500m. tons. Its heating value in proportion to that of true coal is reckoned in Germany to be about 5 : 7, but its price is only about half that of true coal, which limits its range of transport. Czechoslovakia, the next largest producer, has better quality lignite than Germany, where it was much used before the war. Most of the German supply is

used for making briquettes, a favourite form of fuel for both industrial and domestic purposes. There is obviously a great advantage in using lignite where mined to generate electricity. Thus Melbourne is supplied with electricity from the Morwell lignite deposits.

The immense superficial deposits of peat in Ireland, Scotland, Germany, and elsewhere, are still for the most part of even more restricted utility. Experiments with Irish air-dried peat showed that on the average the heating power of coal was as 1 : 1.77 by weight and 1.5 by volume of peat. Nevertheless peat is beginning to acquire increased importance in some places in connection with electricity. In Germany, Professors Frank and Caro succeeded in adapting the Mond gas-producer to the use of peat for the production of electric power with commercial success, tar and sulphate of ammonia being obtained as by-products. As the yield of the sulphate is likely to be an important factor in the profitableness of such an undertaking, the richness of the peat in nitrogen, which varies considerably, will affect to a large extent the availability of different deposits for this purpose.

**PETROLEUM AND ITS PRODUCTS, with other allied substances.**<sup>1</sup> Petroleum, which means rock-oil, is a general name given to oils which flow freely or are pumped from holes bored in the earth. From the crude oil as it issues from the earth numerous products having a great variety of uses are made by distillation and other processes, these products differing from one another in weight and fluidity, as well as in other properties. The names given to these products are variously used in different places, which is the source of a good deal of confusion. The name 'kerosene' is generally given to a light oil which is used in lamps for illumination. Kerosene is also employed as fuel for domestic heating, in some tractors, and in gas turbine engines. Heavier kinds of oil are used for many other purposes, such as heating and providing power for heavy diesel engines, or as lubricants in all kinds of machinery. The development of the internal combustion engine made gasoline or petrol the most important product of petroleum for very many years, and it is only recently that the heavier oils have begun in some countries to rival it in importance. In the process of distillation the various products that make up petroleum are separated out, petrol being among the lightest and fuel oil one of the heaviest. Crude oils vary in their contents of petrol and other products; on an average they contain about 20 per cent. of petrol, and as world requirements of petrol are very high (amounting to nearer 40 per cent. than 20 per cent. of all petroleum products) the yield is commonly increased by processes such as 'cracking', whereby the heavier fractions are split chemically into petrol on the one hand and very heavy oils on the other.

Apart from the main products of petroleum there are many

<sup>1</sup> We are much indebted to the Petroleum Information Bureau for data for the revision of this section.

others important to modern civilisation. The end products obtained from the distillation of mineral oil include bitumen or asphalt and paraffin wax. Some petroleum derivatives have medicinal uses, among them petroleum jelly and medicinal paraffin. Batching oils are used in the softening of flax and other tough fibres. A vast range of products, obtained from the lighter fractions of petroleum, form the raw materials for the petroleum chemical industry, which manufactures, for instance, plastics, synthetic fibres, detergents, and many other household and industrial products.

Products similar to those obtained from petroleum can also be produced by processing oils obtained from shales. The shale-oil industry has long been established in the midland valley of Scotland, but of recent years has suffered from the exhaustion of the richer shales (which yielded as much as 80 gallons per ton of shale) and the competition of the more cheaply produced crude oils. There are vast deposits of oil shale in many parts of the world which will be worked when a rise in crude oil prices or the invention of more efficient retorting processes renders their exploitation economically possible. Low-grade coals may also be used, and indeed coals of all types. Those countries such as Britain which are rich in coal but poor in mineral oil have turned their attention to the production of oil from coal. This can be effected by several processes, including low-temperature carbonisation (converting coal into a smokeless fuel and an oil by-product) and high-temperature carbonisation (yielding coke and liquid products, including benzole). Other methods of obtaining oil from coal include the hydrogenation process, which gives a large yield of petrol but at very considerable cost. Large works for the hydrogenation of coal were established before the Second World War at Billingham-on-Tees, but the process is now carried out with a creosote pitch mixture. In America, experiments have also been made to develop the Fisher Tropsch process, extensively used in Germany during the war.

None of these processes is economical compared with the production of refined products from petroleum, and since the war many countries with little or no crude oil production of their own have set up large-scale refineries to deal with imported crude oil. Britain in 1956 produced over 28½m. tons of refined products and imported additional quantities of certain products, though there was a surplus of others which were available for export.

The petroleum industry on a great scale is entirely modern. Its growth is due to the abundance of the supplies discovered in certain regions, the great utility of its products, the ease with which oil can be extracted from the earth and transported over long distances in pipes or in ships built to carry oil in bulk, and its relative cheapness. Petroleum was known to the ancients, being mentioned by Herodotus, Plutarch, and Pliny; but the great development of the industry

has taken place since the oilfields of the United States began to be worked only a 100 years ago.

The following table shows the rapid increase in world production during the present century. In the second decade a succession of new fields was discovered in the States, where production increased from 34m. metric tons in 1913 to 100m. metric tons in 1923. Since then many new oilfields have been discovered in many parts of the world, and the known reserves are sufficient to meet world needs for many decades. But oil, like all minerals, is a wasting asset, and the total quantity available would appear to be much less than that of coal.

*World Production of Crude Oil and Natural Gasoline in Million Metric Tons*

1900 . . .	20	1933 . . .	198	1946 . . .	391
1905 . . .	30	1934 . . .	208	1947 . . .	432
1910 . . .	45	1935 . . .	227	1948 . . .	489
1915 . . .	59	1936 . . .	247	1949 . . .	488
1920 . . .	95	1937 . . .	287	1950 . . .	540
1925 . . .	146	1938 . . .	281	1951 . . .	609
1926 . . .	156	1939 . . .	291	1952 . . .	640
1927 . . .	178	1940 . . .	300	1953 . . .	678
1928 . . .	188	1941 . . .	313	1954 . . .	709
1929 . . .	211	1942 . . .	293	1955 . . .	800
1930 . . .	200	1943 . . .	317	1956 . . .	869
1931 . . .	189	1944 . . .	358	1957 . . .	913
1932 . . .	180	1945 . . .	368	1958 (est.) . . .	937

*Output of Chief Petroleum Producing Countries<sup>1</sup>*

		Million Metric Tons				Million Metric Tons	
NEW WORLD		1938.	1956.	OLD WORLD		1938.	1956
U.S.A. . .		170.7	383.1	U.S.S.R. . .		30.1	83.8
Venezuela . .		28.1	129.1	Kuwait . . .		—	55.0
Canada . . .		0.9	23.7	Saudi Arabia . .		0.1	48.7
Mexico . . .		5.5	13.2	Iraq . . .		4.4	31.3
Colombia . . .		3.1	6.4	Iran . . .		10.4	26.5
Argentina . . .		2.4	4.4	Indonesia . . .		7.4	12.7
Trinidad . . .		2.6	4.2	Roumania . . .		6.9	10.9
Peru . . .		2.2	2.5	Qatar . . .		—	5.9
				British Borneo . .		0.9	5.8
				West Germany . .		—	3.5
				Austria . . .		—	3.4
				Egypt . . .		0.2	1.7
				Kuwait-S. Arabia			
				Neutral Zone . .		—	1.7
				Bahrain . . .		1.1	1.5
Totals . . .		215.5	566.6			61.6	292.4

The above countries provided about 99 per cent. of the total world output both in 1938 and in 1956. In the former year 77 per cent. of world production came from the 'New World' and 23 per cent. from the 'Old World'. In 1956 the respective percentages were 64 and 36.

<sup>1</sup> Output in individual countries is often expressed in barrels. The relation between barrels and tons varies in different countries, ranging between 7 and 8 barrels to the ton according to the density of the product. A barrel contains 35 Imperial gallons or 42 U.S. gallons.

The following notes on the chief producing countries are given with due reserve. Development of new areas may be rapid, and even though older areas tend to increase their production, their position in relation to other countries may decline. Between 1938 and 1956 the United States doubled her output, but her share of world production fell from 61 per cent. to 41 per cent.

**United States.** In the United States the productive oilfields lie in groups in several areas. The first extensive development took place in the eastern states, where a great oil region about 160 miles in length, and 40 miles broad in the middle, stretches from south-west to north-east through the western parts of the States of Pennsylvania and New York. Oil was observed on the surface of the ground within this region as far back as 1819, but the first company for utilising the oil was formed in 1853, and at first the only method of collecting the oil was by spreading cloths over the ground to soak it up. The first well drilled for the express purpose of obtaining oil was completed in 1859. There are now around 200,000 miles of oil pipelines in the United States, most of which carry oil from individual oilfields to the great refineries, though some are used to transport the refined products to the centres of consumption.

In 1885 nineteen-twentieths of the United States crude oil came from the Pennsylvanian fields. Since then the proportion has steadily diminished. Another group of fields lies to the south of the Great Lakes, in the States of Illinois, Indiana, and Ohio. The mid-Continent Fields lie in the States of Kansas and Oklahoma. The Gulf Coast Fields, as the name implies, lie near the coast of the Gulf of Mexico in the States of Texas and Louisiana.

The oilfields of the southern part of the State of California have also proved very remarkable. Centred round Los Angeles, they are largely the cause of the rapid rise of that town. California became the foremost producing state of America and was noted for its remarkable series of 'giant producers'. Before the Second World War a decline set in, and Texas and Oklahoma went ahead of California; but since then Oklahoma has gone back. States producing over 1m. tons of crude oil and natural gasoline in 1956 were:

	Million Metric Tons		Million Metric Tons
Texas . . . .	165	Arkansas . . . .	4
California . . . .	51	Montana . . . .	3
Louisiana . . . .	43	Kentucky . . . .	3
Oklahoma . . . .	32	Nebraska . . . .	2
Kansas . . . .	17	North Dakota . . . .	2
Wyoming . . . .	14	Indiana . . . .	2
New Mexico . . . .	13	Michigan . . . .	2
Illinois . . . .	11	Pennsylvania . . . .	1
Colorado . . . .	8	Other States . . . .	4
Mississippi . . . .	6		
		Total U.S.A. . . .	<u>383</u>

Despite the enormous increase in output in the United States, home demand has actually caught up on supply and while there is still considerable export trade, largely in motor fuel and lubricants, there is a still bigger import trade—chiefly in crude petroleum and residual fuel oils. On balance, the United States, though providing two-fifths of the world's production of petroleum, is a net importer.

**Canada.** Canada's chief oilfields are in Alberta. There have been notable developments, especially around Edmonton, as the result of discoveries in and since 1947. By 1956 Canada's production was nearly 24m. metric tons, and in that year Alberta alone had over 7,000 wells which were producing nearly 20m. metric tons. Already pipelines were taking oil eastwards to the Great Lakes and westwards across the Rockies to Vancouver in British Columbia. Simultaneously there was a big development of plans for utilising Alberta's abundant supplies of natural gas, from which can be extracted petrochemical products—butane, ethane, propane, etc.—now in great demand. Alberta accounts for about 85 per cent. of Canada's total production of petroleum, the balance being provided by the other Prairie Provinces, British Columbia, the North West Territories, Ontario and New Brunswick.

**Mexico** for long occupied second place amongst oil producers; in 1921 its output formed 29 per cent. of the world's total. Legislation and the disturbed state of the country interfered with the industry. Many of the wells became exhausted and no comparable new supplies were found. Elsewhere new fields were being tapped. As a result, for some years Mexico has produced under 2 per cent. of the world's total, though with the growth of world production Mexico's actual output has lately shown renewed development. The main fields lie near the coast, in the neighbourhood of Tampico.

**South America.** After the 1914–18 war, South America became a prime factor in oil supply, thanks mainly to Venezuela, which has become the world's second producer. Its oilfields lie in two main areas: in the west, around the shallow Gulf of Maracaibo, where production started, and in Eastern Venezuela. Colombia, Argentina, and Trinidad are next in rank, though their combined output is only a fraction of that of Venezuela. Lower in the scale is Peru, followed at some distance by Brazil, Chile, Ecuador, and Bolivia; but the combined output of these last four was under 2 per cent. of the total output in South America in 1956.

**Russia** has not only a large output but great potentialities. The Trans-Caucasian oilfields belong to a larger region, extending from the Crimea in the north-west along both sides of the Caucasus, and along the northern frontier of Persia to Merv and Sarakhs in the south-east. There are two small districts, one near the Caspian Sea, and one near the Black Sea, both on the south side of the Caucasus



Mountains, in which the supply of oil in this region is peculiarly abundant. By far the richer of the two is the district around Baku, on the Caspian, where inflammable oils have been known to exist from a very remote period, though it was not till the latter part of the nineteenth century that their working was taken in hand in earnest. In 1900 a pipeline over 140 miles long was opened from Baku to Mikhailovo, near the eastern end of the Suram tunnel, and this line was afterwards continued to Batum. Petroleum is produced also in other parts of Trans-Caucasia, and more abundantly in the Grozny and Maikop districts of Cis-Caucasia. Notable too are the Volga-Ural oilfields, now the major producing area in Russia, believed to be providing nearly two-thirds of the country's total output of oil. Closely linked with the Volga-Ural region are the oilfields of the Emba basin, to the north of the Caspian Sea and east of the Ural river.

**In Europe outside Russia** the principal districts producing mineral oil lie on the outer slopes of the Carpathian Mountains, with Roumania as the country of largest output. Next comes Western Germany, closely followed by Austria. Other countries in Western Europe where oil production is established include the Netherlands, France and Italy (including Sicily). In the last two production is comparatively small, but the development of recently discovered fields combined with intensive exploration is likely to lead to increasing output, especially in France. Over the past half century, there have been repeated endeavours to locate oil in the United Kingdom. During the 1914-18 war a small production was established at Hardstoft in Derbyshire—no longer being operated—but more important discoveries occurred in the Eakring area of Nottinghamshire in 1939. From this area the U.K. obtains most of her present output of petroleum (about 80,000 tons in 1956), other contributions coming from Formby in Lancashire and from two other fields in Nottinghamshire—Plungar and Egmanton—which are comparatively recent discoveries. Throughout Europe oil pipelines are spreading.

**Asia.** In Asia, Burma maintained an output of a million tons a year before the Second World War; afterwards it dropped to about 10,000 tons, now it is around  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. tons. There are small fields in the Punjab and Assam. Indonesia, as the Netherlands East Indies, yielded large supplies before the Second World War (up to 7m. tons and more in a year), and though production dropped to a few hundred thousand tons in the post-war troubles, it is now over 12m. tons. In British Borneo, which comprises North Borneo, Sarawak, and Brunei, there has been a notable post-war development. There are closely associated oilfields in Sarawak and Brunei, which have long yielded useful supplies. For some years after the war Brunei was the leading source of supply in the Commonwealth, and though it now ranks second to Canada it provides most of the 6m. tons obtained from British Borneo.

A very important field was worked in Persia (Iran) during the first half of the twentieth century by the Anglo-Iranian Oil Company, in which the British Government, in 1914, acquired a majority of the ordinary shares. In the spring of 1951, while proposals to increase the share of the profits payable to Iran were being negotiated, the Iranian Government nationalised the industry and repudiated the concession to the oil company. In the absence of an amicable settlement, exports of oil from Iran ceased, the company withdrew from the country, and in the autumn of 1952 the Iranian Government broke off diplomatic relations with the United Kingdom. They were resumed a year later and the oil industry was restarted on an international basis in 1954 (see p. 550). Production in Iran in 1956 was over 26m. tons, and by mid-1957 was at a rate greater than attained before the trouble began (32m. tons in 1950). In 1958, Iran and Turkey signed an agreement to build a 1,000-mile oil pipeline from the Kum oilfield in northern Iran to the Gulf of Iskenderun, either at Iskenderun itself or at Mersin.

Important though supplies from Iran have become, they are surpassed in two other Middle East countries—the Sheikdom of Kuwait, at the head of the Persian Gulf, and the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia, comprising most of the Arabian Peninsula. The respective outputs of these two countries in 1956 were 55m. and 49m. tons.

Iraq, north of Arabia, has also increased production since the war, though operations were temporarily disrupted by the closing of the Suez Canal and the damage done to Iraq's pipelines to the Mediterranean in the autumn of 1956. At that time Iraq had three pipelines from Kirkuk, the chief centre of supply, to the Mediterranean—two to the port of Tripoli, in the Lebanon, and one to Banias, on the Syrian coast. Operation of these pipelines was resumed in 1957, though at reduced throughput. In 1956 Iraq was the third largest producer in the Middle East, with an output of about 31m. tons, but in the following year it was overtaken by Iran.

A new source of supply which has made a promising beginning is the Sheikdom of Qatar, on the Persian Gulf. On a smaller scale oil is being produced in the Neutral Zone between Kuwait and Saudi Arabia, and on Bahrain Island. Underwater production in the Persian Gulf was begun off the coast of Saudi Arabia in 1957.

**Other Countries.** In Africa, oil is produced in Egypt on both sides of the Gulf of Suez. Oil reserves have also been located and are being developed in the French Sahara, which promises to become a major source of supply (see p. 650). In Australia the search for oil has met with little success. Oilfields are being worked in Dutch New Guinea, and sought for in Papua.

**Ozokerit** or earth-wax is a natural product resembling solid paraffin. It occurs in large quantities near the Caspian Sea, but the chief commercial supplies were formerly drawn from Drohobycz

and other places in Galicia (Poland). Germany exported large quantities during the Second World War. It is difficult to refine, but yields a peculiarly fine kind of wax very suitable for making candles of a high melting-point. The light given by such candles is as 10 : 7.5 of that from sperm, and as 10 : 7 of that from wax candles.

**Asphalt** or Mineral Pitch is a solid or nearly solid substance which results from the evaporation of the lighter fractions of natural oil or the thickening of petroleum through the absorption of oxygen, and is hence met with in nature either as a superficial layer above deposits of petroleum exposed to the air, or entirely occupying the place of such deposits so exposed. It is largely used for surfacing roads and side-walks. The chief source of supply of natural asphalt is Trinidad's famous Pitch Lake, where production rose to 171,000 tons in 1952, but fell to 137,000 tons in 1955. Argentina had a war output of 124,000 tons of asphaltite in 1945, but by 1955 supplies had practically ceased. In the United States another kindred product, Gilsonite, has reached an annual output of 70-80,000 tons. Asphalt Rock is still more largely produced in the United States, where sales in the 'fifties ranged between 1m. and 1½m. tons a year; it is also produced extensively in Italy (up to a third of a million tons a year). In Switzerland the cantons of Neuchâtel and Vaud are noted for the quality of their asphalt. One of the names of the Dead Sea in ancient times was the Asphalt Lake.

**GOLD and SILVER.** A table on the next page shows the world production of gold and silver and the output in leading countries in 1912, 1938, and 1955—that is, before the First World War, before the Second World War, and ten years after the close of hostilities. In both cases (gold and silver), countries are shown in descending order of production in 1955. In most countries the production of gold in that year was below the level of 1938, when the high price of gold, in terms of sterling and other 'devalued' currencies, had led to a great resuscitation of mining. In the Second World War the mining of gold and silver, unlike the production of petroleum, came to be of secondary importance. Exclusive of the U.S.S.R. in both years, the world total for 1955 was about four-fifths of the pre-war figure; but the countries listed in the table, despite their smaller output, still provided over 90 per cent. of the total. Among other sources of gold supply may be noted Japan (0.24m. fine ounces in 1955), Nicaragua (0.24m.), India (0.21m.), Peru (0.16m.), Chile (0.12m.), and Brazil (0.11m.).

The figures for silver tell much the same tale. The countries listed provided 88 per cent. of the diminished total in 1955, and remaining sources of supply were headed by Honduras (5.45m. fine ounces), Sweden (2.40m.), Morocco (2.32m.), Chile (1.71m.), Burma (1.54m.), Argentina (1.49m.), and Spain (1.47m.).

For the last fifty years, the biggest factor in the world's supply

of gold has been South Africa, mainly the Transvaal, which in 1955 provided 12,411,821 fine ounces out of a total of 14,601,400 fine ounces for the whole Union. In 1898, the year before the Boer War, the value of the gold produced in the Transvaal was £16m. After increasing steadily year by year from 1902 till 1912, when it amounted to £38·7m., the value of South Africa's gold production began to decline, and in 1922 it had dropped to £29·8m. A rapid rise followed and the value reached £44·2m. in 1929. During the Second World War it increased to over £60m. (both in 1941 and in 1942), but in 1949 it was down again to £49·7m. This was at the standard of very nearly 85s. per ounce fine, applied to an output of 11·7m. fine ounces; but at the price realised in 1955 the market value of the gold produced in that year was £182·7m. There have recently been important developments in the Orange Free State.

*World Production of Gold and Silver Ores.  
(Metal Content in Millions of Fine Troy Ounces.)*

Gold				Silver			
Country	1912	1938	1953	Country	1912	1938	1957
Union of S. Africa	9·11	12·16	17·03	Mexico	74·64	81·02	47·15
Russia (U.S.S.R.)	1·07	5·30	— <sup>1</sup>	U.S.A.	63·77	61·71	38·16
Canada	0·61	4·73	4·44	Canada	31·63	22·22	30·4
U.S.A.	4·52	4·27	1·79	Russia (U.S.S.R.)	0·20	7·00	— <sup>a</sup>
Australia	2·32	1·60	1·08	Peru	8·35	20·55	25·31
Ghana	0·35 <sup>2</sup>	0·68	0·79	Australia	13·96	15·55	15·74
Rhodesia	0·69	0·82	0·54	Japan	4·93	10·94	6·53
Philippines	—	0·90	0·38	Bolivia	4·05	6·37	5·38 <sup>4</sup>
Mexico	1·19	0·92	0·35	Belgian Congo	—	3·12	3·05
Colombia	0·14	0·52	0·33	Yugoslavia	—	2·45	2·59
Belgian Congo	—	0·39	0·37	Germany	4·98	7·00	6·63 <sup>5</sup>
World	22·55	37·60	29·00 <sup>6</sup>	World	224·31	268·00	180·00 <sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Estimates of the annual production of gold in Russia range between 2m. and 18m. fine ounces. Probably the actual figure exceeds that of South Africa. U.S. Bureau of Mines estimate is 9m.

<sup>2</sup> Total for British West Africa.

<sup>3</sup> No authentic data. U.S. Bureau of Mines estimate (1954) 25m. fine ounces.

<sup>4</sup> Exports.

<sup>5</sup> East and West Germany, estimated.

<sup>6</sup> Exclusive of U.S.S.R.

Gold generally occurs either in alluvial deposits (into which it has been washed by the degradation of the rocks from which the deposits are derived) or in quartz-veins in a free state. Often it is associated with various metallic sulphides, chiefly iron and copper pyrites, either in quartz-veins or in other forms in which these ores occur, but it is seldom worth extracting except from quartz-veins. From quartz-veins and other hard rocks gold has to be obtained by stamping or crushing, a process involving more expensive machinery than is used in digging for alluvial gold; but quartz-veins are sometimes capable of being profitably worked to a depth of 2,000 feet or more. The famous 'banket' of the Witwatersrand from which the bulk of the Transvaal gold is obtained is a hard quartz-ore conglomerate of Pre-Cambrian age, in which the gold is so finely disseminated as to be invisible to the naked eye. The bankets are now worked to a depth of over 7,000 feet.

Silver ores generally occur in veins, or irregular deposits. But

with regard to the occurrence of this metal, it is noteworthy that the silver-lead ore sometimes occurs in great quantity in large 'pockets' or cavities in limestone rocks, which are very productive for a time, but are soon exhausted. It is from such chambers that the greater part of the silver of the United States is obtained, and the production of the United States, having first been raised by this fact to an enormous extent, has since fluctuated, with a downward trend. It was after the discovery of the famous Comstock lode in Nevada in 1859 that the United States rose into importance as a silver-producing country. New discoveries have maintained the output and now the leading states are Idaho, Utah, Montana, Arizona, Colorado, and Nevada—all Rocky Mountain States.

Another matter of importance with reference to the production of silver is that a large proportion of the silver of the world is derived from the desilverisation of ores worked for other metals, principally, lead and copper. It is by the desilverisation of copper ore (at Mansfeld in the Harz) that a large proportion of the silver of Germany is produced.

**LEAD.** The consumption of this metal greatly increased during the nineteenth century in consequence of its use for the smaller gas and water pipes (now largely replaced by copper), roofing, and in various branches of manufacturing industry, as in lining the chambers used in making sulphuric acid. The high position formerly taken by the United Kingdom in the lead industry has been altered by the fact that lead ores are now generally treated in the countries in which they are produced, so that the former large import of lead ores is now replaced by that of lead or lead alloys—nearly all pig lead—chiefly from Australia and Canada. In 1957 the chief producing countries in order of importance were Australia, U.S.S.R., the United States, Mexico, Canada, Peru, Morocco, Yugoslavia, South Africa, and Spain. The value of lead ores varies greatly.

There are various industries subsidiary to that in lead. The most important of these is the extraction of silver, a small proportion of which is nearly always contained in galena, the chief lead ore, a sulphide of lead. White lead, which is very largely used in making painters' colours and in making the glaze on earthenware, is a carbonate of lead or a compound of lead and carbonic acid. Litharge is a lead oxide or compound of lead and oxygen, and is a yellowish substance used in making the glaze on earthenware and for other purposes. One form of this is called massicot, and from it is made by heating another compound called red lead or minium, which contains a greater proportion of oxygen, and is largely used in the making of flint glass and porcelain, as well as in making red paint.

**COPPER.** This metal is found in many if not in most countries of the world, sometimes pure (the native copper occasionally forming huge masses), more frequently in the form of ores, which

vary greatly in richness. In 1867 Chile, the northern half of which is intersected in every direction by veins of copper, contributed two-thirds of the entire copper-production of the world; but owing to the discovery of rich deposits of copper in other regions less remote from the great markets of the world, its share of the total copper-production has been greatly reduced. As late as 1880 it still stood first in the list of copper-producing countries, but the United States has since taken the lead and now supplies nearly a third (970,000 tons in 1957) of the world production of 3m. tons. Chile, Northern Rhodesia, and U.S.S.R. are close rivals for second place, their production in 1957 (1954 figures in brackets) being respectively 490,000 tons (333,000), 429,000 (379,000), and 465,000 (355,000). If the South Central Africa copper belt be regarded as a whole, extending from Northern Rhodesia over the Congo border into Katanga, it is easily the second largest source of world supply. In 1955, with Katanga providing 231,000 tons, the combined output of the area was 573,000 tons. The only other outstanding source of supply is Canada—309,000 tons in 1957. In that year the half-dozen countries mentioned were responsible for 85 per cent. of the total production. Production in 1957 was an all-time record.

The production of copper ores from the mines of the United Kingdom is now quite unimportant, but a certain quantity of ore is imported from Canada and there is a large import of copper which has undergone some preliminary treatment. This is converted into pure copper, chiefly at Swansea. It figures in the trade returns as 'Unwrought Copper, including rough copper of 94 per cent. copper content or over', and is divided into 'Electrolytic and Other Refined' and 'Blister or Rough'. The former and larger class of unwrought copper is supplied by Canada and the United States, Northern Rhodesia and the Belgian Congo, and Chile. Other unwrought copper comes almost entirely from Northern Rhodesia and Chile.

Being an excellent conductor of electricity, copper has had its use greatly extended of later years in making telegraph-wires for underground communication and marine cables. So many industries require copper that it is regarded as a 'key' metal. Apart from the electrical industry the chief uses of copper are in making pipes, brewers' and distillers' plant, in the making of armament, in ship-building, the making of plates for the printing of textiles, and in the dye industries. Copper is one of the ingredients in the two alloys known as **bronze** and **brass**, the former composed of copper and tin (a very hard compound), and the latter of copper and zinc.

**ZINC.** This metal was first known in Europe only as an import from China and India, where it had long been employed in the manufacture of brass. The principal ores are zincspar or calamine, a carbonate of zinc, and zinc-blende or sulphide of zinc, both impure, and the methods of treating them were discovered in Europe only

in the eighteenth century. In that continent Belgium, Germany and Poland led the way in actual zinc production from ores before the Second World War; but on the world stage the United States holds an unchallenged position in respect of both supplies of ores and output of zinc. World production of zinc ores, reckoned in terms of their metal content, totals from 2½m. to 3m. tons a year, and to this total the United States contributes around 500,000 tons. The hub of the United States industry is what is known as the Tri-State area (S.E. Kansas, S.W. Missouri and N.E. Oklahoma). Canada's contribution in 1957 was upwards of 368,000 tons, and Mexico, Russia and Australia were each credited with over 250,000 tons, out of a total of 2·8m. tons. The United States' output of zinc is much greater than the metal content of her own ore production. On the other hand, Canada extracts less than two-thirds of the zinc recoverable from her ore production, and Australia less than half. Mexico, which contributes so largely to the supply of zinc ores, herself produces only about 50,000 tons of the metal.

**TIN.** The tin-mines and other deposits of Cornwall and the adjacent parts of Devonshire, which perhaps supplied the Phœnicians with tin three thousand years ago, continued to be almost the sole source of supply of this metal till within the last two hundred years or so. The region just referred to is still the only significant place of production in Europe, but supplies from other parts of the world are now of overwhelming importance. In the years 1938-53 the annual production of tin ore in Great Britain, reckoned in terms of metal, declined from 2,000 tons to under 1,000 tons, whereas world production in 1938 was 164,000 tons, and intensified production early in the Second World War brought the total in 1941 up to 241,000 tons. Nearly two-thirds of the world production came from S.E. Asia, Malaya alone supplying over a quarter of the whole, with the Netherlands East Indies (now Indonesia) a good second. There was a big drop in production after the Japanese occupation of S.E. Asia during the later war years, and after the war the difficulty of securing new machinery (dredgers, &c.), coupled with the unrest in the Far East, made recovery a slow process; but in 1957 world production, exclusive of Russia, was returned as 174,000 tons, or rather more than in 1938. Malaya contributed 35 per cent. of the total, Indonesia 16 per cent., and with 7 per cent. from Thailand, S.E. Asia was again providing 60 per cent. of the known world supply.

Among individual countries elsewhere, Bolivia is of outstanding importance. Before the war it made a good third to Malaya and the Netherlands East Indies, with exports of 25,000 tons in 1938; and when supplies from S.E. Asia fell away during the war, Bolivia became the leading country of supply, a position it retained up to 1947, with annual exports of 30-40,000 tons. In 1957, with exports of nearly 28,000 tons, Bolivia was below both Malaya and Indonesia,

though still a close competitor for second place. In Africa, the Belgian Congo and Nigeria are considerable sources of supply, the former averaging about 15,000 tons a year and the latter around 9,500 tons. China is credited with producing about 10,000 tons, and Australia has an output of 2,000 tons.

To a large extent Malaya, Indonesia, and the Belgian Congo have developed their own smelting industries, but much of the world supply of tin is extracted in the United Kingdom and the United States, both of which import large quantities of ore for the purpose. The United States' own production of ore is negligible, and it has only come to the front in smelter production of tin as a result of the Second World War.

Tin ore is met with either in veins (or lodes) in the rock, or in alluvial deposits. The former is called mine-tin, the latter stream-tin. The stream-tin, being generally near the surface, is naturally the easier to obtain where it is abundant; and it is the abundance of such deposits in Malaya that makes that part of the world such an important source of supply at the present day. Most of the tin ore of the world is the oxide, cassiterite, which being both heavy and stable, tends to be found concentrated at the base of gravel and can easily be separated by washing from the lighter constituents. Tin is mostly imported in the metallic state or as a concentrate for further refinement. It is largely used to cover sheets of iron or steel with a coating as a protection against rust, and thus to form tin-plates, or, alloyed with lead, to form terne-plates.

**MERCURY or QUICKSILVER**, the only metal fluid at ordinary temperatures, has long been principally obtained in Europe from the Spanish mines of Almaden in the Sierra Morena, which were worked even under the Romans. In 1942, at the height of the Second World War, Spain supplied 75 per cent. of the mercury imported into the United Kingdom, and in the following year 100 per cent. Other sources of supply include the Amiata mines in Tuscany (Italy), and the Idria mines in Carniola (formerly part of Austria-Hungary; in the possession of Italy between the two World Wars; now held by Yugoslavia). While Italy had the Idria mines, her production of mercury marched with that of Spain, and even without them (1m. lb. a year) she has more than kept pace with the development of Spanish supplies; in 1957 Italy's production of mercury was above 4·8m. lb., and Spain's was 3·3m. lb. Since the middle of the last century, when the New Almaden mines were opened in California (Santa Clara co.) and were followed by the New Idria mines (San Benito co.), large quantities of mercury have been produced in the United States, and at the close of the Second World War her production vied with that of Spain and Italy, as also did Mexico's, each of these four countries having an output in 1944 of between 2 and 3m. lb. Later, production fell both in the United States and in Mexico but rose again in



1957 to over 2.5m. lb. in the States and over 1.6m. lb. in Mexico. Canada has large supplies which she developed as a war measure, but since then production has been small and erratic.

The uses of mercury are various. In its pure state it is chiefly employed in the making of scientific instruments. Combined with other metals, it forms what are called amalgams, which are soft and easily fusible. An amalgam of mercury and tin was once largely used in the silvering of mirrors, but is now generally replaced by electro-deposits of silver. In mining for silver and gold these metals are frequently extracted by employing mercury to form amalgams with them, and the large amount of mercury required for this purpose in the extensive silver-mines of California and Nevada, near the chief seat of the United States production of quicksilver, is one great cause of the extensive demand in the United States for the latter metal.

**IRON.** The uses of iron are too numerous to specify, and for the most part too familiar to need specifying. No other metal can fully supply its place. No other metal is produced in such abundance or over so large an area of the world. At the present day, indeed, none but the most backward tribes in a few out-of-the-way islands and corners are unacquainted with its working. Its use in the past goes back to a remote antiquity—how remote it is impossible to say. The iron implement brought to light in 1837 by Mr. J. R. Hill wallied up in one side of the Great Pyramid of Gizeh carries us back over 5,000 years. The explanation of the rarity of the remains of ancient iron implements as compared with those of bronze is to be found in the fact that under the influence of air and moisture iron is eaten away so rapidly that its preservation for a long period is possible only under very exceptional conditions. So liable is it to disappear that, of all the numerous articles of iron that must have existed in ancient Egypt, the remnants that have been discovered do not weigh in all more than a few pounds, and this in a country with a dry climate specially suited to the preservation of such articles.

The discoverers of the New World stated that the inhabitants of the parts at which they first touched, the West Indies and Darien, were unacquainted with iron, and their statements have frequently been made to apply to the whole of America, including the civilised empires of Mexico and Peru. But against this idea there is the express testimony of several contemporaries of the first explorers—testimony from which it appears that the working of iron was practised before the arrival of the Spaniards in various parts of the American continent, and there is evidence of other kinds to show that it must have been so in other parts regarding which we have no direct statements on this head.

But ancient and widespread as the iron industry is, its rapid growth in modern times, and in particular since the close of the eighteenth century, is an astonishing fact, or would be so if we did

not bear in mind the other great developments in industry and commerce within that period. In 1740 the whole production of iron in England is estimated to have been only about 18,000 tons; even in 1796, after the introduction of spinning machinery, only 125,000 tons. The enormous growth since then—it reached 10m. tons in Britain alone in 1913—is the result of the vast demand for this material which has arisen from its use in machinery, railways, shipbuilding, and the making of bridges and other structures. Iron is, in fact, the second of the two great material factors concerned in maintaining modern industry and commerce on a large scale, coal being the other. The history of iron in many of its details is of singular interest, not only as showing how the volume of iron production has been raised to its present pitch, but also because some of the facts in that history have had an important effect on the geographical distribution of the industry.

Iron, like so many other metals, is not found native in nature but has to be extracted from ores, which vary greatly in their richness and the nature of the other substances with which the iron is combined. The ores have to be smelted or reduced to a metallic condition by heat and chemical action, and most of the iron then sinks to the bottom of the furnace and is run off into moulds. This is what is called **pig-iron** or **cast-iron**, and is never pure. It always contains a considerable proportion of carbon, of which pure charcoal is one of the forms; sometimes it contains substances much more injurious to its quality, the most prejudicial being **sulphur** and **phosphorus**. Even the carbon is injurious to some extent, and renders cast-iron brittle and unfit for use in the making of anything which has to stand a severe strain. It is for this reason that, by driving out almost all the carbon, cast-iron is converted into wrought or malleable iron, which does not harden greatly when cooled suddenly. This is usually effected by a process called puddling, which consists in remelting the cast-iron on the hearth of a furnace, and stirring it about when molten with a rake, which causes the carbon to escape and get burnt up in the intensely heated air of the furnace. As the carbon escapes the fluid becomes pasty, and the iron is then brought away in large lumps, and afterwards hammered into rude slabs called blooms, and rolled out to form bars, sheets, &c. In this form of iron there remains an admixture of slag or 'cinder.' The process of driving out the carbon was greatly quickened by the invention in 1784 of the reverberatory furnace, in which the charge of iron is placed in a separate chamber from the fuel and thus protected from the carburising action due to the combustion. This invention was due to Henry Cort in England, who in the previous year had introduced grooved rollers in rolling-mills for the production of bars of definite shapes.

The material so formed is very tenacious and tolerably hard,

but for some purposes not sufficiently hard. For the making of most machinery, weapons, and cutlery of all sorts, a kind of iron is required which, besides being very tenacious, must also be flexible, elastic, and very hard; and for these and other purposes iron is converted into **steel**, which is nothing else than a form of iron containing a small proportion of carbon. The term steel is now confined to products which contain between 0·3 and 2·2 per cent. carbon, that is, enough to make them harden greatly when cooled suddenly, but not enough to prevent them from being usefully malleable at some temperature. The name of weld-steel is given to all varieties of iron made by the old puddling process above described, but containing carbon within the limits stated as well as an admixture of slag. The best steel, however, is free from slag.

The history of the iron industry consists in a gradual series of improvements in the methods by which all these processes are carried on. Only a few of the great steps in advance can here be mentioned. In many cases, the most important improvements, associated with the names of certain inventors, are only slight modifications of methods which in the course of the gradual development of this industry had been previously suggested; modifications, however, which were just what was needed to make the methods practically useful.

In ancient times, when the methods of working iron were very defective, good iron could be made only from the best ores, and hence districts containing ores of fine quality had the principal trade in iron. During the early history of Greece certain tribes inhabiting the northern slopes of the tableland of Asia Minor, to the west of Trebizond, among others the Chalybes, seem to have carried on a large trade in iron for this reason, and from them the Greeks derived their word *Chalups* for hard iron or steel. To the Romans were known many deposits of iron ore, including the rich ores of Bilbao, in the north of Spain. Remains of Roman ironworks are found in various parts of Great Britain, but so imperfect were their methods of smelting, so small a proportion of the iron was obtained from the ore, that the slag or refuse material from the smelting furnaces of the Forest of Dean, in Gloucestershire, supplied at a later period the only ore required for the furnaces of that region for a period of between two and three hundred years. At the same time these old Roman methods were very expensive.

Down to a comparatively recent date one reason of the limited and costly production of iron was that wood or charcoal was the only fuel used in smelting; and this fact had an important effect both on the geographical distribution of the iron industry, and on the aspect of those regions in which that industry was long pursued. Iron could be smelted only in the neighbourhood of forests, and in process of time forests were cleared in feeding the furnaces. The forest from which the Weald takes its name perished in supplying fuel to

the iron-furnaces of Kent and Sussex, the last of which was blown out early in the nineteenth century. An English parliamentary report of the year 1719 makes strong complaint of the devastations wrought by the ironworks in the counties of Warwick, Stafford, Worcester, Hereford, Monmouth, Gloucester, and Salop. About twenty years later the English import of foreign iron was computed at about 20,000 tons annually—ten per cent. more than the home production. The greater abundance of wood in Germany as compared with England was one important reason why the iron industry of the former country was greater than that of the latter even as late as the earlier part of the eighteenth century.

Coal was first used with practical success in the smelting of iron by Dud Dudley (son of Lord Dudley) in 1619, but the practice was then followed only by himself, and the knowledge of it died with him. The use of coal in the form of coke was introduced by the Darbys of Coalbrookdale early in the eighteenth century, but the process was kept a secret by them, and it was not till after the middle of that century that it became generally known. Some coals, such as the splint coal of the Glasgow district, are capable of being used in the blast-furnace even without being made into coke. Though a great economy is effected by the use of coke or coal, yet even in the improved furnaces of the present day, such fuel does not make so pure an iron as charcoal, inasmuch as it usually contains sulphur and other ingredients more or less noxious. In Sweden, a country rich in forests, charcoal is still used in some iron smelting-works, and to this fact the high quality of Swedish iron is partly due.

Besides coke or other fuel, it is necessary in the case of most kinds of iron ore to put into the smelting- or blast-furnace along with the ore a certain quantity of a material intended to facilitate the reduction. The material so employed, called a flux, is generally limestone or lime; and consequently facilities for obtaining this mineral form an important geographical factor affecting the prosperity of the iron industry in different places. For some kinds of ore, as for that called red hematite, which contains 55–70 per cent. of iron, this is not always required. Most kinds of ore, too, require to be roasted previously to being put in the blast-furnace—an operation performed in kilns or formerly by laying out the ore in a heap mixed with coal in the open air and setting fire to the heap at the end from which the prevailing wind blew. In the case of blackband iron ore, there is generally enough matter of the nature of coal in the ore to render the addition of coal unnecessary in roasting. The effect of the roasting is to reduce the bulk of the ore which has to be put into the blast-furnace, and at the same time to remove by burning most of the sulphur and other substances that can be volatilised. For red hematite this operation is considered unnecessary.

After the introduction of coal and coke in smelting, the next great step in the economising of fuel was due to the invention of the hot-blast, that is, the practice of raising the air used in blowing the smelting-furnaces to a high temperature before introducing it into the furnace. This invention, due to Mr. Neilson of Glasgow, was first applied in 1828. In 1832 more saving was effected (first in Germany) by using the waste gases of the furnace to heat the blast. About 1870, in the best-constructed furnaces the blast had a temperature of only about 800° F., but afterwards it was sometimes raised to as high as 1,650° F. Such high temperatures were, however, found to be rapidly destructive to 'pipe-stoves' of the old type, and these are consequently now superseded by a new type of furnace in which the blast is usually maintained between 900° and 1,200°, occasionally at as much as 1,400° F. Blast furnaces have also been enlarged and improved in construction. In 1880 an out-turn of 115 tons of iron per day was exceptionally large; now the normal output of an average furnace is up to 500 tons a day. Once a modern blast-furnace is shut down it takes two months to restart it, or, if a new lining and hearth are required, about four months. The waste gas which used to be seen burning at the top of the furnaces is now utilised to heat the boilers of the engine employed to work the blast and the hot-air stoves—an idea which originated in France in 1814, though it has been applied in a sufficiently simple manner only since about 1850 (first in South Wales). By all these means the consumption of coal has been so greatly reduced that, whereas in 1796 six tons of coal were required to produce one ton of iron, two tons of coal ( $1\frac{1}{4}$  of coke) now suffice for that production. A further great economy in the iron industry has been made where the iron is worked up in the same establishments in which it is extracted from the ore. The gas of the blast-furnaces is then employed also to drive the rolling-mills and other engines, and the heat of the molten cast-iron is not lost till the iron is delivered as rails or in some other form. Recently iron ores have also been smelted by electricity. It is important to distinguish between electric iron and electric steel furnaces. Electric iron furnaces are used in countries which have abundant water power but little coking coal, as Norway, Sweden and Switzerland. In Britain and the United States pig-iron is made only in blast furnaces. Electric furnaces are largely used in making ferro-alloys, but their main function is the production of specialised steels. Both in Britain and in the United States roughly 5 per cent. of the total output of steel comes from electric furnaces.

Further great developments of the iron industry have been due to the inventions which have done so much to cheapen the production and extend the use of steel as compared with wrought iron. The old method of making steel by the process called cementation is still the best, and indeed the only method by which steel of the quality required for making good cutlery can be manufactured.

This method consists in sealing up bars of wrought iron in fireclay troughs along with a quantity of charcoal, in which the iron bars are embedded, each separated by a layer of charcoal from the others, and exposing them thus to a high temperature for a week or ten days, according to the quality of steel required. At the end of the period the iron is found to have combined with the requisite amount of carbon, but to have become porous and rough on the surface, on which account it is known as blistered steel. This, after being condensed by hammering and rolling, and fused in crucibles to get rid of all traces of slag or cinder, forms the finest kind of cast steel. The hardest steel thus made has about 1.2 per cent. of carbon. The process, from its nature, is obviously a costly one.

There are now many methods of producing **cast-steel** on a large scale, and three of these are sufficiently widely practised to have a geographical interest. The first of these, introduced before 1860, is that which is associated with the name of Sir Henry Bessemer, being employed in the production of what is called Bessemer steel, although the method as now practised in most of the great iron-countries involves an important improvement introduced by Mr. Mushet. By the Bessemer process molten pig-iron is poured into a vessel known as a converter lined with a highly refractory material, usually ganister, so arranged that cold air can be blown through the molten mass, burning away both the carbon and the silicon entirely. The due proportion of carbon is afterwards added and mixed with the fused metal by a repetition of the blowing. As originally devised, this process was found to be unsatisfactory except in the case of a few ores. The resulting product was very brittle, and Mr. Mushet's improvement consisted in adding the carbon in a compound containing manganese, which serves to correct the fault to which this brittleness is due. The compounds employed are spiegeleisen and ferro-manganese, which are made from certain iron ores rich in manganese, such as are found in Spain, the Siegerland district in Germany, Greece, Sweden, and elsewhere. When the ore used in making the pig-iron put into the converter itself contains a sufficient amount of manganese, the use of spiegeleisen or ferro-manganese is not necessary. The amount of iron that may be converted into steel in a single converter at one time by this process varies according to the capacity of the converter. A common size is the 12-15-ton Bessemer converter.

Another process, known as the Siemens-Martin or open-hearth process, differs from the Bessemer process only in that the operations are performed in a different kind of furnace, in which the air employed to remove the carbon plays over the molten metal instead of being blown through it. Some such furnaces even as early as 1902 had a capacity of as much as 100 tons. A common capacity is 50 to 80 tons.

Even with the improvement of Mushet these two processes

are not applicable to all kinds of pig-iron. Neither of them removes phosphorus if the pig-iron happens to contain it. Now steel is rendered brittle by even a very slight proportion of this ingredient. In the best tool steel it is considered that the proportion of phosphorus should not exceed one part in five thousand, in bridge steel one in two thousand, and in rail steel one in one thousand, and with the increasing weight and speed of trains railway engineers became more exacting in this respect. The processes for making steel and ingot iron on a large scale can accordingly be applied in their original form only to iron made from ores in which phosphorus is not contained, or is present only in very small amount indeed. Such ores are known comprehensively as Bessemer ores. In the Old World, the only ore from which iron of this quality can be made in large quantity is the hematite, which occurs in the north-west of England, in northern and southern Spain, in Greece, Sweden, Algeria, and on the island of Elba. So long, therefore, as no process was known for making cast steel on a large scale so as to overcome the above-mentioned drawback, the geographical distribution of these ores was obviously greatly in favour of the English iron and steel industry, for not only did England herself possess stores of the valuable ore in the most convenient situation, but ores from Italy, Spain, and Algeria could be landed after a sea-voyage close beside the blast-furnaces of Newport and Middlesbrough, whereas on the continent a railway journey, or at least a transshipment to river or canal boats, was in most cases necessary to bring them to the districts where the iron industry is pursued.

It was accordingly a discovery of the highest importance for the future distribution of the iron and steel industry when a method was devised by which phosphorus could be removed from the pig-iron in the process of converting it into steel. A practicable method of doing this was invented by Mr. Thomas and Mr. Gilchrist of Middlesbrough, in association with others. The method consists in using for the lining of an ordinary Bessemer converter a composition which, while serving the other purposes of the lining, has such a chemical action as to remove any phosphorus that may be present in the iron poured into the converter. Lime is mixed with the lining to serve as what chemists call a 'base,' with which the phosphorus, quitting the iron, may combine; and the process is hence known as the basic process. If the proportion of phosphorus be too great to be removed by that means alone, additional lime is added in some form in the converter along with the metal. This process was first practically applied in 1879, and besides making the ores extracted round Middlesbrough (the Cleveland ores) for the first time available for the manufacture of mild steel or ingot iron, has enabled the mainland of Europe to compete with the United Kingdom in the iron industry more keenly than hitherto.

The basic process was first applied in the United States in 1890, but has since then made rapid progress. In the United Kingdom it is not so largely adopted as it now is both on the continent and in the United States, the reason probably being that it is not so conveniently applied to the open-hearth as to the Bessemer method of making steel, and open-hearth plates are those which are preferred by shipbuilders, to whom is due a large demand for British steel. Later processes have, however, been devised for facilitating the manufacture of basic steel by the open-hearth method.

In recent years various compounds of steel with other metals have been made for special purposes, increasingly with the use of the electric furnace. One of these is **nickel-steel**, which contains from 3 to 3·5 per cent. of nickel, and about 0·25 per cent. of carbon, and is much tougher and stronger than ordinary steel, and yet extremely ductile. The combination of properties causes nickel-steel to be used as material for the armour plates of war-vessels—at least when the outer surface is hardened by some carburizing process, followed by sudden cooling. **Manganese steel**, which contains from 12 to 14 per cent. of manganese and 1·5 per cent. of carbon, has extraordinary tenacity, but appears to be too expensive a product for ordinary use. This largely arises from its extreme and irreducible hardness, which necessitates it being cut by special instead of the ordinary tools. **Chrome steel** contains about 2 per cent. of chromium and 0·8 per cent. of carbon. When suddenly cooled it is not only extremely hard but highly elastic, which makes it peculiarly suitable for use in the making of armour-piercing projectiles. It is also proof against the burglar's drill. **Stainless steel**, which is used for making cutlery as well as a great variety of other articles liable to be exposed to contact with water in any form, contains about 13 per cent. of chromium and other metals, according to the special type. What is known as **high-speed steel** is an alloy containing in its best varieties between 5 and 6 per cent. of chromium and about 18 per cent. of tungsten, with less than 1 per cent. carbon. It remains hard at a temperature of even 750° F., and is hence well suited for the manufacture of turning lathes used in cutting thick slices, a process in which the great friction develops very high temperatures. Where lightness as well as great hardness and power of resisting shock is important, as in the steel used in some parts of automobiles, a small quantity of vanadium is now frequently combined with chromium. Steel containing both nickel and chromium is regarded as essential in the making of aeroplanes.

From the nature of the **iron industry** as now pursued it follows that it is most largely developed in those countries which stand first in commerce and manufacturing industry generally. The consumption of iron and steel is relatively high in two regions: first, one in



which there are vast movements of produce, as in new and sparsely peopled countries in which iron and steel enter largely into use in connection with the transport and handling of grain, &c.; and, second, one in which raw materials are subjected on a great scale to changes of form. It is in the latter, that is, in the manufacturing countries, that the demand is greatest in the aggregate, and some of the most important products of the industry required in the thinly peopled regions, such as rails, rods, sheets, structural forms, wire, &c., can be transported in a finished form or a form that involves little or no waste in their ultimate use. The following tables show the production of iron ore, pig-iron, and steel in various countries over a period of years.

*Production of Iron Ore (in million tons).*

Country.	1913.	1921.	1929.	1932.	1938.	1946.	1955.
United States .	61.98	29.56	73.03	9.85	28.45	71.89	103.03
U.S.S.R. .	— <sup>1</sup>	0.13	7.72	12.00	26.11	22.00	70.80
France .	21.56	13.89	49.92	27.21	32.61	15.98	49.53
United Kingdom	16.00	3.48	13.22	7.33	11.86	12.17	16.18
Sweden .	7.35	6.36	11.28	3.25	13.71	6.76	17.08
Germany .	28.15 <sup>2</sup>	5.80	6.27	1.32	10.97	4.04	17.04 <sup>3</sup>
Six leading countries .	135.04	59.22	161.44	60.96	123.71	132.84	273.66
World Total .	—	72.00	200.00	75.80	165.90	154.00	368.00

<sup>1</sup> Not available. <sup>2</sup> Including Lorraine. <sup>3</sup> West Germany 15.44m. tons; East Germany 1.60m. tons

The United Kingdom led the world in the production of iron ore till near the end of the nineteenth century; then it began to be outstripped by the United States in 1889 and later by Germany and France. Production in the United States, though subject to violent fluctuations, has gone up by leaps and bounds, and during and since the Second World War it has reached peak figures of over 100m. tons. With a production in 1957 of 83m. tons the U.S.S.R. has gone rapidly ahead; on a smaller scale Sweden has also markedly increased her output, and France and West Germany have both made good recoveries. The United Kingdom has barely regained her level of production in 1913. Canada came to the fore in 1955, more than doubling her output to 14.5m. tons in one year, further to 20m. in 1957.

As shown by the next table, the production of pig-iron has also fluctuated considerably in the leading countries, but throughout the years covered by the table the United States has easily held the lead. Germany, formerly second, has twice suffered setback through her defeat in World Wars. Russia's output is difficult to assess but, as estimated, she led all but the United States after the Second World War. In recent years the United Kingdom, Western Germany and France have been close rivals. The table of steel production tells

much the same story; but in this case the United Kingdom makes a better showing, and is well ahead of France.

*Average Annual Production of Pig-iron and Ferro-alloys*

Country.	Million tons.					Percentages of world totals.				
	1911-13	1927-29	1932	1936-38	1957	1911-13	1927-29	1932	1936-38	1957
U. Kingdom .	9.7	7.2	3.6	7.7	14.3	13.7	8.0	9.2	8.4	7.0
United States .	28.1	39.1	8.8	29.1	72.1	39.5	43.5	22.6	31.8	34.7
Germany .	17.3	12.7	3.9	16.2	19.7 <sup>1</sup>	24.4	14.1	10.0	17.7	9.5
France .	4.8	9.0 <sup>1</sup>	6.8 <sup>1</sup>	6.6	11.7	6.8	10.0	17.5	7.2	5.6
Russia (U.S.S.R.) .	4.0	3.4	6.1	14.5	36.4	5.6	3.8	15.7	15.9	17.2
Belgium .	2.2	3.8	2.7	3.1	5.5	3.1	4.2	7.0	3.4	2.6
Total above six countries .	66.1	75.2	31.9	77.2	159.7	93.1	83.6	82.0	84.4	76.9
World Total .	71.0	89.9	38.9	91.46	207.7	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0

<sup>1</sup> Including the Saar (1-2m. tons).    <sup>2</sup> West Germany 18.1m. tons; East Germany 1.6m. tons.

*Production of Steel Ingots and Castings (in million tons).*

Country.	1913.	1930.	1932.	1938.	1944.	1946.	1957.
United States .	31.3	40.7	13.7	28.3	80.0	59.5	100.6
Germany .	17.3	11.2	5.5	22.3	18.0	2.7	27.0 <sup>a</sup>
United Kingdom	7.7	7.3	5.3	10.4	12.1	12.7	21.7
France .	4.6	11.2 <sup>1</sup>	7.0 <sup>1</sup>	6.0	3.0	4.3	13.9
Belgium .	2.4	3.3	2.7	2.2	0.6	2.3	6.2
Russia (U.S.S.R.)	—	5.7	5.8	17.5	—	11.8	50.2
Total, above six countries .	63.3	79.4	40.0	86.7	113.7	93.3	219.6
World Total .	75.4	93.4	49.7	107.6	148.0	107.7	287.2

<sup>1</sup> Including the Saar (1-2m. tons).    <sup>a</sup> West Germany 24.1m. tons; East Germany 2.9m. tons.

The countries listed in the foregoing tables account for some 77 per cent. of world production. Several others produce iron and steel on a considerable scale. Japan now outvies Belgium. Her output of pig-iron, which was 2½m. tons in 1938, rose in the war and slumped in defeat, but in 1957 was over 7m. tons. Canada, Czechoslovakia, Luxembourg, the Saar, Poland, China, each produced 3m. tons; Australia, South Africa, India, Austria, Italy, Sweden, Brazil, each 1-2m. tons. There is roughly corresponding output of steel. In 1957 Japan produced 12.4m. tons; Canada, Italy, Czechoslovakia, Poland, China, each 4-7m. tons; Luxembourg, the Saar, Sweden, Australia, each 2-4m. tons; South Africa, India, Austria, Hungary, Spain, Brazil, each 1-2m. tons. Sweden's manufacture of iron and steel is favoured by plentiful supplies both of charcoal fuel for smelting and of hydro-electric power, but her production absorbs only a small part of her output of iron ores, which are excellent and much in demand for export.

On page 329 a map of Britain shows the chief centres of iron ore

production. The indications of relative importance on this map are based on values, not quantities, seeing that a ton of iron ore means in different cases very different things, in consequence of differences in richness and freedom from noxious impurities. Such maps do not indicate all the advantages of situation. In Germany, the iron industry was greatly stimulated by the improvement in the Rhine navigation which was carried out towards the close of the nineteenth century.

In the United States the greatest production is far from any coal-fields; but this is compensated by the mode in which the deposits occur. They lie in enormous quantities, capable of being quarried with exceptional ease, and of being handled and transported both by water and rail at an exceedingly low cost. On the lakes the ore is carried in large vessels, some of more than 12,000 tons, which, on reaching the lake-port for which they are bound, may have their entire cargo carried in six or seven trains of 50-ton steel railway wagons to a great iron- and steel-working centre like Pittsburgh; whence return cargoes of coal can always be obtained in consequence of the abundance of coal at that centre and its deficiency in the region round the lakes.

But, further, we have to consider the market. In this case the development of the industry was greatly assisted in Germany and the United States (as well as other countries) by protective tariffs securing so far as possible the home market. With regard to that point all that the geographer has to note is the extent and importance of the market so secured, and it is a vital consideration that within its own borders the United States offers the largest (the wealthiest, though not the most populous) free-trade market in the world for the products of this as of most other industries, and that pre-1913 Germany (the German Customs Union) was one of the largest on the mainland of Europe. But apart from that it is important to remember that the great markets for iron and steel products are the most advanced industrial countries generally—for the most part so situated that they can be reached from inland centres of production in Europe and North America without break of bulk.

These industries demand the highest organising capacity and great supplies of skilled labour of all kinds, and hence are of such a nature as to be much more difficult to establish in small local markets than the textile industries. This is particularly true of some of the more complicated branches of the iron industry. And hence in the more advanced industrial countries we find a rapid expansion of the machine industries compensating in some measure a less rapid advance of those connected with textiles. This is illustrated by the high place still occupied by machinery amongst British exports as shown in the tables in the section on Britain. Yet under this head also we can see the operation of decentralising tendencies.

Though our rivals were fewer in number in this than in the textile industries, still for many years before the Second World War the exports of machinery from the United States and Germany had been growing more rapidly than our own.

The very rapid increase in the consumption of iron in recent years has frequently excited apprehensions as to the possible exhaustion of the supply. These apprehensions led to an inquiry being made into the subject at the instance of a committee appointed by the Eleventh International Geological Congress held at Stockholm in 1910. The results given in the summary of the returns by Professor Hjalmar Sjögren are admittedly to be regarded as only very rough estimates, but they are here reproduced for what they are worth. The reserves are classed as actual and potential, according as they refer to areas then actually worked, or areas containing ores that might become available through the extension of the means of communication and the improvement of our technical knowledge.

	Actual reserves. Millions of tons.		Potential reserves. Millions of tons.	
	Ore.	Iron Content.	Ore.	Iron Content.
Europe . .	12,032	4,733	41,029	12,085 + Considerable
America . .	9,855	5,154	81,822	40,731 + Enormous
Australia . .	136	74	69	37 + Considerable
Asia . .	260	156	457	283 + Enormous
Africa . .	125	75	Many thousand	Many thousand
	22,408	10,192	>123,377	>53,136 + Enormous

As the present annual production of pig-iron approaches 200m. tons, and that of steel is well over 200m. tons, it thus appears that the 'actual' reserves would not suffice for half a century, even if there were no further increase in the annual production. Of the known deposits of ore containing 60 per cent. of iron or more, by far the most extensive are those of northern Sweden, estimated to amount to 1,035 millions of metric tons, containing 673m. tons of iron. Next come the deposits of Krivoi Rog, estimated at 86m. tons, with 53.5m. tons of iron. The total quantity of such ores classified as 'actual reserves' is only 1,300m. tons, in addition to which there are estimated to be 687m. of 'potential reserves'.<sup>1</sup> But since the date of this survey vast new deposits have been located in many parts of the world, e.g. in Russia, South America, eastern Canada, and Africa.

**SALT.** This product, so universally used and so widely distributed, is more an article of local production in almost all countries than an article of international commerce. It is obtained both from

<sup>1</sup> *The Iron Resources of the World*, vol. i, p. xxi.

in South Africa, Southern Rhodesia, Turkey, the Philippines and—on the basis of her planned production—Russia. Chromium-cobalt alloys, sometimes with the addition of tungsten or molybdenum, are used under the name of stellite in the making of high-speed cutting tools containing no iron.

**Arsenic** is another metal chiefly used, not by itself but in its compounds, which are largely manufactured in the United States, Germany, England, and elsewhere for use in medicine, in the manufacture of weed-killers and insecticides, and in the preparation of green pigments.

**Bismuth**, chiefly used to give increased fusibility to various metallic alloys, and in making certain colouring matters. The ore is produced mainly in Peru, Mexico, Canada, Korea, Yugoslavia.

**Platinum**, a rare metal, but indispensable in the chemical arts on account of its resistance to heat and acids, which renders it the best material for making crucibles and vessels required for certain purposes. It is obtained in Canada, the Ural region of Russia, South Africa, the United States and Colombia.

**Nickel**, sometimes used, among other purposes, for coining; formerly produced mainly in Germany, now mostly in Ontario (three-quarters of the world's supply is obtained in the Sudbury district), Russia, Cuba, New Caledonia. The metal is used in steel-making and in plating. Monel is an alloy of nickel (nearly 70 per cent.), copper, iron, and manganese, strong and easily machined and little liable to corrosion: so called after its inventor.

**Cobalt**, in one of its forms found associated with nickel, is mainly produced in the Belgian Congo (two-thirds of the world supply). Rhodesia, Morocco, Canada and the U.S.A. supply the balance. It is chiefly used in the arts, in the form of the oxide, as a blue colouring-matter for pottery and glass; smalt (finely ground glass coloured with this oxide) is used in colouring paper, &c.

**Aluminium** is a metal valuable for its lightness, bright colour, its resistance to the action of air even in the presence of moisture, and the excellence of its alloys, especially aluminium-magnesium (Duralumin). Aluminium is now sometimes used for the transmission of electrical currents, giving nearly twice the carrying power of copper. The metal is made from two compounds found in nature—cryolite, obtained from the west coast of Greenland; and bauxite, of which large quantities are mined in many countries. Aluminium is an essential component of aircraft, and the world production of 3.9m. tons of bauxite in 1938 increased during the Second World War to 13.4m. tons in 1943, the United States alone producing 6.2m. In 1945 world production was back at the 1938 level, but in 1955 it rose to 16.5m. tons, the chief producers being Dutch Guiana (3m.), British Guiana (2.4m.), Jamaica (2.6m.), the United States (1.8m.), France (1.5m.), Hungary (1.2m.), U.S.S.R. (1.05m.), and Yugoslavia ( $\frac{3}{4}$ m.). Output

was higher still in 1956, when Jamaica headed the British supplies, though she had not begun to produce bauxite till 1952.

The metal is extracted by means of an electric furnace. Bauxite and cryolite are both used; bauxite (hydrated alumina) is the raw material and the cryolite (sometimes made artificially) is used in a molten state to dissolve it. In its dissolved state the bauxite is easily decomposed by electric current. The cryolite is used over and over again. Very high temperature being required, aluminium factories are usually erected where much water power is available, as at Niagara Falls, on the Saguenay River in Canada, in Norway, at L'Argentière in south-east France, at Rheinfelden in Switzerland, and at Kinlochleven in the Scottish Highlands. World production in 1955 was 3m. tons, mainly in the United States (1.4m. tons) and Canada ( $\frac{1}{2}$ m.). The industry is rapidly expanding in Quebec and British Columbia.

**Tungsten or Wolfram**, which has considerable importance from its being used in the production of high-speed steel, was mined in Cornwall, but is now obtained mainly in China, Korea, the United States, Bolivia, and Portugal.

**Sulphur**, used in making sulphuric acid, in vulcanising and as a remedy for certain vine diseases. It is exported as native sulphur chiefly from the United States, also from Sicily and Norway; and, as a constituent of iron and cupreous pyrites, chiefly from Spain, Portugal, Cyprus, and Norway. The great bulk of the world production of native sulphur comes from the United States (chiefly Texas; balance from Louisiana). The United States also has a large though not a preponderating production of sulphur derived from pyrites (chiefly Tennessee).

**Mineral Manures.** Among these the most important are: (a) **Potash** (p. 307). Germany and France are chief contributors, and the United States and Spain important secondary contributors, to a world production in 1955 of some 28m. tons, of which the  $K_2O$  content or its equivalent amounted to between 7 and 8m. tons. (b) **Nitrate of soda**, used both as a manure and in the arts. Practically the entire supply of natural nitrates (about  $1\frac{1}{2}$ m. tons) comes from northern Chile, in the form of nitrate of soda. At the time of the First World War this Chilean natural product constituted the bulk of the world's supply of nitrogen compounds, but it is now only a fraction of the total, owing to the increase of manufactured nitrogen compounds, amounting to upwards of 20m. tons, which are widely used as artificial fertilisers, including those produced by hydro-electric power in Norway and elsewhere by the fixation of atmospheric nitrogen. (c) **Phosphate of lime** (19m. tons), from phosphate-rock, found most abundantly in the United States (especially in Florida and central Tennessee); in Morocco, Algeria and Tunisia; in Russia; and in various islands in the Pacific and Indian Oceans, notably Nauru, Ocean, and Christmas Islands. (d) **Guano**, consisting

of the droppings of birds accumulated through ages in regions where there is little or no rain to wash away the deposits. It is worked as a mineral, and may be described as an earthy nitrate or combined nitrate and phosphate rock—a sub-division of group (c). It is not always easy to determine the precise character; the classification of the island deposits mentioned under (c) has been the subject of a good deal of controversy. The classic example of guano deposits on a large scale is their occurrence in the Lobos Islands, off the coast of Peru. (e) **Basic slag.**

**Borax**, a compound of boracic acid and soda, found in many parts of the world with a very dry climate, such as the states of California and Nevada in the United States, the western strip of Peru and Chile, Tibet and Asia Minor, and also manufactured from boracic acid obtained by concentration from springs in the south of Tuscany. It has very varied uses in the arts. Among the most important are its employment in the making of enamel and glazes for pottery, and in the making of certain kinds of glass, the borax serving to some extent as a substitute for silica.

**Nitrate of potash (Saltpetre).** See pp. 304, 307.

**Graphite** or **plumbago**, popularly known as 'black lead,' a substance familiar from its domestic uses and its use in the making of lead pencils, but also very largely employed in making crucibles and type-metal and for other purposes. Formerly the best kind was obtained from Borrowdale in Cumberland, but Mexico, Ceylon, Madagascar, and South Korea are now the chief sources of supply. In Europe it is produced in Germany, Austria, Czechoslovakia, and Norway. Considerable quantities are also produced in Canada and the United States.

**Lithographic stone** is known to occur in various places, but the best stones are all obtained from the quarries of Solenhofen in the neighbourhood of Donauwörth in Bavaria.

**Grinding and polishing substances.** (a) **Buhrstones** are the stones used in the old kind of corn-mills, now to a large extent superseded by those in which steel rollers are employed in the manufacture of flour. The best specimens of this kind of stone are obtained in the Paris basin. (b) **Grindstones** were formerly produced at New-castle, at Wickersley (eight miles east of Sheffield), and elsewhere in England; at various places on the Bay of Fundy in the Canadian Dominion; and in Ohio and Michigan in the United States, now almost entirely superseded. (c) **Infusorial earth**, or tripoli powder, is a fine siliceous earth used in polishing metals, glass, &c., and now also in the manufacture of dynamite, found not only in Tripoli, from which it takes one of its names, but more abundantly in Germany, on the Lüneburg Heath, between the Elbe and the Aller, and also in Scotland, France, Maryland (U.S.), and elsewhere.

**Gypsum** is produced most abundantly in the United States,

Canada, Great Britain, France, and Spain. It is used in the manufacture of Plaster of Paris.

**Clays.** The varieties of clay which have chief commercial value are china-clay and fire-clay. (a) Among producers of **China clay**, the United States, with sales of nearly 2m. tons in 1957, easily heads the list, and is followed by Great Britain, where production in 1957 was more than 1m. tons. In Britain the clay is largely worked in the east of Cornwall and the south-west of Devon. Besides being used in the making of porcelain it is employed in the making of paper and cotton size. (b) **Fire-clay** is used in making fire-resisting bricks, crucibles, &c. In Great Britain the deposits chiefly worked are those found on or near coalfields (south Staffordshire, Glamorgan, Durham).

**Asbestos** has a great variety of uses—in gas-stoves, for the making of fire-proof curtains, as a packing for cylinders, and as a heat insulating covering for steam boilers and pipes, for making fire-proof paint, wall decorations, clothing for furnacemen and others. About 70 per cent. of the known world production (amounting to 1.4m. tons in 1957) is derived from Canada (south of the St. Lawrence). Southern Rhodesia, South Africa, Swaziland, Italy, and the United States provide most of the balance.

**Ganister**, a fine hard pure sandstone derived from the Lower Coal Measures, used for lining furnaces, is obtained for British use chiefly from the neighbourhood of Sheffield.

**Fluorspar** is chiefly produced in Mexico, Germany and the United States, with Canada, the United Kingdom (mainly Derbyshire) and Italy as the principal secondary sources of supply. It is used in lead smelting and in the making of ferro-silicon and ferro-manganese.

**Slate** is less used than formerly for roofing but the waste, when finely powdered, is used in the making of bricks of great density and strength, also of pottery, green and amber coloured glass bottles and, above all, cement.

**Monazite**, a mineral used in making gas mantles and for other purposes, is found in grains scattered among other rocks, but is commercially available only where the rock is in the form of sand. The two chief sources of supply are India (Travancore), and Brazil (State of Bahia). For security reasons figures are no longer published except for some of the minor sources of supply, producing between them less than 1,000 tons a year.

**Building Stones.** Building stones are widely quarried for local use but some have special characters which give them an international reputation. Amongst the latter are certain fine-grained limestones which split equally well in any direction and hence are called 'freestones'. The freestones or oolitic limestones of Bath and Portland in Britain are famous. Certain granites are also important, and there is a considerable trade in marbles.



**Road Metal.** A stone suitable for use as road metal must be tough, must not be splintery, and must not when broken give much dust. Provided these qualities are present, local material is used. Various igneous rocks, especially basalts, are particularly good.

**Cement and Lime.** The burning of limestone for lime is an important industry but even greater is the manufacture of Portland cement from impure earthy limestones or from limestone mixed with mud or clay. The manufacture is more and more concentrated in large units.

## COMMODITIES (*continued*)

### IV. MANUFACTURED ARTICLES IN WHICH VARIOUS MATERIALS ARE USED

**LEATHER.** Leather consists of the skins of animals prepared in various ways. Its manufacture has given rise to an extensive commerce in articles of different kinds: first, in the hides and skins which form the raw material (see page 244); second, in the substances used in treating this raw material; and third, in the manufactured product—leather, and articles made from leather.

**Tanning** is the principal process in converting hides into leather. It consists in saturating the hides, after some preliminary cleaning and dressing, with a solution which alters the chemical character of one of the constituents of the hide, and renders the hide firm and durable. Nearly always this solution is derived from some vegetable substance, the bark or some other portion of a tree or other plant, which yields the necessary principle called tannin, or tannic acid, a very powerful astringent. Substances containing this principle exist in the native vegetation of almost all parts of the world, and the discovery of the art of making leather by means of them appears to have been made independently in many different regions at a very early date. The processes of tanning are represented on the older Egyptian monuments, and the North American Indians knew how to make a pliant and excellent leather before the European discovery of America. On the other hand the art was unknown throughout a large part of central Africa south of the Sudan.

Till just over 100 years ago, oak-bark was the agent almost exclusively used for tanning in Great Britain; now it is only one of fifty or more competitors, chiefly extracts of wattle bark and quebracho, and myrobalans; though other barks and bark extracts including gambier, sumach, valonia and divi-divi are also notable tanning agents. In 1938 the United Kingdom imported 1.7m. cwt. valued at £1.1m.; in 1955, 1.5m. cwt. valued at £4.6m.; in 1956, 1.2m. cwt. valued at £3.6m. Note quantities and values. Extracts now predominate: a result of the growing tendency to engage in the manufacture or partial manufacture of raw materials in the country of origin, both to save freight and to promote local industry.

**Myrobalans** are imported chiefly from India. They are the fruits mainly of two species of trees of the genus *Terminalia*, abundant in Indian forests, and are the principal substances used in India for tanning. **Wattle bark and extract** come chiefly from Natal, with Kenya as a more recent source of supply. In Natal the wattle bark is derived from various species of acacia, the best being that of the *Acacia pycnantha*, Benth., or black wattle (introduced from Australia), a bark that yields nearly a third of its weight of tannin, and the *A. mollissima*, Willd. **Quebracho** is a modern export from Argentina and Paraguay, used for the rapid tanning of cheap leather. It is an extract from the wood of a tree, *Aspidosperma Quebracho*, Schlecht., native to the forests of the Parana-Paraguay basin, and is exported in very large quantities, especially to the United States. Soaring prices after the Second World War led to a decline in the demand, but there has since been a recovery.

**Barks** include different kinds of oak-bark, larch-bark and others found in Britain and elsewhere in the northern hemisphere; also mangrove bark from tropical and sub-tropical regions. Both in the United States and in Canada hemlock spruce bark is one of the principal tanning agents. Bark from the native oak is still used for the best leather, as it is in Canada, but supplies are becoming very scarce and are mostly confined to the southern Appalachian region. Chestnut trees were formerly the third most important source of tannin in the United States, but supplies have dwindled almost to nothing, because most of the trees have died of chestnut blight. There is a large and varied import of tanning agents into the States.

**Gambier** is extracted from the leaves of a shrub (*Uncaria Gambier*, Roxb.), belonging botanically to the Cinchona family, a native of the Malay Peninsula and the Eastern Archipelago. It is also used in dyeing, and in China is much used for chewing, along with betelnut. Having the tannin concentrated by the process of extraction, one ton of gambier will go as far as six tons of oak-bark in tanning. **Sumach** consists of the powdered leaves and young twigs chiefly of one species of shrub (*Rhus coriaria*, L.), and is imported from the Mediterranean, above all from Sicily, where the best quality is cultivated. **Valonia** is the name given to the acorn-cups of a species of oak which grows in Turkey. It is imported mainly from Smyrna, and is used in dyeing as well as tanning. Of other vegetable substances used for tanning the best known perhaps is **divi-divi**, which consists of the twisted pods of a leguminous tree known as *Casalpinia coriaria*, Willd., a native of South America.

Attempts to tan with mineral substances were made for about a hundred years before the successful development of 'chrome tanning' with compounds of chromium. Most of the light leathers now produced are tanned by means of chromium salts.

For certain purposes skins are made into leather without tanning.

A soft flexible kind of leather suitable for gloves, &c., is made by a process called **tawing**, in which alum and other salts are the principal substances employed. **Wash-leather**, or chamois leather, is made by working oil into the cleaned skins. **Morocco leather** when genuine is made from goatskin, is always coloured on one side, and on that side has the well-known roughened surface imparted to it by means of a stamp, generally of boxwood. It takes its name from the country where it was first made, or through which it was first introduced into Europe. According to some accounts what was first known as morocco leather was really leather manufactured in Kano, in Northern Nigeria. By the Moors it was introduced into Spain, where Cordova and other Moorish cities acquired celebrity in connection with this product, so that the name of cordova leather or cordwain came to be applied as a general term for Spanish goatskin leather. About the middle of the eighteenth century the manufacture was introduced into Alsace, and since then it has been carried to all other industrial countries, and it has consequently declined in Spain, which for centuries supplied fancy leathers to all Europe. Russia leather is distinguished by its peculiar odour, which has this advantage, that it is so disagreeable to insects that the presence of a few books bound in this leather in a book-case is said to be enough to preserve the other volumes from their attacks. The odour is due either to the leather being tanned with the bark of the Russian birch, or to its being treated with a kind of oil made from the bark or the bark and roots of that tree.

The European countries in which the manufacture of articles from leather is most highly developed are Germany, France, and the United Kingdom. Germany is especially noted for its coloured leathers. France stands pre-eminent in its glove manufacture and is also noted for its lacquered or patent leather, a product first made in that country about the middle of the eighteenth century. Of the British exports of leather manufactures, the most important are boots and shoes—nearly 4½m. pairs valued at £1½m. in 1938; over 5½m. pairs valued at over £8½m. in 1956. Imports are also considerable. The United States, as is natural for a country with vast areas devoted to the rearing of domestic animals and with vast native supplies of tanning bark, has a very large industry in leather.

**PAPER.** The history of paper-making is of peculiar interest. The ancients used parchment and papyrus rolls, the latter being made by causing to adhere at their edges the thin inner skins found at the bottom of the stems of a kind of rush which grows in the Nile delta. The process was laborious and the rolls were costly, yet Egypt carried on a large and lucrative trade in them, and vast thickets of papyrus grew where now are fields of cotton, maize, rice, &c.

The art of paper-making originated in China about A.D. 105. The

inventor, Tsai Lun, became the god of the paper-makers. From China the art spread into Central Asia and is known to have been established at Samarkand early in the eighth century A.D. when the town was in the hands of the Arabs. They introduced it into Spain, and it is known that linen rags were being used for the purpose of paper-making before the close of the twelfth century. It was probably for this reason that a small district situated south of Valencia in Spain, which had been celebrated in Roman times for its flax, was equally celebrated in the twelfth century for the excellence of its paper, which was widely exported. The art of paper-making was first established in England in 1490 when the first British paper-maker set up a mill in Hertford. During the sixteenth century a paper-mill was erected at Dartford, in Kent, which county is still noted for its paper-making.

For the manufacture of paper it is essential that adequate supplies of clean fresh water are available. Paper-mills are therefore always sited with this factor in mind. Transport facilities have also to be considered having regard to both the importation of raw materials and the distribution of the finished paper. Wood-pulp, which is to-day the main raw material for paper-making, is a bulky commodity, and because of this, paper-mills are in general situated beside navigable waterways.

Paper was first manufactured in this country by hand with rags as raw material. The industry was, however, revolutionised by the invention in 1798 of the first mechanical paper-making machine by a Frenchman called Robert. Other famous engineers, such as the Frenchman Fourdrinier and the Englishman Bryan Donkin, played a leading part in the development of the mechanical process of paper-making. With this the main problem became that of finding a vastly increased supply of suitable raw materials. With the coming of the Industrial Revolution during which intense development of industry was compressed into a short period of time it was essential that greatly increased supplies of paper should be made available, and this in no small way contributed towards the development of paper-making machines, of which the most familiar and most commonly used is called the Fourdrinier machine.

These early machines were slow and cumbersome by modern standards but they turned out paper at a much faster rate than the most skilled of the old hand craftsmen. Paper was no longer a luxury, for the benefits of paper had been brought to everyone. As more became available and more people learned to write, more wanted to send letters to friends. In those days there were no such things as envelopes, private letters were just folded and tucked in so that anyone could read them. In 1839 the Treasury offered a prize for the best sealed cover in which to send letters and this was won by a William Mulready with an elaborate design made of paper. One result was the introduction of the penny post in 1840.

The Fourdrinier paper-machine is a very large, expensive and complicated piece of machinery. The action of the machine has two main functions: (a) to receive a mixture of beaten pulp with about ninety-nine times its weight of water, and to intermesh the fibres; (b) to remove the water stage by stage so that the intermeshed fibres are left as a dry, compact, solid, continuous sheet.

As already stated, the chief raw material used to-day for these gigantic machines is wood-pulp. It far exceeds all others, and can be either (1) in a non-chemical processed form (i.e. simply ground from the log and cooked), which is suitable for low-grade papers such as newsprint, or (2) in other highly specialised processed forms from which various types of paper are made, many dependent on a specific type of pulp for the actual usage to which the paper will be put.

Supplies of wood-pulp for paper-making (i.e. Spruce, Fir, Poplar, &c.) come largely from the rigorous Northern climate, the main centres being in Scandinavia, North America, Russia and Newfoundland. In these centres trees are cut, pulled into streams and rivers, and floated down to the pulping plants, which are often adjacent to the actual paper-mill. Indeed there is an example in Sweden where the trees are cut north of the Arctic Circle and floated down to the pulp- and paper-mills, the paper is loaded on board ship at the lakeside in the middle of the country in which the mills are situated, and by means of a series of canals come across Sweden and over the North Sea, arriving at a U.K. port without any trans-shipment.

In recent years attempts have been made to extend the habitat of certain trees which are indigenous to Northern countries, but which grow more prolifically in temperate climates. Advantage is being taken of the more rapid growing qualities of such trees in a temperate climate by establishing new paper-mills in, for instance, India, New Zealand, Tasmania, and the Southern States of the U.S.A.

Esparto grass, which is grown in large quantities in North Africa, is used for fine-grade writing and printing papers. The mills using this raw material have, to a marked extent, established themselves in the Central Lowlands of Scotland. Linen rags, cotton and other vegetable fibrous materials, which were the sole raw materials of the paper-making industry before the Industrial Revolution, have virtually disappeared from commercial use, but they are still used for various specialised purposes, and are also mixed with the materials already mentioned. Additional types of new raw materials are now being brought into use, such as 'bagasse' (a residual product of sugarcane), bamboo, and straw; and the industry is continually experimenting with other raw materials which seem promising. Bagasse and bamboo are particularly indicative of a modern trend in the siting of paper mills; this is to take the mill to the raw material rather than to transport the pulp to the mill. Growing attention is also being paid to

possible ways of utilising residual fibrous raw material, in what have hitherto been unpromising fibres.

There is still a very limited output in this country of hand-made papers, for which the raw materials are mainly rags. The small mills in which they are made are widely distributed over the country (chiefly in the south) and turn out special drawing papers, papers for legal documents, and other papers where great strength, coupled with ability to retain colour and appearance, is required regardless of cost.

Among European countries, the United Kingdom and Germany were, before the World Wars, rivals in the consumption of paper relatively to population, each being estimated to use upwards of 13lb. of paper per head in a year; whereas France, which came next, was estimated to consume less than 10lb. These are trifling figures compared with the annual *per capita* consumption in the United States, which is calculated to be over 200lb. Next to the United States comes Canada. These two countries are the giants of the paper-making trade. In 1955 the United States made 40 per cent. and Canada just on 20 per cent. of the known world production (46.4m. metric tons) of wood-pulp for paper-making—that is to say, world production exclusive of China. Secondary but still large producers of wood-pulp were Sweden, Finland, Japan, U.S.S.R., Western Germany, France, and Norway, with outputs ranging, in the order named, from 3.9m. tons down to 1.3m. tons.

The dominant factors in the production of newsprint are also the United States and Canada, though in this case the positions are reversed, Canada providing 50 per cent. of the world total of 11.2m. metric tons, and the States only 12 per cent. Most of Canada's output of newsprint is exported to the States, where enormous supplies of pulp are mostly used for the manufacture of the better kinds of paper. The United Kingdom headed the list of the smaller producers of newsprint, followed by Finland, Japan, France, Sweden, U.S.S.R., and Western Germany, each with an output in 1955 of from  $\frac{3}{4}$ m. tons down to  $\frac{1}{4}$ m. tons.

In addition to newsprint, world production of paper exclusive of 'board' and of books and stationery was estimated in 1955 at over 25m. tons, and of this nearly half was attributed to the United States. The United Kingdom came second, with 1.8m. tons, followed by Western Germany, 1.6m. tons; Japan, 1.2m. tons; France 1m. tons; and Canada,  $\frac{3}{4}$ m. tons.

Apart from the everyday uses of paper known to the man in the street, there are others of which he has little conception—technical uses in industry as a basis for plastics, electrical insulating, the underlining of cement roadways, &c.; uses so numerous that there is hardly a department of human enterprise in which to-day paper does not play its part.

**EARTHENWARE AND PORCELAIN.** The simplest form of manufactured article made from earth, or rather from clay, is a brick dried in the sun. This was one of the earliest human inventions, and bricks of this kind are still made in Egypt and other parts of the Old World where fuel is scarce and sun-heat by day quite or nearly constant; also in those parts of the New World which have a similar climate, where they are known by the Spanish name of adobes. It was but a small step to the burning of bricks by artificial heat. The potter's wheel, by means of which mere steadiness of hand enables a workman to mould moist clay into a perfectly round form, is likewise an invention of great simplicity and great antiquity, though unknown, like every other form of wheel, in the New World before the time of Columbus. The method of glazing pottery is a less obvious discovery, and must have been due, like a host of other inventions, to some fortunate accident. The oldest specimens of earthenware are unglazed. Yet the art of glazing was known to the ancient Assyrians, Egyptians, and Etruscans, all of whom were noted among the nations of antiquity for their productions in pottery. Improvements in the potter's art were made by the Arabs during the period of their highest civilisation. By them the making of painted earthenware with a finely glazed or enamelled surface seems to have been practised before it was known to any European people. But the finest of all kinds of earthenware, the kind known as porcelain, was originally a Chinese invention, referred by Chinese chroniclers to the time of a dynasty which reigned in China from the second century B.C. to the first A.D. In Europe, this earthenware was unknown till the thirteenth century, and does not seem to have become widely known till it was introduced by the Portuguese about 1500, which accounts for the fact that the name porcelain (together with its equivalents in other European languages) is of Portuguese origin. It was two hundred years later before the art of making porcelain became known in Europe, where it was discovered independently. An inferior kind of porcelain was made at St. Cloud in 1695, but the true or hard porcelain, as it is called, was first made about 1709 by a German alchemist, Böttcher, who discovered it to be the product of a mixture of sand with kaolin, or china clay, a fine kind of clay resulting from weakening or alteration of granite. A porcelain factory was set up at Meissen, in Saxony, and efforts were made to keep the art secret, but it gradually spread and is now carried on in all countries with a highly developed manufacturing industry. In Central Europe, it is largely concentrated in Bavaria and Czechoslovakia.

For the manufacture of ordinary pottery many kinds of clay will suffice if free from iron, which causes the clay to fuse during baking. Other ingredients are also used, such as burnt and powdered flint and phosphate of lime, the latter often in the form of bone-ash,



The decorations on ordinary pottery are painted on the unglazed ware, and are afterwards protected by a glaze composed of various ingredients fused together by a second baking. The glaze on porcelain is a thin coating of glass and the painting is done on the glaze with pigments of finely powdered coloured glass, after which the articles are again put into a kiln to be fired. An unglazed kind of earthenware known as terra cotta is moulded into statuary and other ornamental articles, and unglazed pottery is extensively used in the south of Europe, in Africa and Asia.

In England the manufacture of earthenware remained in a backward condition till after the middle of the eighteenth century. Its chief seat was Burslem, in north Staffordshire, a place well suited for this manufacture because of the great variety of clays and the abundance of coal in the vicinity. Among the clays of this district ('the Potteries') is a great abundance of the coarse clay used in making the saggars or seggars in which the earthenware is baked. Thanks to the presence of these two heavy materials, coal and coarse clay, the district continues to be the centre of the English manufacture of earthenware and porcelain, now that this branch of industry has attained greater dimensions in England than in any other country in the Western world. The finer kinds of kaolin for the manufacture are obtained (in the British Isles) solely in Cornwall and Devon, but it is cheaper to send kaolin to the Potteries than to bring the coal and coarse clay to Devon and Cornwall.

The first great improvements in English pottery were due to Wedgwood, who was born at Burslem in 1730, and since his day the art has been brought in this country to such perfection that the best English varieties of earthenware are unsurpassed if not unrivalled by those of any other part of the world. Besides the products of the Potteries, in the local sense of that word, England is noted for its ornamental stoneware (the hardest and heaviest kind of earthenware) made chiefly in London (Lambeth). In recent years there has been a great development in the use of glazed tile—in bathrooms, &c. In 1936-38, exports of 'Pottery and other shaped and fired clay products' (as the Board of Trade then classified all such goods) averaged £4m., and imports £1.3m. After the war the United Nations introduced a Standard International Trade Classification, and the entry in the British returns became 'Pottery articles commonly used for domestic purposes'—a less comprehensive grouping, comprising mainly earthenware, china and porcelain. Even so the exports in 1956 were valued at £13½m. Glazed tiles provided £3m. more. Imports were still round about the pre-war figure. The British Commonwealth (especially Canada and Australia) and the United States provided the best markets.

Both Germany and France are important centres of manufacture. It was a tradition of the former German Federal rulers to

encourage the art. Prussia, Bavaria, Saxony, all had their royal 'Porzellan-Manufakturen', mostly fed by bounties. In Saxony, Meissen (north-west of Dresden and the true home of 'Dresden China') vied with Sèvres, near Paris, in producing the most beautiful coloured porcelains known. Now they have lost some of their pre-eminence, and English porcelain ranks with the best. Since the Second World War the historic Meissen brand—the crossed swords—has been replaced by the Soviet Star.

In the United States the home industry developed rapidly under the protection of high import duties. In the East, China is still noted for its porcelain, and so is Japan, into which the art was introduced from China. Normally, China still exports a considerable quantity of fine chinaware; Japan has developed a big trade in cheap china. Hardly any other branch of industry has so many names relating to the geography and history of the art in general use in connection with it. In English, porcelain is very commonly known by the appropriate name of china-ware, and kaolin as china clay. The name *majolica* was given by the Italians to painted and enamelled earthenware which they appear first to have become acquainted with as a product of the island of Majorca, and the name has been adapted into English. *Faience* is a name for the same kind of ware derived from the Italian town of Faenza, where it was first made in Italy. *Delft* is the name of another kind of painted and enamelled ware first made at the town of that name in Holland, and painted blocks of this kind of ware are generally known as Dutch tiles.

**GLASS** is made by melting together various ingredients, of which silica is always the chief, and is the only one that enters into the composition of all kinds of glass. Silica is one of the most widely diffused substances in nature, and is found in various forms, quartz (the main constituent of most sands) and flint being the most familiar. Sands are usually impure, discoloured, it may be, by iron, or mixed with lime or other ingredients; but sometimes they consist of nothing but silica, and such pure sand or sandstones afford the best material for glass-making, the sandstones being first crushed. In England various deposits of sand, at King's Lynn in Norfolk, at Hastings, and Leighton Buzzard, have in turn been noted for the excellence of the material which they afforded for glass-making. In France the most famous deposits are the sandstones of Fontainebleau. The United States possess exceptionally fine glass-sands in the west of Massachusetts and elsewhere.

Along with silica there is always fused in the making of glass some alkaline substance, either soda or potash. Glass made solely from soda is perishable, and in the making of most kinds of modern glass, lime is added. Soda is chiefly used in the forms of carbonate of soda and sulphate of soda, which are largely manufactured for

the purpose; but for some of the commoner sorts of glass, as bottle-glass, common salt is sometimes used. Potash is generally used in the form of carbonate of potash (the pearl-ash of commerce), sometimes in that of nitrate of potash or saltpetre. The glass made from potash is the freest from any tinge of colour, but that made from carbonate of soda, besides being nearly colourless when the other ingredients are pure, is easier to work in the state of partial fusion in which glass is usually treated. For ordinary purposes, accordingly, this substance is preferred. Potash is used either with or without lime in the manufacture of some of the best kinds of glass, such as Bohemian glass and English flint glass (crystal). In making this last kind of glass, lead (generally in the form of red lead) is used instead of lime, rendering the glass softer and more fusible and lustrous. The use of lead is an English invention of the eighteenth century. Besides these ingredients various others are used for special purposes, as to remove colours<sup>1</sup> which some impurities in the materials employed in making the glass might impart, or to give colours desired to coloured glass. In the making of bottle-glass, the colour of which is an unimportant consideration, very varied ingredients may be employed. In Germany some kinds of rock, such as basalts, trachytes, and granites, which contain a certain quantity of soda and potash along with from 65 to 75 per cent. of silica, and are easily fusible, have been employed with success in glass-making.

After the fusion of the materials glass is worked at a high temperature in a soft and somewhat pasty condition, and it is frequently re-heated. The implement chiefly used is the blow-pipe, by means of which balls of the glass paste are blown out into hollow forms. To make bottles and similar articles, almost all that is necessary is to blow the glass in moulds of the proper shape. When flat sheets are required, different methods are employed. By the old method a ball of blown glass was twirled round and round without blowing till it spread out flat except at the middle (the bull's eye). By another it is blown and twirled into a long cylinder, which is then cut on one side longitudinally and laid flat. Only the best kind of glass, made from the most carefully selected materials, is capable of being rolled out into sheets by means of steel rollers. Glass so made is called plate-glass. Flint-glass is the kind best adapted for being cut and engraved in the cold state. Before the First World War, Jena glass, a very fine kind of glass used for scientific purposes, was made exclusively in Germany, but efforts have since been made to deprive Germany of that monopoly. In the glass industry automatic and semi-automatic machinery is now extensively employed.

All kinds of glass before being ready for use have to be annealed, or to undergo some equivalent process for enabling them to stand

<sup>1</sup> For this purpose manganese is chiefly used, but when in excess this substance itself imparts an amethyst hue to the glass.

ordinary usage at ordinary temperatures. If suddenly removed from the temperature of the glass-works into the open air, they would be so fragile as to break at the slightest shock. The process of annealing consists in cooling them slowly and equally, so that no difference of strain in different parts of the glass is brought about by differences of temperature. Since 1875 different processes of making hardened or toughened glass have been tried, and hard cast glass has been made in forms suitable for railway sleepers, tramway rails, grindstones, and floor-plates, the glass so treated being run into moulds made of a mixture which becomes heated and conducts heat at the same rate as glass. By using potash or soda in excess, a kind of glass can be made which is soluble in water, and is used among other purposes as a protective coating against the action of the weather on calcareous building stones where, combining with the calcium salts, it forms an insoluble compound. Various types of unbreakable and safety glass are now made, often by a number of thin sheets being united by some tough transparent cement.

The invention of glass took place in prehistoric times. It was known at a very early period in Egypt, but the oldest piece of transparent white glass of which the date is known is a vase found among the ruins of Nineveh and now preserved in the British Museum. It has inscribed upon it the name of Sargon, an Assyrian king who reigned about the close of the eighth century B.C. In ancient times the Egyptians and Phœnicians were the two peoples most noted for their glass-making, for which both Egypt and Phœnicia supplied excellent sand, the former near Alexandria, the latter in the bed of the small river Belus (now the Naman), which enters the sea near Acre. The alkali in Egypt was obtained from the Natron (soda) Lakes situated to the west of the delta. In Italy the making of glass does not seem to have been practised till about the beginning of the Christian era, and there is no positive evidence of window-glass having been used there before the third century A.D. In modern times the Venetians acquired celebrity for the beauty of their glass manufactures; the art began to be practised there soon after the foundation of the city. Glass-making is now pursued on or near all the most productive coal-fields. Belgium, which has local supplies of sand as well as coal, and manufactures soda compounds from imported materials, is the headquarters of window-glass manufacture in Europe, and also makes excellent mirror-glass. Czechoslovakia has also a large glass industry.

**SOAP** as a commercial product is a chemical compound resulting from the action of soda or potash on various fatty or oily substances, and hence, besides being an important commodity (unknown to the ancients) in its manufactured state, is the cause of a large trade in the various fats and oils that enter into its composition, as well as in the alkalis mentioned. Hard soaps are those made with

soda; soft, those made with potash. Glycerine is a by-product of the soap manufacture. The fatty substances principally used in the manufacture of soap in the United Kingdom are tallow, coconut oil, cotton-seed oil, palm-oil, and other vegetable oils. In the south of Europe the staple ingredient of this nature is olive-oil, along with which are used, in addition to those just mentioned, groundnut oil, oil of sesame, and many others (see pp. 221—27). Even the grease from sheep's wool can now be employed in this industry.

**CHEMICAL INDUSTRIES.** Of these only the most important can here be noticed, and only so far as to explain the large consumption of certain commodities.

**Alkali.** The commodities known as alkali represent perhaps the largest of all such industries—namely, those concerned with the preparation of carbonate of soda and caustic soda, which are chiefly used in the manufacture of glass and soap. In the Leblanc process (patented in France in 1794), the materials employed are common salt, carbonate of lime (generally in the form of limestone), coal, and sulphuric acid. Common salt—sodium chloride—is a compound of the metal sodium with chlorine, which when free is a gas; and in order to be converted into carbonate of soda, the sodium, or rather the oxide of sodium, has to be brought into combination with carbonic acid. This union is effected by different stages. First, sulphuric acid is made to act on the common salt, by means of which sulphate of soda or salt cake and hydrochloric acid are obtained, the latter passing off as a gas. Next, the sulphate of soda is converted into carbonate of soda, and in this stage the burning of coal or the heating of carbonate of lime furnishes the carbonic acid. The product obtained is an impure carbonate of soda which is known as black ash and is sufficiently good for use in soap-making; but for the making of glass and some other purposes it has to be purified. In soap-making, black ash is converted into caustic soda (a compound containing no carbonic acid) by treatment with quicklime.

This process or series of processes is now to a large extent superseded by another, called the Solvay process, in which common salt is converted into carbonate of soda by means of the carbonate of ammonium. A solution of ammonia is mixed with the salt, and carbonic acid then passed in as a gas. A further process enables the ammonia to be recovered and used over again. This method of making carbonate of soda is simpler than the first, and yields a soda highly valued by glass-makers for its purity. Before the First World War it was very largely practised in Germany, to the injury of the older alkali manufacture of the United Kingdom, but the post-war reorganisation of the British chemical industry by Imperial Chemical Industries, Limited, a combine of dye and other chemical producing companies formed in Great Britain in 1926, has revolutionised the position.

**Potash**, another alkali largely used in the manufacture of glass and soap, as well as a number of other chemical industries, besides forming a valuable manure (p. 291) used to be mostly made by the burning of vegetable matter, and the chief exporting countries were Canada, Russia, and other timber-producing countries. In France it has long been made from the grease of wool, which was largely a waste product. After the discovery of the great deposits of potassic salts in central Germany, however, that country became the great source of supply. Subsequently, important deposits were discovered in the south of Alsace and in the north-east of Spain, near Cardona. During 1914-18, efforts were made in various countries to extract it from different raw materials, as from minerals containing felspar. In the United States a variety of glauconite, occurring in a narrow strip in the states of Delaware and New Jersey, proved a source. Ferrocyanide of potassium is now an important by-product of the illuminating gas industry, being used either alone or along with potassium carbonate as the raw material in the manufacture of cyanide of potassium, which since 1890 has been more and more employed in the extraction of gold, either instead of or as a supplement to the amalgamation process.

**Sulphuric acid**, which is employed in a great many industrial operations, is chiefly made on a commercial scale from nitrate of soda and sulphur or iron pyrites, a compound of iron (often with more or less copper) and sulphur. The sulphur or iron pyrites is burned, and the resulting vapour acted upon (in leaden chambers) by nitric acid vapours obtained from the nitrate of soda, which is heated along with the very acid (sulphuric) which the subsequent operations are intended to produce. The nitric acid is recovered and used over again with little waste. Nitrate of potash (saltpetre) may be used instead of nitrate of soda, cheapness being the ground for preference. In more recent processes of manufacture, cheaper for the preparation of the very strong acids required in the coal-tar colour industries, and said to be cheap enough even for the more ordinary forms of the acid, the nitrates are not employed, but are replaced by platinum, in the presence of which the dioxide of sulphur is by a catalytic action more highly oxygenated through combination with the oxygen of water in the form of steam.

**Bleaching Powder.** The hydrochloric acid obtained in the first stage of the manufacture of carbonate of soda by the Leblanc process (p. 306) is utilised in the manufacture of bleaching powder, which is a compound of chlorine and lime. Manganese, in the form of the black oxide of manganese, is employed to free the chlorine from the hydrochloric acid, and the chlorine is then passed into chambers containing powdered slaked lime. The manganese is recovered for further use.

**Sulphate of ammonia**, a valuable nitrogenous manure, is one

of the by-products of the destructive distillation of coal in gas-making, of the shale-oil industry, and of aluminium manufacture (see also below). Another important by-product is **coal tar**, at one time applied only to the same purposes as wood tar (preserving ropes, timber, &c.), but now yielding a vast variety of products of use in the arts. Some of these are employed in the making of dyes of almost every hue. The first dye made from a substance extracted from coal tar was named mauve. It was discovered accidentally in 1856 by Dr. W. H. Perkin during another investigation, and was at once applied industrially in the celebrated dye-works of Messrs. Pullar at Perth. Other shades of a similar origin were soon discovered. At first this branch of industry was mainly carried on in Great Britain, the land of its birth, and the country most abundantly supplied with the raw material; later the chief seat of the industry was transferred to Germany, which became the dominant factor in world production and trade, while Great Britain was content to supply a large proportion of the raw materials. All that was altered by the First World War; probably no other industry had its geographical distribution so radically changed by that war. The materials used in the production of dyestuffs from coal tar are largely the same as those used in the manufacture of high explosives, and were recognised to be of vital national importance. In 1921 an Act of Parliament prohibited for ten years the import of synthetic organic dyestuffs and their raw materials into the United Kingdom, except under licence of the Board of Trade. Still more rigorous protective measures were adopted in the United States.

The result has been a complete reversal of the trade position. In the United Kingdom the imports of synthetic organic dyestuffs, which amounted to nearly 368,000 cwt. in 1913, dropped to little over 42,000 cwt. in 1938, and in 1956 were 35,500 cwt. (in 1949 they had been less than 10,000 cwt.). On the other hand, the exports of finished dyestuffs obtained from coal tar increased from under 49,000 cwt. in 1913 to nearly 80,000 cwt. in 1938, and in 1956 had soared to 211,000 cwt., valued at over £9½m. In the United States the value of the imports of coal tar dyestuffs dropped from \$7m. in 1913 to \$5m. in 1938, and \$2½m. in 1948, but rose to \$7·9m. in 1955. Home production increased enormously, but such were the demands of the home market that up to the Second World War there was little if any development of the export trade, which remained almost negligible. In 1948, however, after the Second World War, the United States exported coal tar dyestuffs to the value of over \$63m. (\$22·9m. in 1955).

**Alum**, which is largely used in the sizing of paper, dyeing calico-printing, painting and the preparation of colours, the tawing of leather and other industries, is prepared by several processes from clay or slate. In former days it was relatively much more important

in the dyeing industry than now, on which account it had a very prominent place in the commerce of the Middle Ages.

**Carbide.** After 1892 an important industry sprang up as a result of the discovery in that year (almost simultaneously by Wilson in America and Moisan in France) that the carbide of calcium is formed when lime and carbon are fused together at the temperature of the electric furnace. It then became possible to manufacture cheaply the powerful illuminant acetylene gas, a compound of carbon and hydrogen which is formed by the action of water on calcium carbide. The carbon is mixed with the lime in the form of coke of the utmost attainable purity. Norway and Switzerland engaged in production and export, and large supplies were produced in the United States, France, Italy and Austria. But with the spread of electric lighting the use of acetylene gas as an illuminant has declined.

**Rayon.** Until the beginning of the present century the textile industry depended on fibres of natural origin for all textile purposes. Since then new fibres have been produced by chemico-mechanical processes. In many characteristics these 'man-made fibres', as they are comprehensively called, are superior to the natural fibres, and their manufacture has developed rapidly into a major industry. Since 1925 their world production has exceeded the production of silk, and for some years (1940-43) during the Second World War it exceeded the world production of clean wool for clothing.

Because of their surface characteristics the new fibres were popularly known for many years as artificial silk, a description which survives in the United Kingdom trade returns. In the retail trade this description gave rise to obvious opportunities for misrepresentation, not always deliberate, and occasioned so much trouble that concerted action on a world scale was taken by the manufacturers to introduce a new name—rayon. In the United Kingdom the Textile Institute and the British Rayon Federation have accepted 'rayon' as an inclusive term covering all textile fibres not of natural origin. In most other countries the term is understood in this sense, but in the United States the definition is limited, officially by the Department of Commerce as well as industrially, to manufactured fibres of cellulose origin. The great bulk of all the manufactures of man-made fibres is of cellulose origin, the principal raw material being wood pulp or cotton linters; but there is a wide range of other possible raw materials, some of them not of cellulose origin, and the American limitation of rayon excludes nylon, which has a coal-tar base. Another source of supply is casein (milk), and experimentally textile fibres have been made from groundnuts.

Whatever the raw material, the essential feature of manufacture is to prepare from it a high viscosity fluid by solution in an aqueous medium or a volatile organic solvent, or by melting. The fluid is made to flow through orifices and then solidified by chemical action



(wet spinning), or by evaporation of the solvent (dry spinning), or by cooling (melt spinning). The filaments thus formed are drawn together and collected parallel or twisted together to produce a yarn. Alternatively staple fibres can be made by cutting the filaments into short lengths and these can be spun together on cotton, wool, or other spinning systems. Typical examples are viscose rayon (wet spinning), cellulose acetate rayon (dry spinning), and nylon (melt spinning).

In a Europe suffering from a shortage of dollars, one big advantage possessed by rayon over natural fibres is the comparative cheapness of the imported raw material. Weight for weight, raw cotton costs (1949) three to six times as much as wood pulp, and raw wool eight to ten times as much. The rapid expansion of the rayon industry before the Second World War, and its subsequent fluctuations, are shown in the following table.

*Man-made Fibres,<sup>1</sup> Estimated Production in Million lb.*

	1930.	1933.	1938.	1941.	1947.	1955 <sup>2</sup>
U.S.A. .	128	216	287	573	975	1,640
Great Britain .	48	82	132	134	201	471
Germany .	63	72	484	824	107	505
Italy .	67	84	268	420	150	309
France .	51	59	73	109	124	269
Japan .	37	99	541	465	36	767
World .	457	694	1,924	2,817	1,978	5,564

In 1955 other producers included U.S.S.R. and Eastern Europe 700m. lb., Spain 103, Netherlands 102, Canada 94, Austria 93, Brazil 74, Belgium 73, Switzerland 52, Mexico 51, Sweden 40, Finland 38, Norway 35.

<sup>1</sup> Including rayon and all textile fibres not of natural origin.

<sup>2</sup> Figures by courtesy of the Commonwealth Economic Committee.

It has already been noted that the United States limits the name 'rayon' to man-made fibres of cellulose origin. This distinction is now widely observed. Fibres made from cellulose or proteins, and wholly synthetic chemical fibres (mostly derived from by-products of coal and oil) are classed separately, with separate figures of production. The synthetic total in 1955 was only one-ninth of the cellulose production, and the two are combined in the above table, which, with the additional particulars given in the footnote, accounts for all but 2 or 3 per cent. of the world production in 1955.

**Oxygen, &c.** Other recent chemical industries are the commercial manufacture on a large scale of oxygen, nitrogen and nitrogen compounds, and hydrogen. Oxygen is largely manufactured for various medical, scientific, and engineering purposes. Nitrogen is obtained from the air for the production of various nitrogen compounds used as fertilisers. In the German chemical works at Ludwigshafen it is directly combined with hydrogen to form ammonia. The production of calcium cyanamide or nitrolin is associated in Norway and elsewhere with the production of calcium

carbide, which, when heated, absorbs nitrogen from the atmosphere, and in the same country water-power is made use of to manufacture nitrate of lime, nitrate of ammonia, and nitrate of soda. Hydrogen is now largely manufactured to harden oils for the preparation of margarine and to enable low grade oils to be used in the manufacture of soaps. It is required in large quantities in the process of 'hydrogenation', whereby coal, or a substitute, is turned into oil (as at the Imperial Chemical works, Billingham-on-Tees; see page 265).

**Radium and Uranium.** Pitch-blende, from which radium is extracted, is one of the commonest of the uranium minerals, which are found in smaller or larger quantities in most countries. Formerly, radium was the valued constituent; now, the atomic bomb has not only sent up the demand for uranium but brought its production within the realm of official secrets. The known chief sources of supply are the United States, Canada (Great Bear Lake region), Union of South Africa (see p. 669), Australia (Queensland), France, and the Belgian Congo (Katanga district). Another of the uranium minerals is carnotite, which is also a source of vanadium; it is mined in the United States, chiefly in Colorado.

**Alcohol** has long been manufactured in Germany and elsewhere for industrial purposes, chiefly from potatoes and wood, but the development of the industry has been retarded in this country by fiscal regulations. In Germany the product is made undrinkable by the State, which holds a monopoly. The bulk of the raw material used as compared with that of the product favours the establishment of the factories in the agricultural districts.

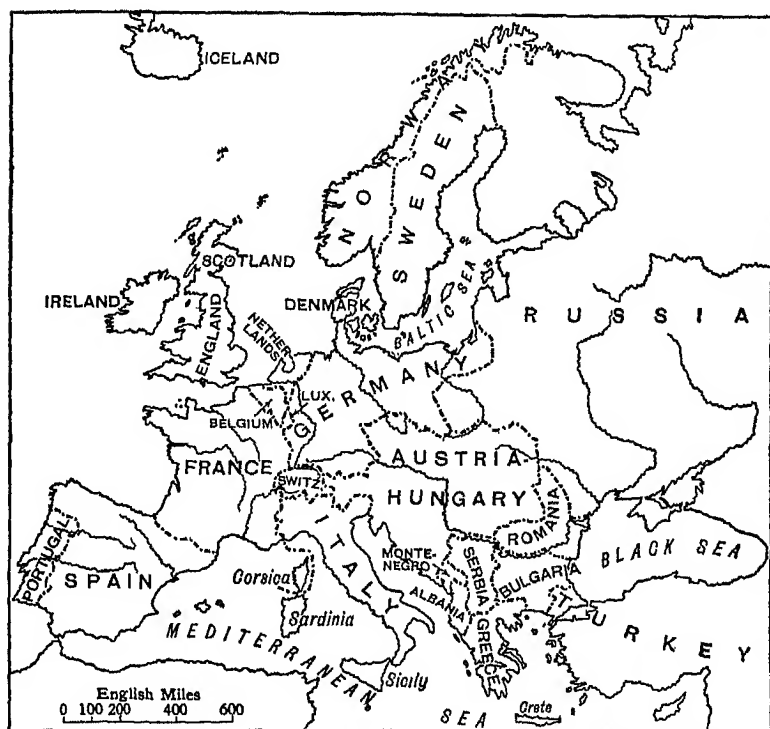
## EUROPE

Europe, the smallest of the continents, is, taken as a whole, the most densely peopled. Its situation and outline are peculiarly favourable to its climate. The whole area, except a small fraction in the north, lies within the temperate zone, and the great irregularity of its outline causes it to enjoy in a higher degree than any other continent the mitigating effects of the sea on extremes of heat and cold. Its westerly situation is of even greater importance in this respect, and its southern peninsulas have a peculiarly warm and equable climate, not only in consequence of the moderating effect of the Mediterranean Sea on the temperature, but also because these peninsulas are to a large extent protected from cold northerly winds by mountain-barriers on the north.

In temperate Europe there is the same increase in extremes of temperature from west to east as in other parts of the north temperate zone, and this is true to a certain extent even of the countries belonging to the Mediterranean region. Besides these peninsulas, or the greater part of them, nearly the whole of France and the British Isles, and the whole of Belgium and Holland, are outside of the area in which the mean daily temperature sinks below the freezing-point for at least one month in the year. On the other hand, the area in which the mean daily temperature is above 50° Fahr. for at least eight months in the year is almost confined to the Mediterranean region, although it includes also the west of France from about the Loire southwards. In the east of Russia the area in which there is at least one month with a mean daily temperature above 68° Fahr. extends as far north as the latitude of the Orkney Islands.

By far the greater part of the area of Europe has a sufficient rainfall for cultivation, so that south of the region in which the temperature puts a limit on agriculture almost the whole of the lowland area, and even, in the far south, land at the height of between two and three thousand feet, is capable of being tilled. The deficiency of rainfall prevents the pursuit of agriculture chiefly in the south-east of Russia and in the interior of Spain. But though the rainfall is thus generally distributed, and occurs everywhere more or less all the year round, it is most abundant at different places during different

seasons. The west, and above all the north-west, is the region in which autumn rains prevail, the east that in which there is a predominance of summer rain, but the Mediterranean peninsulas are the only region in which there is a marked deficiency of rain during any particular season. There the rains are chiefly winter rains, and the middle of summer is remarkable for its drought, to the south of about  $40^{\circ}$  N. almost rainless. These winter rains are apt to be very



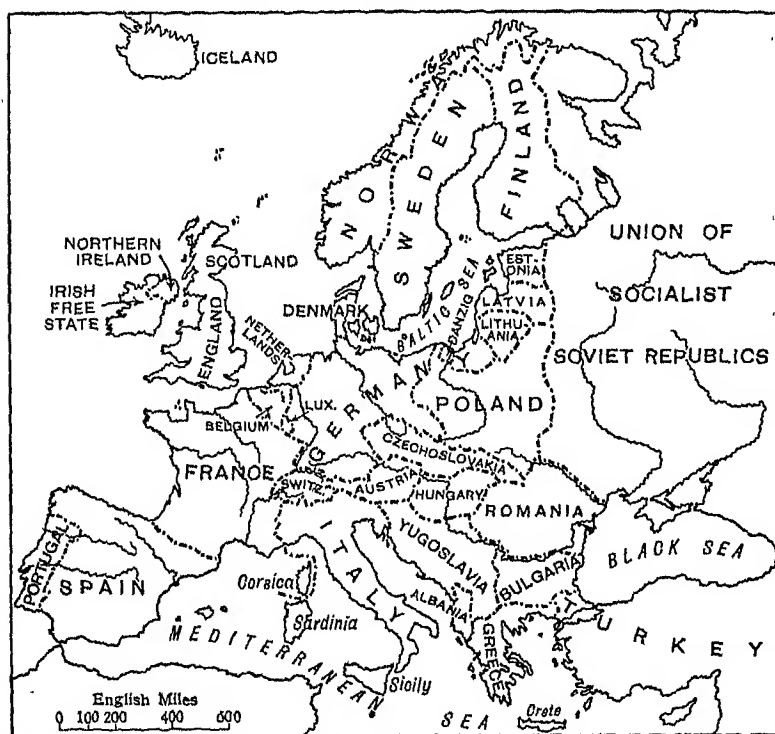
EUROPE POLITICAL, 1913

violent and are blamed for the denudation of large areas, especially in the neighbourhood of some of the most populous sites of antiquity, where the needs of the population caused the mountain slopes to be stripped of their woods. It is thus clear that Europe embraces a number of the climatic regions described on pp. 32-49.

The **Mediterranean** type is found in those lands round the Mediterranean Sea, but in the eastern Mediterranean there is a marked increase in winter cold and summer heat. The **North-West European** type is found as far east as Denmark and central Germany where, with at least one month below freezing, it gives place to the

Central European type and then in central Russia to the **Eastern European** type. In southern Russia (with an outlier in the Hungarian Plain) is the **Mid-continent Grassland** type of great extremes and with a rainfall mainly in spring. This fades into a **Temperate desert** around the Caspian Sea. In northern Russia, Sweden, and Norway is the **Cold Temperate** type fading northwards into the **Tundra**.

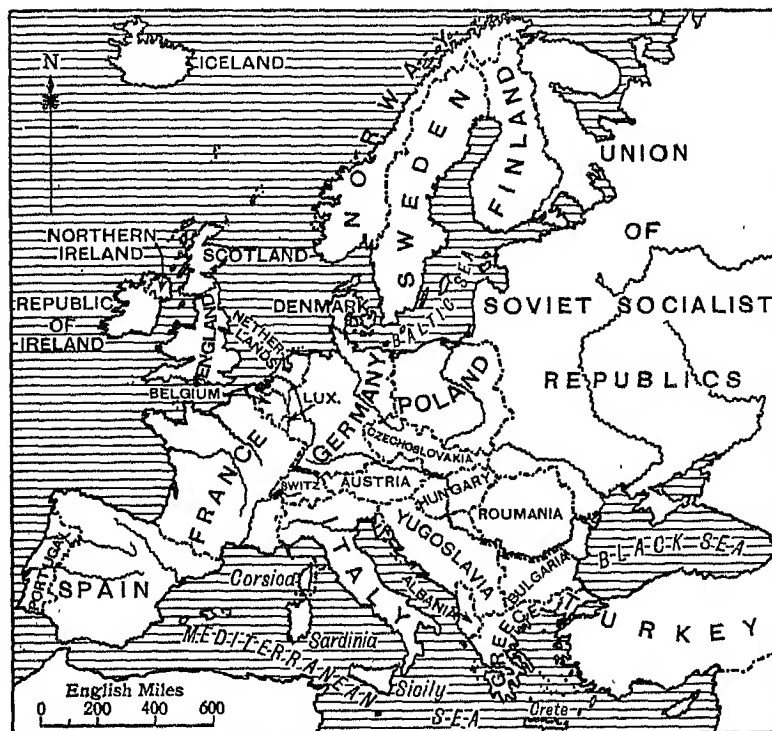
Many of the cultivated trees and plants now thoroughly charac-



EUROPE POLITICAL, 1937

teristic of certain parts of Europe are known or appear to have been introduced into that continent within historic times. The olive, the cypress, and the laurel, the evergreens now so characteristic of the Mediterranean peninsulas, and so well adapted to stand the dry summers of that region, seem all to be of Asiatic origin, though introduced at a very early date. Of Oriental origin also is alfalfa or lucerne, the equally characteristic fodder-plant of that region, the deep-rooted ally of the clover which survives the driest summers, and hence has been introduced into many other parts of the world with a similar climate to the Mediterranean. From Asia also came

the fig, mulberry, almond, walnut, chestnut, and apricot, all before the birth of Christ. The mulberry of the ancients, however, was the black mulberry, the sycamine of the Greeks, the white mulberry being a much later arrival from the East. From Asia likewise came at various dates, mostly after the beginning of the Christian Era, rice, cotton, and several members of the orange genus (citrons, lemons, and oranges proper). After the discovery of America, agaves



EUROPE POLITICAL, 1950

and cactuses, potatoes, maize, and tobacco were added to the vegetation and agriculture of this continent.

The chief cereals of Europe seem to have been cultivated there in prehistoric times; wheat and barley, as well as two kinds of millet, are proved by remains found beside the Lake-dwellings of Switzerland to have been cultivated in the later Stone Age. Many of our common cultivated plants, including cabbages, peas, vetches, parsley, and onions would seem, on the evidence of language, to have been introduced into central and northern Europe from Italy.

At the present day Europe is to a larger extent a manufacturing

region than any other continent, but the predominance of manufactures is characteristic only of certain countries. Before the Second World War manufactured goods provided half or more of the value of exports of native origin from the United Kingdom, France, Belgium, Germany, Switzerland, Italy, and Czechoslovakia. In other European countries the chief exports are often still products of the soil, the forest, or the sea, but usually partially manufactured or prepared. One of the most important facts in the commercial history of the continent within recent years is the extent to which its agriculture has been affected by the rapid development of commerce in grain with many parts of the world in which wheat and other crops are produced under exceptionally favourable conditions.

**Inland Waterways of Europe.** The countries of northern Europe are separated from the countries of Mediterranean Europe by a great barrier of mountains—the Pyrenees, Alps, Carpathians and their associated smaller ranges and plateaus. Consequently the natural gaps through these mountains have always been of the utmost importance as affording routeways, whilst even the difficult passes of the Alps have assumed a special significance. Generally speaking, the climate of northern Europe with its well-distributed rainfall is such as to afford a constant supply of water to the rivers, and this factor, combined with the generally level character of the north European plain, has led to an extensive use of waterways as highways of commerce. The rivers have been improved, in some cases canalised, and linked by canals so that the waterways are specially significant in France, Belgium, Holland, Germany, Poland, and Russia. On the other hand, the rivers of the Mediterranean lands, owing partly to the seasonal character of the rainfall, are of less importance. The one great river, the Rhone, which flows into the Mediterranean from the north, has afforded a valley routeway of special note. Unfortunately, the great river of central Europe—the Danube—flows into an enclosed sea, the Black Sea, and loses thereby much of its value as a commercial highway.

The Danube itself is an important international waterway. It is navigable by steamers from Ulm downwards, by barges of 1,000 tons from Regensburg (Ratisbon) to Turn Severin, and thence by sea-going vessels, a total length of upwards of 1,500 miles. The navigation is subject to the drawback of interruption by fixed or floating ice for about two months in the year, and a still more serious disadvantage is the character of its banks, especially below Budapest, these being so marshy as to afford comparatively few sites for towns. Before 1914 the total tonnage of traffic at Vienna was less than one-tenth of that of the Seine at Paris; and political restrictions, following the two world wars, further limited traffic.

The most important of the inland waterways in Europe is the

Rhine, and next in importance, in respect of volume of traffic, are the waterways connecting northern France and western Belgium. Under pre-war conditions the Rhine and Marne canal carried large quantities of coal in both directions and some thousands of tons of iron ore from France into Germany. Two of the great European canals are in Germany: the Dortmund-Ems Canal, connecting the Rhine with Dortmund and the port of Emden; and the Mittelland Canal, completed in 1938, connecting three rivers, the Ems, Weser and Elbe. The Kiel Canal, connecting the mouth of the river Elbe on the North Sea with the Baltic port of Kiel, enables ships to cross from the Baltic to the North Sea without going round Jutland. Before the Second World War the tonnage carried was equal to two-thirds of that carried on the Panama Canal.

Czechoslovakia, though an inland state, has a direct water outlet to the North Sea through the Elbe, which rises in Bohemia and is navigable below its junction with the Moldau, north of Prague. Poland makes extensive use of the Vistula and its tributaries.

Various projects for connections along routes that seem to offer the prospect of heavy, bulky traffic of the kind suited to inland waterways are or have been at various times under consideration. But in general, waterways are decreasingly used, though Russia in particular has been active in linking her main rivers and has constructed the White Sea Canal to afford a direct link between the Baltic Sea (*via* Leningrad) and the White Sea. Other important links—including the 63-mile canal, opened in 1952, which connects the Volga and the Don—combine with the White Sea Canal and the natural waterways of the country to provide a transport system affording direct communication between the White, Baltic, Caspian, Azov and Black Seas.

**Routes linking Britain with continental Europe.** The most important surface routes between England and the Continent for passengers, mails, and perishable and valuable goods, necessarily start from London, and are interrupted by the sea. The outports on the shortest sea-routes are Dover and Folkestone, connecting England with France by Calais and Boulogne respectively. The Dover-Calais route is shortest of all, being only 22 nautical miles as against 25 on the Folkestone-Boulogne route, but Boulogne has the advantage of being 27 statute miles nearer Paris. Dover also connects with Ostend (68 nautical miles) and by the train-ferry service, inaugurated in 1936, with Dunkerque. Other important outports are Harwich, from which British Railways run passenger steamers to the Hook of Holland (the outport of Rotterdam; 101 nautical miles), and Esbjerg in Denmark (360 nautical miles); Newhaven, whence the British Railways run steamers to Dieppe (76 miles) for Paris; and Southampton, from which other British Railways steamers run to Havre (122 miles) and St. Malo. There are also routes from Tilbury, Leith



Newcastle, and Hull to the Continent. Early in 1958 the Harwich-Antwerp passenger service was withdrawn, but a freight service was continued, specially adapted for containers. A new service for laden lorries and their crews connects Tilbury and Antwerp, and car-ferry services from Dover to Boulogne and Ostend are further evidence of the growth of through motor traffic.

**European Railways.** Fortunately the railways of Europe, except in Russia and the Iberian peninsula, are on the same gauge throughout, thus permitting trans-continental through running. The gauge is the same as in Britain (4ft. 8½in.), though most continental rolling stock cannot be used in this country owing to the narrowness of our tunnels and bridges.

Paris is the great focus for the routes touching the coast of France at all the ports from Calais to Havre. The distance by rail from Calais to Paris, *via* Boulogne and Amiens, is 186 miles, and from Havre to Paris, *via* Rouen, 141 miles. The influence of topography on railway routes is well seen in the main line to the Mediterranean, which runs down the Rhone Valley east of the Central Plateau, and the main line to Spain, which runs west of that same plateau. The Pyrenees long formed a barrier to railway communication between France and Spain and until 1912 no railway actually crossed the chain, the links between the two countries being round the eastern and western ends.

The stupendous engineering feats necessary to surmount the obstacles afforded by the Alps will receive attention under the countries concerned. A notable through service is the Nord Express from Paris to Stockholm. The route goes through north-west Germany to Hamburg, then through Schleswig-Holstein into Denmark and on to Copenhagen, crossing the Great Belt by train ferry (31 miles). From Copenhagen another train ferry (20 miles) connects with Malmö in South Sweden, whence the journey is continued overland to Stockholm. The whole journey takes two days. A variant of this route which has been opened up since the Second World War and is of growing importance is now followed by the Italian-Scandinavian (Rome-Stockholm) Express. Instead of continuing to Hamburg it branches off at Hanover and runs to the north coast of West Germany at Grossenbrode, whence a train ferry connects with Gedser, the southernmost point of Denmark, on the island of Falster. Gedser is also connected by train ferry with Warnemünde, in East Germany, but this service is used more for freight than for passenger traffic.

Among many other important through services it must suffice here to indicate the main trans-continental routes, leading eastwards to Russia, south-east to Istanbul (Constantinople), and into Asia. The Orient Express runs from Paris up the Marne valley, along the route of the Marne-Rhine Canal past Nancy, across the north

of the Vosges to Strasbourg, where it crosses the Rhine, then northwards along the base of the Black Forest, and eastwards to the Neckar valley. At Stuttgart the route forks. One branch goes east and north *via* Nuremberg to Prague and Warsaw. The other goes east and south to Ulm, on the Danube, thence *via* Munich and Salzburg to Linz, where it rejoins the Danube. It continues down the valley of the Danube to Vienna.

The Arlberg-Orient Express, starting from Paris, crosses north-eastern France and northern Switzerland, *via* Basle and Zurich, into Austria; tunnels under the Arlberg Pass, and after touching Innsbruck, Salzburg, and Linz, continues *via* Vienna to Budapest and Bucharest. For some years after the Second World War the service was restricted, especially beyond Vienna, but it now (1959) runs daily through to Bucharest.

The Ostend-Vienna Express crosses Belgium and Germany *via* Brussels, Cologne, and the Rhine valley to Frankfurt-on-Main and Nuremberg, and runs into the Danube valley, reaching Vienna by way of Passau and Linz.

A more direct route to Belgrade and beyond is that of the Simplon-Orient Express, which runs from Calais *via* Paris and Lausanne to Milan, across northern Italy *via* Venice to Trieste, and through Yugoslavia down the Save valley to its junction with the Danube at Belgrade, thence (since 1951) direct to Nish, Salonica and Athens. Since the war, the service to Istanbul has also been restored. Following frontier troubles in Bulgaria the service was diverted twice weekly *via* Salonica and Alexandroupolis and ran only once weekly *via* Sofia, Svilengrad, to Istanbul; but the diversion *via* Salonica was temporary, and the regular service runs through Bulgaria again.

**Railway Connections with Asia.** From Haidar Pasha, on the Asiatic side of the Bosphorus opposite to Istanbul, the Turkish Railways continue on the standard gauge. The Taurus Express winds across Asia Minor and over the Taurus range down to Adana in the Cilician plains, near the north-east corner of the Mediterranean; mounts again over the Amanus range to Aleppo, continues eastwards across the Euphrates to Mosul, on the Tigris, and descends the Tigris valley to Baghdad. From Baghdad a metre-gauge line crosses to the Euphrates valley and follows it down to the Persian Gulf at Basra.

From Aleppo southwards a connecting service runs to Tripoli and Beirut, traversing a military railway, built by the British during the Second World War and now operated by the Syrian and Lebanese Railways. The section beyond Beirut to Haifa is not in use. From Haifa there is in normal times a through service to Egypt, but this is at present interrupted by the lack of co-operation between Israel and the Arab world; the Israeli terminal is Beersheba and the Egyptian

terminal Rafa. The railway from Rafa to Cairo crosses the Suez Canal by a swing bridge a few miles south of Kantara. There is in fact, as shown on p. 640, through railway connection between Europe, Asia and Africa, except for the crossing of the Bosphorus between Istanbul and Haidar Pasha, which could be made by train ferry.

The other great railway link with Asia is the Trans-Siberian line. On the European side the natural connecting route is *via* Berlin and Moscow. The Russian gauge is 5 ft., but by the use of changeable bogies Russian trains can be run over the general European system. At the other end, railway developments in China made it possible, in 1936, to travel by rail from Calais to Canton. Through traffic was further facilitated in 1957, by the opening of a mile-long railway bridge and highway for road traffic across the Yangtse, linking the three great cities of Hankow, Hanyang, and Wuchang (see page 612).

**Road and Air Routes in Europe.** Road building has been carried to the pitch of perfection in western Europe, but eastern and south eastern Europe are still largely without all-weather motor roads.

All the great European cities are linked by regular air services. Not unnaturally, the greatest use has been made of the new mode of quick travel in those countries such as Russia where distance is a great enemy. Air services link Moscow with Iran (Persia) as well as with the Far East. The colonial powers—Britain, France, Belgium, Holland and Portugal—early developed air routes to their Asiatic and/or African territories, and transatlantic air services put Europe in regular communication with both North and South America.

**Economic Co-operation.** In 1957 six of the countries of Western Europe—France, Western Germany, Netherlands, Belgium, Luxembourg and Italy—entered into a treaty to form a European Common Market—a free trade area embracing what became popularly known as ‘Little Europe.’ Plans to give effect to the treaty, and discussions on its possible extension to link up with the United Kingdom in a modified form, which would safeguard British trade relations within the Commonwealth, were the subject of prolonged negotiations, but did not meet with success before the treaty came into force in 1959.

In March, 1958, a new European Assembly to serve as the parliamentary body for ‘Little Europe’ in three institutions—the Common Market, the Coal and Steel Community (see p. 385), and Euratom—was inaugurated at Strasbourg in the *Maison de L’Europe*.

## THE BRITISH ISLES

The British Isles lie in the north-west of Europe, between the parallels of  $50^{\circ}$  and  $60^{\circ}$  N. To be more precise, the fiftieth parallel of latitude runs a little to the north of Lizard Point in Cornwall and the Scilly Isles, and the sixtieth through the southern end of the mainland of Shetland. The meridian of  $0^{\circ}$  passes, of course, through London (Greenwich) whilst longitude  $10^{\circ}$  W. passes through the western peninsulas of Ireland.

Prior to 1922 the British Isles formed the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland. In that year 26 of the 32 counties of Ireland became the Irish Free State (afterwards the Irish Republic) so that the term United Kingdom became applicable to the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland.

**The Surface of England and Wales.** Of the countries which make up the British Isles, England is that which has the greatest proportion of the surface available for production or purposes subsidiary to production. According to the most recent agricultural returns, more than 70 per cent. of the entire area of land and water was under crops or grass or lying fallow, and when it is considered that about 5 per cent. of the surface was occupied by woods, and that a large area is taken up by towns, factories, roads, and railways, it will be seen that the area occupied by unproductive hill and moorland is comparatively small—about 11 per cent.

The hills and mountains of England are chiefly in the north and west. Indeed, Britain as a whole can be divided roughly into two halves, 'Highland Britain' and 'Lowland Britain.' Highland Britain occupies the north and west; lowland Britain the south and east. The Cheviot Hills with their broad spurs, and the tablelands of the Pennines, 'the backbone of England,' as it has been called, which runs from north to south from the Scottish border into the heart of Derbyshire, cover a considerable extent of ground, and are fit, so far as agriculture is concerned, for little else than sheep-pastures, so that in these districts the population is even now very sparse. Other extensive tracts with a relief too hilly or a soil too poor for intensive agriculture include the Lake District and the moorlands of Devon and Cornwall as well as certain tracts in lowland Britain such as the Yorkshire moors and parts of the chalk

hills and downs—Salisbury Plain and the Marlborough Downs in Wiltshire, and the Chiltern Hills. In addition, there are considerable tracts of light, hungry soil or sandy areas such as the Bagshot area south-west of London, the New Forest of Hampshire, and the 'Breckland' of Norfolk and Suffolk.

As will be mentioned below, the upland masses of the Pennines, the Lake District, and the south-west have rendered difficult the construction of roads and railways. Even in the south-east roads and railways out of London seek the gaps through the Chilterns or the North Downs, but otherwise physical features in the south and midlands rarely present insuperable difficulties to the development of a road and rail network.

In Wales the proportion of hilly and mountainous country is much greater than in England, and the area of land under crops or grass or in bare fallow is rather less than 54 per cent. against 30 per cent. occupied by moorland and rough pasture. The ranges of the Welsh hills are, however, short, and there are many openings allowing an easy passage for railways and roads.

**The Surface of Scotland.** Scotland is the most mountainous part of the British Isles, and its northern half has hills and mountains so closely packed together that even yet there are few roads leading through the narrow and sparsely peopled valleys between them. For long the only road across the Grampians—the mountains lying immediately to the north of the central lowlands—was that which leads up to the valley of the Garry, a tributary of the Tay, and after crossing the Drumouchter Pass at the height of 1,484 feet, descends a tributary of the Spey to the valley of that river. This old road is accompanied by a railway, which is continued near the east coast to the most northerly towns of the mainland of the country (Wick and Thurso). Of the surface of Scotland less than one-fourth is under crops or grass or in bare fallow, and the greater part of the land suitable for cropping is confined to the area already referred to as the central lowlands, an area roughly definable as bounded by two parallel lines, one stretching from Stonehaven in Kincardineshire to the Firth of Clyde opposite Greenock, the other from Dunbar in Haddingtonshire to the southern part of the Ayrshire coast. In this lowland area there lies, moreover, most of the great mineral wealth—the coal—of Scotland, and therefore most of its manufacturing industry. It is this region which has at all periods of Scottish history been the most densely peopled part of the country and now contains a greater proportion of the population than ever.

**Climate.** The mildness and equableness of the climate of the British Isles as a whole have already been explained and illustrated under more general headings (p. 45). The special advantages of the climate of the British Isles with regard to production are that it is favourable to active exertion throughout the day all the year

round, and even for the most part stimulates to active exertion; that the mildness of the winter causes little or no interruption to field labour in any of the parts best suited to agriculture, and its comparative freedom from heavy snowfalls causes little interruption to communication; and that, for some reason or other, the climate seems to be unfavourable to the existence of insect pests which infest similar crops grown elsewhere, while, nevertheless, it is seldom unfavourable to domesticated animals. For the sake of comparison with other countries it is well to remember that the average annual rainfall at Greenwich (in one of the drier parts of Great Britain) is about 25 inches, and that while the average mean temperature of the hottest month at Greenwich is  $63\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  F., at Edinburgh  $58\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ , that of the coldest month is about the same at both places,  $39^{\circ}$ . In general it may be said that the drier parts of Britain—the east—with an annual rainfall of 30 inches or less favour arable farming and the ripening of crops; the midland regions and lowlands of the west with between 30 and 60 inches a year are more suited to grassland farming, for crops are liable to suffer from too much moisture inducing ‘rust’ diseases. It is only in the highland areas of western Britain that rainfall or humidity conditions can be described as approaching the excessive and so rendering farming difficult. The distinction thus made between eastern and western regions is important as affecting legislation designed to encourage British agriculture.

The length of the shortest day (sunlight) varies from about  $5\frac{1}{2}$  hours in the extreme north to eight hours in the extreme south. In the more thickly peopled region of Scotland the shortest day in the year is about  $6\frac{1}{2}$  hours in length (in the latitude of Dundee). It is to be remembered also that the shortness of the day is to some extent compensated in the high latitudes to which the islands belong by the length of the twilight.

**Agriculture.** In the Middle Ages, before the Industrial Revolution was born, Britain produced a surplus of agricultural produce and both corn and wool were exported. Home agriculture flourished during the Napoleonic Wars after which, despite temporary setbacks, it continued to flourish until the peak was reached in the eighteen-sixties and seventies. Then, the corn laws repealed, began the great expansion of production in the new lands of the United States, Canada, Argentine, and Australia. Cheap food flowed into Britain as payment for manufactured exports and for services rendered. Farming in Britain became a neglected industry. The whole pattern of farming and with it the face of the countryside changed. Farmers economised in labour by turning over from ploughland to grass: acreage under crops, especially cereal crops, decreased accordingly, whilst that under permanent pasture expanded. Marginal and poor land was abandoned and so the acreage of

rough grazings steadily expanded. Industry and housing cut steadily into the acreage of farm land. During the First World War the submarine menace threatened food supplies and there was a temporary rise in ploughed acreage and output, especially in 1918, but in general the trend continued to 1938. In that year the threat of war resulted in a change: with the outbreak of war in 1939 enormous energy was put into the farming industry and home production. Owing to the demand on land for airfields the total available in 1943—a peak of wartime production—was actually less than in 1938, but the annexed table shows the remarkable changes. Ploughland was increased by nearly 50 per cent., wheat and barley acreage almost doubled. As a result home food supply was increased from a little over 35 per cent. of consumption to about 55 per cent. The former reliance on imported feeding stuffs for animals gave place to the home production of all but a small fraction of the 10m. tons previously imported. Indeed, each farmer was required to grow his own to avoid a burden on internal transport.

When the Second World War ended, the necessity of maximum home food production remained so that foreign currency could be conserved for the purchase of vital raw materials. The sale of Britain's overseas investments to pay for the war meant that there was no longer an automatic flow of foodstuffs and raw materials as interest which there had been previously.

The revolution in British agriculture was accomplished with the help of mechanisation. The 'average' farm worked as a full-time holding in Britain is about 99 or 100 acres—where rough grazing is included it is reckoned as 10 acres equivalent to one of permanent pasture. There are about 440,000 'farms' in England, Wales, and Scotland, but many of these are small part-time holdings and the number of full-time farmers in 1957 was estimated at about 300,000, while 50,000 were part-time farmers. The table opposite shows that there were in 1956 between three and four times as many tractors as horses in agricultural use. Broadly every farmer has at least one tractor and various other mechanical farm implements. Britain can now claim to be the most highly mechanised farming country in the world. The output per acre of crops and the stocking of land by animals is very high—Britain ranks a little below Denmark, Holland, and Belgium, who are the leaders in this respect.

The British climate is more suited to grass and fodder crops than to wheat, so that home production was concentrated on milk, in which the country is self-supporting, and dairy produce, leaving a large proportion of the wheat for bread to be imported. Though the wartime effort brought the wheat acreage almost back to the peak of 3,840,000 which it was in 1872, the population in the meantime had greatly expanded. The total import of wheat between 1913 and 1935 ranged from 4·8 (1918) to 6·6 (1931) million tons.

This was cut to an import of 2·8m. in 1944 in the height of the war, and to an average of 4·0 in 1946–50. In 1957 it was 4·5m.

## GREAT BRITAIN AND NORTHERN IRELAND

All figures in thousands

	1938	1943	1957
Total land area (acres)	59,533	59,533	59,535
Crops and grass	31,755	31,058	31,106
Arable land	12,957	18,728	17,523
Permanent grass	18,798	12,330	13,487
Wheat	1,928	3,464	2,114
Barley	988	1,786	2,617
Oats	2,395	3,680	2,350
Sugar beet	336	417	430
Temporary grass	3,968	4,219	6,246
Rough grazings	16,589	17,119	16,782
Cattle total	8,762	9,259	10,885
Cows in milk	2,800	2,910	3,330
Sheep	26,775	20,383	24,794
Pigs	4,383	1,829	5,969
Poultry	74,246	50,729	94,839
Horses used for agriculture	748	693	147 <sup>1</sup>
Tractors	—	117	501 <sup>1</sup>
Wheat harvest (tons)	1,965	3,447	2,680
Barley harvest (tons)	904	1,645	2,950
Oats harvest (tons)	1,992	3,064	2,146
Sugar-beet (tons)	2,191	3,760	4,540

<sup>1</sup> 1956.

The growth of the beet-sugar industry in this country is of special interest. Experimentally sugar-beet had been cultivated on a small scale in various parts of England before the First World War. In 1911 experiments were made at the instance of the Development Commissioners at seven stations scattered over the south, south-east, and midlands of England, and as the result of those experiments the Commissioners regarded it as proved that beet giving yields equalling, if not exceeding, those obtained on the Continent could be grown in England. A factory was built at Cantley, near Norwich, in 1912 but largely with Dutch capital. The industry was not established when war broke out and the factory was closed. After the war assistance was given by the removal of the excise duty in 1922. In the budget of 1924–25 the import duty on sugar was reduced from 21s. to 11s. 8d. per cwt., and the Government subsequently agreed to grant a subsidy of 19s. 6d. per cwt. on home-made sugar (for the first four years, thenceforward being gradually reduced) but with an excise duty of 9s. 9d., thus giving a subsidy to the industry of 21s. 5d. per cwt. By 1931 there were seventeen factories in operation in England and Scotland and the output for 1930–31



was 422,700 tons, against 291,500 in the preceding season or 50,000 in 1925-26. The subsidy was due to cease in 1935 but the industry, though of great value to the farmers in East Anglia, was unable to carry on without some measure of protection. With continued subsidy the area under beet rose to 336,000 acres in 1938 and continued to expand during and after the Second World War to over 400,000 acres. In 1953 there was a record crop of 5·27m. tons. Later crops were (in tons): 1954, 4·52m.; 1955, 4·55m.; 1956, 5·17m.; 1957, 4·54m. Production is affected both by the season and the prevalence of disease (virus yellows), which reduces both volume and sugar content. The industry is essentially attached to country districts. Where considerably more than 80 per cent. of the raw material is a waste product of the sugar manufactured, but is a valuable cattle food and land fertiliser, the advantage of having the sugar-factories close to the beet-fields is obvious. The factory industry is essentially a seasonal one, being carried on only for three or four months during the winter—after the beet-harvest. It accordingly is one that provides employment in country districts at a period when agricultural employment is slack, and is at the same time an aid in maintaining the labour supply for those districts all the year round. The production of sugar in 1956-57 was 689,671 tons.

**Geographical factors influencing the growth of Britain's prosperity and trade.** Until about 1900 the foreign commerce of the British Isles was much greater in value than that of any other country in the world, and greater also per head than that of most other countries in which there was a population of great density. The export trade fell behind that of the United States from 1900 to 1931 absolutely, but not per head. This shows that for foreign commerce this country must have peculiar advantages of one kind or another, and we must therefore consider what these advantages are. First of all it will be well merely to enumerate these advantages, as well as the disadvantages under which this country labours—or at least laboured until the First World War—and afterwards to examine more particularly the nature of those which require elucidation and to note in what ways there have been changes since 1913 in the influence of the factors concerned. It should be noted, however, that in this enumeration the sole point of view is the immediate interest of commerce. It is not intended to hint that all the so-called advantages and disadvantages are necessarily to be regarded as such with reference to the well-being of the people.

The advantages were:—

- (1) A favourable climate.
- (2) The abundance of coal and iron and some other raw materials, especially raw materials leaving much waste.
- (3) The efficiency of British labour.
- (4) The fact that nearly all the great mechanical inventions by

which modern industry has been revolutionised originated in this country, which thus got the start of other countries in their application.

- (5) The abundance of capital.
- (6) The concentration of population in our industrial regions, facilitating the organisation of industry, including the minutest subdivision of labour.
- (7) The completeness of the internal communications.
- (8) The nearness of the coast on all sides.
- (9) The numerous seaports.
- (10) The geographical position.
- (11) The magnitude of the shipping.
- (12) The extent of the British colonial and other possessions.
- (13) The extent to which the English language is spread over the globe.
- (14) The long establishment of our commercial relations with the best markets of the world.
- (15) The free trade policy that prevailed in this country for more than seventy years.

The disadvantages that have to be placed on the other side are:—

(1) The dearness of land arising from the density of population and the great development of industry, a disadvantage necessarily most experienced in the great centres of industry.

(2) The deficiency of large water-powers, now essential in some branches of industry (p. 72).

(3) The higher rate of wages long paid in Great Britain compared with those paid by its chief rivals in manufacturing industry.

(4) The government and self-imposed restrictions on labour.

(5) The backward state of education, and especially of technical and commercial education, which existed in the United Kingdom compared with the point reached in this respect by some of its rivals at least until 1900 or even 1914.

(6) The irrational spelling of the English language.

(7) The want of a decimal coinage and system of weights and measures.

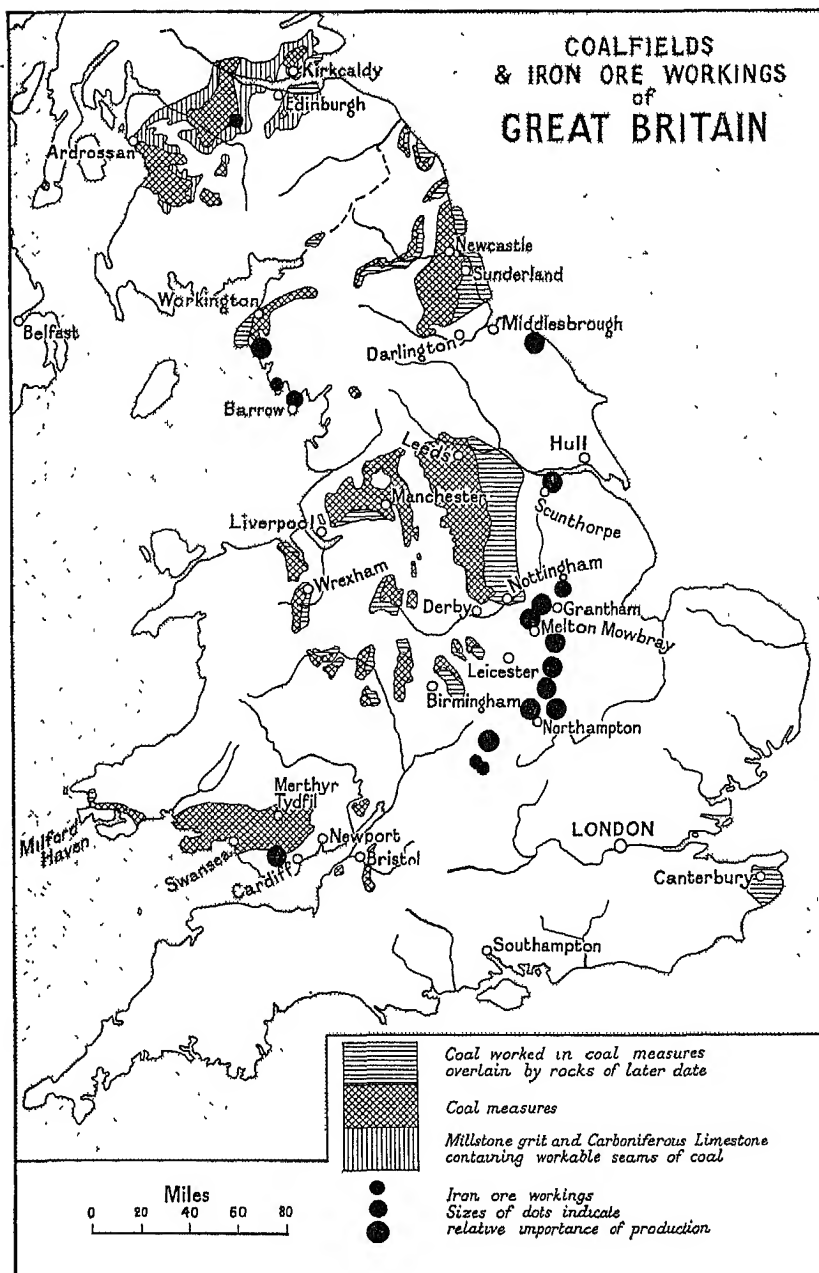
(8) The high tariffs of many countries of the world while Britain still followed a free trade policy.

(9) Currency restrictions imposed in many countries of the world.

It scarcely needs to be pointed out that the advantages and disadvantages above enumerated are not mentioned in the order of their importance. Of the advantages, those from 1 to 6 are such as affect the production of articles of commerce, and the remainder, those which pertain to their distribution; and of the former, Nos. 1 and 2 may be reckoned as natural advantages, Nos. 4, 5, and 6 advantages mainly due to historical causes. No. 3, the efficiency

of the British artisan, is largely an historical advantage, due to the acquired skill resulting from the experience of generations and from familiarity with a gradual and constant series of improvements in industrial operations.

With regard to the advantage of the climate it is unnecessary to say more; but in relation to the second of the advantages enumerated above, wealth in coal and iron, it is necessary to point out that the advantage we possess arises not only from their abundance, but also from the fact that important supplies of both are found quite close to seaports, and that the coal necessary to the smelting of the iron is at no great distance from the iron ores, though the old iron ores of the coal-fields themselves are almost completely worked out. It should also be noted that technical advances in the utilisation of coal, especially in connection with the iron industry, have redounded further to the advantage of Great Britain. Probably no other European country is better adapted than our own for such schemes as the development of an electricity grid with generating stations on the coal-fields, because of the compactness of our great industrial areas, the density of their populations, and their situation on or in proximity to the coal-fields. On these points the map on p. 329 may for the most part be left to speak for itself. But it may be pointed out that the great coal-field of Durham and Northumberland is bisected by the estuary of the Tyne, to which belong the seaports which first carried on a great trade in coal, and is in immediate proximity to Sunderland and various minor ports, and that its southern end is close beside the iron ores of Cleveland in the North Riding. Further, the coal-field of Cumberland includes the seaports of Maryport and Whitehaven, besides Workington, and lies close to the iron ores of south Cumberland and north Lancashire, a rich source of iron until their virtual exhaustion. The South Wales coal-field gave rise to a vast iron industry through the fact of its having possessed great beds of ironstone, though these are now worked scarcely at all in consequence of the facility with which less refractory ores can be imported from abroad, a fact which has led to the migration of the iron centres to the coast. The North Staffordshire is now the only coal-field with an appreciable output of iron ore. In Scotland the coal-fields are likewise close to the sea, and likewise were formerly rich in iron ore. In the west of Scotland the Ayrshire coal-field extends to the ports of Troon and Ardrossan; in the Clyde basin the coal-field extends below the port of Glasgow, and the ports of Grangemouth, Alloa, Burntisland, Dysart, Leith, and others are either upon or quite near coal-fields farther east. The western coal-field supplies large quantities of splint coal, which can be used directly in the smelting of iron ores. The blackband ironstone once plentiful in parts of these coal-fields (as in Ayrshire and the Clyde



basin) yielded a very fine quality of wrought iron, which before the cheapening of steel had come to be the principal ship-building material. The ironstone also is for the most part so rich in carbonaceous matter as to reduce considerably the expense for fuel in the operations preliminary to smelting. Limestone and ganister, two other minerals of great importance in the iron industry (see p. 280), are also abundant in Great Britain, and in some cases near the beds of iron ore. In recent decades, with the exhaustion of the iron ores of the coal-fields, the chief centres of production of iron ore in England are the Midland and Cleveland districts, but the value is not proportionately great, because the ore is comparatively poor in iron, and that of Cleveland is phosphoric. These Jurassic ores are worked opencast near the outcrop, and contain from 20 to 35 per cent. of iron. The ore of Cumberland and the Furness district of Lancashire is a red hematite richer in iron, and containing very little phosphorus, and forming the only true Bessemer ores obtained in this country. Apart from the ironstones of the Wealden rocks of Kent and Sussex, for long the chief sources of British iron, ores have been worked on the island of Raasay, east of Skye, and at Westbury (Wilts) and elsewhere.

Exploratory borings have proved considerable extensions of British coal-fields under the cover of later rocks and there is no fear of the exhaustion of the coal. Reserves (including seams of 1 foot and upwards in thickness in depth down to 4,000 feet) total about 200,000m. tons, enough to last the country 800 years at the present rate of consumption. The difficulties in which the British coal industry found itself after the First World War were due in the main to two causes—the diminution of the export trade and the uneconomic working of the older collieries in the older parts of the coal-fields. Most British coal-fields to-day can be divided into two halves—the older, shallower half, partly worked out and operated by old, small units; the newer, deeper half recently developed and operated by large modern units. Good examples of the twofold division are found both in Durham and in the Yorkshire-Nottinghamshire coal-fields. This led first to schemes for the voluntary, or if that failed compulsory, ‘rationalisation’ of the industry by grouping of collieries. Later nationalisation of coal resources followed, and finally nationalisation of the industry itself under the National Coal Board in 1946. The Second World War killed the export trade: the present problem is to recruit or retain sufficient manpower to produce sufficient and of the right qualities for home needs.

Although the production of iron ore on the coal-fields of Great Britain is now comparatively small, among the potential iron reserves of this country are enormous deposits of low-grade clay ironstones belonging to the British coal-fields which it may prove economic, in the future, to mine. The reserves of the Midland Jurassic fields

are, however, twice as great and the iron content permits economic working.

The fourth, fifth, sixth, and seventh of the advantages enumerated above on p. 327 require no special elucidation, though it may be pointed out that (5) and (6), the abundance of capital, and the advanced organisation of industry, are in part a consequence of (4), that is, of the United Kingdom having got the start of other countries in modern mechanical appliances; but this again is subject to a qualification pointed out below on p. 334, and may now be a disadvantage in that our factories are equipped with machinery now out of date but expensive to replace or too valuable to scrap. With regard to the eighth of our advantages, the nearness of the coast on both sides, it is hardly necessary to explain how this may place a manufacturing region within easy reach of many more markets than are accessible to one that has outlets only in one direction. The precise nature of this advantage is well illustrated by the trade of some of our seaports. Though Lancashire, on the west side of the Pennine Upland, has always been the great seat of our cotton manufactures, Hull frequently exported nearly as great a value of cotton yarn as Liverpool; Hull and Grimsby together much more than Liverpool; the eastern ports of Great Britain collectively always export more of that yarn than the western ports. The reason of this is that Continental nations (Germany, France, &c.) which were then among our chief customers for cotton yarn, were more easily reached from the east side. The woollen manufactures, again, are mainly carried on to the east of the Pennines, but the woven fabrics are much more largely exported from Liverpool than from any other port, though woollen yarns are exported thence only to a limited extent. The abundance of seaports, the ninth of the advantages enumerated above, is what enables the advantages just illustrated to be utilised; but it is obvious that it is an advantage also in another way, in the extent of the accommodation it provides for shipping. No doubt such accommodation can sometimes be provided artificially, as in most cases it needs to be improved artificially, but there is an enormous advantage in respect of cost where facilities are furnished by nature at a great many different points. In the British Isles there are more than twenty seaports with a natural depth of at least twenty-five feet at high water, and most of these are situated in the vicinity of the great seats of production. In view of the increasing size of the shipping of the present day this large number of deep harbours, or harbours which owing to their soft bottoms can easily be dredged, is a matter of peculiar importance to the commerce of this country.

The tenth of the advantages named above, the geographical position of the British Isles, is of great moment in more ways than one. In the first place, the 'silver streak' is a natural bulwark

of the highest value. It has long enabled the kingdom to place its chief reliance for defence upon the Navy and later the Air Force, which make a much less heavy drain upon the working population than the vast armies which Continental nations were obliged to train and keep on foot. Secondly, it is of great importance to British commerce that our islands occupy a somewhat central position among the nations that carry on a great commerce at the present day. It was of no importance to us that America lay on our west, until America began to rear a population more or less dependent on foreign commerce. In view of the three advantages specially considered in the last two paragraphs, it may safely be asserted that this country has in the aggregate greater advantages than any other area of equal extent for reaching all those parts of the world which are most conveniently reached from the seaboard. The effects of this with respect to the distribution of our own products will be understood readily enough from the illustration already given of the advantage of having seaports on different sides; and its influence on our trade in foreign goods is considered below on p. 369.

The advantages accruing to British commerce from the extent of the British Commonwealth and Empire are in a large measure indirect. The fact that throughout the Commonwealth the English language is the language of commerce is important. Since 1887 many colonial or, as they have been called since 1907, imperial conferences, have been held, in which among other matters the interests of trade have been discussed. The self-governing dominions and colonies have given preference in one form or other to imports from the mother country. In this policy Canada was the pioneer in 1898. South Africa and New Zealand followed in 1903, and Australia in 1908. The granting of a preferential tariff to the members of the Commonwealth, generally on a reciprocal basis, is now usual among the dominions and colonies themselves.

Inasmuch as fiscal policy undoubtedly affects the commercial value of local resources and place relations, it cannot be said that the discussion of the preferential tariffs between this country and the constituent parts of the Empire or the ideal of Empire Free Trade would be altogether out of place in this work; but the omission of such a discussion will no doubt be excused in view of the vastness of the subject and the fact that the relevant considerations are more economic than geographical. The whole world position is now in fact changed because of the isolation of the Soviet bloc and the dollar and sterling areas. This has already been mentioned, and is illustrated by the map on p. 121.

With regard to language, in order to realise the importance of this factor one has only to think of the rapid increase of an English-speaking population, not only in the more important British dominions and colonies, but also in the United States. In

the past century English-speaking whites, now about 8 or 9 per cent. of mankind, have increased four times as rapidly as the population of the world as a whole.

Of the economic disadvantages of this country mentioned above the deficiency of water-power is, in view of the great wealth in conveniently situated coal, a disadvantage chiefly in relation to those industries which demand the very high temperatures possible in electric furnaces. Such industries have, it may be noted, developed the water-power resources as at Kinlochleven and near Fort William. Elsewhere, in North Wales, in southern Scotland, and latterly in the north-west Highlands and the Grampians, water-power is utilised and electricity generated, the works being connected with the national grid system. The total possible annual saving of coal by the use of water-power in the United Kingdom has been estimated at a few million tons at the most and only a small fraction of the electricity generated is derived from water-power. A water-power scheme which dwarfs the greatest of the world's installations was prepared in 1920 by the Ministry of Transport. It was proposed to construct a concrete barrage, serving as a bridge for railway and motor traffic, across the Severn estuary near the Tunnel, where the channel is  $2\frac{1}{2}$  miles wide. By means of a series of sluices and turbines the tides would be harnessed to develop over 500,000 horse-power during a ten-hours' day, with a peak-load capacity of over a million horse-power. Such an installation would, it is claimed, supply the industries of the Midlands and South Wales with a permanent supply of cheap electric power, and set free annually 4m. tons of coal previously used for generating power. Although a decision was reached after the Second World War to proceed with the road bridge, the power scheme has been shelved. Britain is also developing nuclear power at stations being constructed, mainly in remote areas, round the coasts. Calder Hall in Cumberland began to add its quota to the national grid in 1956.

The next disadvantage mentioned, the dearness of land, may be regarded as a necessary result of the development of our industries. The third, the higher rate of wages, if considered by itself, cannot but be looked upon as a disadvantage in the struggle for cheapness into which the competition for foreign commerce in a large measure resolves itself; but it must not be forgotten that in considering the cost of labour the relative efficiency of labour has always to be taken into account. With the increase in world standards of living, the consequent rise in real wages, and international agreements on labour conditions, world differences are disappearing.

The state of technical and commercial education in this country was a few years ago a more serious disadvantage than it is now, but constant efforts in this direction are needed to bring or keep us abreast of our rivals.



The want of a decimal coinage and system of weights and measures is also felt among some as an impediment in business transactions.

In the earlier editions of his *Handbook of Commercial Geography* Chisholm developed gradually his concepts of the advantages and disadvantages of Britain in the development of international trade. Sir Halford Mackinder in his classic work *Britain and the British Seas*, first published early in the present century, likewise laid much emphasis on the importance of Britain's physical location on the earth's surface. In many ways, however, the discussion is now more of historical than current interest. It is true that the advent of the air age has again underlined Britain's favourable location, but the position which emerged after the Second World War presented many new features. One is the shortage of land—only 56m. acres in the whole of England, Wales, and Scotland of land of all types to serve the many needs of about 50m. people. The expansion of industry, housing, and the needs of recreation, transport, and defence have all cut into and are continuing to absorb food-producing land—hence the development of national land-use planning. So many countries which were once Britain's eager customers for manufactured goods are making their own, competing with us in world markets and even exporting to us. The struggle is to maintain quality and efficiency and even when that is done, British goods often face tariff barriers and currency restrictions unknown to an earlier age.

**Population.** Since the publication of the first edition of this work there have been six censuses of the United Kingdom, and the table below shows the rate of increase of population at these censuses of the different parts of the kingdom, as compared with the rate in 1871–81, and the most nearly corresponding figures for Germany and the United States. Owing to the war there was no British census in 1941 so that the last column refers to 1931–51. Care must be taken to note therefore that the intercensal population increase refers to twenty years, not ten as previously.

*Rate of Increase or Decrease of Population per cent. per annum.*

—	1871–81.	1881–91.	1891–1901.	1901–11.	1911–21.	1921–31.	1931–51.
England . . .	1.37	1.11	1.04	1.01	0.55	0.63	0.47
Wales . . .	1.12	1.11	1.22	1.64	0.84	—0.24	0.01
Scotland . . .	1.07	0.75	1.06	0.62	0.25	—0.08	0.26
Great Britain . .	1.32	1.06	1.14	0.99	0.46	0.48	0.45
Ireland . . .	—0.45	—1.06	—0.54	—0.16	—0.34	—0.37	0.01
United Kingdom	1.03	0.79	0.95	0.87	—	—	—
Germany . . .	1871–80.	1880–90	1890–1900.	1900–10.	1910–20.	1920–30.	1930–50.
United States . .	1.08	1.08	1.32	1.43	0.55	0.56	—
	2.66	2.24	1.90	1.93	1.40	1.61	1.09

*Distribution of Increases and Decreases of Population in the  
Administrative Counties (with Associated County Boroughs) of  
England and Wales during the Intercensal Period 1931-51*

COUNTY	POPULATION 1951	PERCENTAGE INCREASE OR DECREASE	COUNTY	POPULATION 1951	PERCENTAGE INCREASE OR DECREASE
<i>Increases:</i>			<i>Increases.</i>		
<i>Over 30%</i>			<i>15-10% (cont.)</i>		
Hertfordshire .	609,735	+52.0	Lincolnshire	473,463	+12.1
West Sussex .	318,661	+42.9	(Lindsey)		
Buckinghamshire .	386,164	+42.3	Lincolnshire	101,545	+10.2
Bedfordshire .	311,844	+41.4	(Holland)		
Middlesex .	2,268,776	+38.4	Derbyshire .	826,336	+10.1
Surrey .	1,601,555	+35.6	Isle of Ely	89,038	+10.1
Oxfordshire .	275,765	+31.5	<i>10-5%</i>		
<i>30-20%</i>			East Suffolk	321,849	+9.1
Berkshire .	402,939	+29.4	Devonshire	798,283	+8.9
Flintshire .	145,108	+28.5	Norfolk .	546,550	+8.9
Kent .	1,563,286	+28.2	Cornwall .	345,612	+8.7
Wiltshire .	387,379	+27.8	Cumberland	285,347	+8.4
Worcestershire	522,974	+24.5	Denbighshire	170,699	+8.3
Huntingdonshire	69,273	+23.2	Isle of Wight	95,594	+8.1
Peterborough			Yorkshire		
(Soke of)	63,784	+23.0	(East Riding)	510,800	+5.8
Dorsetshire	291,157	+21.6	Northumberland	798,175	+5.5
Warwickshire	1,860,874	+21.4	<i>Under 5%</i>		
<i>20-15%</i>			Pembrokeshire	90,896	+4.2
Lincolnshire			Yorkshire		
(Kesteven)	131,566	+19.4	(West Riding)	3,585,402	+4.0
Cambridgeshire	166,863	+19.2	Anglesey .	50,637	+3.3
Gloucestershire	938,618	+18.7	Westmorland	67,383	+3.0
Shropshire	289,844	+18.7	Caernarvonshire	124,074	+2.7
Nottinghamshire	841,083	+18.0	Lancashire	5,116,013	+1.5
Southampton	1,196,617	+18.0	<i>Decreases:</i>		
Rutlandshire	20,510	+17.9	<i>0-5%</i>		
Somersetshire	551,188	+17.2	Durham .	1,463,416	-1.5
Leicestershire	630,893	+16.5	Monmouthshire	424,647	-1.6
Essex .	2,043,574	+16.4	Brecknockshire	56,484	-2.2
Northamptonshire	359,550	+16.2	Glamorganshire	1,201,989	-2.2
Cheshire .	1,258,050	+15.7	Cardiganshire	53,267	-3.5
<i>15-10%</i>			Merionethshire	41,456	-4.0
Herefordshire .	127,092	+13.7	Carmarthenshire	171,742	-4.1
West Suffolk .	120,590	+13.6	<i>Over 5%</i>		
Staffordshire .	1,621,013	+13.0	Montgomeryshire	45,989	-5.1
East Sussex	618,083	+13.0	Radnorshire .	19,998	-6.2
Yorkshire			London .	3,348,336	-23.8
(North Riding)	525,496	+12.6			

It will be noted that the leading percentage increases are not in the big mining and industrialised counties, though actual decreases are confined to Durham, various Welsh counties, and the County of London. London and the industrial areas were the special target of war bombing, and the exceptional rate of decrease in the population of the County of London was partly due to the resulting devastation. But the exodus from the county into the surrounding country of Greater London has been operative and progressive since the beginning of the century, and is one cause of the rapid increase of population in neighbouring counties. Other factors in the changing distribution of the population are discussed on the next page.

The table on page 334 indicates the general trend of the population. The pre-1914 moderate increase in Britain (with an absolute decline in Ireland) gave place to a slight increase in Britain as a whole but an absolute decline in Scotland and Wales. Actually this was rural depopulation, and the actual or relative decline applied to rural counties of England as well. The increase was mainly in the main manufacturing belt of Britain—an area stretching from Manchester to London which had more than 57 per cent. of the people of the country.

The changes in the period 1931–51 show an increase in all parts of the United Kingdom. This is in part due to an influx of political refugees from continental Europe, notably Poles and Austrians. The decline in Wales was checked and even the absolute decline in the Irish Republic has been reversed.

Although there has been, since the end of the Second World War, a large emigration to Canada, Australia, New Zealand, Rhodesia and elsewhere, there has at the same time been a large influx of coloured British Commonwealth immigrants from the crowded but poverty stricken parts of the West Indies, especially Jamaica, and West Africa. Many young Pakistanis have also come to Britain.

**Urbanisation of Population.** In common with most countries of the world Britain has continued to show rural depopulation and urban expansion. Official figures of 'rural population' refer to persons living in Rural Districts which may in fact include towns of considerable size. Persons living in farms, scattered rural habitations, and in villages in fact number only about 10 per cent. of the population, including the 5 or 6 per cent. actually engaged in farming. As farming has become more efficient through mechanisation and in other ways, the same output is possible with a smaller labour force. The resulting rural depopulation threatens the whole social structure as evidenced by the closing of village schools and amalgamation of village churches. On the other hand, as the table on p. 373 shows, the towns have continued to grow—except some of the older industrial centres or those in remoter or peripheral areas. The growth of Greater London and Greater Birmingham constituted a threat to efficient organisation and the dispersal rendered imperative by bombing during the Second World War is now regarded as a proper objective of planned location of industry. Manufacturers are encouraged by the grant of licences to go to the areas, usually the older or peripheral industrial areas, scheduled for development, and new towns are being built to encourage movement away from London and other urban centres which are regarded as having grown too large. The table overleaf shows this trend.

**British Industries.** The local distribution of British manufacturing industries presents many points of interest, some of them purely geographical, some historical. For example **cotton** is almost

wholly confined to a few localities in the west of Great Britain. In England the spinning and weaving of cotton are almost restricted to the west side of the Pennine Upland, mainly to that part of Lancashire which lies to the south of the Ribble; in Scotland, to Glasgow and other manufacturing towns in the west. The reasons were, initially, geographical. In the Middle Ages the local supply of wool from the Pennine sheep gave encouragement to a crofter's industry of spinning and weaving. The local soft waters were suitable for scouring and dyeing and later the water-power from swift streams came to be used. Liverpool grew as a port with the 'trade triangle' and the new textile material cotton was naturally introduced here to a community already skilled in the processes of spinning and weaving. The humid climate of the western side of the Pennines proved peculiarly favourable, whilst with the coming of the industrial revolution there was coal present in abundance. Both for the spinning and weaving of cotton a moist climate is of considerable importance, and in districts where the manufacture is carried on, dry weather, and especially cold and dry weather, adds considerably to the expense of the operations; for where the air is too dry the yarn is liable to become brittle through losing its natural moisture, and all the more likely is this to result when, as on cold days, the temperature of the spinning-'mill' or weaving-'shed' is much above the temperature of the air outside. The failure of cotton factories started in other parts of England has been attributed in some cases to no other factor. Even the shelter of a hill against dry east winds was considered a matter of high pecuniary value. Modern factories, equipped with humidifiers, can afford to ignore such factors once so important. Soft water for dyeing and other operations remains, however, an important factor.

In England the town most closely associated with the cotton industry is Manchester. This is one of those towns which owed their original importance in a large measure to the fact of their lying in a plain just on the border of hill country, a position which, as already explained, naturally leads to the convergence of roads from many parts of the plain as well as from one or more valleys among the hills. It is hence natural to find that a town has been situated in this position from a very early date. Manchester (the ancient Mancunium) was already in existence in the time of the Romans, and in the early part of the fourteenth century it became known as a manufacturing town through the settlement of Flemings here. But the first materials of its textile manufactures were wool, a local product, and linen yarn obtained from Ireland. It is uncertain when cotton was added to these, and though Manchester 'cottons' are spoken of even in the fourteenth century, it was not till long after that pure cotton fabrics were made there, or anywhere else in England. Since the great inventions of the eighteenth century

Manchester has grown with the cotton industry, the trade in cotton goods and yarns having always been centred here. In 1774 Manchester and Salford together had a population of little more than 27,000; at the census of 1801 the joint population of the two townships had risen to 84,000. In 1891 the population within a radius of twelve miles of Manchester Exchange was upwards of 1,600,000, in 1921 it was over 2,200,000 and in 1931, 2,300,000. In 1951 the census returns gave the population of the conurbation as 2,421,000. In the course of time Manchester has become the commercial and business centre of the group rather than the chief manufacturing town.

Among the surrounding towns engaged in the cotton industry are Oldham, Bolton, Bury, Rochdale, and other towns which have enriched the bleak Lancashire moorlands to the north and east of Manchester; Stockport and Hyde in Cheshire to the south, and Glossop in a Derbyshire valley south-east of Manchester: all situated on the great coal-field west of the Pennine Upland; and farther north are Preston, Blackburn, Accrington, and Burnley, all Lancashire towns, and the last three likewise situated on the same coal-field. Oldham and Bolton are the two towns most noted for cotton-spinning mills, the former being engaged chiefly in the production of medium yarns, the latter of the 'higher counts.' The northern towns of Burnley, Blackburn, Preston, Nelson, and Accrington, all situated along the route of the railway from Preston to Skipton, take the lead in cotton-weaving. All these towns are on the northern margin of Rossendale Fells, a spur of the Pennine Upland, some at a level of about 500 feet. Wigan, though it is also a cotton-manufacturing town, is notable chiefly as the principal centre of the coal-trade in Lancashire. In 1900 there were no fewer than thirty-five towns in South Lancashire and the parts immediately adjoining which had at least 100,000 spindles engaged in this industry, Oldham heading the list with nearly 12m. and Bolton following with 5m. In the heyday of the cotton industry, in 1914 the number of spindles belonging to the Oldham federation was 19m., to that of Bolton, 9m. In face of the competition of Japan, India, and many other countries, the relative and actual importance of the cotton industry has declined. Some mills have switched over to rayon, nylon, and other fibres.

For its supplies of raw cotton the great cotton manufacturing region of England was once dependent on the port of Liverpool, but nowadays a very considerable quantity of cotton is imported direct into Manchester by the Manchester Ship Canal, which was constructed between 1887 and 1893 and opened for traffic on New Year's Day, 1894. It extends from Eastham on the south side of the Mersey to the heart of Manchester, has a total length of  $35\frac{1}{2}$  miles, and a minimum depth of 28 feet. The bottom width of the canal at

the full depth is, with a few exceptions, 120 feet, which is sufficient to allow of large ships passing one another, and at the bend at Runcorn the width has been increased to 175 feet. The entrance locks at Eastham have been supplemented by the Queen Elizabeth II Dock—the largest oil dock in the country—opened in January 1954, with accommodation for four 30,000 D.W.T. tankers. Tankers of up to 18,000 D.W.T. regularly navigate the canal as far as Stanlow Oil Docks, and ships of up to 12,500 D.W.T. go as far as the Terminal Docks in Manchester.

The port is provided with graving docks, large grain elevators, oil tanks, cold storage accommodation, and other modern equipment. Throughout its length the canal traverses part of the busiest industrial region of England. The trading estate known as Trafford Park has encouraged the development at Manchester of diversified industries, and the traffic of the port—which includes Warrington and Runcorn as well as the later developments at Ellesmere, Irlam, and Stanlow—has grown steadily and rapidly. In 1894 the total value of the trade of the port (imports and exports) was £6·9m. (about 40 per cent. imports), in 1929 it amounted to £69·5m. (90 per cent. imports), in 1951 to £361m. (75 per cent. imports), and in 1956 to £408m. (over half imports). In respect of the value of its trade Manchester ranked third among British ports in 1956. The total capital expenditure on the canal down to the end of 1913 was nearly £17m., and the first dividend on the preference stock belonging to the Corporation of Manchester (2½ per cent.) was paid in 1915.

As the nature of the case renders the growth of the port of Manchester of peculiar interest some details are given in the table overleaf. It is important to note that much of the trade attracted to Manchester is destined in fact to the many factories now extended along the length of the canal.

It will be observed that petroleum, an article of comparatively small value in proportion to its bulk, an article largely conveyed in special ships, is the commodity in which the trade of Manchester and the canal has grown most rapidly to the prejudice of that of Liverpool. In paper-making materials we have another bulky article, and in relation to it we have to consider the situation of the mills, and with reference to that again the situation of the streams supplying the water and that of the consumers of the product. Raw cotton was for long the most valuable of the articles imported at Manchester. The growth of that import as compared with the corresponding import at Liverpool was for a considerable period steady, though slow. It shows the difficulty of displacing an old market requiring a high degree of organisation. The hold which Liverpool retains on the export trade of cotton tissues is not surprising to anyone who considers the widespread distribution of the markets for these products, and the relations of the chief weaving

towns to the ports of Liverpool and Manchester respectively. Among later developments, all illustrative of the influence of an enormous consuming population in the immediate neighbourhood, may be mentioned the import trade in frozen meat, wool, and tea. The first large cargo of wool from Australasia reached the port in July 1916, and large provision was later made for this trade.

SOME IMPORTS AND EXPORTS AT THE PORTS OF LIVERPOOL AND MANCHESTER IN 1893-1957 COMPARING THE QUANTITIES OF THE VARIOUS COMMODITIES IN PERCENTAGES OF THE TOTAL TRADE OF THE UNITED KINGDOM IN SUCH COMMODITIES.

IMPORTS.								
—		1893.	1894.	1906.	1912.	1935.	1951.	1957.
Raw cotton	{ L	92.3	90.5	77.7	79.3	65.7	65.6	75.9
	{ M	—	1.6	16.6	16.6	33.4	28.5	23.2
Paper-making materials	{ L	10.8	10.4	3.0	1.8	0.6	3.2	2.0
	{ M	—	4.1	14.3	10.9	9.7	12.2	17.6
Wood, sawn and hewn	{ L	9.2	8.2	6.6	8.4	26.3	27.4	12.6
	{ M	—	1.2	5.6	5.2	4.5	1.9	4.2
Manganese ore	{ L	—	—	20.6	20.3	21.3	41.6	46.2
	{ M	—	—	7.3	10.3	6.0	1.7	11.4
Petroleum	{ L	22.4	19.9	9.9	8.3	6.9	4.3	1.8
	{ M	—	0.3	12.1	9.8	13.0	13.4	17.9
Wheat	{ L	28.9	25.3	25.6	23.0	19.0	19.7	17.5
	{ M	—	0.1	5.3	7.8	10.2	6.4	9.0
Maize	{ L	25.0	24.9	22.9	17.7	25.7	23.9	18.5
	{ M	—	0.1	2.4	2.4	4.1	4.0	10.2
Bacon and hams	{ L	63.3	61.7	51.4	34.9	10.5	0.2	2.8
	{ M	—	—	1.9	1.2	1.9	0.5	1.8
EXPORTS.								
Cotton tissues	{ L	75.9	73.2	69.0	66.2	67.8	67.3	58.9
	{ M	—	3.6	9.1	12.3	7.2	4.2	8.3
Cotton yarn	{ L	39.4	35.7	34.2	31.2	34.9	43.9	58.5
	{ M	—	17.2	22.2	25.2	15.5	9.9	11.1
Woollen and worsted tissues	{ L	48.2	40.3	57.2	32.1	37.4	35.5	34.0
	{ M	—	0.5	2.6	3.5	4.0	7.5	7.3
Machinery, &c.	{ L	34.3	31.2	32.4	32.9	38.8	38.1	31.0
	{ M	—	2.1	5.1	5.6	3.9	4.3	3.8

At a distance from the Manchester district the only large town in which cotton manufactures form the staple industry is Nottingham on the Trent, in which certain branches of the manufacture, that of cotton hosiery, and the making of machine-made net and lace, the latter less important than formerly, have their chief seat.

In Scotland, though cotton manufactures are carried on very largely, the only town whose name is specially associated with a branch of this industry is Paisley, in Renfrewshire, where the manu-

facture of cotton thread has its chief seat. The cotton fabrics mostly made in Scotland are very fine lawns, muslins, and certain kinds of figured and coloured dress goods.

The West Riding of Yorkshire—the area of the West Riding coal-field—is for the **woollen industry** of Great Britain much what Lancashire is for the cotton industry, though this section of the textile manufactures of the country is not so restricted in its range as the other. The principal centre of the trade of this region is Leeds, which occupies a situation geographically very similar to that of Manchester—just off the Pennines, a business centre with a surrounding ring of manufacturing towns.

Leeds stands on the Aire amidst the gently undulating country that lies between the broad flat Vale of York and the narrow dales on the west. It thus has free communication with the north, east, and south-east, and on the west it commands two principal lines of communication, one by the valleys of the Calder and Colne to Manchester and South Lancashire, the other by the valley of the Aire to Mid-Lancashire. Like Manchester, it is a very old seat of trade and manufacturing industry. It is described by Camden (1607) as ‘much enriched by the woollen manufacture,’ and nowadays, while still retaining its importance in the woollen trade, it has added to that many other important industries. It is the commercial centre of the woollen trade rather than a manufacturing centre. Besides being the chief centre of the wholesale clothing trade in the country, it probably stands first also in the leather trade, and has considerable iron and steel manufactures.

The narrow dales of Yorkshire to the west of Leeds are filled with larger or smaller manufacturing towns engaged in the woollen industry. In some of them its origin belongs to as remote a date as in Leeds itself, these dales ‘well supplied with water, fuel, and cheap provisions,’ and surrounded by sheep pastures yielding a fine lustrous wool, having been among the localities to which the woollen industry migrated at the close of the Middle Ages, when the expense of living hindered its prosperity on more ancient seats nearer London. In Wakefield and Halifax as well as in Leeds foreign artisans were settled by Henry VII in 1489, and a generation later Halifax was already noted for its products in this branch of manufacture. When modern machinery was introduced the abundance of coal in the region served to stimulate the industry in those valleys still further, and many of the towns now engaged in the manufacture date their rise only from that period.

At the present day the centre of all branches of the worsted manufacture is Bradford, which is situated in a small basin among the hills to the west of Leeds and a little to the south of the Aire. Here the primary advantage seems to have been abundance of pure water suitable for the scouring of the wool, an advantage which the



corporation of the town took care to preserve as the industry increased. The worsted industry is another of those industries in which the abundance of capital is of peculiar importance. The combing of the wool is a highly specialised industry involving the use of complicated machinery, but employing mainly the labour of girls. Accordingly, to be carried on economically it must be on a large scale. Bradford has likewise large silk, velvet, and plush mills (in which the raw material used is or was *schappe* or spun silk) —and close beside it on the Aire itself is the model town of Saltaire long famed for alpaca. Halifax in the Calder valley is known for its lighter worsted fabrics, its baizes and carpets. Huddersfield on the Colne, a tributary of the Calder, though not even mentioned by Camden, is pre-eminent in the manufacture of high-class fancy goods as well as plain fabrics. Dewsbury and Batley manufacture heavier fabrics, including blankets and shoddy. Wakefield, Barnsley, Keighley, Morley, Heckmondwike, and many others in this area are engaged in some branch of the great industry. Even on the west side of the Pennine Upland there are some towns that still carry on their old woollen manufactures. Rochdale has flannel mills, and Bury, Ashton, and Glossop all manufacture woollens of some kind; Denton and Stockport have felt hat factories.

The district in the west of England that early became known for its 'cloths' as distinguished from the 'stuffs,' for which the bulk of English wool was best adapted, still retains something of its renown in connection with this manufacture, and especially for the making of broadcloth. In some of the towns in which the industry was formerly pursued it has died out, but it still flourishes at Stroud in Gloucestershire and in the Stroud valley generally, and survives at Witney (blankets) and Trowbridge in the west of Wiltshire.

In the far north it is interesting to note that Kendal still retains something of the industry for which it was already known before the close of the fourteenth century, but in the east of England, where numerous towns were once noted for their woollen or worsted goods, even Norwich has lost nearly all its textile industries, although in virtue of the advantages due to its central situation in a fertile part of the country and to its still being accessible by sea, it continues to carry on important manufactures of one kind or another (mustard, starch, boots and shoes, agricultural implements, &c.).

Leicester, throughout its history as a manufacturing town, has been the chief seat of woollen hosiery in England, which was originally no doubt in a large measure due to the fact that the Leicestershire breed of sheep yields one of the finest wools for the making of worsted yarn, and more recently to its lying near a coal-field. The making of lace and elastic webbing has been added to its textile industries. Kidderminster in Worcestershire and Wilton in Wiltshire were for long celebrated for their carpets; but it is to be noted that

'Brussels' carpets became the speciality of Kidderminster and the so-called Kidderminster carpets are made chiefly in Scotland and the Yorkshire woollen districts.

In Scotland woollen manufactures form the staple industry mainly in certain towns in the basin of the Tweed—Hawick and Jedburgh, Galashiels, Selkirk, and Innerleithen—which are chiefly noted for the kind of fabric appropriately known as tweeds, in the making of which, however, they now have a rival in Dumfries, as well as in many of the Yorkshire manufacturing towns. The prosperity of some of these towns was greatly promoted at one time by the abundance of water-power afforded by the streams, but nowadays this source of power is not much used, and the continuance of the industry in the district is all the more striking from the fact that it lies remote from any productive coal-field. Though the counties of Roxburgh and Selkirk are said to carry more sheep per acre than any other part of the world, and this fact must have contributed greatly to the origin of the industry, the local supplies of wool no longer meet a tenth of the requirements. Besides tweeds, woollen hosiery is a large manufacture of this district. Of the two most important of the manufacturing towns mentioned, Galashiels and Hawick—both situated on one of the lines of railway from Edinburgh to Carlisle, Galashiels at the point whence a branch runs up the Tweed valley towards Glasgow—Hawick is specially devoted to this latter branch of the woollen industry. Hosiery is largely manufactured also at Dumfries, Edinburgh, and elsewhere, and carpets and other woollen goods are made at Glasgow, Ayr, Kilmarnock, Edinburgh, Perth, and Stirling. Finally mention must be made of the hand-loom production (though mainly from machine-spun yarn now) of the famous Harris homespun tweeds in the Hebrides. There is also a domestic hosiery industry in the Shetlands.

The great textile industry of Northern Ireland is, as it long has been, that of **linen**. The manufacture is now nearly confined to Belfast and the district around. In this district it first received an important stimulus at the end of the seventeenth century through the settlement of some Huguenot families, after the revocation of the Edict of Nantes, at Lisburn on the Lagan above Belfast. The linens of Belfast and the neighbourhood include those of the finest quality, and one great advantage enjoyed by the district for the production of such goods is the excellence of the spring water used in bleaching. For the finest linens flax is imported from Belgium, but large quantities are or were formerly also imported from Latvia, Estonia, Russia, as well as from Holland. In Scotland the chief centres of linen manufacture are Kirkcaldy, Dunfermline, and Dundee, but in Dundee and elsewhere it is chiefly the coarser linens that are manufactured, the raw material coming from Baltic countries.

This branch of industry has been mainly carried on in Scotland north of the Firth of Tay since the eighteenth century, and its predominance in those parts may perhaps be ascribed to the fact that the ports of that part of the country are the first reached by ships that round the north of Denmark. Dunfermline, in the west of Fife, has been noted for its damask table-linens since the early part of the eighteenth century. In England linen is an important industry in Manchester.

**Jute yarns and fabrics**, including hessian and sacks, though mainly exported from London, Liverpool, Glasgow, and other ports which carry on most of the foreign trade, are still manufactured most largely at Dundee, where the industry was first introduced in this country. In England, it has considerable importance at Barnsley. The raw material comes almost entirely from Eastern Pakistan. Bulk handling of grain and use of paper bags have cut into the trade.

The **silk industry** of the British Isles is almost confined to England, and is still pursued principally in the district where it was first firmly established, Derbyshire and the neighbouring parts of Staffordshire and Cheshire, where the streams furnish pure water, an important requirement of this manufacture. Macclesfield and Congleton in Cheshire, Leek in north Staffordshire, Derby, Ilkeston, and Chesterfield in Derbyshire are among the towns chiefly engaged in this pursuit. Leek is specially noted for its sewing thread and its silk-dye works, the water of the neighbourhood being among the best dyeing waters of Europe. Silks of one kind or another are also made in many other places. Coventry, once noted for its ribbons, now carries on an industry in artificial silk or rayon, though most of the woollen, cotton, and knitwear towns also engage in manufactures in artificial silk. The industry was introduced by the Huguenots into London, and the manufacture of silk was for long carried on there in Spitalfields and Bethnal Green.

Nylon and terylene are other artificial fibres now of great importance—derivatives from coal and petroleum and hence representing a marriage of the chemical and textile industries. The first large nylon factory at Pontypool dates from 1949; terylene even later is made at new works at Wilton (Middlesbrough).

The products of the various textile industries made up (if we include apparel, millinery, &c.) in the period 1911–13 nearly 40 per cent. of the total value of the British exports of native produce and manufactures. Then followed a steady decline—to 37 per cent. in 1924, 25 per cent. in 1931, and 10 per cent. in 1957. Metals, manufactures therefrom and engineering products in 1957 represented 54 per cent. by value of all British exports.

The chief seats of **iron-smelting** are at and round Middlesbrough in the North Riding of Yorkshire; in north Lancashire and

Cumberland at Barrow, Workington, and other places supplied with red hematite from the neighbouring deposits; in Lincolnshire, especially north Lincolnshire (Frodingham and Scunthorpe), Northamptonshire (Corby), and south Staffordshire; in the West Riding of Yorkshire; in South Wales near Port Talbot, and other places (though the inland industry is almost extinct except for modern steel works at Ebbw Vale); at Glasgow, Coatbridge, and Falkirk (Carron works in the Forth basin). Unfortunately the Cumberland coal was not found generally suitable (until recently) for iron-smelting, and most of the fuel had to be brought to this district from the east in the form of coke, from as far away as 75 to 100 miles. Cumberland, Scotland, Wales, and Middlesbrough have become largely dependent on Spanish and African ores.

The towns and seaports of Barrow and Middlesbrough have both risen into importance since about the middle of the nineteenth century through the working of the iron ores in their vicinity. The hematite ore near Barrow was held in high repute long before facilities existed for working it on a large scale. These facilities were first provided by the opening of a short line of railway from the quarries to the coast. Furnaces and ironworks rapidly rose up, and an excellent harbour was simply formed by the enclosure of the channel between the mainland and the small island opposite. Middlesbrough, which is situated on the south side of the Tees, and accordingly in Yorkshire, owes its rise to a bed of iron ore, previously discovered in the valley of the Esk, near Whitby, being traced in 1850 to the vicinity of the present town. The situation of Middlesbrough being convenient for obtaining supplies of coke from north Durham and the Tyne, and of limestone, which crops out on the surface within a distance of 40 miles to the north-west, thus presented all the conditions for the establishment of a great iron industry. To make it at the same time a great seaport all that was necessary was to dredge the estuary of the Tees to a depth sufficient to admit large vessels, and to create a harbour protected from the waves of the North Sea. Both of these objects were accomplished, the latter by the construction of a breakwater, the material of which consists of the scoriæ from the neighbouring blast-furnaces. The ores for the iron industry of South Wales and Monmouthshire are now mainly of Spanish or African origin. The ports of Newport, Cardiff, and Port Talbot receive a large proportion of the iron ore imported into the United Kingdom, but this commodity also comes in large quantity to Glasgow and Grangemouth, Middlesbrough, and the Cumbrian ports.

The relative decline of the inland iron industry of the United Kingdom, reveals not only the exhaustion of the coal measure ores formerly used but the effects of overseas competition necessitating the concentration of the industry where physical factors are favour-

able. In keeping with this, we find a tendency in the iron industry to become concentrated in the maritime centres of production, a fact which serves at once to illustrate the advantage that Great Britain owes to its easily reached seaboard. The great Margam works on the South Wales coast, entirely reconstructed with vast steel rolling mills since 1947, illustrate this tendency. Another effect of the keen competition in this industry was an agreement under which the articles of iron and steel mostly used in engineering are produced in large quantity in standard sections, and a great economy thus secured in their production. The leading British purchasers of such articles agreed to order only the sections fixed by a committee appointed for the purpose. This favours the production of such articles at rolling-mills in the neighbourhood of the blast furnaces, but the situation of iron and steel manufactures of a more advanced kind is influenced by considerations which are often numerous and complicated.

In connection with the manufacture of articles made from iron, two towns in England are specially noteworthy—Birmingham and Sheffield, both being towns which became engaged in the working of metals at a very early date, and have grown to a large size through the prosecution of such industries down to the present day.

Birmingham lies almost exactly in the middle of the low plateau between the rivers Trent, Severn, and Avon. The surrounding forests, together with abundance of iron ore in the neighbourhood, seem to have determined the form of the industry which grew up here. The smiths of Birmingham are mentioned as early as 1538. Under the name of Bremicham the town is described by Camden in 1607 as 'swarming with inhabitants, and echoing with the noise of anvils.' In 1727 its iron and hardware manufactures were estimated to employ or support upwards of 50,000 people. The local iron ore is no longer used; the 'Black Country' is no longer a country of blast furnaces belching forth smoke by day and lighting the sky with a lurid glare by night. But the heavy iron and steel industries have given rise to a great variety of metal manufactures especially of articles of small size. Birmingham and the whole of the adjoining parts of south Staffordshire, Worcestershire, and Warwickshire are crowded with large and small towns, Wolverhampton, Walsall, Wednesbury, West Bromwich, Dudley, the inhabitants of which are all mainly engaged in similar occupations—the making of all kinds of articles in metal as well as other goods especially associated with the supply of food and domestic articles to the large local population of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  millions. All kinds of domestic ironmongery are the chief products of this district, but motor-cars, engines and machinery, as well as needles, pins, and buttons, are also important articles of manufacture. Bromsgrove, Redditch, and Stourbridge in Worcestershire belong to the same group of towns in respect of the nature

of the industry which they carry on. Redditch is the most important place of manufacture of needles in the world.

In all those regions where there are heavy industries relying on male labour there results a surplus of female labour. Consequently, light industries tend to become established in the same areas to absorb this female labour. The food industries of Birmingham (*e.g.* chocolate at Bournville) may be noted in this connection. Another good example is afforded by the corset-making industry of the dockyard town of Portsmouth.

Sheffield lies at a junction of valleys in the extreme south of Yorkshire. The neighbourhood supplies both coal and iron (as well as water-power and excellent grindstones) long used in the making of cutlery, including fine cutting tools and the best tool-steel. A great stimulus was given to this industry by the discovery in 1740 by Huntsman, a Sheffield cutler, of the improved method of making cementation or crucible steel. But since the introduction of the Bessemer process of steel-making here in 1858 Sheffield has become the seat of steel industries on a much larger scale, making ships' plates, armour-plates, tyres and axles, ordnance, and all kinds of steel castings and forgings. For the finest work it has for hundreds of years imported the best raw material from Sweden. Local water-power is no longer used, nor are the grindstones; there is no local iron ore but the momentum remains.

Many other towns in England are known chiefly in connection with one or more branches of the iron and steel industry. The making of rails is a rolling-mill industry naturally carried on in the neighbourhood of the blast-furnaces, and especially those favourably situated for export, as at Middlesbrough and Barrow. Warrington, on the Mersey in Lancashire, produces iron wire, &c. The making of tin- and zinc-plate, a highly specialised industry of old standing and working partly for export, is concentrated especially at the industrial towns, and especially seaports, of the western end of the South Wales coal-field (Swansea, Llanelly, and Neath). The making of machinery for textile manufactures is carried on mainly, if not wholly, in some of the towns in which these manufactures form the staple industry. Cotton-spinning and weaving machinery is made at Manchester, Oldham, Bolton, Blackburn, Burnley, Bury, and other towns in the cotton-manufacturing district. In the same way machinery for the woollen industry is made in the woollen towns of Yorkshire—Leeds, Huddersfield, Bradford, and Keighley. Machinery for the manufacture of hosiery and other knitwear is made at Leicester and Nottingham.

Steam-engines and railway-carriages are made at Manchester, Leeds, Bristol, Glasgow, Newcastle, Darlington, and several smaller towns, where long before the nationalisation of 1948 the different railway companies established such works for their own

lines. The former London, Midland and Scottish Railway had establishments of this kind at Crewe and Derby, the Great Western at Swindon in north Wiltshire, the Southern Railway at Eastleigh, near Southampton, and Ashford, the London and North-Eastern Railway at Doncaster, Darlington, and Gorton. In the selection of such places the companies were obviously guided by the desire to find a place on their own lines where land was cheap, rather than places in the vicinity of coal and iron supplies, which they can carry themselves at a minimum of cost.

Agricultural machinery and implements are made in many towns belonging to the corn-growing districts, as at Lincoln, Grantham, Gainsborough, Norwich, and Ipswich. These are all towns near the chief home market, sufficiently large to have convenient means of transport, and sufficiently small for land to be obtainable at a reasonable rate for the large areas required for such works. Chelmsford, Ipswich, Preston, and other seaports are becoming increasingly important as engineering centres, including electrical engineering.

An industry which has increased very rapidly in importance in recent years is the motor industry. In 1908 there were 65,000 cars and vehicles registered in Great Britain; in 1922, 552,000; whilst in 1926 the million mark was reached. By 1935 the total exceeded 2·1m., representing one motor vehicle for every 18 persons (compared with 1 per 3·5 persons in the United States). In 1957, motor vehicles other than cycles numbered 6m., or about 1 per 8 persons. Over two-thirds were private cars. In 1908 12,000 motor vehicles were manufactured in the United Kingdom; in 1925, 153,000. In 1957, nearly 1·2m. were manufactured and 550,000 exported. In 1925 a quarter of a million were employed in the industry; in 1957, some 400,000. The industry is centred in the south-west and south-east midlands of England, especially at Coventry (where it has evolved from the earlier manufacture of bicycles), Birmingham, and Oxford. During the Second World War the industry turned over to wartime needs and many works were engaged in the manufacture of aero-engines and aeroplanes—notably at Coventry, Derby, and Bristol. The export of motor-cars became very important in post-war years and the home market remained unsatisfied with 3·8 million cars registered in 1956. When the Ford Motor Company of Great Britain was expanding its output, it deliberately moved from Manchester to London. Near the northern banks of the Thames in Essex great works were developed—blast furnaces making iron, steel works, motor-car and tractor factories are all found as an integrated whole on one continuous site at Dagenham, and a new town, albeit a suburb of London, has grown up. The industry is remarkable for the extensive use of electrical power. Closely connected with the motor industry is the rubber industry. The consumption of rubber in the United King-

dom was about 75,000 tons in 1929, 100,000 tons in 1936, and 350,000 tons in 1957, including 60,000 tons of synthetic.

Not very many generations ago the Thames was the chief seat of shipbuilding in Great Britain, and it was the change from wood to iron as the material for that industry that transferred the industry to the Clyde and other northern rivers. Clydeside became the chief seat of shipbuilding in the world—of shipbuilding in all its branches, including the making of marine engines. Shipbuilding yards succeed one another for miles below Glasgow, and are met with at other places lower down, especially at Dumbarton and Greenock. Next to the Clyde in shipbuilding come the Tyne, the Wear, the Tees, and the Hartlepoons and, in Ireland, Belfast. To a less extent the industry is carried on at Hull, Birkenhead, Barrow, Dundee, Leith, &c. There are government dockyards at Chatham on the Medway, at Portsmouth and Devonport, and at Rosyth in Fife-shire, on the north side of the Firth of Forth just above the Forth Bridge. Ship-repairing is a distinct industry for which there are special facilities at the ports of the Tyne, London, Southampton, and Liverpool.

Important among British exports of native produce and manufactures comes copper, with the various articles made out of that metal. As far back as the time of Queen Elizabeth, Swansea had a large business in the smelting of copper ores brought from Cornwall and Devon, the only English counties where this metal was found in great abundance. This business still continues, but nowadays not only copper ores, but also those of silver, zinc, lead, and sulphur, are brought hither from all parts of the world to be smelted, and more or less of the resulting metal is re-exported as British produce. Llanelly, in Carmarthenshire, shares in the industries of Swansea. In the making of articles from copper alloys, brass, bronze, &c., Birmingham takes the first place, as it does in all kinds of hardware; but many other towns, especially those with engineering industries, employ brassworkers.

Metalliferous mining is almost dead in Britain: copper and tin ores were worked mainly in Cornwall and Devon. Only the richest tin mines were able to stand the competition of Malay or Nigerian tin. Lead was obtained most abundantly in the Isle of Man, the west of Durham, and other northern and central districts. The district round Wirksworth in Derbyshire has been worked since pre-Roman times. In most recent years the total value of metalliferous ores, other than iron, raised in Great Britain has been less than £1m.

The making of earthenware and porcelain is another industry which involves a great consumption of fuel, and is hence carried on in this country mainly in coal-yielding districts. It is explained elsewhere (p. 302) why the making of the greatest variety of earthenware has come to be carried on mainly at Stoke-on-Trent in north



Staffordshire, a county borough in which are now incorporated the former 'pottery' towns of Burslem, Tunstall, Hanley, Fenton, and Longton, as well as Stoke. Worcester and Derby have long been noted for their porcelain. Stourbridge makes a very hard kind of stoneware from fireclay found in the neighbourhood.

Glass also is made, for the same reason, chiefly on or close to the coal-fields, at St. Helens in Lancashire, where there are excellent glass-making sands, at Birmingham, at Dudley and Stourbridge in Worcestershire, at South Shields, at Glasgow; glass bottles at Castleford, Doncaster, Rotherham, and other places in Yorkshire. As common salt is the chief material used in the making of 'alkali,' itself the basis of the chemical industry, the rise of the latter is closely associated with the chief salt-yielding districts of England. Of these the most important was long in Cheshire, with the towns of Northwich, Middlewich, Winsford, and Sandbach, Droitchich and Bromsgrove in Worcestershire. More recently the great focus is formed by the towns on both sides of the Tees (Billingham, Haverton and Port Clarence in Durham, Middlesbrough in Yorkshire). There are other works in north Lancashire (at Preesall, near Fleetwood, and on Walney Island), at Stafford, and elsewhere. The other seats of the chemical works of the country are Widnes, at the head of the estuary of the Mersey, on the Lancashire side, and Flint, both near the Cheshire salt district; and works of the same kind exist on the south Durham salt district, at South Shields, also at St. Helens, Swansea, &c. The great manufacture of dyestuffs which sprang up after the cutting off of German supplies in the First World War has its principal seats on waterways—on the Thames, at Silvertown and elsewhere, on the Mersey and the Manchester Ship Canal, at and near Huddersfield, at Grangemouth on the Firth of Forth. The geographical distribution of the chemical industries has been profoundly influenced by the amalgamation of all the chief producers as the Imperial Chemical Industries, Limited, one of whose main centres is the new town of Billingham-on-Tees, where there is also a huge plant for making petrol from coal. The chemical industries have been described as the 'most married' of all the industries, since their products—dyes, bleaching agents, acids, and so on—are required by a great variety of other industries; hence the emphasis on transport.

Ardeer, near Irvine, one of the most important early centres in the country for the manufacture of explosives, is on a site deliberately chosen on a sandy foreshore, because while near a seaport the sand-dunes afforded a natural isolation for the different works of this dangerous industry. There are other sites of a similar type, many developed during the Second World War.

A few of the British industries in which a cheap supply of coal is of less importance than other requirements may now be noticed.

In the manufacture of paper a large supply of water is essential and it should be free from certain impurities. Formerly this industry was mostly carried on in districts with pure streams and at spots not far from the great markets (large towns). The vast quantities of cheap bulky material now used in the industry favour its localisation at or near seaports well placed for the sale of its products, a situation of which the large Sittingbourne and other Thames-side or Medway-side works form a good illustration. From the first introduction of paper-making into this country, the chief seats of the industry have lain in Kent (at Maidstone and elsewhere), and the manufacture is also largely carried on by the streams of Derbyshire and Mid-Lancashire (Darwen, Bacup, &c.), on the Kennet in Berkshire, in the Wycombe valley in Bucks, in Midlothian and Fifeshire. The manufacture of high-grade paper still remains in some of these localities. Dyeing (at least in the case of the more delicate shades) requires the same condition, and, where associated with bleaching, pure air is necessary over and above. It is hence characteristically an industry of small rather than large towns. Perth is the seat of some of the leading dye-works in the Kingdom; Dumbarton, Accrington, and Bacup carry on turkey-red dyeing. Chair-making is a speciality of beech-growing districts of the Chiltern Hills, where the industry before 1914 employed 50,000 families. The making of different parts of chairs (formerly seats in one district where the larger trees grew, and legs and the smaller parts where only small trees grew) is still carried on by small firms, the parts being merely put together in the towns (chiefly High Wycombe). Much furniture is made in the east of London. Sugar-refining is carried on principally at three seaports—London, Liverpool, and Greenock.

The refining of oil is an important new industry and is naturally carried on near, but not at, the leading ports. At Skewen (Llandarcy), previously a barren area, near Swansea, oil refineries were erected in 1920 and connected with Swansea docks by pipes through which crude oil is pumped and refined oil returned for shipment. Similarly large works were established down the lower Thames at Shellhaven; along the Manchester Ship Canal, at Grangemouth and Heysham. After the Second World War the largest refineries in Europe were completed at Fawley on Southampton Water in 1952 and other very large works were constructed along the south bank of the lower Thames on the Isle of Grain.

The making of shoes is the leading industry in Northampton and Mansfield, is among those of Leicester and Stafford, and is carried on to a greater or less extent in many other large towns of the country. The making of ladies' fancy shoes is the main survival of the old textile industry of Norwich. Until recently gloves were made at many small towns in agricultural districts, where labour was cheap, as at Worcester, Hereford, Woodstock in Oxfordshire, Taun-

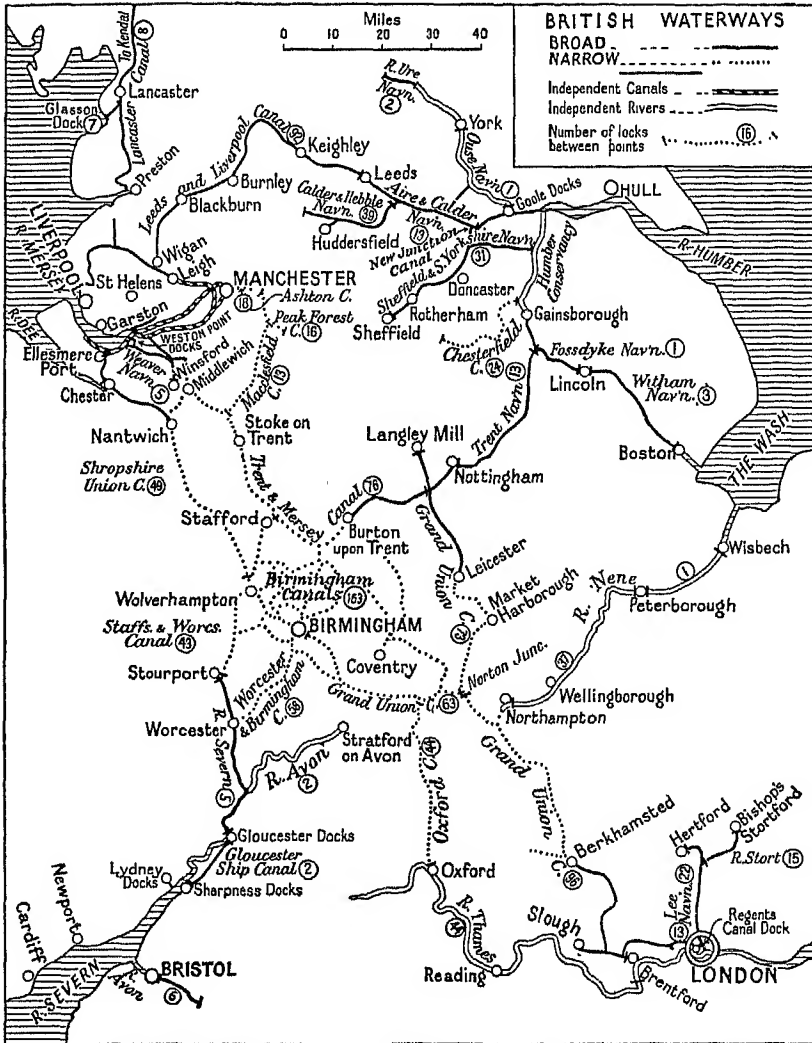
ton and Yeovil in Somersetshire, Great Torrington in Devonshire, Chester, &c. The making of hand-made lace is an industry in a similar position, still pursued at Honiton in south Devon, where it has been practised since the time of Charles I, in the vale of Aylesbury in Bucks, and elsewhere.

**Transport and communication.** In view of the nature of the chief industries of the country, it is a matter of much importance that the high grounds of England interfere comparatively little with the facilities for locomotion. They have been overcome by rail and road but before the railway era, when water transport was so important, they were more serious obstacles. Britain is less suited to the construction of canals than are France and Germany—the surface is not mountainous but sufficiently hilly to require a large number of locks. In relation to internal communication the most important of the former navigable rivers were the Ouse (Yorkshire), Trent, and Mersey, the Thames and the Severn with their tributaries. The Ouse is navigable for barges throughout its length, and its most important tributaries are navigable likewise or have been canalised.

Three lines of canals were laid across the Pennines, linking Hull and Goole on the east with Liverpool and Manchester on the west. Of these only the Leeds and Liverpool Canal is now in use; it ascends the valley of the Aire *via* Leeds and Skipton, crosses the watershed at a height of 477 feet, and descends on the Lancashire side *via* Burnley and Blackburn to Liverpool. Another line of canals ascended the Calder *via* Wakefield and Sowerby Bridge, to descend by Rochdale to Manchester, where it connected with the Bridgewater Canal. The Rochdale Canal, which formed part of this route, is now closed to navigation. The third canal, joining Manchester with the Calder and Hebble Navigation *via* Ashton and Huddersfield, formed a more direct communication between the opposite sides of the Pennine Upland, but rose to a greater height—656 feet. The crossing at this altitude was effected by piercing the Standedge Tunnel, more than three miles in length. The Huddersfield Narrow Canal which formed part of the route was closed to navigation in 1944.

In lowland England the Trent, the Mersey, the Thames, and the Severn are all interconnected by inland waterways, natural or artificial. The Trent itself is navigable for small sea-going steamers as high as Gainsborough and since 1952 has been improved to take 200-ton barges to Nottingham; the Thames can take vessels of 200 tons as high as Hampton; and the Severn, vessels drawing 6 feet as high as Stourport. The Gloucester Ship Canal, which connects Gloucester with the estuary of the 'sandy-bottomed Severn,' enables vessels drawing more than 10 feet to ascend to that town.

The canals of England are mainly works of the latter part of the eighteenth and the early part of the nineteenth century. The Bridgewater Canal, constructed under the direction of James



## ENGLAND: NAVIGABLE WATERWAYS

Revised with the help of the British Transport Commission, Docks and Inland Waterways.

The Group I Canals mentioned on p. 354 are the Severn, Trent, Lee (below Enfield) and Weaver Rivers, together with the Aire and Calder Navigation, the Sheffield and South Yorkshire Navigation and the Grand Union Canal below Berkhamsted.

Brindley, was completed in its eastern section (from the Earl, afterwards the Duke, of Bridgewater's coal-mines at Worsley to Manchester) about the end of 1761, but was not connected with the Mersey till 1776. At the period when they were made canals were of very high importance for the development of English industry and commerce. Since the development of railways their value has steadily diminished. Some are still not without importance for the carriage of minerals and other bulky commodities, but even in the carriage of coal they are unable to compete with railways except where the conditions are exceptionally favourable to this mode of transport. What specially favours the Aire and Calder navigation in its use of compartment boats (see p. 104) is the fact that such boats can be used for the whole or nearly the whole distance between the coal-mines and the place of shipment at Goole. The railway companies gradually acquired many of the British canals; many have fallen into disuse and have been closed, but the Grand Union Canal Company's system, uniting London with the Midlands, has been improved and is partly provided with concrete banks. Beyond the northern limits of the map the river Tees is navigable (draught over 6 feet) for 19 miles below Yarn, and the river Tyne for 19 miles.

The British Transport Commission operates three canals in Scotland. The Forth and Clyde Canal enables small vessels to pass from Grangemouth on the Firth of Forth to Bowling on the Firth of Clyde, a little above Dumbarton. A ship canal with a minimum depth of 14 feet was constructed through the Great Glen Valley, which connects Loch Linnhe and the Moray Firth and divides the Highlands of Scotland into two sections. This, the Caledonian Canal, is noteworthy as a work of engineering, but was never much used for the purpose for which it was designed—to allow sea-going ships of moderate size to avoid the stormy passage through the Pentland Firth. The short Crinan Canal allows small steamers to pass from the Clyde to the west of Argyllshire without passing round the Mull of Kintyre.

Apart from these Scottish canals, the control of over 2,000 miles of inland waterways in England and Wales passed to the British Transport Commission under the Transport Act of 1947. The chief exceptions were the Thames and the Bridgewater Canal, the latter being under the Manchester Ship Canal Co. The Commission's inland waterways in England and Wales have since been divided into three groups (see map, p. 353):

(I) 336 miles of river and broad navigation carrying 75 per cent. of the total traffic, selected for development at an estimated cost of £5½ m.

(II) 994 miles of waterways, mainly narrow canals, for continued use as before.

(III) 771 miles with insufficient commercial prospects to warrant retention for navigation, but with other possible uses.

By 1958, some 270 miles of the waterways in Group III had been statutorily closed to navigation. On the other hand, work had been begun on the development of the waterways in Group I. In July, 1958, a Committee of Inquiry under Mr. H. Leslie Bower proposed measures to stimulate the use of Group II canals, and in February, 1959, the Government announced its decision to set up an Inland Waterways Redevelopment Advisory Committee for two years, to promote schemes for redeveloping Group III canals on amenity lines in conjunction with the National Trust as well as to include in this connection possible proposals for Group II canals.

What has been said regarding the construction of canals implies that in railway construction the obstacles presented by the physical features of the country were of still less consequence relatively to the much higher value of the new means of transit. In view of the distribution of population, the most serious hindrances to railway communication are those presented by the Pennine Upland and those on the routes connecting the most populous parts of England with the most populous parts of Scotland. Manchester and Sheffield are connected by a line passing through the Woodhead tunnel, which attains an altitude of over 1,000 feet. On the northern routes the chief connection between Lancashire and the valley of the Eden is now, as it always has been, by way of Shap Fell, where the summit level of the rails on the main west coast route to Scotland is 916 feet above sea-level; that between the West Riding of Yorkshire and the same valley reaches between the head-waters of the Ribble and Lune a height of 1,250 feet. The next high crossings on the northern routes are all in Scotland. In Glamorgan and Monmouthshire serious hindrances to communication are presented by the high ridges separating the populous coal-mining valleys in the west, more than one railway having to climb to an altitude of more than 1,200 feet within a short distance, involving gradients up to 1 in 45. Obstructions to communication presented by water have been overcome by low-level railway or road tunnels at the mouths of the Severn and the Mersey, and under the Thames at several places in London. The Severn railway tunnel, below Chepstow, the longest in the British Isles, is  $4\frac{1}{2}$  miles long. It was opened in 1886. A proposal to tunnel the Humber, thwarted by an adverse vote of a Committee of the House of Lords in 1873, was revived in 1907, but did not materialise. The proposal for a road bridge was given high priority in the post-1945 programme—second only to the road bridge over the Severn near the line of the tunnel. Under the Mersey tunnels for local rail traffic and road traffic connect Liverpool and Birkenhead. At the time of its opening in 1934 the Mersey road tunnel was the longest underwater road tunnel in the world. At

London main railway lines cross the Thames by bridges but there are many 'tube' railways and there is a road tunnel below the lowest bridged point.

The Scottish railways are most closely laid in the Midland Valley, and through the valleys of the Southern Uplands wind several railways connecting with the lowlands on the other side and with England. The lowest of all these routes, forming the shortest connection with England, is that by the east coast (the main east coast route), which has nowhere to rise as much as 500 feet above sea-level. The next route, on the west, has first to climb to above 900 feet between Edinburgh and Melrose, and then to about 1,000 feet in crossing in a tunnel a spur of the Cheviots between Hawick and Liddisdale, where the main line descends to the Solway, and a branch passes eastwards to the head of the valley of the North Tyne. A still more westerly route (the main west coast line) connects both Edinburgh and Glasgow with Carlisle, reaching between the valleys of the Clyde and the Annan an altitude of 1,028 feet. By winding far to the west, through Kilmarnock, a fourth line effects a crossing at a little more than 600 feet in height in passing from the valley of the Ayr to that of the Nith. The chief obstructions to communications offered by water in Scotland are overcome by means of two of the most remarkable railway bridges in the world, the Tay Bridge at Dundee, for many years the longest in the world (3,593 yards, or a little more than two miles), opened in 1887, and the Forth Bridge at Queensferry, a few miles above Edinburgh, 2,765 yards, or more than a mile and a half long, opened in 1890.

Under the Railways Act of 1921 (effective 1923) all the main railways of Great Britain were united into four groups with a view to economy of management. The groups were the Southern Railway, the Great Western Railway, the London, Midland and Scottish Railway, and the London and North-Eastern Railway. Under the Socialist Government which came into power in 1945 the railways were nationalised as British Railways, organised into six regions. One region comprises Scotland, the others correspond roughly with the former companies, with the L.N.E.R. divided into an Eastern and a North-eastern. Nationalisation came into effect on January 1st, 1948.

Plans for the electrification of railways had before the First World War been adopted by the main companies, especially for London suburban lines. On the Southern Railway nearly all the suburban lines were electrified in the inter-war period and the main lines as far as Eastbourne, Hastings, Brighton, and Portsmouth. The southern region of British Railways has now the largest electrified suburban system in the world, and has adopted the third rail system.

During the First World War train-ferries operated between Richborough and Calais and Southampton and Dieppe. The Richborough installation passed into private hands, and on October 11, 1921, the first commercial train conveyed by ferry, bringing about 300 tons of fruit from the south of France, arrived here. On April 24, 1924, a goods train-ferry from Harwich to Zeebrugge was formally opened, but it was left to the Southern Railway, in 1936, to inaugurate a through sleeping-car service for passengers to Paris *via* a train-ferry from Dover to Dunkerque. This followed the abandonment of long-considered schemes for a channel tunnel under the Strait of Dover, though these have again been revived.

The railways suffered very severely from road competition, but later, by Act of Parliament, acquired 'road powers,' and came to control or co-operate with many of the road transport companies. As a result, when British railways were nationalised, the bulk of the road haulage was included in the nationalisation. In 1953 the Conservative Government restored road haulage to private enterprise.

**British foreign trade.** In early times and throughout the Middle Ages the great feature of English trade was the export of raw materials and the import of manufactured articles. By far the most important of the exported raw materials was wool, but it was only one of several, the export duties levied on which furnished a large part of the revenue of the Crown. With the obvious intention of facilitating the collection of this revenue the regulation of this trade was attempted in the reign of Edward I, and the trade was more definitely organised by an ordinance of Edward III in 1353. Therein the only staple commodities enumerated are wool, wool-fells (that is, sheep-skins with the wool on), leather or hides, and tin, but on other occasions lead, cheese, butter, alum, tallow, and worsted are also mentioned—the last, however, very seldom. The ordinance decreed that all these commodities should when exported be taken exclusively to certain English, Welsh, and Irish ports, where the duties were collected. The English ports included all those of any consideration on the east coast except Berwick-upon-Tweed, also Southampton and Exeter on the south coast, and Bristol on the west. The reason for the exception of Berwick-upon-Tweed from the list of English ports probably was that if it had been included under the regulations of the staple, English wool would have been smuggled across the Scottish Border and exported from some Scottish port. Sometimes Newcastle also was omitted from the staple towns. Carmarthen was the sole staple port for Wales. In Ireland there were four: Dublin, Waterford, Cork, and Drogheda. No external staple port was mentioned, although there had been a staple abroad at various ports in the Low Countries at previous dates, and subsequently it was again found convenient to fix upon some external port as the one place beyond the seas to which all staple commodi-



ties should first be sent. From near the end of the fourteenth century till 1558 Calais was the sole external staple, but when the English lost Calais in that year the staple was transferred to Bruges. The trade in the staple commodities was mainly, but for one reason or another not at all times solely, in the hands of a privileged body known as the Staplers, who had a court of their own at Calais. The Staplers were mostly foreigners, and indeed several ordinances, including that of 1353, absolutely prohibited the trade in staple commodities to Englishmen, these being liable to smaller dues than foreigners. The loss that the revenue thereby incurred was one that the kings could not always afford, and one that was occasionally more than made good by the granting of special licences to Englishmen to engage in the staple trade even when there was a general prohibition. Such licences were of course obtained only on conditions that were advantageous to the Crown. Among the foreigners engaged in the staple trade of England were many Italians, but members of the Hanseatic League were still more conspicuous. The merchants belonging to this league had gained special privileges in the foreign trade of England before the close of the thirteenth century. In what was known as the Steelyard in London on the Thames, a site now partly occupied by Cannon Street Station, they had a well-protected residence with warehouses, and they had similar residences at some other English ports. Their privileges were for the most part maintained till 1598, when they were finally withdrawn by Queen Elizabeth.

Long before this, however, the trade of native English merchants had been growing through the efforts of an organised company known as the Merchant Adventurers. The name of 'adventurers' was given to those who traded in commodities not embraced by the regulations of the staple. English grain and honey could thus be freely exported to Norway and other parts in which such commodities found a market; but as English manufactures grew these became the most valuable commodities outside of the staple. Woollens accordingly came to be the chief wares whose sale abroad was pushed by the adventurers. When this body became a regularly organised society is uncertain, but in 1404 a charter was conferred upon it by Henry IV, and shortly after the company was enabled to establish its headquarters at Antwerp. Other charters were subsequently conferred upon it, and it grew to be an extremely influential body in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries. Its headquarters were ultimately transferred to Hamburg, on which account it became known as the Hamburg Company, but though its chief seat was thus abroad the membership was absolutely restricted to Englishmen. In later days its special domain was all that part of the North Sea coast which lies between the Strait of Dover and the north of Denmark. It became, however, the parent or the model of several

other merchant companies, which claimed, if they did not always enjoy, monopolies of trade elsewhere. Sebastian Cabot, who with his father John Cabot had made the first voyage from England to America in the search for a north-west passage to India in 1497, lived long enough to suggest to the Merchant Adventurers in the middle of the following century a voyage in search of a north-east passage to the same destination. The voyage was actually made in 1553 under Willoughby and Chancellor and led to the discovery of a route to the White Sea and the mouth of the Northern Dvina. In the same year a company known as the Muscovy Company received a charter conferring upon it privileges in the trade with Russia and Persia. In 1579 the Eastland Company obtained its first charter conferring privileges in connection with Scandinavian and Baltic trade. Afterwards the Levant or Turkey, the East India, and the Africa or Guinea Companies, as well as the Hudson's Bay Company, were successively founded. The most important of these for the future of England was of course the East India Company, which obtained its first charter on the last day of 1600, and subsequently to the implicit annulment in the Declaration of Rights in 1689 of all royal monopolies of trade, had a monopoly of the Eastern trade expressly conferred upon it by Parliament. This monopoly was retained for India till 1813 and for China till 1833. By this date the Company had become a great territorial power, and from 1833 it was little else.

Meanwhile the nature of English trade had completely changed. English manufactures had long been the principal exports. Throughout the eighteenth century woollens were the most important of these, and so jealously was any rivalry in this trade regarded that every effort was made to check the rise of a similar industry in Ireland. In the course of the eighteenth century cotton goods came to acquire more importance. They were among the goods which Bristol and other merchants carried from England to West Africa to be exchanged for slaves sold in the West Indies, whence the ships returned home with cargoes of sugar and other tropical produce, a highly lucrative trade not put an end to till January 1, 1808, when the slave trade was made illegal. At last came the revolution in industry which created a new era not merely for English commerce but for the commerce of the world, and which in England speedily had the effect of raising cotton manufactures to the first place among our exports. Later the practice of conferring royal charters on trading companies was revived. Between 1880 and 1890 such charters were granted to the British North Borneo Company, the British South Africa Company, the Royal Niger Company and the Imperial British East Africa Company. These charters have since been withdrawn and the companies themselves have disappeared or are engaged in realising their assets.

We may now examine the salient features of British foreign

trade over the past fifty or eighty years. First we note the high place which bulky articles have taken both in our import and export trade: among the imports timber, grain and ores; among the exports, above all, coal. To appreciate the importance of this fact, however, one must compare the values of the commodities with the values per ton. That will enable one to understand how, for example, iron ores with their average value of less than £1 per ton, though low in order of value among imports, must take a quite different place in an enumeration of British imports according to quantity. Very bulky in proportion to value is coal, which in respect of quantity was for many years by far the most important of British exports.

The export trade in coal was formerly one of peculiar importance to Great Britain. Especially until the First World War when, in 1913, a total approaching 100m. tons of coal was exported or sent away in bunkers, a large amount of our shipping was employed in the carriage outwards of this one commodity. On the assumption that four register tons of shipping would be required to convey nine tons weight of coal, this represents over 40m. register tons of shipping. In 1898 coal was estimated to make up 86 per cent. of the total weight of British exports. The indirect importance of this traffic to the commerce of the United Kingdom was through the fact that the ships that went out laden with coal were ready to bring back cargoes of foreign goods at low freights.

Coal and coke were chiefly exported from fields near the sea—from Cardiff, Newport, and Swansea, the outlets of the South Wales coal-field, and the Tyne ports (Newcastle and North and South Shields), Sunderland, and Hartlepool, the outlets of the Northumberland and Durham coal-fields, and from various ports on the Firth of Forth. The excellence of the so-called smokeless (that is nearly smokeless) coal furnished by the eastern part of the South Wales coal-field as fuel for steam-engines caused Cardiff to outstrip Newcastle in the export of coal to foreign countries, but Newcastle and Sunderland ranked first among the ports which supplied coal in coasting vessels for domestic use, their convenient situation for the supply of London being much in their favour. The actually smokeless coal known as anthracite is produced only in the western part of the South Wales field. The diminution in the demand for Cardiff steam coal accounted for the depression in the coal trade of South Wales in inter-war years.

Both the production and export of British coal reached their highest totals in 1913 just before the outbreak of the First World War. Naturally shipments were interrupted by the exigencies of that war and by the submarine menace, and the old markets were never fully recovered. Much of the world's shipping, both British and foreign, naval and mercantile, changed to oil fuel so that British bunker coal was in smaller demand and less was sent to the world's coaling depôts; many countries formerly buying coal were com-

pelled to develop their own resources. In the nineteen-twenties there was much unemployment amongst miners in South Wales, Durham, and elsewhere, and the great strike of 1926 did not help the recovery. Thereafter there was some improvement until again war in 1939 disrupted the whole industry. Britain nationalised first her coal resources and later her whole coal industry; mines were modernised to the extent that from 1946 more than 75 per cent. of the coal was cut mechanically. During the Second World War young men had to go into the armed services and the average age of miners rose to 39 in 1942-47 compared with 36 in 1937. After the war young men did not take to mining and a new difficulty arose. Britain has reserves to last 800 or 1,000 years, has many customers, especially in Europe, anxious to buy at least 50m. tons a year but could not get enough labour to satisfy home needs. Britain became an importer of coal, drawing supplies from America, but the British miner remembering the unemployment of the twenties was unwilling to accept the use of Italian or other immigrant labour. Until 1958 the domestic consumer was still rationed but surplus stocks of small coal, difficult to use, had accumulated and, once again, over-production became a problem.

When we reflect that all our external trade as well as much of our internal trade is necessarily carried on by sea, it is obvious that we have here one important cause that must tend to promote British shipping. When we consider also our local advantages for the building of steel ships and their engines, and the large proportion of our maritime population, the great and long-continued importance of British shipping is not surprising. But times change; the loss of our coal trade is a very severe blow. In 1958 Britain fell behind both Japan and West Germany in shipbuilding.

Another striking feature of British trade has long been the large excess of the value of the imports over the exports, amounting on the average of the five years 1906 to 1910 to £142m.; in 1913 to £158m.; in 1924 to £341m.; in 1935, £275m.; in 1958, £424m. The explanation of this is found in what have come to be known as invisible exports, that is, economic services rendered by the people of this country to other countries for which those who render such services are entitled to be paid. The most important of these were overseas investments and loans, and earnings of British shipping on foreign or Commonwealth account. Large sums of money were also earned by Britain by banking and insurance and, up to the outbreak of the Second World War, London remained the banking centre of the world.

The position regarding shipping is complicated by the fact that registration of shipping under a certain flag<sup>1</sup> does not prove that the shipping is all owned by subjects of the nation to which that flag

<sup>1</sup> A large proportion of the world's tonnage is now registered in Panama, Honduras and Liberia where taxation involved is low. See p. 99.

belongs, and that loans to countries abroad issued in the United Kingdom are not all held by residents in this country, but may and often do include large sums lent by foreigners. Much shipping under foreign flags is owned by British subjects, but, on the other hand, some foreign capital is invested in British ships. Thus, in 1902 the International Mercantile Marine Company was incorporated at Trenton, New Jersey, and acquired the control of most of the chief British Atlantic steamship lines, whose ships, however, retained British registration, although the British holding in the company amounted to only £13m. against an American holding of £21m. The British lines transferred to the company were the White Star, Dominion, America and Leyland lines. The principal British company trading with the United States remaining outside the International Company was the Cunard Company, with which about the same time the British Government made an agreement that, on condition of its remaining a purely British undertaking for twenty years, holding for that term all its vessels at the disposal of the British Government on agreed terms, agreeing 'not to unduly raise freights' or give preferential rates to foreigners, and undertaking to 'build two large steamers for the Atlantic trade of high speed,' the British Government would lend the money to build the ships, and from the time when the ships began to run would pay to the company an annual subvention of £150,000. In 1926 the White Star Line was repurchased by British interests for £7m. and later merged with the Cunard. With Government help the Cunard White Star Line launched the *Queen Mary* in 1936. This was followed by the launching of the *Queen Elizabeth* in 1939. Both ships carried immense numbers of troops during the war and, maintaining speeds of over 30 knots, succeeded in eluding submarines. When returned to civilian use they remained by far the largest ships afloat. The *Queen Mary* regained for Britain the 'Blue Riband' for the fastest crossing of the Atlantic in 1938 and held that record until the maiden voyage of the American *United States* in 1952 (p. 95). In many ways the pattern of British shipping has changed. Whilst the cream of passenger traffic now goes by air, a larger proportion of freight is handled by liners on regular schedules and less by tramp or charter tonnage. A large proportion of British as of world tonnage is represented by tankers, including some of the largest vessels afloat, specifically constructed to carry one commodity only.

The Second World War resulted in the sale of many of Britain's overseas investments, the loss of large numbers of merchant vessels, and the passing of financial world leadership to New York. Instead of invisible exports—in return for which there was an automatic inflow of food-stuffs and raw materials—equal to a third of the total of imports and ranging in the years 1913 to 1938 from a low

of £255m. in 1932 to a high of £595m. in 1920, Britain found herself in 1945 having to pay her way by selling exports to the value of imports needed. American aid, a recovery in such invisible exports as the tourist trade and shipping helped to adjust the balance, but the export drive remained paramount in national economy. The home market had to be starved and many articles were reserved for export and were not available for home consumers. It has been the aim of successive governments to remedy this position by restoring, as far as possible, the old pattern of trade.

Even allowing for increased output of food by British farmers—up to 55 per cent. of the total consumed—food-stuffs remain dominant amongst imports. Wheat, flour, and meat are essentials. Other main features are shown in the tables.

The pattern of export trade has changed radically. With the diminution in importance of the one raw material formerly exported in quantity—coal—the proportion of manufactured goods has risen but the dominant position once occupied by cotton manufactures has disappeared. The long continued export of iron and steel manufactures is a remarkable illustration of the commercial advantages of this country, especially when we consider the relative advance of other countries in the conditions favouring the initial stages of the industry. In 1886–90 the United States took about three-fourths of the value of the tinned plates exported from this country; now the import of tinned plates into that country is comparatively small, and this is typical of the changes wrought in British trade as, one after another, her former customers have developed their own manufacturing industries. Iron and steel were among those comparatively bulky commodities that helped to cheapen the carriage of more valuable ones.

Now the emphasis is on manufactures for which the native iron and steel industry provides a basis—machinery of all kinds, vehicles including ships, locomotives, motor-cars and aircraft. That Britain has not lagged behind in technological development is seen in the export of a range of chemicals, artificial fibres and electrical apparatus.

As to destinations of exports we may note that the maximum percentage to India was in 1886–90, after which it remained comparatively steady for a long period, but with a marked drop after the First World War. Exports to the British Commonwealth and Empire as a whole remained between 30 and 40 per cent. from 1880 to 1913, but began a steady rise above 40 after the First World War. From 1871 to the present day the highest percentage to the United States was in 1871–75, since when, with the establishment of home manufactures in that country, there has been a steady decline. This is an outstanding example of the trend of trade with all 'new' countries as they develop.

UNITED KINGDOM  
IMPORTS OF MERCHANDISE

	Percentages of Total Value.				
	1924.	1926-30.	1931-35.	1938.	1957.
<i>Raw Materials</i> . . .	31.4	28.3	24.5 <sup>1</sup>	27.0	40.0
Raw cotton . . .	9.5	6.0	4.6	3.2	2.7
Raw wool . . .	5.5	4.7	4.9	4.6	5.0
Wood and wood pulp .	4.0	4.8	5.5	6.4	6.1
Petroleum and products	—	3.6	4.2	3.3	10.8
Oil-seeds and nuts .	4.1	1.4	1.5		1.5
Rubber . . .	0.8	1.7	0.9	1.3	2.1
Hides, skins and furs .	1.7	2.2	2.1	2.0	1.2
Zinc, lead, tin, copper, iron and other ores	1.8	2.4	1.8	3.0	5.0
<i>Foodstuffs</i> . . .	44.7	44.1	49.5 <sup>1</sup>	46.8	36.7
Meat . . .	8.2	9.5	12.2	9.9	7.6
Fresh beef and mutton	4.1	4.0	5.5		3.3
Bacon and hams .	3.5	4.4	4.5	1.0	2.3
Animals . . .	1.7	1.1	1.2		1.1
Grain and flour . .	9.5	8.3	8.7	8.1	5.1
Wheat . . .	5.4	5.0	4.1	4.2	3.0
Maize . . .	1.3	1.1	1.5	1.9	1.0
Wheat meal and flour	0.7	0.6	0.5	0.4	0.3
Butter . . .	4.3	4.2	5.2	5.5	2.4
Tea . . .	3.2	3.1	3.6	3.3	3.3
Sugar . . .	3.5	2.0	2.0	2.1	3.6
Raw . . .	—	1.6			
Refined . . .	—	0.4			
Fresh fruit and nuts .	2.5	2.9	4.0	4.1	2.2
Eggs . . .	1.5	1.4	1.2	1.7	0.2
Cheese . . .	1.1	1.2	1.1	1.1	0.6
Tobacco . . .	1.2	1.4	1.7	2.5	2.1
<i>Manufactures</i> . . .	23.4	26.9	24.8 <sup>1</sup>	25.4 <sup>2</sup>	22.8
Silk yarns and manufrs.	2.0	1.2	0.6	0.5	— <sup>3</sup>
Wool yarns and manufrs.	1.2	0.9	0.6	0.4	0.4
Apparel . . .		1.6	1.3	0.9	0.5
Cotton yarns and manufrs. . .	0.7	0.8	0.5	0.3	0.9
Iron and steel manufrs.	1.7	2.3	1.5	1.6	1.9
Machinery . . .	0.8	1.4	1.6	2.3	4.0
Leather manufrs. .	1.1	1.2	1.1	0.7	0.6
Chemicals . . .	1.2	1.3	1.0	1.5	2.8
Paper and cardboard .	—	1.5	1.8	1.6	1.7
<i>Annual Total in £ millions</i>	1,279.8	1,184.5	745.5	919.5	4,075.5

<sup>1</sup> Classes for 1931-4 only.<sup>2</sup> Includes 'Non-ferrous metals and manufactures', amounting to 4.4% of all imports; and 'Oils, fats and resins, manufactured' (chiefly refined petroleum), amounting to 4.8%.<sup>3</sup> Less than 0.1 per cent.

## UNITED KINGDOM

## DOMESTIC EXPORTS

	Percentages of Total Value.				
	1924.	1926-30.	1931-35.	1938.	1957.
<i>Raw Materials</i> . . .	13.3	9.9	11.9 <sup>1</sup>	12.1	8.3 <sup>4</sup>
Coal and coke . . .	9.8	6.4	8.7	8.0	1.9
<i>Foods</i> . . .	7.0	7.6	8.0 <sup>1</sup>	7.6	6.2
Fish . . .	1.1	1.1	1.1	0.8	0.2 <sup>5</sup>
Spirits . . .	1.5	1.3	1.6	2.4	1.6
<i>Manufactures</i> . . .	77.4	79.8	76.3 <sup>1</sup>	77.5	67.7
Cotton manufrs. . .	24.9	19.2	15.3	10.5	2.7 <sup>6</sup>
Yarn . . .	3.5	3.0	2.7		
Thread . . .	0.9	0.9	1.1		
Iron and steel . . .	9.3	8.3	6.9	8.8	6.4
Machinery . . .	5.6	7.4	8.3	12.1	16.9 <sup>7</sup>
Electrical goods . . .	1.3	1.8	1.9	2.9	6.8 <sup>8</sup>
Automobiles . . .	0.8	2.4 <sup>3</sup>	3.3 <sup>2</sup>	9.6 <sup>8</sup>	9.3 <sup>9</sup>
Railway vehicles . . .	1.0	1.4	0.6		
New ships . . .	0.7	1.8	1.1		
Wool manufrs. . .	8.5	7.2	6.9	5.7	3.2 <sup>10</sup>
Tissues . . .	5.2	4.6	3.8		
Yarn . . .	2.0	1.5	1.6		
Tops . . .	0.8	0.7	0.8		
Silk and art silk . . .	0.3	1.4	1.3	1.2	0.8 <sup>11</sup>
Linen yarn and manufrs. . .	1.7	1.4	1.5	1.3	0.5
Apparel (including boots and hats) . . .	3.8	3.7	3.0	2.2	1.4
Paper and cardboard . . .	1.2	1.4	1.6	1.5	1.2
Rubber manufrs. . .	0.3	1.3	1.4	0.3	1.2
Earthenware and glass . . .	1.6	1.9	2.0	2.0	0.7
Leather manufrs. . .	1.5	1.1	0.9	0.8	0.6
Chemicals . . .	3.2	3.5	4.7	4.7	8.0
<i>Annual Total in £ millions</i>	795.4	677.2	389.5	471.4	3,172.0

<sup>1</sup> Classes are for 1931-4 only. <sup>2</sup> Includes cars and other road vehicles and parts.  
<sup>3</sup> Vehicles, including locomotives, ships and aircraft. <sup>4</sup> With the decline in the export of coal, the main items in the exports of raw materials in 1957 were petroleum and products (2.7 per cent.) and wool (2.4 per cent.). <sup>5</sup> Refined sugar (1.1 per cent.) is now the biggest item in the exports of foods, next to spirits. <sup>6</sup> Cotton yarns and woven fabrics. <sup>7</sup> Non-electric, electrical machinery. <sup>8</sup> All road vehicles mechanically propelled, and parts thereof. <sup>9</sup> Aircraft provided another 2.1 per cent. <sup>10</sup> Woollen and worsted yarns and woven fabrics, and miscellaneous textile manufactures of wool. <sup>11</sup> All artificial silk—i.e. synthetic fibre yarns and woven fabrics. Silk goods proper, only a fraction of 0.1 per cent.



## EXPORTS OF IMPORTED PRODUCE

	Percentages of Total Value.				
	1924.	1926-30.	1931-5.	1938.	1957.
<i>Raw Materials:</i>					49.3
Wool . . . . .	22.4	22.3	22.3	20.4	12.7
Rubber . . . . .	7.2	13.2	3.7	4.4	13.9
Raw hides . . . . .	1.4	1.2	0.7	} 15.6	14.3
Raw skins and furs . . . . .	8.0	8.6	12.4		
Cotton . . . . .	8.3	4.9	3.3	2.0	1.2
Jute . . . . .	0.3	0.3	0.4	1.1	Nil
Petroleum . . . . .	—	1.3	1.9	1.3	2.6 <sup>1</sup>
Tin . . . . .	1.8	1.7	1.2	—	0.2
<i>Foodstuffs:</i>					20.5
Tea . . . . .	5.0	6.8	8.7	7.5	6.2
Meat . . . . .	—	3.1	2.3	0.9	2.2
Fish . . . . .	—	1.4	1.2	0.7	0.2
Spices . . . . .	—	0.9	0.4	0.2	0.5
Tobacco . . . . .	—	0.7	1.3	1.3	0.5
Coffee . . . . .	1.2	1.8	2.7	0.6	0.5
Butter . . . . .	—	1.2	1.9	0.8	1.0
Fruit . . . . .	—	1.2	2.1	2.0	2.1
Maize . . . . .	0.7	0.6	0.9	1.4	Nil
Wine . . . . .	0.5	0.5	0.7	0.8	1.3
<i>Manufactures:</i>					30.2 <sup>2</sup>
Leather . . . . .	1.3	1.7	2.0	1.5	2.6
Silk goods . . . . .	2.5	1.4	0.8	0.3	— <sup>3</sup>
Carpets and rugs . . . . .	—	1.3	1.0	0.5	1.3
Cotton manufs. . . . .	1.8	0.7	0.3	0.3	0.3
Machinery . . . . .	—	1.4	1.2	1.5	7.9 <sup>4</sup>
Art silk . . . . .	—	0.6	0.9	0.5	Nil
Drugs and medicine . . . . .	—	0.4	0.7	0.8	3.2 <sup>5</sup>
<i>Total in £ millions</i> . . . . .	140	113	54	62.0	133.3

<sup>1</sup> Petroleum and products. <sup>2</sup> The leading re-exports of manufactures, after machinery and chemicals, were non-ferrous base metals (3.1 per cent.), and silver, platinum and jewellery (3.1 per cent.). <sup>3</sup> Negligible percentage. <sup>4</sup> Non-electric 5.7 per cent.; electric, 2.2 per cent. <sup>5</sup> Chemicals.

The above table relates to a highly characteristic British trade. Articles that have been collected from many parts of the globe are widely distributed again in other parts. The wool of Australia and South Africa and the rubber of Malaya and Ceylon are sent by us to Germany, France, and even the United States; raw cotton from America, Egypt, and India is redistributed on the continent of Europe; furs are imported from Canada and sent to Australia with the numerous British products destined for the same market; and so on. A considerable variety of articles of Eastern origin, including tea, is exported by us to the United States. The commodities that make up this *entrepôt* trade, as it is called, are mainly such as

are bought by British merchants to be resold to customers whether at home or abroad, so that they enter into the *entrepôt* trade only when bought on foreign or colonial account, but nearly a quarter of this trade is or was in goods originally bought for countries abroad, but sent to this country on through bills of lading. On the

## U.K. IMPORTS FROM VARIOUS COUNTRIES

Countries of Origin.	Percentages of Total Value.				
	1924.	1926-30.	1931-35.	1938.	1957.
United States . . . .	18.5	16.3	11.6	12.8	11.8
Argentina . . . . .	6.2	6.1	6.4	4.2	2.6
Germany . . . . .	2.9	5.6	4.9	3.3	3.1 <sup>2</sup>
India and Pakistan . . . .	6.2	5.1	5.0	5.4	4.5 <sup>3</sup>
France . . . . .	5.3	4.9	3.3	2.6	2.7
Denmark . . . . .	3.8	4.6	5.2	4.1	2.8
Australia . . . . .	4.6	4.4	6.6	7.8	6.1
Canada . . . . .	5.2	4.4	6.2	8.8 <sup>1</sup>	7.9
Irish Republic . . . . .	4.0	3.8	3.2	2.5	2.7
Netherlands . . . . .	3.3	3.8	3.3	3.2	3.2
New Zealand . . . . .	3.8	3.9	5.1	5.1	4.5
Belgium . . . . .	2.8	3.0	2.5	2.0	1.5
U.S.S.R. . . . .	1.5	2.2	2.8	2.1	1.7 <sup>4</sup>
Sweden . . . . .	1.6	2.0	2.3	2.7	3.8 <sup>5</sup>
Commonwealth . . . . .	30.2	27.1	33.5	36.9	42.7
Foreign Countries . . . .	69.8	72.9	66.5	63.1	57.3

<sup>1</sup> Including Newfoundland. <sup>2</sup> Western Germany 3.05, Eastern 0.07. <sup>3</sup> India 3.9, Pakistan 0.6.  
<sup>4</sup> Exports to U.S.S.R. 1.1. <sup>5</sup> Exports to Sweden 3.3.

## EXPORTS OF U.K. PRODUCTS TO VARIOUS COUNTRIES

Countries of Destination.	1924.	1926-30.	1931-35.	1938 <sup>1</sup>	1957.
India and Pakistan . . . .	11.3	11.2	8.8	7.2	6.3 <sup>2</sup>
Australia . . . . .	7.8	7.2	5.6	8.1	7.1
United States . . . . .	6.6	6.3	5.0	4.3	7.3
Irish Republic . . . . .	5.3	5.5	6.2	4.4	3.1
Germany . . . . .	5.4	5.1	4.3	4.4	3.2 <sup>7</sup>
Canada . . . . .	3.5	4.6	4.8	5.0 <sup>6</sup>	5.9
Union of South Africa . . .	3.8	4.2	6.2	8.4	5.2 <sup>8</sup>
Argentina . . . . .	3.4	4.0	3.4	4.1	1.0
France . . . . .	5.2	3.9	5.0	3.2	2.6
Netherlands . . . . .	3.1	3.1	3.2	2.8	3.5
Belgium . . . . .	2.8	2.9	2.5	1.7	2.3
New Zealand . . . . .	2.6	2.7	2.8	4.1	4.2
Italy . . . . .	2.2	2.0	2.3	—	2.1 <sup>9</sup>
Commonwealth . . . . .	41.7	45.6	45.7	44.6	45.8
Foreign Countries . . . .	58.3	54.4	54.3	55.4	54.2

<sup>1</sup> India 5.3, Pakistan 1.0. <sup>2</sup> Western Germany 3.16, Eastern 0.04. <sup>3</sup> U.K. imports from S. Africa 2.5. <sup>4</sup> U.K. imports from Italy 1.5.

other hand, it does not include the value of the goods transhipped at British ports in bond.

That the central position of this country contributed to the growth of this trade would seem to be indicated by the fact that from 1886 to 1913 about three-fifths of the value of the trade was carried on with the United States on the one hand and Germany, France and Belgium on the other. The advantages of geographical position remain. Vessels bound to or from any of the ports of northern Europe of necessity pass through the Strait of Dover or down the English Channel unless they use the stormy route round the north of Scotland. A call at an English port does not take them out of their way.

Still the great development of the *entrepôt* and transshipment trade is not to be ascribed solely to the geographical position of this country. Two other important factors may be pointed out as contributing to this result. One is the peculiarly one-sided character of British industries. The fact that so large a proportion of the exports of the country consists of manufactured goods of various kinds necessarily makes it dependent on other countries to an unparalleled extent for imports of food-stuffs and raw materials. The large trade with all parts of the world based on the country's own products and requirements necessitates the employment of a vast amount of shipping, which furnishes at the same time conveniences for an *entrepôt* and transshipment trade. The chief articles in the *entrepôt* trade are of comparatively high value in proportion to their bulk. Of those enumerated in the table, jute was the only one of relatively low value per ton. A second factor favouring this trade is the number and situation of our seaports. Part of the *entrepôt* trade of the country, for example, consists in the exporting at Dover of wool imported at London, the exporting at Hull of raw cotton imported at Liverpool.

We cannot put out of sight the fact which has become abundantly clear since the Second World War that, however great the advantages of the United Kingdom may have been for the carrying on of manufacturing industries and foreign commerce, these advantages were much greater at a period when the British Isles had coal-fields more or less developed and other countries had not, when these islands had already effected the change from domestic and hand-labour in spinning and weaving and other countries had not. Hence it was inevitable that foreign countries, and especially those provided by nature with coal-fields or abundant water-power, should gain upon the United Kingdom in the great branches of industry to which modern machinery is chiefly applied, and gain all the more rapidly because they begin with the latest machinery and the most advanced organisation, while the older seats of industry are inevitably burdened more or less with what is out of date.

**Seaports.** On the average of the period 1908-12 the ten following

seaports—London, Liverpool, Hull, Manchester, Harwich, Southampton, Bristol, Glasgow, Leith, and Grimsby—received nearly 83 per cent. of the total value of the imports of the United Kingdom, and dispatched nearly 85 per cent. by value of all the exports. In 1956 the order, by value of the trade, was London, Liverpool, Manchester, Hull, Southampton, Glasgow, Bristol, Tyne Ports, Swansea, Dover, Harwich. The first two of the seaports just named handled 57 per cent. of the total imports and exports. Liverpool normally leads in exports, but London in imports and *entrepôt* trade.

First in rank among the British seaports still stands London, as it always has done, having received during the years 1909–13, 33 per cent. of the imports in value and dispatched 25 per cent. of the exports—proportions which have steadily increased since the First World War except for the obvious set-back of the Second World War. The situation at the head of ocean navigation on a river which allows ocean vessels to ascend far into the interior of the Kingdom, and which has its mouth directly opposite another great estuary—that of the Scheldt—and nearly opposite the mouth of the Rhine, gives it a commanding position for continental trade. It is these two circumstances which determined its early growth, and hence indirectly made it the capital of the country, a position which favoured its further increase in population and wealth more and more as the British Empire extended. It thus became ultimately the greatest import market in the world, a fact which of necessity greatly promoted its *entrepôt* and transshipment trade, especially since so much of that trade, on the export side, is carried on with the neighbouring continental countries. More than 50 per cent. of that characteristic trade of the United Kingdom is carried on at this port. The enormous local market—Greater London has a population of over 8m.—together with the facilities for redistribution by both land and sea, are no doubt the circumstances that have made London the one great port, not only for such eastern products as tea and spices, but also for coffee and cocoa, and it is no doubt the latter circumstance—the ease of redistribution, as well as collection—that has been the determining factor in making London the chief centre for Australian trade. Increasing difficulty was felt in meeting the requirements of the enormous shipping of this port, and the complaints of shippers led in 1908 to the passing of the Act placing the whole port, defined as extending from the tidal limit of the river at Teddington Lock to a line joining Havengore Creek in Essex to Warden Point in the Isle of Sheppey, under the control of a single authority known as the Port of London Authority, which has acquired not only all the docks of importance, but also the warehouses belonging to them. This authority provided for the establishment and maintenance of a 14-foot channel at low water up to London Bridge, and one of 30 feet in depth with a minimum

width of 600 feet up to the Albert Docks opposite Woolwich. The Tilbury Docks, opened in 1886, were the deepest docks of the port, 38 feet; and they had  $54\frac{1}{2}$  acres of water-space; the docks were extended, a new lock opened at Tilbury in 1929 with a length of 1,000 feet and width of 110 feet.

Liverpool has risen to a high rank among the seaports of the world only within the last two hundred and fifty years. Early in the eighteenth century it was a small place; its chief trade was with Ireland, and in that trade it had rivals in Preston and Chester, which were equally well suited for the small ships then in use. Its importance rose with the growth of the American trade and with the development of the cotton, woollen, and other manufactures of its hinterland, which may be said to include the whole of the industrial area from the Ribble to the north of Warwickshire and even, for the bulk of oceanic traffic, that lying to the east of the Pennine upland in the West Riding of Yorkshire. The inadequacy of the ports at the mouths of the Ribble, Dee, and even the Severn, prevents them from offering in the meantime any serious rivalry. Since 1894, however, as noted on pp. 338-39, its hinterland has been invaded by the port of Manchester. Though the Mersey, as a mere harbour, is capacious enough to admit all the fleets of the world, the building of docks and quays has been necessary for commerce, and the six or seven miles of continuous docks on the Liverpool side of the Mersey present a sight unparalleled elsewhere. The port of Liverpool includes the docks on the Cheshire side of the Mersey at Birkenhead, as well as the Garston docks on the Lancashire side, formerly belonging to the London, Midland and Scottish Railway Company, whose train marshalling sidings are a special feature. The port is under the control of the Mersey Docks and Harbour Board, constituted in 1857. A sandbank at the mouth of the Mersey, which formerly prevented the entrance of large vessels at low tide, has been dredged so as to allow of large modern liners entering or leaving the port at dead low water. Birkenhead-Wallasey, since the completion of the rail and road tunnels under the Mersey, may be fairly regarded as forming geographically part of Liverpool.

Hull, lying as it does on the east or continental side of the island, is one of the older ports of England, though its antiquity does not reach back to Roman times. It is said to have been founded by King Edward I, who here encouraged the building of a town, which was called King's Town. Hence the full name of the town, Kingston-upon-Hull, Hull being properly the name of a small river which enters the Humber at the place where the town stands. Its ancient and large trade in fish is still maintained, being favoured by the convenience of its situation for the supply of the northern midlands, though to a less extent London and the southern midlands, for which, especially London, Grimsby on the Lincolnshire coast

has greater advantages. For the same reason its wool imports for the supply of Yorkshire increased at the expense of London. Thus the import of raw wool at Hull in 1913 was 48m. lb. (less than 10 per cent. of that of London), in 1920, 70m. lb. (nearly 14 per cent. of London), in 1929, 148m. lb. (over 38 per cent. of London), but the proportion has since fallen. The leading import of Hull is, in normal years, wheat; but the port resembles London in the very general nature of the cargoes handled. Many of the imports are off-loaded into lighters for water carriage into the hinterland. It has also a large trade in oil-seeds, a trade favoured by the large adjacent markets for oil-cake on the one hand, and for the oils and oil products in the manufacturing districts. The port of Grimsby includes Immingham, a short distance to the north, which has been specially equipped for the export of coal and large iron and steel castings. Goole, the third of the Humber ports, owes its importance chiefly to the shipment of coal brought by the Aire and Calder navigation and development by the former London, Midland and Scottish Railway.

Glasgow, surpassed by Southampton in tonnage of shipping and also in value of imports and exports, has had a history in many ways similar to that of Liverpool. It rose into importance only with the development of the New World and modern manufacturing industry, and the accommodation that it affords for mercantile shipping has had to be provided artificially to even a greater extent than in the Mersey. Its first lucrative trans-oceanic trade was with the southern 'Plantations' of North America and the West Indies, whence tobacco and sugar, then relatively more valuable than they are now, were imported. The trade began as a smuggling trade even before the union of the English and Scottish parliaments, but so flourished afterwards that Glasgow beat all its English rivals in the tobacco trade. The tobacco was brought from the Plantations under the regulations then in force first to this country, but being mostly for export to the continent, had a shorter land transport, even from Irvine, which was then the port of Glasgow, to an eastern port (Bo'ness), than could be found at any other port in Great Britain. The Clyde, however, was then but a small river. Little more than a hundred and fifty years ago it was still fordable twelve miles below Glasgow. Then came the modern inventions which made coal and iron so all-important, and the fact that these minerals are found together in the immediate vicinity of Glasgow made it worth while to convert the river into a channel of the sea, bearing on its waters the ships of all nations, and of the deepest draught. Glasgow, at the same time, is a great manufacturing town, but the industries carried on there are so varied that none can be singled out as specially characteristic, except the shipbuilding of the Clyde and marine engineering. As the western outlet of one of the chief

manufacturing districts of Great Britain its export trade is large, and Glasgow is indeed singular among the great ports of the country in having for long had an export trade 50 per cent. more in value than its import trade. The reason is that many of the most valuable of the imports of the Glasgow district come from the continent and enter the country by the eastern ports of Leith and Grangemouth, which latter has supplanted Bo'ness since its foundation on the mud-bank chosen for the eastern terminus of the Forth and Clyde Canal.

Southampton, the chief commercial port on the south coast, is second or third in the country in respect of tonnage, rivalling Liverpool, though only fifth in value of trade. A Roman station stood on the tongue of land between the Itchen and the Test where the town is situated. In 1891 its docks, which now afford accommodation alongside of the quay walls for the largest ships yet built, were acquired by the London and South Western Railway Company, later part of the Southern Railway, and from that time its shipping increased at a more rapid rate than that of any other leading British port. Its position, together with its ample accommodation and easy entrance, makes it a convenient calling-place for transatlantic liners. It is the only port, besides London, on the south or south-east of England that has an export trade exceeding 2 per cent. of the total value of the export trade of the United Kingdom, its trade under this head being fairly representative of British export trade generally. An important feature of its import trade is the reception of large quantities of fresh and refrigerated meat and fruit. It has also a large passenger traffic, especially with North and South America and Africa. It is indeed the premier passenger port for passengers to and from destinations outside Europe. With Southampton may be contrasted the ports which deal with European passenger traffic—Dover, Folkestone, and Newhaven, along the south coast, and Harwich on the east—all having an import trade similar in character, but a relatively small export trade. The imports are largely made up of perishable articles, such as butter, eggs, fresh meat, poultry, fish, fruit, and of manufactured articles of relatively high value in proportion to their bulk, such as silks, woollens, gloves, watches, and parts of watches. Folkestone and Dover together admit much of the wearing apparel of continental origin imported into this country. Bristol is the only western seaport noted in the early commerce of England. Owing to the shallowness of the upper part of the estuary of the Severn, it served as an outlet not only for the populous region immediately to the east of it, but also for the Severn valley, and after the settlement of the New World it was one of the first seaports to secure a large share of the trade in tobacco and sugar. At the present day its import trade continues large, but its exports are comparatively small. Its development was

retarded by the inadequacy of the Avon to meet the requirements of large modern ships. The corporation of the city of Bristol therefore constructed large deep-water docks near the mouth of the Avon, at Avonmouth, included in the port of Bristol. Considering the position of the port one might expect that, with sufficient shipping accommodation, it ought not merely to carry on a large passenger traffic, but to serve, in great measure, as the port for the

## CITIES AND TOWNS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND NORTHERN IRELAND, 1931 AND 1951

ENGLAND			1931		1951
	1931	1951	Portsmouth		
London			(City) .	252,000	233,000
(County) .	4,397,000	3,348,000	Preston .	120,000	119,000
Greater			Reading .	97,000	114,000
London .	8,216,000	8,346,000	St. Helens .	107,000	110,000
Birkenhead .	151,000	142,000	Salford (City) .	223,000	178,000
Birmingham			Sheffield (City)	518,000	513,000
(City) .	1,003,000	1,112,000	Southampton .	176,000	178,000
Blackburn .	123,000	111,000	Southend-		
Blackpool .	106,000	147,000	on-Sea .	130,000	152,000
Bolton .	177,000	167,000	South Shields .	113,000	107,000
Bournemouth .	117,000	145,000	Stockport .	126,000	142,000
Bradford (City)	299,000	292,000	Stoke-on-Trent		
Brighton .	147,000	156,000	(City) .	277,000	275,000
Bristol (City) .	404,000	442,000	Sunderland .	186,000	182,000
Coventry (City)	178,000	258,000	Wallasey .	98,000	101,000
Croydon .	233,000	250,000	Walsall .	103,000	115,000
Derby .	142,000	141,000	Wolverhampton	139,000	163,000
Gateshead .	125,000	115,000	York .	94,000	105,000
Huddersfield .	123,000	129,000			
Hull (City) .	314,000	299,000	WALES		
Ipswich .	88,000	105,000	Cardiff (City) .	227,000	244,000
Leeds (City) .	483,000	505,000	Swansea .	165,000	161,000
Leicester (City)	258,000	285,000	Rhondda .	141,000	111,000
Liverpool (City)	856,000	790,000	Newport .	98,000	105,000
Manchester					
(City) .	766,000	703,000	SCOTLAND		
Middlesbrough	139,000	147,000	Glasgow .	1,088,000	1,090,000
Newcastle-upon-			Edinburgh .	439,000	467,000
Tyne (City) .	286,000	292,000	Dundee .	176,000	177,000
Northampton .	97,000	104,000	Aberdeen .	167,000	183,000
Norwich (City)	126,000	121,000			
Nottingham			NORTHERN IRELAND		
(City) .	276,000	306,000	Belfast .	415,000	444,000
Oldham .	140,000	121,000			
Plymouth (City)	213,000	209,000			

The above table includes all towns and cities with more than 100,000 persons in 1951 except those forming a part of Greater London (of which Croydon is really one). Decreases may be actual (Blackburn, Bolton, etc.) or due to population moving outside the boundaries.

*Note.*—The 'conurbations' of Greater Manchester, Greater Liverpool, Birmingham and the Black Country, Tyneside, Leeds-Bradford, and Glasgow have all populations of over a million.



southern midlands. Although with the improvements mentioned there has been a considerable increase in trade it does not primarily serve the Midlands.

Edinburgh has the advantage of having two seaports within its extended boundaries of 1920—Leith and Granton. Leith has an import trade in many respects similar to that of Hull, but serves (along with Grangemouth) in an even higher ratio than Hull as an inlet for sugar, butter, cheese, eggs, and other continental produce destined for the populous districts in the west. The exports are comparatively small.

### THE IRISH REPUBLIC (POBLACHT NA h-ÉIREANN)

**The Surface of Ireland.** The larger part of Ireland is a plain, with greater stretches of nearly level country than are to be seen in any other part of the British Isles. The hills and mountains are chiefly near the corners of the island, and being from their nature thinly peopled, and not situated so as to separate more densely inhabited areas, present no serious obstacles to communication. The flatness of the country has facilitated the construction of both canals and railways. The Shannon, the longest river in the British Isles, is navigable from Lough Derg to the head of Lough Allen, that is, not far from its source; and it is connected by canals with Dublin by two routes, and with Belfast. The Shannon drops roughly 100 feet from Lough Derg to the sea at Limerick and advantage was taken of this fact to carry out the Shannon Power Scheme to supply electricity to the whole of the Irish Republic. The first part of the scheme was completed in October 1929. The effect of superficial configuration on the railway communications in Ireland is to be seen rather in the lengthening of routes than in enforcing the crossing of high altitudes on important lines. The most serious deviations from the direct route are those due to the highland country on the adjoining borders of the counties of Tipperary, Waterford, and Cork, the railway from Cork to Waterford being thus compelled to run first 21 miles north (to Mallow) out of a total of 96 miles, and that to Dublin 36½ miles north (to Charleville) out of a total of 165½ miles.

It is partly owing to the flatness of the surface in Ireland, but especially to the masses of boulder clay irregularly deposited when the ice sheets of the Great Ice Age melted, that the natural drainage is poor and the extent of bog and marsh land is so large, making up one-twelfth of the entire surface. In Ireland, too, the extension of bog and marsh is promoted by the fact that the situation of the island causes the climate to be particularly moist. The barren mountain land, woods, and water of Ireland being also deducted,

there remains three-fourths of the surface available for agriculture, including the rearing of livestock.

In respect of mineral resources Ireland is much less fortunate than Great Britain. Formerly the most productive coal-mines were those in the north of Co. Kilkenny, but the quantity produced there is small and of inferior quality. Small quantities of iron ore occur, but there are excellent resources of granite and marble.

Relatively to population, Ireland rears more livestock in the aggregate than any other country in Europe, and probably than any other country in the world, except 'new countries.' In certain species of livestock the ratio of numbers to inhabitants is greater in one or two other European countries, but not the ratio of all collectively. This ratio in the case of Ireland has, moreover, been growing on the whole for many years, especially in the case of cattle and poultry. Though the quality of the animals reared has been greatly improved with the help of timely and wise legislation, Irish cattle are still largely sent to England and Scotland as store cattle to be fattened. This is undoubtedly due in a large measure to the fact that Great Britain forms the chief market for the meat, and it is advantageous to fatten the cattle near consuming centres. It is also true that fat cattle easily suffer loss of condition even under modern improved conditions of transport. The average quality of Irish butter and eggs has been improved by the agency of co-operative creameries and other societies, especially in the south and west of Ireland. The establishment of these societies was due to the efforts of Mr. (afterwards Sir) Horace Plunkett. With much difficulty he succeeded in getting the first established in 1889. Later many hundreds were established.

The establishment in 1922 under Treaty with Great Britain of the Irish Free State resulted in the publication of separate statistics which throw much interesting light on the trade between Ireland and Great Britain. The Irish Free State did not become a statistical unit for Customs purposes until after the setting up of a Customs frontier on April 1, 1923. At first the Irish Free State or Saorstát Éireann remained linked with the Commonwealth; later, as the Irish Republic, it became a completely independent republic. The land area of the republic is roughly 26,600 square miles and the population was 2,972,802 in 1926, or 112 to the square mile. The population in 1946 was 2,953,265. In 1951 it was 2,960,593 and the downward trend was reversed for the first time for many decades. The density is still only 111 per square mile. It should be noted that the population of the whole of Ireland in 1841 was 8,175,000. The great famine which began in 1845 and caused huge migration to America started the general decline. With this may be compared the land area of Northern Ireland, 5,240 square miles; population (1926), 1,256,322, or 239 to the square mile. In 1951 the popula-

tion had increased to 1,370,709. In 1950 the total area under crops in the republic was 3,743,000 acres, of which hay occupied 2,296,000, oats 644,000, and potatoes 347,000 acres.

Before the separation of the Irish Republic it was only possible to form rough estimates of the trade between Ireland and Great Britain. First regarding exports; in the case of cattle and other livestock, butter and eggs, poultry, potatoes, and bacon and hams exported, it may be safely assumed that these were practically all of Irish origin and all found their final market in Great Britain; and it was interesting to compare the total Irish exports under these heads with the total imports of the same commodities into the United Kingdom. This showed that the value (though not the quantity) of eggs imported into Britain from Ireland was greater than that from any other single country, but butter was less than half that from Denmark.

Looking at the imports into Ireland, there was no difficulty in identifying the imported coal as all of British origin.

Taking the position as it was in 1908, as might have been expected, the bulk of the Irish butter sent to Great Britain was consumed on the west side of the island, whereas the principal markets of the Danish and other continental markets were on the east side. In all the large centres of population in Great Britain the best of Irish creamery butter was considered to be the best butter in the world. Although in later years great progress was made in the organisation of the dairying industry, Ireland continued to send over quantities of non-creamery butter, which is not the case with any other country supplying Britain. Danish butter reaches Great Britain in nearly equal quantities all the year round, whereas the Irish trade is concentrated in the six summer months, a fact which has had in various ways a prejudicial effect on the Irish trade. For that reason efforts were made to develop winter dairying. Ireland was keenly alive to the progress made in this respect by Denmark.

Taking the inter-war position, looked at as a whole the trade of the republic presented two noteworthy features. First, unlike that of the United Kingdom, it shows a marked predominance of food and drink amongst the exports. Second, the value per head is high. On the side of imports the value per head in Ireland is considerably higher than in the United Kingdom. The important place—some 45 per cent. in those years—occupied by manufactured goods amongst the imports is also noteworthy. Towards the end of the nineteenth century however the government determined on a policy designed to make the country a self-sufficing unit and between 1929 and 1934 the trade between Britain and Ireland was halved. Even so 90 per cent. of the exports went to Britain and Northern Ireland, and Ireland despite development of hydro-electric power continued to need British coal.

## IRISH REPUBLIC

## GENERAL IMPORTS

	Percentages of Total Value.				
	1924.	1926-30.	1931-35. <sup>1</sup>	1938.	1957.
<i>Livestock</i> . . . . .	—	—	1.9	2.0	0.31 <sup>1</sup>
Horses . . . . .	—	2.1	1.5	1.9	0.28
<i>Foodstuffs</i> . . . . .	—	—	30.7	29.2	14.6
Wheat and wheat products . . . . .	10.8	10.2	7.6	7.5	1.9
Maize and maize products . . . . .	6.4	5.6	4.4	5.5	0.2
Tea . . . . .	3.8	4.1	4.1	4.0	3.4
Sugar . . . . .	3.7	2.3	1.6	0.7	1.0
Bacon . . . . .	2.8	2.9	0.8	0.2	—
Oilcake and fodder . . . . .	2.2	2.0	1.2	0.8	0.6
<i>Raw materials</i> . . . . .	—	—	19.6	17.1	—
Coal . . . . .	6.4	5.6	6.5	8.0	4.9
Chemicals, drugs and paints . . . . .	1.4	2.0	2.7	2.7	4.8
Petroleum . . . . .	1.7	1.9	2.1	2.8	9.5
<i>Manufactures</i> . . . . .	—	—	47.6	49.4	—
Apparel . . . . .	6.4	7.3	5.5	2.3	0.9
Cotton yarns and manufactures . . . . .	3.0	3.2	3.9	3.7	2.0
Woollen yarns and manufactures . . . . .	2.3	2.6	3.1	3.0	1.1
Other textiles . . . . .	—	2.1	3.1	3.2	7.5
Iron and manufactures . . . . .	3.5	3.7	4.5	5.5	3.9
Other metals and manufactures . . . . .	—	1.5	2.5	1.6	1.8
Machinery . . . . .	1.6	3.0	3.7	7.5	8.8
Vehicles and parts . . . . .	3.4	4.2	4.1	4.4	9.0
Paper and cardboard . . . . .	1.6	1.9	3.0	3.0	3.3
Boots and shoes . . . . .	3.0	2.4	2.4	—	—
<i>Selected countries of supply</i> . . . . .	—	—	—	—	—
United Kingdom . . . . .	81.1	77.4	69.6	50.5	57.1
United States . . . . .	5.4	7.3	4.4	11.4	5.7
Germany . . . . .	1.1	3.0	4.0	3.6	4.1 <sup>5</sup>
Argentina . . . . .	3.3	4.0	3.2	3.4	0.4
Canada . . . . .	2.1	1.7	2.5	3.7	2.0
Belgium . . . . .	—	—	2.3	2.7	2.0
Total value in £m. . . . .	64.6	58.6	40.6	41.4	184.8

## SPECIAL EXPORTS

	Percentages of Total Value.				
	1924.	1926-30.	1931-35.	1938.	1957.
<i>Livestock</i> . . . . .	—	—	45.1	49.6	39.6 <sup>8</sup>
Cattle . . . . .	35.7	30.0	30.8	40.0	35.0
Horses . . . . .	—	5.3	5.1	6.2	2.8
Pigs . . . . .	2.4	4.8	3.2	0.9	—
Sheep . . . . .	3.5	3.1	2.4	2.0	0.8
<i>Foodstuffs</i> . . . . .	—	—	43.4	41.3	31.0
Stout, beer, ale . . . . .	11.9	11.2	18.6	9.2	4.5
Butter . . . . .	8.3	9.7	6.9	9.0	3.6
Eggs . . . . .	6.4	6.8	5.9	4.9	0.2
Bacon . . . . .	6.5	8.6	5.0 <sup>3</sup>	9.2	2.7
Fresh pork . . . . .	2.0	2.8	2.5	0.5	0.2
Poultry (dead) . . . . .	1.7	1.6	2.0	1.8	1.7
<i>Raw materials</i> . . . . .	—	—	4.4	5.2	—
<i>Manufactures</i> . . . . .	—	6.6	0.0	3.7	—
Textiles (including apparel) . . . . .	—	2.2	1.9	0.1	8.8
<i>Chief receiving countries</i> . . . . .	—	—	—	—	—
United Kingdom . . . . .	98.1	95.4	94.4	92.5	78.5
United States . . . . .	0.5	0.5	0.8	0.5	3.1
Total value in £m. . . . .	44.4	43.6	23.4	23.9	127.0

<sup>1</sup> Classes 1931-33. <sup>2</sup> Figures not strictly comparable after 1932, because they exclude hams included in figure for Apparel. <sup>3</sup> Permanent imports. Temporary imports (for racing, etc.) provided another 0.46 per cent. Horses were easily the biggest item in both cases. <sup>4</sup> Western Germany 3.8 per cent. <sup>5</sup> Permanent exports. Temporary exports provided another 3.2 per cent. of the total

Ireland has pre-eminently a climate suited to grassland and dairy farming rather than to the ripening of crops, and the policy of encouraging the growing of food grains has been only partly successful.

The chief Irish ports are Dublin (with Dun Laoghaire), Cork, Waterford, and Limerick.

TOWNS OF THE IRISH REPUBLIC, 1926 AND 1951

		1926	1951			1926	1951
Dublin	. .	317,000	569,000	Waterford	. .	28,600	29,000
Cork	. .	78,000	75,000	Limerick	. .	39,000	51,000

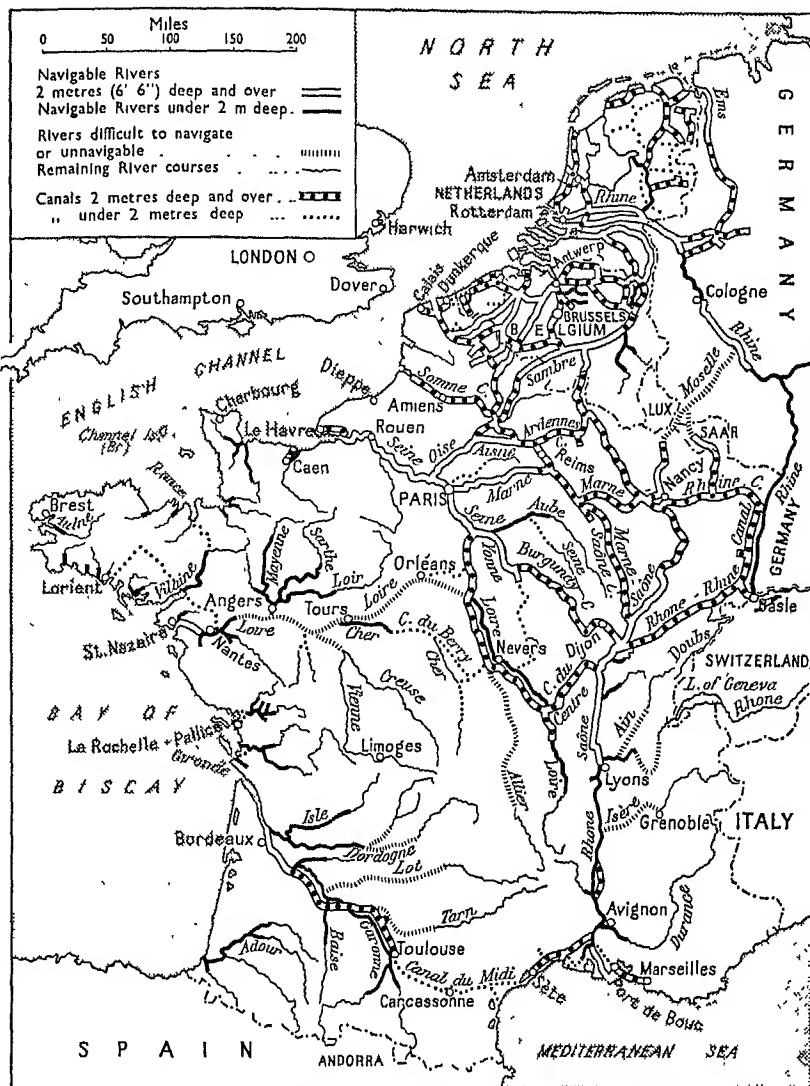
## FRANCE

France (213,000 square miles) is over twice the size of Britain, but has fewer people (43m.). Density averages 200 per square mile against Britain's 550, but distribution is more even.

**Surface.** The greater part of northern France is made up of plains, gently rolling land, or broken hilly country offering little hindrance to communication. Lofty mountains—the Pyrenees (11,000 feet) and the Alps (up to 15,000 feet)—form the land frontier on the south and south-east. The only railway from France across the Alps is the line connecting the valleys of the Isere and the Dora Riparia by means of the earliest of the longer Alpine tunnels, the so-called Mont Cenis tunnel, opened in 1871. A former line from Nice to Cuneo, in Italy, has been unusable since the Second World War. Even the French Jura and the Vosges, in the east, are much higher than any British mountains. The chief highlands within the French frontier are those of the so-called Central Plateau—really the south-centre—averaging from 2,500 to 3,000 feet. On the east they are bordered by the Cevennes, which sink abruptly down to the Rhone valley; farther west they are crowned by the remains of the old volcanoes (the *pays*) of Auvergne; and they are traversed by profound river valleys opening to the north and west. The climate of the surface is bleak and the soil unproductive, but this is partly compensated by the richness of some of the valleys, notably the expansion of the valley of the Allier called the Limagne (around Clermont-Ferrand), which the volcanic dust blown thither by the prevailing south-west winds from the mountains of Auvergne has helped to make one of the most fertile tracts of France. Altogether, the Central Plateau is a sparsely peopled region, but even its most thinly peopled districts are to be compared rather with the less populous parts of Wales and the north of England than with the highlands of Scotland. The level tract between the Adour and the Garonne in the south-west, embracing the maritime dunes of the Landes, contains even less fertile land than the Central Plateau, and here also population is scanty and railways are wide apart. Corsica is highly mountainous, and, like other mountainous islands, has its population chiefly on the coast.

**Rivers and Internal Navigation.** France has over 5,000 miles of navigable waterways against the United Kingdom's 4,600 miles, and their relative importance is much greater than this comparison would suggest. Even the shortest of the great French rivers, the Dordogne, is longer than the Thames; and the Seine (with its tributaries, the Oise, Marne, Aube, and Yonne), the Loire, Dordogne and Garonne, and the Saône, the chief tributary of the Rhone, as well as minor rivers, flow through plains and valleys presenting few obstructions to navigation for the greater part of their courses. The impetuous Rhone, though navigable from Lyons, has its course impeded by sandbanks and other obstructions. A section of the Rhine forms part of the eastern frontier. The importance of the navigation naturally afforded by the rivers is shown by the canal connections between them, especially in north-eastern France. The Marne and Rhine Canal (178 locks), which crosses the northern end of the High Vosges at the height of about 1,100 feet and unites the Rhine navigation to that of the Seine, begins at a point on the Marne about 300 miles above the mouth of the Seine. A branch running north connects it with the Saar navigation, and so with the Saar coal-field. The Burgundy Canal (189 locks), which connects the navigation of the Seine and Rhone by means of the Yonne and Saône, begins on the Yonne at a point about 275 miles above the mouth of the Seine, and ends on the Saône rather more than 300 miles above the mouth of the Rhone. It crosses the Côte d'Or at the height of 1,230 feet, and passes Dijon. The Canal du Centre (69 locks) connects the Loire, about 400 miles from its mouth, with a lower point on the Saône, passing to the north of the Central Plateau at a height of about 1,000 feet at the summit. The Rhone and Rhine Canal (174 locks) quits the Saône near the point of entrance of the Burgundy Canal, and enters the Rhine valley through the opening known as the Burgundy Gate, between the southern end of the Vosges and the western slopes of the Jura. The Canal du Midi (81 locks) connects the Garonne at Toulouse with the Mediterranean at Sète (formerly Cette), traversing at the height of 625 feet the Passage of Naurouze or Gap of Carcassonne, between the Central Plateau and the Pyrenees. Accessible only to barges of 100 tons, it now carries very little traffic. The Marseilles-Rhone Canal, 10 feet deep, opened during the First World War, passes through a tunnel more than  $4\frac{1}{2}$  miles long.

The accompanying map shows the inland waterways of France, distinguishing between first and second class, those of the first class having a minimum depth of  $6\frac{1}{2}$  feet and locks of at least 126 feet in length and 17 feet in width. It makes clear the concentration of first-class inland waterways in north-eastern France, where the flatness of the country favoured canal construction and where there is a large amount of heavy traffic connected with the Belgian system.



FRANCE: INLAND WATERWAYS  
Also the principal navigable waterways of  
BELGIUM AND THE NETHERLANDS



It shows also the rivalry that must exist between the French port of Dunkerque (Dunkirk) and the Belgian port of Antwerp in connection with that traffic. All the north of France east of 4° E. is in fact nearer Antwerp than Dunkirk by water. The important position occupied by Paris in relation to water traffic is also made clear. In 1938 the weight of merchandise entering or leaving the capital by water was 75 per cent. more than that at Marseilles; but in 1956, while the weight discharged and shipped at Paris was unchanged, at Marseilles and Le Havre traffic had more than doubled, giving them both the lead over Paris, which came third.

As regards **climate**, France has all the advantages of a westerly maritime situation, together with a more southerly latitude than the British Isles. The greatest contrasts of climate within a short distance are those between the south-west with its prevalent north-westerly winds of summer, bringing copious summer rains favouring the growth of maize, and the south-east with its typical dry Mediterranean summers, utterly unsuited for maize, but favourable to wine and fruit, as well as wheat. The Provence plain is exposed, especially in winter, to the violent cold northerly wind known as the mistral; the neighbouring Riviera (Nice and Cannes) is not so exposed.

**Crops.** Under one-fifth of the surface of France is occupied by mountains, about a fourth by plateaus. This leaves more than one-half for the lowlands, which, though not everywhere fertile, contain a large proportion of fertile soil. Relative to size, there is no great difference between France and Britain in the extent of cultivated land, counting both arable and pasture, but excluding rough grazing. True comparative figures are hard to determine, but prior to the Second World War France's cultivated area might be put at 76m. acres against Britain's 30m. acres, or about two and a half times as large, whereas the whole country is two and a third times as large. During the war these proportions came to agree still more nearly. But there is this important difference between the farmlands of the two countries: pastures are a much bigger proportion of the cultivated area in Britain than in France, and France has a much bigger proportion of arable land. Apart from the disparity in the acreage of fruitlands, especially vineyards, France's area under corn crops—wheat, oats, barley, rye, and maize—in 1955 was about three times the corresponding area in Great Britain. On the other hand the average yield of the British crops was higher, and France's total production was less than twice that of the United Kingdom.

The corn crops have been listed in the order of their importance in France. Wheat is easily first; it accounts for more than fifty per cent. of the aggregate area and yield of French corn crops. Outside Russia, France is normally the biggest wheat-producing country in Europe. As in this country, production in recent years

has been subject to abnormal fluctuations, due not only to seasonal differences but to war reactions. In general, France may be said to have had four to five times the British area under wheat, and three to four times the production. It should be noted that the French grow wheat for their own consumption all over the country, and not only in the areas most favourable to high yields.

Rye and buckwheat are grown principally on the poorer soils of Brittany and the Central Plateau.

Besides corn-crops France produces all the ordinary British green-crops, potatoes and mangold; the vine still covers, notwithstanding the devastations of the phylloxera, an area approaching that occupied by wheat and barley together in the British Isles; the sugar-beet acreage is about double the British acreage of that crop; and large areas are occupied by olive-groves, mulberry trees, for the rearing of silkworms (less important than formerly), colza, hemp, and flax, while tobacco is likewise a product of no little importance. Of great significance now are 'primeurs,' or early fruits and vegetables, many of which are exported to the United Kingdom.

The leading French **fisheries** are mentioned elsewhere (p. 252). Extensive government subsidies are given for the development of the deep sea fisheries.

The **mineral wealth** of France is of considerable importance. France has several small, and not very productive, coal-fields, scattered over different parts of the country, notably the central region, and one major field in the north of the country. The central fields are farthest from supplies of sea-borne coal and valuable on that account. The northern coal-field is a continuation of that of Belgium, and the chief centres of production are Lens and Anzin. Next in productiveness are those on or near the eastern side of the highlands which border the basins of the Rhone and Saône on the west—round St. Etienne in the middle, round Le Creusot farther north, and at Alès in the south. An extension of the Saar field into Lorraine has some importance. The main French coal-fields have been nationalised; production is between 50 and 60 million tons, and normally imports exceed exports (each a few million tons).

The production of **iron ore** in France has increased remarkably. The principal producing district has long been in the north-east in the basin of the Moselle, near Nancy and Longwy, but the most productive part of that district, with Briey as its centre, was unknown till the eighties of last century, and various difficulties retarded development for some time after the deposits became known. It is necessary to obtain coke from either Germany or Belgium. The ores are phosphorous ores containing from 28 to 40 per cent. of iron and from 8 to 16 per cent. of lime, of the same character in fact as the ores of the neighbouring deposits in the Metz-Thionville basin, which were retransferred from Germany to

France at the Treaty of Versailles. In 1950 Lorraine accounted for 94 per cent. (28m. tons) of the French production of iron ore. (See also under Germany, p. 417.) Other deposits were for long worked near Le Creusot, and more important deposits were later opened up in the west, especially in Normandy, near Caen. There has also been a certain production of Bessemer (non-phosphorous) ores in the eastern Pyrenees. France's total production of iron ore in 1956 was 51·8 m. tons—93 per cent. of it phosphoric.

The potash deposits of Alsace, a little to the north-west of Mulhouse, are next in importance to those of Prussian Saxony. Between the two World Wars, the Alsatian production of crude potash salts rose from 350,000 tons (1913), yielding 65,000 tons of potash, to 3½m. tons (1939). In 1946 the production of crude salts still stood at 3½m. tons (with a yield of 520,000 tons of potash), and in 1948 production of the crude salts rose to nearly 4½m. tons. Just before the Second World War, potash was found near Dax, in south-west France, but the mines in the Dax region are still in the experimental stage, and there are no available statistics of production, which is negligible compared with the quantities mined in Alsace. Total crude potash production in 1956 was over 8½ m. tons ( $K_2O$  content or equivalent, 1·3 m. tons).

Sea-salt is obtained from salt-pans on the western Mediterranean coasts and on the coasts of the Bay of Biscay; rock-salt near Nancy, in the north-east.

Since about the end of last century much has been done to develop what the French call 'white coal,' that is, water-power, which is furnished in great abundance, especially by the Alpine torrents. Before the Second World War, the annual production was nearly 12,000m. kWh., and though it declined somewhat during the war, new and important installations have since led to its increase to 26,000m. kWh. in 1955—rather more than half the total production of electrical power (49,627m. kWh.). The Rhine, Rhone, Isère, Romanche, Drac, Durance, and Dordogne are among the rivers which have been harnessed for power. Apart from domestic uses, electricity is largely used as the motive power on the French railways, as well as for industrial purposes, notably in the electro-chemical industry and electro-metallurgy.

Owing to the dispersal of the French coal-fields, localisation of the great **manufacturing industries** is governed less by the supply of fuel than by the supply of raw material, and the conveniences for obtaining supplies from abroad and marketing the product.

The earliest centre of the iron industry was Le Creusot, which, while the industry was still small, was favourably situated in respect of all the bulky raw materials. It is still noted for the making of machinery, locomotives, and other railway material, as well as other important branches of the iron and steel manufacture, in-

cluding the Schneider armament works now taken over by the government. There are important engineering works at Lille, St. Etienne, and Paris. Since the development of the Briey basin a great iron industry has grown up there; indeed, a great iron and steel industry has developed on the whole of the Lorraine iron-fields. Pig-iron is made from local ores near Caen. In general, the French steel industry made a quick recovery after the Second World War, and had as an early target an annual production of 12½m. tons in 1952-53; in 1955 it was 12·6m. tons.

In 1951 France took the initiative in establishing, in conjunction with Belgium, Germany, Italy, Luxembourg, and the Netherlands, a European Coal and Steel Community which aims at providing a single market for coal and steel in the member states, available to all buyers on the same terms.

Paris, like London, is too large to be specially identified with any particular industry, but is the seat of a large number, more particularly those producing articles of luxury. Jewellery and perfumery, furniture, porcelain, fancy wares, glove-making, and the making of fashionable clothing and footwear are all notable Parisian trades. The manufacture of the celebrated Sèvres porcelain, established as a State industry in 1756 in the historic town from which it derives its name, on the western outskirts of the capital, was transferred in 1876 to the neighbouring Park of St. Cloud. The central position of Paris in the great northern plain of France, just below the junction of the Marne and the Seine, has been in favour of its acquiring and retaining the rank of capital, and it is without a rival in France in trade and population.

The woollen industry is chiefly carried on in the north. Only about 10 per cent. of the wool used in the factories comes from sheep native to the country; the French flocks are no longer important except in the Causses (the limestone plateaus bordering the Cevennes), the southern Alps, and the region of the Pyrenees. The great bulk of the wool for manufacture comes from the Argentine and Australia, through the ports of northern France. In the north also are easily accessible coal supplies, and the seats of the industry are intermediate between two of the most important markets in the world for woollen goods—London and Paris. The great market for raw wool is the Roubaix-Tourcoing area, which vies with the two other leading continental markets for wool—Antwerp and Hamburg. The centres of the French woollen manufacturing industry are, first, the northern area already mentioned, embracing Roubaix, Tourcoing, and Fourmies; then Alsace (Colmar, Sainte Marie aux Mines—the German Markirch—and Bischwiller), followed in descending order of importance by Elbeuf, Louviers, Sedan, Rheims, Vienne, and Mazamet. Carpets are included among the manufactures of Roubaix-Tourcoing. Elbeuf, on the Seine

above Rouen, and Louviers, a little to the south-east, are noted for their woollen (as distinguished from worsted) cloths. In Sedan the woollen industry was early fostered by the sheep-pastures of the Ardennes. Rheims lies beside the sheep-pastures of Champagne, a region similar to the English Downs. Troyes, on the upper Seine, has long been noted as the chief seat of French hosiery.

Mazamet, in the south, specialises in the import of sheep-skins with the wool still attached, coming, for instance, from the Argentine, where the sheep have been slaughtered for their meat. It is perhaps the leading town in the world for the removal of the wool from such skins. Woollen stuffs are woven in the neighbouring factories of Castres and Lodève, and the skins are dressed for leather at other neighbouring places, such as Graulhet.

The advantages for textile manufactures in the extreme north are not confined to woollens. Linen and cotton manufacturing industries are of outstanding importance in Lille, the largest manufacturing town in the district, and in the neighbouring town of Armentières, on the Lys. The linen industry is favoured by the excellent flax produced in the Scarpe and Lys valleys (see p. 391), and by the proximity—across the Belgian frontier—of Courtrai, the great continental market for linen. To the south-east of Lille, on the Escaut, stands Cambrai, which gives its name to cambric and is famed for fine linens.

In the cotton industry the restoration of Alsace to France has given that part of the country once more the leading place. Textile manufactures as a domestic industry had long been carried on in the hamlets of the Vosges valleys, and these supplied much of the labour required under modern conditions. Calico printing was started at Mulhouse as early as 1746, and this led to the establishment of cotton spinning and weaving in which steam power began to be used in 1812. Colmar, Guebwiller, and other places in the neighbourhood, where power afforded by the torrents of the Vosges can be used to supplement steam, are also engaged in the industry. After the transference of Alsace to Germany in 1871, cotton factories were established at Sénonès, St. Dié, Epinal, and other places west of the Vosges; but outside of Alsace the cotton manufacturing towns of Normandy, and above all Rouen, are pre-eminent. Further north the chief centre of the industry is St. Quentin, to the south of Cambrai. Another important centre is Roanne on the Loire.

The silk manufactures still have their chief seats in the valley of the Rhone, where the silkworm was first introduced into France. Lyons, the third town in France in point of population, birthplace of the inventor of the Jacquard loom, is the town whose name is most intimately associated with this industry in all its branches. It lies at the confluence of the Saône and Rhone, partly on the left bank of the latter river, partly on a small alluvial flat between the

two, and immediately overlooked by the hills which skirt the right bank of the Saône. Next in importance to Lyons in connection with this industry is St. Etienne, which supplies Lyons with coal. Both it and Lyons have excellent water for dyeing. The textile industries of the lower Rhone valley, the southern Jura, the Alps, and the upper Loire basin may be regarded as tributary to Lyons.

Limoges, on the Vienne, is noted for its porcelain and earthenware. Both coal and kaolin are obtainable at no great distance, though they lie in different directions from the town. Glass is made on or near the coal-fields of the north and centre, generally in the immediate vicinity of fine sand; paper at Angoulême in the west, and Annonay in the east; watches at Besançon in the Jura, though the chief industry of this last town consists mainly in putting together parts of watches made in the Swiss Jura. The manufacture of kid gloves is carried on in nearly every village within a radius of forty miles of Grenoble in the Alpine valley of the Isère. Strasbourg carries on a variety of manufactures, and is also important as an administrative and commercial centre. The completion in 1907 of works designed to make it a great river port stimulated its industrial activity; and despite the barrier placed between it and its most accessible large market by the change of frontier in 1919, the total traffic continued to grow rapidly. The great centre of the Rhine valley, it is the headquarters of the Council of Europe.

The principal French **seaports** in the order of their importance (by tonnage of traffic) are Marseilles, Le Havre, Cherbourg, Rouen, Bordeaux, Dunkerque, Calais, Dieppe, Port-de-Bouc, Nantes with its outport of St. Nazaire, and La Rochelle with its outport of La Pallice.

The priority of Marseilles, distant as it is from the capital and the great northern seats of industry, is due to the fact of its being the only first-class port on the Mediterranean Sea. The Rhone delta itself is too marshy, the mouth of the Rhone too much encumbered by sandbanks, to afford a favourable situation. Marseilles was founded at the nearest place on the coast with suitable conditions by Greek colonists from Asia Minor as early as 600 B.C. It has been a great seat of commerce and shipping ever since. The Rhone valley, besides being itself rich and productive, affords access not only to the plains of northern France and Belgium through the valleys of the Loire and the Seine tributaries, along the routes indicated by the position of the canals already named, but to the Middle Rhine valley by the Burgundy Gate between the Vosges and the Jura, and to the tableland of Switzerland by way of Geneva through the narrower opening between the Jura and the Alps. The advantage of some of these connections was considerably reduced by the piercing of the Alps by railway tunnels, and especially by the construction of the St. Gotthard tunnel, which gives to

Genoa a shorter route to Antwerp than that from Marseilles; but within France there is no railway route on which the gross receipts per mile are so great as on that from Marseilles to Paris. The position of Marseilles causes its trade to be chiefly with the Mediterranean and the East, and this is one of the ports benefited by the opening of the Suez Canal. Among its chief imports are wine, wheat, oil-seeds, sugar, coffee, hides, silk, pepper, and other Eastern products. Among its local industries may be mentioned particularly the refining of oil and the making of soap, stimulated by the local supplies of olives and the import of olives from Italy and of various oil-seeds from India and the East generally, as well as from Africa. There is also a large manufacture of macaroni from hard wheat imported from Italy. Marseilles is the headquarters of the great steamship company the Messageries Maritimes, which carries on an extensive commerce with the East and the Pacific. Moles are constructed parallel with the coast and connection is made by the Rove canal tunnel with the Etang de Berre, which may now be regarded as an annexe of the port.

Sète, on the west of the Gulf of Lions, has mainly a local importance through being the terminus of the Canal du Midi. At present Marseilles has only Genoa as a rival on the Mediterranean. It was not so in the Middle Ages. Even then Marseilles ranked first, but the ships of Arles on the Rhone were to be seen side by side with those of Marseilles in the most distant parts of the Mediterranean. Narbonne continued to be an important port till the fourteenth century, but in 1320 a breach in the embankment of the Aude caused that river to leave the town, which the Robine branch of the Canal du Midi did not serve to restore. Aiguesmortes, in virtue of a canal connecting it with the sea, was once a great resort of maritime shipping, and lingered on as a seaport till Sète was fixed upon as the eastern terminus of the Canal du Midi, which was opened in 1681. Then the efforts to fight against the deposits of sand and silt (ceaselessly brought by currents with a westerly set to the Languedoc coasts of the Mediterranean) were abandoned, and Aiguesmortes was allowed to fall into decay. The port of Sète requires constant attention to preserve it from the same fate.

The commerce of France on the western and north-western coasts is in the aggregate much greater than that on the Mediterranean, but it is divided among a greater number of large seaports, which are recovering from the damage inflicted on them in the Second World War. Havre, or Le Havre, at the mouth of the Seine, founded in 1509 by Louis XII, has grown to be 'the haven' of Paris since its harbour was extended and improved by his successor Francis I, and since the elder seaport of Harfleur, a little higher up, declined through the silting up of its harbour. It is the chief seat of trade with America, and hence the chief place of import of North American

cotton, tobacco, wheat, animal produce, etc., and of South American coffee, for which it is now the principal European *entrepôt*, a position which is favoured by the possession of a highly organised market, though this again may be regarded as a natural growth at a port which is at once the most favourably situated for supplying one of the largest consuming countries in Europe, and the first touched at on the routes to the other large markets further north. Steps have been taken for large port installations at Honfleur on the south side of the estuary of the Seine. Since 1887 the Tancarville Canal has afforded direct communication between the ports of Havre, Harfleur, and the Seine, thus enabling smaller vessels to avoid the dangerous navigation of the estuary of the Seine. Rouen has since the same date taken away some of the trade of Le Havre; it has been made into a first-class port by the deepening and straightening of the Seine, and vessels drawing as much as 22 feet can lie afloat alongside parts of the quays.

In the north Le Havre has been exposed to the keen rivalry of Dunkerque or Dunkirk, the only French port on the North Sea, a port which before the Second World War was the most rapidly rising of all French ports, in consequence of its being so favourably situated for the supply of the northern manufacturing towns with their imported raw materials (above all, South American wool), and for the export of their manufactured products, including iron, beetroot-sugar, and oils. Its harbour can accommodate vessels up to 600 feet in length with a draught of 30 feet.

Bordeaux, on the Garonne, a little above the place where the estuary of the Gironde is formed by the confluence of the Dordogne, has long been the chief place of export of French wines. For vessels of the largest class it has an outpost in Pauillac, on the left bank of the Gironde. On the same bank of the Gironde, at the very mouth of the estuary, was an up-to-date marine station—Verdon—where big liners could embark or disembark passengers and baggage without the delay of going to Bordeaux; but this was put out of action during the Second World War. La Rochelle, as the outlet of the middle parts of western France, has acquired importance chiefly since the inauguration in 1891, about 3 miles to the west, of its outpost of La Pallice with accommodation for large vessels. St. Nazaire, at the mouth of the Loire, like Pauillac, grew in importance through the introduction of large shipping, and also through the silting up of the Loire at Nantes. It is capable of accommodating ships of the largest size, and is famed for its shipbuilding yards. Here was built, before the Second World War, the then largest steamer in the world, the *Normandie* (p. 94). Nantes, after being almost closed to sea-going vessels, has been restored to the position of a considerable seaport by the construction of a ship canal admitting vessels up to a draught of 22 feet. The Loire below Nantes



has been dredged, so increasing the scour of the river that large vessels can now go up to Nantes. Cherbourg, on the northern peninsula of Normandy, has obvious advantages, similar to those of Southampton, as a calling-place for trans-oceanic steamers.

The five naval stations of France are Cherbourg, nearly opposite Portsmouth; Brest and Lorient, in Brittany; Rochefort, south of La Rochelle; and Toulon, on the Mediterranean. At all of these are government dockyards, and there are private shipbuilding yards at all the chief commercial ports.

Of the inland towns of France not connected with any special industry the most worthy of mention are Toulouse, on the Garonne, at the confluence of the Canal du Midi; Orleans and Tours, on the Loire; Angers, at the confluence of the Mayenne and Sarthe. Dijon and Macon are important centres of the trade in burgundy wine, Rheims and Epernay of that in champagne.

FRENCH TOWNS WITH 100,000 INHABITANTS AT THE 1954 CENSUS

		1936	1954			1936	1954
		Thousands,				Thousands,	
Paris . . .		2,830	2,850 <sup>1</sup>	Nancy . . .		121	125
Marseilles . . .		914	661	Rennes . . .		99	124
Lyons . . .		570	471	Rheims . . .		117	121
Toulouse . . .		213	269	Rouen . . .		123	117
Bordeaux . . .		258	258	Grenoble . . .		96	116
Nice . . .		242	244	Clermont-Ferrand . . .		101	113
Nantes . . .		195	223	Dijon . . .		96	113
Strasbourg . . .		193	201	Le Mans . . .		85	112
Lille . . .		201	195	Brest . . .		79	111
St. Etienne . . .		190	182	Roubaix . . .		107	110
Toulon . . .		150	141	Limoges . . .		95	106
Le Havre . . .		164	140	Angers . . .		88	102

<sup>1</sup> Greater Paris (1959), 7½m.

The industrial development of France after the First World War was rapid and is still the dominant factor in the French economy. Crude materials for industry constitute about half the imports, and more than half the exports are manufactures of one kind and another. As might be expected, agriculture has declined. Before the First World War, 16m. acres were under wheat; in 1956 the figure was 11·1m. Before the Second World War, 7·2m. people were engaged in agricultural operations, forming 36 per cent. of the total active population. In 1954 the number was 5·2m. and the percentage 27.

**Overseas Trade.** The depreciation of the French franc since the First World War makes comparison of the trade returns over a period of years deceptive. In 1956, when the exchange value of the franc (once 25 to the £) stood at 980, special imports (i.e. for home consumption) amounted to 1·9 million million francs (over £1,980m.) and special exports (i.e. of home products) 1·6 million million francs (over £1,600m.). Of the imports, food and drink made up 25 per cent. and manufactures another 25 per cent., while nearly

45 per cent. were non-edible crude materials. On the other hand, manufactures, including machinery, provided about 60 per cent. of the exports, food and drink 15 per cent., and crude materials most of the balance. The chief countries of supply were the United States, Germany, Algeria, the United Kingdom, Belgium-Luxembourg, and French West Africa. The best customers were France's overseas territories and associated states, together with Germany, Belgium-Luxembourg, Switzerland, the United Kingdom, and the United States.

### BELGIUM<sup>1</sup>

The surface of Belgium is made up, in the west and north, of low flat plains, partly below sea-level, succeeded by low undulating land which rises in the south-east to a tableland (the Ardennes) intersected by deep river valleys. Between these two main physical regions, the lowlands and the highlands, lies the long narrow coal-field. The plains afford admirable facilities for inland navigation by both river and canal, and these facilities are continually being improved.

The area (11,780 square miles) is one-eighth that of Britain, the population (9m.) over one-sixth. The high density (764 to the square mile in 1958) is fairly evenly distributed. Only the Province of Luxembourg, in the south-east, on the tableland of the Ardennes, has a density of population low enough to be compared with that of the English county of Hereford. Another district of low but rising density is the Campine, on the north-east—a sandy plain, formerly heathy or marshy, but now partly reclaimed, and rapidly becoming an industrial region centred around a relatively new coal-field. This high density of population is due, as in England, both to advanced agriculture and to the great development of manufacturing industries. Two languages are spoken by the bulk of the population—Flemish (virtually Dutch) by those living north of a line drawn from the south of the province of West Flanders to the north of that of Liège, French (Walloon) by those south of the line.

Sixty per cent. of the land is cultivated—a third under crops, a quarter in pastures. The chief crops are wheat, oats, barley, rye, sugar beet, potatoes. Industrial crops such as tobacco, flax, hops, and chicory are highly characteristic of some areas, particularly Flanders. Flax is mainly grown in the basin of the Lys, a tributary of the Escaut (Scheldt), and the excellent linen obtained from it has long been held to be due to the remarkably soft water of that river, which is well suited to cleansing and retting the fibre.

<sup>1</sup> Thanks are due to Professor K. C. Edwards for comments on the Benelux countries—Belgium, Netherlands, and Luxembourg.

The centre of this trade is Courtrai. Forests, amounting to 18 per cent. of the surface, occur chiefly in the Ardennes.

At the last agricultural census of Belgium 36 per cent. of the surface in cultivation was cultivated by the owners themselves. Most of the landed properties are small, but small farming is even more general than small property-holding, the size of the majority of the holdings being about as small as those on the plains of Bengal. Productivity per acre is very high, but except in the rich polders or embanked areas, reclaimed from the sea, this is not due to natural fertility so much as to centuries of careful, intensive tillage and manuring. There has been a big increase in cattle.

The mineral wealth of Belgium consists chiefly in coal. The coal-fields fall into two main divisions. The more extensive occupies the valleys which intersect the Belgian plateau from the eastern frontier near Aachen (Aix-la-Chapelle) to about the middle of the Franco-Belgian frontier, the principal valleys in this respect being those of the Sambre and that part of the Meuse valley which continues the line of the valley of the Sambre. Geologically, this strip is formed by a series of carboniferous strata lying on the north-western margin of a Devonian plateau which extends eastwards into Germany. There are important areas of production round Mons (the Borinage district), Charleroi, Liège, and in between these cities; altogether the production of coal in the division averaged nearly 23m. tons in 1936-38, and was over 20m. tons in 1952. The other main division of the Belgian coal-fields is in the Campine, ranging westwards from Dutch Limburg to near Antwerp, through a length of about 50 miles with a width of about 7 to 12 miles. Production, which began in 1917, increased to an average of 6½m. tons a year in 1936-38, and nearly 10m. tons in 1952. The chief mining centre is Genck, around which are seven collieries. Much of the coal is 'long flame,' well adapted for use in glass and pottery making.

It will be seen that Belgium's total production of coal averaged 29m. tons in 1936-38; in 1956 it amounted to 29.1m tons. Relative to the size of the two countries, this is comparable with the British output and is a measure of the importance of coal in the Belgian economy. But Belgium has no other minerals of large importance. Former deposits of zinc have been exhausted; deposits of lead are negligible. Despite this, important non-ferrous metal industries still flourish, using Congo and other ores. Some iron ore is produced in the Belgian Lorraine field, but 98 per cent. of the ore used by the iron and steel industry is imported—chiefly from France, but also from Sweden, Algeria, and Spain. Excellent glass sands are found, especially in the Campine and around Charleroi. Among other mineral resources are brick and pottery clays (notably around Boom, on the Rupel, between Brussels and Antwerp)

and various stone quarries, including marble. Belgium is an original member of the European Coal and Steel Community (p. 385).

Manufactures are numerous and varied. It is a moot point whether the textile industries or the heavy industries are the more important. Cotton, woollen, and linen yarns and fabrics figure largely among the exports. The woollen industry owed its origins to the sheep pastures of the Ardennes and has since been fostered by the large supplies of wool from the River Plate; linen manufactures are still benefited by the natural advantages, already noted, which Belgium offers for flax-growing. The spinning and weaving of linen are carried on chiefly at Ghent, Tournai, Courtrai, and other western towns (in Flanders) in or near the flax-growing region; but the linens of Courtrai are not made entirely from the fine fibre of native production, but from coarser material formerly imported from Russia, and now mainly from France and Holland. The town most noted for its woollen cloth is Verviers, which lies close to the Ardennes and the coal supplies of Liège; formerly the River Vesdre provided power, and is still a source of soft, lime-free water. Ghent is the centre of the cotton manufactures. Brussels, the capital of the country, has numerous industries, but is not specially a manufacturing town, though it may be mentioned here on account of its lace. The sixteenth-century Willebroeck Canal has been so far improved as to allow of small sea-going vessels and 2,000-ton river barges reaching Brussels.

Verviers presents a remarkable instance of the persistence of an old industry, its woollens having been noted as far back as 1432. It also exports very large quantities of woollen yarn, or a hybrid between woollen and worsted yarn, and of washed wool, the last branch of the industry being due to a local advantage turned to account by science and common sense. A committee having ascertained that the presence of lime in water is prejudicial to the scouring of wool, an abundant supply of water free from lime was obtained by building a dam across a small stream in the neighbourhood which flows over slate and sandstone.

First in importance among the 'heavy' industries are the making of steel and of machinery. These are localised chiefly around La Louvière, Charleroi, and Liège (with its suburb of Seraing). The situation of Liège is highly characteristic of the eastern towns of Belgium generally. The antiquity of the place is shown by the fact of its having been known to the Romans under the name of *Lugdunum Batavorum*, and during its whole history it has been an important centre of trade. For centuries it has been famous for the manufacture of firearms. It lies, like Namur, Verviers, Huy, and other important towns in the east of Belgium, in a narrow valley of the south-eastern plateau; but it lies at an important nodal point. At Liège the valley of the Meuse begins to open out so as

to afford free communication in various directions towards the west and north; the valley of the Ourthe, which here joins the Meuse, opens a way to the south through Belgian Luxembourg; and the valley of the Vesdre, which joins the Ourthe just above its confluence with the Meuse, leads eastwards by way of Verviers and Aix-la-Chapelle into Germany. The position of Liège may be compared with that of Manchester and Leeds—all the more nowadays when the neighbouring supplies of coal are so important.

Other important industries include glass, chemicals, electrical engineering, paper, rubber, leather, building materials, and diamond-cutting.

Although Belgium was the second European country, after Great Britain, to become industrialised, the tradition of hand labour remained strong until near the end of the nineteenth century, especially in textiles. As late as 1896, in cotton and woollen weaving, 46 per cent. of all employees worked on hand looms, and in linen, 61 per cent. In the present century, mechanisation and modernisation have proceeded apace, especially during the reconstruction period after the devastations of the 1914–18 war. To-day, Belgium is one of the most highly industrialised countries in the world, with about half her occupied population engaged in industry—four times as many as in agriculture. Her prosperity, like that of the United Kingdom, depends essentially on the import of large quantities of raw materials, and the export of manufactures.

An important factor in the further development of Belgian commerce is the economic union of the Low Countries now in force. Belgium and the Grand Duchy of Luxembourg entered into such a union in between the two World Wars, and in 1944 they signed an agreement with the Netherlands Government to work out an economic union of the three countries. From their names has been coined the popular designation Benelux (Be-ne-lux). As a first step their Customs tariffs were unified in 1948, and Customs duties on the trade between them were abolished, though import licensing remained. A treaty confirming Benelux economic union was signed at The Hague by the Prime Ministers of all three countries on February 3, 1958. Apart from the direct benefit to trade, two examples of the effect of this development on commercial relations may be noted. In the past there has been great trade rivalry between Antwerp and Rotterdam. Under Benelux a joint committee has been set up to regulate port rivalry. From the Belgian standpoint, it has been a weakness of Antwerp's position that the lower course of the Scheldt is bounded on both sides by Dutch territory. Benelux will largely do away with that weakness by guaranteeing a policy of co-operative trade enterprise.

For the distribution of the products of its industry, and the reception of products of other countries, few countries on the Euro-

pean mainland have greater natural advantages than Belgium. The flatness of a large part of the country long ago permitted light railways, making use of the roads, to be an important auxiliary in inland transport. On the land side, Belgium lies close to some of the most populous parts of the surrounding countries, and in Antwerp it possesses a seaport vying in situation with that of London.

Like London, Antwerp lies on a tidal river, the Scheldt, at the head of a deep estuary. It stands on the right bank of the river, 55 miles from the sea. It has the advantage over London of having a much more extensive and capacious system of inland navigation subsidiary to its transmarine commerce. It is connected by first-class waterways with the Meuse, Seine, and Rhine, this last being reached by the channels between and across the islands of Zeeland. Thus the port has a large share in the transit trade of Belgium. A scheme, long advocated, for a more direct water route to the Rhine has been partly realised in the Albert Canal, almost complete just before the Second World War. This canal runs from Antwerp east to Herentals, thence near Genck, in the Campine coal-field, and near Maastricht, in the Meuse valley, to Liège, which is now accessible to 2,000-ton barges. Proposals have been made to continue the canal eastwards from Maastricht to the Rhine *via* München Gladbach, or *via* Aachen.

Being the nearest great port to the principal manufacturing region of Germany, Antwerp is also the chief outlet for that region for goods requiring railway transport, and this fact has greatly contributed to the modern development of the port. In 1887 the tonnage of the shipping entering from the sea was under 4m.; in 1913 above 14m., in 1938 nearly 24m., in 1948, despite the effects of the Second World War, nearly 21m., in 1956, 38m. There are close on 30 miles of quays and 1,000 acres of docks (water area). The port is admirably provided with handling apparatus, including floating pneumatic corn elevators, each capable of transshipping 200 tons of corn per hour into lighters.

Ghent, at the confluence of the Lys and Scheldt, was made a seaport in the modern sense in 1886 by means of a ship canal from the estuary of the Scheldt at Terneuzen, admitting vessels of 2,500 tons burden ( $17\frac{1}{2}$  feet draught). Further deepening to nearly 29 feet has made it accessible to vessels of 10,000 tons at the present time. Ostend, which lies amongst the dunes on the west coast, is the only other Belgian seaport of importance; but Bruges, one of the older rivals of Antwerp, did not benefit as much as was hoped from the opening, in 1900, of a canal to the sea with a depth of 26 feet 3 inches. Its outport, Zeebrugge, with a large artificial harbour, achieved an unexpected importance during the First World War, and is the eastern terminus of the important Harwich-Zeebrugge

train ferry (for cargo only) which handles large quantities of perishable food imports and manufactures bound for Britain.

**Overseas Trade.** As a result of their Customs Union, Belgium and Luxembourg constitute a trade unit. In 1956, when the Belgian franc had an exchange value of 140 to the £, special imports into Belgium-Luxembourg were valued at 163,624m. francs (£1,169m.) and special exports from the two countries at 158,120m. francs (£1,129m.). Non-edible crude materials, including mineral fuels, accounted for 33 per cent. of the imports, manufactures, including machinery, 45 per cent., and food and drink 14 per cent. Manufactures, including machinery, accounted for three-fourths of the exports; crude materials and mineral fuels for half the remainder. Food and drink constituted only 4 per cent. of the exports. The leading countries of supply were Western Germany, the Netherlands, the United States, France, the United Kingdom, and the Belgian Congo. Exports were consigned mostly to the Netherlands, France, Western Germany, the United States, the United Kingdom, the Belgian Congo, Sweden and Switzerland. In both cases the countries named accounted for over two-thirds of the trade, and are listed in descending order of value.

**Towns.** The official population of the Belgian town is the population of the commune, which in general is a fair indication of the size, most of the towns being provincial centres set in rural districts. Linked on to the original commune in some cases are other communes, forming 'agglomerations'—notably Brussels, Antwerp, Liège and Ghent. Charleroi, mining centre and seat of metallurgical industry, has spread until its own small commune is the centre of an industrial population of over a quarter of a million. In the following list, the five largest towns are agglomerations; the others, single communes.

#### PRINCIPAL TOWNS, CENSUS 1947

Brussels . . . .	920,000	Ostend . . . .	50,000
Antwerp . . . .	477,000	St. Nicholas . . . .	44,000
Charleroi . . . .	254,000	Seraing . . . .	42,000
Liège . . . .	247,000	Verviers . . . .	41,000
Ghent . . . .	217,000	Courtrai . . . .	40,000
Malines . . . .		Louvain . . . .	37,000
(Mechlin) . . . .	60,000	Tournai . . . .	33,000
Bruges . . . .	53,000	Namur . . . .	31,000

## GRAND-DUCHY OF LUXEMBOURG

This is a small independent State, about 1,000 square miles in extent, wedged in between Belgium, France, and the Rhineland-Palatinate. It consists mainly of high ground deeply furrowed by narrow valleys. Small as it is, it has a high degree of economic importance, from the fact that it has in the south large and workable deposits of iron ore, immediately adjoining similar deposits in France. In 1955 the production of iron ore was over 7m. tons, of pig iron 3m. tons, and of steel 3·2m. tons. Some 22,000 of the 300,000 inhabitants are employed in the mining and metallurgical industries. Many more—about one-third of the total—are engaged in agriculture. The principal crops are wheat, oats and potatoes, and the most numerous livestock are cattle and pigs.

The present boundaries and political independence of the ancient dukedom date from 1839.

After the First World War a referendum showed a large majority in favour of economic union with France, but the magnates of the French iron and steel industry, dreading the competition of the cheaper labour of Luxembourg, protested against this proposal so strongly that it was abandoned in favour of the alternative: economic union with Belgium. This was negotiated for a period of 50 years, dating from May 1, 1922, when the customs barrier between the two countries was withdrawn. Full economic union followed in 1935. The Second World War brought about a further development, Luxembourg becoming, as from January 1, 1948, a member of the Benelux (Belgium-Netherlands-Luxembourg) Customs Union, designed to promote, by stages, the complete economic unity of the three countries—a consummation reached by treaty in 1958 (see p. 394). It has also joined the European Coal and Steel Community (Schuman Plan).

Luxembourg currency has parity with that of Belgium.

The city of Luxembourg (68,000 in 1956) is the capital, and Esch-sur-Alzette (28,000)—in the iron and steel district—is the only other town with over 20,000 inhabitants.



## THE NETHERLANDS (HOLLAND)

The kingdom of the Netherlands, lying to the north of Belgium, is an industrial, agricultural, and commercial country. A little larger than Belgium, it is no less densely populated; with a land area of over 13,500 square miles, it has eleven million inhabitants. Unlike Belgium, it has no highland region, and until the present century its mineral production was of little account. But the output of the Limburg coal-field—an extension of the Campine coal-field of north-east Belgium—has become important, and still more recently there has been a big production of mineral oil and salt. Particulars of these developments will be given in connection with the growth of manufacturing industry.

In the eastern provinces of Drenthe, Overijssel, and Gelderland, a large part of the surface is sandy heathland, which considerably reduces the area available for crops and pasture. The whole extent of land capable of being so utilised is reckoned to be two-thirds of the entire area; also it should be noted that much of the agricultural region is of very exceptional fertility. This is especially the case with those parts, chiefly in the provinces of Zeeland and Holland proper, which lie below the level of the sea and have been regained from the sea by centuries of labour. From the nature of the case these tracts can have no natural drainage, and there are other extensive areas which, though above sea-level, yet lie so low that they cannot be drained by ordinary means. Hence *polders*—that is, enclosures surrounded by dykes or embankments and provided with pumping machinery—form the characteristic scenery of the most populous parts of the country. Only some of the higher polders have semi-natural drainage into canals.

The soil of such areas is naturally moist and is of a quality which yields rich pasture grasses. Cattle (both beef and dairy cattle) are especially numerous (3m. in 1956)—about as many as the total of horses, sheep, and pigs. The numbers of all kinds of livestock were depleted during the German occupation in the Second World War, but by 1950 the numbers had been restored, and not only was the production of butter, cheese, condensed and dried milk (434,000 tons) 9 per cent. above the pre-war average, but the exports of these products, which before the war had been nearly

three-fourths of the total production, were the same fraction of the post-war total. There was also a remarkable revival in the exports of potatoes and other vegetables, flower seeds and bulbs, which flourish in the light soils around Haarlem. In the absence of further setbacks, the future should witness the continued and even more rapid increase of pre-war commercial development, in which large imports of fertilisers and fodder helped to provide such bountiful returns that, as well as the high proportion of animal products already noted as available for export, the export trade included nine-tenths of the supply of bulbs, &c., and half the yield of vegetables, the trade in potatoes being particularly notable. On the other hand, the production of cereals is inadequate for home needs; enough or nearly enough rye and oats is grown, but large quantities of wheat and barley are imported. Sugar-beet is a flourishing crop, yielding per acre much above the general European return, and since the war production has not only caught up with the pre-war average but increased it by 50 to 100 per cent., with crops ranging up to 3m. tons.

An outstanding development of the present century has been the reclamation of the Zuiderzee. After being repeatedly proposed, the scheme was finally adopted by the government at the close of the First World War. In 1927-32 a dam was built between North Holland and Friesland, shutting off the Zuiderzee from the North Sea and turning it into a fresh-water lake—the present IJsselmeer (*meer*=lake). This mammoth dam, the *Afsbeitsdijk*, is 20 miles long and 100 yards wide, with a road at the top 100 feet wide, and it rises 21 feet above sea-level, or about 10 feet above high-water mark in stormy weather. Twenty-five sluices provide an outlet for the surplus waters of the lake, which is kept at about sea-level, and large locks enable ships to pass between the lake and the sea.

The full scheme contemplates the drainage of four polders, lying below sea-level and protected by dykes, with a total area of over half a million acres. The first, Wieringermeer, comprising nearly 50,000 acres attached to North Holland, was completed and settled before the Second World War. It was flooded by the Germans in 1945, but has again been reclaimed. The other three, namely the north-east polder of close on 120,000 acres (completed during the German occupation), and the south-east and south-west polders together covering some 375,000 acres, will form a twelfth province of the Netherlands, with an area of nearly half a million acres (over 750 square miles). What is left of the old Zuiderzee, the IJssel Lake, has an area of nearly 300,000 acres (over 460 square miles).

**Manufacturing industry** plays a great and growing part in the economic development of the Netherlands. It was hampered for some time after the Industrial Revolution by the dearth of minerals, but this handicap has been reduced by the opening up of the Lim-

burg coal-field. The seams are thin, steeply inclined, and situated at great depths, but intensive mechanisation increased the output from 1.5m. tons in 1909 to 13.4m. tons in 1938, and though there was a drop during the German occupation to 5.1m. tons in 1945, production increased again after the war and was all but 11½m. tons in 1956. Strikes of mineral oil in 1943 (Schoonebeek field, province of Drenthe) and again in the 'fifties in Western Netherlands, made a valuable addition to the natural resources of the country; already in 1956, before the latest developments, the production of crude petroleum was over a million tons. The exploitation of big salt deposits at Boekelo, in the province of Overijssel, has benefited both industry and commerce. A considerable proportion of the post-war production, which amounted to 616,000 tons in 1956, is exported; some of the rest is refined for table use, and some converted by electrolysis into caustic soda for the rayon and soap industries, while the chlorine gas liberated in the process is used in the manufacture of plastics and insecticides.

These mineral developments have given a big impetus to manufacturing industry in general, which has become the leading occupation in the Netherlands, employing about 50 per cent. of the occupied population. Cotton, linen, and woollen industries have long been pursued. Certain of the cotton and linen manufacturing towns in the country—Enschede, Almelo, Hengelo, &c.—are situated in the province of Overijssel, where the cotton industry was established in a thinly peopled district before the close of the eighteenth century; in more recent times the industry has profited by the large market of the Netherlands East Indies (now the Republic of Indonesia, which expelled the Dutch in 1957). Tilburg is the seat of the Dutch woollen industry, Eindhoven of the specialised linen industry (famed for artistic damasks). The latter town is the seat of the great radio and electric lamp factories of Philips, whose ramifications include large works at Hilversum. Utrecht is famed for its engineering and chemical works. The rayon industry has been established at Ede, Arnhem, and Breda. Delft still retains the manufactures of earthenware for which it has long been famous. Iron and steel industries have come to the fore. In 1924 a large up-to-date blast-furnace plant was started at IJmuiden, steel mills were added in 1939 and a big export trade has since developed. Near Utrecht are other steel works with electric furnaces. The production of electricity throughout the country in 1955 amounted to 11,188m. kWh. The Netherlands is one of the half-dozen original members of the European Coal and Steel Community—outcome of the Schuman Plan (p. 385).

**Shipbuilding** is carried on at the mouths of the Rhine and Maas (Meuse), and in 1956 Holland ranked fifth among the countries of the world in respect of new tonnage launched. It is noted for

been built up again. It is the natural port of the Rhine and the Rhine valley, and has greatly benefited by the improvements in the navigation of the Rhine above the Dutch frontier, which make it pre-eminently the port of the Rhine basin for bulky cargoes such as grain and oils. For grain it has not only nine elevators on the quays but no fewer than 26 floating elevators; while the oil storage tanks can take a million tons of mineral oils and a quarter of a million tons of edible oils.

The development of subsidiary ports along the New Waterway should be noted. Vlaardingen, on the north bank, opposite the Petroleum Harbour, has grown from an insignificant fishing village to a progressive modern port, with a population of some 60,000, which claims to have the largest unloading cranes and bridges in the world. The ocean terminus of the New Waterway, the Hook of Holland (*Hoek van Holland*), has been since 1892 an important nodal point of continental passenger traffic with Great Britain, *via* Harwich.

Amsterdam, which ranks next to Rotterdam among the ports of the Netherlands, and takes precedence over it in size of population, is on the IJ, at the south-west angle of the old Zuiderzee, now the IJssel Lake. Always difficult of access on that side for large ships, its distinction as a port depends on the North Sea Canal which links it up with IJmuiden, on the North Sea coast. This canal, which was completed in 1876, is 15 miles long and has been dredged to a depth of some 42 feet; it is notable for the size of its locks. Previously Amsterdam had been linked by the North Holland Canal with Helder, at the entrance to the Zuiderzee; and later, in 1892, the Merwede Canal (10½ feet deep) was opened, to the Lek and Gorinchem (Gorkum) on the Waal, so connecting Amsterdam with the Rhine. An improved channel was opened in 1952.

A port of growing importance and already considerable development is Dordrecht, to the south-east of Rotterdam, amid the maze of confusing and confusingly named waterways into which the lower courses of the Rhine and the Maas unite and divide. Flushing (Vlissingen) is important not only as a port of entry for passenger traffic but as a shipbuilding centre. While it was cut off from the mainland by the channels between the islands of Walcheren and South Beveland, and between South Beveland and the mainland province of North Brabant, it was of comparatively small account, but since these channels have been crossed by massive embankments carrying a main line of railway connecting with the northern parts of Central Europe, Flushing has come to rival Ostend for postal and express traffic of high value in proportion to its bulk.

Zaandam, to the north-west of Amsterdam, on the Zaan river, connected with both the North Sea Canal and the North Holland Canal, is the port for a highly industrialised region with large saw mills, oil mills, &c.

Playing a prominent part in coastal shipping are Delfzijl, in the extreme north-east of the Netherlands, facing Emden across the mouth of the Ems; and Harlingen, in the extreme north-west, over against the West Friesian Islands. Though primarily interested in coastal services, both these ports share in overseas shipping.

**Overseas Trade.** The overseas trade of the Netherlands has been affected not only by the Second World War but by the subsequent grant of independence to the Netherlands East Indies as the Republic of Indonesia (see p. 599) and the prolonged dislocation of industry and trade within the republic. The Dutch guilder, or florin, has lost little in value in relation to the £; equivalent before the war to nearly 2s. 6d., it is still worth nearly 2s. Special imports in 1956 were valued at Fl. 14,105m. (£1,325m.), and special exports at Fl. 10,874m. (£1,022m.). Of the imports, food and drink accounted for 14 per cent., inedible crude materials, including mineral fuels, 30 per cent., and manufactures, including machinery, nearly 50 per cent. In view of what has been said earlier about production in the Netherlands, it is not surprising that food and drink provided 30 per cent. of the exports and manufactures, including machinery, 40 per cent., while crude products, including mineral fuels, amounted to 20 per cent. The chief contributors of imports were, in descending order of value, Belgium-Luxembourg, Western Germany, the United States, the United Kingdom, France and Sweden, which between them provided two-thirds of the total. Exports were consigned mostly (nearly two-thirds) to the same countries, in slightly different order—Western Germany, Belgium-Luxembourg, United Kingdom, United States, France and Sweden.

As will be seen from the appended list of towns with populations of over 100,000, Amsterdam, Rotterdam, and The Hague easily top the list, the first with well over  $\frac{3}{4}$ m. and each of the other two with between  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. and  $\frac{3}{4}$ m. Amsterdam is regarded as the commercial capital of the country, but The Hague (in Dutch *Den Haag* or *'s Gravenhage*) is the seat of the Court and of the Dutch legislature, as well as of the International Court of Justice. Its growth is largely due to its attractions as a residential city.

Nine other towns in 1956 had a population of over 100,000, a number which, in so small a country, is significant both of the density of the population and of the industrial development.

TOWNS WITH ESTIMATED POPULATION OF OVER 100,000 ON JANUARY 1, 1956

Amsterdam . . . . .	868,579	Groningen . . . . .	142,249
Rotterdam . . . . .	718,509	Tilburg . . . . .	130,079
The Hague . . . . .	603,987	Nijmegen . . . . .	120,678
Utrecht . . . . .	246,095	Arnhem . . . . .	118,292
Haarlem . . . . .	166,764	Enschede . . . . .	117,346
Eindhoven . . . . .	154,604	Breda . . . . .	100,114

## GERMANY

Before the Second World War, Germany had an area of about 182,000 square miles and a population of 69m. After the war, the northern part of East Prussia was taken over by Russia, and the territories east of the Oder and Neisse rivers, including the ports of Stettin (Szczecin) and Swinemünde (Swinoujście), were placed under Polish administration pending a definite settlement by peace treaty. The rest of Germany was divided into four Occupation Zones, administered by the United States, the United Kingdom, France, and the Soviet Union.

In 1949, the territories of the American, British, and French Zones, comprising nearly 95,000 square miles with a present (1956) population of 50.6m.—little larger, that is, than Great Britain in either area or population—were united to form the Federal Republic of Germany (commonly known as Western Germany), with Bonn as the seat of government. In the same year the German Democratic Republic (Eastern Germany) was constituted in the Soviet Zone (about 41,500 square miles; population 1956, 16.5m.).

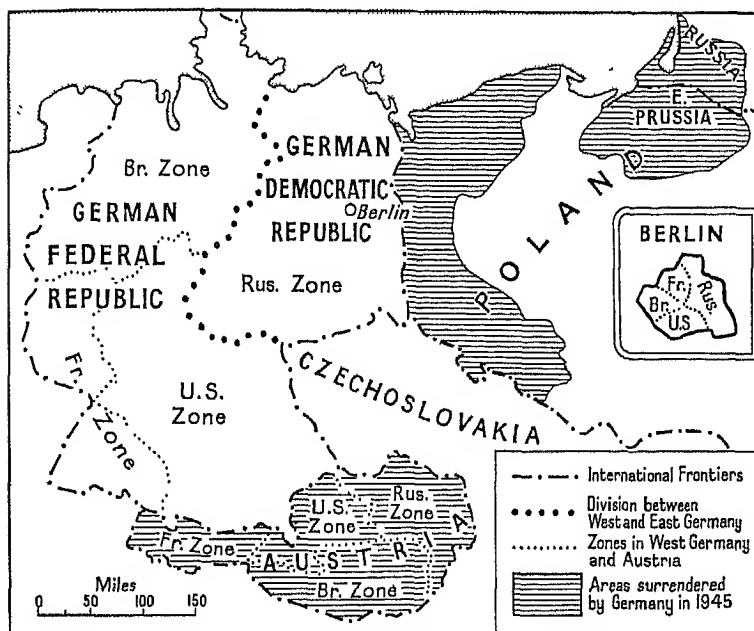
Berlin constitutes a separate territory of over 340 square miles (population 3½m.), forming an enclave in the Soviet Zone. It is divided into four Sectors (British, American, French and Russian), falling into two groups—Eastern Berlin (the Soviet Sector) and Western Berlin (the Sectors of the three Western Powers).

In May 1955, the Western Powers restored the sovereign independence of Western Germany, made arrangements for its joint defence, and admitted it to Western post-war pacts.

In November 1958 the Soviet Union announced its intention to transfer its functions in Berlin to the Democratic Republic and invited the three Western Powers to do the same. The rejection by the Western Powers of this proposal led to an international crisis, but tension was relieved by provisional agreement that diplomatic discussion might be followed by a 'Summit Conference' between the heads of the governments concerned.

**Political Development.** After the disintegration of the Holy Roman Empire in 1806 Germany emerged from the Napoleonic wars as a curious medley of 39 independent states—35 monarchies and 4 republican free cities. They formed the loose 'German Federation' (*Deutscher Bund*), as constituted by the Vienna Congress of 1815. Trade and economics were at a low ebb, and the countries of the federation were hemmed in from all sides by internal and external customs and excise tariffs, so that a crop failure caused by abnormally bad weather conditions in 1816 brought about a famine

in the following winter. From then onward a gradual lifting of the internal barriers resulted in the economic—and with it the political—unification of Germany. The first step in this direction was the abolition of all internal duties within the kingdom of Prussia, effective from January 1, 1819. As Prussia comprised about one-third of the territory of the German Federation, it formed an economic unit which was bound to affect the economies of the adjacent states. Trade found transportation cheaper on Prussian territory, and began to prefer the Prussian means of communication.



POST-WAR GERMANY IN 1953.

The south German states of Bavaria and Württemberg sought to counterbalance this development by forming a Southern Union (*Süddeutscher Zollverein*) in 1828, while in the same year the Grand-Duchy of Hesse-Darmstadt entered a union with Prussia (*Norddeutscher Zollverein*); these two unions, by mutual agreement, then brought their fiscal systems into harmony.

January 1, 1834, marks the beginning of modern Germany. At this date the two unions merged (*Deutscher Zollverein*), and Saxony and the Thuringian states joined it. Thus the greater part of the German states enjoyed economic union, and the other states had to join sooner or later if they did not want to incur serious

economic isolation. Of the larger states, Baden joined in 1835, Nassau and the free city of Frankfurt in 1836, Hanover in 1851, and Schleswig-Holstein in 1866, while Austria stood aside. The incompatibility of Prussian and Austrian interests was responsible for the dissolution of the 'German Federation' of 1815 and the formation in 1866, under Prussian auspices, of the smaller 'North German Confederation' without Austria. Out of this confederation grew, after the Franco-Prussian War of 1870-71, the German Empire, a federal monarchy. But the economic borders did not yet coincide with the political. The Free Cities of Hamburg and Bremen did not join the Customs Union until 1888, whereas Luxembourg, while politically independent and neutralised under the Treaty of London of 1866, was part of it until 1922, when it entered an economic union with Belgium. In 1891 two Austrian communities in the Alps, only accessible from Bavaria, were incorporated in the Customs Union. On the other hand, two very small villages on the Swiss border, the free port areas of Hamburg and Bremen, and the island of Heligoland remain outside the Union up to the present day. After the First World War, as an economic compensation for war losses, the Saar territory was made part of the French economic system for 15 years. It was re-united with Germany by plebiscite supervised by the League of Nations in 1935, but again passed under French control for a time after the Second World War (see p. 426).

The economic body was dismembered at the end of the Second World War, as already noted. The partition into four Occupation Zones resulted, for a time, in the stagnation of economic life. The federation of the British, French, and American Zones as a single political unit (Western Germany) relieved the situation to some extent; but Western Germany and Eastern Germany (Russian Zone) are practically separated by the occupation borders, across which the exchange of goods, payments, and persons is restricted to a minimum.

**Surface Features.** Geographically, Germany consists of three distinct parts: the northern lowlands, the central mountains, and the southern plateaus and basins. The north German lowlands, bordering on the North and Baltic Seas, comprise vast plains little above sea-level near the North Sea, and low hills farther inland or near the Baltic coast, where the country was covered by the great ice drift. Each stage in the retreat of the ice was marked by the formation of a great east-west depression, cut out by the masses of water melting from the ice sheet and flowing parallel to its edge. These primeval valleys ('*Urstromtäler*'), only partly used by present-day rivers, form the basis of the well developed system of inland waterways in northern Germany.

The soils of northern Germany vary greatly in quality and economic value. The most fertile are the soils of the reclaimed



lowlands along the North Sea coast, consisting of clay and loam, and the loess soils which cover a continuous strip of land, widening from west to east, at the foot of the central German mountains, from the region of the lower Rhine in the west to Breslau and Oppeln in Silesia (now Poland) in the east. The primeval valleys consist of sandy soil which in places is blown together into sand dunes and mostly covered by vast pine forests. In the north-west, large peat bogs form a bleak and desolate landscape, but even here land reclamation has gone a long way towards improving the countryside.

The central German mountains rise rather abruptly, and form a region distinct from both the lowlands in the north and the plateaus and basins in the south. They stretch from the Belgian and Luxembourg borders in the west to the Czech frontier in the east, where they give way to the mountains flanking the Bohemian basin. The rock formations vary from granites, basalts, and metamorphic schists to limestones, sandstones, and coal beds. The northern front of the mountains does not form a straight line, but is broken by three deep indentations or bays. Thus the Rhenish Bay penetrates deeply into the Rhenish Massif, the Westphalian Bay between the Rhenish Massif and the Weser Mountains, and the Thuringian Bay between the Harz Mountains and the Thuringian Forest. On the other hand, the Teutoburg Forest and the Harz jut far out into the northern lowlands. Within this mountain belt an ever-changing variety of plateaus and rounded hills, of basins, rift valleys, and river gorges is to be found; the heights are covered with forests (from which many places derive their names) or heaths, and the basins provide the cultivable land.

The southern front of the mountain belt is in places clearly marked by fault lines (Hunsrück, Taunus, Thuringian Forest), in places obliterated by transverse faulting or cut by rivers. Here are the great gaps through which northern and southern Germany are connected by rail, road, river, and canal.

Southern Germany is composed of numerous plateaus and basins suspended between the high mountain ridges of the Black Forest (4,500 feet) in the south-west and the Bohemian Forest (4,400 feet) in the east. The great rift valley of the Upper Rhine cuts southern Germany into two unequal parts, so that the country rises in steps from a point near Mainz to the south-west and south-east respectively. These steps are marked by long escarpments, such as the Haardt Mountains and the Saar escarpment to the west of the Rhine, Odenwald, Steigerwald, and the Alb plateaus to the east. South of the Danube, between the Lake of Constance and the River Inn, another landscape begins—the Alpine Foreland. High plateaus, mostly above 1,500 feet, are covered by glacial deposits, *i.e.* gravel beds, loams, and loess. The southern parts of the plateaus

are covered by glacial drift, which forms a blanket over high hills, encircles some large and numerous small lakes, and at last melts into the foothills of the Alps, of which only a small strip falls within the German frontier.

**Inland Waterways.** With one exception, all German rivers flow to the north-west: the Danube, rising from the Black Forest, flows eastward. The Rhine is the only Alpine river to reach the North Sea; its valley therefore is the only natural waterway through the central mountains and is of supreme importance to the economic life of Germany. Besides the Rhine, three other large rivers, Ems, Weser, and Elbe, flow into the North Sea, and a fourth, the Oder (now mostly assigned to Poland), flows into the Baltic. They form big estuaries, at the head of each of which, but still within the tidal range, has grown up a large seaport—respectively Emden, Bremen, Hamburg, and Stettin, the last now included in Poland as Szczecin.

By far the most important river, judged both by length and volume of water, is the Rhine. The navigable stretch of the Rhine between the Swiss frontier, where it enters Germany, and the Dutch frontier, where it leaves, extends to 440 miles. Its tributary system drains 23 per cent. of the German territory. By its long and winding tributaries—the Mosel (with the Saar), the Main, the Neckar—a vast hinterland is made accessible by water or is being made so. Next in importance comes the Elbe with a tributary system draining 21 per cent. of Germany and a navigable stretch of 480 miles between Hamburg and the Czech frontier. The Weser is navigable for 290 miles, without its principal tributaries, the Fulda and the Werra; the Oder for 500 miles; the Danube between Regensburg and Passau for 150 miles.

These natural waterways are connected by a well-planned system of canals, most of them in the north German lowlands, where nature favoured the construction of canals in the aforementioned primeval valleys. Thus the Upper Rhine region is connected by water with the far distant industrial district of Upper Silesia. Berlin, in the centre of this vast net, has physically at least equal access to the coal of Silesia and of the Ruhr and Saar, to Baltic as well as to North Sea ports. Only the Danube system lacks connection by a practicable canal with the Rhine system, the Ludwig Canal being obsolete. The Rhine-Main-Danube Canal, planned in the year 1921, has been under discussion from time to time, and the greater portion of the 425-mile stretch between the Rhine and the Danube has been constructed. Further building, canalisation, and straightening are going on along the route and the canal is scheduled for completion by 1960, at a total cost of £170m. Associated with the locks along this new waterway will be hydro-electric power stations; 16 of the projected 45 were already in operation in 1951. Designed to replace the old Ludwig Canal, this new route will not





only provide a cheap waterway between the agricultural regions of Bavaria and the manufacturing districts on the Rhine, but will connect Germany with the Danubian countries and the Black Sea.

The total length of inland waterways in Germany prior to the Second World War was about 7,000 miles, of which those of economic importance accounted for 4,830 miles. On these waterways 5,375 self-propelled craft and 12,500 barges carried a total freight of over 150m. metric tons a year (foreign craft excluded). The three inland ports with the biggest traffic were Duisburg-Ruhrort, at the junction of the Rhine and the Ruhr, the most important inland port in Europe, with a total of 17m. tons in 1936; Hamburg (river port only), with 9m. tons; and Berlin, with 8.5m. tons. In 1956 the Federal Republic of Western Germany had in use 2,670 miles of navigable rivers and canals, with an inland waterways fleet of 4.2m. tons, carrying 134m. tons of freight.

The Rhine navigation up to Mannheim far excels that of all other German waterways. No other European river has so large a population gathered in large towns on its banks, a fact peculiarly favourable to water traffic. From the Dutch frontier as far as Strasbourg the Rhine has been so improved that barges of 2,000 tons can ascend to that port. Extensive harbour accommodation has been provided at Duisburg-Ruhrort, the port of the Ruhr basin; at Düsseldorf, the port of the southern part of the great manufacturing district of western Germany; at Cologne, Mannheim, Ludwigshafen, and other ports on the Rhine. Above Strasbourg, 1,000-ton barges can ascend as far as Basel during more than half the year. Much of the Rhine traffic is directed to and from the German North Sea ports through canals, but even so the inward and outward traffic crossing the Dutch border near Emmerich amounted to nearly 46m. tons in 1936. This figure included a great deal of sea-borne traffic, as sea-going vessels may reach Duisburg *via* Rotterdam.

The German waterways have been greatly improved during the last two decades. Previously the navigable system fell into two separate parts, which have since been united by the completion of the Mittelland (Midland) Canal, with its branches to the industrial districts of Osnabrück, Hildesheim, Hanover, and Watenstedt-Salzgitter. A great many waterways have been adapted to take barges of 1,000-tons capacity. Apart from the big rivers, waterways which have been brought up to this standard include the Berlin-Stettin Canal; the Saale as far as Halle, whence an extension to Leipzig is planned; the Main, on which 1,000-ton barges now ascend beyond Würzburg; and the Neckar up to Heilbronn, while a 1,000-ton canal as far as Stuttgart has been under construction.

The Kiel Canal (German, *Nord-Ostsee Kanal*), completed in 1895, serves sea-borne traffic exclusively. It crosses Schleswig

Holstein from the North Sea (mouth of the Elbe) to the Baltic (Kiel Bay), and is 61 miles long, with a surface width of 338 feet and a depth of 37 feet. It has only two locks, one at either end, and can take vessels up to 1,033 feet long and 130 feet wide, with a draught of 31 feet; but it is chiefly used by small vessels passing between the North Sea and the Baltic, as it enables them to avoid the lengthy passage round the north of Denmark. The saving in distance from the mouth of the Elbe is 237 miles, and there is a greater or less saving from or to all North Sea ports south of the Tyne. Before the Second World War, the net tonnage of the shipping passing through the canal had increased, after various ups and downs, to 22.6m. (1938). After the war, the tonnage was 9.4m. in 1947, increasing to 31.6m. in 1956. The small average size of the vessels using the canal is shown by the numbers compared with the tonnage. In 1938 the number of vessels was 53,530 and the average net tonnage 420, while in 1956 the number was 62,400 and the average net tonnage 500.

**Railways.** Traffic facilities on land are numerous and well-developed. Before the Second World War, Germany had 43,000 miles of railway, or rather more than Great Britain in proportion to area, and considerably more in proportion to population. After the war, in 1956, the railway mileage of the Federal Republic (Western Germany) was 23,000, which agrees fairly closely, both actually and relatively, with the British mileage. The railway net of the Ruhr or Saar coal districts and the Frankfurt district is comparable with the busiest parts of the Black Country or of Lancashire. The most impressive traffic scene is along the Middle Rhine gorge between Bonn and Bingen, where a double-track railway line and a high road are packed between the river bank and the steep cliffs on either side of the gorge. In the rift valley section of the Rhine—between Frankfurt and Karlsruhe—three or even four main lines run parallel to the river and are crossed by numerous lines which converge on the bridges over the Rhine.

On the whole, surface difficulties are not excessive. The northern plains and lowlands offer hardly any difficulties, apart from the big rivers with areas liable to temporary flooding. The connections between north and south are facilitated by the Rhine valley, the Hessian Depressions (a succession of basins and river valleys amidst mountainous regions between Frankfurt and Kassel), and the Leine valley farther north. In south Germany, the Upper Rhine presents an ideal traffic lane right through from Frankfurt to Basel in Switzerland; and the basins and high plateaus of Württemberg and Bavaria provide good communications in every direction. Serious obstacles to railway traffic are offered only by the Black Forest, which has only two lines crossing its ridge at high altitudes, and by the mountainous wooded country along the Czech frontier. On the south-

west borders of Bohemia, only four lines cross the Bohemian Forest (*Böhmer Wald*) in a distance of 125 miles: one at Cheb (*Eger*) in the north; the second at Fürth, in the centre; the third skirting the highest peak, Mount Arber (4,400 feet); and the fourth starting from Passau, on the Austrian frontier. Of these the last two lines are merely of local importance.

The Thuringian Forest, which extends the Bohemian Forest north-westwards into Germany, has long been avoided by railways. The first lines between Bavaria and Thuringia-Saxony rounded either its north-western tip near Eisenach, or, at the other extremity, the east side of the Vogtland plateau. Since then, three more main lines have been constructed across this mountain ridge. One of them crosses it through a tunnel (2 miles long) near Oberhof, the other two keep above ground by steep ascents on both flanks and several long viaducts. Another serious obstacle is the Erzgebirge, along the north-west borders of Bohemia; for a distance of more than 40 miles no railway crosses this tract.

Many international trains cross Germany on their way from western to eastern Europe or from Scandinavia to Italy. The routes from France, Belgium, or the Netherlands to Poland and the Soviet Union run *via* Cologne-Hanover-Berlin-Warsaw or Riga-Leningrad, or Leipzig-Breslau-Cracow. The route from north-western Europe to the Balkans passes through southern Germany *via* Stuttgart-Munich. Traffic with Italy is served by three routes. One, following the Rhine up to Basel, and on through the Gotthard or Simplon Tunnels, was in sharp competition with the French Channel ports-Paris-Simplon or Mont Cenis routes. Another connects Scandinavia and the most populous parts of Germany with Italy across Tyrol and the Brenner Pass. The third, leading through Bohemia or the Moravian Gate and connecting eastern Germany with Trieste *via* Vienna and the Semmering Pass, has been greatly affected by traffic restrictions and political tensions since 1918.

Most of the railway lines are of standard gauge and are state-owned.

**Roads.** In 1937 Germany had 134,000 miles of roads, more than half of them over 15 feet wide. A new development in the pre-war years was the building of great highways reserved for motor traffic (*Autobahnen*). Work on these roads was begun in 1933; 985 miles had been completed in 1937, and when work on them was stopped by the outbreak of war in 1939 their length was 3,150 miles. They form a triangle between Berlin, Munich, and Cologne with extensions from Berlin to Stettin (Poland), Frankfurt on Oder and Breslau (Poland), and from Munich to Salzburg (Austria). Detached lines connect Königsberg (U.S.S.R.) with Elbing (Poland) and Lübeck with Hamburg and Bremen. A central line between Dresden and the Ruhr district has been only partly completed.

At the beginning of 1957, Western Germany had 82,000 miles of roads, including 1,400 miles of *Autobahnen*. A characteristic feature of German motor traffic is the large proportion of motor cycles; they comprise nearly half the total number of motor vehicles. In 1937, motor vehicles of all kinds numbered 2,850,000, or one for every 24 of the population. In 1956, Western Germany had 5,672,779, or one for every 9 of the population, and they included 2,447,664 motor cycles.

**Climate and Agriculture.** Generally, Germany suffers from too hard a climate to rank as one of the world's prime agricultural countries, despite the general suitability of her soils. North Germany reaches up to latitude 55° N. (the latitude of Newcastle), and though south Germany extends to below the 48th parallel (on a level with the Loire valley), this advantage is more than balanced by the high average elevation in the south. Nor, wherever favourable conditions may be found, does superiority of climate always coincide with superiority of soil. The higher latitude of the north results in lower mean temperatures during the whole of the year; the easterly situation of Silesia in more intensive climatic conditions. This means an increase from west to east in the duration of the period of frost. Only in the rift valley section of the Rhine (the long and narrow plains between Mainz and Basel) and the valleys of the Mosel, Main, and Neckar, are there seven months in the year with a mean daily temperature above 50° F.; and only in the Upper Rhine plain is there one month with a mean daily temperature of 68° F. or more. In East Prussia (now assigned to Russia and Poland) a mean daily temperature below freezing point may be experienced for three months on end.

It follows that success in agricultural production is due less to natural conditions than to intensive cultivation. Much has been done in this way to overcome the climatic drawbacks, and a wide variety of crops is grown. Of the total surface in 1936, 61 per cent. was cultivated land (two-thirds of it arable and one-third grass land), 27·5 per cent. was forest, and 11 per cent. consisted of public domains, water, or uncultivable land. The development of agriculture in Germany has always been carefully fostered. It enjoyed a high degree of tariff protection against low cost extensive production from abroad. Scientific research, beginning more than a century ago, and university training (*Landwirtschaftliche Hochschulen*) in all parts of the country spread progressive thinking and modern methods of farming. Thus the idea and practice of fertilising were developed, and German agriculture enabled to meet about 80 per cent. of the demands of the ever-growing population. Great pains were taken to close even this 'food gap,' in order to free the foreign trade budget from a heavy burden, but without notable success. Between 1932 and 1937 the use of fertilisers rose considerably: of



nitrites by 162 per cent., of lime by 114·5 per cent., of phosphates by 153 per cent., of potash salts by 152 per cent. The average yields of the several crops were among the highest in Europe, absolutely as well as in relation to the acreage.

The chief cereal crop of Germany is rye, the typical grain in central, northern, and eastern Europe. Less exacting than some crops as to quality of soil and mean temperatures, and more resistant to frost, it is very suitable for lighter soils and higher altitudes. In Germany it yielded on an average, in 1928-36, 25 bushels per acre over an area of 11·25m. acres, the total crop averaging 7·5m. tons a year. The acreage was less than at the end of last century, but the acreage under wheat was more than maintained, extending to over 5m. acres, and producing 4·8m. tons. This development was facilitated by the introduction of breeds adapted to the climate as well as by improved cultivation. In the first three decades of the present century the average yield of wheat increased from 30 to 32 bushels per acre, which was nearly twice the average for the United States or Canada, and still exceeds their present-day averages.

Among root crops the most widely cultivated is potatoes, which in 1935 covered about ten times as great an area in Germany as in Great Britain. From 7m. acres yielding 230 bushels to the acre, production amounted to about 43m. tons. Potatoes play an important part both as human and animal (hog fattening) food, and in industry. They are grown everywhere, but prefer the lighter types of soil. The other important root crop, sugar-beet, gives large yields on heavy rich soils and has been grown on much of the loess-belt in central or northern Germany, from the Lower Rhine to Silesia. In south Germany, sugar-beet is extensively grown in the Upper Rhine valley and in the Main and Neckar regions. Between 1928 and 1936 it covered nearly a million acres, yielding 436 bushels to the acre, or 12m. tons a year.

Vine cultivation reaches its most northerly boundary in the world in Germany; the area covered by vineyards (180,000 acres) in the sheltered valleys of the Mosel, Saar, Rhine, Main, Neckar, and on the shores of the Lake of Constance, is only about one-twentieth of the area so occupied in France. But the white 'hocks' of Germany stand in a class of their own, almost without rivals. In the same regions orchards abound (250,000 acres), and limited quantities of tobacco (32,885 tons from 32,500 acres in 1936) and hops (10,100 tons from 25,000 acres) are also grown. The area under hops decreased to less than one-half between 1910 and 1936, but the average yield to the acre was more than doubled, so that the production remained constant.

In the division of the country after the Second World War, Western Germany was left with about one-third of the total acreage of rye in the pre-war Reich, and about 40 per cent. (in each case)

of the total areas under wheat, potatoes, and sugar-beet. Productively the proportion was rather higher. In 1955 the acreages and yields of the chief crops in Western Germany were:

Crop.	Area Million acres.	Production Million tons.	Crop.	Area Million acres.	Production Million tons.
Rye . . .	3.6	3.4	Barley . . .	1.9	2.0
Wheat . . .	2.9	3.3	Potatoes . . .	2.8	22.5
Oats . . .	2.4	2.4	Sugar-beet . . .	0.6	8.7

The figures in the following table for Eastern Germany (Russian Zone) are comparable with those in the preceding table, the data being for the year 1955.

Crop.	Area Million acres	Production Million tons.	Crop.	Area Million acres.	Production Million tons.
Rye . . .	2.7	2.4	Barley . . .	0.8	1.0
Wheat . . .	1.0	1.3	Potatoes . . .	2.1	11.9
Oats . . .	1.3	1.4	Sugar-beet . . .	0.5	6.0

Eastern Germany, being less than half the size of Western Germany, might be expected to have smaller crop areas, and the foregoing tables show that such is now the case as regards the crops quoted; but formerly the area under sugar-beet in Eastern Germany was greater than the area in Western Germany. Another change to be noted is that, in relation to acreage, production in the Eastern Republic no longer compares unfavourably, as it used to do, with production in Western Germany, except as regards potatoes and sugar-beet.

The half-dozen crops of which particulars are given cover nearly three-fourths of the cropped area in Western Germany and about two-thirds of the corresponding area in Eastern Germany. In both republics, farmlands of all kinds, including pastures and orchards, constitute about three-fifths of the whole country; forests cover over a quarter, and the balance is made up of built-on areas, waste lands, &c. Pastures form a much bigger proportion of the farmlands in Western than in Eastern Germany, and the livestock industry is on a much bigger scale. At the end of 1954, the Western Republic had 11.5m. cattle (against 3.8m. in Eastern Germany), 1.2m. sheep (against 1.7m.), 1.2m. horses (against 0.7m.), and 14.5m. pigs (against 8.4m.). The pattern of change, compared with pre-war (1938), was irregular. Livestock figures for a single year must always be interpreted with caution, but neither in Western

Germany nor in Eastern Germany was there any indication in 1954 of marked recovery from the effects of the war. In the Federal Republic the numbers of cattle, sheep and horses were all below the figures for 1938; only pigs were up—by nearly 20 per cent. In the Eastern Republic also the number of pigs was up—by nearly 50 per cent., and the number of cattle showed a small advance; but both sheep and horses were fewer.

In both republics small holdings predominate. In Eastern Germany all estates of over 250 acres have been expropriated without compensation and distributed among peasant workers and refugees. The new owners were not provided with adequate funds for livestock, machinery, and housing, and for a time the standard of farming declined: a circumstance which helps to explain any low returns for crops and livestock. In Western Germany there is still a small percentage of large estates, principally in the north and north-east districts, but out of a total of upwards of 2m. holdings at the 1949 census, more than half did not exceed a dozen acres, and another third were under fifty acres.

**Mineral Deposits.** Germany's greatest mineral asset is bituminous coal. Coal beds are found along the northern fringe of the central mountains, from Aachen to Upper Silesia, and in basins within them, namely, the Saar, Zwickau-Chemnitz (Saxony), and Waldenburg (Silesia) basins. Many of these are being worked. Their productiveness varies greatly. Reserves in the Ruhr basin are estimated at 55,000m. metric tons, or nearly 70 per cent. of the total; second in importance is the Saar basin, with 9,205m. tons; third, Germany's pre-war part of the Upper Silesian coal-field (now Polish), with 4,000m. tons. Until 1945 the Upper Silesian coal-field was divided between Germany, Poland, and Czechoslovakia; as a whole it is probably the biggest continuous coal-field in Europe. Some coal-fields in Germany are not yet exploited, and the total reserves in the areas named are estimated at 80,500m. tons.

The output of bituminous coal in Germany (including Austria) in 1938 was 184m. tons, 135m. tons being raised in the territory which now constitutes Western Germany. In 1947 the output of both Eastern and Western Germany (the four zones of occupation) was 83m. tons, of which the great bulk (70m. tons) was produced in the three Western Zones. By 1956 the output in Western Germany had increased to 134m. tons, or almost the same as the pre-war production in that area.

Lignite deposits are on almost as large a scale. Here East Germany is dominant, *i.e.* Thuringia, Saxony, and southern Brandenburg, with five large fields, but the biggest continuous lignite-field is west of the Lower Rhine near Cologne. Lignite serves as fuel for domestic use and in factories and thermo-electric power stations; also as a basis for coal hydration. While bituminous coal

and anthracite are mined from pits, lignite is worked in open quarries and is cheaper than coal. Total reserves are estimated at 56,750m. metric tons, and production throughout Germany (including Austria) in 1938 was about 190m. tons. Recovery since the war has been more rapid than in the case of coal. Production in the four zones of post-war Germany in 1956 reached 296m. tons, of which East Germany provided over two-thirds (202.6m. tons), while Western Germany's output was 93.7m. tons, or considerably more than in 1938.

Germany's petroleum deposits, though small in relation to world production, are deserving of mention. They are divided into two groups. The first, which has been known for some decades, lies on a semi-circle with a 20-mile radius north and east of Hanover, the main field being at Nienhagen. The oil wells are bound tectonically to the salt-dome structures underground. The known reserves have been estimated at about 2m. tons, and there is little prospect of any substantial increase on this figure. Three more fields near Hamburg, Wilhelmshaven, and Heide in Holstein are inconsiderable and after long and fruitless search for other sources of supply it was concluded that petroleum in Germany was confined to salt domes. This was proved to be erroneous in 1940-42, when the comparatively big fields north of Bentheim, in the Emsland near the Dutch frontier, were found. The new supplies were associated with simple anticlines of the cretaceous Teutoburg Forest sandstones, which by faulting had sunk 1,300-2,800ft. below the surface. In all it is estimated that the Federal Republic has oil reserves totalling 47m. tons. A second valuable product is the natural gas of Bentheim, with known reserves of 31,500m. cubic feet and further probable reserves of 7,600m. cubic feet. The production of crude oil before the war, in the area now comprised in Western Germany, was a little over half a million tons. This was exceeded in the post-war years, and in 1956 the output was nearly 3½m. tons.

Germany's deposits of salts are practically inexhaustible. Rock salt is found in all parts of central, south-west, and north Germany, and is only vaguely estimated at about 10 billion tons. Potash salts, for the first time found free in nature, which were formerly dug up and thrown away as waste (*Abraum*) in the course of getting rock salt, are now known to be the more valuable of the two. These 'waste' salts (*Abraumsalze*) have become the basis of the German chemical industry and reserves are estimated at about 20,000m. tons. Rock salt production in 1936 was 2.4m. tons, potash 4.7m. tons. In 1956 the production of potash in Western Germany was nearly 15.3m. tons.

In contrast with the abundance of this mineral wealth, Germany is poor in metallic ores. Iron ores are found in many parts of north-west and south Germany, but they are of inferior quality.

The whole reserves are estimated at 720m. tons, but of these only half can be exploited under normal economic conditions. The production in 1936 was 7½m. tons of ores with an iron content of 2¼m. tons. More than four-fifths of the ores came from districts now included in Western Germany, and these alone in 1956 yielded over 16½m. tons of iron ores, with an iron content of 4.4m. tons. Imports are necessary, chiefly from Sweden, Spain, and France.

Copper ores are mined in only one formation, in the south-eastern foothills of the Harz Mountains; the metal content of the Federal ore production in 1956 was under 1,000 tons. In Upper Silesia (now in Poland) lead and zinc ores are found. The metal content of the ore production in 1956 was 22,000 tons of lead and 150,000 tons of zinc.

Radium ores (pitchblende) in the Erzgebirge extend from the Czechoslovakian side of the ridge, near Joachimsthal, northwards into Saxony. Here, in the Eastern Zone, in the neighbourhood of Annaberg and Aue, uranium mines employing 40–50,000 men are being worked under Soviet direction.

**Industrial Development.** On the basis of her mineral resources Germany developed an extensive manufacturing industry. The heavy industries, dependent on mining, have grown up on or near coal-fields and iron-ore deposits. The biggest industrial region is based on the Ruhr coal and the Sieg-Lahn ores, which are located in neighbouring districts. A corresponding combination gave rise to the Upper Silesian industry. Smaller enterprises are found in the Saar territory (dependent on its coal and the Minette ores in Lorraine—see p. 384), and in Saxony. Even the relatively poor ores of the Watenstedt-Salzgitter field, south-west of Brunswick, have formed the basis of heavy industries in the foothills of the Harz Mountains. As no coal is found in this neighbourhood, a branch of the Mittelland Canal was constructed to facilitate the necessary deliveries of coal from the Ruhr.

In 1931, at the beginning of the world economic 'slump' which characterised the early thirties, Germany's production of pig-iron was about 6m. tons. In 1932 it dropped to under 4m. tons from 37 plants. In later pre-war years, production was pushed so vigorously that in 1936 the output of pig-iron reached over 15m. tons from 42 plants, and it has been estimated that at its peak it reached some 22m. tons. The production of steel before the war rose to 18.5m. tons from 73 plants. In 1956 the production of pig-iron and ferro-alloys in Germany as a whole was 18.8m. tons (Western Germany 17.3m. tons); while the production of steel ingots and castings was 25.5m. tons (Western Germany 22.8m. tons). If these figures be compared with the iron content of the iron ores mined in Germany, as previously quoted, it will be realised how largely Germany is dependent on the importation of foreign ores to maintain her

production of iron and steel. The same is true, on a smaller scale, of her output of copper and zinc.

As already noted, the numerous salt deposits form the basis of Germany's intricate chemical industry. The richest salt mines are located in Saxony, between Magdeburg and Merseburg. Here Stassfurt became the seat of a greater concentration of chemical factories than is probably to be found anywhere else in the world. But mines and factories are also found near Brunswick, in Holstein, Brandenburg, Hesse, and Baden on the Upper Rhine, the last-named field reaching across the river into French Upper Alsace. From the salts, in their natural state, carbonate of potash is extracted and used in soap-making, dyeing, bleaching, glass-making, calico-printing, pigment-making, pottery, &c. The mineral salt kainite, or sulphate of potassium, which contains also a certain proportion of magnesium salts, is used as a fertiliser and for other purposes. Other layers in the salt-beds yield nitrate of potassium, for the making of explosives, glass-making, pickling, &c.; various compounds used in photography, such as cyanide, bromide, and iodide of potassium; and a great variety of other substances. With the Alsace field, Germany held a monopoly of potash salts in world trade till 1918.

Apart from local causes favouring certain chemical industries, the production of coal-tar dyes made Germany pre-eminent in the sphere of industrial chemistry. The most important step in the history of this industry was the artificial production of alizarin from anthracene by two German chemists in 1868, and from that date the technical production of dyestuffs was almost exclusively in German hands till 1914 (see p. 308). The leading works manufacture not only their own semi-raw materials, but also such subsidiary products as are the speciality of the heavy chemical industry—sulphuric acid, nitric acid, soda, caustic soda, &c. They require large quantities of raw materials, and are all situated on great waterways—at Ludwigshafen, opposite Mannheim, seat of the celebrated Badische Anilin- und Sodafabrik; Leverkusen on the right bank of the Rhine below Cologne (Bayer Works); Frankfurt-Höchst on the Main (Höchst Farbwerke); Merseburg near Halle on the Saale (Leuna Works); Berlin. These works—each of them a large combination of production units—and many smaller ones throughout Germany were united in the super-trust of the famous 'I. G. Farben-Industrie' until 1948.

The German textile industry (wool, cotton, silk, rayon) is less dependent on waterways. It not only crowds the outskirts of the Ruhr district, as in Wuppertal (woollens and silks) and Krefeld (which ranks next to Lyons and Milan for silks and velvets), but is scattered very nearly all over Germany. Aachen is famous for its woollen cloth (not worsted); Chemnitz, the Saxon Manchester, is a

great seat of cotton and other textile industries and of the manufacture of machinery; Breslau, Liegnitz, and Görlitz are the chief manufacturing centres in Silesia (the first two now in Polish territory); there are many centres in Thuringia; hosiery flourishes in Saxony and Württemberg (Stuttgart, &c.); Plauen, on the Vogtland plateau in south-west Saxony, is the chief seat of cotton embroidery in Germany; Augsburg, south of the Danube, is a cotton spinning and weaving centre of prime importance.

The importation of cotton is centred on Bremen, which has a cotton exchange. Great progress has been made in the production of rayon. Not only have other textile works been converted for the purpose, but new factories have been established. As these require a great deal of water and pulp wood, they are preferably situated beside rivers and near forest areas. Typical examples are a large factory on the banks of the Main south of Aschaffenburg, between the Spessart and Odenwald forests; another at Kelheim, on the Danube, near the Bohemian forest; and a third at Waldhof, near Mannheim.

Another industry exclusively based on highly skilled and specialised labour, independent of traffic facilities or the location of minerals, is the manufacture of fine mechanical instruments, such as clocks and watches, musical and optical instruments, jewellery, and toys. Skilled labour is not only found in or near the larger towns, but is also concentrated in certain mountainous and agriculturally barren districts. It is the inheritance of a former home industry based on wood supplied by the Black Forest, the Thuringian Forest, and the western Erzgebirge. Although wood as material for clocks or musical instruments has long since been replaced by steel or tinplate, the manufacture of clocks, watches, and musical instruments has not shifted to the communication centres. So Schramberg, a small town of a few thousand inhabitants, is not only the centre of the clock industry in the Black Forest, but its centre for Germany as a whole, and its skilled labour has attracted also part of the modern German machine-tool industry. Similarly Sonneberg, in the Thuringian Forest, and Marktneukirchen and Klingental in the Erzgebirge, have specialised in toys and musical instruments.

The optical and machine-tool industry is found in large and small towns alike. Some of these works are world famous, e.g. the Leitz Works at Wetzlar on the Lahn (Leica). The jewellery of Pforzheim, on the northern outskirts of the Black Forest, dates from 1767, when it was founded as a mercantile enterprise by the Margraves of Baden. At least 30,000 persons living in the city (population 80,000) or in the vicinity were employed in this industry. Other notable industries are the porcelain manufactures of Meissen (Dresden china), Berlin, and Munich, famous for their luxury china. House-

hold or industrial china (for chemical factories) is chiefly produced in north-eastern Bavaria at the Czech frontier, where Selb (among many other places) is the centre. An extensive leather industry is carried on chiefly in the south. Offenbach, near Frankfurt, is famous for its export of luxury leather articles.

For electrical installations the natural conditions are fairly favourable in Germany. The natural water-power has been increased by the formation of artificial lakes in valleys where dams could be erected. Here Germany took an early lead. A lake was formed in the Edertal, south-west of Kassel, with a capacity of about 6,200m. cubic feet; one in the Möhnetal, an eastern tributary of the Ruhr in Westphalia, with a capacity of about 4,200m. cubic feet; one in the Urfttal, in the Eifel, with a capacity of about 1,600m. cubic feet; and many others. Still more important are the great Walchensee power works in the Bavarian Alps. The development of hydro-electric power has done much for German industry during the last twenty years. The most valuable asset is the power of the swiftly flowing Alpine rivers south of the Danube, the Iller, Lech, Isar, and Inn. Here construction of new power stations has been going on without a break, even under wartime conditions. Swiss capital erected a number of power works on the Upper Rhine upstream of Basel, on the German as well as the Swiss banks of the river, and the available electrical power of the Rhine is used by the Swiss-owned Lonza works. Water-power has also developed the hydro-chemical industry near the Inn, the most modern plants being situated at Gendorf (lubricants, acids), Töging (aluminium), and Trostberg (nitrates).

The exchange of electrical current across the international frontiers is a special branch of international trade and shows the interdependence of Germany and her neighbours. Switzerland and Austria are the chief exporters of electrical current. The German import of electrical current from these two countries rose to over 1,000m. kWh. in 1935. Germany's exports of current in the reverse direction were relatively small, and so were her exchanges in both directions with France, Poland, and Czechoslovakia.

In spite of the impressive amount of installed water-power, the energy available in Germany in this form before the Second World War was little more than one-fifth of the electrical energy from steam-power works (in 1935, 5,800m. kWh. against 27,600m. kWh.). Berlin and Nuremberg were the centres of the electrical industries. In 1955 Germany's total production was over three times as great (104,000m. kWh.), three-fourths of it supplied by Western Germany.

The ever-growing industrialisation made it necessary for Germany to cultivate and enlarge her foreign trade relations. The growth of overseas trade involved the growth of shipping, and a vast shipbuilding industry arose to meet the need. The biggest



establishments were at Hamburg, Bremen, Stettin, Kiel, Elbing, and Königsberg. Every type of craft from the trawler to the trans-oceanic liner was constructed. In 1914 Germany, with 2,388 merchant ships of 5.5m. gross tons, stood second in rank to the United Kingdom among the world's mercantile marines. This position was lost in the First World War, but a new growth brought Germany into the fifth place in 1939, with 2,466 vessels of 4.5m. gross tons. This position, in turn, was lost in the Second World War, and once more Germany is engaged in building up her maritime strength, with about 2,200 vessels of 3.6m. tons in 1957.

**Outlets for Foreign Trade.** In her overseas trade Germany is in part dependent on foreign ports, particularly Antwerp and Rotterdam, both of them most conveniently situated for the commerce of the mining and manufacturing region of the Ruhr and the adjacent districts. The number of German ports accessible to ships of any size is limited to the estuaries of the big rivers and even these have had to be adapted by ingenious devices to modern shipping. Amongst them Hamburg is paramount, Bremen ranks second, while Stettin (now in Polish occupation and renamed Szczecin), Königsberg (now taken over by Russia and renamed Kaliningrad), and Emden vied with each other as to which should be next in succession. Hamburg's sea-borne trade in 1936 amounted to 28,800 vessels with a capacity of 32.7m. net tons, that of Bremen to 13,500 vessels with a capacity of 15.6m. net tons. Hamburg's advantages are its excellent water communications up the River Elbe to eastern Germany and into Czechoslovakia, which last country has a special Free Port area in Hamburg. As the Lower Elbe, since the beginning of this century, has had sufficient depth of water for the largest vessels, the outport of Cuxhaven lost much of its former importance and only served as a convenient embarking point for trans-oceanic passengers. Even the biggest Hamburg-America liners began their voyages in Hamburg itself. On the other hand, Bremen is reached only by smaller vessels, and before the war its outport of Bremerhaven was the starting point of the transatlantic services based on that port. Hamburg trades in all commodities; Bremen has specialised in certain less bulky goods, *e.g.* cotton (as already mentioned, it has a cotton exchange), tobacco, tea, and coffee. Bremerhaven, moreover, is the most important fishing port in the country and the home of a large trawler fleet.

Incidentally it should be noted that the transport for much of Germany's trade with her neighbours is provided by the railways, especially when the rail connections are far shorter than those by sea. Trade with Italy is carried mostly by rail across the Gotthard or Brenner Passes, even with such bulky commodities as coal, while in return Italian exports of fruit and vegetables are only practicable by rail.

To the present day Hamburg and Bremen have retained their self-government as free cities. They now have the status of German 'Länder' (federal states) and an administrative reform effective from April 1, 1937, eliminated administrative borders which cut through economic units. The former Prussian neighbouring cities of Altona and Harburg were united with Hamburg proper, as were also a few other municipal and rural districts, to form the territory of Greater Hamburg, which even after the war had a population of a million and a half. Cuxhaven, as of little importance to the city, was detached from it and united with the province of Hanover, now Lower Saxony. Bremen, on the other hand, retained its outpost of Bremerhaven, and by the addition of the Prussian ports of Geestemünde and Lehe, already forming a continuous settlement, was given new possibilities of development. Its population was reduced by the war to less than half a million.

**Changes in population.** Industrialisation has thoroughly altered the social structure of the population. In 1875, out of a total of about 43m., 26m. or 61 per cent. lived in rural communities of less than 2,000 inhabitants. With the development of industry people began, as usual, either to concentrate in the towns or to set up works in the country. As usual, also, the agricultural population not only failed to increase but lost ground. In the year 1900 there were still nearly as many people (25.5m.) living in rural districts, but they formed only 46 per cent. of the total; while by 1933 the number had fallen to 21.6m. and was only 33 per cent. of the total. In the latter year, whereas agriculture and forestry employed 13.6m. persons (21 per cent. of the total), industry and handicrafts employed 25m. (39 per cent.), and commerce and transport 11m. (17 per cent.). The growth of industry has provided employment for many millions of persons who would otherwise have had to go abroad.

In connection with the changing character of the population, there is some difference between the two republics composing post-war Germany. Western Germany, as now constituted, had in 1939 an agricultural population of 10m., forming 26 per cent. of the Western total; in 1946, when the total was larger, the number of the agricultural population had fallen to 8m. and was only 18 per cent. of the whole. On the other hand, in Eastern Germany the agricultural population of 3m. in 1939 increased to 3½m. in 1946, and the proportion of the total was the same (20 per cent.) in both years.

The density of the population has steadily grown, and has even been increased by the effects of the two World Wars. In 1914 the population numbered 67m. The First World War brought about a territorial loss of 27,000 square miles out of the former 209,000 square miles, or 13 per cent., and a loss of population of about 4m.,

or 6 per cent.; so that the average number of persons to the square mile rose from 318 in 1914 to 344 in 1919. In 1939, over 69m. people were living in the 182,000 square miles of the Reich, or 382 per square mile. As noted at the opening of this chapter, the Second World War was followed by initial frontier adjustments, mostly in favour of Russia and Poland, reducing the area of Germany within the four zones of occupation (British, American, French, and Russian) to 136,000 square miles. This was only three-fourths of the pre-war Reich, but in 1939 the same area carried a population of 59m., or six-sevenths of the total for the Reich, the density being 431 to the square mile. Losses during the war were very heavy, but after the war a new factor came into play, adding to the pressure of population in the occupied territory. This was the influx of German refugees from outside territories: the mass movement of displaced persons compulsorily ejected from their homes in surrounding lands. Already in 1946, when a census was taken, the population of the four occupied zones was over 65m., making the average density 477 to the square mile.

Of the two republics which were proclaimed in 1949, Western Germany, as already noted, is more than double the size of Eastern Germany, which is limited to the Russian Zone. Eastern Germany is less densely populated than Western; in 1946, with a population of 17·3m., it carried 420 persons to the square mile, whereas Western Germany, with a population of 44·6m., averaged 471 to the square mile. Inclusive of Berlin, with its 3·2m. people in less than 344 square miles, Eastern Germany was even more densely populated than Western in 1946, averaging 492 persons to the square mile. But at the end of 1955 it was estimated that Eastern Germany's population had fallen to 16·7m. (402 per square mile), and even with the addition of Berlin (3·3m.; 980 to the square mile) the population of the combined territory per square mile was down to 479, whereas in 1956 Western Germany, with a population grown to 50·6m., averaged 534 per square mile. It was estimated in 1951 that since the end of the war over 9m. refugees had arrived in Western Germany, and from 800 to 1,000 were still arriving daily.

Western Germany is now predominantly an industrial State, while Eastern Germany, though largely agricultural, also has a considerable industrial sector, as shown by the table overleaf.

**Foreign Trade.** In 1913, before the First World War, the total of foreign trade was more than 20,000m. marks (£1,000m.). Imports were slightly higher than exports; payments from capital investments abroad made up the difference. After the war, the need to export increased, and from 1925 to 1931 the foreign trade was even higher than in 1913. Foreign investments were no longer available to pay for an excess of imports; on the contrary, there was a considerable excess of exports, but these included a high

*Leading Industrial Exports from Germany in 1936*

Class of Export	Originating in	
	Western Germany	Eastern Germany
	Per cent.	Per cent.
Iron and steel products . . .	96.2	1.7
Mining products . . .	84.5	7.9
Iron wares, cutlery . . .	85.5	13.9
Chemical industry . . .	75.9	23.5
Machinery . . .	57.2	40.6
Textiles . . .	51.5	45.6
Earthenware, glass . . .	46.5	46.9
Electrical engineering products .	40.5	58.1
		(Berlin 48.0)

percentage of reparation goods for which no payment was received: commercially the foreign trade was still unbalanced and had to be backed by foreign loans. In these circumstances the shock of the world economic crisis of 1931 had a disastrous effect on economic life in Germany. Unemployment rose to an alarming height (6m.) and political unrest had a fruitful field for growth. German foreign trade never recovered, before the Second World War. After the war the Reichsmark was replaced by the Deutsche mark, with an exchange value for the West German mark of 11.76 to the £ or 4.20 to the U.S. \$. In the United Nations *Yearbook of International Trade Statistics* the trade returns are normally published in terms of the local currency, but for Western Germany they are given in U.S. dollars, the figures for 1957 being: special imports, \$7,499m. (£2,678m.); special exports \$8,574.7m. (£3,062.4m.). Over 25 per cent of the imports were food, 40 per cent. crude materials, including mineral fuels, and 18 per cent. manufactures, mostly iron and steel, copper, and textiles. Of the exports, machinery and transport equipment provided over 40 per cent. and manufactures 25 per cent. Nearly a third of the imports were supplied by the United States (18 per cent.), France and Netherlands (each 7); and a third of the exports by Netherlands (9 per cent.), France (8), U.S.A. and Belgium-Luxembourg (each 7).

Returns up to 1955 for Eastern Germany were provided for the first time in the International Trade Yearbook of 1956, the valuation being 0.555 Deutsche marks to the rouble, and 4 roubles to the U.S. \$. In 1957 special imports were valued at Roubles 6,462m. (\$1,615m.; £577m.), and national exports at R.7,243m. (\$1,811m.; £647m.). The U.S.S.R. supplied 45 per cent. of the imports, Western Germany 11, Czechoslovakia 7, Poland 6, China 5. Of the exports also the U.S.S.R. supplied 45 per cent., Western Germany 11, Poland 8, Czechoslovakia 8, China 6. The analysis of both imports and exports was by quantity only in 1956 and 1957, but in 1955 agriculture and

forest products accounted for over 20 per cent. of the imports by value, other raw materials for industry nearly 40 per cent., and products of light industry 35 per cent. Of the exports 60 per cent. by value were classed as machinery and transport equipment, and nearly 30 per cent. as raw materials for industry.

TOWNS IN GERMANY, IN ADDITION TO BERLIN, WITH AN ESTIMATED  
POPULATION OF OVER 100,000 AT THE END OF 1955

*Federal Republic (Western Germany)*

Hamburg . . . . .	1,781,524	Hagen i. Westphalia . . . . .	179,240
Munich . . . . .	968,233	Bielefeld . . . . .	172,732
Cologne . . . . .	715,914	Mulheim . . . . .	168,280
Düsseldorf . . . . .	645,486	Solingen . . . . .	162,826
Frankfurt-on-Main . . . . .	639,976	Münster i. Westphalia . . . . .	155,694
Essen . . . . .	630,905	Aachen . . . . .	151,148
Dortmund . . . . .	618,305	Ludwigshafen . . . . .	150,200
Stuttgart . . . . .	602,928	München-Gladbach . . . . .	144,828
Hanover . . . . .	532,247	Bonn . . . . .	140,761
Bremen . . . . .	508,637	Bremerhaven . . . . .	131,102
Duisburg . . . . .	478,983	Freiburg . . . . .	128,978
Nuremberg . . . . .	418,900	Heidelberg . . . . .	128,250
Wuppertal . . . . .	405,359	Osnabrück . . . . .	126,586
Gelsenkirchen . . . . .	371,693	Darmstadt . . . . .	124,193
Bochum . . . . .	342,436	Regensburg . . . . .	124,124
Mannheim . . . . .	290,670	Recklinghausen . . . . .	123,538
Kiel . . . . .	257,294	Oldenburg . . . . .	120,791
Wiesbaden . . . . .	250,178	Remscheid . . . . .	117,314
Braunschweig (Brunswick) . . . . .	244,479	Mainz . . . . .	117,015
Oberhausen . . . . .	239,096	Herne . . . . .	116,137
Lubeck . . . . .	228,766	Bottrop . . . . .	105,688
Karlsruhe . . . . .	222,556	Offenbach am Main . . . . .	104,372
Augsburg . . . . .	202,675	Würzburg . . . . .	101,725
Krefeld . . . . .	198,083	Wanne-Eickel . . . . .	101,107
Kassel . . . . .	192,515	Fürth . . . . .	101,015

*Democratic Republic (Eastern Germany)*

Leipzig . . . . .	613,707	Magdeburg . . . . .	261,392
Dresden . . . . .	496,548	Erfurt . . . . .	188,112
Karl Marx Stadt (Chemnitz) . . . . .	290,153	Rostock . . . . .	150,004
Halle . . . . .	289,680	Zwickau . . . . .	135,751
		Potsdam . . . . .	117,571

Like other war-stricken countries Germany is confronted by many problems, but the most serious obstacle to recovery, in the long run, seems likely to be the partition of the country into East and West Germany. More important than the fact of partition are the economic differences to which it has given rise, and the artificial barriers set up between the two areas. In the Soviet Zone all the more important industrial establishments have been expropriated and turned into public-owned enterprises (*Volkseigene Betriebe*). In commerce a state-owned Commercial Organisation

(*Handelsorganisation*) has taken over practically all activity. The elaborate railway system has been reduced by converting every double-track line into single-track. Mention has already been made of the expropriation of large estates for division into small holdings, and the resultant position of agriculture.

The situation in the Western German Federal Republic is different. The problem of rehabilitation and resettlement of millions of refugees intensifies the predominance of industrialism. There is no more land for agricultural settlement worth mentioning. The solution of the problems can only be found in the expansion of industry and foreign trade.

### SAARLAND (SARRE)

Saarland is a territory between France and Germany, to the south-east of Luxembourg, comprising the middle valley of the Saar river as it flows north-westward to join the Moselle near Trier (Trèves). With an area of 990 square miles and a population of a million, Saarland is the same size as Luxembourg and has three times as many people. Though small—about as large as the English county of Warwickshire—it is rich in coal and has manufactures of iron and steel, vesting it with international importance.

Before the First World War the Saar valley was included in Germany, and German is still the official language. By the Treaty of Versailles its coal mines were allotted to France as part compensation for her war damage, and the League of Nations placed the territory under five Commissioners for fifteen years, when its future government was to be decided by a plebiscite. An overwhelming majority voted for the return of the territory to Germany in 1935. After the Second World War, the Saar was included in the French zone of occupation, and in 1946 the area of the territory was enlarged by various rural districts detached from the former Prussian Rhine Province. In the following year the enlarged territory adopted a constitution under which it was granted internal autonomy, while dependent for foreign relations and defence on France, with whom it entered into economic union.

When, in 1954, the Western Powers decided to end the occupation of Western Germany, France and the Federal Republic concluded an agreement defining the future status of Saarland, subject to local approval. Foreign affairs and defence were to be in charge of a European Commissioner, and trade relations developed with both France and Germany, under the aegis of the Western European Union. At a referendum in October, 1955, Saarland rejected this project by a two-thirds majority, and after further negotiations between France and Germany it was agreed that the Saar should

be linked with Germany politically on January 1, 1957, but that the economic and customs union with France should remain in force for another three years. To meet French wishes it was also agreed to canalise the Moselle for the benefit of the Lorraine steel industry.

Saarland is without iron ore, and its iron and steel works are dependent on ore imported from Lorraine in exchange for coal. Since the war the annual production of coal has risen to 16m.-17m. tons, nearly half of which is exported; the production of pig iron to over 3m. tons, and the production of steel to 3.4m. tons.

The Saar has its own currency, to a limited extent, and French currency is also legal tender. Saarbrücken, the capital, had a population of 122,000 in 1956. The other chief towns are Neunkirchen (44,500) and Saarlouis (33,650).

## POLAND

The present Republic of Poland, traversed from south to north by the River Vistula, is approximately one-fifth smaller than the State existing before the Second World War. Pre-1939 Poland, created by the Treaty of Versailles, comprised all the areas inhabited wholly or mainly by people of Polish speech: areas which until 1919 had been divided between Russia, Austria, and Prussia since the three partitions of the former Kingdom of Poland towards the end of the eighteenth century. In the Second World War, Poland was overrun by German and Russian troops, finally allying itself with Russia; and at the close of the war the country was reconstituted and its frontiers were redrawn. Though still (1958) unratified by a peace treaty, the new frontiers are generally recognised. The western frontier was moved westwards at the expense of Germany to the Oder and Neisse rivers, taking in Breslau (now Wrocław), and crossing the Oder in the far north to include the former German port of Stettin (now Szczecin). The northern frontier was also extended to include the southern part of East Prussia, together with the former Free City of Danzig. At the same time the eastern frontier was moved westwards so as to give U.S.S.R. a large slice of Polish territory, including the cities of Lvov and Brest-Litovsk and the oil-wells of Boryslaw and Drohobycz. By these changes Poland acquired 40,000 square miles of territory on the west and north, and gave up 70,000 square miles on the east. Within her new borders she has an area of 121,000 square miles and a population (1950 census) of just on 25m. (1956 estimate 27.5m.); in other words she is almost exactly the size of Great Britain and Ireland and carries half their population. Under 2 per cent. are non-Polish.

Generally speaking, the country rises gradually from north to south and may be divided into four unequal parts: (1) in the north

there is a part of the Baltic lake country, replaced to the west of the Vistula by the sandy Baltic Heights; (2) occupying a broad strip from east to west is the glaciated plain, comparable with the neighbouring plains of Germany and Russia; (3) a short distance south of Warsaw begin the Polish plateaus—low plateaus covered with fertile loess soils; (4) finally appear the foothills and lower slopes of the Carpathians in the south, and the Sudeten Mountains in the south-west, with the Moravian Gate between them. The whole area contains a large proportion of arable land, and this is especially true of the middle belts; in the north-west there are considerable tracts of poor land under coniferous forest.

On the outbreak of war in 1939 agricultural production dropped, and with the systematic destruction of the country during the war, output reached a low ebb. Post-war recovery has not greatly raised the level. As Poland is now constituted, rather more than half the total area is arable land, combined with a sprinkling of orchards, and nearly a quarter is covered with forests. Of the remaining quarter, one-half consists of pastures, and the balance is made up of built-in areas, waste lands, etc. Poland is the biggest grower of rye in Europe; it has by far the most extensive acreage and generally the biggest crop, despite the relatively low yield per acre. Accounting for a third (13m. acres) of all the land under field crops, rye covers more land and produces a heavier crop (between 6m. and 7m. tons) than wheat, oats and barley combined. Wheat has more than recovered its pre-war acreage and production but up to 1955 both oats and barley still lagged behind the pre-war figures.

Potatoes are the most extensive crop after rye—and a very much heavier crop; they are cultivated on between 6m. and 7m. acres and yield a harvest of 30 to 40m. tons. Sugar-beet is even more prolific; from an area of around a million acres it produces between 7m. and 8m. tons. A crop which might not be expected in Poland is tobacco, which has made great strides since the Second World War; both acreage and production are now several times greater than the average for the quinquennium 1933–38. In 1956, a poor year, production was 33,000 tons from 85,000 acres. The yield varies greatly with the season. Since the war the cultivated area has extended (50–85,000 acres) and production varied (30–46,000 tons).

As well as agriculture, the pastoral industry suffered severely in the Second World War. Sheep and pigs have more than regained their pre-war numbers, cattle are catching up, but horses, as in other countries, continue to decline. In 1955–56 the numbers returned were: cattle, 8.3m.; sheep, 4.2m.; horses, 2.5m.; pigs, 11.5m.

State ownership and management play a big part in Polish agriculture; State farms, run at a heavy loss, occupy over 6m. acres. But there are rival interests. Poland has been changed by the war from a predominantly agricultural country to one in which agriculture and industry are of equal importance. The change-over has



been effected partly by nationalisation and State planning of industries, but also by the acquisition of large 'ready-made' industrial areas from Germany as a result of the westward shift of the German-Polish frontier. The greater part of the Upper Silesian coal-field was ceded to Poland after the First World War, and the remainder has now become Polish territory; so also has the Lower Silesian coal-field; moreover in the Silesian area are iron, zinc, silver-lead, copper, and salt mines, while the salt mines of Wieliczka and Bochnia, to the south and east of Cracow (Krakow), are a further source of mineral wealth. Over 93m. tons of coal and nearly 2m. tons of iron ore were produced in 1956, the output of pig-iron in that year being 3½m. tons. Smelter output of zinc was 150,000 tons.

Besides raw products, Poland turns out large quantities of manufactured goods. Its extensive forests supply not only timber, but the material for the manufacture of wood-pulp and paper. The textile industry is especially important; output in 1955 included 618m. yards of cotton fabrics, 83m. yards of woollen fabrics, and 89m. yards of silk fabrics. Of leather shoes the output was 24½m. pairs, of soap 55,000 tons, of electrical energy 17,751m. kWh. Various manufactures are carried on at the two chief Vistula towns of Warsaw (Warszawa), the present capital, and Cracow, a much earlier capital, as well as at Poznan (Posen). One of the chief seats of manufactures, especially of textiles, is Lodz, situated west-south-west of Warsaw. The town has grown with remarkable rapidity. The whole textile industry of Poland was due to a series of government decrees of 1816 to 1833, which had the effect of settling there a number of German (principally Saxon and Silesian) artisans and industrialists, and the growth of Lodz is the result of these settlements. It is difficult to find any local advantages to account for its situation. Till shortly before the First World War none of the great railway lines passed through it. It is 88 miles from Warsaw, and 22 miles by rail from the junction on the Warsaw-Vienna line, which was then on a different gauge, so that the transport of coal, which had to be carried 140 miles, involved a break of bulk.

Poland has nearly 17,000 miles of railways, of which all but 2,400 miles are of standard gauge. Other means of transport include 61,000 miles of hard-surface roads and 200,000 motor vehicles, of which 40 per cent. are motor trucks, the others being equally divided between passenger cars and motor cycles. Navigable inland waterways extend to nearly 4,300 miles.

The Silesian towns include the important industrial centres of Chorzow, Katowice (Stalinogrod), and Tarnowskie Gory, all with iron blast furnaces, the first two also with extensive zinc works, the third with silver-lead refineries; the coal-field and metal-working towns of Gliwice (Gleiwitz), Raciborz (Ratibor), and Bytom (Beuthen); the textile towns of Lower Silesia (Dzierzoniow, Luban,

Zary and Jelenia Gora); and the river port and communications centre of Wrocław (Breslau), at the head of navigation on the Oder.

Following the establishment of the new State of Poland after the First World War, commerce grew rapidly. Large sums of money were spent on developing the former fishing port of Gdynia into a port rivaling the Free City of Danzig (Gdansk). Since the incorporation of Danzig into Poland as a result of the Second World War, the two ports have been amalgamated and now function jointly as the country's principal port. Other ports are Szczecin (Stettin), Kolobrzeg (Kolberg), and the river port of Elblag (Elbing). Details of the trade are scanty, especially as regards the value of individual items. The unit of national currency, the zloty, experienced the post-war depreciation suffered by the currencies of so many countries, and in 1950 was revalued on the basis of 100 old to one new zloty, the latter equivalent to a Soviet rouble (nominally 25 U.S. cents; 11.20 zlotys to the £). In 1957 there was further devaluation of the zloty for certain transactions, the nominal exchange rate being quite unrealistic for ordinary purposes; in 1956 a professional man's salary in Warsaw of 2,000 zlotys a month was reckoned to be equivalent to about £20 in London.

The first volume of the United Nations *Yearbook of International Trade Statistics* which included Poland was the yearbook for 1955. Imports and exports for five post-war years were recorded mostly by weight in metric tons. The main items in 1949 and 1955 were:

Special Imports: Metric Tons			Special Exports: Metric Tons		
Commodity	1949	1955	Commodity	1949	1955
Wheat	164,630	739,310	Eggs	199m. <sup>1</sup>	344m. <sup>1</sup>
Rye	—	414,763	Beet sugar	184,472	272,000
Fertilisers	804,060	1,085,343	Cotton fabrics	50.5m. <sup>2</sup>	57.5m. <sup>2</sup>
Raw cotton	93,344	95,200	Anthracite	26m.	24m.
Raw wool	15,454	16,300	Cement	506,595	673,700
Iron ore	1.6m.	4.4m.	Roll mill products	162,500	247,532
Petroleum—Crude	91,508	544,900	Ships	9.2m. <sup>3</sup>	36.5m. <sup>4</sup>
—Products	254,775	885,700			

<sup>1</sup> Number.

<sup>2</sup> Metres

<sup>3</sup> Roubles.

<sup>4</sup> U.S. dollars.

In *International Trade Statistics* for 1956 the tables of Polish imports and exports by weight were replaced by tables giving the value of commodity groups in U.S. dollars. Total imports in 1955 were valued at \$931.8m., and in 1956 at \$912.1m. In both years 'raw materials and materials for production' accounted for more than half the total, the figure for 1956 being \$496.8m. In 1956 also another fourth of the imports was provided by 'machinery and transport equipment' (\$229.6m.), while 'agricultural consumer goods' (\$126.5m.) and 'consumer goods of industrial origin' (\$59.2m.) made up the balance.

On the export side in 1956 'raw materials and materials for production' (\$627·8m.) constituted nearly two-thirds of the total (\$934·6m.), the chief items being coal and coke (\$425·1m.) and iron, steel and zinc (\$111·4m.). Machinery and transport equipment (\$139·9m.) included road transport (\$54·4m.), ships and boats (\$37·9m.), and machine tools (\$7m.). Completing the export total were two other groups—agricultural consumer goods (\$115·1m.) and consumer goods of industrial origin (\$87·8m.)—corresponding with the classification of the imports.

In both the 1955 and the 1956 *Yearbooks*, the analysis of imports and exports according to the countries of supply and countries of destination was by percentages of the total values already quoted. Imports in 1956 came chiefly from the U.S.S.R. (27 per cent.), East Germany 14·8, Czechoslovakia 10·0, West Germany 6·2, China 3·9, Australia 3·8, U.K. 3·6, France 3·5—these eight countries accounting for nearly three-fourths of the total. Much the same countries took much the same proportion of Poland's exports, namely, U.S.S.R. 28·2 per cent., East Germany 10·5, U.K. 8·3, Czechoslovakia 7·7, West Germany 5·6, China 5·3, Finland 3·5, France 3·2.

It will be seen that four countries—U.S.S.R., East and West Germany, and Czechoslovakia—account for over half the trade. Noteworthy are the proportion of the exports taken by the United Kingdom, and the proportion of the imports supplied by Australia, though she takes none of Poland's exports.

TOWNS WITH ESTIMATED POPULATIONS OF OVER 100,000 IN 1956

Warszawa (Warsaw)	1,031,141	Bytom	180,700
Lodz	674,200	Czestochowa	149,700
Krakow (Cracow)	428,200	Chorzow	141,400
Wroclaw (Breslau)	378,600	Gliwice (Gleiwitz)	134,800
Poznan	376,600	Lublin	132,200
Gdansk (Danzig)	242,900	Gdynia	129,600
Szczecin (Stettin)	229,500	Sosnowiec	124,400
Bydgoszcz	202,000	Radom	118,100
Stalinogrod (Katowice)	199,900	Walbrzych	110,300
Zabrze (Hindenburg)	182,800	Bialystok	100,000

SWITZERLAND

The two republics of Switzerland and Austria embrace the greater part of central Europe covered by the Alps, though neither of them is confined to the area so occupied. An important feature of both is that they are traversed by the ancient routes, now in some cases followed by railways, connecting the most densely peopled areas of north central Europe with the most populous of the Mediterranean peninsulas.

From a commercial as well as from other points of view Switzerland is a remarkable little country. Covering 16,000 square miles (twice the size of Wales), with little coal and little iron, it is pre-eminently a manufacturing country in the modern sense of the term, manufactured articles forming the greater part of its exports, raw materials and food supplying the bulk of its imports. Situated in the heart of Europe, it sends its silks and cottons and its watches to the United States and South America as well as throughout Europe—France, Italy, Sweden, the United Kingdom, Germany.

None the less, Switzerland is essentially a land of mountains; five-sevenths of the surface is divided between the Alps and the Jura, with the Alps occupying the whole of the south-east, and the Jura stretching along the north-west; while in between lie the populous Swiss midlands. The country has an estimated population of just over five millions—double that of Wales, and consequently with much the same density. Even the most thinly peopled mountain canton has an average of 49 people to the square mile. Racially, three main strands are woven into the population; over 72 per cent. are German-speaking, 20 per cent. French-speaking, and 6 per cent. Italian-speaking. Four national languages are recognized—the three already mentioned, and Romansch (just over 1 per cent.).

**Climate and Crops.** The climate of the Swiss midlands allows the same crops to be grown as in the adjoining parts of France and Germany. An abundance of wine of good quality is produced for the home market in most of the cantons, notably in the south-west (Vaud and Neuchâtel), and there is a sizable but uncertain export of table apples and (mostly) perry pears, varying (1950–55) from 10,000 tons to 35,000 tons a year. But on the whole, the moistness of the climate, due to the mountainous character of the country, together with the exposure to moisture-bearing winds on both slopes of the mountains, causes Switzerland to be more extensively adapted for pasture grasses than for the growing of food crops, wine, and fruit. Excluding its lakes, the republic has a land area of nearly 10m. acres, but no more than 12 per cent. (1·2m. acres) ranks as arable, and even of that getting on for half is classed as 'temporary meadows,' while permanent meadows and pastures comprise as much as 42 per cent. (4·2m. acres). Forests and woodlands cover 25 per cent. (2·5m. acres), and the balance of about 20 per cent. (2m. acres) is made up of waste and built-up areas.

The area devoted to field crops is about 660,000 acres (rather more than a thousand square miles), and production is far short of home needs. About a third of the crop-land is under wheat, yielding harvests of between 250 and 350 thousand tons (9m. to 12m. bushels). Potatoes, the next most widely grown crop, covering an area which rose during the war to over 200,000 acres and produced

over 1½m. tons a year, are normally grown on less than 150,000 acres and yield from a million to one-and-a-third million tons. Vineyards occupy about 30-40,000 acres. The sugar-beet crop is one of the smallest in Europe.

Livestock are not in general very numerous; cattle are an outstanding item, totalling 1½m., more than half of them cows. There is a large production of cheese (60,000 tons), a useful export; and other dairy produce (condensed milk, &c.) is exported on a smaller scale. Breeding stock belonging to races of cattle for which Switzerland has a high reputation, as well as cattle for fattening, find a market abroad; but these exports of live animals are far exceeded by the import of livestock from Denmark, the Argentine, the United States, and other countries.

**Manufacturing Industry.** As indicated at the opening of this survey, Switzerland is not rich in minerals. Iron ore and manganese ore are worked on a small scale in the Gonzen mine (St. Gallen); salt is worked at various places, notably at Bex, in the canton of Vaud, above the Lake of Geneva; asphalt and cement are also produced. It is not an impressive list, but for the prosecution of its manufacturing industries and handicrafts Switzerland has certain advantages of its own, the principal being the abundance of water-power and of skilled labour. The government has done much to keep up the quality of the labour by providing for efficient technical education. To these advantages may be added the commercial position of Switzerland, more particularly of northern Switzerland, which lies at the intersection of the great routes connecting northern Italy with the middle Rhine valley, and the lower Rhone valley with that of the upper Danube; but this advantage is diminished by the smallness of the home market. Now that production on a large scale is of so great economic importance, it is adverse to Swiss industries that a customs barrier is encountered on all sides within so short a radius.

The Swiss have taken a leading part in the development of hydro-electric power. Since 1894 they have increasingly utilised in this way their wealth of water-power, setting up large power stations in many parts of the country, notably on the Rhone, just below Geneva; on the Rhine, between the Lake of Constance and Basel, at Schaffhausen, Neuhausen, and Rheinfelden; at Brugg on the Aar and Baden on the Limmat; and at Berne. At the close of the First World War, the water-power potentially available in Switzerland was estimated at 4m. h.p., of which about one-fifth was then utilised. In 1939, production amounted to 7,100m. kWh., of which nearly one-fourth was exported. The Second World War brought about a big increase in demand, owing to the shortage of coal and other fuel imports. Developments (which are still in progress) were put in hand, and at the close of the half-century, over

6,000 electrical power plants were operating. The total capacity in 1955 was 3½m. kW., and the yearly output 15,448m. kWh. Most of the factories are electrically run, while nearly all the 3,245 miles of railway have been electrified.

The manufactures and handicrafts in which Switzerland particularly excels are those in which the value of the labour, or the whole cost of elaborating the raw material, is high in proportion to that of the material itself. Almost every branch of the machinery industry is carried on, but more particularly the manufacture of textile machinery, electrical machinery (at Oerlikon, near Zürich, and at Baden), and hydraulic machinery. All the leading places engaged in this industry are in the commercially favoured northern district previously indicated. The value of Swiss exports under the head of machinery and locomotives in 1911 was already double that of the imports, and nearly fifty years later it still counted for much more in Swiss trade than the value of the corresponding imports. In 1956, the exports of machinery and transport equipment amounted to one-fourth of all the exports by value.

Watch- and clock-making is a close second to the heavy machinery industry, providing about a fifth of the exports, mostly in wrist watches. Watch-making is principally carried on in the Swiss Jura, where it has been practised since the beginning of the eighteenth century and where there is a high degree of hereditary skill, now combined with the most advanced organisation. Formerly hand labour was exclusively employed in Swiss watch-making, but the keenness of foreign competition led to the establishment of factories with the necessary mechanical appliances. The chief seats of the industry are Le Locle and La Chaux de Fonds in Neuchâtel; Bienne, St. Imier, and Porrentruy in Berne; Grenchen in Solothurn; and Geneva, which is one of the chief trading as well as manufacturing centres.

Third in importance, as a factor in the export trade, is the textile industry, in which cotton and silk are closely related. Switzerland's early success in the silk industry was largely due to the dexterity with which cheaper materials, principally cotton, were worked up along with the more costly silk. Incidentally, it should be noted that silk is one of the raw materials of which the supply was greatly cheapened through the construction of the St. Gotthard railway, leading direct to the great silk market of Italy. In cotton-spinning, Switzerland produces a great quantity of fine yarn in proportion to the number of its spindles, and the cotton fabrics for which it is chiefly celebrated are trimmings and embroideries. These early successes paved the way for the now very important rayon and more recent nylon industries.

The chief centres of the Swiss silk industries are Zürich and Basel. Cotton manufactures are mainly carried on in the north-

east, in Zürich and the adjoining cantons, but there are numerous bleaching, dyeing, and printing establishments in the canton of Glarus, in some of the deepest Alpine valleys. Machine embroidery and lace-work are pursued chiefly in the cantons of St. Gallen, Appenzell, and Thurgau. St. Gallen, which has been noted for its hand embroideries (mostly on linen), as well as its linen manufactures, since the thirteenth century, is now the centre of the industry not merely for Switzerland, but for the neighbouring parts of Austria (Vorarlberg), the little principality of Liechtenstein, and Bavarian Germany, where similar conditions prevail; small peasant farmers and their families supply much of the labour, and recruit within the industry labour for their farms in harvest time. The embroidery machine was introduced into St. Gallen in 1840, and it is since then that the industry, which is still partly domestic, has grown to its present magnitude. The variety and richness of the patterns were enhanced through the introduction of the sewing-machine about a quarter of a century later.

The manufacture of chemical products, especially aniline dyes and drugs, is important at Basel, and use is made of Switzerland's water-power in the manufacture of aluminium (at Rheinfelden) and carbide of calcium. Swiss shoes, which are exported to many parts of the world, are noted for their quality and finish.

**Communications.** The nature of the surface presents great obstacles to internal communication between the midland tracts and various parts of the more sparsely peopled regions, and also to communication with the neighbouring countries in the east and south. Not till the nineteenth century was there any carriage road across the Alps, the first being that made by Napoleon across the Simplon in 1805 for the passage of his 'cannon' from the valley of the Upper Rhone to the banks of Lake Maggiore in Italy. Now the Swiss Alps possess some of the finest mountain roads in the world. The St. Gotthard road, for long the most important of all on account of the direct communication which it establishes between the most populous parts of Italy (with Milan as the chief centre), Switzerland, and Germany, was largely superseded by the railway which pierces the St. Gotthard group in a tunnel nearly ten miles in length (completed in 1882). By means of this railway the continental ports on the North Sea are brought to within a distance of three days for goods traffic from ports on the Mediterranean.

Till 1903 the St. Gotthard was the only one of the great Alpine tunnels constructed within Swiss territory, but in that year a tunnel  $4\frac{1}{2}$  miles long was opened under the Albula Pass, leading from Coire to the Engadine, and in 1906 another  $12\frac{1}{4}$  miles long under the Simplon (Brig to Iselle); also a second Simplon tunnel, begun in 1912, was opened in 1921. The Simplon tunnel has much easier gradients in its approaches than either the St. Gotthard or the

Mont Cenis tunnel. The highest point is only about 2,300 feet above sea-level (1,070 feet above the Lake of Geneva), while the summit of the St. Gotthard tunnel is 3,785 feet above sea-level (2,350 feet above Lake Lucerne). *Via* the Simplon, the distance between Milan and Paris is 519 miles, as compared with 559 miles by the St. Gotthard route. The Simplon route to northern France is greatly shortened by the Lötschberg tunnel (1913), which pierces the Bernese Alps for 9 miles and brings Berne directly on to the main route. Projects for road-tunnels under Mont Blanc (linking France with Geneva) and the Great St. Bernard Pass (linking Turin with Lausanne) have lately commanded support.

**Commercial Centres.** Berne, on the River Aar, is the capital of the republic, but as shown on page 438, the most populous towns are Zürich and Basel. These have the most commanding situations commercially—Basel on the German frontier, at the head of the plain of the middle Rhine; Zürich the centre of the most highly populated part of Switzerland and the converging point of railways of great importance—the St. Gotthard line, which runs thence southwards, and the eastern line through the Arlberg tunnel. Next in population is Geneva, which, at the exit of the Rhone from the Lake of Geneva, has the best situation in relation to Marseilles. Berne, though the capital, comes fourth.

The central situation of Switzerland is one of the facts that have caused that country to be selected for the seat of several international bureaux and agencies. Among them are the International Labour Office (Geneva), the World Health Organisation (Geneva), the Universal Postal Union (Berne), the International Tele-communication Union (Geneva), the High Commission for Refugees (Geneva), and the World Meteorological Organisation (Geneva)—all allied with the United Nations Organisation.

In overseas commerce Switzerland now has its own merchant fleet, based on the Rhine, with not only giant barges and powerful tugs but several sea-going vessels, registered at Basel and under the general control of the Federal Government. Rotterdam is a port of transhipment and centre of grain import. In the high-water season trains of barges of 1,000 tons each can be hauled by tugs right up to Basel, which receives in this way some 40 per cent. of Swiss imports. Marseilles and Genoa take the Mediterranean traffic, Lübeck that for the Baltic.

Imports greatly exceed exports in value, but against this must be set the value of the tourist traffic. Switzerland has not only its summer season, when the lakeside resorts are especially popular, but a season for winter sports, with numerous hotels at elevated situations (for instance, St. Moritz and Pontresina in the Engadine, and Davos). In 1950, only between four and five years after the Second World War, the number of foreign visitors to Swiss holiday



*Switzerland: Special Imports and Special Exports, 1956 (continued)*

IMPORTS		EXPORTS	
<i>Countries of Production<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>Sw. frs (millions)</i>	<i>Countries of Consumption<sup>2</sup></i>	<i>Sw. frs (millions)</i>
Western Germany . . . . .	1,852.6	Western Germany . . . . .	863.8
United States . . . . .	1,001.0	United States . . . . .	762.0
France . . . . .	843.8	France . . . . .	541.8
Italy . . . . .	725.9	Italy . . . . .	502.7
United Kingdom . . . . .	411.2	United Kingdom . . . . .	328.7
Belgium-Luxembourg . . . . .	369.9	Belgium-Luxembourg . . . . .	277.1
Netherlands . . . . .	350.4	Netherlands . . . . .	251.8
Canada . . . . .	189.9	Austria . . . . .	183.7
Austria . . . . .	176.7	Sweden . . . . .	183.7
	5,921.4	China . . . . .	151.8
	78.0	India . . . . .	146.3
		Spain . . . . .	130.2
<i>Percentage of total</i> . . . . .			4,323.6
		<i>Percentage of total</i> . . . . .	69.8

<sup>1</sup> Countries providing Switzerland with imports to the value of over Sw. frs. 125m. (over £10m.).

<sup>2</sup> Countries using exports from Switzerland to the value of over Sw. frs. 125m.

resorts was very nearly 2m.—no inconsiderable factor in the need to import cereals and other foodstuffs, though the main factor is the large numbers of the permanent population engaged in manufacturing industry. Before the First World War, Russia supplied most of the wheat and other cereals imported, but Canada and the Argentine have since come to be the chief sources of supply.

## TOWNS WITH ESTIMATED POPULATIONS OF OVER 60,000 IN 1957

Zürich . . . . .	419,000	Lausanne . . . . .	114,000
Basel . . . . .	195,000	St. Gallen . . . . .	72,000
Geneva . . . . .	160,000	Winterthur . . . . .	72,000
Berne . . . . .	157,000	Lucerne . . . . .	64,000

## AUSTRIA

After the break-up of the Austro-Hungarian Empire in the First World War, Austria survived as a separate republic till 1938, when it was absorbed by Germany and became part of the Third Reich. In the Second World War, Allied armies liberated the country by May 1945; the Republic was re-established under a National Assembly and divided into four occupational zones, administered by Russia, the United States, the United Kingdom, and France, with the Allied Council in general control. Vienna was also split into four sectors. In May 1955, the occupying Powers restored Austrian independence, agreed to withdraw their forces, and recognised the principle of Austrian neutrality similar to the Swiss.

Austria is a country of some 32,000 square miles (slightly larger than Scotland), supporting a population of seven millions. It is largely mountainous, being occupied in the south by the eastward extension of the Alps, but comprising in the north a section of the Danube basin, the Danube itself flowing across the country from

west to east. About half the country (rather more than 10m. acres) is classed as arable and pasture land, pastures being the more extensive (5·7m. acres; arable 4·4m. acres). Nearly half a million acres of the arable land are occupied by temporary meadows, and nearly a quarter of a million acres by orchards and gardens, but there remain some 3½m. acres of cropland, half of which is devoted to the four main cereals: wheat, rye, oats, and barley. The only considerable areas suited to cereals are the Danubian tracts of Upper and Lower Austria. Wheat is the most extensively grown, but rye is not far behind in either acreage or production, each occupying over half a million acres and yielding around half a million tons. Oats, also occupying about half a million acres, is a lighter crop, and barley is grown on a considerably smaller scale. All told, these four cereals yield little more than half the weight of the potato crop, which has gone up to 3m. tons, grown on less than half a million acres. Grapes are extensively grown, and a certain amount of maize; while, from an area of little over 100,000 acres, sugar-beet provides a crop of nearly 1½m. tons, from which over 200,000 tons of raw sugar are extracted.

These food crops are nothing like sufficient for the needs of the population, and in 1956 nearly one-sixth of all the imports were foodstuffs—chiefly maize, wheat, fruit and nuts, vegetables, sugar, coffee, cocoa, and livestock for market. Locally the pastures are somewhat sparsely populated. Cattle are the mainstay of the home livestock industry, numbering in 1954–55 over 2¼m.—still a little below the pre-war figure of 2·6m. Pigs were back at the pre-war figure of 2·8m., but sheep, goats, and horses, all told, were fewer than one million.

The Alpine provinces are predominantly engaged in forestry, together with the cultivation of rye and oats and the rearing of cattle, which is here carried on as in Switzerland. During and since the Second World War large areas of forest have been cleared, but over one-third of the whole country is still classed as forest and woodland, and forestry is an industry of prime importance. Upwards of 400m. cubic feet of timber were felled in 1955, and the exports of wood (mostly wood in the round or sawn for building), and of wood-pulp and papers, provided between a quarter and a third of the total value of the exports.

The chief minerals are lignite (brown coal), iron ore, lead, zinc, copper and magnesium ores, graphite, and salt. True coal is almost entirely wanting; the production of bituminous coal is less than 200,000 tons a year, but lignite abounds among the more recent Tertiary rocks in the east of the Alps, and especially in the Styrian valley of Kainach, which opens from the west into that of the Mur below Graz; there is an annual production of some 6–7m. tons. The chief iron-ore workings are in northern Styria, at Eisenerz

(*Eisen*, iron; *Erz*, ore), on the north side of the Erzberg (Ore Mountain), and at Vordernberg, on the south side of the mountain. Here the Erzberg is almost one entire mass of an iron carbonate, and the ore, which has been mined for 2,000 years, is obtained from open quarries. More valuable kinds of iron ore (limonite and siderite) are obtained from the Hüttenberg Erzberg, in the north-east of the neighbouring province of Carinthia. In 1956 the production of iron ore was 3.2m. tons; of pig-iron, 1.7m. tons; of steel ingots and castings over 2m. tons. Iron and steel in various simple forms—sheets, bars and plates, rails, rods, tubes, &c.—accounted for about one-sixth of the value of all the exports in 1956.

The working of iron and steel in all forms is chiefly carried on at two places, Steyr in Upper Austria, which is in direct railway communication, chiefly by way of the valley of the Enns, with Eisenerz; and Donawitz, close to Leoben, at the mouth of the valley leading from the Mur up to Vordernberg. Graz, in southern Styria, in a small extension of the Mur valley, and Klagenfurt, the nearest important town to the iron region of Carinthia, of which province it is the capital, both carry on iron works along with other industries.

Salt is abundant in the Salzkammergut, in the south-west of Upper Austria, at Hall in the northern Tirol (below Innsbruck), and at Hallein in Salzburg, above the town of Salzburg. Extensive deposits of china clay have been found half-way between Linz and Passau. Austrian graphite is noted for its fine quality, and is found in sufficient quantity to make Austria one of the chief sources of world supply. Before the Second World War, and up to 1944, production averaged 20,000 tons a year; then it almost stopped, but by 1956 the output had increased again to over 18,000 tons. In the former Russian zone, around Zistersdorf, an oilfield which has had a somewhat chequered career was credited in 1956 with an output of 3.37m. tons.

Special imports in 1956 were valued at Schillings 25,319.4m. (about £348m. at Sch. 72.80 to the £). Food and fuel accounted for over one-fourth; manufactured goods, machinery and transport equipment for nearly one-half. Exports were valued at Sch. 22,076.4m. (£303m.), wood and pulp products providing, as already noted, between a quarter and a third of the total, while iron and steel, aluminium, metal manufactures, machinery and transport equipment provided over another third. Western Germany had easily the biggest share of the trade, sending over a third of the imports and taking nearly a quarter of the exports. Others prominent in Austria's trade were Italy, Switzerland, the United States, France, the United Kingdom, Netherlands and Poland.

As well as the large export of simple iron and steel from native ores, there is a smaller export of tools, ball and roller bearings, and

machinery; but machinery is imported to a greater value, while coal is also a big item among the imports. Though short of true coal, Austria has large resources of water-power; but these have not yet been as fully developed as in Switzerland; in 1955 the total generation of electricity was 10½ m. kWh.—two-thirds of the Swiss total for the same year. Power is installed in many factories, and the textile industry in particular is of growing importance. Raw cotton and wool were well over a third of all the textile imports in 1956, while on the other hand textile exports were mostly manufactured yarn, fabrics and embroideries.

Railways in 1955 had a length of 3,740 miles, roads 19,000 miles; motor vehicles numbered 616,000, including 143,000 cars. Since the Second World War all the major industries—banking, mining, iron and steel, oil, electricity, transport, &c.—have been nationalised.

The one large city left to Austria at the division of the old monarchy was Vienna, the capital, which before the First World War had a population of over two millions. Standing at the base of and partly upon the foothills of the Alps at the east end of the narrow valley through which the Danube flows after leaving Germany, it is so situated as to cause all traffic between the Hungarian plains and southern Germany to converge on it, and the value of this position is enhanced by the comparatively easy routes to the Adriatic. Eighty miles by rail south-south-west of Vienna (56 miles by road) the oldest of the trans-Alpine railways, completed in 1854, passes at an elevation of less than 3,000 feet through a tunnel nearly a mile long under the Semmering Pass (3,215 feet), and continues to Bruck, whence one rail route leads on to Venice and another to Trieste. Since Vienna ceased to be the capital of a great empire the population has dropped to under 1½ m., but the advantages of its position maintain it as a great commercial and industrial centre, with a reputation for manufactures of special character and high quality similar to those of Paris—fashionable clothing, fine furniture, musical instruments, luxury goods, and elegant fancy wares.

A highway of outstanding historic and commercial importance, linking Austria with Italy, runs from Innsbruck to Verona *via* the Brenner Pass (4,495 feet), on the frontier between the two countries. This route was used in prehistoric times in the trade in Etruscan bronzes and earthenware and Baltic amber, and was selected by the Romans for one of their trans-Alpine roads. A modern carriage road was made across it in 1772, and a railway, notable as actually crossing the pass, not tunnelling under it, was completed in 1867. Innsbruck is only 25 miles by railway north of the summit, and Verona 150 miles south of it. The three most populous towns in the former crown-land of Tirol—Innsbruck, Bolzano (Bozen), and Trento (Trent)—are all on this route.

## AUSTRIAN TOWNS WITH A POPULATION OF OVER 50,000 AT THE 1951 CENSUS

Vienna <sup>1</sup>	.	.	.	1,616,125	Salzburg	.	.	.	102,927
Graz	.	.	.	226,453	Innsbruck	.	.	.	95,055
Linz	.	.	.	184,685	Klagenfurt	.	.	.	62,782

<sup>1</sup> Constitutes a province of 160 square miles.

## CZECHOSLOVAKIA

The Republic of Czechoslovakia was established in 1918 from the former crown-lands of Bohemia and Moravia, the greater part of Austrian Silesia, and the mountainous or hilly tract of northern Hungary. In 1938, as a result of the Munich Agreement, large areas were apportioned to Germany, Hungary, and Poland. In the following year German forces occupied Bohemia and Moravia, and Hungary moved into Carpathian Ruthenia, leaving the self-declared State of Slovakia alone in Central Europe. After the Second World War, the pre-1938 frontiers of Czechoslovakia were restored, except in respect of Carpathian Ruthenia, which was transferred to the Soviet Union. Within the restored frontiers, the People's Democratic Republic was declared in 1948. Nearly all industrial enterprise has been nationalised.

A long, narrow country, nowhere more than 180 miles wide, Czechoslovakia has, after all these changes, an area of close on 50,000 square miles—about the size of England—and a population officially estimated in 1957 at 13·3m. Much of the area is mountainous or hilly, but 60 per cent. of it—30,000 square miles (19m. acres)—is classed as agricultural. Nearly another third (32 per cent.) is covered with forests, which extend to 16,000 square miles (10m. acres); Czechoslovakia is richly as well as extensively wooded, and the timber industry is a valuable asset. The remaining 8 per cent. (4,000 square miles) consists of built-up areas, waste land, &c.

Of the agricultural land, nearly three-fourths (14m. acres) is arable, and over a fourth (5m. acres) consists of permanent meadows and pastures. Besides these 5m. acres of permanent pastures, nearly 3m. acres of the arable land are classed as temporary meadows and half a million acres are devoted to orchards and gardens, leaving about 10m. acres—an area equal to that under forests—for field crops. Before the Second World War, over 8m. acres of cropland were devoted to cereals. As a result of the war, the areas under wheat, rye, barley, and oats all declined, but in the early post-war years they still occupied 7m. acres, wheat being grown on about 2m. acres and each of the other three cereals on 1½–1¾m. acres. Normally the yield of wheat is about 25 bushels an acre, and the total wheat crop about 1½m. tons; much the same crop of rye is grown,

while the crops of barley and oats reach about 1m. tons. Much heavier crops of sugar-beet (around 5½m. tons) are grown on a much smaller area (over half a million acres). Before the war potatoes produced crops of 10m. tons from under 2m. acres, but they have been slow in regaining that standard.

Cattle are the mainstay of the livestock industry. The 8m. acres of meadows and pastures, permanent and temporary, carry about 4m. cattle as against a million sheep; there are about a million goats and 4m. to 5m. pigs. Half the cattle are cows, and the dairy industry is well developed. But Czechoslovakia is far from being self-supporting in food.

The richest agricultural district is in the north-west, towards the north of the Czech plateau (Bohemia), drained by the Elbe and its left-bank tributary, the Eger. Here are grown not only cereals but sugar-beet, hops, the vine, tobacco, flax, and hemp. Sugar-beet is also largely cultivated in the valley of the Morava. In 1955-56 total production was nearly ¾m. tons of raw sugar.

The western part of the State is also the richest in minerals. The main deposits of coal lie to the west and south of Praha (Prague), those of lignite immediately to the south of the Erzgebirge (Ore Mountains). True coal is also mined in the Cieszyn (Tesin) district, adjoining Polish Silesia. Total output in 1956 (one-third true coal) 68m. tons. Iron ore, found near Praha, totalled 2m. tons.

These regions have long been the principal seats of manufacturing industry. Plzen (Pilsen), south-west of Praha, is known far and wide for its beer (brewed from Czechoslovakian hops and barley), but has larger importance as the chief centre of heavy industry in Czechoslovakia. Originally it obtained iron ore from deposits to the south-east of the city; later ore was imported by river, and great armaments works grew up there (notably the Skoda works). Moravska-Ostrava, in north-east Moravia, is another heavy industrial centre, utilising Silesian coal and iron imported *via* the Oder. Cotton, woollen, jute, and other textile industries are likewise important, these manufactures flourishing chiefly at Liberec (Reichenberg; cottons) in northern Bohemia; at Brno (Brünn; woollens), at Jihlava (Iglau) in Moravia, and at Opava (Troppau) in Silesia, though Plzen and many smaller towns also carry on a variety of textile industries.

Glass-making, which was introduced into Bohemia from Venice in the sixteenth century, and for which Bohemia acquired and has long maintained a high reputation, especially as regards the treatment of crystal, is pursued chiefly at Eger (Cheb) and other places near to or belonging to the Bohemian Forest, where the geographical conditions have always been favourable. The forest supplies not merely fuel but potash, and since silicate rocks have come to be used in glass-making, this material also is obtained from the Bohe-

mian Forest, while coal, as already indicated, is at no great distance. Jablonec, not far from Liberec, has long made a speciality of the manufacture of small articles of glass—buttons, beads, imitation jewellery, &c.—which find their way to the most distant parts of the world. Porcelain is made at (among other places) Karlovy Vary (Karloisbad), on the River Eger, where there are deposits of kaolin. The great Bata shoe factory, products from which were exported all over the world, prior to the establishment of branch factories in many other countries, is at Zlin, 40 miles east of Brno.

The monetary unit is the Koruna (Kčs.), worth nearly a shilling. According to returns supplied to the United Nations, imports in 1956 were valued at Kčs. 8,537m. (about £424m.) and exports at Kčs. 9,988m. (about £495m.). They were split into four commodity groups—(1) foodstuffs and agricultural raw materials, providing 25 per cent. of the imports but only  $7\frac{1}{2}$  per cent. of the exports; (2) other raw materials, including fuel, providing over half the imports and over a third of the exports; (3) machinery and equipment, providing 17 per cent. of the imports and 40 per cent. of the exports; and (4) other goods, including consumer goods, providing 3 per cent. of the imports and 15 per cent. of the exports. The only particulars given of the distribution of the trade related to Western Europe, headed by Western Germany, which supplied between 3 and 4 per cent. of the imports and took the same proportions of the exports. Other leading countries of supply in Western Europe were Switzerland, the United Kingdom, and Austria; and other leading customers for exports were the United Kingdom, Finland and Switzerland.

Praha or Prague is the old capital of Bohemia, a region ringed round by mountains, within which a dense population has lived from a remote period. Nowadays Praha is also the capital of the republic. It occupies a situation characterised by physical features which combine to make it a commercial centre. It lies near the middle of Bohemia, on a large tributary of the Elbe, the Vltava (Moldau), at the head of navigation for boats of considerable size, about the place where the steeper ascent to the highlands of southern Bohemia begins, at the meeting-place of roads from gaps in the mountains on the east and west.

Brno (Brünn), the second largest town in Czechoslovakia and the chief town of Moravia, is also well situated commercially—a railway junction at the confluence of two rivers, with a nearby coal-field. The importance of woollens among its manufacturing industries has already been mentioned. Ostrava (Moravska-Ostrava), which ranks next in size, is on the Silesian (Polish) border and derives industrial importance from its coal-fields. Another town occupying an important commercial situation is Bratislava (Pressburg), on the Danube where that river begins to form part of the

Czechoslovakian frontier. It is a natural focus of European waterways, embracing canal connections with the Rhine, Elbe, Oder, and Vistula.

Up to the Second World War, a large German population was found throughout the country, except in Slovakia, amounting to roughly a third of the total. After the war, the German inhabitants were transferred to east and south Germany, their places being taken by Czechs from abroad or from the inner parts of the country.

#### TOWNS WITH ESTIMATED POPULATIONS OF OVER 75,000 IN 1956

Praha (Prague)	972,587	Ostřava	199,902
Brno (Brünn)	304,219	Plzeň (Pilsen)	133,681
Bratislava (Pressburg)	241,614	Košice	77,852

### HUNGARY

Hungary's natural resources and the geographical conditions governing their development remain much the same as in the early part of the century, but the plans for utilising them have been revolutionised by the Second World War. The ancient kingdom, which nominally reverted to that character under a regency between the two World Wars, has given place to the Hungarian People's Republic, and by degrees all industries have been nationalised, only shops employing fewer than ten workers being left in private ownership. Large estates have been taken over and distributed among the peasants in small holdings, with the ultimate view of land development by collective agriculture. By 1950, some 3½m. acres of arable land (nearly a quarter of the total) had been distributed among individual holders, and 2½m. acres of forest land (more than four-fifths of the total) had been appropriated for public purposes. A Five-Year Plan which came into operation in 1950 aimed at changing Hungary into an industrialised country in which agriculture would play an important but subordinate part. Under an agreement with U.S.S.R. for economic co-operation between the two countries, several mixed companies were established to develop minerals, oil and gas, shipping, and air transport. In 1956 political dissensions developed into an armed revolt which Russia drastically suppressed in face of world protests. Hungary was permanently occupied by Russian troops, and large numbers of Hungarian refugees found asylum in Western countries.

With an area of 36,000 square miles and a population of 10m., Hungary is a little larger than Ireland and twice as densely populated. Over 90 per cent. of the population are Magyars; other elements, though comparatively small, are numerous. In 1946 a



mutual exchange of their Slovak and Magyar populations was arranged between Hungary and its northern neighbour, Czechoslovakia, and the transfer was carried out during the following three years. Many Germans were expelled.

Hungary comprises the extensive plains of the middle Danube and its tributary, the Tisza (Theiss). The Danube, coming from the west, forms part of the northern boundary and then, turning south, bisects the country. Its plains, known in Hungary as *Alföld* (lowland), constitute the *Puszta* or Hungarian steppe country, a description more applicable in the past than in recent years, when reclamation has transformed the character of large areas. Despite its rivers and its great lake, Balaton, in the west, Hungary is naturally a country of considerable aridity, ringed round by mountains which receive most of the rainfall, its surface broken by stretches of sandy desert and marshy wastes. Regulation of the rivers, particularly the Tisza, has helped to confine their waters to regular channels, and sandy tracts have been reclaimed by the planting of *Robinia pseud-acacia*, which has prepared the way for other vegetation and led to the establishment of forests and vineyards.

Nearly 80 per cent. of the entire country is classed as arable and pasture land (28,000 square miles; 18m. acres), and over 13 per cent. as forests and woodland (nearly 5,000 square miles), leaving about 8 per cent. for built-on areas, waste land, etc. (over 3,000 square miles). Most of the farming country is arable (14m. acres), but orchards and gardens, temporary meadows and fallow land reduce the crop land to less than 12m. acres. The main crops are cereals. The dry climate and summer heat are well suited to the growth of maize and wheat, rich in gluten, from which fine flour is made. Before the war the area under wheat averaged nearly 4m. acres yielding 21 bushels to the acre and a total crop of over 2m. tons. Wheat-farming was slow in recovering from the effects of the war, but in the early post-war years the area under wheat averaged nearly 3½m. acres, and the crop in 1955 was just over 2m. tons. Rye (540,000 tons) and oats (180,000 tons) in 1955 were below their pre-war averages, but barley (790,000 tons) and maize (2.9m. tons) had advanced, as also had potatoes (2.47m. tons), while both the area under sugar-beet (300,000 acres) and the crop (2.6m. tons) had nearly trebled. The growing use of agricultural machinery and fertilisers during the present century has helped to increase production. But the economic life of the country was greatly upset by the 1956 revolution, coupled with a bad harvest, and the crop returns in that year were much below the figures quoted for 1955.

Among agricultural specialities are the wines derived from the vineyards occupying old volcanic soils in the north. The most celebrated are round the village of Mád, on the slopes of a hill to the north-west of Tokay, which gives its name to the wine; but

other highly esteemed Hungarian wines come from other volcanic soils farther west, clothing the slopes of the Matra, and from sheltered lands north of Lake Balaton. Among other products are fruit of many varieties and tobacco.

The recovery (or otherwise) of the livestock industry from the effects of the Second World War is shown by the following returns (mostly for the year Oct. 1954–Sept. 1955), the comparable pre-war figures being given in brackets: cattle 2.1m. (1.9m.); horses 711,000 (939,000); sheep 1.857m. (1.868m.); goats 160,000 (66,000); pigs 5.8m. (5.2m.). Permanent meadows and pastures form one-sixth of the whole country and account for nearly 4m. acres. Great attention was paid before the war to improving the breeds of livestock which flourish on the extensive grasslands. Horse and cattle-breeding establishments were founded, with horses of English and Arab breeds and cattle mainly of the Swiss Simmental breed, which is good for both meat and milk.

Other useful sources of food supply are the river and lake fisheries, which are practised on a commercial scale. They are particularly active in the Danube and Tisza rivers and in Lake Balaton.

The country is not highly mineralised, but some coal (20m. tons a year, mostly lignite) is found within the angle of the Danube north-west of Budapest and also near Pécs, in the south-west, as well as iron near Szeged, on the Tisza, opposite the confluence of the Maros. Bauxite deposits yield around 1m. tons a year for an aluminium industry. In 1956 supplies of crude petroleum were 1.18m. tons, and of natural gas 17,000m. cubic feet. There are oil refineries which serve both the home market and the export trade. Crude oil also is exported.

In the years before the Second World War, Hungary was self-supporting in foodstuffs, and had a large surplus of cereals, livestock, and other foods for export. In 1937 grain and cereals accounted for over one-fifth of the total export value. Imports, on the other hand, consisted largely of raw materials and manufactured products—timber, ores, fuels, textiles, chemicals, &c.

The post-war monetary unit is the forint, with an official exchange rate of 32.87 to the £, giving it a nominal value of rather more than 7d. According to returns supplied to the United Nations, imports in 1955 were valued at forints 6,277m. (£191m.), and exports at forints 7,148m. (£217m.). Both figures dropped considerably in 1956. The chief imports are coal, coke and oil, iron ore and other minerals, fertilisers, timber, wheat and flour, sugar; while exports include bauxite, motor vehicles, machinery, cotton piecegoods, wheat, maize, beet sugar, and livestock for market. Individual imports and exports are recorded only by weight or number, but the distribution of trade is analysed by value. On that basis

Russia supplied in 1955 nearly a fifth of the imports and took a quarter of the exports, and Czechoslovakia and Eastern Germany together accounted for about the same proportion of the trade.

Budapest, the capital, is situated on both banks of the Danube in a position strengthened by the spurs of the last hills skirted by the river before it enters the Hungarian plains. It is the only city in the republic comparable with those of other European countries. The other towns, such as Szeged, Kecskemet, Debrecen, and Miskolc, are more like large agglomerations of villages, spread over areas of up to hundreds of square miles. There are about a dozen such towns, with a population of over 50,000 each. Those with estimated populations of over 100,000 in 1955 were:

Budapest, 1,164,000 (Greater Budapest, 1,757,000)	Miskolc 175,000
Szeged, 132,600	Debrecen, 119,600

## YUGOSLAVIA

The Federal People's Republic of Yugoslavia came into existence in 1945, a few months after the close of the Second World War, and replaced the monarchy which had existed since the establishment of the State in 1918. It was a federation of six republics—Serbia (with the autonomous territories of Vojvodina and Kosovo-Metochia), Croatia, Slovenia, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Macedonia, and Montenegro. To these were added, by cession from Italy in the 1947 Peace Treaty (map p. 478), most of the Italian province of Venezia Giulia (the province comprising the Italian territories in the north-east corner of the Adriatic) and Zara. In the absence of agreement about Trieste, the Peace Treaty constituted a 'Free Territory' of 285 square miles around the port, and this Territory was divided into two zones: a Northern Zone of 86 square miles (pop. 300,000, mostly Italian) including Trieste, under British and U.S. military control till 1954, when it was handed back to Italy, and a Southern Zone of 199 square miles (pop. 100,000, mostly Slovene), administered by Yugoslavia, whose position was confirmed by the 1954 settlement, which slightly adjusted the joint boundary in her favour.

The foundation of the Federal Republic was laid during the war by the National Liberation Committee of Yugoslavia, originally groups of partisans who acquired increasing power as the country emerged from war. Widespread changes since that date include the redistribution of large estates among small landowners, the maximum holding being 25 acres; State control of foreign trade, nationalisation of banking facilities, a complete overhaul of the judicial system, and a Five-Year Development Plan.

Covering 100,000 square miles, with an estimated population

of 18½m., Yugoslavia is a little larger than the United Kingdom and supports about a third as many people. The Federation embraces kindred but not homogeneous races, and three languages are officially recognised—Serbo-Croat (which is generally spoken), Slovene, and Macedonian. Printing adds to the differences. In Serb and Macedonian, books and newspapers appear in Cyrillic characters slightly different from Russian and Bulgarian, while Croat and Slovene are restricted to Latin characters.

In the north-west and west, Yugoslavia is mainly mountainous; the north-west is traversed by the south-eastern ranges of the Alpine system, with an east-west trend; the west by the ranges of the Dinaric Alps, which trend from the north-west to the south-east. The chains of the Dinaric Alps are composed of limestones, including in places steep and rugged dolomitic summits; to the west, younger limestones form the region known as the Karst or Carso, an area presenting large expanses of naked grey rock with patches of soil of varying depth, generally thin, only in isolated hollows. In spite of the heavy rainfall, the Karst region is without surface water, except where it emerges in springs from the base of characteristically fissured cliffs. These features extend into western Bosnia (central Yugoslavia), but the north-east of that province is composed of a gently undulating, fruitful, densely peopled hill country, sinking gradually to level plains traversed by the Danube and some of its large tributaries. The south-east of the country is mountainous, but with fertile valleys and basins.

More than half the country (53,000 square miles; an area larger than England) is classed as arable and pasture land; another third (33,500 square miles; an area larger than Scotland) is covered with forests; and the remainder (12,500 square miles; one and a half times the size of Wales) is made up of built-on areas, waste land, &c. The arable land (30,500 square miles: nearly 20m. acres) is mostly devoted to cereals; wheat (4½m. acres) and maize (6m. acres) alone account for more than half of it. Wheat, yielding in a good year an average of 21 bushels per acre, produces a crop of 2½m. tons, while maize, to which the climate is better suited, has a crop of 4m. tons. Rye, barley, and oats are grown on a much smaller scale, each occupying between half a million and a million acres and producing between a quarter of a million and half a million tons. Potatoes, from two-thirds of a million acres, produce a crop of 2m. tons—considerably more than before the war. In general, production is up to pre-war standard and often beyond it; there have been notable developments in several important though secondary crops. The area under sugar-beet has trebled, and the crop, which averaged half a million tons in pre-war years, is well in excess of a million tons. There is an erratic crop of true ('soft') hemp, as distinct from sisal and other 'hard' hems, varying with

the market as well as the season. A good crop may yield 50,000 tons from 150,000 acres. A small but constant export is maintained. Sunflowers, which were grown for seed on 20,000 acres, were extended after the war to 300,000 acres, producing 125,000 tons, but declined to 180,000 acres in 1956. Cotton jumped from 5,000 acres to 35,000 acres, yielding 6,000 tons of cottonseed and 3,000 tons of ginned cotton. Tobacco has more than doubled both in area and in weight of crop, and in 1955 occupied 100,000 acres yielding 40,000 tons. Olives are a very variable crop, ranging since the war from 5,000 to 65,000 tons and yielding from 1,000 to 9,000 tons of oil. Fruit trees, notably plums, abound, especially in Serbia, and the vine is largely cultivated on slopes with a favourable exposure, chiefly in the north-east, on both sides of the Danube. Grapes, indeed, must be reckoned among the major crops of Yugoslavia; they are grown on well over half a million acres, and in good years production exceeds a million tons.

North of the Danube, the loess-covered plains of the Vojvodina are in summer an almost unbroken expanse of maize and wheat. West of the Danube the surface, while still offering much arable land, rises towards Zagreb, and still farther west (in Slovenia) arable land is found only in isolated basins—chiefly that of Ljubljana (25 miles by 6 miles)—everywhere over 900 ft. above the sea.

Cattle are largely reared in the Alpine districts, horses chiefly in the Vojvodina, and pigs in all the most populous parts of the State. Sheep and goats are most numerous in the Karst, where goats are often a pest through their habit of devouring the tops of growing trees. Sheep are nearly as many as all other major livestock together. In 1955 goats had been reduced from their pre-war number of nearly 2m. to under a quarter of a million, but almost all the other main classes of livestock had more than made good the war-time losses. Numbers in 1955, followed by the 1939 figures in brackets, were: Sheep, 11·9m. (10·3m.); cattle, 5·3m. (4·3m.); pigs, 4·8m. (3·6m.); horses, 1·2m. (1·3m.). An unusual feature of the livestock returns, for a European country, is an entry for buffaloes, which numbered 38,000 within pre-war Yugoslavia, but were returned as 69,000 in 1955.

Forests are most extensive in the Alps of Slovenia and in Bosnia. Dalmatia, the maritime tract of the country, has all the products of a Mediterranean region, with laurel thickets, groves of pines and cypresses, besides olives, figs, oranges, and citrons.

Among minerals the most important in 1956 were coal (output 1·2m. tons) and lignite (15·6m. tons), which are found in various places; iron ore (1·7m. tons), mined in Bosnia; copper ore (1·7m. tons), worked in Serbia. Other products include lead and zinc ore (1·7m. tons), to the south of Belgrade and north-west of Ljubljana; salt (133,000 tons), in the north-east of Bosnia; and bauxite (867,500

tons), in Dalmatia. Manganese, antimony, and pyrites are also worked. The principal coal-mines lie between Ljubljana and Zagreb, and furnish fuel for blast furnaces in the Ljubljana basin.

Industrial development is mostly confined to north-west Yugoslavia, and to Bosnia, where much of the mineral wealth is concentrated. North-east Yugoslavia, the Vojvodina, has industries associated with sugar refining, flour milling, &c. The monetary unit is the dinar, worth under one-third of a penny, or three to one U.S. cent; official exchange rate, dinars 840 to the £. In 1956, imports (one-third foodstuffs, one-third manufactures, including machinery) were valued at dinars 142,243m. (£170m.), and exports (mainly foodstuffs, timber, and minerals and mineral products) at dinars 97,011m. (£115m.).

In spite of the long Adriatic coastline, access to the sea from central Yugoslavia is difficult. The only railways across the Dinaric Alps are the line from Sarajevo to Dubrovnik (Ragusa) and Kotor; that from Zagreb to Split, which divides into two arms across the mountains; and that from Ljubljana to the port of Trieste. A certain amount of traffic is carried by the Danube.

Beograd (Belgrade), capital of Serbia and of the Federation, is centrally placed on the Danube at the confluence of the Save. Zagreb, capital of Croatia, is a centre of banking and commerce, with a number of food industries. Other large capital cities are Ljubljana (Slovenia), Sarajevo (Bosnia and Herzegovina), Skoplje (Macedonia), and Novi Sad (Vojvodina). Cetinje has been replaced as capital of Montenegro by Podgorica, renamed Titograd (16,000).

#### TOWNS WITH POPULATIONS OF OVER 70,000 IN 1953 (CENSUS)

Belgrade (1957 est., 522,000)	470,000	Subotica (in Vojvodina)	115,000
Zagreb	350,000	Novi Sad	83,000
Ljubljana	138,000	Maribor	77,000
Sarajevo	136,000	Split	75,000
Skoplje (Skopie)	122,000	Rijeka (Fiume, with Susak)	75,000

#### ROUMANIA

The frontiers of Roumania have undergone many changes during the present century. Established as a monarchy during the nineteenth century from the principalities of Wallachia and Moldavia, with the Dobruja added later, it was considerably enlarged at the end of the First World War by the addition of Bessarabia from Russia, the Bukovina from Austria, and Transylvania and other territories from Hungary. In 1940 the Soviet Union claimed Bessarabia and Northern Bukovina, an area of 19,500 square miles, supporting a population of 3½m. In the same year, Southern

Dobruja (3,000 square miles) passed to Bulgaria, and 17,500 square miles of Transylvania to Hungary. As a result of the Second World War, Roumania recovered the territory yielded to Hungary, but not the territories yielded to Russia and Bulgaria. As fixed by the Peace Treaty of 1947, its frontiers enclose an area of over 91,000 square miles (roughly equal to that of Great Britain), with a population in 1956 (census) of 17.5m., so that it approximates in both size and population to its neighbour, Yugoslavia.

In 1947 the monarchy was overthrown and the People's Republic of Roumania proclaimed. Many of the resources of the country—landed estates, manufacturing industries, mining, banking, insurance, transport, telecommunications—were nationalised and placed under the direction of 'Sovroms': Soviet-Roumanian companies with Soviet managing directors. These 'Sovroms' have since been dissolved and the Soviet shares transferred to the Roumanian Government.

Physically the country is divided by a great arc of mountains. An arm of the Carpathians, coming from the north and striking south-south-east, links on to the Transylvanian Alps, which swing round to the west. These Alps, rising to over 8,000 feet, are composed mainly of ancient crystalline rocks with steep forest-clad slopes, while the Carpathians are of softer rocks, largely denuded of forest and usually lower in elevation. Stalin (formerly Brasov) stands almost in the angle of the two arms. Within the arc is the Transylvanian Basin, hilly, and in parts over 3,000 feet high, but with many broad valleys and cultivated plains between the forested and vineyard-covered slopes. Around this core of high land, Roumania is composed mainly of plains, draining to the Danube, which forms most of the country's southern frontier, and to its left-bank tributaries, the Tisza and the Siret. The climate is subject to extremes of heat and cold, with liability to summer droughts, making the crop yields rather variable.

More than half the country (55,000 square miles) is classed as arable and pasture land, and more than a quarter (25,000 square miles) is forested, but there remain nearly 12,000 square miles (more than an eighth of the total) which are unproductive—built-on areas, waste land, &c. The arable land (39,000 square miles; 25m. acres) is mostly under wheat (7m. acres) and maize (8m. acres), which yield respectively crops of 2½m. and 5m. tons. They are grown chiefly on the plains of Moldavia and Wallachia, in the east and south of Roumania, and are the standard foodstuffs of the country. In the past, Roumania has been the chief maize-exporting country in Europe. Such statistics as are now available show little change in the production

Other post-war crops have not fully recovered but fluctuate. Next to maize and wheat, the most extensively grown before the war were

barley and oats, dry beans, grapes and potatoes. A big drop in acreage and production of grapes was reported after the war; and potatoes, a weighty crop, averaging 2m. tons pre-war, were reported in 1949 to have declined to 1m. tons, but reached 2½m. tons in 1956. Exceptionally complete sugar-beet estimates indicate great strides in that cultivation, extending in 1955 to 275,000 acres producing 2m. tons of beets, from which 200,000 tons of raw sugar were obtained. Cotton and tobacco have also been extended. In 1954, 18,000 tons of tobacco were grown on 80,000 acres; in 1955 the cotton crop yielded 8,000 tons of lint and 16,000 tons of seed.

The pastoral lands of Roumania extend to over 13,000 square miles (8½m. acres) and form one-seventh of the whole country. The Dobruja, to the east of the lower reaches of the Danube, where that river swings round to the north before emptying its waters into the Black Sea, is a relatively infertile region, and is given over largely to sheep-rearing. The livestock figures, like the crop returns, are mostly estimates. Sheep, pigs, cattle, and horses—in descending order—are the most numerous. The following are the latest available figures (1956) but they are of little value except as an indication of post-war recovery. The pre-war numbers (1939) are given in brackets. Sheep, 11.1m. (9.8m.); cattle, 4.8m. (3.5m.); pigs, 5m. (2.3m.); horses, 1.1m. (1.6m.).

Forests are widely distributed along the mountain arc which divides the country, and contain much oak, beech, and spruce.

Paramount among the country's mineral resources is petroleum, worked along the face of the Carpathians. The output of crude oil dropped from its pre-war peak of 8.7m. tons in 1936 to less than half during the war, but in 1957 reached a new peak of 11m. tons. Production has been affected by—among other factors—the damage which the wells sustained during the war. Associated with the petroleum is a large production of natural gas. Coal and iron ore occur in the Transylvanian Alps, where copper, lead, zinc, and bauxite are also worked. Coal production in 1956 was 6.4m. tons (mostly lignite). Steel was credited with 770,000 tons. Salt mines extend over an area of 250 square miles in the lower Carpathians, and the industry has been a State monopoly since 1863. There are gold and silver mines in the hills of the Transylvanian Basin.

In the past, petroleum has been the chief export, accounting for about half the total value in most years. Details for recent years are lacking; it has not yet been possible to include Roumania in the *Year Book of International Trade Statistics*, published by the United Nations. For manufactured products Roumania still relies largely on imports, but many industries are being developed under Soviet direction. These include production of printed cotton fabrics, flour-milling and other agricultural processes, and wood-working. Eighty per cent. of the external trade is with Soviet countries, and it is



claimed that the policy of industrialisation has decreased the percentage of finished goods among Roumania's imports from 75 to 55, and increased the percentage among the exports from 2 to 20.

The Danube constitutes an important line of communication from the sea along the southern borders of Roumania and the northern borders of Bulgaria, and upwards into Yugoslavia, Hungary, Czechoslovakia, Austria, and southern Germany. Owing to its international importance, navigation on the river has for nearly a century been regulated by a Commission of European Powers, which between the two World Wars sponsored extensive improvements to the river channel. The passage at the Iron Gate, a series of gorges sixty miles long, where the river breaks through the western end of the Transylvanian Alps, was straightened and deepened by blasting, and on the lower Danube the 100-mile channel from Braila down to the coast at Sulina, the only distributary sufficiently free from sediment to be navigable, was shortened and given a minimum depth of 24 feet, the same depth attaining over the Sulina Bar. The Second World War brought a disputed situation. Previously the United Kingdom and France, with Roumania, had played a prominent part in the Commission. At a conference in 1948 the Soviet representative introduced a convention restricting the rights of navigation and excluding the Western Powers from the Commission. This was approved by a majority, composed of Eastern European States, and traffic dwindled greatly. The Danubian States have since reached agreements regulating their own traffic.

The principal Danube ports are Galati (Galatz; 85 miles from the sea) and Braila 13 miles farther upstream. Originally rival ports—one stands in Moldavia, the other in Wallachia—they now share the Black Sea traffic with Constanta, on the Roumanian coast south of the mouths of the Danube. Constanta has several advantages over the other two, being continually ice-free, whereas the Danube freezes for some 40 days in the year. Transport inland from Constanta by-passes the lowest stretches of the river, and gives a shorter route to Bucharest, with which it is connected by the only railway across the Dobruja.

Bucharest, capital of the republic, stands back from the Danube, whose banks in that area are marshy; it is a railway centre with a variety of industries and manufactures.

#### TOWNS WITH OVER 90,000 PEOPLE AT THE 1956 CENSUS

Bucharest (Bucuresti)	1,237,000	Braila	102,000
Cluj	155,000	Constanta	100,000
Timisoara	142,000	Oradea	99,000
Stalin (Brasov)	124,000	Craiova	97,000
Ploesti	115,000	Galati	96,000
Iasi (Jassy)	113,000	Sibiu	90,000
Arad	106,000		

## NORWAY

Norway and Sweden, which were under one king from 1814 to 1905, are now two separate kingdoms occupying the Scandinavian peninsula. Norway, the smaller of the two, comprises the western part of the peninsula—a stretch of country 1,100 miles long and nowhere more than 250 miles wide. With an area of 125,000 square miles, roughly equal to that of the British Isles, it supports a population of about 3½m. Fjords and lakes account for nearly 6,000 square miles of the total.

The greater part of Scandinavia is made up of a high tableland furrowed by deep and narrow valleys, the highest parts lying towards the western side, particularly in the south-west of the peninsula (that is, Southern Norway), where the Jotunheim attains over 8,000 feet. This high plateau reaches the west coast, and is there cut into by the remarkably deep, steep-sided inlets of the sea known as fjords, which give Norway its characteristic coastal scenery. Only at the heads of these fjords, and in a few of the deep inland valleys, notably those behind Oslo Fjord, is there any cultivable land. The high plateau top presents a desolate aspect, almost the only vegetation being that of a tundra, with heaths, mosses, and lichens. Even the latitudinal advantage of south Norway over the north is effectively cancelled out by the higher elevation. Below the barren plateau top and above the level of the forests are broad stretches of grassland, used as summer pasturage for the cattle kept in the valleys below.

Nearly three-fourths (92,000 square miles; all but 74 per cent.) of the whole country is classed as either waste or built-on. Nearly another quarter (29,000 square miles; 23 per cent.) is covered with forest. Only just over 3 per cent. (4,000 square miles) is available for farming. Nominally 3,100 square miles rank as arable land and only 900 square miles as permanent meadows and pastures; but the greater part of the arable land consists of temporary meadows (over 2,000 square miles), so that altogether there are some 3,000 square miles (2m. acres) of meadow land, as against little more than 1,000 square miles (640,000 acres) for food crops, including orchards, market gardens, and fallow.

Since the war barley has taken the place of oats as the most widely grown cereal. Averaging 150,000 acres before the war,

barley extended to 250,000 acres in 1955, and the crop increased from 120,000 tons to 200,000 tons. Oats declined from 215,000 acres to 170,000 acres, and the crop from 180,000 tons to 115,000 tons. Wheat also dropped by about one-third to 40,000 tons from 50,000 acres, while rye, always a comparatively trifling crop, became even more so—1,000 to 2,000 tons from 2,500 acres. Potatoes continued to yield around 1m. tons a year, and hay up to 3m. tons.

Livestock records have varied considerably since the Second World War, when Norway was occupied by the Germans. Sheep and cattle are the mainstay of the pastoral industry, but whereas the number of cattle on agricultural holdings in 1954-55 (1.17m.) was well below the pre-war number (1.45m.), the number of sheep (1.92m.) was more than before the war (1.74m.). Pigs had also increased, from 362,000 to 464,000, but horses were down from 204,000 to 150,000, and the number of goats was less than half the pre war figure (116,000 against  $\frac{1}{2}$ m.).

The forests of Norway are one of the country's greatest sources of wealth. Roughly three-fourths of the forested area is under pine and fir, valued as timber on account of its hardness and durability, qualities which are due to the closeness of the annual rings in consequence of the short summers. Little is exported nowadays as timber, but vast amounts are consumed in the production of wood-pulp and newsprint for export.

The rivers of Norway are too rapid and broken to be of much use for navigation. Most of them are short; the longest is the Glommen (350 miles), entering Oslo Fjord, and there are about half a dozen others between 100 and 200 miles long. Some of the larger valleys are used by railways linking the east and west sides of the peninsula, the most southerly being a line from Oslo to Bergen over the Hardangerfjeld, and the most northerly a line from Narvik, on the Ofoten Fjord, to the Swedish iron-ore port of Lulea, near the head of the Baltic. The main function of the latter route is to carry ore from the Swedish mines to the sea during the winter months, when the Baltic ports are frozen up. The total railway mileage for the country is only 2,780 miles.

To a country with no coal or oil resources, the rapid rivers and lofty waterfalls are of enormous value as a source of industrial power; it has been estimated that waterfalls over 900 feet high account for some 60 per cent. of the possibilities. At the beginning of 1956, hydro-electric power was being developed to the extent of 2.67m. kW., and this was only about one-fifth of the potentialities. The total production of electricity in 1955 (all but approximately 1 per cent. of it hydro-electric) was 22,682m. kWh. The largest consumers are the electro-chemical and electro-metallurgical industries, engaged in electrical smelting (particularly of imported aluminium ores), the manufacture of calcium carbide and, latterly,

of ferro-silicon, and the production of nitrates from liquid nitrogen. Other large consumers are the pulp and paper industries. Electrification of the railways is going forward, and about 94 per cent. of the population have electricity in their homes.

The country's mineral wealth is not impressive in extent or amount. Chief of the ores mined are iron ore and pyrites. In 1956 the production of iron ore was 1.5m. tons, containing nearly 1m. tons of iron; pyrites yielded 827,000 tons, containing 364,000 tons of sulphur. The largest iron-ore mines—at Kirkenes, on the Arctic coast of Norway, near the Russian frontier—were destroyed during the war but were reconstructed with a view to resuming production in 1952 at the rate of 500,000 tons a year, to be increased later to a million tons a year. Low-grade ores are found at the head of Ranen Fjord, by Ofoten Fjord, and at other places in the far north within the Arctic Circle. Deposits of copper having a metal content of some 13,000 tons are mined annually at Roros, in the Glommen valley, and concentrates of zinc and lead, silver, and molybdenum are produced in smaller quantities. Granite and other stones are quarried for export.

One of the leading industries is fishing. From the sheltered fjords and islands boats set out in the spring for cod-fishing off the north coast and the Lofoten Islands. The chief cod-fishing ports are Tromsø and Hammerfest, situated in the extreme north, but with harbours kept open all the year round by the warm waters of the Gulf Stream Drift from across the Atlantic. Centres of the herring fisheries are further south—Bergen, Trondheim, and Stavanger. The drying, salting, and preparation of the fish is a major occupation in many of the ports, and the products comprise an important export. Brisling are caught off the southern shores and canned at Bergen and Stavanger. Altogether from 1½m. to 2m. tons of fish are landed annually, with a sale value at the fishing centres of £20–25m. Norwegian whalers play a leading part in whaling in the Antarctic, some of the factory ships being equipped to carry out the whole process of oil extraction and the preparation of bone meal and fertilisers from the refuse. The annual production of whale oil averages about a million barrels valued at £12m.

In 1954, excluding electrical plants and the building trade, Norway had 6,380 industrial establishments with 5 or more workers apiece, employing 44,000 salaried staff and 235,000 other workers, whose annual production was valued at £6,820m.

The monetary unit is the krone: par value 1s.; exchange rate kroner 20 to the £. Imports in 1956 were valued at kr. 8,606m. (£430m.), exports at kr. 5,502m. (£275m.). Manufactures, including machinery and transport equipment, in which ships and boats were the biggest item, accounted for over 60 per cent. of the imports, while foodstuffs provided another 12 per cent. Foodstuffs made up a

still bigger proportion (20 per cent.) of the exports, fish alone (fresh and preserved) providing 14 per cent. of the total. Equally valuable (20 per cent. of the total) were the exports of forest products, mostly wood pulp and paper. In all, manufactures, including machinery and transport equipment, made up nearly half of all the exports. Western Germany, the United Kingdom, and Sweden provided half the imports and took 40 per cent. of the exports. In both respects the United States came fourth.

Nearly all Norway's important towns are ports. Oslo, the capital, lies at the head of the Oslo Fjord, at a natural focus of routes over the plateau top. Bergen and Trondheim both possess fine sheltered harbours, and are centres of the fishing industry. Trondheim was formerly the country's capital, and the kings of Norway are still crowned there. In 1955, Oslo's estimated population was 447,000. Only three other towns have populations of over 50,000, namely:

Bergen, 113,000

Trondheim, 59,000

Stavanger, 53,000

### Outlying Territories

Svalbard is Norway's name for her Arctic dependency, comprising Bear Island (70 square miles), 215 miles north of Norway, and the Spitsbergen archipelago (24,000 square miles; over three-fourths the size of Scotland), extending from the South Cape of West Spitsbergen or Mainland (north of the 76th parallel; 350 miles from Norway) to beyond the 80th parallel. Though the climate is modified by the Gulf Stream and the south-west coasts can be approached from the sea throughout the year, the islands are covered with glaciers and snow and agriculturally the whole area is classed as waste. In past centuries a centre for whaling, the archipelago owes its present economic value to the discovery and mining of coal since early in the twentieth century. The islands were assigned to Norway by the League of Nations in 1920 and occupied in 1925. During the Second World War the mines were dismantled and the mining camps evacuated, but they were reoccupied after the war.

There are six permanent mining establishments, three Norwegian and three Russian; the number of Norwegian workers is about a thousand. The coal includes both steam coal and house coal, and over half a million tons of coal are exported annually. Other minerals known to exist are magnetite and other iron ores, copper, lead, bituminous shales, and coloured marbles; but they are not widely worked. Seals, foxes, and polar bears are hunted.

**Jan Mayen Island**, about 300 miles north of Iceland, has an area of 144 square miles and rises to over 8,000 feet. Norway set up a meteorological station in 1921 and annexed the island in 1929. It is visited from time to time by fishermen, whalers, and seal hunters.

## SWEDEN

The kingdom of Sweden covers the eastern and larger part of the Scandinavian peninsula, which it shares with Norway. It has an area of 173,000 square miles, of which the great lakes in the south—Vänern, Vättern, Mälaren, &c.—and other inland waterways account for 15,000 square miles. The country, though rising to over 6,000 feet in places, is generally less rugged and broken than the Norwegian landscape. From the crests near the frontier, the slopes towards the Baltic Sea are long and gradual, terminating in broad coastal plains crossed by many swift-flowing parallel rivers; the fjord type of coastline, so typical of the Norwegian shores of the peninsula, is completely lacking in Sweden.

In the southern part of the country the mountains give way to low-lying fertile land, where the great manufacturing regions and the country's best farming land are found. Agricultural conditions are at their best in Scania, the extreme southern peninsula of Sweden, where soils and general economy are very similar to those of Denmark. On this comparatively small area, which is the most densely peopled part of the country, grain and sugar-beet are grown and herds of dairy cattle, pigs, and poultry are kept.

Though nearly twice the size of Great Britain, Sweden supports only some 7m. people—one-seventh of Britain's population. Waste-land, built-on areas, &c., account for 40 per cent. (69,000 square miles) of the whole country, and 50 per cent. (87,000 square miles) is under forests—one of the main sources of wealth in the country but not conducive to dense population. There remains 10 per cent. (17,000 square miles, or 11m. acres) which is productive land agriculturally. This is officially divided into arable ( $9\frac{1}{2}$ m. acres) and permanent meadows and pastures ( $1\frac{1}{2}$ m. acres); but nearly half the arable (4m. acres) consists of temporary meadows, and with the permanent meadows and pastures these make up more than half the land available for farming. Livestock are less numerous than might be expected, especially as Sweden was not devastated in the Second World War. At a livestock census in 1956, cattle, the mainstay of the industry, numbered less than  $2\frac{1}{2}$ m.—considerably fewer than in either the Netherlands or Denmark, both with far less pastoral country. Sheep were down to 159,000—less than a tenth of the number in Norway. There were  $1\frac{1}{2}$ m. pigs, and under 300,000 horses. Great crops of hay are harvested. Half the area of meadow-

land (3m. acres) is devoted to this use, and in a good year the crop exceeds 4½m. tons.

Of the arable land on which food crops are grown (4½m. acres), cereals occupy over two-thirds. Oats tops the list, with crops of around 800,000 tons from 1½m. acres. Wheat produces nearly as heavy a crop (approaching ½m. tons) from round about 800,000 acres. Rye (¼m. tons) and barley (200,000 tons) are smaller crops; but Sweden is one of the few countries in the world growing mixed grain on a large scale, and both the acreage and crop for this cultivation are little behind the figures for wheat. Heavier crops than any but hay are sugar-beet, potatoes, and fodder roots, each within sight of 2m. tons a year, though sugar-beet and fodder roots each occupy less than 150,000 acres, and potatoes less than 350,000 acres.

Fisheries are only a minor industry. Since the herring migrated from the Baltic, the catch has declined greatly, the chief fishing grounds being now on the other side of Sweden, off the coasts north of Göteborg. In 1948 the catch in these waters was valued at barely £5m.

Mining has always been one of the leading industries. Sweden has valuable mineral resources, notably of iron ore. Deposits of these ores occur in two localities, in the far north (Swedish Lapland), and to the north-west of Stockholm. The northern deposits are mined at the centres of Gällivara and, about 60 miles farther north, Kiruna, Luossavara and Tuolluvara; they are some of the most important and most easily worked deposits of iron ore in Europe. They all contain a high percentage of iron, mostly over 60 per cent., in some cases 68 or 69 per cent.; but while some contain as little as 0.05 per cent. phosphorus, the phosphorus content is generally high—from 0.6 to 3.5 per cent. During the summer months these ores are exported from the Swedish port of Luleå at the head of the Gulf of Bothnia, but in winter, when this outlet is frozen up, the ores are carried by one of the most northerly railways in the world to the Norwegian port of Narvik, which is open all the year round.

Phosphoric iron ores are also produced in great quantities in south-central Sweden, south of the Vester (West) Dal river, where Grängesberg, about 140 miles north-west of Stockholm, is the centre of a district containing more than 500 mines. The historic seat of the mineral industries of Sweden is farther east, on both sides of the lower Dal, which flows into the southern end of the Gulf of Bothnia near Gävle. To the south-east of Gävle, about 70 miles north of Stockholm, are the well-known magnetic mines of Dannemora. In this district there is an abundance of iron ore low in phosphorus content, and suited for the manufacture of first-class steel. In 1956, iron ore mined in Sweden totalled 18.6m. tons; of this 17m. tons was exported in the crude state, while close on 1.4m. tons of pig iron was produced within the country.

Coal is mined on a small scale: under 300,000 tons a year. Other minerals in active production include copper (mined since medieval times around Falun, 20 miles east of the confluence of the East and West Dal); and silver (2½m. fine ounces in 1956) and lead (near the university centre of Uppsala, between Gävle and Stockholm). Zinc, manganese, arsenic, gold (96,000 fine ounces), and sulphur pyrites (485,000 tons) are also worked. Large quantities of paving stone are produced from Swedish quarries.

The production of electricity from water-power is of prime importance to Swedish industrial development, there being no oil and very little coal in the country. In 1956 the production was over 27,000 kWh., 95 per cent. of it hydro-electric. Of this production, 62 per cent. is utilised by industry, 8 per cent. by the railways, and the rest by town and country. As an example of its use in industry, a growing proportion of Swedish pig-iron is produced by electrical smelting of Swedish Lapland ore, a process formerly based largely on imported coal from the United Kingdom.

Based on this iron smelting and associated metallurgical processes, Sweden has developed industries producing machinery of a highly specialised nature. Some of these products are the result, directly or indirectly, of Swedish inventions such as cream separators, ball bearings, and lighthouse lanterns. Various types of electrical machinery are also produced. A porcelain and glass industry turns out products of high reputation.

Sweden's great timber resources have given rise to industries which have taken on a big development with the growing availability of electric power. Sawn and planed timber, wood-pulp, newsprint and other forms of paper, and minor products, including matches, not only supply the home market but provide valuable exports.

In 1954 Sweden had over 17,000 industrial establishments employing 650,000 persons. In the most important industries, some 12,000 establishments employing nearly half a million persons turned out goods to the value of over £1,700m.

The unit of currency is the krona (pl. kronor), with an exchange value of about 1s. 4½d. (kr. 14½ to the £). In 1956 imports were valued at kr. 11,434m. (£788.5m.), about 50 per cent. being for manufactured goods and machinery, 20 per cent. for mineral fuels, and 12½ per cent. for food. Exports were valued at kr. 10,066m. (£694m.), manufactured goods and machinery accounting for over 50 per cent. (manufactures of wood and paper alone providing over 10 per cent.), crude materials over 40 per cent. (mostly wood and pulp), and food-stuffs only 3 per cent. Western Germany, the United States, United Kingdom and the Netherlands supplied over half the imports, while the United Kingdom, Western Germany, Norway, France and the Netherlands took more than half the exports.

The manufacturing towns of Sweden are situated in the southern



part of the country, particularly in the trough containing lakes Vänern, Vättern, or Mälaren, and the many associated smaller lakes. The Göta Canal, which utilises these lakes in its east-west traverse of Sweden, offers a fine waterway across the country.

From Göteborg (Gothenburg) on the Skaggerak to Stockholm on the Baltic is 347 miles, of which only 56 miles is actually canal, though it has 65 locks. Göteborg, at the mouth of the Göta river, is Sweden's principal port, open all the year round, whereas Stockholm is hampered by ice in winter. Norrköping, on the Baltic coast, has textile industries, notably woollens. Jonköping, at the southern end of Lake Vättern, is the centre of the Swedish match industry. Eskilstuna, behind Stockholm, has hardware and cutlery industries that have earned it comparison with Sheffield. Facing Copenhagen across the Sound is Malmö, which handles much of the local dairy produce. Other leading ports include Gävle on the Baltic, Hälsingborg, and Halmstad.

It is estimated that over 3m. people, or nearly half the total population, live in towns. Habitation of the country districts ranges from the thickly peopled farmlands of Scania to the sparsely settled northern regions, with their brief summers and long cold winters. The Lapp races established in these northern regions live mainly by fishing and by their herds of reindeer, which supply them with meat, milk, and skins for clothing.

#### TOWNS WITH ESTIMATED POPULATIONS OF OVER 50,000 IN 1956

Stockholm . . . .	785,945	Uppsala . . . .	70,244
Göteborg . . . .	380,442	Västerås . . . .	68,197
Malmö . . . .	209,473	Borås . . . .	62,728
Norrköping . . . .	88,762	Linköping . . . .	60,989
Hälsingborg . . . .	74,380	Eskilstuna . . . .	57,089
Örebro . . . .	71,418	Gävle . . . .	50,662

## DENMARK

Denmark is a kingdom comprising primarily the greater part (northern two-thirds) of the peninsula of Jutland, thrusting from the north coast of Germany towards Norway and Sweden, together with some 500 islands lying between Jutland and the west coast of Sweden. The islands have an area of over 5,000 square miles and Danish Jutland (in which northern Slesvig was reincorporated after the First World War) contains over 11,000 square miles, so that Denmark as a whole (16,575 square miles) is about half the size of Ireland. It is twice as densely populated, the two countries having much the same population (about 4½m.).

Though only about a hundred of the islands are inhabited, they carry a larger population than the mainland territory, and, commercially, the sea is less of a dividing factor than might be thought. Comparatively narrow channels separate the two largest islands, Zealand (*Sjælland*) and Funen (*Fyn*), from one another and from the mainland on either side. A road and rail bridge under two miles long connects Jutland with Funen. The Great Belt between Funen and Zealand, nine miles wide at its narrowest, is crossed by train ferry. Two train ferries connect the east coast of Zealand with Sweden across the Sound, one from Copenhagen to Malmö (16 miles), the other from Helsingør (Elsinore) to Helsingborg, where the Sound is only about three miles across. Road and rail bridges also link Zealand with Falster island and Falster with the island of Lolland; and there is a train ferry service between Falster and Grossenbrode, in West Germany.

These transport facilities have been an essential part of the policy on which Denmark embarked in the nineteenth century. Faced with a growing population she began an intensive development of her agricultural resources, and of dairy farming in particular. Farms are small, the law forbidding amalgamation of small properties into large estates; grass crops for the livestock are included in the crop rotations and grazed straight off the fields. Farming communities are highly organised on co-operative lines, while marketing schemes ensure that all produce is sold. The result is a country with a large surplus of foodstuffs for export, of a quality whose reputation is known throughout the world and jealously guarded.

Physically Denmark is well suited to this agricultural development: soils over a large part of the country are of glacial origin and fertile; the climate is mild, with a good rainfall; the highest elevation is 564 feet. Western Jutland is bounded by sand dunes and shallow lagoons, and inland the surface tends to be marshy and infertile, but even here planting of grasses and drainage have aided reclamation. According to the latest returns of the United Nations Food and Agricultural Organisation, about 2,850 square miles (17 per cent.) of the total area is classed as waste or built on, while forested land accounts for another 1,690 square miles (over 10 per cent.); but there remains practically three-quarters of the whole (12,000 square miles; 8m. acres) available for farming. Of this area only one-eighth is classed as permanent pastures, the rest being arable land or land under tree crops. By far the most extensive crops are cereals (over 3m. acres), chiefly barley (approaching 2½m. tons from over 1½m. acres in 1956), and oats and mixed grain (each 830–840,000 tons from 600–700,000 acres). The crops of rye and wheat are much smaller, and it is noteworthy that wheat is at the bottom of the list, though the yield per acre under intensive cultiva-

tion is very high. Noteworthy also, especially in its bearing on the dairying industry, is the scale on which root crops are grown. Apart from potatoes, averaging 2m. tons from  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. acres, root crops are grown on nearly 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ m. acres and yield over 20m. tons. They include 2m. tons of sugar-beets from 150,000 acres, yielding 300,000 tons of raw sugar, as well as much larger quantities of residue material, of great value as a fertiliser and cattle food.

Livestock in 1956 included over 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ m. cattle, 4 $\frac{1}{2}$ m. pigs, and  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. horses, but comparatively few sheep, which had declined to 33,000—little more than a fifth of their pre-war number. On the other hand dairy produce has caught up with and in some cases surpassed the pre-war figures of production. In 1956 the yield of milk was over 5m. tons; of butter, 166,000 tons; and cheese, 85,000 tons.

Denmark has practically no minerals. The majority of Danish industries are based on agricultural products, and large quantities of prepared foodstuffs are exported. Other industries include cement manufacture, brewing, and shipbuilding.

Fishing is an important industry; in 1956 the catch was valued at £13 $\frac{1}{2}$ m. The long, sandy stretches of the west coast are broken by many little harbours suitable for fishing boats; but the large ports are on the Baltic coast of Jutland or on the islands. The principal port and city is Copenhagen (*Köbenhavn*—Merchants' Haven), the capital, in which most of the country's trade is concentrated. The Sound, on which it is situated, is the shortest route between the Baltic and the Kattegat, and formerly Copenhagen drew a large income from shipping tolls; but it has long been a free port, and nowadays the Sound is not deep enough for the largest ships, which prefer the Great Belt.

The largest ports after Copenhagen are Aarhus, Odense, and Aalborg. Esbjerg, the only important harbour on the west coast, is the chief port for the Danish export trade to Britain and the terminus of a regular steamship service to and from Harwich. Helsingør (*Elsinore*), at the northern entrance to the Sound, is a bunkering place for steamers as well as the terminus of one of the train ferry services to Sweden.

The unit of currency is the krone (pl. kronor), with an exchange value of just over 1s. (about kr. 19 $\frac{1}{2}$  to the £). In 1956 imports were valued at kr. 9,014.5m. (£465m.) and exports at kr. 7,558.5m. (£390m.). Over 60 per cent. of the exports were foodstuffs, and manufactures (including ships) accounted for more than another 25 per cent. Foodstuffs also formed nearly 16 per cent. of the imports; inedible crude materials, including mineral fuels, nearly 30 per cent.; and manufactures over 40 per cent. The United Kingdom (25 per cent.), Western Germany (20 per cent.), the United States (10 per cent.) and Sweden (9 per cent.) supplied over 60 per cent. of the imports and took over 60 per cent. of the exports.

## TOWNS WITH ESTIMATED POPULATIONS OF OVER 40,000 IN 1955

Copenhagen . . . . .	960,000	Aalborg . . . . .	83,000
Aarhus . . . . .	119,000	Esbjerg . . . . .	51,000
Odense . . . . .	106,000	Randers . . . . .	42,000

## Outlying Territories

**The Faeroes** (Old Norse, *Fær-øer*, Sheep Islands), a group of islands between Scotland and Iceland, are equal in size to the Shetlands and support about 50 per cent. more people. Area, 540 square miles, with heights up to 2,800 feet; population, 32,000. Capital, Thorshaven (4,800). The climate is mild, and potatoes and turnips normally do well, but barley, which is also grown, does not always ripen. Sheep farming, fishing, and whaling are the mainstay of the islanders. Fish and whale products, including train oil; sheep-skins, wool and hosiery; and feathers collected from the colonies of sea fowl round the rugged coasts, are exported. A measure of home rule was granted in 1949.

**Greenland.** See under North America (p. 728).

## ICELAND

For over 500 years, from 1381 to 1918, Iceland formed part of the Danish kingdom. In 1918 it was declared an independent state, sharing the same king as Denmark, but formulating its own internal policy; in 1944, as a result of a plebiscite, the island finally severed all ties with Denmark and was declared a republic.

Iceland lies immediately south of the Arctic Circle, which it touches at the tip of its north coast. With an area of 40,000 square miles, the island is larger by one-fourth than the whole of Ireland, but its population is little over 150,000. It is a volcanic island. About one-fifth of the surface is classed as productive land, mainly in the form of permanent meadows and grazing grounds near the coast and along the lower courses of the rivers. The rest is a waste of high plateaus and mountains, rising in the south-east to 7,000 feet, and partly covered by great ice sheets, largest of which is the Vatna Jökull. Active volcanoes include the famous Mount Hecla (5,000 feet), and geysers and hot lakes are characteristic features. Some of the volcanic soils are very fertile, but the land cultivated is only about 100 square miles: one-quarter of 1 per cent. of the whole island. Under a third of a million tons of hay, cultivated and uncultivated, are harvested, a few thousand tons of potatoes, and a few hundred tons of turnips. Livestock include over 600,000 sheep

(about 4 per head of the population), 50,000 cattle and nearly the same number of horses.

The warm waters of the Gulf Stream Drift keep the southern coast free from ice in most winters. Fishing is the island's principal industry. Fish, fish meal, fish oil, and sheep-skins are the chief exports. Most of the requirements have to be imported, and imports much exceed exports. The unit of currency, the króna (pl. krónur), has lost in value and was worth under 6d. in 1957 (45·6 to the £). A tourist exchange rate (70 to the £) was introduced in 1958. Imports in 1956 were valued at kr. 1,468m. (£32m.) and exports at kr. 1,031m. (£22½m.). Foodstuffs (nearly all fish) were 85 per cent. of the exports. Food also formed 10 per cent. of the imports, and fuels (mostly petroleum products) 15 per cent., but most of the imports (60 per cent.) were manufactured goods and machinery. Previously the United Kingdom had the biggest share of the trade, but in recent years a dispute over fishing rights affected the position and the United States and U.S.S.R. took the lead.

The chief port and capital of the republic is Reykjavik, with a population of 67,000. It has an airport with regular services at home and abroad. There are no railways.

## FINLAND

The Second World War, in which Finland fought against Russia, led to revolutionary changes in her agrarian and industrial economy. Defeated in the war, she had to cede to Russia a large tract in the south-east, made up of Finnish Karelia with the north and west shores of Lake Ladoga, and part of the north coast of the Gulf of Finland, including the port of Viipuri (Viborg). Also she had to give up the strip of territory linking her on the north-east with the Arctic Ocean, this loss including the ice-free port of Petsamo. Finally, Finland had to lease to Russia for use as a military base a headland (Porkkala) within artillery range of the Finnish capital, Helsinki (Helsingfors), and commanding the entrance to the Gulf of Finland. Porkkala was returned to Finland in 1956.

These cessions cost Finland nearly 20,000 square miles of territory, but left her with 130,000 square miles, including the Åland Islands (570 square miles; population 30,000), which are of international importance because of their position in the mouth of the Gulf of Bothnia, between Finland and Sweden. The mainland territory, larger than the whole of the British Isles, but supporting less than 4½m. people, is comprised between the Gulf of

Finland on the south and the Gulf of Bothnia on the west, and reaches north beyond the Arctic Circle to the 70th parallel: an extreme length from south to north of 700 miles and an extreme width of 400 miles. The great majority of the population is of Finnish stock, but there is an influential Swedish element which in former days was the dominant caste.

Popularly known as the Land of a Thousand Lakes (the actual number is more like 10,000, mainly in the south), Finland is nearly one-tenth water; a still larger area consists of swamps, partially covered with trees, while dry forest covers nearly half the total area. The Finnish name of the country, 'Suomi,' means 'Land of Fens and Lakes.' In general the surface is fairly flat and of no great elevation: mostly under 600 feet, broken here and there by higher patches; though along the Russian frontier and in the far north the general level is up to 1,500 feet, while in the extreme north-west, where Norway, Sweden, and Finland draw together, heights of over 4,000 feet are found. Running back from the coast are post-glacial plains with fertile clay soils, but even these are liable to frost in August, and for the most part Finland is not well adapted for agriculture. Geologically it is related to the Scandinavian peninsula, consisting mainly of granite, gneiss, and glacial formations, its multitudinous lakes filling hollows formed by ice-pressure in past ages. As a rule, the gravel soil formed by glaciation is not favourable to heavy crops; but it is admirably suited to the large vertical roots of the pine trees or the long creeping roots thrown out by firs. Among deciduous trees the birch is the most common.

Only 7 or 8 per cent. (under 6½m. acres) of the total surface is cultivated. Cereals and potatoes account for more than a third, and land cropped for hay for more than a half. Potatoes are the heaviest crop (over a million tons), though occupying much less ground than any of the cereals with the exception of rye. Oats provide up to three-quarters of a million tons from over a million acres, while the combined totals for wheat, rye, and barley come to much the same figures. Livestock include 1·9m. cattle (the majority milch cows) and ¾m. sheep. The dairying industry has long been highly developed and before the Second World War there was an average annual export of 13,000 tons of butter and 5,000 tons of cheese. Since the war the export of cheese has revived (11–12,000 tons), but the export of butter is very uncertain (nil in 1955, 11,000 tons in 1956) and there is a similarly uncertain import.

Two special factors in Finland's post-war situation have led to radical changes in her economy. On the one hand she had to provide Russia with industrial products to the value of 300m. gold dollars, as reparations, spread over eight years from 1944. On the other hand, she had to accommodate some 425,000 refugees from the ceded or leased territories. The first claim was met by industrial

expansion, particularly in shipbuilding and the heavy engineering and metal industries, which were developed to supplement forest products. Nearly 200,000 of the refugees had been engaged in industry or trade and it was comparatively easy to find work for these in the enforced industrial boom. Farms and farm workers were a different proposition. They and their families came flooding into the republic to the number of nearly a quarter of a million. To meet this need, farm lands in Finland were redistributed. Large properties were bought or expropriated and split up; others were compulsorily reduced in size. About 80 per cent. of the farms now have a maximum of 25 acres of arable land.

Industrial development took on a permanent character; Russia undertook to provide a market for Finnish manufactures on an ordinary commercial basis, after the expiry of the reparations period. Meanwhile, Finland's normal export trade revived. At first she could do little more than meet the reparation claims, but as she recovered strength after the war, these were exceeded by her exports to Western Europe of her main source of economic wealth—timber and other forest products. The unit of currency, the Finnish mark, has a nominal sterling exchange value of just over a farthing (896 to the £). Imports in 1956 were valued at Fm. 203,552m. (£227m.) and exports at Fm. 177,987m. (£199m.). Crude forest products—wood and pulp—provided nearly half the exports; and manufactures of forest products, chiefly paper, provided another 30 per cent.; the two together making over three-fourths of the total. Of the imports, manufactures (including machinery) accounted for 60 per cent.; food (chiefly cereals, fruits, sugar and coffee) over 15 per cent.; and mineral fuels (including petroleum products) nearly 15 per cent.

The United Kingdom headed both the list of countries supplying Finland's imports and the list of countries taking her exports—accounting for nearly a fifth of the combined total. The U.S.S.R. was a good second on both sides of the account, and Western Germany and the United States came third and fourth.

Finland has a big advantage in her intricate system of lakes and connecting rivers and canals, which greatly facilitate the inland transport of timber to her sawmills and pulp mills, and to shipping points on the coast. The length of navigable waterways is some 2,700 miles, while waterways along which timber rafts can be floated extend to ten times that distance. In addition there are 3,155 miles of 5ft.-gauge railway, of which all but 100 miles are State owned.

Home of a seafaring people, Finland had a large fleet of tramp steamers before the Second World War. During the war she lost nearly half, and the best of what remained were handed over to Russia as part of the reparations. At the end of 1955, Finland had

593 merchant vessels of 749,000 gross tons, including 315 steamers of 434,000 tons. The main towns are nearly all ports, and many of them are shipbuilding centres. The capital, Helsinki (Helsingfors), is also the principal port; it lies on a fine harbour, and though hampered by ice in winter it can usually be kept open by ice-breakers. The principal manufacturing town, Tampere (Tammerfors), is one of the few important inland centres, situated on the shores of a lake. Known as the Manchester of Finland, it has a large textile industry, run by hydro-electric power generated from rapids which flow through the town. Turku (Åbo), situated on the south-west coast, opposite the Åland Islands, is the old capital; it has timber and wood-pulp industries, and, with the ports of Pori (Björneborg), Vaasa (Vasa), and Oulu (Uleåborg), all on the Gulf of Bothnia, handles the timber export trade and the import of foodstuffs and other goods.

The three largest towns, with their populations to the nearest thousand at the beginning of 1957, are Helsinki (426,000), Tampere (116,000), and Turku (114,000). After these there is a big drop to the next largest group: four towns with populations of between forty and sixty thousand, namely, Lahti (60,000, in the southern coastal plain to the north of the Gulf of Finland); Pori (49,000), Oulu (49,000), and Vaasa (42,000).

## SPAIN

Spain shares with Portugal possession of the Iberian Peninsula, which is about two and a half times the size of Britain but has only about three-fourths as many people. Spain has by far the larger share—85 per cent. of the area and nearly 80 per cent. of the population; it covers 190,000 square miles and supports 30m. people, an average of about 158 persons to the square mile. The density of population is highest round the coasts; large areas of the interior are very sparsely settled. This factor is explained partly by the character of the surface and the resulting poor communications, partly by the dry climate. South of the Pyrenees, which form the frontier with France, and the mountains at the back of the north coast, the greater part of the country is occupied by a tableland, with an average height of 2,600–2,700 feet, bordered everywhere except in the west by mountains and steep slopes, making railway construction difficult and costly, while the scanty population and restricted natural resources of large areas hold out little prospect of remunerative returns from schemes for development.



To add to the difficulties, strategic considerations and the national aloofness led to the Spanish railways being built on gauges other than the standard European gauge (4ft. 8½in.), so that through traffic with the outside world is impeded; not only have passengers to change trains at the French frontier, but goods have to be unloaded and loaded again. The same difficulty is not experienced at the Portuguese frontier, the principal Portuguese railways being on the same broad gauge as their neighbour's. As might be expected from the natural conditions, Spain's railway mileage is comparatively small (11,000; cf. France's 26,000). Nearly 75 per cent. (8,000 miles) have a broad gauge (5ft. 5½in.), while most of the rest are of metre gauge (3ft. 3·37in.). Routes over the plateau converge on Madrid or on local centres such as Salamanca and Valladolid; coastal lines converge on the leading ports—Barcelona, Valencia, Bilbao, and Cadiz.

The rivers of the peninsula, though of considerable length, add little to the means of communication. They are for the most part too much obstructed by shallows and rapids to be navigable for any great distance, and as their beds lie mostly in deep valleys below the level of the tableland, they cannot advantageously be connected by canals. All the main rivers except the Ebro flow westwards to the Atlantic, and often the lower, navigable stretches are within Portuguese territory. The Guadalquivir is the most important Spanish river as regards navigation; its volume is reasonably constant, being maintained in winter by rain, in summer by melting snows of the Sierra Nevada, the lofty range that borders its basin on the south. Ocean-going steamers can reach Seville, 70 miles from the sea, while strings of barges can go up to Cordoba, more than as far again. The only navigable river on the Mediterranean side is the Ebro, which allows small craft to ascend as high as Logroño, though sea-going vessels do not go beyond Tortosa, about 25 miles from the sea. The lower course of the river can be used by sea-going vessels only during high water, and a small canal has been cut to the sea from Amposta, above the delta, so that vessels may enter and leave at any time. Running parallel to the Ebro from Tudela to Zaragoza (Saragossa), a distance of about 60 miles, is a small canal, interesting as being, in part at least, one of the oldest canals in Europe; its construction was ordered in 1529, though most of it actually dates from the eighteenth century or later.

The climate of the interior is also unfavourable to any great density of population. Over the greater part, the total rainfall is under 20 inches a year, though the northern and north-western coasts receive a considerably higher fall, distributed throughout the year. Elsewhere, such little rain as there is occurs in winter, and the height of summer is a period of extreme drought, especially in the

southern half of the peninsula. Summer temperatures are high, and the whole peninsula, except for a comparatively small area in the north-west, has at least eight months with a mean daily temperature of 50° F. or more. Thus the most thinly peopled plateau areas are those of great heat and drought, in many places with only a thin soil-cover bearing little vegetation beyond a few tough grasses, herbs, and shrubs. Snow is rare, though winter temperatures on the plateau are low.

One advantage of the long hot summer is that valuable crops can be grown in quick succession wherever water is available for irrigation. In particular, the waters of the Ebro are being increasingly used in this way, and its almost desert-like natural basin is being turned into an agricultural region. Irrigation schemes dating back to the Moors, or even to the Romans, have made famous the *huertas* (horticultural lands) of Valencia and Murcia, the *huerta* of Elche, and the *vega* (agricultural plain) of Granada. A distinction is usually made between the *vegas*, which yield only one crop a year, and the *huertas*, which yield two or more. By the construction of dams and artificial lakes, the production of hydro-electrical power is associated with the irrigation works.

Despite the arid climate of the interior, Spain is predominantly a farming country, especially on the pastoral side. According to the United Nations *Yearbook of Food and Agricultural Statistics*, more than a quarter of the whole is classed as forested land, but of this over 90 per cent. (50,000 square miles) is used for grazing. In addition permanent meadows and pastures cover 36,000 square miles, while 77,000 square miles are arable or under tree crops. Over 25,000 square miles are built-on or waste.

Among the larger livestock sheep are far and away the most numerous—16.3m. over a year old in 1955. Cattle over a year old numbered 3m., horses 563,000, asses 675,000, mules 1m., pigs 6m., goats 3.4m. Cereals occupy 18.7m. acres, olives 5.5m. acres, vegetables 2.6m. acres, vineyards 3.9m. acres, fruit 1.5m. acres, while nearly 13½m. acres lie fallow.

In southern Spain, vegetables and fruit are the chief crops on the irrigated land, along with rice and maize. The principal maize areas, however, are in the wetter parts of the country (the north-west), where maize is the staple foodstuff. In Spain as a whole, wheat and barley are both much larger crops. Wheat will grow on the more fertile soils of the plateau, particularly around Valladolid, and altogether it accounts for more than half the total area under cereals, occupying over 10m. acres yielding as a rule over 4m. tons—13 to 16 bushels per acre. About half that quantity of barley is grown, and much smaller crops of oats and rye. Usually the wheat crop is insufficient for home needs.

Despite some falling off in production, Spain is still the world's

leading olive country. The trees are grown on the slopes behind the Mediterranean coastal plains, mainly for the oil extracted from the fruit. The yield is about one-fifth of the weight of the fruit. The refined oil is a valuable dollar export, and the United Kingdom is also a large importer.

Oranges are an even more valuable factor in Spanish foreign trade. They are grown chiefly in the Mediterranean provinces of Valencia and Castellon, and though the area devoted to them is relatively small, the crop averages in weight 60 per cent. of the olive crop before the extraction of oil, and has a very much larger export value.

Figs, pomegranates, and bananas are also among the sub-tropical fruits grown in Spain. Large quantities of wine are made, notably sherry, which came first from Spain (see p. 148). Other products include esparto grass—a wild product—and the cork oak, which has to stand for thirty years before it yields good cork, and then gives increasingly better cork at subsequent strippings, at intervals of about ten years, till the tree is perhaps 150 years old.

The mineral wealth of Spain is very abundant, and has been renowned for ages, though even yet it is far from being fully developed. Iron ore exists in immense quantity in the Basque provinces, and above all in the province of Viscaya. Bilbao, the port from which the ore is dispatched, is one of the most important iron-ore exporting ports in Europe. Santander and Murcia provinces also rank high in iron-ore production, while large quantities are also mined in the province of Almeria and near Seville, and smaller quantities in Malaga and in Lugo (north-west Spain, not far from Corunna). All these deposits furnish considerable quantities of ore rich in iron (for the most part from 48 to 60 per cent.), and sufficiently free from phosphorus to be used in the manufacture of steel by the Bessemer process. Many of the Cartagena mines have a poor iron content, but on the other hand they are mostly rich in manganese, and their phosphorus content is uniformly low. The deposits worked near Teruel in eastern Spain and exported from the port of Sagunto, while rich in iron, have a rather high proportion of phosphorus—from 0·06 to 0·39 per cent. The Viscaya deposits, which have been worked since ancient times, are apparently the nearest to exhaustion. Other parts of Spain (Leon, &c.) possess ores of lower quality which may come to be of importance. In 1956 4·3m. tons of iron ore were produced and 3·2m. tons exported. Production of pyrites was 2½m. tons and exports were 1½m. tons—nearly all iron pyrites, but including some cupreous.

The highest mineral production is actually that of coal (between 10m. and 11m. tons a year), the principal mines being in Asturias, in the north-east. A special railway runs from the mines to the exporting and distributing centre of Gijon; it is estimated that the potential

reserves are far higher than figures of actual production would show. Anthracite and lignite are also worked, and each yields annually around 2m. tons. Copper ores, with an estimated metal content of 17,000 tons in 1956, are mined at Rio Tinto, in the south-west, and lead and silver at Linares, to the south of the Sierra Morena. Large mercury deposits are worked in New Castile, at Almaden. Other minerals include phosphoric salts, zinc, tin, sulphur, manganese, and salt.

The situation of the chief seats of Spanish manufacturing industries has been determined more by conveniences for commerce than by local supplies of coal and iron. Electric power is being increasingly used in industry. Over 1,200 power stations had a capacity (1956) of 5.4m. h.p., and the total output registered was nearly 14,000m. kWh. The metallurgical industry, based on Spanish iron and coal, is concentrated on the north coast, where water-power from the Cantabrian Mountains is now used for smelting. Bilbao is the centre of the iron industries, and also of the iron export trade. Though in a position to supply all the coal she needs from her own mines, Spain has a large import of coal from the United Kingdom, in return for the exported iron ore. Principal industrial areas of the south are centred on the ports of Seville, Malaga, and Cartagena; Barcelona is the centre of the Catalanian textile industry, which produces both woollen and cotton goods. Esparto grass is the basis of paper manufacture, while Valencia and Murcia have silk industries, for which large numbers of silkworms are reared.

Over 600,000 tons of fish were caught in 1955 off the Spanish coasts, mostly sardines, tunny, and cod. A large amount is canned.

Since the overthrow of the Spanish monarchy, and the establishment of the present State in 1939, industrial and commercial concerns have been subjected to multiple regulations in the interests of labour and social welfare. A State body, *Instituto Nacional de Industria*, was established in 1941 to promote projects too big for private enterprise. Another State body, *Instituto de Colonizacion*, has been put in charge of land organisation.

The unit of currency, the peseta, varies in exchange value. It may be taken as roughly equivalent to two pence; in October 1958 the middle rate of exchange was 117 to the £. In the United Nations *Yearbook of International Trade Statistics*, Spain's imports and exports are valued in gold pesetas, worth about 2s. 4d. In 1958 imports amounted to 1,889m. gold pesetas (£220m.) and exports at 1,366m. (£159m.). Inedible crude materials, including mineral fuels, formed some 40 per cent. of the imports, with mineral oils and raw cotton as the outstanding items. Manufactures and machinery, with iron and steel and vehicles as prominent items, were another 38 per cent. Foodstuffs accounted for only 7 per cent., 1955 being a

good crop year; in poor crop years, wheat becomes a leading import. On the export side, food provided 45 per cent. of the total, fresh fruit alone accounting for 25 per cent. Oranges were by far the most valuable of all the individual exports, whether foodstuffs or minerals or manufactures. Crude materials, including mineral fuels, formed collectively 25 per cent. of the total, half of them being iron ores and non-ferrous ores and concentrates. Manufactures were less than 20 per cent. of the whole.

In order of value, the United States, France, United Kingdom, Germany and Arabia furnished well over half the imports; and, again in order of value, the United Kingdom, Germany, U.S.A., France and Brazil took well over half the exports.

Spain has many good ports to handle her foreign trade. The largest is Barcelona, with a fine sheltered harbour. Among others on the Mediterranean coast are Valencia, Alicante, Cartagena, and Malaga. On the Atlantic side of the Straits of Gibraltar, Cadiz has a good harbour and shares the trade of south-west Spain with Seville, on the Guadalquivir. On the north coast Bilbao is of prime importance, and other ports include San Sebastian, Santander, Gijon, and Corunna. Madrid, the capital, almost in the centre of the country, has a variety of industries, and is of first importance as a road and rail centre.

**The Balearic Islands**, ranging from 50 miles to 200 miles off the east coast of Spain, rise above the Mediterranean from submarine plateaus. Four well-known islands—Mallorca (Majorca), Menorca (Minorca), Ibiza (Iviza), Formentera—and seven islets, have a total area of 2,000 square miles and a population approaching half a million, the whole forming a province of Spain (Balears). The islands produce wheat, fruit, and olives; fruit and wine are exported, with a little iron from Minorca; coal, timber, fertilisers, and foodstuffs are imported. The capital, Palma (140,000), on Majorca, has a regular steamship service with Barcelona (150 miles). The principal towns of the other islands are Mahon on Minorca and Iviza on the island of the same name.

#### TOWNS WITH REGISTERED POPULATIONS OF OVER 100,000 IN 1955

Madrid . . . . .	1,767,000	Palma (Majorca) . . . . .	147,000
Barcelona . . . . .	1,361,000	Corunna . . . . .	141,000
Valencia . . . . .	542,000	Valladolid . . . . .	133,000
Seville . . . . .	404,000	San Sebastian . . . . .	120,000
Malaga . . . . .	288,000	Jerez de la Frontera . . . . .	120,000
Zaragoza . . . . .	281,000	Cartagena . . . . .	118,000
Bilbao . . . . .	252,000	Gijon . . . . .	115,000
Murcia . . . . .	235,000	Oviedo . . . . .	114,000
Cordoba . . . . .	180,000	Santander . . . . .	111,000
Granada . . . . .	163,000	Alicante . . . . .	109,000
Vigo . . . . .	155,000	Cadiz . . . . .	106,000

province of Beira farther north, and in the southern provinces of Algarve and Alentejo. There is a variable surplus for export.

There are (1958) no later figures for livestock than the census of 1940, when sheep numbered 4m., oxen nearly a million, and goats and pigs each 1½m., while horses were only 85,000.

Fishing is one of the most important industries, the chief catch being sardines. The bulk of the catch is tinned and forms the leading export (10–12 per cent.) after cork (16–20 per cent.) and textiles (12–13 per cent.). Centres of the industry are Matosinhos, in the neighbourhood of Oporto; Setubal, south of Lisbon; and Portimao and Olhao, on the south coast.

There is considerable mineral wealth, but its development is limited by the supply of electric power, which in 1956 amounted to 2,176m. kWh., mostly hydro-electric. Coal output in 1957 was ⅔m. tons, cupriferous pyrites ⅔m. tons, cement 1m. tons. Minor quantities of other minerals include a small but valuable export of wolframite. An important industry is the manufacture of cotton piece goods for the Portuguese colonies, for which 40–50,000 tons of raw cotton are imported yearly.

In the last thirty years Portugal has made great progress in many ways. Cities and towns have been replanned, with modern drainage systems, and good roads have replaced dusty tracks. Educational facilities have been increased and a drive made against illiteracy. Health insurance and other welfare schemes have been started, but the position of the workers is still precarious; a bad season can cause great unemployment in agriculture, and the same applies to the sardine industry.

The capital of the republic and its principal port is Lisbon, on the north shore of the Tagus estuary. The valley of the Tagus marks the division between the wetter, more prosperous northern part of Portugal, and the drier, less productive south. Lisbon is the focus of routes from all over the country and has a large passenger traffic, being the nearest European port to South America. The trade of northern Portugal passes through Oporto, on the River Douro, or through the modern port of Leixoes, just outside the river estuary, which has the advantage of easier approach, deeper water, and excellent facilities for handling goods. Lisbon, with a population of three-quarters of a million, and Oporto, with over a quarter of a million, are the only two large cities. After them there is a big drop to the next largest, Coimbra and Setubal, each with under 50,000.

The unit of Portuguese currency, the escudo, is worth about 3d. (middle rate of exchange in October 1957, 80½ to the £). Imports in 1956 were valued at Esc. 12,724m. (£158m.), exports Esc. 8,620m. (£107m.). Food imports were only 12 per cent. of the total; crude materials—largely mineral oils and raw cotton—were 30 per cent.;

and manufactures, including machinery, 46 per cent., with iron and steel as the largest item. Of the exports foodstuffs provided 20 per cent. Cork (18 per cent.), textiles (13), sardines (12), and wine (8) made up half the total.

Portuguese Africa (chiefly Angola and Mozambique) had the biggest share of the trade. Over half the imports came (in descending order) from Western Germany, the United Kingdom, Portuguese Africa, and U.S.A., while over half the exports, again in descending order, were taken by Portuguese Africa, the United Kingdom, U.S.A., and Western Germany.

The Azores, in mid-Atlantic, and Madeira (p. 717) are administered as parts of Portugal. The Azores comprise three groups of islands—total area 890 square miles; population 317,000 (1950 census). Cereals and fruits (oranges, pineapples, &c.) flourish and are exported. Chief port, Ponta Delgada (23,000), on St. Michael's.

## GIBRALTAR

Gibraltar, dominated by its famous Rock, occupies a narrow peninsula less than three miles long and about three-quarters of a mile wide, extending southwards from the south-west coast of Spain, with which it is connected by a sandy isthmus about a mile long and half a mile wide, rising only a few feet above sea-level. Barely a couple of square miles in area, with a civilian population of 28,000, Gibraltar's importance is chiefly strategical. It was ceded to Great Britain by the Treaty of Utrecht in 1713, after it had been seized in 1704 during the War of the Spanish Succession. The Rock, which rises to a height of 1,396 feet, descends almost sheer to the sea on its eastern side, and the town is huddled on the western slopes, overlooking the great harbour, symbol of Gibraltar's strength as a naval base commanding the entrance to the Mediterranean. It has the status of a British Crown Colony under a Governor and Executive Council, to which was added in 1950 a Legislative Council, with a majority of elected members. About half the wage-earners are employed in Service or other public duties. There is no land suitable for agriculture or other primary industries, but as a free port and coaling station Gibraltar attracts much shipping, and in recent years has developed a flourishing tourist trade. Changes in defence policy have led to a reduction of the garrison, and one of the old forts is being turned into a casino. Nearly 3,000 motor-cars serve the small population. In 1956 over 5,000 vessels, with a net tonnage of 10m., entered or cleared, and imports were valued at £8.4m., against exports (exclusive of petroleum and products) of under half a million.

## ITALY

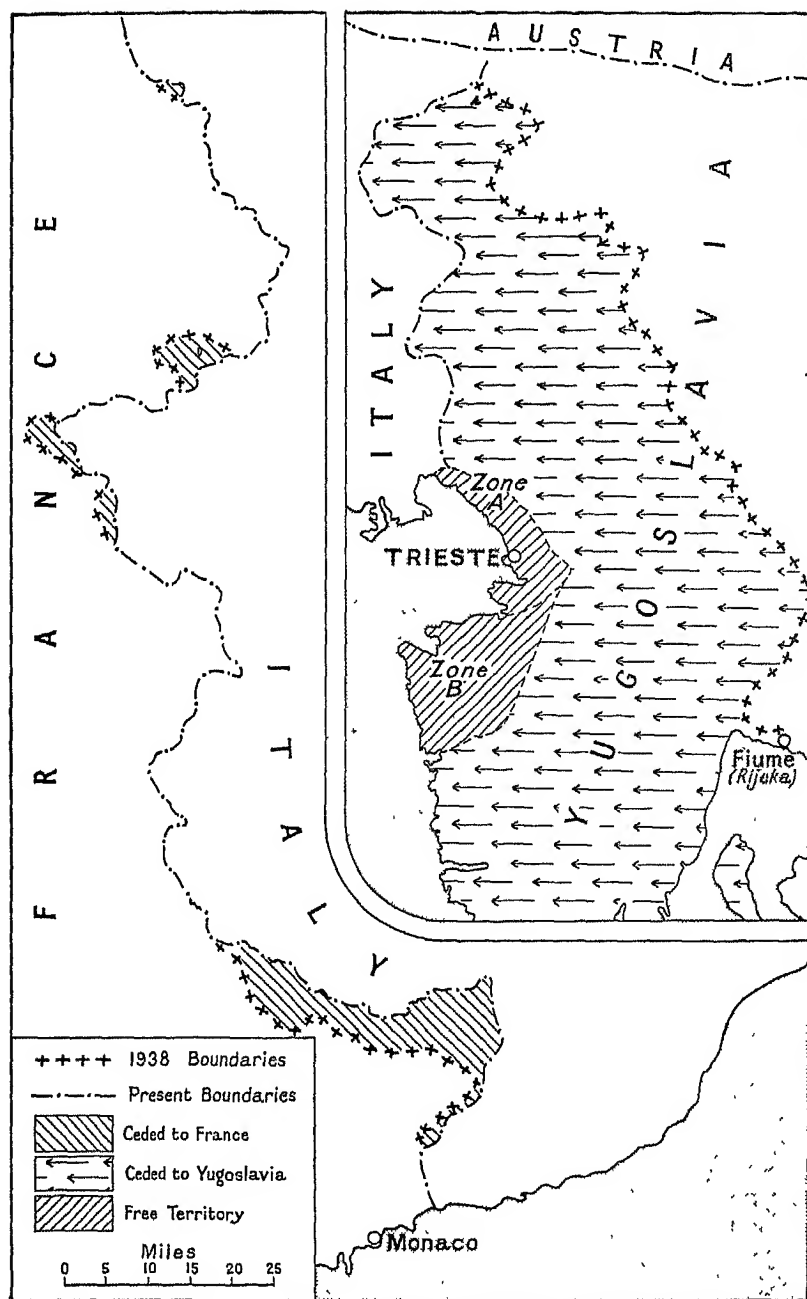
The Republic of Italy, established in 1946 after the Second World War, differs very slightly in area from the pre-war kingdom. Before the war Italy had an area of 120,000 square miles; she was left with 116,000 square miles—a territory nearly a third larger than Great Britain. Her population, 47m. at the 1951 census, was then slightly less than Britain's 49m. Estimate for 1958, 48·6m.

Under the Peace Treaty of 1947 Italy ceded four Alpine frontier districts to France, a considerably larger territory to Yugoslavia, including the port of Fiume (now combined with the Yugoslav port of Sušak and renamed Rijeka), the Dodecanese archipelago to Greece, and a small island to Albania. An enclave based upon Trieste was made a Free Territory (p. 448) and divided into two zones in the military occupation of Britain and U.S.A. (Zone A) and Yugoslavia (Zone B). Under a *de facto* arrangement in 1954, Zone A was handed over to Italy, under promise to maintain Trieste as a Free Port, while Yugoslavia retained Zone B, with boundary adjustments in her favour.

Though Italy's territorial losses were relatively small, the effects of the war on her industrial and financial economy were of a very different character. The exchange rate of the lira, which in 1939 stood at 85 lire to the £, rocketed to 1,750 to the £, and in 1956 her special imports (i.e., for home consumption) and special exports (i.e., of home produce) were each valued in the United Nations *Yearbook of International Trade* at between 1 and 2 million million lire. Their analysis is still a guide to the commercial resources and needs of the country. Imports were nearly half as much again as exports, with a value of 1,980,698m. lire, or, at the post-war rate of exchange already quoted, £1,132m. Food cost nearly 15 per cent., much of it for meat, wheat and maize. Fuel (coal, coke and petroleum) accounted for 20 per cent., and half as much again (30 per cent.) was spent on inedible raw materials for industry, chiefly cotton and wool. Together these imports made up about two-thirds of the whole, leaving over one-fourth for manufactures, with iron and steel, copper, and machinery as the predominant items.

On the other hand, manufactured goods provided the greater part (56 per cent.) of the exports, which were valued at 1,347,982m. lire (£770m.). Textile yarn and thread and textile fabrics (13 per cent.), and machinery and transport equipment (21 per cent.) constituted a third of the total. Food contributed 20 per cent. of the exports, fruit and nuts alone providing half of the amount, with





ITALY: FRONTIER MODIFICATIONS IN THE PEACE TREATY, 1947.



vegetables and rice as other leading items. Petroleum and products added another 8 per cent. to the export total.

Geographical factors enter largely into Italy's resources and needs. Structurally and climatically the country falls into two distinct regions, the northern plain and Alpine foothills, and the peninsula. The northern plain, tipped eastwards and drained to the Adriatic by the River Po and its tributaries, is shut in on the north and west by the great Alpine ranges, which cut Italy off from Central Europe; on the south by the Apennines, curving round from the western end of the Alps to traverse the length of the peninsula. In the natural trough between the two ranges, the plain has been built up by the collection of sediment, a process which is still going on, for the Po carries to the Adriatic every year sediment which is extending the coast eastwards. Adria, now 13 miles inland, was in Roman times an important port. Large tributaries from the Alps—the Dora Riparia, Dora Baltea, Ticino, Adda, and Chiese—have pushed the main river over to the southern side of its great plain. Dykes have been built to check flooding of the slow-moving, sediment-laden river, and its waters are used extensively for irrigation, for though there is a good summer rainfall, summer temperatures are high and many crops need irrigation. Winter is very cold in the plain, the Apennines cutting off the northern part of the country from the Mediterranean influences, and so subjecting it to the more extreme continental type of climate.

In spite of this, the fertile soil, summer rain, and abundant water render the Lombardy plain the most productive part of Italy. Small farms are the rule, often less than three acres, and primitive methods and implements, such as the wooden plough, are still in use in some localities, though much is being done by the government to sponsor mechanical farming methods, proper crop rotation and the use of artificial fertilisers. Hay is one of the main products, yielding everywhere three crops a year, and in places seven or eight; wheat and maize are also grown, and in the irrigated areas rice. Cattle raised on the rich meadows have a high milk yield, from which has arisen a large cheese-making industry; Gorgonzola, Parmesan, and Stracchino cheese are all made here. Flax and hemp are also grown, and the rearing of silkworms is an important occupation; mulberry trees are grown specially for their leaves, on which the young worms are fed.

The Italian peninsula can be said to begin at the foothills of the Apennines along the southern edge of the plain, this demarcation being very clearly followed by the straight, 165-mile long railway from Rimini on the Adriatic coast to Piacenza on the Po. From the western end of the Alps the Apennines swing across the peninsula to Ancona, enclosing the hilly country of Tuscany and

the Campagna on the west, then continue through the peninsula into Calabria (the 'toe' of Italy) and on into Sicily. With the exception of the Tiber (250 miles) in Tuscany, and the Arno (155 miles), rivers are short and flow directly to the sea from both sides of the range. The climate of the peninsula is typical of all Mediterranean countries—dry, hot summers, and mild, wet winters.

On the west coast of the peninsula there are four large plains among the hills of Tuscany and Campania: those of the Arno, the Ombrone, the lower Tiber, and that behind Naples. The Arno plain, with Florence at its head, has been drained, irrigated, and cultivated extensively, though farms are too small and often too poor to provide more than their own needs in foodstuffs. Wheat and grass crops are grown, with olives and the vine, and some of Italy's best known agricultural products come from this region—Chianti wine, Lucca olive oil, and Leghorn straw. The Ombrone valley, formerly a marshy and malarial region, has been reclaimed and is being resettled agriculturally. The plain of the lower Tiber, with Rome as its centre, is also a reclaimed marsh region, where farms and irrigation works have now been established. The city itself is built on hills overlooking the surrounding plain. The plain of Naples, the most densely settled part of Italy, is very intensively cultivated. With highly fertile soil and an almost sub-tropical climate it produces wheat and maize, oranges, lemons, olives, hemp, vegetables, and the vine.

The mountains themselves are largely given over to sheep grazing, though large chestnut forests flourish on the lower parts.

Sicily, separated from the 'toe' of Italy by the narrow Straits of Messina, has a good winter rainfall, and in places a highly fertile soil. Citrus fruits are grown on the coastal lowlands, with vines and olives; wheat is the chief crop in the interior, where sheep are also kept. Not much smaller—a fourth instead of a third as large again as Wales—is the island of Sardinia, over 100 miles from the west coast of Italy, but only seven miles south of Corsica. It is largely mountainous, barren and poverty-stricken, but supports 2m. sheep on rough hill pastures and has a considerable area under wheat. Its mineral resources are varied and extensive.

More than nine-tenths of Italy is occupied by farmlands and forests. Woods alone cover over 21,000 square miles, and pasture and rough grazing land nearly 20,000 square miles. Greater than either of these totals is the area devoted to cereals which is returned as nearly 27,000 square miles (over 17m. acres)—more than half the size of England. Wheat is by far the largest crop; it is grown on about 12m. acres and yields a harvest of from 7 to 9.5m. tons (250–350m. bushels). Yet even this large crop is not enough for home consumption, and imports of wheat, while naturally varying

with the season, have ranged up to 50m. bushels. A noted feature of the home production is a hard wheat grown in Apulia; it is especially suitable for making macaroni. Maize, the second largest though much smaller cereal crop, covers some 3m. acres and produces some 2 to 3m. tons. Other cereal crops—oats, barley, rye—are cultivated in the hill country, but on a much smaller scale.

Vineyards occupy 2½m. acres, and vines are grown in the midst of other crops on a further 7m. acres. In 1955 the production of wines amounted to some 1,200m. gallons, and there is a considerable export. Similarly, while olive groves occupy some 2m. acres, olive trees are grown among other crops on a further 3½m. acres; and olive oil is extracted from the fruits to the extent of 180–280,000 tons a year. Citrus fruits, chiefly oranges and lemons, grow profusely and in 1955 yielded a crop of a million tons. Sugar-beet is prolific, and in recent years the area under cultivation has been increased to over half a million acres, yielding 9m. tons of beets in 1955. Apart from its fodder value, over a million tons of raw sugar is obtained from this crop. Chemical fertilisers are largely used on the land—about 3½m. tons a year, over half the total being superphosphate.

Livestock include 9·5m. sheep, 8·7m. cattle, 3·7m. pigs, a million donkeys and mules, and 600,000 horses.

Since the Second World War and the formation of the republic, laws have been passed providing for the expropriation of large estates and their subdivision into peasant holdings. The area involved is 1½m. acres, and there have been many delays in giving effect to the new laws. At times these delays have given rise to widespread disturbances, involving attempts to seize some of the estates. By the end of 1955 nearly ¾m. acres had been distributed to peasant farmers.

Italy is not well supplied with mineral wealth, and needs large mineral imports to meet her industrial requirements. Under the early stimulus of war, the combined output of iron pyrites and iron ore amounted to 2½m. tons in 1941, and though there was later a big drop, an output of 3m. tons (ore 1½m., pyrites 1½m.) had been developed by 1956. The production of pig-iron is nearly two million tons, and with the aid of domestic and imported scrap an output of some 6m. tons of ingot and casting steel has been achieved. About a million and a half tons of coal and similar fuels are produced annually and several times that quantity has to be imported, though the deficiency is partly made good by the use of hydro-electric power, which has been and is being largely developed. The total electric power generated in 1955 was upwards of 38,000m. kWh., over 80 per cent. of which was hydro-electric. Most of the supply is generated in northern Italy, though the south provides a considerable share, especially in winter, when the stations in the

Alpine foothills are hampered by lower water levels. The output of petroleum is comparatively trifling, but supplies of natural gas (methane) were discovered in the Po valley in 1949 in the course of prospecting for oil.

The only minerals producing any notable surplus for export are sulphur and mercury. Italy vies with Spain as the world's chief producer and exporter of mercury (quicksilver). Since the Second World War she has produced over 4m. lb. a year. Sulphur rock, mined in Sicily in the neighbourhood of Caltanissetta, Girgenti, and Catania to the amount of about 2m. tons a year, is Italy's most important mineral product from the point of view of international trade. The potential supplies are vast. It is calculated that over the past hundred years Sicily has produced 25m. tons from an area smaller than Middlesex, and this is less than 10 per cent. of the total. But the mining methods are primitive, and not only has production dwindled, but without radical changes it is unlikely to increase again to former levels.

Lead and zinc are mined in Sardinia, bauxite in the Abruzzi. Building and decorative stones are a valuable asset; the celebrated statuary marbles of Carrara and Massa come from the Apuan Hills north of Pisa.

Industry in Italy is concentrated mainly in the northern plain, and owes its modern development largely to hydro-electric power. In the forefront are textile manufactures. There are nearly 1,000 cotton factories with nearly 6m. spindles, and over 1,000 factories for combing or spinning or weaving wool. Their products are important items of the export trade, and so are rayon ('artificial silk') and pure silk. The production of rayon has increased very rapidly and in 1955 approached 150,000 tons. Silk culture is practised all over Italy, though mainly in the north. Over a million spindles are engaged in the industry, and though production has declined, the output of raw silk in 1955 was over 1,500 tons.

Iron and steel industries are widespread, the chief centres being Milan, Savona (west of Genoa), Terni (between Perugia and Rome), which has the benefit of water-power from the Nera; and the Isle of Elba, where locally mined iron ores are smelted on the spot. A great chemical industry has grown up, utilising Italian sulphur, borax, and other raw materials in the manufacture of sulphuric acid (3m. tons in a year), fertilisers, and other chemicals. Motor-cars are another important manufacture, both for the home market and for export.

Other characteristic manufacturing industries are mainly those of an artistic or semi-artistic nature. Venetian glass and Murano lace have long been famous. Florence produces fine earthenware and mosaics; many Italian towns are famed for their sculptures in marble and alabaster and their artistic woodwork. Milan is the

chief seat of Italian cutlery manufacture; Tuscany is well known for straw plaiting, and there is a growing leather industry.

Italy has many large cities which enjoy world-wide renown for their associations with history and art, but are less widely recognised as centres of industry and trade. Rome, Milan, and Naples have each over a million inhabitants. Rome, the largest as well as the capital city, owes its pre-eminence more perhaps to historical than to geographical circumstances; but its situation is not without geographical advantages. It lies about midway between the north and the south of the republic, on the chief river of the peninsula. It has the usual variety of industries associated with capital cities—food preparation, furniture and clothing, luxury goods, &c. Ostia, on a former mouth of the Tiber, was the old-time port; now Civitavecchia, further to the north, handles most of the sea-borne traffic. Milan, next to Rome in size and the chief business centre in Italy, became a great seat of trade at a very early date, chiefly in consequence of its central position in one of the most fertile parts of the northern plain. Routes over the Alps converged there by way of the shores of Lakes Maggiore and Como, and this advantage was increased later by the St. Gotthard and Simplon railways. Naples, apart from its fine harbour and maritime trade, has such abundance of labour that it has become the seat of various manufactures, including textiles, for which otherwise it offers no particular advantage.

Among other large cities, taken in order from north to south, Turin, at the head of boat navigation on the Po, and at the junction of the Mont Cenis route with the railways of the plain of Lombardy, has iron and steel industries, and notable motor-car works. The two great ports of northern Italy, established as such in the Middle Ages and maintaining that position to-day, are Genoa and Venice. The canals of Venice are not only the home of the gondola. Deep-water channels give access to a commercial harbour with accommodation for vessels of over 20,000 tons. On the opposite side of Italy, Genoa's fine natural harbour, though backed by the Apennines, has easy access to the northern plain through the Bochetta Pass, which lies behind the town. Florence, chief town of Tuscany, is an important route centre between the Arno plain and northern Italy. It became a great trade centre at an early date, and later developed many banking interests. It was as a wealthy city that it attracted the painters, musicians, and other artists who brought it artistic fame.

Besides those already mentioned, important ports along the west coast include Spezia and Leghorn; along the east coast, Ancona, Bari, and Taranto. Reggio, in the 'toe' of Italy, looks across Messina Strait to Sicily, where the largest ports are Palermo, Catania, and Messina.

## ITALIAN COMMUNES WITH OVER 100,000 PEOPLE (1951 CENSUS)

Rome . . . . .	1,695,000	Verona . . . . .	187,000
Milan . . . . .	1,273,000	Taranto . . . . .	174,000
Naples . . . . .	1,028,000	Padua . . . . .	173,000
Turin . . . . .	720,000	Brescia . . . . .	147,000
Genoa . . . . .	683,000	Leghorn . . . . .	146,000
Palermo (Sicily) . . . . .	501,000	Cagliari (Sardinia) . . . . .	142,000
Florence . . . . .	391,000	Roggio di Calabria . . . . .	139,000
Bologna . . . . .	349,000	Ferrara . . . . .	135,000
Venice . . . . .	323,000	Parma . . . . .	123,000
Catania (Sicily) . . . . .	300,000	Modena . . . . .	113,000
Bari . . . . .	273,000	Spezia . . . . .	112,000
Trieste . . . . .	270,000	Reggio nell'Emilia . . . . .	107,000
Messina (Sicily) . . . . .	221,000	Bergamo . . . . .	105,000

## MALTA

Malta holds a key position in the heart of the Mediterranean, 60 miles south of Sicily and three times that distance from the North African coast. A British possession since early in the nineteenth century, it won high renown by its successful resistance to enemy attacks in the Second World War, thereby gaining both the George Cross award, and responsible government.

In 1955 a round-table conference on the future of Malta advocated its integration in the United Kingdom, with three Maltese members in the British House of Commons and regular British financial assistance, foreshadowed at some £4-5m. a year. These proposals were approved in principle by the British Government and accepted in Malta by a large majority at a referendum in February 1956. Owing partly to Malta's increasing financial demands and partly to a change in British naval policy affecting the volume of employment in the dockyard at Valetta, negotiations to implement the scheme of integration proved abortive. The British Government arranged to hand over the dockyard to a ship-repairing company, and to assist financially in providing continued employment for Maltese workers no longer needed by the Admiralty, but the Maltese Government, objecting to the transfer, refused to co-operate and finally resigned in April 1958. The Governor took over control, and with the Maltese leaders remaining obdurate, industrially and politically, the British Government revoked the constitution in January 1959, and introduced an interim form of government by council. Grants of up to £29m. during the next five years were promised towards Malta's financial needs, including support for the dockyard under its new management, which was granted a 99-year lease from the end of March.



Malta comprises the island of that name (95 square miles), the neighbouring island of Gozo (26 square miles), and little Comino (one square mile)—a total area of 122 square miles, which is about one-sixth smaller than the Isle of Wight. On the other hand, the estimated population (1957) of 317,000 is more than three times that of the Isle of Wight, the average density being 2,600 to the square mile. Rather more than half the area—some 47,000 acres—is classed as productive, and this is divided into over 12,000 holdings, averaging 3–4 acres. Wheat and barley are the chief cereals, and large quantities of potatoes and grapes are grown. Among livestock, nearly half the total, apart from poultry, are goats; the number on agricultural holdings was 45,000 in 1955.

Malta itself consists of a low plateau descending to a south-eastern plain. The capital, Valetta, with its great harbour and dock-yard, is well situated on the north-east coast; it has a population of nearly 20,000, and with suburbs some 60,000. Over 1,700 vessels averaging 1,350 tons entered the port in 1955. Various light industries are carried on, mostly on a small scale. Nearly all towns and villages are supplied with electricity, consumption in 1955–56 amounting to over 38m. kWh. Nothing illustrates Malta's unbalanced economy so forcibly as the trade returns. In 1956, general imports, less re-exports, were valued at £23·8m., against exports of £14m. Food accounted for over 40 per cent. of the retained imports.

## BULGARIA

The People's Republic of Bulgaria was established in 1946 in place of the monarchy. Extending southward from the lower Danube (except in the Dobruja), and westward from the Black Sea coast, it is midway in size (43,000 square miles) between Ireland and England, and has a population of over 7½m. A treaty of co-operation with the Soviet Union was entered into in 1948.

The country is predominantly agricultural, even though much of its surface is mountainous. The northern plains, sloping down to the Danube on the north, are broken by irregular tablelands covered by clay and loess soils over a calcareous subsoil. The general appearance is somewhat arid, but this is a great grain-growing region, producing over half the country's wheat and maize. Only in the valleys and depressions are trees and pasture found, the higher land between being windswept and open. The Balkan Mountains, forming the southern rim of the Danube plains, are generally forested, the higher slopes serving as summer pastures for sheep.

In the valleys and clearings the more hardy cereals—barley, rye, buckwheat—and potatoes are grown, varied with fruit and fine pasture land. South again, the basin of the Marica (Maritsa) is characterised by numerous isolated depressions, where cold air is apt to accumulate in winter, forming 'frost pockets,' so that the more delicate fruit trees are forced up to the slopes with a good exposure and a good air drainage. Wheat and maize, sugar-beet, tobacco, vines, and fruit are grown here, while around Kazanlik, in the tributary valley of the Tundza, are the rose gardens from which the famous perfume, attar of roses, is produced. The industry is now a government monopoly. The Rhodope Mountains provide hill pasture for sheep and goats in the south-west, and forested areas in the west.

Nearly 50 per cent. of the total area of the country is classed as cultivated, and 30 per cent. as forest land. Between a third and a half of the cultivated area is devoted to wheat and maize, the area under wheat being roughly double the area under maize. Other cultivated products include sugar-beet, cotton, tobacco, grapes for wine, and silk-worm cocoons. Livestock numbered, in 1955, nearly 8m. sheep,  $\frac{3}{4}$ m. goats, 1·8m. cattle,  $1\frac{1}{2}$ m. pigs, and  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. horses.

Since the close of the Second World War, land has been redistributed and the size of farms limited to 50 acres. Attendant on this development, the Soviet system of collective farming has been introduced, under the direct supervision of Soviet authorities.

The principle of State ownership and control has also been extended to industry, including private business but excluding foreign and co-operative enterprises. Bulgaria has considerable mineral wealth, notably good coal and lignite deposits, but for the most part they are not easily accessible. Production in 1956 was 10·3m. tons. A new field is being opened up in the Balkan Mountains. Bauxite, iron ore, lead, zinc, copper, manganese and salt are also mined. Oil has been located and is being developed. Electric power, now in the hands of the State, increased to 2,397m. kWh. in 1956.

The Bulgarian unit of currency linked with the Russian rouble, is the lev (pl. levâ), which has a sterling value of just over a shilling (leva 19·04 to the £). Particulars of the foreign trade, as first given in the United Nations *Yearbook of International Trade Statistics* for 1956, valued the imports in that year at Leva 1,696m. (£89m.) and the exports at Leva 2,307m. (£121m.). Both figures were considerably more than in 1955, when imports were valued at Leva 1,324m. (£69·5m.) and exports at Leva 1,560m. (£81·9m.). An analysis of the trade in 1955 in terms of U.S. dollars showed that food was less than 5 per cent. of the imports, while manufactures (mostly machinery and transport equipment) were more than half the total, and crude and partly manufactured articles provided the rest. On the other hand,

food provided over half the exports, and manufactures less than a fifth (mostly textiles), while crude and partly manufactured articles made up the balance.

Nearly half the trade was with the U.S.S.R., the other leading countries as regards both imports and exports being East Germany and Czechoslovakia, followed by Hungary, Roumania and Poland, these half-dozen countries accounting for between 80 and 90 per cent. of the trade.

The capital, Sofia, in the far west of Bulgaria, at the northern end of the Rhodope Mountains, lies at an elevation of nearly 1,800 feet, and is subject to considerable extremes of summer heat and winter cold. It is an important route focus and the centre of a plain (ringed round by mountains), producing rose oil, tobacco, and sugar-beet. The country's principal lignite field lies to the south-east of the city. Plovdiv (Philippopolis), on the Marica; Ruse (Rustchuk), on the Danube; and Pleven are the other principal inland centres. The principal ports are Varna and Burgas on the Black Sea. Populations in 1956 (census):

Sofia	.	.	.	643,747	Ruse	.	.	.	83,472
Plovdiv	.	.	.	162,518	Burgas	.	.	.	72,795
Varna	.	.	.	119,769	Pleven	.	.	.	57,758

## GREECE

Since its formation in 1830 the Greek monarchy has suffered many vicissitudes, including a period between the two World Wars when it was superseded by a republic; but so far from its chequered career having led to any diminution of the kingdom, accretions of territory have doubled the area, which now extends to 51,000 square miles (almost exactly equal to that of England), with a population at the 1951 census of 7.6m. (less than that of Greater London). Overrun by enemy troops in the Second World War, and torn by civil strife, Greece had its internal economy so deranged that production was less than before the war, especially in the case of minerals; but recent years have seen a marked recovery.

Three-fourths of the kingdom is mainland, and the other quarter is made up by the numerous islands around the coasts, by Crete, and by the Dodecanese (these last having been ceded by Italy to Greece in 1947). The greater part of the country is mountainous, the only considerable plains being in the valleys of the River Salamvrias in Thessaly, the rivers Vardar, Struma, and Marica at the head of the Ægean Sea, and between Patras and Pyrgos on the north-west coast of the Peloponnese, the southern peninsula of Greece, which is all but cut off from the rest of the mainland by the Gulf of

Corinth, the natural severance being completed artificially by the Corinth Ship Canal across the narrow connecting isthmus. In the United Nations *Yearbook of Food and Agricultural Statistics*, over 25 per cent. of the land is classed as arable, nearly 40 per cent. as pastoral and 15 per cent. as forested; but in practice the area that can be put to profitable use is limited by the mountainous terrain, the hot dry climate, and the porous limestone which predominates in the mountainous regions. Much of the cultivable land is poor soil, subject to erosion, inadequately fed with fertilisers, and yielding meagre crops. Despite these restrictions, over half the working population is engaged in agricultural pursuits. The dry summers favour wheat, which is by far the largest crop (1½m. tons from 2½m. acres). Maize, barley, and oats, in descending order, are considerable though much smaller crops; comparatively little rye is grown. All told, these food crops are quite inadequate for the national need.

The most numerous livestock are sheep (8·7m. in 1955) and goats (4·6m.). Cattle are fewer than 1m.; the summers are too hot and dry for much larger numbers. There are only 600,000 pigs, while horses, mules and asses total a million—half of them asses.

Greece has varied mineral wealth, but is handicapped by her poverty in fuel. She has lignite, and since the war has raised the output to ¾m. tons, but the quality is poor. Minerals with a pre-war export trade which has been revived include iron ore of good quality (400,000 tons exported in 1956), pyrites (200,000 tons), magnesite (56,000 tons), and chrome ore (40,000 tons). Bauxite has also come to the fore, with a production and export of two-thirds of a million tons in 1956.

Most of the peasants plant a 'money' crop, usually tobacco or the currant vine. Tobacco is an expensive but very profitable crop. It has expanded greatly since the war and is grown on over 300,000 acres yielding around 100,000 tons. Half of this is exported, and in 1956 tobacco provided a third of all the exports by value. Around a million tons of grapes are grown, and dried fruits (currants, sultanas, figs) provided 16 per cent. of the exports by value. Another 15 per cent. was contributed by raw cotton, which is also largely used locally in a well-established textile industry. Until a few years ago all the cotton grown in the country was absorbed by the local industry. Then the crop began to exceed local requirements and now it provides one of the leading exports. Other exports include olives, wine and sponges.

These and other exports are very necessary to help pay for essential imports—foodstuffs (wheat, meat and flour), fuels (coal and oil), as well as basic raw materials and manufactures. Greece is far from being on a self-supporting basis; her imports are more than double her exports in value, the difference being met by various

international aid organisations in ways designed to help her to become self-supporting.

The unit of currency is the drachma (pl. drachmæ), which after frequent changes was given in 1954 an exchange value of 84 to the £ (30 to the U.S. dollar). In 1956 imports were valued at Dr. 13,911m. (£153·7m.) and exports at Dr. 5,698m. (£67·8m.). As already noted, tobacco, dried fruits and cotton provided two-thirds of the exports. Manufactures were less than 5 per cent.—little more than half the export of crude minerals. On the import side, food accounted for over 20 per cent. (half of it wheat, meat and fish); crude materials, including fuel, required another 20 per cent.; and manufactures nearly 50 per cent., including over 5 per cent. for ships.

The United States, Western Germany and the United Kingdom furnished just on half the imports in more or less equal shares, with Italy as the next largest source of supply. Western Germany took the biggest share of the exports (20 per cent.), followed by France, U.S.A., Italy, and the United Kingdom, with 10 to 13 per cent. apiece.

Outside the cities, industrial development is small, and mainly confined to the preparation of agricultural produce (wine-making, currant drying, extraction of olive oil, &c.), and to small textile and chemical works. The larger industries are almost entirely concentrated in the Athens area, the capital having grown up where the north-south land routes crowd together to cross the Isthmus of Corinth into the Peloponnese. New works have given the city an adequate water supply for the first time. Piræus, the port for Athens, is the principal outlet for the country's trade, and has a number of industries concerned with food preparation, engineering, and textiles. It includes a fiscal Free Zone of 45 acres.

Thessaloniki, better known as Salonika, at the head of the gulf of that name, is the port for northern Greece and the terminus of routes from Central and Eastern Europe *via* the Vardar valley. There is a Free Zone of over 55 acres, and also a smaller Yugoslav Free Zone—important in connection with efforts to develop trade between Greece and its big northern neighbour. Other ports include Patras, near the entrance to the Gulf of Corinth, which exports most of the currant crop; Volos, on the east coast; Kavalla, at the head of the Ægean Sea; and Corfu, on the island of that name, off the north-west coast. The once famous Corinth has long been in ruins, after repeated earthquakes. The modern town is between three and four miles to the north-east and about two miles from the western end of the Corinth Canal; it is quite small. The canal is nearly four miles long, has a surface width of 80 feet, and is navigable by vessels drawing up to 26 feet. It was wrecked during the Second World War but has since been rebuilt and reopened. Greece also suffered heavy losses in her large merchant fleet. Owing to the

difficult country much of her foreign trade has always been carried by sea rather than by rail—in normal times over 90 per cent. of the total trade goes this way. Nearly three-quarters of the 1939 tonnage was lost, but these losses have been largely restored. The railways—also largely destroyed in the war—have likewise been renewed. They have a length of nearly 1,700 miles. Roads—two-thirds of them earth roads—have a length of 14,000 miles.

**Crete.** Situated to the south-east of the mainland, some 200 miles from Piræus, Crete is a long narrow island lying east-west, with a mountain chain stretching its entire length. Its area is about 3,250 square miles (nearly half the size of Wales) and it has a population approaching half a million. Agricultural and pastoral industry is the economic mainstay of the island, which raises fruits, olives, and grain, and provides pasture for sheep and goats. There are three principal harbours, all on the north coast—Canea, Heraklion (formerly Candia), and Rethymno. The south coast is steep and harbourless.

**The Dodecanese** ('Twelve Islands'), situated off the south-west coast of Asia Minor, came under Greek influence and were so named in the ninth century A.D. Later they came under Turkish rule, passed to the Italians in their war with Turkey in 1912, and to Greece (the population being largely Greek) after the Second World War. In modern usage the term includes fourteen islands, the largest and most important being Rhodes, not one of the original twelve, but famous in the Ægean from even earlier days (the Colossus of Rhodes was one of the seven wonders of the ancient world), and afterwards the home of the Knights of St. John of Jerusalem.

All told, the islands cover over 1,000 square miles and have a population of over 120,000. They are subject to earthquakes. Next to Rhodes, the most important are Leros (used by the Italians as a naval base), and Cos. They embrace fertile tracts, intensively cultivated, and produce for export fruit and vegetables, grain and wine, cotton and silk. Two of the islands, Kelimnos and Symi, are centres of the sponge-fishing industry in the eastern Mediterranean.

Athens is the outstanding city of Greece in population as in age-long fame. At the 1951 census, Greater Athens had 1,368,000 inhabitants, including Piræus (185,000), while the populations of the next largest towns were:

Thessalonki	.	.	216,838		Volos	.	.	.	51,134
Patras	.	.	88,414		Larissa (Thessaly)	.	.	.	43,163
Heraklion (Crete)	.	.	54,541		Kavalla	.	.	.	42,250

## ALBANIA

The Republic of Albania—declared as such in 1946 after the formal deposition, *in absentia*, of the King, who had fled the country in 1939, when it was occupied by Italy—comprises over 11,000 square miles, mostly of wild mountainous land on the eastern shore of the Adriatic—an area about half as large again as that of Wales. The population of 1.39m. (census, 1955)—about half that of Wales—is mainly engaged in agriculture and animal husbandry, especially the latter. Before the war, field crops were reckoned to form about 6 per cent. of the total area, and were limited to the coastal plains. About the same area was devoted to other forms of cultivation, and cattle and sheep grazing accounted for a further 30 per cent., leaving well over half the total area covered either with forests or with swamps and other waste land. It was estimated before the Second World War that the livestock in the country included 1½m. sheep, nearly a million goats, and a third of a million cattle. In 1955 it was claimed that the area of arable land had been more than doubled, but the numbers of livestock are said to have declined. The principal crops are maize and wheat, with tobacco and olives. An annual wool clip of some 2,200 tons of greasy wool is made up into coarse cloth for export. In general, post-war statistics for Albania are not included in the United Nations *Yearbook of Food and Agricultural Statistics*, but exceptionally the republic is credited with the production of 13,000 tons of raw sugar in 1955 and 1,400 tons of tobacco in 1954. Up to the issue for 1957 (New York, 1958), no returns for Albania were given in the U.N. *Yearbook of International Trade Statistics*.

There is considerable mineral wealth, though little development had taken place up to the Second World War. Copper, bitumen, and salt are worked; oil wells, principally at Kosova, produce enough (¼m. tons) for Albania's own needs, and have yielded a surplus for export. Industrial activity is very slight, but development under Cominform supervision is reported to be taking place, and two hydro-electric power plants have been established. Very little post-war information is available. Both the United Kingdom and the United States have broken off relations with the government.

The capital, which has an estimated population of 50,000, is Tirana, in the heart of the republic. There are four ports, Durrës (Durazzo), Vlonë (Valona), Šarandë (Porto Edda), and Shengjin (San Giovanni de Medua). Railways from Durrës to Tirana and from Durrës to Elbasan have a length of 60 miles.

## EASTERN EUROPE

The Tsarist throne of the Russian Empire was overthrown by revolution before the end of the First World War. The marginal, non-Russian areas declared independence or joined neighbouring States, whereas the Russian core of the European part of the former Empire emerged as a communistic State. It took two years to master Siberia and Turkistan, hostile to the new régime. The national republics of the Caucasus and the Ukraine, although resisting the Russian communistic role, were not strong enough to defend their independence. The new Soviet State signed treaties of peace with their western neighbours who were recognised as independent: Finland, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, and Poland. Bessarabia joined Roumania.

In the years which followed, the hold of Moscow over such smaller units as Georgia and Azerbaijan became stronger as the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics developed its successive five-year plans for the economic advancement of the whole. Then came the Second World War with a temporary pact between Germany and the U.S.S.R., dividing the erstwhile Poland between them. The Baltic States, parts of Finland and Poland, Bessarabia and part of Bukovina were incorporated in the Soviet Union, which extended its influence and control to the Central European States, called since 'satellites.' Because the U.S.S.R. adopted for her own nationals and her satellite States a policy of isolation from the rest of the world, it has become common to refer to the Iron Curtain and the countries behind the curtain—including Poland, Czechoslovakia, Hungary, Roumania, Bulgaria and Albania but not Yugoslavia.

## THE BALTIC STATES

Along the east coast of the Baltic Sea south of the Gulf of Finland are the three small republics which became independent after the First World War, only to be absorbed into the U.S.S.R. during the Second World War.

**Estonia** had long been a buffer State between Sweden and Russia. In its physical features it is part of the great Russian plain, and agriculture and dairy farming are the chief occupations of the



1·1m. people that inhabit its 18,000 square miles. Tallinn, or Reval, is its chief town.

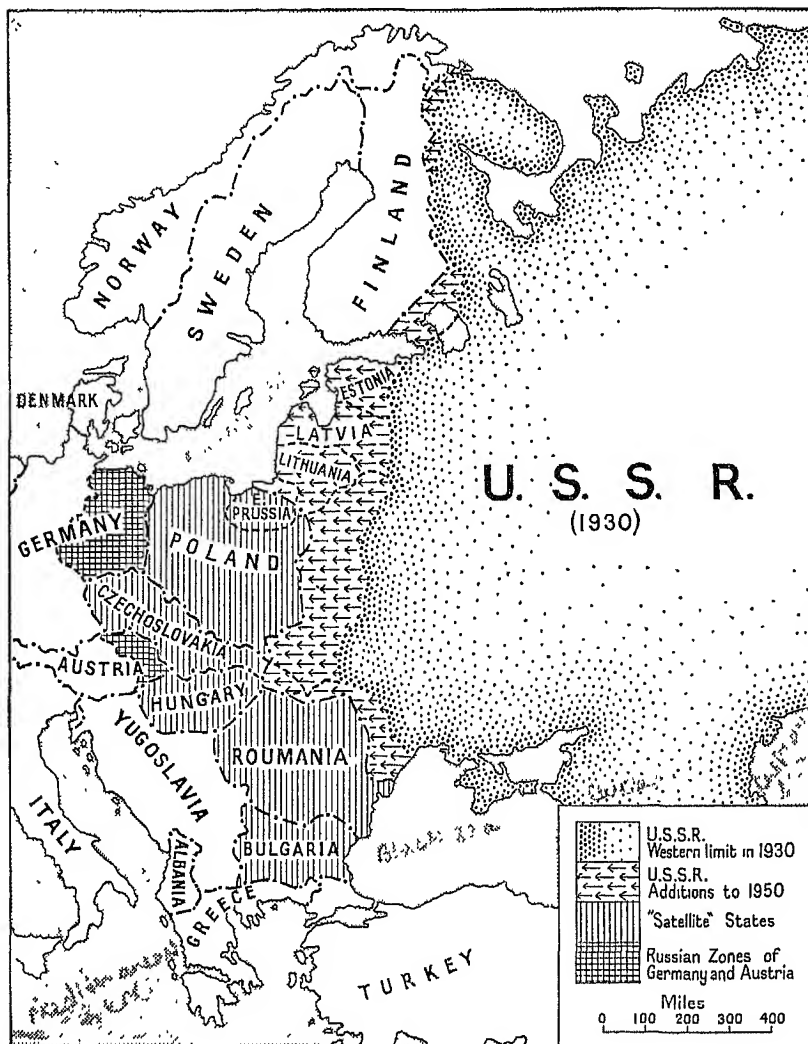
**Latvia** was larger than Estonia and about the same size as the Irish Republic. The population of Latvia reaches about 2m. Again, it is mainly an agricultural country with those crops which characterise the northern part of the great Russian plain, such as oats and rye, with smaller quantities of barley, potatoes, and flax. The forests which cover parts of the country gave exports of timber. The output of flax is very important, and was a leading export, though butter was also significant. The capital, Riga, an important town, at the head of the Gulf of Riga, was a natural outlet for much of Russia; it was really the frontier town between Western Europe and Russia, in that it was here that the railways changed from the standard gauge of Western Europe to the broad gauge of Russia.

**Lithuania** lies to the south of Latvia and agrees with it in its general characteristics and in its produce. After the First World War Lithuania was allotted a tiny strip of coast only, but afterwards detached from Germany what is the natural outlet of the country, the Lithuanian-speaking port of Memel. The Lithuanian S.S.R. with its capital at Vilnius is now almost exactly the same size as Latvia (25,000 square miles) and has 2·7m. people (1956).

#### U.S.S.R.<sup>1</sup>

During the hundred years which preceded the First World War the Russian Empire had steadily expanded from Europe right across the north of Asia to the Pacific coast, and southwards to the mountainous borders of Afghanistan and Persia, so as to include what is now Soviet Turkistan. In October 1917 came the Bolshevik Revolution after the overthrow of the Tsarist régime; in the subsequent settlement Finland became independent, the three small Baltic States of Estonia, Latvia, and Lithuania were carved out of what was formerly the Russian Empire and a further tract of country on the western margin became part of the new State of Poland. But there remained an area of over 8½m. square miles with a population approaching 170m. With the frontier adjustments which followed the Second World War—including the absorption of a strip of Finland, the whole of Estonia, Latvia, and Lithuania as well as large sections of Poland and Roumania, the area was increased to over 8½m. square miles with a population which was

<sup>1</sup> We are greatly indebted to Professor Bogdan Zaborski of McGill University for his careful revision of this section. In accordance with his suggestion we have used the term Soviet Union or U.S.S.R. (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics) where the reference is to the whole area and have restricted the adjective Russian to the Russian Soviet Federal Socialist Republic, which comprises three-quarters of the whole.



THE WESTWARD ADVANCE OF RUSSIA, 1930-1950.

Eastern Germany or the German Democratic Republic remains a republic on the Soviet model, but Russian forces were withdrawn completely from Austria in 1955.

given in 1941 as 193m. and officially recorded as 200,200,000 at the census of 1956. Like the continental United States, the U.S.S.R. is a continuous mass of land, but has an area three times as large; over 5,000 miles from east to west, and in places nearly 3,000 miles from the borders of the Arctic Ocean in the north to the southern frontier. The Union stretches from west to east over more than 170 degrees of longitude and from north to south through more than 45 degrees of latitude, which is half the distance between the Pole and the Equator. It is ten days' continuous journey in one train from Moscow to Vladivostok; it is three days' continuous journey from Moscow to the southern frontier, and nearly two days' journey from Moscow to the northern shores. There are no overseas possessions, so that, vast as is the area of the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics, the commercial geography as a whole is comparatively simple.

If we look at the position of the Soviet Union on the globe we notice at once that not only is the whole in the Northern Hemisphere, but even the southernmost part does not reach the Tropics. The U.S.S.R. lies entirely in mid-latitudes in the so-called Temperate Zone and in the Arctic Zone; no part of the country is tropical. Soviet Central Asia, it is true, has extremely hot summers, and given irrigation can grow tropical and sub-tropical crops; hence the great importance of this area to the country as a whole. Because it does not possess land in equatorial or tropical latitudes one might say that the U.S.S.R. could never be economically self-sufficient; on the other hand, with its enormous home resources, its enormous compact mass of land and the nature of its frontiers, which do not encourage foreign trade, the Soviet Union is peculiarly designed to be by nature a self-contained unit.

On the north it is bounded by the Arctic Ocean, along which it has a very long coast-line, but nearly all this is ice-bound in the winter and a sea passage along the northern coast is only possible for two or three weeks in the middle of summer, if at all. Similarly, the very remote Pacific coast of the Soviet Union, in the Far East, is ice-bound in winter. Across Asia the Soviet Union borders Manchuria, the desert wastes of Mongolia and the heart of Asia with their ramparts of mountains. In the south the Soviet Union is bounded by the mountain rampart of Afghanistan, Persia, and Turkey; its coast-line along the Black Sea is valuable, but this is an inland sea, the entrance to which is controlled by Turkey at the Bosphorus and the Dardanelles. On the west the Soviet Union is bordered by Roumania, Czechoslovakia, and Poland. Since the absorption of Estonia, Latvia and Lithuania it has a long coast-line along the Baltic but this is, of course, only an enclosed sea. Curiously enough, it is only in the extreme north-western corner of this vast country. in the Arctic coast near Murmansk—now in direct

railway connection with Leningrad and Moscow—that the Soviet Union has direct outlet to an ocean open throughout the year.

**Physical features.** In the broadest possible way nearly the whole of the Soviet Union is one vast, incredibly extensive plain; only in the far north-east, or as one approaches the mountainous south-eastern and southern borders, does this cease to be true. Although the scenery changes from boggy Arctic wastes through great forests of firs and other conifers to the rolling grain lands and then to the sandy uninhabited deserts, a journey in almost any direction across the Soviet Union can scarcely be described as other than monotonous. The country, however, falls into the following major divisions:

(a) *The East European Plain* or the Russian Platform, occupying practically the whole of European U.S.S.R. from the Arctic Ocean to the Black Sea, to the Caucasus and the Caspian Sea. Two-thirds of this great area lie within the basin of the River Volga, which is the longest river in Europe yet with its source in the Valdai Hills, only a few hundred feet above sea-level—to be precise less than 750 feet.

(b) *The Caucasus and Trans-Caucasia.* In the southern part of East Europe, stretching as a rampart between the Black and the Caspian Seas, is the great line of the Caucasus Mountains, rising in places to over 10,000 feet and in Elbrus to 18,470 feet. The Caucasus form such a barrier that they are still uncrossed by railway and for long crossed by only one motor road. The two railways find their way round either end of the mountain chain. The three small countries of Georgia, Armenia, and Azerbaijan (Azerbaydzhan) lie beyond the Caucasus (Trans-Caucasia) and are now separate socialist republics within the Union. A detached western extension of the Caucasus Mountains passes through the mountainous peninsula of the Crimea.

(c) *The West Siberian Lowlands.* This tract of very low, flat country, with large areas liable to spring floods, which forms the western part of Siberia is separated from Russia in Europe only by the low rise of the Urals, which can scarcely be called the Ural 'Mountains' and offer little or no barrier to communications, though the highest points do exceed 5,000 feet.

(d) *Eastern Siberia*, east of the River Lena, is on the whole a low plateau.

(e) *The Far East*, a very remote region of the U.S.S.R., differs from the remainder in that it consists of a succession of mountain chains, some of them still scarcely explored in detail.

(f) *Soviet Central Asia*, east of the Caspian Sea, consists on the whole of a great desert basin, the Turanian basin, bordered by mountains on the south and east, amongst which are well-watered and populous valleys, and rising in the north to a low, undulating steppeland which separates Soviet Central Asia from Siberia.

Such a land of extensive rolling plains is naturally a land of

large, slow, meandering rivers; but the Soviet Union is not very fortunate with regard to its rivers. Siberia is drained almost entirely to the Arctic Ocean in the north by the Ob, the Yenisei, and the Lena, and only in the far east do the Amur and its tributaries flow to the open Pacific; thus the Siberian rivers lead to the frozen Arctic and their lower courses are frozen for many months of the year. Similarly in the northern part of European Russia, the Petchora and the Dwina drain to the Arctic. Soviet Central Asia is a land of inland drainage, and so too is all that huge territory drained by the Volga into the Caspian Sea. Those valuable rivers the Don and the Dnieper drain to the Black Sea, and so does the Dniester, formerly the boundary between the Ukraine and Roumania. The River Western Dwina passes through Latvia before reaching the Baltic Sea. Despite the fact that they are all frozen for many months of the year, the Soviet Union is making considerable use of her rivers, and reference will be made to the waterways in a later section.

From the point of view of railway and road construction, the rivers form the principal obstructions to through communication across this great plain and necessitate numerous and very large bridges.

**Minerals.** The Soviet Union vies with the United States in the richness and variety of its mineral resources.

*The Russian Platform or the Plain of East Europe* consists of an underlying block of very ancient rocks which has resisted later earth-building or mountain-building movements, and instead has been subjected to movements of elevation and depression. In times of depression it has been covered by the sea or by large bodies of fresh water which have left on its surface deposits to-day remaining as horizontal beds or beds but very slightly folded. In places, particularly along the north, the ancient rocks of the underlying block crop out, but over the central and southern regions they are covered by the later deposits. Fortunately the later deposits include in places coal-fields, so that the European part of the Soviet Union has three great coal basins. There is one in the extreme north-east in the Arctic region—the Petchora Field, now worked in Vorkuta; there is one consisting of brown coal lying to the south of Moscow and known as the Moscow or Tula basin; the third, and by far the most important, is the one known as the Donbass or Donetz basin in the south, not far from the Black Sea. Associated with the very ancient rocks which are exposed in the north, are the minerals now being exploited in the Kola peninsula—iron, nickel, and apatite from which phosphates for manure are made. In the south, at Krivoi Rog near the Black Sea, there are enormous deposits of iron ore, so that U.S.S.R. ranks second to the United States in its production of iron (36m. tons) and steel (50m. tons in 1957). All northern

European Russia was covered during the Ice Age by a great ice-sheet which, on melting, was found to have left a hummocky drift-covered surface. Some of the hollows are now occupied by lakes, others by marshy tracts or bogs, some of which are yielding peat. Farther south ridges of sand, gravel, and boulders run across the country and mark successive stages in the retreat of the ice-sheet and are actually terminal moraines. Beyond this, over central and southern Russia and the Ukraine, are vast tracts which are covered by wind-borne deposits laid down by the very cold winds of the glacial period and which are the dust-like loess. It is because of the existence of this fertile soil that so much is extremely fertile as agricultural land.

The *Caucasus* is a typical folded mountain chain, with old rocks exposed in the centre yielding their quota of metallic minerals, including lead and zinc in the north, iron, manganese, copper, and aluminium on the southern flanks. Similar minerals are yielded along the southern border of Trans-Caucasia. On the flanks of the Caucasus are the famous oil-fields—the most important are to the south of the mountains, around the eastern end, near Baku, but another field is also worked near Tiflis. A very important field on the northern flanks is Grozny, and there are other wells near Maikop. The Soviet Union ranks third among the world producers of oil (71m. tons in 1955 and 113m. tons in 1958), following the United States and Venezuela (p. 266).

Although the *Urals*, topographically, only form a low divide, the old rocks are brought to the surface and the tract in the centre is a highly mineralised one. Amongst the many deposits of iron ore the most remarkable is the enormous Magnet Mountain, near which the Russians in the inter-war years built the great iron and steel town of Magnitogorsk. Other mineral deposits in the Urals include those of copper, chromium, manganese, nickel, gold, platinum and bauxite. Just as on the flanks of the Caucasus there occur the great oil-fields of southern Russia, so later discoveries showed that a line of oil-fields exists on the flanks of the Urals, and oil has now been discovered at intervals almost from the Arctic Ocean to the Caspian Sea. The 'Second Baku Field' of the central Urals together with the Emba Field on the Caspian north shore yielded as much oil in 1956 as the Old Baku. On the Siberian flank there is an important coal-field, whilst in the north a recent discovery has been one of the largest deposits of potash salts yet known in the world. Ordinary salt is important in the area below sea-level north of the Caspian Sea (and also in the Crimea) and is obtained from brine-lakes.

*The Plain of West Siberia* is essentially a low-lying area, formerly a gulf of the sea, now filled up with partly marine and partly land deposits, of the type which cannot be expected to yield any minerals. On the south-eastern margin of this area, however, is the great

coal-field of the Kuznetzk basin or Kuzbass, now in course of development as an industrial region.

The plateau of *Central Siberia*, averaging some 2,000 feet in height, consists of a great mass of ancient rock. In places, at least, these ancient rocks are known to yield metallic minerals—there are the famous gold deposits of the Lena basin and many other metallic minerals are believed to occur. On the flanks of the old plateau and covering part of the surface, coal-fields with almost horizontal seams are known to exist; still largely unexplored, there is the Tungus coal basin on the west, the Lena basin on the east. Better known are the fields on the south, the Minusinsk basin and the Irkutsk basin and the Kansk basin, all of which have large reserves of coal.

*The Far North-east* may be described as still an unknown area. Structurally it is complicated, and it is possible that it may yield important mineral deposits. Gold is known in several places, whilst in the south there are two coal basins; in the island of Sakhalin and in Kamchatka there is oil.

*Soviet Central Asia*, consisting as it does of a central plain with a surround of complex, highly folded mountains, is proving, as one might expect, an important mineral-bearing area. There are coal basins (including the large Karaganda basin), oil is now important (Ferghana Field), whilst in the ancient rocks there are gold, copper, lead, tin, and zinc.

Although their claims may be regarded as optimistic, it is certain that the U.S.S.R. has enormous reserves of minerals. A recent estimate suggests that the known reserves include half the world's iron ore, a fifth of the world's oil, 15 per cent. of the world's coal, copper, and zinc, three-quarters of the world's manganese, and a quarter of the world's water-power. It is claimed now also that the production of gold rivals that of South Africa, the world's largest producer. It may be as high as 19m. ounces (1958).

**Climate.** The Soviet Union constitutes the heart of the enormous land mass of Eurasia. This fact supplies the key to the climatic conditions. The enormous land area becomes intensely cold in the winter, so that the coldest known spot of the earth's surface is in the heart of Soviet Asia; there the lowest temperatures recorded on the earth's surface have been found, *e.g.*  $-93^{\circ}$  F. at Verkhoyansk. Extremely severe winter conditions are found everywhere in the north and centre, improving slightly as one goes towards the south and particularly towards the south-west in Europe; even so, nearly all parts of the country have an average temperature below freezing-point for the month of January. Not a single square mile is as fortunate climatically in this respect as the whole of the British Isles; only Trans-Caucasia and the Iran-Afghan borders have temperatures above  $32^{\circ}$  F. in January.

In summer, on the other hand, the whole of the enormous land

mass becomes intensely hot; temperatures of over 90° F. are sometimes recorded even within the Arctic Circle. The deserts of Soviet Central Asia suffer the most intense heat, but the whole country may be described as hot. Only the Arctic coast-lands have cool summers.

In winter the great mass of cold, heavy air which rests over the whole area results in a high-pressure centre from which there are out-blowing winds. Contrary to popular belief the snowfall in winter is comparatively light, rarely exceeding three feet. It is in the spring when the high-pressure area gives place to a low-pressure area that in-blowing winds from the ocean bring their quota of rainfall. Most parts of European Russia and the fertile belt of Siberia thus enjoy light, spring rains ideal for grain, followed by the heat of summer. The south-west is the region in which both temperature and precipitation are most favourable to production. Eastwards, around the Caspian Sea and in Soviet Central Asia the rainfall drops below eight inches and desert conditions prevail.

**Soils and natural vegetation.** The Russians have been pioneers in the great science of the study of the soil. They realised that the formation of soil does not depend so much upon the character of the underlying rock as on the character of the climate. The great soil belts of the country correspond with climatic conditions and run across the country from east to west, and really constitute the great natural regions of the country.

(a) *The Tundra Belt and the Tundra Soils.* Here the cold in winter is such that the subsoil is permanently frozen; the heat of summer is insufficient to do more than melt the moisture in the surface layers, with the result that in summer the surface of the ground is swampy and the soils boggy. We are here beyond the northern limits of the growth of trees and the ground is covered with tundra vegetation, of mosses and lichens, including the famous reindeer moss, though for a short period there may be rich growth of grass and flowering plants.

(b) *The Belt of Coniferous or Softwood Forests,* with podsol (ash-coloured) soils. Russia has by far the largest reserves of untouched forest lands of soft timber in the world, and the coniferous forest stretches as an enormous belt from the Finnish border right across the country to the Pacific Ocean, as far south, roughly, as the latitude of Leningrad. The great difficulty is one of access to the forests. Only the more accessible parts have been seriously worked so far. Unfortunately for Russia, the rivers which can be used for floating timber, at least for a few months in the summer, drain towards the Arctic Ocean. There has been a great increase in the exploitation of timber, even in the more distant forests, and the timber 'ship caravans' of the Arctic Ocean are now piloted by ice-breakers and by aeroplanes which study the weather conditions. In 1954 production of sawn softwood reached 50,000,000 cubic



metres (1,760,000,000 cubic feet or about 30,000,000 tons). Chief sawmills centres are Archangel for the north and Stalingrad for timber floated down the Volga. The total cut only represents a few per cent. of the annual increment by natural growth. The Arctic coast has become increasingly important. In 1955 paper production exceeded 1,862,000 tons and the industry is widespread. The soils of the forest are light ashen in colour, hence the Russian name podsol, and they are poor in plant food. Thus when the forest is cleared they are not very valuable for agriculture even when the climate would permit agricultural development. There are also large stretches of boggy soil and tracts of peat.

(c) *The Deciduous or Mixed Forest Belt of European Russia and the Ukraine* consists partly of coniferous trees and partly of deciduous trees which lose their leaves in winter. Here the soils are rather better and much of the land has been cleared.

(d) *The Black Earth Belt.* The natural vegetation of this belt was a rich grassland with scattered trees. The soil consists of loess very dark in colour because of the large quantity of vegetable matter, and is a soil which is extremely fertile. As a result this is the great grain-growing belt of southern Russia, the Ukraine, and Siberia, and most of the natural vegetation has been replaced by vast fields of grain.

(e) *The Chestnut-brown Soils and the Steppelands.* This is land formerly covered with grass rather poorer than in the belt just described, and where the soils, though good, are not quite so rich. This to-day is also a grain-growing region, but not of the same remarkable fertility as the Black Earth Belt.

(f) *The Grey Desert Soils and the Saline Soils* are those characteristic of the drier regions of the Soviet Union around the Caspian Sea and of Soviet Central Asia. Here in some areas there is very poor grassland formerly inhabited by nomadic stock rearers with their flocks and herds. In the drier parts little grows, and settlement is only possible where water is available for irrigation. This is, however, an important part of the Soviet Union because it is the warmest, and here, on irrigated land, tropical and sub-tropical crops can be grown.

(g) *The Mediterranean Zone.* Along the southern border of the Crimean Peninsula there is a very small, sheltered tract of land where the U.S.S.R. can grow some, at least, of the Mediterranean products.

(h) *The Subtropical Zone* is the hot wet lowland of western Trans-Caucasia where rice, tea and citrus fruits are grown.

**Animal life.** The grasslands and the steppes of the Soviet Union have been conquered and settled by man, but the great forest stretches to the north, to a large extent, have not. They are still the haunt of numerous wild animals, important because they are fur-bearing animals, and before the days of the Iron Curtain

Russia thus provided a third of all the furs which entered into international trade. Some, such as the Russian sable, are now rare, and Russia is paying attention to the breeding of fur-bearing animals such as the silver fox. Attempts are being made to utilise the wild animals of the north, particularly the reindeer, for the supply of milk, meat, and other produce.

There are some fisheries along the northern coast and a few in the Far East, but more important and more famous are the river fisheries, especially of the River Volga for sturgeon, the roes of which yield that famous commodity, caviare. In 1955 output of fish reached 2,740,000 tons (including nearly 250,000 tons of whales).

**The people of the Soviet Union.** The Soviet Union stretches from Europe right across Asia. In the same way the people are essentially Euro-Asiatic. Much of the failure of Western Europe and America to appreciate the true state of affairs in the Soviet Union to-day is due to a fundamental lack of understanding of the peoples of the Union. In the first place they are extraordinarily varied and include many different racial stocks; nearly three-quarters of the whole are Slavs. About A.D. 1230 the Mongolians overran Rus (which term covers Russia and the Ukraine in medieval times). For nearly 250 years Rus remained a tribute-paying vassal of the Mongolian State known as Orda and the defence of Western Europe against the Mongols and Turks fell to Poland and Hungary.

Various Turkic and other tribes are to-day the principal inhabitants of Central Asia; they penetrated there and to the Volga basin in medieval times where they remain in considerable colonies. It was Poland and Austria who protected the rest of Europe from these invasions and we may almost say that the material progress of Western Europe for some five or six centuries was made possible by this protection. Russia's activity against Turkey was strong and successful in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries. In wars against the Ottoman Empire the southern Ukraine, Crimea, and Trans-Caucasia were captured.

The militaristic and imperialistic organisation which persisted until the Revolution of 1917 was very largely the result of the long history of strife. A great gulf separated the peasants from the ruling classes. The much misunderstood Cossacks were the Ukrainians and Russians who were liable to military service and in return received arms and money grants from the government and also a reservation of considerable stretches of land; they might be described as mercenaries, who were employed as the advance guard of colonisation or conquest and as the militaristic police force throughout the country. There were <sup>slaves</sup>serfs and serfdom was not abolished until 1861, and even after that it was quite common for slaves to be sold in the Far Eastern markets. Down to 1861 the majority of the peasants were serfs attached to the

properties of landowners. In that year they were emancipated in a sense, and portions of the landowners' estates were set apart for them, the government paying compensation which was to be repaid by the peasants by instalments. For this repayment, however, not the individual peasants but the *mir* or village commune was made responsible, and the *mir* as a whole had control of the peasants' land. The land was allotted to individuals in scattered parcels so as to give all an equal chance of getting land of equal quality on the whole, and redvisions of the land took place at intervals of years varying in length in different parts of the country. No member of the *mir* was allowed to leave it at his own free will. By a law of 1906, however, the peasant was made really a free man. He could demand his share of the land in one piece, and buy out his neighbour if opportunity offered. Greater agricultural enterprise was being shown by the more capable. Improved agricultural machinery and implements were being more largely bought and improved methods of farming likewise being adopted. On the other hand, peasants whose holdings were too small were selling them and becoming labourers. Ultimately these would have been absorbed no doubt by the demands of manufacturing industry. The congestion in the agricultural districts where the land was excessively sub-divided was being relieved to some extent by migration to the more thinly peopled tracts in the south-east as well as to Siberia. Formerly emigration to Siberia was allowed only to villagers, but emigration thither from the towns was permitted from the beginning of 1914. The heart of Slav Russia was Moscow, but feudalistic Russia, as far as the ruling class was concerned, appreciated the civilisation of western Europe and Tsar Peter the Great in 1700 established its capital at St. Petersburg, now Leningrad, where communication by sea with western Europe was possible. Imperialist Russia had designs on the conquest of much of Asia, and looked upon the Far Eastern coast with Vladivostok and Manchuria as their ultimate outpost in that direction. The first Russian conquest beyond the Urals was made in 1581 under a Cossack leader called Yermak. The expedition was primarily in the interest of a family of Russian fur-traders, but it received the sanction of the Russian Government, and politically was merely a continuation of the process of expansion by which the grand princes of Moscow gradually drove back or subjugated the Tartar invaders of the thirteenth century. The immediate result of the first invasion of Yermak was the fall of the Tatar capital, *Sibir* on the Irtysh, about ten miles above the present Tobolsk, which was founded soon after. Small parties of Cossacks, living the life of backwoodsmen, gradually pushed eastwards along the rivers, and in little more than fifty years after the conquest of *Sibir* a blockhouse was erected (1632) on the present site of Yakutsk on the Lena. Before the close of that century the Russians had

come in contact with the Chinese on the Amur, but a pause of about 150 years took place in their eastern expansion, after they had in 1689, in the Treaty of Nerchinsk, relinquished all claim to the Amur. Further expansion in this direction took place during the Crimean War, and in 1858 the Chinese agreed in the Treaty of Aigun to recognise the Amur and Usuri and a line drawn from the head of the Usuri southwards to Korea as the Russian frontier. In the latter part of the nineteenth century the frontier was pushed farther and farther so as to include what is now Soviet Central Asia, and with the completion of the Trans-Siberian railway in 1903 Moscow was placed in direct communication with its Far Eastern possessions. But the prestige of the country received a severe setback on its defeat in the Russo-Japanese War of 1904-05. In the early nineteenth century Siberia was virtually an uninhabited tract, despite the inherent fertility of much of its area. Its severe winters gained it a notoriety which was heightened by its use as a place of exile for criminals. But all who resisted the existing régime were also liable to exile; many of the most progressive elements of the country who resisted political intolerance preferred to make their way to a new country and so went to Siberia as voluntary exiles. The virility of these political exiles was largely responsible for the amazing growth of settlement, agriculture, and urban life in Siberia, where the rapid growth of such centres as Novo-Sibirsk from about 5,000 in 1897 to three-quarters of a million in little over half a century suggests a comparison with the pioneers who for the same reasons set out to conquer the Middle West of America.

In the twentieth century the organisation of Russia was an anachronism. In 1917 the mode of life and the standard of living of the bulk of the Russian peasants was not very different from that of the agricultural peasants of England in the Middle Ages. In assessing the results of the Bolshevik régime this must be borne in mind: the immense difficulty of conquering the inherent conservatism of the people and of educating vast numbers even to a state of literacy must be remembered. But cut off from the rest of the world and incessantly bombarded by propaganda, education has come to have a curious meaning. According to the present constitution, private property in land is abolished, all land, forests, mines, waters, livestock, factories, railways, &c., are State owned. The unit of government is the Soviet of Workers', Soldiers' and Peasants' Deputies, each constituent state of the Union being governed largely by its own Central Executive Committee and Council of People's Commissaries; subject in turn to the Union Central Executive Committee and Union Council. Under the intensive programme of development of the successive Five Year Plans there was undoubted material progress in all directions in the Soviet Union, but on the eve of the Second World War the standard of

living was not in many respects comparable with that which normally existed in Western Europe.

**The distribution of population.** In 1939 the population of the Soviet Union was nearly 170·6m.: at the census taken in 1897, the population of the same area was only a little over 106m. Within the extended post-war limits of the U.S.S.R. (see p. 493), the population in April 1956, as estimated officially, numbered 200,200,000. Although Moscow has a population of 4·8m. and Leningrad of 3·2m., and there are 134 towns with a population of over 100,000, more than half the total population (56·6 per cent. in 1956) of the Soviet Union is still described as rural. We find that this rural population is densest along the famous Black Earth belt stretching from the borders of Roumania across the Urals into Siberia. Along this belt, too, are the great towns of Siberia such as Chelyabinsk, Omsk and Novosibirsk. To the north and south of this population tends to decrease, but with large urban nuclei in the industrial regions which will be described later.

**Occupations of the people.** Imperial Russia was essentially an agricultural country with a limited development of industry concentrated almost entirely in two regions:

- i. The immediate neighbourhood of Leningrad; and
- ii. The central tract with its centre at Moscow, together with outlying industrial regions on the Don coal-field in the south and associated with oil in the neighbourhood of Baku.

Among the great objectives of the First Five Year Plan (1928–32), the Second Five Year Plan (1933–37), and the succeeding plans, have been not only the industrialisation of the Union to make the country a self-sufficient economic unit, but also the redistribution of industry in such a way as to locate the great industrial enterprises where power (coal, oil, water-power, or peat) are available or where there is an abundant supply of raw material—particularly heavy and bulky raw material, *e.g.* iron ore—and also to utilise to the full labour resources in different parts of the country. The result has been, in the first place, to have local industries to supply local markets, a requirement very important in a country of such vast distances as the Soviet Union. In the old days raw cotton was sent 2,000 miles from Soviet Central Asia to Moscow and sent 2,000 miles back as finished cloth; this is obviously an absurdity, hence the establishment of industry in Soviet Central Asia itself for the supply of local markets.

This scattering of industry proved of immense value in the Second World War when the Germans overran European Russia as far east as the gates of Leningrad, Moscow, and Stalingrad.

**Rural occupations.** Thirty-four per cent. of the whole of the Union is occupied by forest, 11 per cent. by pasture, non-agricultural land 31 per cent., arable land 9 per cent., but the area of the country

is so vast that this 9 per cent. of arable land represents 500m. acres. The great cultivated belt is the Black Earth belt. Here the crops are wheat—spring wheat, where the winters are too severe for autumn sowing—and barley; on the warmer southern side of the wheat belt maize or corn becomes the main or leading crop; on the northern cooler side the place of wheat is taken by oats and rye—rye, the great bread grain of the peasantry over so much of the country, and which still occupies a larger area than any other grain. It should be noted that the yield of grain crops is still low. North of the latitude of Leningrad climate places a limit on the cultivation of many crops, and although barley takes advantage of the long summer days and will ripen within the Arctic Circle, a very important crop in these northern regions is oats.

Of the chief industrial crops, mention must be made of the cotton lands: the Union can really only grow cotton in Soviet Central Asia and Transcaucasia, and hence it has been an objective to release as much land as possible for the purpose of growing cotton; this has been achieved by improving rail communications to Central Asia, sending foodstuffs and thus releasing land. It is in the Ukraine that sugar-beet cultivation is particularly important. Farther north in European Russia flax and hemp are leading crops. In 1955 the total crop area in the U.S.S.R. was 465,000,000 acres of which grain crops occupied 317m., industrial crops (in order, sunflower seed, cotton, sugar-beet, flax and hemp) 30m., vegetables (mainly potatoes) 28m., and fodder crops 90m. Of the grain crops the chief were spring wheat 105m., winter rye 47m., winter wheat 45m., oats 37m., spring barley 24m., maize 23m., millet 19m., and buckwheat together with a little rice.

The bulk of the cultivated land is now either in collective farms or in state farms. Tracts owned by single owner peasants by 1954 were only 0.03 per cent. of the area. Primitive methods of agriculture have been replaced by large-scale methods with the accompanying use of tractors, which are being manufactured particularly in those large towns lying within the agricultural belt, such as Rostov, Stalingrad, Kharkov, Chelyabinsk and Kurgan. Before the First World War Russia was a leading exporter of most of these cereal crops; naturally during the war the export disappeared and it has never since been large.

Amongst animals we may notice the still extensive though falling use of horses, the cattle which are kept by the tribesmen on the drier steppelands of Soviet Asia, the dairy cows and the beef cattle which are reared on the cooler northern regions (often in clearings amongst the forests), and also the dairy cattle (for butter) of Siberia and the more fertile valleys of Soviet Central Asia. In 1955 there were 67m. cattle including 29m. cows. Sheep (125m. in 1955) and goats (18m. in 1955) graze on the drier pastures south of the grain

belt, whilst pigs (52m. in 1955) are found, as usual, more within the actual grain belt itself.

**Industry.** The industries of Russia may be described particularly in relationship to the industrial areas.

1. *The Central Region around Moscow.* In Imperial Russia, this region produced something like half of all the manufactured goods produced in the country. To-day the importance of its output is no less, but relative to the output of the whole country it is less significant. Moscow itself is the great centre, to the south is Tula, to the north we find Kalinin, Yaroslavl, and Ivanovo, whilst to the east is Gorky (strictly Gor'kiy). The whole region used to draw its coal from the far south, the Don basin; much more extensive use is now being made of the rather poor brown coal or lignite of the Moscow or Tula basin. The whole area was linked together in an electricity grid under the Second Five Year Plan. It is a region associated primarily with the cotton industry and with textiles generally and the manufacture of clothing, together with various metal workings and machinery manufacture and a chemical and miscellaneous industry. Moscow and Gorky have two of the largest automobile factories in the U.S.S.R.

2. *Leningrad.* Leningrad is an artificial industrial centre, in that it has no coal nor has it sources of iron ore. It has, however, its sea-board situation, and as an industrial centre its position has been greatly improved in recent years by the construction of hydro-electric works on two rivers in the neighbourhood. There is a shipbuilding industry specialising particularly in timber ships and ice-breakers; there is the manufacture of miscellaneous machinery, a limited textile industry, but an important clothing industry.

3. *The Ukraine-Don Region.* This area covers the fine rich Donetz coal-field, also one of the great iron ore yielding regions, and in addition spreads over the very fertile Black Earth region of the Ukraine. Krivoi Rog has the largest iron ore deposit with manganese at Nikopol. The region round the iron-field and eastwards on the coal-field forms the centre of iron and steel production, with the towns of Zaporozhye, Dniepropetrovsk, Stalino and Zhdanov. There are numerous secondary industries which utilise the iron and steel, such as the manufacture of agricultural implements for use in the fertile belt by which the territory is surrounded. Important centres are Kharkov and Rostov. We have also the preparation of local agricultural material; thus there are sugar mills, flour mills, and tanning mills. Kiev, on the Dnieper, has long been the centre of Ukrainian sugar refining and has important leather manufactures.

4. *The Ural Region* is one of the newer industrial areas. The Urals have long been famous for their metallic minerals and for their great reserves of iron ore. One thousand two hundred miles to the east in Siberia is the enormous Kuznetzk coal-field, and it is in the

present plan in the Soviet Union to develop industry at both ends of a line of communication between the two. So there are the great cities of the central Urals, notably Sverdlovsk (steel, engineering, chemicals, textiles), Perm (engineering, chemicals, refining) and Chelyabinsk (iron and steel, metals) and the amazing iron and steel town of Magnitogorsk farther south.

5. *The Kuznetzk Coal-field* (Kuzbass) may be mentioned next. To the north, at the river port of Tomsk, are wood-working and engineering industries; on the field itself are a great variety of manufactures, including textiles as at Kemerovo. Textiles are even more important at Barnaul to the south-west. Novosibirsk, with a great range of industries, has three-quarters of a million people. Stalinsk, a creation of the First Five Year Plan, had 347,000 people by 1956.

6. *Other Industrial Centres.* There is the growing industrialisation of the Kola peninsula in the north associated with timber working and with metals; there is the important Trans-Caucasian industrial region around Tbilisi (Tiflis) and Baku with its enormous reserves of oil and its utilisation of some coal together with metallic minerals; there is the growing industrialisation of Central Asia (where are the old market towns such as Tashkent, Samarkand, and Kokand) in the cotton district with the object particularly of supplying the local market.

Of the output of the Union, 70 per cent. is now attributed to manufactures and the remaining 30 per cent. the produce of agriculture, almost the reverse of the position in 1913.

*Other Inland Towns.* Among the chief inland towns besides those already mentioned are Kazan, Kuybyshev (Samara), at the east end of a loop of the Volga, where the river is pushed eastwards by a limestone barrier, long important for its river and eastern land trade, now of importance as situated at the angle of bifurcation of the old southern route of the Trans-Siberian Railway and the line to Chkalov (Orenburg) and Turkistan; Saratov, lower down, on the Volga, a centre of the cultivation and manufacture of tobacco; Stalingrad on the Volga; Kharkov, a centre of trade and industry in the Ukraine; Kiev, capital of the Ukraine; Chkalov, on the Ural, the old starting-point of caravans to the east and south-east before the construction of the railway; Orsk at the southern end of the Urals. In Siberia, all on the railway, are Omsk, Krasnoyarsk, Irkutsk and Chita.

Before the Revolution large periodical fairs were characteristic of the inland, and even to some extent of the foreign, trade of Russia. The great fairs of Nizhniy-Novgorod (now Gorky), the most important of which was held annually in August, were international, Asia and Europe there exchanging products. Irbit, east of the Urals, north-west of Tyumen, was the seat of fairs of great importance to the Siberian fur-trade.



Of Soviet towns formerly important but now decayed, two are mentioned elsewhere—Novgorod, once the centre of a great trade in furs and other commodities, and the old Tatar capital of Sarai. Novgorod, situated on the Volkhov just below its exit from Lake Ilmen, was for hundreds of years—till it was conquered by the Moscow Tsars in 1478—the seat of a principality which probably owed its independence, and in a large measure also its commerce, to the safety it enjoyed amid the marshes by which it was surrounded. By the Volkhov, Lake Ladoga, and the Neva it carried on an active commerce with the Baltic long before Leningrad existed. At one time its population is estimated to have exceeded 100,000, later it dwindled to a fourth of that number. Sarai has completely passed away.

**Communications.** The enormous size of the Soviet Union renders the question of communications one of the utmost importance. The marshy character of a large part of the surface and the want of road-making material (both stone and wood being entirely absent throughout large areas in the south) long stood in the way of the construction of roads. For half the year the substitute for roads is, as usual in such regions, tracks formed by the repeated passage of wheeled vehicles, and apt to be rendered scarcely passable by bad weather. The length of paved roads increased from only 15,000 miles in 1913 to nearly 130,000 in 1955. In Arctic Siberia, roads of rough shaped logs are commonly used in construction. The rivers form natural route-ways, but they are winding and often shallow, and frequently do not flow in the direction required by traffic.

From Kalinin (Tver), the head of steam navigation on the Volga, the direct distance from the mouth of the river is less than 900 miles, the distance by river is about 1,650 miles. Before the introduction of steam navigation, so slow was the rate of progress that it was a matter of months to accomplish the distance between Kalinin and Astrakhan, and even after steam navigation was introduced the average rate of speed of the post and passenger steamers down-stream was only about 14 miles an hour, up-stream about  $11\frac{1}{2}$  miles, so that if these rates were steadily kept up through the whole route, about five days would be consumed in the passage between these two places in descending the river, about six days in ascending. The time taken by a tug in drawing a train of cargo-boats must of course be much longer.

Further, no Soviet river-port is on an average free from ice for more than ten months in the year. Kherson, at the mouth of the Dnieper, in the latitude of La Rochelle in France, has, on an average, only 280 days in the year ice-free; Astrakhan, in about the same latitude, only 264 days. Rybinsk, now the great reservoir on the upper Volga filled in 1941, has only 219 days ice-free, Leningrad 218, and Archangel, at the mouth of the Northern Dwina, only 177 days or less than half the year.

On the Dnieper, the principal waterway to the Black Sea, rocky rapids impeded the navigation for a distance of 23 miles on that part of the river which flows from north to south in the great bend which the stream makes to the east. Though artificial channels were constructed as early as 1853 to avoid these rapids, navigation was little improved till the construction of the great power works under the Bolshevik régime (the DnieprosGES Dam, the largest in Europe till 1954). Rapids also impede the navigation of the Dniester and Bug, and, above Leningrad, the important Neva navigation. The navigation of the Volga is liable to be obstructed by sandbanks which accumulate rapidly where any impediment occurs in the way of the current. There are other drawbacks still. The Volga, which with its tributaries affords more than 7,000 miles of inland navigation, does not furnish any direct connection with the ocean. Goods intended for the sea were landed at Stalingrad (the former Tsaritsin) at the point where the river turns south-eastwards to the Caspian, and were transferred by rail to the Don, a river that can be navigated only by steamers of very shallow draught; now a canal connects the two—reaching the Volga at Stalingrad. The Northern Dwina, a fine deep river, flows through a sparsely peopled region, but in one respect it may be regarded as all the more important on that account as a natural waterway, since only by such means was it possible to develop in such a region an export trade in timber and timber products, flax, and other commodities, such as its waters carry.

Even before the First World War many thousands of river vessels were constantly moving between the Neva and the Volga. Many of these were of more than 1,000 tons burden, but even on the larger rivers vessels of considerable size could be used only during the spring floods. Still, it was significant of the backward state of commerce in Russia generally that the total volume of traffic on the waterways remained comparatively small. The total quantity of goods transported on Russian rivers increased from 23.3 to 44.8m. tons in 1894 to 1910. Under the First and Second Five Year Plans much progress was made with canal construction. In the first place the great Baltic-White Sea Canal links Leningrad with the northern ocean; the Neva navigation is linked with that of the Volga and with Moscow. The completion of the Don-Caspian Canal was not till 1952. In 1955 the waterways carried 139,000,000 tons of cargo and 82,000,000 passengers. The freight carried was only one-ninth that carried by the railways or a third that on the roads. This is notwithstanding nearly 82,000 miles of inland waterways (1955) are classed as navigable compared with 75,000 miles of railway. The extent of the water communication in Russia helped to delay the laying of railways. Down to the close of the Crimean War there were only four railway lines in the country. The principal difficulties in the way of railway construc-

very difficult section round the south end of Lake Baikal was completed. The total length of the railway from Chelyabinsk to Vladivostok is 3,902 miles, to Port Arthur from Leningrad, 5,882 miles. In recent years the whole line has been double tracked, and in 1936, with the completion of the Hankow-Canton railway, it became possible to travel from Calais to Canton by railway. In western Siberia the railway gradients are naturally easy, nowhere as far as the Ob exceeding 1 in 135. Farther east they rise to 1 in 66, and additional difficulties were presented by the numerous rivers to be crossed. The Yablonoiye Mountains east of Lake Baikal are crossed at the height of about 3,400 feet.

After the construction of the Trans-Siberian Railway there was a rapid immigration into Siberia from Russia, and a considerable development of trade westwards. In western Siberia the settlers were allotted free grants of forty acres of land and were exempted from taxes for three years. In 1895 the number of immigrants exceeded 100,000, and in several subsequent years it exceeded 200,000, the great majority remaining in the western governments. In 1908 the number of immigrants exceeded 758,000, a number more than twice as great as the highest number of immigrants into Canada up to that date, but after that date there was a decline. The railway naturally attracted to it a great deal of the trade with Russia in Chinese tea and silks, and the railway also carried large quantities of Siberian furs to Europe. Locally there developed also a large trade in grain, principally wheat, animals, meat, hides, tallow, wool, and dead game, but the principal export trade was in butter. The trade in butter, carried in refrigerator cars, was developed with remarkable rapidity by the opening of the Siberian railway, and this commodity reached Europe before 1914 from much greater distances than wheat—apparently from as far east as the Minusinsk district or about 3,000 miles from the Baltic. The total quantity of Siberian butter exported in 1898 was about 2,500 tons, while in 1912-13 the amount received thence by the United Kingdom alone was about 27,000 tons. This trade was largely in British and Danish hands.

The tri-weekly Express now runs from Moscow to Peking; a 'short-cut' to Peking was opened up in 1956 by the railway across Outer Mongolia through Ulan Bator. From Moscow to Peking or Manchuria is approximately a week, hence numerous air services.

The chief towns of Siberia show the influence of the railway. At the census of 1897 the only two with a population above 50,000 were Tomsk, capital of western, and Irkutsk, capital of eastern, Siberia. Kiakhta, on the Siberian frontier opposite the Mongolian town of Maimachin, was formerly the centre of a large caravan trade with China, importing brick-tea and exporting furs and other Siberian products. Before the First World War Siberian

towns were growing with great rapidity, especially those situated at points where navigable rivers are crossed by the Trans-Siberian Railway. At the beginning of the century Novo-Nikolaievsk was only a small collection of huts; in 1914 it had a population of 85,000. Now known as Novosibirsk, it has 750,000 people. Tomsk and Yeniseisk doubled their populations between 1902 and 1912. Even more remarkable has been the recent growth. In 1926 only three Siberian towns had a population of over 100,000, by 1933 this had increased to seven—Omsk, Novosibirsk, Vladivostok, Irkutsk, Tomsk, Krasnoyarsk, and Barnaul—of which the first four and the largest are all on the Trans-Siberian. By 1955 at least 25 towns east of the Ural crest had populations exceeding 100,000.

**Seaports.** The principal seaport on the Baltic is Leningrad, with Kronstadt. Till the middle of 1885 Kronstadt was the port of Leningrad for all large shipping, but a canal was then opened through the shallow end of the gulf to Leningrad, and from that very year the great bulk of the shipping was transferred to Leningrad. The harbour of Tallinn, the capital and leading port of Estonia, was also deepened and extended, and developed into a great cotton-port, importing large quantities of this material direct from the United States. Riga, the capital and chief port of the Latvian S.S.R. has long been an important outlet to the Baltic. Former German ports are Kaliningrad (Königsberg) and Kłaypeda (Memel).

On the Black Sea the chief port is Odessa, the harbour of which being on the sea itself (east of the Dniester) is not so apt to be closed by ice as the river ports. The shipping both of the port of Nikolayev, on the Bug, and Kherson, on the Dnieper, has to cross the Ochakov Bar, which, however, has been deepened by dredging; both these ports, which were more conveniently situated than Odessa for the grain exports of south-western Russia, grew rapidly, to the prejudice of Odessa. Among the minor Black Sea ports are Kaffa, or Fyedosiya, and Kerch, the last of which had at one time a good deal of business in lightening ships before crossing the bar at the Straits of Kerch or Yenikale. The channel across this bar has been deepened and another entrance to the Sea of Azov has been made by piercing the Isthmus of Perekop at the north of the Crimea. Sevastopol after 1899 became solely a naval port. Nearby the sheltered south-eastern shores of the Crimea, with an almost Mediterranean climate, have developed numerous resorts, such as Yalta. The chief ports on the Sea of Azov are Taganrog, Azov, Rostov, Osipenko (Berdiansk) and Zhdanov (Mariupol), this last being the port of the Donetsk coal-field. At the eastern end of the Sea, oil is received at Batum by pipe-line from Baku.

Astrakhan, the chief Caspian seaport, is the centre of the im-

portant fisheries of the Caspian Sea and the Volga (sturgeon, &c.). Important fisheries are also carried on all the year round on the Murman coast, to the north-west of the White Sea, and on the Kanin peninsula to the north-east. Murmansk is open throughout the year and has large timber exports, though many small timber ports along the northern Russian and Siberian coasts were opened during the Second Five Year Plan (1933-37). Exports from the Far East through Vladivostok are limited.

**Caucasia and Trans-Caucasia.** The area on opposite sides of the Caucasus is now divided into several political divisions. That on the north side includes several autonomous republics and provinces of the main Russian Soviet Republic (the R.S.F.S.R. or Russian Soviet Federal Socialist Republic). The region to the south of the range is mainly made up of three Soviet Socialist Republics—Georgia to the west with its capital Tbilisi (Tiflis), and the port of Poti on the Black Sea; Azerbaydzhan (Azerbaijan), mainly on the Caspian Sea, on which lies the capital, Baku, but comprising also the Nakhichevan republic to the south of the eastern portion of the present Armenia, which lies to the south of the two already mentioned, round Lake Gokcha. Its capital is Erivan. In the east the southern boundary of these republics coincides with the pre-1914 boundary of Russian Trans-Caucasia, but in the west it curves eastwards and then southwards so as to transfer Ardahan, Kars, and Sarikamish from Russia to Turkey. The richest part of this region is that which occupies the series of valleys between the chain of the Caucasus and the tablelands to the south. It is not only that part which has the climate most favourable to vegetation (a region, accordingly, of forests, vineyards, cornfields, cotton and tobacco plantations, and pastures), but also that which contains the bulk of the enormous mineral wealth of the Caucasus. Irrigation for cotton and other crops is carried on from the Kura and the Aras to the south-west of Baku.

The Armenia mentioned in the preceding paragraph is but a small remnant of the historical Armenia, the region to the north-east of Asia Minor, partly in that peninsula, mainly inhabited by a people distinct in race, language, and religion from the surrounding peoples, but greatly reduced in numbers in past decades by repeated massacres. A large part of their territory is now once more subject to the Turks, but a small part forms the Soviet Republic round Lake Sevan (Gokcha), a fresh-water lake, being drained at least in rainy seasons to the Araks.

**Soviet Central Asia.** Although Soviet Central Asia or Turkistan is an integral part of the U.S.S.R., the historical background as well as the geography, the human population as well as their economic development, are so different that some separate account is desirable. The name is given to a vast area to the south of western

Siberia extending to the Chinese, Afghan, and Persian frontiers. Since January 1895 a single customs frontier has stretched from the Caspian to Chinese Turkistan. The district which contains the headwaters of the Amu is sometimes called the Pamir Plateau, but it is, in fact, a series of lofty plateaus and ranges with peaks 23,000 feet in height, furrowed by valleys in the west, but descending on the east with remarkable abruptness to the plains of eastern Turkistan. It is a region difficult of access from all sides, and yet one across which there are commercial routes that have often attained a high degree of importance in the commerce between eastern Asia and Europe (see p. 520).

Soviet Central Asia is now divided between the five republics, each a member of the U.S.S.R., of Uzbekistan, Turkmenistan, Kirghizistan, and Tadzhikistan in Turkistan, with Kazakhstan covering the huge area of the steppes to the north. The steppes are suited only to Kazakh and other nomads. Turkistan consists in the west mainly of plains and low tablelands, mostly desert. Throughout the region, indeed, cultivation keeps for the most part to the neighbourhood of the mountains, and where carried on at a distance from the mountains it is only by the favour of rivers which have gathered volume enough in the mountainous region to reach a considerable distance into the plains. Three rivers reach large salt lakes. These are the Ili, which enters Lake Balkhash (partly salty) through a swampy delta, the Syr Daria or Jaxartes, and the Amu Daria or Oxus, which flow into the Sea of Aral. The Zeravshan, the Murghab, and the Tedzhen, on the other hand, all dry up in the sands. Cultivation is carried on where possible along the banks of these rivers and their tributaries, and where the nature of the ground admits of it large tracts are irrigated by means of their waters. The area of the Mary oasis, which uses up the water at the end of the Murghab, is about 1,700 square miles, that is, less than that of the county of Lancaster; but the actually cultivated portion of this is scarcely one-third of the whole, say, about as large an area as that of the county of Worcester.

Besides Mary (Merv), the principal oases are Khiva, fed by streams drawn from the lower Amu; Bukhara, at the end of the Zeravshan; Samarkand, higher up on the same river, so that an extension of this oasis involves a diminution of the water-supply for Bukhara; Tashkent, watered by streams on the right bank of the Syr Daria; Leninabad (Khodzhent), and Kokand, on or near the Syr Daria, higher up.

The valleys lying along the eastern mountains, the valley of the Ili, that round Lake Issyk Kul (both in Semirychensk), and the upper valley of the Syr Daria (Ferghana), are not only plentifully watered but blessed with a black soil as rich as that of the Ukraine; and in these valleys there was in the later Tsarist years a remarkable

development. Russian policy contemplated the keeping of this development entirely under Russian control. No foreign capital was to be allowed in the government, and no foreigners were allowed even to visit it without a special permit. Under the Soviet régime entry of foreigners is more strictly limited than elsewhere. Though the Syr Daria and Amu Daria still serve locally as means of carriage for the products of the region, this commercial development may be said to be entirely due to the construction of two railways. The older is the Trans-Caspian Railway, running from Krasnovodsk, on the Caspian, through the Turkoman oases including Ashkhabad at the base of the mountains in the north-east of Iran, thence by the oases of Tedzhen, Mary, Chardzhou (where the railway crosses the Amu by a bridge opened in 1891), and Bukhara, to Samarkand, and thence by Leninabad (Khodzhent) to Kokand and Andizhan in Ferghana. Branches, each about 200 miles long, run south from Mary to Kushka (close to the Afghan frontier), and north from the Syr Daria valley to Tashkent. In early days the working of the long desert track of this railway was greatly hindered by blown sands, but since about 1896 the sands have gradually been brought under control by promoting the growth of sand vegetation, a prominent feature in which is the *saxaul* (*Haloxylon*), a low-growing tree, which yields excellent firewood but grows very slowly. The second of the two railways referred to above is the line from Chkalov (Orenburg) running north of the Sea of Aral to Tashkent and giving direct access from Moscow to the heart of Turkistan.

The chief product which these railways serve to transport from central Asia, including northern Persia and Afghanistan, is cotton, which is cultivated throughout the region, but chiefly in the most distant province, that of Ferghana to the north of 40° N., and accordingly further north than the northern limit in the United States. The cotton is mainly produced from American seed, which began to be experimented with in 1878, and is of excellent quality. It is for the cotton of Ferghana that the Chkalov connection is of most importance. By the earlier line this cotton from Andizhan, in order to reach Moscow, had first to be carried 1,274 miles by rail to the Caspian, then across that sea to Baku, and thence 1,618, in all 2,892 miles by rail, or across to Astrakhan on the Volga, and from there by river boats. The Chkalov route from Moscow to Andizhan is only 2,382 miles in length. Under the early Bolshevik régime a notable achievement was the construction of the Turk-Sib or Turkistan Siberian railway which, by allowing grain and timber to be sent from the Black Earth lands direct to Turkistan, releases more land there for the growing of cotton needed not only by Moscow but also by the mills now established to supply the local markets.

**The foreign trade of the Soviet Union.** It is very difficult to generalise at the present time regarding the foreign trade of the

Soviet Union. The Soviet Union has concentrated on the development of her home resources and the Five Year Plans of the country are concerned particularly with the industry at home and its organisation. For this purpose it was necessary to pay for the services of foreign experts in the nineteen-thirties and, to a considerable degree, to import the necessary machinery from foreign countries. For that purpose the sale of Soviet produce was essential; thus we find that in pre-1914 Russia by far the most important exports were grain and agricultural produce: between the wars foodstuffs represented only about an eighth, animal products together with fisheries and the produce of trappers, mainly furs, another eighth. Timber is important and represented over 15 per cent., and oil took a high place also. As indicative of the needs of the country more than two-thirds of all the imports of the country during that inter-war period were machinery, including electrical machinery. Imports were obtained in very large measure from Germany, Britain, and the United States. The Second World War proved the strength of the new Soviet economy. As the Germans pressed further eastwards, to the gates of Leningrad, Moscow, and Stalingrad, the newer industrial areas were able to supply the country's needs. With the end of the war and the virtual closing of the frontiers along the 'Iron Curtain' enclosing the Soviet Union and her east European satellites, the whole has become almost self-contained and foreign commerce is small as well as being State controlled. In 1949 Comecon (Council for Mutual Economic Assistance) was set up to aid East European countries which had refused to join O.E.E.C. As well as the great increase in trade with Communist China, Soviet foreign trade is used as an instrument of policy in gaining influence with smaller nations.

## TOWNS WITH OVER 200,000 INHABITANTS AT THE BEGINNING OF 1956

Moscow . . . . .	4,839,000	Omsk . . . . .	505,000	Krasnodar . . . . .	271,000
Leningrad . . . . .	3,176,000	Minsk . . . . .	412,000	Vladivostok . . . . .	265,000
Kiev . . . . .	991,000	Voronezh . . . . .	400,000	Ufa . . . . .	265,000
Baku . . . . .	901,000	Lvov . . . . .	387,000	Prokopyevsk . . . . .	260,000
Kharkov . . . . .	877,000	Erevan . . . . .	385,000	Tallinn . . . . .	257,000
Gorky . . . . .	876,000	Zaporozhye . . . . .	381,000	Barnaul . . . . .	255,000
Tashkent . . . . .	778,000	Yaroslavl . . . . .	374,000	Izhevsk . . . . .	252,000
Kuibyshev . . . . .	760,000	Karaganda . . . . .	350,000	Voroshilovgrad . . . . .	251,000
Novosibirsk . . . . .	731,000	Stalinsk . . . . .	347,000	Kalinin . . . . .	240,000
Sverdlovsk . . . . .	707,000	Alma-Ata . . . . .	330,000	Kemerovo . . . . .	240,000
Tbilisi (Tiflis) . . . . .	635,000	Krasnoyarsk . . . . .	328,000	Gorlovka . . . . .	240,000
Stalino (Yuzovka) . . . . .	625,000	Krivoi Rog . . . . .	322,000	Archangel . . . . .	238,000
Chelyabinsk . . . . .	612,000	Tula . . . . .	320,000	Penza . . . . .	231,000
Odessa . . . . .	607,000	Ivanovo . . . . .	319,000	Grozny . . . . .	226,000
Dnepropetrovsk . . . . .	576,000	Irkutsk . . . . .	314,000	Chkalov . . . . .	226,000
Kazan . . . . .	565,000	Makeyevka . . . . .	311,000	Tomsk . . . . .	224,000
Riga . . . . .	565,000	Nizhny Tagil . . . . .	297,000	Kirov . . . . .	211,000
Rostov-on-Don . . . . .	552,000	Magnitogorsk . . . . .	284,000	Nikolayev . . . . .	206,000
Perm (Molotov) . . . . .	538,000	Khabarovsk . . . . .	280,000	Chernikovsk . . . . .	206,000
Stalingrad . . . . .	525,000	Astrakhan . . . . .	276,000	Vilnius . . . . .	200,000
Saratov . . . . .	518,000	Zhdanov . . . . .	273,000		



## ASIA

Asia is the largest and most populous of the continents, but not the most densely populated, in which respect, like all the other continents, it has to yield pride of place to Europe. No exact comparison is possible between Europe and Asia, because there is no hard and fast boundary between them; they merge in the Soviet Union, which constitutes more than half of Europe and more than a third of Asia. If the dividing line between the continents be taken as following broadly the course of the Ural Mountains from north to south and thence the Ural river to the Caspian Sea, Asia may be assigned an area of 16.5m. square miles and Europe 4.3m. square miles, with respective populations at the half-century of about 1,300m. (more than half the world total) and 550m. On this basis the average density of population in Asia per square mile is nearly 80 against nearly 130 in Europe. In Asia, especially, the population is very unequally distributed—extremely sparse in the north, centre, and south-west, while round the south and east coasts are some of the most densely populated areas in the world. Half a dozen countries in that region—India and Pakistan, Indonesia, Indochina, China (exclusive of Manchuria and the outer dependencies), and Japan—with an aggregate area practically the same (4½m. square miles) as that of Europe, support nearly twice as many people (over 1,000m.), or on average nearly 240 to the square mile; leaving some 300m. people spread over the remaining 12½m. square miles, an average of about 25 to the square mile.

**Climate.** The explanation of this difference in the distribution of the population is to be found mainly in differences of climate; and these differences, again, are due to situation and superficial configuration. The vast size and the shape of the continent necessarily have the effect of placing the central areas at a great distance from the sea, the chief source of moisture; but it is to be noted that the existence of another continent continuous with it in the west, and a third lying to the south-west, has an important bearing on the climate of Asia. The European continent receives, to the loss of Asia, the bulk of the moisture brought about by south-west winds from the North Atlantic Ocean, and the continent of Africa has a detrimental effect on the Asiatic rainfall in two ways. First, being situated in latitudes in which there is great rarefaction of the air on

the land, and consequently a strong indraught of air from the sea, it diminishes the influx of sea air into the neighbouring parts of Asia. Secondly, it prevents such sea-winds as do blow over the south-west of Asia from being as heavily charged with moisture as otherwise they would be. Hence it is that the monsoons begin, we may say, to the east of the Indus, and hence, too, that these seasonal winds are so all-important in relation to the climate and production of Asia.

The superficial configuration of the continent intensifies the contrast between south-eastern and central Asia. The Himalayas, the loftiest mountain range in the world, arrest the summer monsoons of India. North of these mountains, the tableland of Tibet, varying from about 10,000 to 18,000 feet in height, spreads out northwards to the Altyn Tagh and Nan-Shan Mountains, and on the east and south-east breaks up into numerous mountain ranges, which also help to prevent the southern monsoon from reaching the heart of the continent. Still more effectively deprived of this essential of life are the lower tablelands in the north-central part of the continent varying from about 2,200 to upwards of 4,000 feet in height, and extending to the mountains on the borders of Siberia.

Outside the monsoon region there is probably not one million square miles, or, say, only about one-tenth of this section of the continent, in which the total rainfall of the year amounts to as much as 16 inches. The areas in which that amount is exceeded lie chiefly in the parts traversed by mountains in the south-west (western Persia, Caucasia, Armenia, and Asia Minor) and in Siberia, in the middle and upper parts of the basin of the Yenisei, and in the basin of the Ob from about latitude  $56^{\circ}$  to  $62^{\circ}$ .

In the drier parts of the continent there are various proofs that at one time the climate was moister than it is at present, and in some of these districts the population was in consequence more numerous. How far such changes may be taken to indicate a more or less continuous process of desiccation is very uncertain.

**Trade routes.** The monsoon region in the south-east of Asia has, from the very dawn of history, been a populous and productive part of the continent, and its commodities have been all the more valued in Europe from being the products of a warmer climate, and hence of a different nature from those native to the west. Indian spices, drugs and dyes, and Chinese silks, together with precious stones, have been eagerly sought after by European merchants since the time of the Romans, and some of them found their way to the Mediterranean even in early Biblical times (Genesis, xxxvii. 25). The favourite routes by which these commodities were exchanged for European goods differed at different periods. In large part the rise and fall of empires determined the predominant direction of trade, now by way of the Red Sea and Egypt, now by

the Persian Gulf and Persia to the eastern borders of the Mediterranean, now by more northern routes and round the Caspian to the Black Sea; from China through Indian ports, or from China across the deserts of central Asia; no route ever used exclusively, but with a recurring tendency to favour the Persian Gulf and the Red Sea. For centuries, indeed, it was a case of ringing the changes on these routes and other variants, as dictated by circumstances. Then, at the end of the fifteenth century, came Vasco da Gama's revolutionary discovery of the sea-way to India, which, as the years went on, struck a devastating blow at the overland trade. Nearly four more centuries passed before, with the opening of the Suez Canal in 1869, the Red Sea again became the favoured route for traffic between Europe and Asia, this time with the addition of Australasia as a further goal. In the present century, not only have the Red Sea and the Persian Gulf both been linked by railway with the European network, but China has been placed in railway communication with northern Europe by the Trans-Siberian route. Further, valuable freight as well as passengers are now flown swiftly over routes where, in earlier ages, caravans of camels and other beasts of burden pursued their slow and toilsome way.

A notable development of the period following the Second World War was the renunciation by the Western European Powers of their sovereign rights in their Asiatic Empires, through the grant of self-government to the constituent countries, which for the most part decided to exercise their freedom as independent States within the framework of the Empires to which they were formerly subject. Britain's former Indian Empire is now composed of three States—India, defined as a republic which remains a full member of the British Commonwealth; Pakistan, also a republic of the Commonwealth; and Burma, which was separated from India before the Second World War and afterwards elected for full independence outside the Commonwealth. Elsewhere, Ceylon has been given Dominion status within the Commonwealth. French Indo-China has become three independent States—Viet-Nam, Cambodia, and Laos—whose future is still in the melting-pot (p. 582). The Netherlands East Indies, with the exception of Dutch New Guinea, now rank as the Republik Indonesia Serikat—the United States of Indonesia—an independent State, at first within the framework of the Netherlands Union but contracting out of the Union in 1954.

While these changes were taking place in the Orient, independent States were being established in western Asia, in the territories at the eastern end of the Mediterranean, where Turkey held sway before the First World War and where Britain and France exercised mandates in between the two World Wars. Syria and Lebanon became independent States during the Second World War, and that part of Palestine colonised by Jews proclaimed itself an independent

State under the name of Israel soon after the war—in 1948 when Britain yielded up the mandate granted by the old League of Nations.

In the Far East, a Japan shorn of outlying territories emerged from the Second World War under military occupation, mainly by American troops, until 1952, when a peace treaty was signed and diplomatic relations were restored. Another major change has been the establishment of communist rule in China, in alliance with Russia, so that both these vast territories now function largely behind an 'Iron Curtain.' Practically everywhere in Asia, east and west, growing unrest and a spirit of narrow nationalism have militated against economic and commercial development, which, however, is still fundamentally based on the geographical factors that are the concern of this book. In the following pages the characteristics of all these countries, new and old, are summed up on this factual basis.

## CYPRUS

Cyprus, the third largest island in the Mediterranean, lying in the angle between Syria (60 miles to the east) and Turkey (40 miles to the north), has an area of 3,570 square miles (nearly half the size of Wales) and a civilian population of over half a million. Formerly a Turkish possession, it passed by agreement under British control in 1878, the Sultan retaining nominal sovereignty. The island was formally annexed by Great Britain in 1914 on the outbreak of war with Turkey. Less than one-fifth of the population speak Turkish and are Moslems; nearly four-fifths are Greek-speaking. In recent years terrorist campaigns for and against union with Greece have led to much violent unrest in defiance of the Government, involving emergency measures within the island and diplomatic negotiations with both Greece and Turkey. In February 1959 Britain concluded an agreement with the other two countries and with representatives of the Greek and Turkish communities in Cyprus, establishing in the island a republic of unique character. Britain retained sovereignty over two areas forming British bases, one on the east coast near Larnaca, the other on the south coast near Limassol. Elsewhere a Council of Ministers and a House of Representatives were to be constituted on the basis of 70 per cent. Greeks and 30 per cent. Turks. In addition separate communal chambers, Greek and Turkish, were to have the right to impose taxes and other levies on their respective communities. Details were to be worked out by committees by February 1960.

Shaped like a bill-hook, with the handle extending to the north-east, the island has along the whole of the northern coast—a distance of 100 miles—a mountain range with peaks rising to 3,300 feet, and in the south-west a broader mass of mountains, culminating in

Mount Troödos (Olympus) with a height of 6,406 feet—high enough to permit of winter sports and to serve as the summer seat of government. Between the two ranges stretches a great plain, the Mesaoria, given over to farming and having in the centre the capital, Nicosia. Nearly half the total area of the island is classed as arable land; nearly a fifth is forested, only a tenth ranks as pastoral, the rest is built on or waste. Farming is the basis of the island's economy. Fully a third of the working population get their living from the land, and there are nearly 50,000 independent peasants or farmers. Rainfall, mostly in winter, ranges from 14 inches in the Mesaoria to 40 inches among the mountains, and is normally adequate for crops, with the aid of irrigation; but seasons vary a good deal, droughts are not uncommon, and yields fluctuate greatly. Cereal crops in 1955 were wheat (200,000 acres, yielding 60,000 tons) and barley (140,000 acres; 53,000 tons). Fruit and vegetables were the other main crops, grapes yielding 92,000 tons from 90,000 acres; citrus fruits 50,000 tons, mostly oranges; and potatoes 55,000 tons from 12,000 acres. Cotton, olive oil, and tobacco are other crops on a smaller and uncertain scale. There is a steady trade in carobs—the horn-like pods of the carob tree.

Because of the scorching summers, there are no good all-the-year-round pastures, and the most numerous livestock are sheep and goats, of which over half a million find rough grazing and supply their owners with milk and cheese. Both the goats and their owners have done extensive damage to the forests, and great efforts are being made to limit their activities. In 1955 they numbered 180,000, or only half the number of sheep. Camels are still found in Cyprus, but the number is now under a thousand.

The forests, though sadly depleted, contain much valuable timber, which is now carefully conserved. A Forestry College, opened in 1951 among the pine forests of the Troödos range, is intended to be a training centre for the entire Middle East.

The mineral resources of Cyprus are of ancient renown; the name 'copper' is derived from *cyprium aes* (Cyprus metal). Since the Second World War there has been a striking revival of the mining industry in the Troödos Mountains, and its products—chiefly cupreous pyrites, asbestos, chrome iron ore, and gypsum—have become the most valuable of the island's exports.

The unit of currency, the Cyprus £, is equivalent to the £ sterling, and is divided into 1,000 mils, the smallest coin being 3 mils (about  $\frac{3}{4}$ d.). Imports have long been in excess of exports, thanks to British expenditure on Development and Welfare and Defence. In 1956, imports valued at £39m. were nearly 60 per cent. manufactures, including machinery; 15 per cent. foodstuffs; and 10 per cent. petroleum products. Exports, valued at £21m., were 65 per cent. crude materials, nearly all copper and iron ores and concentrates;

and 25 per cent. foodstuffs, mostly fruit and vegetables. Minor exports include artificial teeth made in millions, and buttons made from dom nuts by the hundred million. The United Kingdom provided nearly half the imports; Germany took a third of the exports and Britain a quarter.

The narrow-gauge railway which since 1905 has crossed the Mesaoria from the port of Famagusta to Nicosia was closed at the end of 1951, and Cyprus is now without railway transport. There is a good road system, comprising nearly 1,000 miles of main roads (of which some 800 miles are asphalted) and 2,600 miles of secondary roads. Already, before the railway was closed, Cyprus had 8,500 motor vehicles; in 1957 the number was 25,000, half of them private cars. Large additions were made to the British Forces in the island, especially the Air Force, to balance the withdrawal from the Suez Canal Base (p. 631).

After several years of planning, an Electricity Authority for Cyprus was set up in 1952. A power station was constructed at Dekhelia, in the Larnaca district, and existing electricity undertakings in Nicosia, Limassol, and other leading centres were acquired. Despite the disturbed conditions in later years, so great were the demands on the Authority both for lighting and for irrigation pumps, that the number of units generated increased from 26m. in 1953 to 148m. in 1957.

Development has not been confined to material conditions. An intensive campaign against malaria resulted in 1949 in the complete eradication of the malaria-bearing mosquito.

Nicosia, the capital, is also the largest town; it has a population of 80,000, including suburbs. After it come Limassol, 37,000, on the south coast; Famagusta, 27,000, on the east coast; Larnaca, 18,000, on the south-east coast. Famagusta is the chief port, and has been steadily improved. Limassol and Larnaca are little more than open roadsteads.

## TURKEY

The ancient Sultanate of Turkey, whose ruler was also Caliph, or head of the Mohammedan religion, lost much territory in the First World War and was proclaimed a republic in 1923, by vote of a National Assembly. The caliphate was abolished, Western dress introduced, the Roman alphabet adopted, and the capital removed from Stamboul or Istanbul (formerly Constantinople) to Ankara, in the heart of Asia Minor. Despite westernising influences, Turkey belongs, geographically, almost wholly to Asia. Of its present area of 300,000 square miles, only 3 per cent. (9,000 square miles) falls on the European side of the Bosphorus, the Sea of Mar-

mara, and the Dardanelles, while 97 per cent. (291,000 square miles), comprising the whole of Asia Minor, lies to the eastward of that inter-continental boundary.

Asiatic Turkey has a long seaboard, extending along the southern shores of the Black Sea, both shores of the Sea of Marmara, the eastern shores of the *Ægean*, and the northern shores of the eastern end of the Mediterranean. On the landward side Turkey borders on the Soviet Union (Georgia and Armenia), Persia, Iraq, and Syria. Within these confines is the Anatolian tableland with a basic height of about 3,000 feet, skirted by fertile valleys and plains, but itself largely arid and carrying numerous mountain groups and ranges, culminating on its eastern borders in Mount Ararat, rising to nearly 17,000 feet. Behind the Mediterranean coast the Taurus range towers to over 10,000 feet, broken by the famous gorge known as the Cilician Gate, giving access to the interior from the plains of Tarsus and Adana. Many large lakes are scattered over the surface of the plateau, the largest, Lake Van, near the eastern border, having an area of 1,450 square miles, which is larger than Cornwall. Rivers are fairly numerous and some are of considerable length, but in general they are not suitable for navigation; they include the upper reaches of the Euphrates. Despite the unfavourable character of the country there is a network of 4,800 miles of railways, mostly of standard gauge (4ft. 8½in.), including the Turkish sections of the through routes which function normally from London and Paris to Egypt and the Persian Gulf. Roads cover over 15,000 miles, but under 10,000 miles are in good repair.

Turkey is sparsely populated; its 24m. inhabitants, half the population of Britain, are spread over an area 3½ times as large. Some 80 per cent. of the people live in rural areas, and farming is the outstanding industry, though the government aims at developing manufactures. The country is predominantly pastoral; over 40 per cent. is classed as permanent meadows and pastures. Another 30 per cent. ranks as arable land, and 13 per cent. is covered with forests, leaving 17 per cent. for built-on areas and waste. There are great numbers of livestock: in 1955, 27m. sheep, 21m. goats (about a quarter of them mohair), 11m. cattle, nearly 1¼m. donkeys, 1½m. horses, over 1m. buffaloes, and 90,000 camels.

Of the 56m. acres of arable land, over 4m. are occupied by gardens and orchards, and 33m. are under cereal and other crops, the balance lying fallow. Wheat is easily the most extensive crop, and is grown mainly on the Anatolian plateau; methods in general are primitive, and the average yield is poor, but modern machinery is being introduced and the total yield is sufficient for home needs except in very bad years. In 1955, a good year, wheat was grown on nearly 18m. acres and yielded 7m. tons—about 15 bushels per acre. Barley is grown on about 6½m. acres, maize on 1¼ acres, rye

on 1½m. acres, and oats on nearly a million acres. Apart from cereals, grapes are the most extensively cultivated (1¼m. acres), but other crops, though on a smaller scale, are numerous and valuable. Especially important are cotton and tobacco. Tobacco, long the most valuable export, is grown in both European and Asiatic Turkey; in 1955 it yielded 120,000 tons, the chief centre being Samsun, on the Black Sea coast. Cotton made rapid strides after the war, and in 1950-51, for the first time, it displaced tobacco and the leading export, but in later years it fell away again, though still important; production in 1955 exceeded 150,000 tons, mostly in the plains around Adana; Izmir (Smyrna) is also a notable centre of production.

The forested areas are mostly on the slopes between the coastal region and the Anatolian plateau. They include valuable timbers, but have suffered much from the depredations both of peasants and of goats. A law to nationalise the forests and prohibit wood-cutting aroused strong opposition, and attempts have since been made to enlist the co-operation of the peasants.

Mineral resources are considerable but have not been greatly developed. A few million tons of coal are produced annually at Zonguldak, on the Black Sea coast; the best part of a million tons of chrome ore, and nearly a million tons of iron ore. Turkey is one of the chief sources of supply of chrome; the ore is the chief item in her mineral exports, which otherwise are a trifling factor in the export trade, though efforts are being made to increase them. The State has taken over the Zonguldak mines and is modernising both the mines and the port in pursuance of its policy of industrial development. In the past, this policy has been combined with the nationalisation of public utilities, especially the iron and steel and textile industries, mining, and forestry; more recently, following a change of government, there has been a tendency to stress the advantages of private enterprise. Whatever developments the future may hold, Turkey's foreign trade at the half-century is that of an agricultural and pastoral country, and many economic difficulties beset a modernising policy. Aid has been provided by the United States, and imports are in excess of exports.

The Turkish £ (£T.) of 100 piastres has a nominal exchange value of 2s. 6½d. In 1956 imports were valued at £T.1,140m. (£145m.), and nearly 75 per cent. of the total represented manufactures, mainly machinery and transport equipment. Petroleum and products made up another 10 per cent., food only 6.5 per cent. Exports totalled £T.854m. (£108.5m.), of which foodstuffs made up over a third, and tobacco just under a third. Cotton provided 9 per cent., wool 3 per cent., non-ferrous ores (chiefly chromium) 9 per cent., and manufactures including machinery 6 per cent., nearly all unwrought copper and alloys.

Imports and exports were supplied and taken chiefly by Germany



and the United States (each between 20 and 25 per cent. on either side of the account). Next in the scale were Britain and Italy (each between 5 and 10 per cent.).

Naturally, in a country whose economy is so largely dependent on its crops, the relative values of the chief exports are dependent on the seasons. An analysis of the returns for 1949 and 1950 shows the pitfalls in any but the broadest generalisations. Though 1949 was a bad year for cereals, it was a good year for some crops. Exports of tobacco were valued at £T.259m., or well over a third of the total; nuts and fruit at £T.114; raw cotton at £T.76m. By contrast, 1950 yielded an average crop of wheat but was a bad year for nuts and oil-seeds, while the exports of tobacco declined to such an extent (from 80,000 tons to 49,000 tons) that for the first time they had to yield pride of place to cotton; whereas the exports of cotton increased in value by more than 150 per cent., amounting to 76,000 tons valued at £T.195m.—nearly a third of the total.

The principal ports are Istanbul, which, though no longer the capital, is by far the largest city, and Izmir (the former Smyrna), which has a fine natural harbour, preserved from silting by diverting westwards the mouth of the Gediz Chai (Hermus). Ankara, the capital (inland), comes between the two in size. Census populations of these and other leading cities in 1950 were:

Istanbul		Eskisehir . . .	123,000	Malatya . . .	65,000
(Constantinople)	1,215,000	Gaziantep . . .	97,000	Diyarbakir . . .	63,000
Ankara (capital)	453,000	Konya . . .	93,000	Samsun . . .	63,000
Izmir (Smyrna)	286,000	Kayseri (Caesarea)	81,000	Izmit . . .	57,000
Adana . . .	172,000	Erzerum . . .	69,000	Adapazari . . .	55,000
Bursa (Brusa)	131,000	Sivas . . .	66,000	Mersin . . .	51,000

## SYRIA

Until the First World War, Syria was part of the Turkish Empire. Afterwards it was administered by France under mandate from the League of Nations, until in the Second World War it received promise of independence from the Free French and was constituted a republic; in 1945 it joined the Arab League, and all foreign troops were withdrawn in 1946. Early in 1958 Syria and Egypt federated as the "United Arab Republic," and were joined by the Kingdom of Yemen in a "union" of federated Arab States.

The Syrian Republic itself lies due south of Turkey in Asia, its northern frontier being followed, for most of the way, by the course of the Baghdad Railway. On the west it has a short sea-board (about a hundred miles) along the Mediterranean, opposite to Cyprus, and it continues south on the landward side first of the Lebanese Republic, then of Israel, as far as the southern end of the Lake of Tiberias, where it turns east and north, marching first with

Jordan and then with Iraq back to the Turkish frontier. Within these limits is an area of 70,000 square miles (three-fourths the size of Great Britain), inhabited by some 3½m. people. A narrow but fertile coastal belt is backed by mountain ranges, dropping on the farther side to the valley of the Orontes, which, rising in the Lebanon, flows northwards through Syria, parallel with the coast, till it finds an outlet to the sea in Turkey, just north of the Syrian frontier. Eastward the country merges into the Syrian Desert, though the north-east corner is crossed by the Euphrates.

Twenty-five per cent. of the republic is classed as unproductive, and another 15 per cent. is unused though potentially productive. Of the remaining 60 per cent. well over half is pastoral country and over a third is arable. In Syria, as in Turkey, the wooded country has suffered badly from the depredations of goats, and less than 3 per cent. of the republic is now classed as forested. Only two crops are grown on a large scale—wheat, covering up to 3½m. acres in 1955 but yielding so meagrely that crops range only from about ½m. to 1m. tons according to the season; and barley, grown on 1½m. acres but yielding from under ¼m. to over ½m. tons. Many other crops are cultivated, but both acreage and production are comparatively small, though the grape crop yields up to ¼m. tons. Cotton is of increasing importance; in 1955, as the result of extended cultivation and better yields, the crop amounted to 84,000 tons of ginned cotton. Northern Syria offers promising conditions. The most widely renowned of Syrian products is latakia tobacco, an ingredient of innumerable smoking mixtures throughout the world; it flourishes in the coastal plains and takes its name from the port of Latakia.

Livestock are a big factor in the economy of the republic. Sheep number 4m. and goats over 1½m.; cattle over ½m., asses and mules 350,000, horses 100,000. Among beasts of burden are over 100,000 camels, which recall the Biblical associations of ancient Syria.

One of the legacies of the Second World War is a system of excellent roads. A motor-bus service crosses the desert from the capital, Damascus, to Baghdad. The through railway route from Europe to Egypt traverses western Syria, and in the north, near the Turkish frontier, links on to the Baghdad Railway. In the south it continues into Lebanon, where the port of Beirut serves as the commercial gateway for Syria. The trouble between the States of the Arab League and Israel has restricted intercourse with the latter country. On the main line to Egypt the train service is suspended between Beirut and Haifa, as well as on a narrow-gauge branch line from Haifa to Damascus; but another section of this branch line is in operation from Beirut to Damascus, continuing into the Hashemite kingdom of the Jordan.

Syria has no port of outstanding importance. Latakia (the ancient Laodicea), with a population of 109,000, has only a small harbour opening into a sheltered roadstead. Banias (site of Caesarea Philippi), south of Latakia, is the terminal of a thirty-inch oil pipeline from Iraq, which came into operation in 1952 and can carry 14m. tons a year. The chief centres of population are inland. Damascus has a population of 395,000, and strung along the main line of railway, from north to south, are Aleppo (398,000), Hama (173,000), and Homs (293,000), the junction for coastal and inland routes to Beirut.

The Syrian pound (£ Syr.) of 100 piastres has an official exchange value of around 3s. 3d., but the free market rate, available for all ordinary commercial transactions, is approximately 2s. (June 1958). Imports in 1956 were valued at £ Syr. 412.7m. (£42m.) and exports at £ Syr. 502m. (£51m.). They were not analysed according to the Standard International Trade Classification. No single class of commodities dominated the imports, the biggest group being petroleum products (14 per cent.), followed by motor cars (5 per cent.). On the other hand, raw cotton provided 30 per cent. of the exports, and cereals 25 per cent. Britain, U.S.A., Germany and Lebanon supplied 40 per cent. of the imports, and Lebanon, France and Italy took nearly half the exports.

## LEBANON

When, after the First World War, the French took over under mandate the administration of the Turkish territories comprised in Syria, they united various districts in the mountainous south-west corner of the country to form the State of Great Lebanon. When the mandate was relinquished during the Second World War, Lebanon as well as Syria was proclaimed an independent republic. It is a small country, about half the size of Wales, supporting a population of 1½m. It has a coast some 125 miles long and has a general width of about 30 miles, and consists almost entirely of a mountain range, rising in the north to 10,000 feet. The height drops farther south, but the railway from Beirut (about half-way along the coast) to Damascus (see under Syria) crosses the mountains by a pass nearly 5,000 feet above sea-level.

Lebanon, the main range, from which the country takes its name, rises in cultivated terraces from a fringe of coastal plains, and on the other side drops more abruptly, under more sterile conditions, to the Bekaa Valley, which divides Lebanon from

Anti-Lebanon—a smaller edition of the range, traversed by the Syrian-Lebanese frontier. In the Bekaa rise two rivers of classical fame: the Leontes (modern Litani), flowing southwards to empty itself into the Mediterranean after a comparatively short course, and the Orontes (Nahr el Asi, or 'rebellious river'), which flows north through Syria (*q.v.*) and has a course of over 200 miles.

The area of the Lebanese Republic is about 4,000 square miles. Over a quarter is built-on or waste, and 40 per cent. is unused though potentially productive. Another quarter is arable. The balance of 8 per cent., some 300 square miles, is forest and woodland, which, as in neighbouring countries, has been sadly depleted by indiscriminate felling and the ravages of goats, though there is still a cluster of the 'cedars of Lebanon' to recall one of the ancient glories of the country. Goats registered for taxation number half a million—four times as many as all the other four-footed domestic livestock. Of these latter the most numerous are sheep (60,000), cattle (30,000), and donkeys (22,000). Camels number 2,000.

The narrow coastal plain and terraced hill slopes produce a wide variety of crops, though with so small a country neither areas nor crops are very large. Cereals are the most widely cultivated. Wheat tops the list, followed by barley and maize. Potatoes and pulses are also grown. But the outstanding crops after cereals are grapes, olives, and citrus fruits. Bananas, sugar cane, groundnuts, rice and sesame seed are other cultivations testifying to the sub-tropical character of the Lebanese climate, at least in part.

Lebanon, like Syria, has a legacy of good roads from the Second World War, and a sufficient railway service from pre-war days (see under Syria), as well as an excellent port in Beirut and a secondary port in Tripoli. Imports and exports are of the traditional character of countries engaged in primary production, with little industrial development. But the commercial importance of Lebanon is not limited to its own supplies and needs. It is a flourishing *entrepôt* of trade not only with Syria, but with Jordan and Iraq; and it has on its coast the terminals of oil pipelines—two of 12-in. and 16-in. diameter at Tripoli, coming from Iraq, and one of 30-in. near Saida (the ancient Sidon), coming over 1,000 miles across Arabia from Ras al Mishaab, on the Persian Gulf.

Officially the Lebanese £ (£ Leb.) has the same value as the Syrian £, but at the free rate it is worth slightly more (about 2s. 3d.). A notable feature of the trade is the great disparity between imports and exports; in 1956 imports were valued at £ Leb. 519·5m. (£58·4m.) and exports at £ Leb. 130m. (£14·6m.). The difference is partly made up by tourist receipts and remittances from emigrants. A wide range of imports in 1956 had no predominant features. Fruit and vegetables provided a third of the exports, and hides and skins, wool, cotton and tobacco made up another 14 per cent. Syria

supplied about a fifth of the imports, and Britain and U.S.A. about a quarter between them, while Syria and Saudi Arabia took between them nearly a quarter of the exports.

The chief towns and their latest estimated populations, are:

Beirut (Capital)	. . . 450,000	Zahlé	. . . 40,000
Tripoli	. . . 100,000	Saida (Sidon)	. . . 25,000

## ISRAEL

The Republic of Israel was founded in May 1948, immediately after the British Government relinquished the mandate to administer Palestine, which it had exercised since the break-up of the Turkish Empire in the First World War. The new republic was, and is still (1959), without demarcated frontiers. The United Nations had recommended the division of Palestine into two States, Jewish and Arab, but no agreement had been reached, and the British withdrawal was a signal for the invasion of Palestine by its neighbours. Hostilities continued till early in 1949, when Israel concluded an armistice with the bordering Arab States—Lebanon and Syria on the north, Jordan on the east, and Egypt on the south-west. The armistice laid down provisional frontiers which differed from those of the mandated area chiefly in a big ‘bite’ by Jordan out of Palestine, extending (north to south) from about midway between the Sea of Galilee and the Dead Sea to about midway along the west coast of the Dead Sea, and taking in westward most of the hill country of central Palestine—an area of some 2,350 square miles. The territory occupied by Jordan included Nablus (Shechem), Hebron, Bethlehem, and part of Jerusalem, which was divided so as to leave the modern city to Israel and the ancient city to Jordan. No peace treaties have yet ratified or modified these provisional frontiers, which present many anomalies, such as stretches of no-man’s land and the separation of villages from the farms belonging to their inhabitants, and frontier ‘incidents’ have been frequent. The United Nations maintains a truce supervision organisation.

The area within the provisional frontiers is estimated at about 8,000 square miles—a little larger than Wales. The country is long (from north to south) and narrow, and falls geographically into three longitudinal strips, though their continuity is broken by the broad wedge which Jordan has bitten out of Palestine. Along the coast, which Israel enjoys uninterruptedly, is a strip of considerable fertility, enjoying a good Mediterranean climate. Then comes a strip of hill country, occupied in the centre by Jordan and broken farther north by the transverse Plain of Esdraelon, running from Haifa south-east to the Jordan valley. The third strip is

formed by the Jordan valley itself, the Dead Sea, and the country beyond it to the south as far as the Gulf of Akaba—the north-east arm of the Red Sea. Much of this third strip is below sea-level—at its greatest depth nearly 1,300 feet below. The old Palestine frontier followed it continuously, but now Israel's hold on it is interrupted in the centre by Jordan's expansion westward.

Economically Israel falls somewhat differently into three parts. Coincident with the first geographical strip, the coastal plains are the principal home of the orange groves and vineyards so prominent in most Jewish settlements. At the northern end of the country, the hills and plains of Galilee are the home of mixed farming. At the southern end, the great tract of the Negev, comprising more than half the area of Israel, is a desert upland, particularly barren as it approaches the Gulf of Akaba, with limestone hills split by deep ravines, but having farther north a more regular surface with soil conditions which need only water to become productive. With the aid of irrigation water brought from the wetter north cultivation from new village settlements peopled by immigrants is being pushed steadily southwards, especially around the expanding town of Beersheba. Elsewhere there are still nomadic Beduin. There is a little oil near the coast. The population of Israel has increased rapidly. The exodus of Arabs as refugees, estimated at 600,000 in the first year of the republic, has since been more than balanced by the unrestricted influx of Jewish immigrants, themselves often refugees from Eastern Europe. In 1958 the total population was 2m., including 1½m. Jews.

Between a third and a quarter of the total area is utilised as arable, pastoral, and (to a smaller extent) wooded country. Barley, wheat and maize are widely grown cereals, but commercially the most important crops are citrus and other fruits, especially oranges, of which the production in 1956 was 360,000 tons. Livestock included 102,000 cattle, 98,000 sheep and 135,000 goats.

By no means all the immigrants settle on the land. Large numbers are absorbed in small industries—processing foodstuffs, cutting and polishing diamonds, making pharmaceutical products and porcelain false teeth, etc. A company, Palestine Potash Ltd., granted a concession in 1930 to exploit the mineral salts of the Dead Sea, suspended operations after the Second World War, but, re-named, reopened its works in 1952 at the southern end of the Dead Sea by agreement with the Israeli Government, which has acquired a controlling interest (51 per cent.). Another major industry centres, normally, in large oil refineries at the port of Haifa, but these have been put largely out of action by the troubles between Israel and its Arab neighbours, as a result of which Iraq will not allow crude oil to be pumped through the pipeline linking Haifa with the Kirkuk oil-fields. The port has a modern harbour with a depth of 30 feet alongside the main quay, and is the chief shipping centre in Israel,

as well as the second largest town. Easily the largest conurbation is Tel Aviv-Jaffa: Tel Aviv, the modern Jewish seaside town of phenomenal growth, now incorporating the ancient Jaffa (Joppa). But as a port Tel Aviv-Jaffa is merely an open roadstead, with two basins—one for the lighters by which vessels anchored outside are loaded and unloaded, and the other for fishing vessels and other small craft. In line with its general policy of planned economy Israel has its own mercantile marine, with 35 vessels of 149,000 tons, gross. Apart from its Mediterranean coast, it borders the head of the Gulf of Akaba for some eight miles, at the southern tip of the Negev, and there Eilat is being opened up as a small port.

A standard gauge (4ft. 8½in.) railway traverses the Mediterranean coastal plain, and in normal times is linked up with the railways of Lebanon and Syria as part of the through route between Europe and Cairo. From Lod (Lydda)—Israel's aviation centre—branch railways connect with the coast at Tel Aviv-Jaffa and inland, through the hill country, with Jerusalem (2,600 feet). Other lines, including the new one to Beersheba bring up the total mileage to 385. Some of these connect with, but are no longer run in conjunction with, railway services in the neighbouring Arab States (see under Syria). Paved roads total over 2,000 miles.

Trade is based at present on an aided economy, the value of the imports being several times that of the exports. The Israeli pound (₪) enjoyed parity with the £ sterling until 1952, when it was devalued. With an effective rate of exchange of  $\text{₪}5.04 = \text{£}1$ , it is worth just under 4s. In 1956 imports were valued at  $\text{₪}655\text{m.}$  (£131m.) and exports at  $\text{₪}187\text{m.}$  (£37m.). Cereals, chiefly wheat, made up 10 per cent. of the imports, iron and steel manufactures over 10 per cent., machinery over 10 per cent., petroleum products over 10 per cent., rough diamonds over 5 per cent. Oranges provided a third of the exports, cut and polished diamonds a quarter. The United States supplied 30 per cent. of the imports, Germany 18 per cent., and Britain 10 per cent., while U.S.A. and Britain between them took 40 per cent. of the exports, and Belgium and Finland 12 per cent.

#### POPULATION OF CHIEF TOWNS, JANUARY 1957

*(Accounting for a third of the total population)*

Tel Aviv-Jaffa, 370,000

Haifa, 160,000

Jerusalem (Israel's portion; modern city only), 150,000

## JORDAN

On the break-up of the Ottoman Empire after the First World War, the status of the 'Transjordan' territories—*i.e.* the territories east of the Jordan—'across the Jordan' from Palestine—was for a time indeterminate. In 1922 the League of Nations appointed the United Kingdom as the mandatory Power for Palestine and Transjordan, and recognised a British arrangement to erect Transjordan into an emirate under a son of the ex-King of the Hejaz. Development in the emirate proceeded along the lines of constitutional self-government, and when the mandate was relinquished after the Second World War the British concluded a treaty (1946; revised 1948) with Transjordan as a sovereign independent State; the Emir took the title of King, and the country was later proclaimed the Hashemite Kingdom of the Jordan. It extends eastward to the borders of Iraq and Saudi Arabia, and is also neighboured by Saudi Arabia on the south. Northward it is bounded by Syria.

Up to the time of the foregoing change of status, the western frontier followed the River Jordan down to and through the Dead Sea, and continued south along the Wadi Araba to the Gulf of Akaba—the north-east arm of the Red Sea. The fighting between Israel and her Arab neighbours in 1948 carried the Jordanian forces west of the River Jordan, and when an armistice was concluded in 1949 they remained in occupation of a tract of over 2,000 square miles of Arab Palestine (see under Israel). This tract was incorporated in the Hashemite Kingdom in 1950, and is known as West Jordan to distinguish it from the former emirate—East Jordan. In the same year the Hashemite Kingdom, which had previously used Palestinian currency, issued its own currency, having for unit the Jordan dinar, maintained at par with the £ sterling.

East Jordan is many times the size of the added territory; with an area of some 35,000 square miles, it is rather larger than Scotland. Here are the ancient lands of Gilead, Ammon, Moab, and Edom, dividing into cross-sections the narrow strip along the eastern floor of the deep rift valley (below sea-level) which carries the River Jordan and the Dead Sea, and mounting the eastern escarpment to a narrow belt of hill country with peaks of 3,000 feet to 5,000 feet, merging into a bare plateau which forms by far the largest part of Trans-



Jordan. Beduin range the plateau with their flocks of sheep and goats; cultivation is confined to the hill country and the valley floor, and even there it is only in the north that settled villages are found. Elsewhere in the cultivable zone, semi-nomadic tribes settle temporarily and raise crops in season as need arises. In the hill country an average rainfall of 20 inches is spread over the months October to May, and is followed by a rainless summer. On the plateau, the annual rainfall is no more than a few inches.

Little over a fifth of Jordan is classed as productive. In 1954, arable land was officially estimated at 2.4m. acres, pastoral at 1.8m. acres, and forested at 1.3m. acres. The wheat crop varies greatly with the season—from under 100,000 tons to nearly  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. tons. Smaller but substantial crops are grown of barley, sorghum, olives and grapes. Sheep number over  $\frac{1}{2}$ m., and goats over  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. There are about 50,000 cattle, and 20,000 camels.

The population of the Hashemite Kingdom as a whole is estimated at 1.4m.; East and West Jordan have each normally about 400,000, and the troubles between Israel and her Arab neighbours have resulted, according to Jordan's reckoning, in an influx of 600,000 refugees from Israel. At best, Jordan is not on a self-supporting basis, and the maintenance of so many refugees, mostly lodged in camps, has been made possible only by financial aid from United Nations funds. In addition, Jordan has had British and other grants-in-aid. In good years Jordan has a surplus of foodstuffs and livestock for export. In 1956, when total exports amounted to only JD.4.38m., fruit and vegetables accounted for nearly 40 per cent., olive oil 20 per cent., fertilisers (phosphate) 15 per cent., and cereals (chiefly wheat and barley)  $7\frac{1}{2}$  per cent. Imports, as usual in an aided country without a balanced economy, were very much more, JD.27.8m.—miscellaneous products among which the chief items, each around 5 per cent., were flour, sugar, cotton piece goods, iron and steel goods, and mechanical equipment. Britain, Lebanon and Germany supplied nearly half the imports, and the Lebanon, Britain and Iraq took three-fourths of the exports.

The known mineral wealth is small. Some phosphate deposits are worked, and the potash salts of the Dead Sea invite attention. There has been prospecting for oil in southern Jordan. The Trans-Arabian pipeline carrying oil from the Persian Gulf to the Mediterranean at Saida (Lebanon) traverses Jordan, and a local oil refinery has been planned.

The Hejaz Railway, which at one time connected with Medina but does not now even reach the Hejaz,<sup>1</sup> runs through the eastern borders of the Jordanian hill country as far as Ma'an, serving en route the capital, Amman. It is a narrow-gauge line (105 cm.; 3 ft. 5 $\frac{1}{2}$  in.). There are over 1,000 miles of all-weather roads, and

<sup>1</sup> But see p. 541.

Amman is linked with the outside world by air. The capital has grown rapidly; not long ago a smallish country town, it now has an estimated population of over 200,000. In the far south, where Jordan touches the Red Sea, is its only port, Akaba.

## IRAQ

The republic of Iraq occupies the south-east corner of the old Ottoman Empire. It comprises the former vilayets of Mosul, Baghdad, and Basra, which Turkey surrendered, among other territories, after the First World War. The administration was entrusted, by mandate from the League of Nations, to the United Kingdom, which established a constitutional monarchy under a sovereign elected by popular vote—a son of the ex-King of the Hejaz. The mandate was relinquished in 1932, when Iraq was admitted on British recommendation to the League of Nations as an independent sovereign State. In 1958 the then king, aged 23, a grandson of the first king, was assassinated in Baghdad along with other members of the royal family and his prime minister. A republican government, with communist sympathies and affiliations, replaced the monarchy, but the Iraqi dinar (ID) which had been the monetary unit since 1932, has so far (1959) retained its par value with the £ sterling.

Habitable Iraq is essentially the ancient Mesopotamia—the Land between the Rivers, *i.e.* the rivers Tigris and Euphrates—with a civilisation whose roots go down to the dim and distant past. Ur of the Chaldees, Babylon, Nineveh—these are but three of many famous centres whose past magnificence has been confirmed by modern excavations. For some years after the First World War, Iraq was commonly known as Mesopotamia, but this was never the official name of the modern State and has now fallen into disuse as a synonym.

**Physical features.** Both the Tigris and the Euphrates rise in the highlands of Asiatic Turkey and flow for considerable distances through that country as well as, in the case of the Euphrates, through Syria before they enter Iraq and eventually unite to form the Shatt-al-Arab and discharge their waters into the head of the Persian Gulf. In Iraq the 'land between the rivers' is for the most part a low-lying alluvial plain, merging in the north into the uplands around Mosul. For untold centuries the two main rivers and their lower tributaries have meandered through this plain, often changing their courses and carrying fertility now here, now there, to a soil with great potentialities but scanty rainfall—about six inches a year, on average. Averages in Iraq are, however, apt to be particularly misleading, and droughts are often varied by floods. Apart from irregular rainfall, the Persian frontier, which follows the edge of

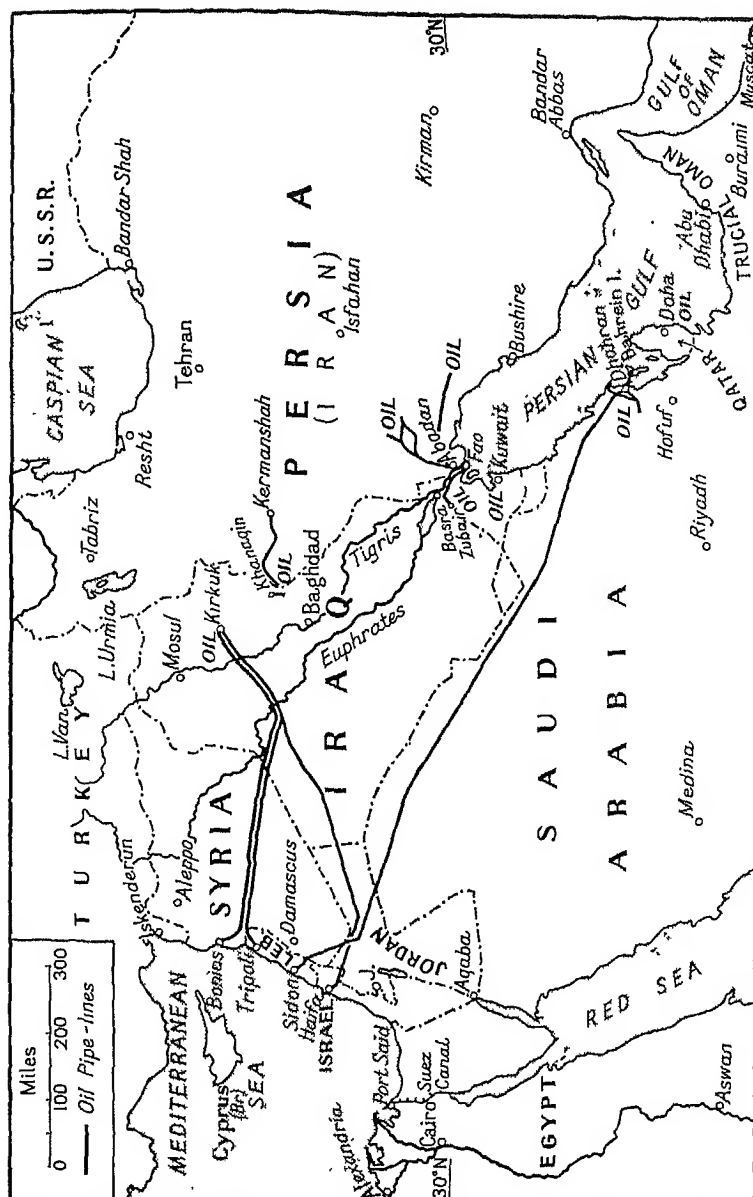
the alluvial plain from the Persian Gulf northwards, finally turns into Kurdistan, a large slice of which, with mountains rising to 14,000 feet, forms the north-east corner of Iraq. Several left-bank tributaries of the Tigris have their sources among the mountains, and in the rains pour down their torrents to the plain, to complicate the problem of turning it to profitable use. Irrigation and flood control—these are the twin needs of Iraq's agricultural economy. Their neglect led to the decay of great civilisations in the past. After the First World War, various works to meet both needs were carried out, and since the Second World War further schemes have been planned to extend the area of fertility.

In contrast with the conditions in the alluvial plain and in the mountainous country of the north-east, Iraq includes on its western side a vast expanse of desert, reaching to the borders of Syria, Jordan, and Saudi Arabia. Iraq's total area is 172,000 square miles—nearly twice the size of Britain—and of this the western desert occupies nearly half. The habitable country is divided into 14 provinces (*liwas*) and supports practically the total population, upwards of 5m.

**Products of the soil.** Only a fraction of even the inhabited country is productive. The Food and Agriculture Organisation (F.A.O.) of the United Nations, in its analysis of land use in Iraq, reckons 13·48m. acres to be arable, 2·16m. acres pastoral, and 4·37m. acres forested—a total of 20m. acres, or a third of the area outside the western desert. A still larger part of this area—half of it—30m. acres—though still unused, is classed as potentially productive, so that five-sixths of the habitable country is capable of being utilised. With improved irrigation and flood control works, the land under cultivation should increase; but cultivation is on a shifting basis: even with the areas already available only parts are used in any one year, and results are as variable as the seasons and other conditions. Barley and wheat, grown in the winter season, are the principal cereal crops. In 1954, 2½m. acres of barley yielded 1½m. tons; in 1955 the crop from 3m. acres was ¾m. tons. Similarly in 1954, less than 3½m. acres of wheat yielded over 1m. tons, whereas in 1955 over 3½m. acres yielded under ½m. tons.

Rice, a summer crop, is also widely grown, with equally variable results—180,000 tons from 300,000 acres in 1954; 80,000 tons from 130,000 acres in 1955. In both years some 7,000 tons of cotton were obtained from about 220,000 acres. Previously some of the cotton grown was of an inferior type, but the cultivation of this was prohibited in 1949, and only a good type of American cotton, in demand on world markets, is now allowed. Tobacco is grown for the home market, the production of leaf tobacco in recent years ranging from 5,000 tons to double that quantity. It is used for the manufacture of cigarettes as a government monopoly.

The most distinctive of Iraq's crops is found in the date planta-



MIDDLE EAST OILFIELDS AND PIPELINES

tions which abound along the Shatt-al-Arab, and upstream along the Tigris and Euphrates as far as Samarra and Ana. It is reckoned that Iraq produces over a quarter of the world's dates; the number of date palms is put at 30m., and the bulk of the dates entering the world's markets are exported from Basra. Experts distinguish between 350 varieties, but only five are cultivated for export. A good crop yields 400,000 tons, with exports of over  $\frac{1}{4}$ m. tons valued at £2 $\frac{1}{2}$ m.

The pastoral industry plays a big part in farming. At the beginning of the half century there were some 10m. sheep (of the fat-tailed woolled variety), 3m. goats, 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ m. cattle, 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ m. asses and mules, and 300,000 horses. Camels number nearly 500,000, and buffaloes 700,000. Exports regularly include wool and live animals.

**Oil-fields.** Valuable as are all these resources, and fundamental the place which they occupy in the general economy of Iraq, they are being overshadowed commercially by another product—mineral oil. Modern development began in 1925 with the grant of a concession to the Iraq Petroleum Company, representing an international group, which opened up a big oil-field around Kirkuk, among the foothills of Kurdistan, about midway between Baghdad and Mosul. Other concessions to other companies followed, for the exploitation of supplies around Mosul, Khanaqin (between Baghdad and Kirkuk), and Basra. By 1950 the annual output was over 6m. tons, mostly from Kirkuk, but other fields were coming into production, and it was recognised that the potentialities were very much greater. The companies entered into a new agreement with the government, assigning to it half the profits from the oil produced, and other benefits, and guaranteeing in 1955 onwards a minimum output of 22m. tons of crude oil a year by the Iraq and Mosul Companies, and 8m. tons a year by the Basra Company. Already in 1954 production totalled over 30m. tons. The Basra field centres in Zubair, southwest of the port, and is connected by a pipeline 72 miles long with Fao, at the mouth of the Shatt-al-Arab. Eight storage tanks at Fao have a capacity of 4 $\frac{1}{2}$ m. tons, and tankers can be loaded by electric pumps at the rate of 2,000 tons an hour. Several pipelines connect Kirkuk with the Mediterranean coast. The line to Haifa is not working, because of the feud between Israel and its Arab neighbours, but a 12-in. pipeline to Tripoli, in Lebanon, has been supplemented by a 16-in. line, and yet another and larger (30-in.) pipeline, with a capacity of 14m. tons of crude oil a year, was completed in 1952 to Banias, in Syria. The Khanaqin Company, a subsidiary of the Anglo-Iranian, operates an oil-field 30 miles south of Khanaqin, near the Persian border. Supplies are pumped to a refinery near Khanaqin, whence they are distributed through Iraq for local requirements at low prices. A large part of the revenues from oil are assigned to a Development Board which aims at extending irrigation

and flood control, raising the general level of production and improving the whole standard of living in Iraq.

**Trade and communications.** As already noted, the monetary unit is the Iraqi Dinar (ID.), equivalent to the £ sterling. Oil was included in the export returns in the United Nations *Yearbook of International Trade Statistics* for the first time in 1955. The exports of oil (crude petroleum) are the dominating trade factor, and are essential to a right appreciation of the position, but previously figures have not been made generally available. In 1956, out of total national exports valued at ID.169·8m., they accounted for ID.156·6m., or 92 per cent. The remaining 8 per cent. included barley (2·9 per cent.), dates (1·46 per cent.), and wool (0·9 per cent.). Imports were valued at ID.114·5m., the chief items being iron and steel and machinery (36 per cent.), motor-cars and parts (7·6 per cent.), piece goods (7·8 per cent.), sugar (6·5 per cent.), and tea (6 per cent.).

Britain, the United States and Germany were the three leading countries engaged in the trade, as regards both imports and (exclusive of oil) exports.

The long-projected Baghdad Railway, completed in 1940, follows the right bank of the Tigris between Baghdad and Mosul, and connects through Syria and Turkey with the European railway system. It is of standard gauge (4ft. 8½in.) throughout, but a continuation southwards from Baghdad to Basra is of metre gauge, and in the reverse direction this metre-gauge line, after crossing the Tigris at Baghdad to the left bank, runs northward to Kirkuk and Erbil, with a short branch to Khanaqin. The total route mileage is about 1,000 miles, of which the Iraq section of the Baghdad Railway accounts for about a third.

There are about 4,500 miles of roads, mostly earth roads and tracks; only about 1,650 miles are metalled. Motor vehicles registered in 1955 included 15,338 cars, 5,265 taxis, 3,311 buses, 9,043 lorries, and 12,091 motor-cycles. Baghdad and Basra are important airports; 6,716 aircraft arrived and left in 1955.

#### TOWNS WITH OVER 80,000 PEOPLE AT 1947 CENSUS

Baghdad . . . . .	552,047	Nasiriyah . . . . .	110,943
Mosul . . . . .	340,541	Ramadi . . . . .	110,684
Basra . . . . .	206,302	Baquba . . . . .	94,482
Amarah . . . . .	183,870	Erbil . . . . .	86,104
Kerbelah . . . . .	149,710	Kut . . . . .	81,856
Kirkuk . . . . .	148,349	Hillah . . . . .	81,055

## ARABIA

Arabia forms a vast peninsula of about a million square miles in the south-west corner of Asia, separated from the main mass of the continent by the Persian Gulf and the Gulf of Oman on the east, and from Africa by the Red Sea on the west. On the south it is bounded by the Gulf of Aden and the Arabian Sea. For the most part it is a desert area, and may be described as a tilted plane, raised many thousands of feet on the side of the Red Sea and gradually sloping eastwards to the shores of the Persian Gulf; though the eastern maritime plains are varied by another upward tilt along the Gulf of Oman. The desert conditions extend northwards into lands which, while within the Arab League, are not regarded as part of Arabia, and have been described in earlier chapters (see under Jordan, Iraq, Syria).

By far the larger part of Arabia is comprised in a single kingdom, Saudi Arabia—a combination of several States achieved by conquest within the lifetime of its first ruler, Abdul Aziz ibn Saud, who took the title King of Saudi Arabia in 1932. It has a long seaboard—about 1,000 miles—on the Red Sea, a much shorter frontage to the Persian Gulf, and nowhere reaches to the south coast, being fringed by Yemen in the south-west corner of the peninsula, Aden and the Aden Protectorate along the western half of the south coast, Muscat and Oman along the remainder of the south coast and the shores of the Gulf of Oman, and by various small States scattered along the Persian Gulf, including the Bahrein Islands, Qatar, and Kuwait. The essential facts about these States individually will be found below.

**SAUDI ARABIA.** Frontiers are ill-defined, and the area is uncertain. It has been estimated at over 900,000 square miles, but publications of the United Nations, of which Saudi Arabia is a member State, give it as just over 600,000 square miles, with a population of 7m. Its surface is apportioned among a variety of deserts, including in the south the dread Rub' al Khali, or 'Empty Quarter,' which is practically devoid of inhabitants. Elsewhere conditions are not quite so desolate; over half the entire country is now classed as pastoral (358,000 square miles; 227m. acres), though only 800 square miles ( $\frac{1}{2}$ m. acres) ranks as arable, and 1,500 square miles (nearly 1m. acres) is wooded. Dates are a prominent crop,

while the livestock, as estimated at the half century, include  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. camels,  $3\frac{1}{2}$ m. sheep, and 22,000 asses. Two other sources of wealth are of outstanding importance, and are separately associated with the two main divisions into which the modern kingdom falls. Much of the larger division is the ancestral home of the ibn Saud dynasty, the Central Arabian State of Nejd, which, with twentieth-century annexes, stretches across the peninsula from sea to sea. The other is the Kingdom of Hejaz, occupying the north-west of Saudi Arabia; it too is a conquest of Nejd, but is governed as a separate vice-royalty. Comprising possibly one-fourth of the total area and one-third of the total population, it is the Holy Land of Islam; pilgrims by the hundred thousand flock annually to Mecca, the birthplace of the Prophet and the cradle of the Faith, and in the past these were a major factor in the finances of Saudi Arabia.

Nejd had nothing to compare with it as a source of revenue till oil was found, in 1938, on the mainland behind the Bahrein Islands of the Persian Gulf. The exploitation of the oil-fields by 'Aramco' (Arabian-American Oil Company), on the basis of an equal division of the profits with the Saudi Arabian Government, has brought to that government relatively fabulous wealth, enabling the late king, ibn Saud, and his son to carry out vast schemes of development, including a standard-gauge railway over 350 miles long, from Dammam, the Gulf port for the oil-fields, to Riyadh, the capital, on the inland plateau. It was opened in 1951, and there are plans for its extension to Jeddah, on the Red Sea, thus completing a trans-Arabian railway. In 1954 the derelict Hejaz railway was examined with a view to re-opening it from Maan to Medina. The possibilities of extended irrigation are also being investigated. Several areas for the settlement of nomad Wahhabis, an extreme Moslem sect closely associated with the rise of the Saud dynasty, had previously been wrested from the desert around Riyadh. But even the vast wealth from oil has been unequal to the lavish expenditure on personal and other extravagances, and attempts are being made to establish the finances of the Kingdom on a sounder basis under a brother of the present king.

Typical of present changes, Jeddah, the port for Mecca, has been connected with that city, 45 miles inland, by a modern asphalted highway bordered by air-conditioned villas, traversed daily in the pilgrim season by thousands of the latest types of motor vehicles, and equipped at regular intervals with concrete shelters and water taps for the use of pilgrims on foot. At one point is a flourishing government agricultural centre for growing fruit and vegetables, testing new crops, and rearing seedlings for plantations of trees. Piped water supplies have been installed at both Jeddah and Mecca, and typhoid, once endemic, has almost disappeared. At Mecca, electric fans temper the heat in the colonnades of the Holy Sanc-



tuary, a motor pump raises water from a holy well, and amplifiers transmit the Call to Prayer. The shallow port of Jeddah has been provided with a deep-water quay, and new quarantine accommodation can take 4,000 people at once. In the height of the pilgrim season, an aeroplane lands in Jeddah airport about every five minutes. Riyadh, a five-days' journey by motor-car, is reached by air in three and a half hours.

The oil installations making possible these and other developments are being steadily expanded. In 1956 production reached 48.7m. tons. Seven producing areas are scattered along the Saudi Arabian shore of the Persian Gulf, and a refinery at Ras Tanura has a capacity of 170,000 barrels<sup>1</sup> a day. Crude oil is shipped both by sea (in tankers) and by 'Tapline' (Trans-Arabian Pipeline), which runs in a north-westerly direction across Saudi Arabia, Jordan, Syria, and Lebanon to the Mediterranean coast at Sidon. This pipeline, built between 1947 and 1950, is 2 feet 6 inches in diameter, over 1,000 miles long, rises to heights of over 3,000 feet, and is equipped with six pumping stations.

Estimates of the populations of the chief towns, like most of the statistics of Saudi Arabia, vary greatly. The following list shows how wide is the range: Riyadh (the capital), 150,000; Mecca, 120-150,000; Jeddah, 80-120,000; Medina, 30-50,000; Hufuf (provincial capital, near the oil-fields), 100,000.

**YEMEN.** This is an independent kingdom in the south-west corner of Arabia, fronting the Red Sea on the west, having Saudi Arabia on the north and east, and the Aden Protectorate on the south. It occupies the highest ground in the whole peninsula; a hot, humid coastal plain is backed by mountain ranges rising inland to over 10,000 feet before dropping to the sandy wastes of the Rub' al Khali—the vast 'Empty Quarter' of southern Arabia. The total area of the kingdom is estimated at 75,000 square miles (half as large again as England), carrying a population of 5m. It is the most fertile part of the peninsula, including most of the territory known of old as Arabia Felix. Conditions in the Maritime Range (p. 197) are particularly favourable to coffee, which is grown extensively above 4,500 feet and has long been famous under the name of the original port of shipment, Mocha. That port has decayed, but coffee is still the Yemen's staple export; the crop is at its best around Menakha, and is shipped from Hodeida (now the premier port, with a population of about 30,000).

At higher altitudes in the Maritime Range, and in the highlands farther east, as well as on a central plateau, the rainfall is regular and ample for the growing of grain crops—barley, wheat, and millet—while in the lowlands grapes are grown for raisins. Hides are also exported, but the Yemen, unlike other countries in the

<sup>1</sup> About 700,000 tons a month. 7.4 barrels = 1 ton.

Middle East, is better suited for agricultural than for pastoral industry. Hill-sides are carefully terraced and cultivated on intensive lines, and normally the crops are more than sufficient for local needs. The Aden Protectorate draws most of its grain supplies from the Yemen, and an Anglo-Yemeni Agreement in 1951 provided not only for a joint commission to demarcate the frontier but for British co-operation in economic development, education, and hygiene in the Yemen. A strong supporter of the Pan-Arabian movement (see p. 526), the Yemen has in recent years adopted an intransigent attitude towards the British in Aden, and despite treaty engagements has maintained a desultory frontier warfare.

Sana, one of two capitals, a town of 50,000 people, is in the eastern highlands at a height of over 7,000 feet. Taiz (12,000), the Imam's residence, lies 4,600 feet up.

**ADEN.** A British colony and protectorate stretching for 740 miles along the south coast of Arabia, from the Straits of Bab el Mandeb, at the southern end of the Red Sea, eastward to the borders of Muscat and Oman. Inland the protectorate extends to the confines of Yemen and to the 'Empty Quarter' (Rub' al Khali) of Saudi Arabia. The colony comprises a mainland area of 75 square miles around the port of Aden, about 100 miles east of the Straits; the rocky island of Perim (5 square miles), rising some 200 feet above the waters of the Straits; and, far to the east, off the coast of Muscat and Oman, the Kuria Muria Islands, a small group (30 square miles) ceded to Britain in 1854 as a cable landing place. The protectorate includes the outlying island of Socotra.

The port of Aden lies between two rocky peninsulas—extinct volcanoes—linked by a low-lying sandy coast. The eastern peninsula, rising to 1,800 feet, is Aden proper; the western is known as Little Aden. Offering the only good harbour on the main trade route between Egypt and India, Aden has been famed as an *entrepôt* from early times, and the opening of the Suez Canal brought it into fresh prominence as a port of call and transshipment. To-day, it is comparable with Liverpool in respect of the tonnage of the shipping entering the port; in 1955 over 5,000 deep-sea vessels of 23m. net tons, in addition to coasters, called at Aden. It can take vessels drawing up to 34 feet. An oil refinery with a capacity of 6m. tons a year, and an oil port dredged to 40 feet, were opened in 1954.

Aden is a free port. It is the only country in Arabia for which trade returns are included in the United Nations *Yearbook of International Trade Statistics*. The East African shilling of 100 cents and the East African pound, maintained at par with the £ sterling, are the official currency. Imports (colony only) in 1956 were valued at £71.2m. and exports (largely re-exports) at £64.4m. Petroleum and products constituted nearly half the imports and 40 per cent. of the

exports. In addition, bunkers for ships amounted to 30 per cent. of the exports. Though far below oil, important items on both sides of the account were grain, coffee, sugar, raw cotton and piece goods. Kuwait supplied 30 per cent. of the imports, followed—far below—by Britain, India, Iran, Iraq, Ethiopia and Japan. Next to ships' stores and bunkers, Britain took the biggest share of the exports, and was followed by the colony's neighbours.

The bunkering of ships and handling of cargo provide the main occupation of the population of the colony—138,000 at the 1955 census, 55,000 of them in the chief town whose proper name, Crater, is self-explanatory. The rainfall is negligible, in some years nil, though it has been known to amount to eight inches in a year. The only local product is salt, obtained by solar evaporation from sea-water, which is raised by windmills into shallow pans and produces 200–300,000 tons of salt a year, mostly for export. The port is equipped with floating docks and ship-repairing yards.

The protectorate has an estimated area of 112,000 square miles—almost twice the size of England and Wales—with a population of about 800,000. It is divided into Western and Eastern, the Western Protectorate being much the smaller but having rather more than half the population. Both are desolate countries, the Western Protectorate broken and rugged, rising to over 8,000 feet on the Yemen border, and the Eastern also much accidented, with peaks of 5–7,000 feet near the coast, and inland a flat-topped steppe, the Hadramaut, traversed from west to east by a great wadi of the same name. The whole country is a collection of protected treaty States, varying from a single village to large sultanates, the function of the British Agents being limited to advice and loose political control. In February 1959 six of the Western states formed a federation. Neither protectorate is self-supporting, and in the past the Hadramaut has been largely dependent on funds supplied by emigrants who had built up fortunes in Malaysia. When the Second World War stopped the free movement of funds, famine ensued in the Eastern Protectorate.

A promising experiment, supported by the British Government as a Development and Welfare Scheme, is the opening up by irrigation and settlement of a tract of about 100 square miles in the Abyan district of the Western Protectorate, some 30 miles east of Aden port. Here, among other crops, a very high grade cotton of the Sudan type has done well; in 1954 cotton to the value of nearly £2½m. was grown on 46,000 acres. In the two protectorates, livestock number 1·2m., over two-thirds of them goats, the others mostly sheep. Aden port is the natural gateway for the Western division; in the Eastern Protectorate the chief port is Mukalla.

With all their limitations, it would be a mistake to think of the protectorates only as a primitive desert country. The admixture

they present is typified by the habitations of the people, which range from the crude goat-hair shelters of the nomad tribes to the veritable palaces of the Sultans and wealthy Seiyids, remarkable not only for their size but for their grace and beauty of form.

**MUSCAT and OMAN.** An independent sultanate occupying the eastern corner of Arabia, with a coastline of a thousand miles lying partly along the Gulf of Oman, where it is skirted by high mountainous country, and partly along the Arabian Sea, where the land is mostly low-lying. The interior stretches back to the borders of the Rub' al Khali, and the estimated area is 82,000 square miles, the size of England and Scotland, with a population of over  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. A treaty of friendship, commerce, and navigation concluded with Great Britain in 1939 reaffirmed the close ties which had existed between the two countries for nearly 150 years. More recently the Sultan has called on the British for assistance in dealing with local unrest. At the capital, Muscat, the postal arrangements are controlled by the General Post Office in London, and the stamps used are ordinary British stamps with the local values overprinted in rupee currency. Britain is represented at the capital by a Consul-General.

The two chief centres, Muscat and Mattrah, lie within a mile or so of one another on the Gulf of Oman, where the mountains come down to the sea. Muscat lies at the head of a cove dominated by rocky heights crowned by old forts, and exposed to *shamels* (the violent north-west winds of the Gulf region). Commercially it has lost ground to Mattrah, which has a larger harbour, is the terminus of caravan routes to and from the interior, and now has a bigger population, though both towns are small (between 5,000 and 10,000 inhabitants). Beyond them, for over 150 miles in the direction of the Persian Gulf, a narrow coastal plain carries date gardens noted for the flavour and early maturity of their fruit. At the back, where the mountains rise to over 9,000 feet, the general aridity of the country is relieved by the green fertility of cultivated areas with sufficient rainfall for grain and other crops. Along the Arabian Sea the coast is mostly barren, but at the far western end the upland province of Dhofar is another productive area, served by the small port of Murbat. Camels are extensively bred in the interior.

A curious survival of former expansion is the territory of Gwadar, on the opposite (north) side of the Gulf of Oman, forming an enclave about 40 miles long and 15 miles deep, embedded in Pakistan near the Persian border. It has a total population of about 15,000, of whom 10,000 are congregated in Gwadar town and port. It is administered on behalf of the Sultan of Muscat and Oman.

Imports for the sultanate as a whole were valued in 1955-56 at £2.66m. and exports at £1.26m. Cereals, coffee, sugar and piece

goods were the chief imports. Dates alone accounted for half the exports. The official monetary unit is the Indian rupee, but a more common medium of exchange is the Maria Theresa dollar, with a local value of two to two and a half rupees.

**Trucial Sheikhdoms and Qatar.** From Muscat and Oman to the borders of Saudi Arabia, half-way along the western shore of the Persian Gulf, stretch some 600 miles of coastal territory divided into various independent sheikhdoms having long-standing treaty engagements with Britain to preserve the peace, suppress slavery, and abstain from entering into agreements with foreign States. All told they have an area of some 14,000 square miles (twice the size of Wales) with a population of 115,000, of which Qatar accounts for 8,500 square miles, and 35,000 of the inhabitants. Fishing and pearling are the basic industries, but everywhere there is prospecting for oil; in Qatar a first shipment was made in 1949, and in 1958 output was at the rate of some 8m. tons a year. A long-standing dispute as to whether Oman or Saudi Arabia has jurisdiction in the neighbourhood of Buraimi (see map, p. 537) is still (1959) unsettled.

**BAHRAIN.** A group of islands about half-way along the Arabian coast of the Persian Gulf, in a large bay cutting deeply into the land. They lie about 20 miles from the mainland (the Saudi Arabian province of El Hasa), and constitute an independent sheikhdom having treaty relations with Britain dating back to 1880. Their total area is about 230 square miles and the total population about 120,000. They have been renowned commercially as the headquarters of the Persian Gulf pearl fisheries, and though that industry has declined they have gained new fame as a source of oil supply.

Nearly all the area is provided by the main island, Bahrain, some 27 miles long by 10 wide. It is linked to Muharraq Island (4 miles by 1 mile) by a causeway carrying a motor road and a swing bridge spanning the deep-water channel. These islands enfold two harbours, and from a third island, Sitra, another causeway and a pipeline project eastward for three miles to a deep-water anchorage. Dates, citrus fruits, and lucerne are successfully grown on the main island, and it is there also that oil has been found in the neighbourhood of the highest point, a rocky crater rising some 450 feet. First developed early in the thirties, output since the Second World War has settled down to almost exactly 1½m. tons a year. This is small compared with the output in Saudi Arabia, on the mainland behind the islands, but Bahrain also possesses a well-equipped refinery, with a capacity of 200,000 barrels a day (10m. tons a year), which usefully supplements the mainland resources for refining oil (see under Saudi Arabia). An asphalt plant has been added to the refinery, which is situated on the main island at Manama, the chief town of the group. The town has a popula-

tion of about 30,000, and is the seat not only of the British Adviser to the Bahrain Government but of the British Political Agent for the Persian Gulf. British postage stamps, overprinted with the name Bahrain and their value in Indian currency, are in use.

**KUWAIT.** An independent sheikhdom under British protection at the head of the Persian Gulf, with an area of 5,800 square miles (about the size of Northern Ireland) and a population (1957 census) of 206,000, including over 3,000 Europeans and Americans. Until a few years ago it was typical of the smaller Arabian states—largely desert, with an extensive harbour on which stood the capital, around it numerous date gardens and some cultivation of cereals and other foodstuffs for home consumption, a reputation for dhow-building, and a certain amount of general trade; but chiefly notable as a pivotal point in the political geography of the Middle East. Now its meteoric rise as one of the chief sources of oil supply in the Middle East has added to the political factor a 'big business' interest. Production for export did not start till the middle of 1946. In 1947 it was over 2m. tons; in March 1951 it was averaging 375,000 barrels a day, which (at 7.4 barrels to the ton) was at the rate of 18½m. tons a year. Then, following the nationalisation of the Persian oil industry, Kuwait's production again went up by leaps and bounds. In 1953 it surpassed Saudi Arabia's, and in 1956 reached 55m. tons. Over 100 wells have been drilled in the 100 square miles of the Burgan oil-field at the back of the port of Kuwait, where the bulk of the population is concentrated. Ahmadi, the oil town and administrative headquarters of the Kuwait Oil Company, lies about six miles inland at an elevation of 400 feet, and is connected by a pipeline with Mina, the oil port, where a six-berthed loading jetty is constantly employed. Most of the oil is shipped in crude form, the existing refinery having a capacity of only 25,000 barrels a day (about 100,000 tons a month).

At the end of 1951 the oil company entered into a new agreement with the Sheikh of Kuwait, under which he became entitled to a half-share of the profits. Extensive development and welfare schemes are planned, including a water distillation plant with a capacity of a million gallons a day. A modern motor road connects Kuwait with Basra. The unit of currency is the Indian rupee. The postal arrangements are under the direction of the London General Post Office, and a British Political Agent is stationed at the capital.

To the south is a neutral zone which Kuwait shares with Saudi Arabia. Oil is being produced there, and Japan is a keen competitor for the off-shore rights.

## PERSIA (IRAN)

Iran (the national name) or Persia (the alternative name by which the country is widely known elsewhere) is an independent State under a constitutional sovereign (the Shah), with an area of about 630,000 square miles (seven times that of Great Britain) and a population (1956 census) of 19m. (less than half that of England). It extends from the Caspian Sea to the Persian Gulf and the Gulf of Oman, and has for its neighbours Russia on the north, Turkey and Iraq on the west, Afghanistan and Pakistan on the east. Except at the head of the Persian Gulf, where the only navigable river, the Karun, finds its way to the sea, the coastal plains bordering both the Caspian and the two southern Gulfs are very narrow, and the land rises rapidly to a plateau of 3–5,000 feet, which in turn carries mountain ranges running from north-west to south-east with peaks of 10–15,000 feet; while in the Elburz Mountains, south of the Caspian, Mount Demavend rises to 18,600 feet. This mountainous plateau is characteristic of practically the whole country, not only north and south from the Caspian to the Gulfs, but east and west from frontier to frontier. Only centrally, south-eastwards from Tehran, is it sundered by a wide trough in which lie the great salt deserts of Dasht-i-Kavir and Dasht-i-Luft.

It is estimated that rather more than half the total area is waste, and another 20 per cent. unused, though potentially productive. Forests cover nearly 12 per cent. and pastoral land 6 per cent., leaving 10 per cent. classed as arable. Nearly three-fourths of this last is returned as temporarily fallow, so that less than 3 per cent. of the total is under cultivation, including orchards and gardens. But in a country of the size of Persia, even small percentages of the whole are extensive. Woods and forests cover 73,000 square miles—half as large again as England. The pastoral country (38,000 square miles) is three-fourths the size of England, and the arable land (65,000 square miles) larger than England and Wales. Even the area actually cultivated comprises 18,000 square miles, or nearly 12m. acres. Wheat is easily the leading crop; it is grown throughout the country, covers over 5m. acres, and with a yield of 14 bushels an acre provides a crop of over 2m. tons. Barley is also widely grown, covering about 2m. acres and yielding between three-quarters of a million and 1m. tons. Other leading crops are more of a sub-tropical character.

while negotiations for giving the Persian Government a larger share of the profits were in progress, the *Majlis* (National Assembly), contrary to the terms of the concession, passed a Bill nationalising the oil industry and claimed control of the operations. The International Court of Justice at The Hague gave a provisional ruling against this unilateral action, but the Persian Government refused to recognise the court's jurisdiction and both the oil-fields and the refinery were abandoned by the company. Export of oil practically ceased. Persia severed relations with Britain, but resumed them in December, 1953. A settlement was reached in 1954 on the basis of a consortium of eight oil companies—British (Anglo-Iranian,<sup>1</sup> which received special compensation), American, Dutch, and French—working in conjunction with the Persian Government and the National Iranian Oil Company through two operating companies, one for production and the other for refining.

The unit of currency is the rial of 100 dinars, with an official exchange rate of R91 = £1; but the rate for everyday purposes is R212 to the £. In 1956 imports were valued at R9,315m. (£43m.) and exports at R12,254m. (£58m.). Leading imports and their percentages were sugar (10), tea ( $7\frac{1}{2}$ ), cotton and woollen fabrics (9) and iron and steel goods (8). Petroleum and products made up three-fourths of the exports, the other chief items being raw cotton (5·7 per cent.) and carpets (4·2 per cent.). Over a third of the imports were supplied by the United States and Germany, and over another quarter by Britain, U.S.S.R. and Japan. Of the exports over a third were taken by India, Britain and South Africa.

Transport in Persia is not easy, and the Trans-Persian Railway, opened in 1938, represents a considerable engineering feat. The line is of standard gauge and runs for 872 miles from Bandar Shah, at the south-east corner of the Caspian, through Tehran to Bandar Shahpur, at the head of the Persian Gulf. From Tehran a branch runs east to Meshed (572 miles) and another is being built to Tabriz in the north-west. An older line (96 miles) runs from Tabriz northwards to Julfa, on the Russian frontier. From Ahwaz a branch line (76 miles) connects with Khorramshahr, where the Karun joins the Shatt-al-Arab. Other lines are building or planned. The road system is extensive, but few of the roads are metalled.

#### TOWNS WITH OVER 100,000 PEOPLE AT THE 1956 CENSUS

Greater Tehran (capital)	1,513,000	Shiraz	.	.	.	169,000		
Tabriz	.	.	.	290,000	Kermanshah	.	.	125,000
Isfahan	.	.	.	255,000	Ahwaz	.	.	120,000
Meshed	.	.	.	242,000	Resht	.	.	109,000
Abadan	.	.	.	226,000	Hamadan	.	.	100,000

<sup>1</sup> Since renamed (December, 1954) the British Petroleum Company.



## AFGHANISTAN

Afghanistan is an inland State, bordered on the north by the southernmost republics of the Soviet Union, on the west by Persia, on the south and east by Pakistan, and in the extreme north-east corner it touches China and Kashmir. It is a constitutional monarchy, member of the United Nations, with an area of some 250,000 square miles, and a population of 12m.—double the size of Norway, with more than three times as many people. The country is extremely mountainous, an extension of the Persian plateau and, like Persia, carrying on its basic elevation wild and lofty mountain ranges. Afghanistan may be likened to a gigantic oval pan, its main axis running from south-west to north-east, with a pan-handle projecting to the north-east—the narrow Wakhan valley, 180 miles long, bordered by the giant peaks of the Hindu Kush, soaring to 20–25,000 feet. The range extends into the heart of Afghanistan on a diminishing scale, with peaks of 15–20,000 feet north of Kabul, the capital, itself at an elevation of nearly 6,000 feet; and successive ranges continue under various names to the Persian border. Other ranges rising to several thousand feet branch off from the main range and cover most of the country, which drops to comparatively low elevations only in the Seistan Desert in the south-west, and in the river valleys, notably the Oxus (Amu Darya), whose upper waters, falling to 1,200 feet, form part of the northern frontier. In the north-west the upper waters of the Hari-Rud drain the country round Herat, on their way to lose themselves in the Kara Kum desert of the Soviet Union. The south-west is drained by the Helmand, destined to the same fate in marshes on the Persian border. The Kabul river, flowing east, passes into Pakistan and joins the Indus. None of these rivers is navigable in Afghanistan, but with their affluents they drain most of the country and furnish potential sources of hydro-electric power, already installed in the capital. Power stations are being built on the Kabul river and near Kandahar. Rainfall is scanty, and practically negligible in summer, but the melting mountain snows permit of irrigation. Great extremes of climate are experienced. On the plateau at 7,000 feet the winter temperature may drop to zero Fahrenheit, and in the Oxus valley summer temperatures of 120° F. have been recorded.

The geographical similarity of Afghanistan to Persia is reflected in the economic character of the two countries. More than half of Afghanistan (130,000 square miles) is classed as waste, agriculturally, and another 10,000 square miles is unused, though potentially productive. Of the remaining 110,000 square miles by far the greater part (96,000 square miles) is pastoral country, leaving 10,000 square miles of arable land and 4,000 square miles under forest. Cereal and other crops are grown in sheltered valleys, and the pastoral areas support large numbers of livestock. Two food crops are often produced in the year—one of wheat, barley, or lentils, the other of rice, millet or maize. Great quantities of fruit are also grown (grapes, apricots, figs, &c.), and cotton and tobacco do well in places. Published results are few, and not systematic, but some of the yields in recent years have been: 2m. tons of wheat from 5m. acres, 280,000 tons of barley from 850,000 acres; 330,000 tons of rice from 450,000 acres, 40,000 tons of cotton seed and 20,000 tons of ginned cotton from 250,000 acres, and 20,000 tons of grapes.

The unit of currency is the Afghani, worth about 5*d.* at the regular rate of exchange (47 to the £). A few trade returns for 1954 were published in the United Nations *Yearbook of International Trade Statistics* for 1955, and were repeated in 1956. Imports were valued at Afghani 1,031m. (£22m.) and exports at A.1,403m. (£30m.). No details were given of the imports, but foodstuffs—almost entirely fruit and nuts—made up 40 per cent. of the exports, and crude materials 56 per cent., chiefly undressed fur skins (22 per cent.), cotton (18 per cent.), and wool (11 per cent.). Manufactured exports (3½ per cent.) were almost entirely carpets.

India (37½ per cent.), U.S.A. (21 per cent.), U.S.S.R. (12 per cent.), and Britain (9 per cent.) took four-fifths of the exports.

Afghanistan did not figure in the United Nations trade yearbook for 1957.

Sheep are estimated to number 14m., goats 8m., and cattle 2m. There are 195,000 horses, 700,000 asses, 200,000 mules, and 290,000 camels. Animal transport by caravan is still the commonest in the absence of railways, though motor transport is on the increase as roads improve. There are now about 1,000 motor-cars and five times that number of lorries. There are two distinct classes of sheep—the fat-tailed, bred for mutton and yielding also a good though coarse wool; and karakul, whose lambs, killed at birth, have the close, curly black wool known as astrakhan. Among the animal products are 6,000 tons of greasy wool annually, and vast numbers of karakul skins for the London and New York markets.

Afghanistan has many mineral deposits, but so far few have been seriously investigated or exploited. There are large deposits of coal in the Hindu Kush (production 27,000 tons in 1957), and promising indications of oil in the north.

Kabul, the capital, in east-central Afghanistan, is not only the seat of government but seat of a university founded in 1932 and officially inaugurated in 1946, with faculties in the arts, law, medicine, science, theology, and literature. It is also the chief commercial centre, the Gateway to Afghanistan from Pakistan and India *via* the famous Khyber Pass, connected with Peshawar by a motorable road 200 miles long. With an estimated population of 300,000 it is easily the largest city in Afghanistan. Two others have populations of over 50,000—Kandahar (77,000) in the south, across the frontier from Quetta; and Herat (75,000) in the north-west, towards the Persian border. Each of these two is the capital of a major province. The chief commercial centres are Kabul and Kandahar.

## INDIA AND PAKISTAN

There is no part of the world better marked off by nature as a region by itself than the Indian sub-continent, now comprising the Republic of India and Pakistan, both independent countries within the British Commonwealth of Nations. The boundaries between India and Pakistan are shown in the map on p. 563. It will be convenient first to deal with the sub-continent as a whole. It is a region, indeed, full of contrast, in physical features and in climate, and one that has never been, strictly speaking, under one rule; but the features that divide it as a whole from surrounding regions are too clear to be overlooked. On the north it is bounded by the Himalayas, the loftiest mountains in the world; on the west, as we have already seen, it is bounded by mountains and deserts; and on the east and north-east it is not only bounded by mountains, but lofty mountain chains and deep valleys follow one another for hundreds of miles. Elsewhere the boundary is the sea.

Within the mountains a vast plain, from about 150 to more than 300 miles in width, sweeps round from the delta of the Ganges and Brahmaputra in the east to that of the Indus in the west. The peninsular portion to the south of these plains is mainly made up of tablelands varying in elevation for the most part from about 1,500 to 2,500 feet. On the west this tableland advances close up to the sea, and is bounded by the mountains called the Western Ghâts—in reality the lofty edge of the plateau; but on the east its edge is generally at a greater distance from the coast and is more winding. The name of Eastern Ghâts is sometimes used generally for the whole of this eastern margin, sometimes restricted to its northern or central portion.

The dense population is for the most part confined to the plains, but is prevented by climatic and other circumstances from extending over their whole area.

Structurally the plateau of Peninsular India is built up of a great mass of ancient metamorphic rocks. More than 200,000 square miles of these in the north-west are covered by great sheets, almost horizontal, of basaltic lava (the so-called 'Deccan Traps') which furnish a dark, almost black, soil well suited to cotton. Old basins in the

surface of the plateau are filled with sedimentary rocks, including the main coal-bearing strata. The great plain of the north and the coastal plains of east and west are built up of alluvium and other recent deposits, furnishing deep rich agricultural soils. The mountain wall of the north is of Tertiary or Alpine age.

The mineral wealth of India is tolerably abundant. Geological surveys show that both coal and iron ore are widely distributed, but of the coal-fields the most productive lie in the west of Bengal and the east of Bihar. The most productive parts of the chief coal-field lie in the Damodar valley belonging to the basin of the Hooghly, where about nine-tenths of the coal raised in India is produced. Rāniganj, about 120 miles north-west of Calcutta, was long the principal coal-mining centre, but the production of this field has at last been eclipsed by that of the Jherria field, about 40 or 50 miles further west. Still further west is Daltonganj. On the tableland three smaller coal-fields are now connected with the Indian railway system. One is that at Umaria, east of Jubbulpore; another, that of Warorā, in the Wardhā valley now in the eastern part of Bombay State; and the third that of Singareni, farther south.

The total production of India averages about 40m. tons; the production of the outlying fields representing only about 1m. tons in each case. These coals all belong to the Permo-Carboniferous or Gondwana deposits and are good quality bituminous coals. Lignites and brown coals of little importance occur in Assam and the Punjab; more important in South Arcot (Madras).

It will be noted that all the coal resources of the sub-continent, with the exception of some Punjab lignites, lie in the Republic of India and not in Pakistan.

Iron ore is widely scattered over the mountainous and hilly parts of the country, and with the profuse employment of charcoal for smelting, Indian villagers made iron of excellent quality. But this expensive mode of working has been almost superseded by the import of European iron and iron wares, followed by the development of the European production methods in India. Of the earlier attempts to introduce the modern processes of smelting in India the most successful was that of the Bengal Iron and Steel Co. near Barākar in the north of the Rāniganj coal-field, where ores are obtainable, and a suitable coal for smelting is procured at Karharbāri or Giridhi. For many years little progress was made, but in the early years of the present century the company began to supplement the local clay ironstone ores with magnetites obtained in Chota Nagpur. Later, in 1911, however, a more ambitious programme was initiated by the Tata Iron and Steel Co., which obtained leases over the rich massive ore bodies of the northern part of the Mayurbhanj state of Orissa, and the Raipur district of the Central Provinces. Later even more important deposits of iron ore were

discovered in the district of Singhbhum, to the south-west, and the company obtained a concession in which, it is said, a ravine cutting across the ore range shows a continuous thickness of 700 feet of hematite, containing more than 60 per cent. of iron. Even before this last discovery, blast-furnaces were started in 1911. Steel was first produced from modern rolling mills in 1933. The site chosen for the new industry was Jamshedpur where some formerly exploited ores were available. Here the Calcutta-Bombay railway (*via* Nagpur) has a branch to Asansol and the coal-fields (about a hundred miles away), whilst the main ore-fields lie 45 miles to the south-west. Limestone and manganese are within easy reach. Thus a village in the barren scrub quickly grew into a town of over 100,000 inhabitants. Jamshedpur is now a great industrial centre, producing not only a great variety of articles in iron and steel, including mill and electrical machinery, but also heavy chemicals, fertilisers, and explosives. The large demand for tin-plate by the Burmah and Anglo-Iranian Oil Companies led to the erection of plant in Bengal capable of manufacturing about 30,000 tons of tin-plate annually. The Tata Company's output exceeds 1½ m. tons of pig iron a year and approaches a million tons of steel and supplies three-quarters of India's requirements. Since Partition in 1947 three great new works have been initiated with the help of German, Russian and British technicians.

Until the separation of Burma's production from that of India **mineral oil** ranked second in value amongst the mineral products, but over 80 per cent. of the output came from Burma. The Pakistani production is from Khaur and other small fields in the Punjab, with refineries at Rawalpindi, and the Indian production from several small fields in Assam, notably at Digboi. The discovery of large resources of natural gas at Sui in western Pakistan whence it is piped to Karachi and Lahore and other deposits in eastern Pakistan has been of great significance. India is the second or third largest producer of **manganese ore** in the world (p. 289). The ores are widely distributed in the old rocks of the plateau, many are very rich, and many areas have been worked. The deposits in Central Provinces were opened up only in 1901 but soon yielded three-quarters of the total production. Later Sandur in Madras became the biggest producer.

Silver, though formerly the standard metal of the country, is not abundant and the output formerly credited to India was almost entirely from the Bawdwin Mines of Burma; the same is true of lead. **Gold** is important now only in the Kolar field of Mysore, the annual production ranging between 150 and 400 thousand ounces of fine gold. Copper is found in the Singhbhum district of Bihar though mining and production have been irregular, and the small deposits of the Himalayas are not now exploited. **Chromite** is

found in many parts of India and is worked especially in Singhbhum, Mysore, and Baluchistan. **Mica**, valuable as an insulator, is a characteristic Indian mineral and is obtained from the old rocks in many parts of the plateau, the huge sheets from the Nellore district of Andhra being specially famous. **Monazite** and **tungsten** ores take an important place in Indian minerals. Despite the existence of some famous Indian diamonds, production is unimportant.

Salt in India, as in all vegetarian countries, is a necessity of life more urgently required than in countries in which more animal food is consumed. It is obtained by evaporation all along the coasts (especially at Bombay and Madras) and rock salt is quarried in the Salt Range of the Punjab (Pakistan). The much disputed salt tax or duty has long been an important source of revenue. The extraction of saltpetre (nitrate of potash) in the Punjab, Uttar Pradesh, and Bihar has declined from various causes, but chiefly in consequence of the competition of Chilean nitrate and latterly of artificial fertilisers. In India it is a natural product formed in alluvial soils from animal and vegetable refuse in a climate with alternating wet and dry seasons. In the dry season the efflorescence was collected from the soil and purified for use in lieu of soap.

As regards **climate**, the Indian year is popularly divided into three seasons—the hot, the rainy, and the cool; but these names are appropriate only in the north-east and to some extent along the western coast. In the south, where the latitudes are low, there is no really cool season, and in the north-west, though the rains occur at the same period as in the Ganges valley, they are small in amount. The hot season is from March to May inclusive, the period that embraces the change of the monsoons from north-east to south-west, but before the ‘bursting’ of the south-west monsoon—that is, before the southerly winds begin to be accompanied by rain. During this period the highest temperature is in the heart of the Deccan. The rainy season lasts from June to October inclusive, and during this period the western slopes of the Western Ghâts, the hills of Assam, the slopes of the eastern Himalayas, and even the plains of the Ganges delta, are deluged with rain, and the greater part of the north-east receives a fairly abundant rainfall. The part of the Deccan immediately behind the Western Ghâts, however, has a very moderate and precarious rainfall, and so too have the plains in the north-west. A large part of the Indus valley is almost rainless. Where the rains are abundant the temperature is mitigated, but in the arid region just referred to this is naturally the hottest period of the year. The cool season, or the season of the north-east monsoons, lasts from November to February inclusive. The earlier part of this period is classed more scientifically as the period of the retreating monsoon—giving thus a fourth season. The storms of October, November, and December bring rain to the south-eastern

plains, the moisture brought by the winds from the Bay of Bengal being condensed in consequence of the obstruction presented by the Eastern Ghāts and the mountains of Travancore. But the amount of rain that falls on those plains is only one-third or one-fourth of that which falls on the best-watered plains in the north during the rainy season. The cool or winter season is naturally coolest in the north-west, where the highest latitudes are reached, and even on the plains there are genuine winter temperatures by comparison with the extreme heat of summer. In this region, in the latter half of the cool season (January to about March) there is a recurrence of rains, believed to be brought about by cyclonic disturbances originating in the Mediterranean.

The amount of rain that falls varies in India, as everywhere else, from year to year; but it is an important fact that, whereas in a country like England the variations in the rainfall may increase or diminish the abundance of a crop, in a large part of India the variation may be such that in one year there is an ample supply for a good crop, in another a rainfall wholly inadequate to produce any crop at all. It is this area of uncertain rainfall that is liable to be visited by famines and hence **irrigation** has to be practised not only in those parts of the country in which there is always a deficiency of rain, but also in those in which it is doubtful whether the rain may be sufficient or not. Even where the amount of the rain is sufficient for the requirements of the crops irrigation is in many cases demanded by the mode in which the rain falls. The north-east monsoon, on which the southern plains (Madras) chiefly depend for rain, is remarkable for the fact that rain falls for the most part in bursts, and generally at night. Falls of ten, and even twelve, inches in a single night have been recorded. Accordingly Madras and the Deccan generally are dotted with thousands of tanks or reservoirs for irrigation-water, except in the parts with the black soil described on p. 555.

These tanks usually contain little, if any, more than one year's supply, and hence are altogether inadequate to meet the uncertainties arising from recurring years of drought. In certain places, however, there is a natural storage of water underground that can always be made available by means of moderately deep wells. This is true of most areas of alluvium but not where ancient rocks underlie the surface. The whole of the plain along the base of the Himalayas has constant supplies of fresh water at a greater or less depth, and the middle portion of it has these supplies near enough to the surface to be easily reached. Hence, between Delhi and Benares, the upper levels of the alluvial plain are riddled like a sieve with water-holes or wells ten to fifty feet in depth. Since electric power has become available deeper supplies are tapped by tube wells, especially important where irrigation from canals is difficult.



The greatest irrigation works are canals led from rivers. In the Indus valley the old canals for irrigation in Sind were merely laid so as to carry off the surplus water, when the melting of Himalayan snows caused a rise of the water in the main stream and its tributaries. These were known as inundation canals and were for long in operation, and, though very useful and profitable in most years, the supply of water by this method is precarious, as the rise of the rivers may be so small as to yield little water or none at all. But works of much greater magnitude have been made in the form of canals, into which is led nearly the whole body of water belonging to a river for a greater or less distance. These are known as perennial canals. On the delta of the Cauvery such canals are said to have been constructed as far back as the fourth century of the Christian era, but under British rule such works were extended to all the other deltas of the east coast and many parts of the plains of northern India. About 1885 the total length of canals under government supervision was above 28,000 miles, and the area irrigated by them was equal to that of Belgium (11,400 square miles). In 1919-20 the area irrigated had been increased to about 28,000 square miles—almost the area of Scotland. In April 1914 the Upper Swat Canal, which involved the piercing of a canal through the Malakand Hills to establish a colony of nearly 600 square miles in extent in the northern part of the Peshāwar district, was opened. In 1922 legislative sanction was given to a project (completed in 1933) for the construction of a dam (Lloyd Barrage) across the Indus at Sukkur, which made it possible to place some 5½m. acres under perennial irrigation, of special importance for cotton cultivation. It is estimated that the execution of this scheme rendered about 400,000 acres (625 square miles) available for the production of long-staple cotton similar to that of Egypt. With the view of extending irrigation into the arid and frequently useless desert tracts in Bahawalpur and districts in the south-west of the Punjab, the Sutlej Valley Canals were commenced and, like the Sarda works of Uttar Pradesh (United Provinces), were finished shortly before the Second World War. The later works have generally coupled irrigation with the development of hydro-electric power which can then be used to pump water from tube wells tapping underground supplies not reached by shallow hand-dug wells. In 1947, when the countries became independent, there were 57,400 square miles irrigated in India and 31,700 in Pakistan, totalling 57m. acres. Since Partition many large new works have been undertaken. In West Pakistan a huge dam on the Kabul River will help development in the north-west, dams on the upper Indus are irrigating the Thal (Indus-Jhelum Doab) and at Kotri, Hyderabad, the Indus Delta. In East Pakistan, hydro-electricity is supplied to Chittagong from the hill region and the Ganges is to be controlled. India has the comprehensive Damodar Valley scheme and

a great dam on the Mahanadi. These irrigation canals serve little for navigation; indeed one of the few canals in India used primarily for this purpose is the Buckingham Canal, which, being a salt-water canal, is not available for irrigation, but forms an inland waterway from the mouth of the Godavari to Madras, and some distance farther south.

In connection with irrigation it may be pointed out that the structure of the country, combined with the character of the climate, affords in many places, as in the Himalayas and the Western Ghâts, the opportunity of forming immense tanks or reservoirs by damming the mouths of narrow valleys, providing at once the means for irrigation and the development of water-power. In one case the headwaters of the Periyar in Travancore have been dammed and the lake thus formed drained through a tunnel to the east side of the Cardamom Hills, so as to irrigate arid plains in Madras.<sup>1</sup>

Despite the recent developments in industry, India and Pakistan remain primarily agricultural. At the census of 1881 the number of persons directly supported by **agriculture** and the rearing of livestock made up 72 per cent. of the male inhabitants engaged in some specified occupation. There has since been little change, for the percentage in 1911 was 71, 1921 over 73, and 1931, 68. The holdings are mostly small, on an average about five acres each. In Bengal, the Famine Commissioners in 1880 reported that two-thirds of the peasant holdings were only about half that size. Taking present day India and Pakistan as a whole, the cropped land represents less than 0.8 acres per head of population, compared with more than three times this area in the United States. This small acreage combined with very low yields means that much of the Indian population is near the starvation level and below it in years of bad harvest.

For the most part two crops are reaped in the year, but not usually from the same land. In the area of the summer monsoon rains, one crop is generally sown in the early weeks of the monsoon (June and July), and reaped in October and November; the other is sown at the end of the monsoon and reaped from January to March. The latter, accordingly, is the winter crop; and as the winter throughout the north-western half of India is at least as cold as the summer of northern Europe, wheat, barley, and linseed are among the winter crops of the region wherever the duration of cool weather is long enough to ripen them. Although the cultivation of wheat has extended southwards to the southern limits of Bombay

<sup>1</sup> In the north-west the boundary between India and Pakistan cuts across a number of important canals in such a way that it is possible for India to cut off water supplies from the land of Pakistan which depends upon them for crop production.

and Hyderabad, the chief region of production of this cereal is in the provinces of the Punjab in Pakistan and India, and Uttar Pradesh, that is, far in the north.

Although wheat, largely in consequence of the extension of irrigation in the north-west, has been in years of plenty an export crop, it has become one of the staple food crops for home consumption in the north-west. Crops that may be described as universal in India are millets, pulses, and oil-seeds; and except on the best watered plains, suitable for rice-growing, and in parts of northern India where a stronger grain is required, millets and pulses, along with garden produce, form the bulk of the food of the agricultural population. The most extensively grown unirrigated crop in India is the great millet, here known as *jowar*; the millet next in importance is the smaller spiked millet, or *bajra*; and the principal pulse is, as in Spain, the chick-pea or *gram*. Grains and pulses occupy nearly four-fifths of the cropped land. A third of this is occupied by rice, a quarter by millets, with wheat, maize, and barley following. The oil-seeds most extensively grown are sesame, groundnuts, linseed, castor-oil, mustard, and different kinds of rape. Pea-nuts or ground-nuts with their nitrogen-fixing root-bacteria have enabled poor tracts of sandy soil previously useless to be brought under cultivation.

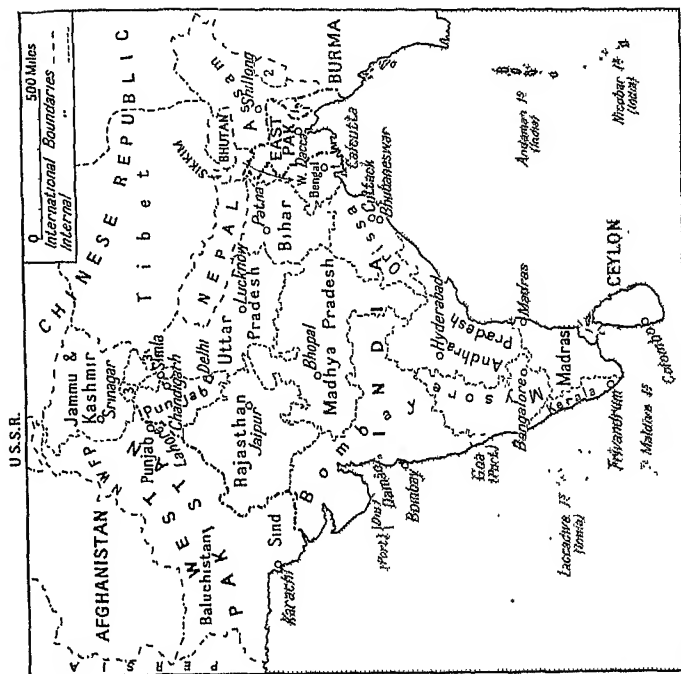
Opium cultivation has now almost disappeared but had its chief seats in the valley of the Ganges round Patna and Benares, and in central India in the region corresponding to the old kingdom of Malwa. Cotton is grown on the southern tableland, and above all in that series of fertile plains opened up by the railway that ascends the Tāpti valley—that is, the plains of Khandesh in Bombay, and of northern Berār, both lying on both sides of the Tāpti, and those of the Wardhā now in the east of Bombay State. It is likewise largely grown on many other parts of the tableland, but the finest cotton of India—long-stapled American varieties—is grown on irrigated land in the Punjab. Regarding rice, jute, tea, lac, coffee, and indigo, nothing need be added to what will be found under these heads elsewhere in the book; and among the vegetable and animal products not mentioned in the table, reference may also be made to cinchona, silk, and pepper, all of which are likewise treated separately. Formerly India was largely dependent on other countries, notably Java, for supplies of sugar. Sugar-cane is now, however, largely cultivated in the northern plains, and sugar is also derived from palms, chiefly in southern India, and the home production is equal to at least that of the total consumption. With respect to the export of hides and skins, it should be explained that cattle are the chief beasts of draught and burden in the greater part of India, but that in the wet plains of eastern Bengal and elsewhere they give place to buffaloes. Cattle include the large white humped zebu or brahmin cattle and the smaller, also humped, brown animals. The

yield of milk from both cattle and buffaloes is very small, and dairy farming is as yet little developed except in a few parts of Bombay and Uttar Pradesh.

**Industries.** Not only in metal-working, but also in various other branches of manufacture, the old Indian handicrafts suffered greatly from European competition. Cheap Manchester cottons and, more recently, the products of the native cotton factories of Bombay and the influx of Japanese goods, have told heavily on the old hand-spinning and weaving. Even the fine muslins of Dacca (Bengal) and Madras, for which India has long been celebrated, have almost become a thing of the past. Factories and industries are spreading, not only in cotton and jute but in other manufactures, and tremendous development took place during the Second World War at places like Kanpur (Cawnpore). The exploitation of cheap labour has been carefully controlled, especially since the Indian Factory Act, which was entirely revised in 1922 and 1923.

In the making of various articles of luxury and art, however, Indian artisans still excel. Silk factories worked by steam exist in Bombay, but the making of richly figured silks by hand is still carried on to a large extent in Murshidābād (Bengal), Banaras (Benares), Ahmādābād, Trichinopoly, and other old towns of note. Cashmere shawls are still made both in Kashmir and the Punjab (Amritsar, Ludhiana, and elsewhere). Indian carpets and rugs are articles of export, and so also are a variety of articles skilfully wrought in ivory, gold and silver, copper and brass, but the quality of many of these articles has been greatly injured through the want of taste in European purchasers. The cotton and silk factories and the jute factories of Bengal are an illustration of the growth of the modern spirit of commerce in India, which is shown also in the rapid increase in the number of Indian joint-stock companies. The cotton mills are mainly in Indian hands, but the jute factories until partition were mostly the property of British capitalists. It may here be added that in the Bombay factories work can be carried on all the year round without artificial light, the short hours of daylight in winter not being present as in higher latitudes. From 1930 onwards there was a rapid growth of sugar factories.

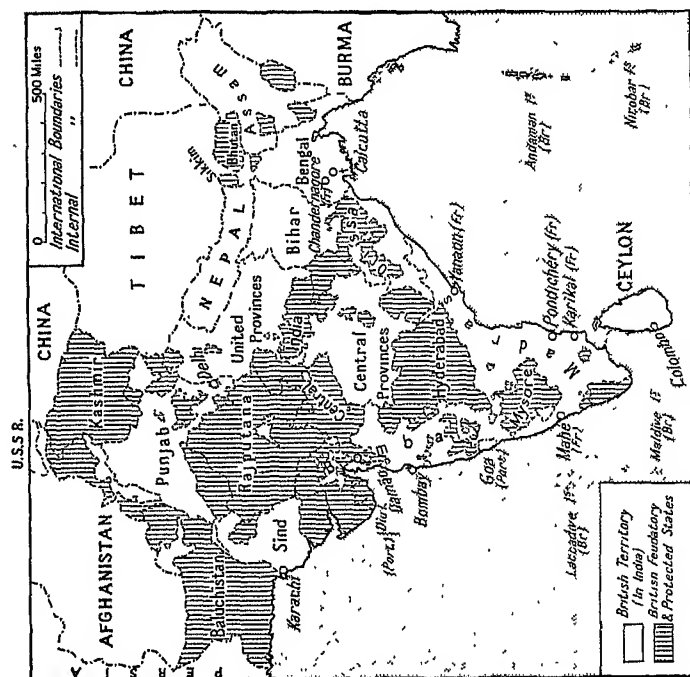
**Communications.** In the plains communication is naturally easy. The scarcity of stone in the great plains has been an obstacle to the making of good metalled roads and often the only local material available is the small concretionary nodules or 'Kankar' of the older alluvium. With the development of concrete and other all-weather motor-roads, especially during the Second World War, there has been an enormous increase in lorry traffic, but the slow-moving bullock shuffling along at under two miles an hour is still almost universal. The rivers of the Ganges basin furnish good waterways, or did until the coming of the railways and the utilis-



INDIA AND PAKISTAN, 1959

The states of peninsular India were realigned, largely on a linguistic basis, in November 1956 and are shown above.

*N.B.—The confines of India and Pakistan on the side of Kashmir have still to be determined.*



INDIA BEFORE PARTITION IN 1947

tion of their water for the more pressing needs of irrigation. The decrease in importance of river transport (except in the delta) has led to the decay of many of the old river ports unless they also serve the newer purpose of railway centres. The flatness of the surface has greatly facilitated the construction of railways, but one must bear in mind that this very flatness creates difficulties in protecting the land adjoining the railway embankments in the rainy seasons. The number of rivers to be crossed necessitates great expense in bridging, and in the wetter regions the vigour and rapid growth of vegetation, and in the drier regions the dust storms, add to the expense of maintenance.

In the mid-Ganges basin railways and latterly roads have almost superseded water carriage, even in the case of heavy goods. In the Ganges-Brahmaputra delta, which furnishes an unsurpassed system of water communications, the network of railways is not so close, and the Brahmaputra still forms the main highway to the north-east. The Indus, owing to frequent shiftings of its bed and accumulations of sand, is difficult to navigate, and steamer traffic on it has ceased.

The first railway constructed in India was a short line out of Bombay, opened in 1853. At that time the Great Western Railway in England was using a broad gauge and under the influence of an advisory engineer from the G.W.R., India adopted a gauge of 5 feet 3 inches, which is thus the standard for India though later the metre gauge was introduced and now there are roughly equal mileages in the two gauges. In addition there are also several mountain railways on narrower gauges (2 ft. 6 in. and less). Railway construction was undertaken by a number of companies incorporated in Britain and proceeded apace, especially after the great famine of 1878 demonstrated the need for sure and rapid transport. It was not, however, till 1900 when the mileage reached nearly 25,000 that Indian railways, as a whole, first made a profit. Mileage reached 34,656 miles in 1913-14. During the First World War, rolling stock was sent to the Middle East battle areas and some branch lines taken up, and the companies were left in a difficult position. Gradually the Government began to take over both ownership and management. Electrification of some lines—local services from Bombay—was started in 1928. By 1944 nearly all lines were government-owned. In 1947 at the time of partition there were 31,533 miles of state-owned railways, 24,830 miles in India, 6,703 in Pakistan. Soon after partition the railways were regrouped into eight major systems—two in Pakistan, six in the Republic of India.

In western Pakistan the North-Western Railway is mainly broad gauge: it has a network of lines in the Punjab and two main lines to the port of Karachi. The complete separation of Pakistan and the Republic of India is not always realised: all lines across the frontier were torn up except the one from Lahore to Amritsar and even on

that there is little traffic and no through long-distance trains. A line of the old North-Western system was constructed to the entrance to the Khyber Pass about the beginning of the present century and continued through the Pass to the Afghan frontier in 1925.

In the peninsular portion of India the nature of the surface placed special difficulties in the way of communication between the coast and some of the richer plains or depressions of the tableland in the interior. The rivers in times of flood are too impetuous, at other seasons most of them are too scantily supplied with water to be navigable except near their mouths, and even where they are navigable higher up, their navigation is impeded by rapids occurring where they break through the mountains bordering the plateau. Not only so, but they mostly break through these mountains in gorges too narrow or country too wild to be easily traversed by roads or railways. To gain the surface of the tableland from Bombay, the railway has to cross a pass called the Thāl Ghāt, more than 1,900 feet in height. Communication between Bombay and Madras, across the Deccan, has been effected since 1863 by means of a railway up the Bhōr Ghāt, a pass about a hundred feet higher than the former, and much more difficult. The carriage-road up this pass, completed in 1830, itself a remarkable engineering achievement, formed the first good means of communication between Bombay and the interior.

The railways were thus constructed primarily through country already settled and developed. Later the influence of the railway as a pioneer in opening up remote or inaccessible regions came to be realised. A depression in the upper basin of the Mahānadi was opened up by rail only in the early part of 1916, with the result that land which had brought a rent of 4*d.* an acre yielded excellent crops of cotton, groundnuts, and sugar-cane, and a rent of 13*s.* an acre. The railway, completed in 1933, from Raipur to Vizagapatam, in conjunction with the new harbour at Vizagapatam, had similar beneficial results.

In general it will be noted that the railways of India serve the hinterlands of the major ports and this is the main basis of the new grouping. The *Western* system has a main broad-gauge line northwards from Bombay to Delhi and many narrow-gauge lines. The *Central* system serves the plateau from Bombay (mainly broad gauge). The *Eastern* serves the north-eastern plateau and lower Ganges valley and focuses on Howrah (Calcutta). The *Southern* system focuses on Madras. The network of lines in the fertile middle and upper Ganges, mainly broad gauge, form the *Northern* system with centre at Delhi. North of the Ganges the lines are mainly metre gauge and have been grouped as the *North-Eastern* system with headquarters at Gorakhpur.

Again in eastern Pakistan the railways, grouped as the East Bengal Railway, no longer connect with the Indian systems.

With the great distances which are involved India and Pakistan have come to make great use of air transport, both internally and internationally.

### INDIA: IMPORTS AND EXPORTS, 1957<sup>1</sup>

*Based on the United Nations Yearbook of International Trade Statistics.  
Sterling value of the Indian Rupee, 1s. 6d. Rate of exchange, Rs.13½ = £1.*

IMPORTS BY COMMODITIES			EXPORTS BY COMMODITIES		
General Imports, c.i.f.	Total	Million Rs. 10,258 (£769m.)	National Exports, f.o.b. Total	Million Rs. 6,377 (£478m.)	
<i>Principal Commodities</i>			<i>Principal Commodities:</i>		
Wheat, unmilled		347 (3.4%)	Tea	1,234 (19.3%)	
Rice, husked		169 (1.6%)	Jute goods	1,023 (16.0%)	
Dairy products, eggs and honey		117 (1.1%)	Raw cotton and waste	187 (2.9%)	
Fruit and nuts		208 (2.0%)	Cotton fabrics	652 (10.2%)	
		841 (8.1%)		3,096 (48.4%)	
Raw cotton		485 (4.7%)	Manganese ore	319 (5.0%)	
Wool		130 (1.3%)	Iron ore and scrap	142 (2.2%)	
		615 (6.0%)	Coal, coke, etc.	53 (0.8%)	
Petroleum and products	1,076 (10.5%)		Petroleum products and fuel oils	81 (1.3%)	
Chemicals	768 (7.5%)		Mica	87 (1.4%)	
Yarns and fabrics	256 (2.5%)			682 (10.7%)	
Iron and steel	1,470 (14.3%)		Silver and platinum goods	377 (5.9%)	
Copper, aluminium, zinc	332 (3.2%)		Hides, skins and leather	285 (4.5%)	
Machinery	2,335 (22.8%)		Vegetable oils and fats	114 (1.8%)	
Road vehicles and aircraft	752 (7.3%)				
Total of above imports	8,445 (82.3%)		Total of above exports	4,554 (71.3%)	

IMPORTS BY COUNTRIES			EXPORTS BY COUNTRIES		
General Imports, c.i.f.	Total	10,258 (£769m.)	National Export, f.o.b. Total	6,377 (£478m.)	
<i>Countries of first consignment</i>			<i>Countries of last consignment:</i>		
United Kingdom	2,385 (23.3%)		United Kingdom	1,610 (25.1%)	
United States	1,703 (16.6%)		United States	1,315 (20.6%)	
Germany	1,228 (12.0%)		Japan	272 (4.3%)	
Iran	554 (5.4%)		Australia	247 (3.9%)	
Japan	544 (5.3%)		U.S.S.R.	175 (2.7%)	
Italy	304 (3.0%)		Ceylon	167 (2.6%)	
France	287 (2.8%)		Germany (West)	161 (2.5%)	
Malaya	269 (2.6%)		Canada	139 (2.2%)	
Belgium-Luxembourg	238 (2.3%)		Burma	132 (2.1%)	
U.S.S.R.	227 (2.2%)		Malaya	130 (2.0%)	
Switzerland	178 (1.7%)		British East Africa	120 (1.9%)	
Australia	164 (1.6%)		Egypt	110 (1.7%)	
Saudi Arabia	140 (1.4%)		France	102 (1.6%)	
British East Africa	137 (1.3%)				
Canada	136 (1.3%)				
Pakistan	134 (1.3%)				
Total from above countries	8,628 (84.1%)		Total to above countries	4,671 (73.2%)	

<sup>1</sup> Excluding land trade with Tibet, Nepal, Sikkim and Bhutan.

**Commerce.** Until the First World War one of the striking features of Indian foreign commerce was the large excess of imports of bullion and specie. This resulted in the steady accumulation of specie (formerly silver, later chiefly gold) in the country. From 1931



onwards, however, the rise in the price of gold, expressed in terms of the Indian rupee, led to an enormous export of treasure though probably only a small part of the accumulated hoards. At the same time this points to an increased confidence in the banking system.

PAKISTAN: IMPORTS AND EXPORTS, 1957<sup>1</sup>

*Based on the United Nations Yearbook of International Trade Statistics.  
Sterling value of Pakistan Rupee, 1s. 6d. Rate of exchange P.Rs. 13½ = £1.*

IMPORTS BY COMMODITIES				EXPORTS BY COMMODITIES			
General Imports c.i.f.	Total	Million P.Rs. 2,096 (£150m.)		General Exports, f.o.b.	Total	Million P.Rs. 1,603 (£120m.)	
<i>Principal Commodities</i>				<i>Principal Commodities:</i>			
Grain, pulse and flour		558	(26.6%)	Raw jute		782	(48.8%)
Sugar		71	(3.4%)	Raw cotton		332	(20.7%)
Coal		75	(3.6%)	Raw wool		103	(6.4%)
Mineral and other oils		99	(4.7%)				
Cotton, raw and waste		30	(1.4%)			1,217	(75.9%)
Cotton, yarns and manufactures		21	(1.0%)				
Other yarns and fabrics		29	(1.4%)	Gunny (jute) cloth, bags, etc.		93	(5.8%)
Iron, steel and manufactures		225	(10.7%)	Cotton twist and yarn		77	(4.8%)
Machinery, all kinds		318	(15.2%)	Raw hides and skins		41	(2.5%)
Electrical apparatus		67	(3.2%)	Tea		23	(1.5%)
Vehicles		114	(5.4%)				
Dyes and colours		35	(1.7%)	Total of above exports		1,451	(90.5%)
Chemicals		91	(4.4%)				
Cutlery and other implements		38	(1.8%)				
Total of above imports		1,771	(84.5%)				

IMPORTS BY COUNTRIES				EXPORTS BY COUNTRIES			
General Imports, c.i.f.	Total	2,096 (£157m.)		General Exports, f.o.b.	Total	1,603 (£120m.)	
<i>Countries of Production:</i>				<i>Countries of first consignment:</i>			
United States		573	(27.3%)	United Kingdom		255	(15.9%)
United Kingdom		400	(19.1%)	Japan		209	(13.0%)
Germany (West)		162	(7.7%)	United States		182	(11.4%)
Burma		91	(4.4%)	France		128	(8.0%)
Australia		88	(4.2%)	India		116	(7.3%)
India		87	(4.2%)	Germany (West)		110	(6.8%)
Japan		76	(3.6%)	Belgium-Luxembourg		82	(5.1%)
Belgium-Luxembourg		76	(3.6%)	Hong Kong		76	(4.7%)
Canada		59	(2.8%)	South Africa		58	(3.6%)
Italy		51	(2.4%)	China		54	(3.4%)
France		50	(2.4%)	Italy		52	(3.2%)
Iran		40	(1.9%)	Netherlands		28	(1.8%)
China		37	(1.8%)	Burma		27	(1.7%)
Total from above countries		1,790	(85.4%)	Total to above countries		1,377	(85.9%)

<sup>1</sup> Including land-borne trade, also trade on Government account. The latter accounted for more than half the imports in 1957, but was nil on the export side of the account.

During the First World War the commerce of India was necessarily greatly affected by the obstacles to communication with the West, and also by the exceptionally great increase during that war and in the year or two following in the prices of the raw produce that made up the bulk of Indian exports. This latter fact is the chief explanation of the increase in the proportion by value of the

goods sent to the United Kingdom from an average of 25 per cent. per annum in the period 1909-14 to 31 per cent. in the period 1914-19, and to 36 per cent. in the year 1919-20, while the subsequent fall in prices accounts for the decline in the British share to 20 per cent. in 1921-22. Later, the proportion increased again to 31·7 per cent. in 1931-35, the last quinquennium to include Burma as an Indian province. Meantime the principal advance in proportion was that of Japan, which received in the period 1909-14, 7 per cent., in the year 1919-20, 14 per cent., and in 1921-22 (after a decline to 9 per cent.) 16 per cent. of the value. The decline of Great Britain's share in supplying the imports from 63 per cent. on the average of the years 1909-14 to 56 per cent. in 1914-19, is easily understood. Her lowest percentage was in 1919-20 (51 per cent.). In 1921-22 it amounted to 57 per cent., but in 1931-35 it averaged only 38·3 per cent., and later fell much lower.

In the inter-war years there was abundant evidence in the trade returns that India had little to spare of agricultural produce—the export of wheat virtually ceased—whilst home manufactures in textiles, iron, and steel affected the former huge import. In 1938-39, with Burma gone, imports of private merchandise were valued at Rs.1,523m. (£114m.), and exports of Indian produce at Rs.1,628m. (£122m.). Imports were largely rice, mineral oils, cotton piece goods, machinery and vehicles. Chief exports were jute manufactures, raw jute, raw cotton, tea, and oil-seeds (mainly groundnuts), these items making up two-thirds of the total. Britain was the best market for tea and jute, continental Europe took most of the oil-seeds, and Japan much of the cotton.

Since the partition of 1947, the position broadly has been that while Pakistan is relatively well endowed with primary agricultural produce—raw jute, cotton, and even grain—the basis of manufacturing industry in coal and minerals generally remains in the Republic of India. Though most of the raw jute is produced in eastern Pakistan, most of the factories are on the Hooghly north of Calcutta (p. 213). Figures for the trade of both countries in 1951-2 are shown in the tables on pp. 566 and 567.

**Seaports.** The foreign sea-borne commerce of India and Pakistan is concentrated in four seaports—Calcutta, Bombay, Madras, and Karāchi, and nearly 80 per cent. of the whole falls to the share of the first two. Since partition Chittagong has increased greatly in importance as the ocean port of eastern Pakistan.

Calcutta, on the Hooghly, an arm of the delta of the Ganges, is the last of a succession of ports which have flourished on the same stream. The others, all of which stood higher up, have declined in consequence of silting, and the same fate is averted from Calcutta only by great engineering works. Founded in 1686, the town was made the seat of government of Bengal in 1772, and of British India

in the year following. It remained the official capital of the Indian Empire till October 1, 1912, when it was replaced by Delhi.

Bombay—by far the most important seaport in the west of India, and the rival of Calcutta in commerce and shipping—is likewise a town of recent origin, and a port that has had great predecessors in the same region. The predecessors of Bombay as a seaport were Broach, near the mouth of the Narbadā, and Surat, near the mouth of the Tāpti; and the history of the three illustrates in an interesting manner the relation between physical features and commercial development. Broach is the oldest of the three. Under the name of Barugaza it is one of the oldest Indian seaports known in commerce with the East or West. Yet it seems always to have had a poor harbour, very difficult to approach. Its difficulty of access is at least mentioned as far back as the first century A.D. But in days when vessels were very small, and navigation slow, the shallowness of the river-mouth and the delay in entering were of very little consequence; and the mouth of the Narbadā has the advantage of possessing high banks out of the reach of flooding, and being contiguous to a highly productive region. Surat shares with Broach the last-named advantage, and it has much better accommodation for shipping. The Swally (Suwāli) Roads, north of the mouth of the Tāpti, afford a safe anchorage even for large vessels from October to April, though it is dangerous for such vessels during the prevalence of the south-west monsoon. The banks of the Tāpti, on the other hand, are low and liable to inundation, a disaster which has more than once overtaken the town. The advantage of the harbour, however, began to prevail in favour of Surat in the sixteenth century, when direct commerce with Europe had begun. The Portuguese, the Dutch, and the English established factories (that is, trading stations) here, and in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries Surat was the greatest seat of foreign commerce, and, latterly at least, the most populous town in India. Bombay, built on a small island, now connected, along with another larger island (Salsette) behind it, with the mainland, has the immense advantage over both its predecessors of possessing a harbour safe for large ocean-steamers in all weathers; but it had the misfortune to be backed by mountainous country, which cut it off from the more productive regions beyond. In 1661 Bombay Island was acquired by Charles II from the Portuguese, and in 1687 the East India Company, to which it had previously been handed over, transferred thither, from Surat, the headquarters of their possessions; but it was not till after the establishment of the improved communications with the interior mentioned above that Bombay rose to the commanding position it now holds in the commerce of India. Its two famous predecessors are now visited only by coasting vessels, but the inland trade of Surat is still important.

Karāchi, since 1947 the capital of Pakistan, stands on a small bay to the west of the mouths of the Indus, and has been provided with a splendid harbour. Its wheat trade especially grew with remarkable rapidity after the planting of the irrigation colonies in the north-west, but later was replaced by cotton. In addition to its function as port and capital it has become the front door into the sub-continent for air traffic from Europe.

Most of the other seaports of the west coast have only fair-weather harbours—safe in our winter months, but rendered dangerous by the heavy surf during the prevalence of the south-west monsoon. The harbour of Goa (Portuguese) is an exception, and the trade there, which had dwindled, revived after Mormugão, at the south-west extremity of the harbour, was connected by rail with the interior. Calicut, which has an anchorage 24 feet deep at low-water spring-tides, and Cochin, which had a harbour available for ships of no more than 15-feet draught, retained some importance in connection with the trade in pepper and spices, which drew the Portuguese to these ports at the end of the fifteenth century. Cochin has now been dredged to form a deep-water harbour.

The extraordinary importance of the trade in pepper and spices in past times it is difficult for us now to realise. The quantities that reached Europe were small compared with those which make up the trade of the world in such commodities at the present day, but the differences in value at the place of origin and in Europe enabled those merchants who escaped the risks of the trade to reap enormous profits. The cargoes brought back by Vasco da Gama after the voyage on which he discovered the sea-way to India, were mainly of spices and pepper, and they are stated by Correa, the Portuguese historian of the voyage, to have yielded a profit on the voyage of 6,000 per cent. In Thomas Mun's *English Treasure by Forraign Trade*, written about 1630, the price of pepper in the East Indies is stated to have been 4*d.* a pound when it was 20*d.* in England. By contrast in the early part of the present century the average price of pepper at Bangkok was a little more than 7*d.*, when it varied from 8½*d.* to 9½*d.* in the London market. As to the risks of the trade in past times, see p. 96.

The south-east coast of India, where a low plain slopes gently out under a shallow sea, did not possess a single safe natural harbour, or navigable river-mouth. Ships anchored off the shore at several roadsteads, and goods and passengers had to be landed in flat boats through surf. By virtue of harbour works, Madras has been made a seat of great trade, a trade, however, of less than one-sixth of the value of that of Bombay, notwithstanding the populousness and productiveness of its hinterland, and even this has been achieved only by waging a constant struggle against natural conditions. The site of the city was ceded to the English East India Com-

pany in 1639, when Fort St. George was erected there. About a hundred years later Madras was already the most populous city in southern India. Down to the latter part of the nineteenth century, however, the trade was carried on in the same manner as at the other ports on this coast. In 1881 a harbour was nearly completed, when it was in great part destroyed by one of those irresistible hurricanes by which both sides of India are liable to be swept, especially about the change of the monsoons (May and October), and which on the eastern side raise the waves to a height unparalleled elsewhere. A new harbour was, however, completed in 1895, two moles of about 3,900 feet in length being run out seawards leaving an opening of 515 feet between them; but great difficulty is experienced in keeping it dredged owing to the enormous quantities of sand drifted northwards and southwards by the monsoon currents.

The voyage from Madras to Europe or the reverse is considerably lengthened by the necessity of passing round the island of Ceylon, which is nearly connected with the mainland by a string of islands and a shallow bank known as Adam's Bridge. The long-discussed proposal for connecting India with Ceylon by rail by this route was abandoned in favour of a part-rail part-steamer connection, which was established early in 1914. Only one channel, called the Pāmbam (Paumben) Passage, across this 'bridge' has been sufficiently deepened to allow of its being used by good-sized coasters, and it is doubtful whether it can ever be made navigable for large ocean-going vessels.

Apart from the modernisation of Chittagong and the increased use of river ports in the delta in eastern Pakistan for political reasons, the Republic of India has made marked efforts to relieve the concentration on its three major ports by developing others such as Kandla on the Gulf of Kutch and Okha in the west. In the east the completion of the fine harbour of Vizagapatam in 1933 and the use of such lesser ports as Coconada and Tuticorin had prevented undue concentration on Madras.

The landward trade of India, owing to the mountainous nature of the frontiers and the undeveloped lands beyond, is very small.

**The partition of India in 1947.** When the British withdrew from India in August 1947, two separate states were set up, primarily on a religious basis. Pakistan is essentially Muslim, the Republic or Union of India primarily Hindu. Pakistan covers 364,737 square miles (population 75,842,000 in 1951); India, excluding 82,258 square miles and 4,000,000 people in Kashmir, covers 1,138,814 square miles (population 356,892,000 in 1951). Pakistan is in two parts separated by a thousand miles of Hindu territory. East Pakistan comprises much of the delta of the Ganges-Brahmaputra—rice- and jute-growing land—some two-thirds of the former province of Bengal, together with adjoining land formerly in Assam. West

Pakistan, now administered as one unit from Lahore, comprises half the former province of the Punjab, the North-west Frontier Province, Sind, and Baluchistan. The Union of India embraces the remainder (except the disputed territory of Kashmir) and the old distinction between 'British India' and 'Indian India' or native states has disappeared; speaking generally, the former rulers of states have become pensioners of the Central Government. Many of the small states have been compulsorily united to form larger units. Some of the old provinces (all officially now known as states) were renamed and in November 1956 the realignment of states shown on p. 563 was brought into being.

**Inland cities and towns of the Republic of India.** Delhi, the capital of India, lies between the great irrigation province of the East Punjab and Uttar Pradesh, formerly the United Provinces (Ganges Plain). The district has been constituted a small state. Delhi is a city of over a million and owes its importance largely to its position—from which all parts of the country are readily accessible. In the past when India was invaded from the north-west, Delhi had to be passed since it commanded the easy route lying between the Himalaya Mountains on the north and the plateau on the south. In the old days the land routes of the north-west joined here the water routes of the Jumna and Ganges. Later Delhi became a railway junction. The cotton of the neighbouring irrigated lands finds its way to mills at Delhi. At a convenient distance to the north are the healthy heights of the Himalayas, on a spur of which stands Simla, India's summer capital during the British period. West of Delhi, the East Punjab includes the famous Sikh city of Amritsar.

Going down the broad Ganges plain to the east, the traveller passes through Uttar Pradesh. Here Agra, formerly one of the great cities of the Mogul Empire and famed for the Taj Mahal—perhaps the finest building in India—lies on the River Jumna. Farther east the former provincial capital, Allahabad, is at the junction of the Jumna and the Ganges. In the Ganges-Jumna 'Doab' (the land between the rivers) between Allahabad and Delhi is Aligarh, a collecting centre and famed for the dairying industry elsewhere so markedly absent in India. Above Allahabad on the Ganges is Kanpur (Cawnpore), to the north. The State capital of Uttar Pradesh is now Lucknow. Below Allahabad, Varanasi or Banaras (Benares) is a Hindu cultural centre on the Ganges.

Eastward is the Province (now State) of Bihar with Patna on the Ganges which has given its name to Patna rice. In Western Bengal there are several large jute-mill towns on the Hooghly north of Calcutta. On the western border of Bengal is the coal-field. On the healthy heights of the Himalayas to the north of Bengal lies the hill station of Darjeeling.

In peninsular India Jubbulpore and Nagpur have cotton mills.

Farther south Hyderabad, the fourth city of India, was the capital of the former state of the same name (the Nizam's Dominions). Bangalore and Mysore are the chief towns of Mysore. In Madras, Ootacamund is the hill station (in the Nilgiri Hills), Trichinopoly and Madura are old cities of the south.

**Towns and cities of Pakistan.** The delta lands of East Pakistan are thickly populated but the towns are small, most of the people living in villages amid the rice and jute lands. Dacca is the chief town, unlike Calcutta an old settlement.

In West Pakistan now organised as a unit is the former Punjab capital, Lahore, and Rawalpindi. Multan is the central town of the very dry country south-west of Lahore. Between the Punjab plains and the frontier with Afghanistan lies the famous irrigated valley around Rawalpindi, leading to the historic Khyber Pass. Sind, occupying the lower valley of the Indus, has been transformed by irrigation. A large inland city is Hyderabad (not to be confused with the south India city of that name), but the capital and port of Karāchi has eclipsed all in its growth.

**Baluchistan** is composed mainly of arid and unproductive tablelands inhabited by scattered tribes. The settled areas in the north-east lie around Sibi and Quetta, which are largely the creations of British rule. Quetta (5,500 feet) is connected with Sind by a railway with one loop running eastwards up the Nari Pass, and another (with gradients of 1 in 24) up the Bolan Pass. The idea of opening a trade-route from Quetta through northern Baluchistan with Sistán and Meshed in Khurastan (Iran), a distance of more than 1,000 miles, was long entertained. A caravan-route was at last established about 1898, but the trade by that route, though it grew rapidly, remained insignificant. Later the railway was carried westwards from Quetta through Nushki to Duzdap within the Iranian (Persian) frontier, and though of strategic interest, the traffic remained so insignificant that the railway is now partly disused.

**Kashmir** is the westernmost of the states traversed by the Himalayas, and is mainly composed of lofty mountains. It includes, however, the lovely valley of the same name lying, at the height of rather more than 5,000 feet, in a latitude corresponding to that of northern Morocco. Srīnagar, on the Jhelum in this valley, is the largest town (250,000) and the centre of tourist traffic and a small overland trade with central Asia. From Srīnagar there are several routes both south to the Punjab (the chief route being that leading to Amritsar) and north to the valley of the Indus: and from Leh, in the valley of the Indus in the east of Kashmir, a trade-route diverges northwards to eastern Turkistan, across the highest pass in the world so crossed. This is the well-known Karakoram Pass, 18,500 feet in height—that is, upwards of 6,000 feet higher than Leh, and upwards

of 15,000 feet higher than the towns of eastern Turkistan. When the partition of India took place in 1947 Kashmir provided a seemingly insoluble problem. Most of its people are Moslems, and it holds the headwaters of the streams supplying Pakistan with precious irrigation water. Its natural union was with Pakistan, but its rulers were Hindus and acceded to India. A republic, proclaimed in 1952, has also adopted the Indian constitution; but the problem remains.

With *Sikkim*, *Bhutan*, and the north-eastern states beyond the frontier of Bengal and Assam, trade is very trifling. Trade could be developed with Tibet by a series of passes in Sikkim, about 13,000, 14,000, and 15,000 feet high respectively. On the Indian side they are within a short distance of the railway to Darjeeling.

**Nepāl.** The native state of Nepāl, entirely independent of India, the populous parts of which lie south of the main range of the Himalayas, and have many routes to the Indian plains, absorbs more than half the landward foreign trade of India. The chief imports therefrom are food grains, oil-seeds, timber, cattle, and horns. From Kātmāndu, the capital, two routes branch over the central range of the Himalayas, and by means of these a small trade is carried on with Tibet. Nepāl is an interesting country ruled until 1951 (when a more democratic constitution was adopted) on military lines by a family of Hindu Rajputs, the people of the country being the Gurkhas, one of the world's most famous military races. The country was for long virtually closed to Europeans, slavery was only abolished in 1924-26, and the first telephone was installed in 1927.

**European Territories in India.** Portugal has over 1,537 square miles on the west coast, mostly around Goa. France's settlements, totalling 196 square miles at Pondicherry, Karikal, Yanaon, and Mahé, were transferred to India on November 1st, 1954.

## TOWNS OF INDIA, 1951

Calcutta (including Howrah)	3,599,000	Poona	491,000
Bombay	2,839,000	Kanpur (Cawnpore)	705,000
Madras	1,416,000	Agra	376,000
Hyderabad	739,000	Nagpur	449,000
Delhi	915,000	Varanasi (Banaras, Benares)	356,000
Ahmedabad	788,000	Allahabad	332,000
Lucknow	499,000	Madura	362,000
		Patna	282,000

## TOWNS OF PAKISTAN, 1951

Karachi	1,126,000	Rawalpindi	237,000	Peshawar	152,000
Lahore	849,000	Multan	190,000	Chittagong	146,000
Dacca	276,000	Lyallpur	179,000	Gujranwala	121,000
Hyderabad	242,000	Sialkot	168,000	Quetta	84,000



## THE INDO-CHINESE PENINSULA

The peninsula of Indo-China, formerly called Further India, lies between India and China. To the south, linked with it by the Isthmus of Kra, is a long narrow subsidiary peninsula, called the Malay Peninsula or Malaya. The heart of the main area and stretching southwards to include the isthmus is occupied by the independent Kingdom of Siam or Thailand. To the west lies Burma, once an independent empire or empires but gradually absorbed to become a province of the British Indian Empire, now since 1948 an independent republic. To the east of Siam lie the states which as colonies or protectorates formed French Indo-China. After the Second World War they were regrouped, within the framework of the French Union, as three states—the republic of Viet-Nam (uniting the territories of Tongking, Annam and Cochin-China) and the monarchies of Cambodia and Laos. Later the connection with the French Union was severed (see p. 582). South of Siam, Malaya is a federation of nine Moslem states and two British settlements, enjoying independence within the Commonwealth, while the island of Singapore at its southern end is a separate British colony with local self-government.

Taking the peninsula as a whole, the mountainous character of a large part of the country, especially the north to south alignment of the mountains, the existence of numerous extensive swamps in the more level tracts of the interior, and the defectiveness of the communications, go a long way to account for the low density of population, but among other causes have been devastating wars, inroads of robber bands from the mountains, and other consequences of the want of strong government. While Burma was in the hands of the British, there was a constant stream of settlers into the country including many immigrants from India, and population, production, and commerce rapidly increased. Owing to the scantiness of population relatively to the resources of the territory Burma is still to some extent in the position of a new country. Similarly the possibilities of expansion in eastern Indo-China, Thailand, and Malaya have led to a huge influx of Chinese. This led, when security and a market were offered, to the rapid occupation of the land for the raising of export produce, notably rice and, in Malaya, rubber.

## BURMA

Modern Burma has had a chequered career. Till April 1937 it was one of the provinces of the Indian Empire; it was, in fact, the

largest, having an area of a quarter of a million square miles, but was markedly contrasted to the remainder of India in that the population of this vast area was only a little over 15m. The separation gave point to the marked contrast between Burma and India proper, for the position of the 'Cinderella' province had long been an anomalous one. Burma was invaded by the Japanese in December 1941 and occupied by them until 1945. By friendly agreement and a treaty signed in London in 1947 Burma (under the title of the Union of Burma) became an independent republic, outside the Commonwealth, on January 4, 1948. Unfortunately armed strife between different racial groups and the spread of bands of dacoits or robbers halted all progress. Burma can be described as an undeveloped monsoon country with great possibilities of expansion and economic activity. Its problems include those connected with immigration of people from over-populated India on the one hand, and over-populated China on the other. It is, however, cut off from India by a wall of mountains and from the thickly populated parts of China by a broad expanse of plateaus and mountains, so that almost the only approach to the country is by sea through its major port of Rangoon or more recently, for special purposes, by air. It is this remarkable isolation from its neighbours that left Burma in the position of a pleasant but undeveloped backwater. Until the Japanese invasion the quickest way from Assam to northern Burma, a distance of 100 or 150 miles across the mountains in a straight line, was *via* Calcutta round to Rangoon, up the Irrawaddy and so to complete the journey in about ten days. The motor roads which the British and American armies built across the mountains when they drove out the Japanese in 1945 have again fallen into disuse.

In its physical build the remarkable feature of Burma is the north-south alignment of its ranges and its principal river valleys. From west to east there is first the complicated folded mountain chain of the Arakan Yoma, between which and the sea, the Bay of Bengal, there are but small plains suitable for the support of a population, the most extensive being around the town of Akyab. At present no railway or motor road crosses these mountains. Then comes the valley of the Chindwin, somewhat narrow and sparsely populated, which is extended southwards into the valley of the lower course of the Irrawaddy. The valley of the lower Irrawaddy, through the heart of the Dry Belt, is broad and supports a considerable population, whilst the fertile delta of the Irrawaddy is also a very important part of the country. Then comes another line of mountains from north to south, much lower in the south, where it forms the forested ridge known as the Pegu Yoma; this line of mountains is breached about the centre by the Irrawaddy river. Then comes the valley of the upper course of the Irrawaddy (as far as Mandalay) and the continuation of the valley southwards

now drained by a smaller stream, the Sittang; both these valley regions are important. The whole of the east of the country is occupied by a broad plateau, the Shan plateau, through which runs the deep cleft occupied by the Salween river. The Shan plateau is continued southwards into broken forested country, towards Tenasserim and the Malay peninsula.

Structurally Burma falls into two parts: the western half with its valley plains and its folded mountains, of comparatively recent geological age, and the eastern half which consists of a great block of ancient rock, including many metamorphic rocks, tracts of limestone and other areas which are most important because of their yield of minerals. In the western half of the country, in the valley of the Chindwin and the Irrawaddy, is a succession of oil-fields, so that Burma before 1941 was the rival of Trinidad as the largest producer of oil in the British Empire, with a total production then about 0.6 or 0.7 per cent. of the world's total. The two leading fields are Singu and Yenangyaung, both near the River Irrawaddy. The oil is normally sent from these fields by pipeline over 300 miles to the refineries near Rangoon. Burmese oil is rich in volatile constituents and is largely refined for its yield of petrol rather than used as crude oil. There is not much possibility of the further discovery of oil in Burma, but the fields that exist have been very carefully worked. In the eastern half of the country one finds in the north the famous old Burma ruby mines, but the drop in the value of rubies and the growth in the manufacture of artificial rubies have led to the virtual disappearance of the mining of gem stones. Not far away is one of the largest silver-lead mines in the world, that of Bawdwin with its refinery or smelting works at Namtu, operated until 1952 by the Burma Corporation. The minerals produced here are sent by rail to Rangoon. Other mineral deposits are known to occur in the Shan Plateau, but many of them are too inaccessible to be worked at present. In the south of the country, however, in Tenasserim particularly, one finds the tin and tungsten deposits, some worked in the alluvial valleys, some as lode deposits, which fluctuate in importance according to the world price of tin.<sup>1</sup>

Climatically Burma has the same monsoon climate as India. The position of the Tropic of Cancer should be noticed: it passes through Burma in such a way that about a third of the country lies outside the tropics, the remainder within. Thus in the cool season there is a gradual decrease in temperature as one goes from the south of the country where it is really always hot and moist, towards the north, where even in the valleys frosts may occur in January. The really important point about Burma is the way in which the mountain ranges of the west and the Irrawaddy delta catch the full

<sup>1</sup> It should be understood that any working of minerals since the Japanese invasion of 1941 has been small and spasmodic.

force of the monsoon, and so in places may enjoy, or rather suffer from, a rainfall of as much as 200 inches. Most of the great rice region of the delta has a rainfall of about 100 inches—this is the total received by Rangoon. In the heart of the country, which is sheltered from the rain by the surrounding mountains, the rainfall may drop to as low as 20 inches, resulting in semi-desert conditions. Thus within a limited area there is an enormous range of climatic conditions with a corresponding range in products.

Similarly the natural vegetation of Burma ranges from the dense equatorial type of forest in the wettest regions, a type of forest which is little exploited because of the variety of trees, but which to a considerable extent has been destroyed by the indigenous shifting cultivation, through the very important teak forests where the rainfall is between 40 and 80 inches a year. In normal times timber, particularly teak, forms the second most important export of the country. It must not be supposed that these forests consist entirely of teak trees: teak does not as a rule constitute more than 15 per cent. of the total. The forests, which belong to the group of the monsoon forests, lose their leaves as a protection against the great heat of the hot season. The drier parts of the country have too little rainfall for the adequate growth of forest and are covered with almost useless scrub. A yellow dye, known as 'cutch,' is made from the acacia trees of part of this belt.

In all the wetter parts of the country rice is the great crop, particularly in the Irrawaddy delta and the smaller delta and valley of the Sittang, together with the limited tracts of flat land along the coasts of Arakan and Tenasserim. Burma rice is not of the highest quality and is used in the European market more for industrial purposes than for human food. Burma is, however, with Thailand, Cambodia and Viet-nam, normally one of the great rice-exporting countries of the world, and rice constitutes easily the largest export. The grain is taken by 'paddy' boats through the creeks or canals of the delta to Rangoon or to Bassein, where in the rice mills the husks are removed and the rice exported. The Japanese invasion of 1941 cut off the markets; subsequent disturbed conditions led to the abandonment of much land, so that recovery must be slow.

In the Dry Belt of Burma there is a certain amount of irrigation, but much opportunity exists for more. The Dry Zone crops are the usual millet and sesamum, together with a certain amount of cotton and the very important crop, ground-nuts.

The population of Burma now estimated at about 20m. includes over a million belonging to hill tribes who constitute the sparse population of the Shan plateau and the hills, and are also found in isolated groups elsewhere, notably the Karen villages of the delta. They are interesting but, except the Karens, are economically unimportant. Except in the delta they were formerly organised into native

states under the rule of their own chiefs.<sup>1</sup> Then about another million of the population consists of immigrants. In the first place there are the 300,000 Chinese who came to the country mainly to form a sort of middle class consisting of artisans, office clerks, shopkeepers, and so on. The Chinese penetrated up-country to the villages and intermarried with the Burmese. There are in Burma practically no Chinese coolies. Coolie labour is or was performed by the immigrant Indians, who were to be found in large numbers working on the docks in Rangoon and up-country on the railways or near main lines of communication. They had a lower standard of living than the native Burmans, and tended to complicate the life of the country by thus 'undercutting' the natives. In 1941 Indian immigrants and residents numbered about 800,000. Many left when the British withdrew in face of the Japanese invasion: many were massacred. The remaining people, the great majority, belong to the Burmese race. The Burmans are Mongols allied to the Chinese or the Malays, and by religion they are Buddhist. Sporting, gentlemanly, with a natural sense of humour, the Burmese are delightful people possessed of good brain power but frequently lacking the concentration or devotion to hard work which is necessary in this modern, sordid world and hence liable to suffer from the competition of the Indian on the one hand or the Chinese on the other.

The country has a metre-gauge railway system which connects Rangoon, the capital and chief port, with Prome, the port on the Irrawaddy to the west and with Mandalay *via* the Sittang valley. Mandalay is about the same distance from Rangoon as Edinburgh is from London. A fine rail and road bridge was built across the Irrawaddy near Mandalay (destroyed during the Japanese invasion but reopened in 1954) and the railway with branches runs considerably farther north. The main highway of Burma is still, however, the River Irrawaddy, which is navigable for a thousand miles from its mouth. Its chief tributary, the Chindwin, is also used. Regular services, now government operated, run up and down the river and carry much traffic. There is much river traffic, too, in the delta as well as on other rivers in Burma. A great proportion of the timber of the saw-mills of Rangoon is brought down by raft.

Notice the position of the old capital of the country (Mandalay) in the heart of the Dry Belt.

#### TOWNS OF BURMA (1953 CENSUS)

Rangoon	.	.	737,000	Mandalay	.	.	201,000
Moulmein	.	.	100,000	Bassein	.	.	77,000

<sup>1</sup> The Union of Burma is now a federation of States with the Kachin State in the north, the Shan State in the east and the Karen State to the south of the latter. The hills on the Indian border are occupied by the Chin Territory: Burmans inhabit the remainder of the country.

## THAILAND (SIAM)

Siam, or Thailand ('Land of the Free') as its government has decreed that it shall be called, is a constitutional monarchy in south-east Asia with an area of 198,000 square miles (more than twice the size of Great Britain) and a rapidly growing population estimated in 1956 at 21m. Occupying the western part of the Indo-Chinese peninsula, it lies to the south-east of Burma, just beyond the River Salween, which partly borders it on the west, while on the north-east and east are two of the three states of Indo-China formerly within the French sphere, namely Laos and Cambodia. Southward it reaches to the head of the Gulf of Siam, and a long south-western arm, which for some distance divides the Malay Peninsula with Burma, afterwards occupies the full width of the peninsula as far as the borders of British Malaya and looks out not only on the Gulf of Siam to the east, but on the Indian Ocean to the west. This long southern extension is for the most part a mass of jungle-clad hills covering in all some 30,000 square miles—an area equal to that of Scotland.

The main body of the country, from Burma down to the Gulf of Siam, falls into two divisions, western and eastern—respectively the basin of the Menam, which lies wholly in Siam, and part of the basin of the Mekong, whose middle course is Siam's eastern boundary. The basin of the Menam in turn falls into two main areas. In the north is a wide expanse of mountainous forested land bordering on Burma and the Laos country, and a strip of similar land runs along the western frontier. Emerging from the wooded hills of the north, the Menam and its many affluents form a vast alluvial plain of great fertility, subject to annual inundation, and the mainstay of Siam's economic wealth. A belt of hill country along its eastern edge forms a watershed between the Menam basin and that of the Mekong, another vast plain for the most part, though broken by stretches of hills, and having more of the character of a low plateau than the alluvial flats of the Menam.

These various regions of Siam are rich in varied resources, but the production of outstanding importance is the rice crop of the lower Menam valley. Altogether rice is grown on over 14m. acres in Siam, and the yield of paddy has increased to between 8m. and

7m. tons, not only supplying home needs but providing about half the value of the exports. No other product approaches rice in commercial value, but it may be noted that after the Second World War the export of rubber jumped up to round about 100,000 tons, and in 1950 constituted one-fifth of the exports in value. Some 600,000 tons of sugar-cane from 60-70,000 acres yield nearly 50,000 tons of raw sugar, and other crops include ground-nuts, cotton, and tobacco. The most numerous livestock are buffaloes (5½m.) and cattle (5m.), both of which are used as draught animals.

Nearly two-thirds of Siam is covered with forests and woodlands. Their area is returned as 125,000 square miles, and the mountainous north especially is rich in valuable timbers, notably teak, for which Siam is famous. Logs are floated down the rivers, chiefly those of the Menam basin flowing to Bangkok, but also down affluents of the Salween into Burma, and down the Mekong into French Indo-China. In 1950, exports of forest products were valued, at the official rate of exchange (35 ticals or bahts to the £) at about £5m., of which teak provided over half. The timber trade is largely in the hands of British companies.

Mineral resources are numerous and widespread, but hitherto their development has been chiefly confined to tin, wolfram, and precious stones (rubies and sapphires). The tin mines, mostly under British ownership, are the biggest factor in the mineral industry, the output for export in 1950 being valued at about £8.5m. The total value of all classes of exports in that year was about £100m., of which, as already noted, rice represented nearly half and rubber one-fifth. Imports—chiefly textiles, iron and steel goods, machinery, petroleum products, and foodstuffs—amounted to about £80m.

Siam is comparatively well off for railways. They are state owned, and Bangkok, the capital, situated in the Menam delta, is the hub of the system. One line runs south through the Malay Peninsula and links up with the railways of the Federation of Malaya, placing Bangkok in direct railway communication with Singapore. Other lines reach out in many directions—north-west, north, north-east, east—towards the frontiers of Burma, Laos, and Cambodia; and through Cambodia a line connects with Phnom Penh, in southern Viet-Nam. Altogether the Siamese state railways extend to over 2,000 miles. There are over 4,000 miles of roads, mostly ranking as second class. The rivers are not generally navigable, and even Bangkok, which is not only the capital but the chief port, 25 miles up the Menam from the sea, is not accessible to vessels drawing more than about 14 feet.

Bangkok, sometimes called the Venice of the East, accommodates over a million people, and is the only really large city in Siam.

## INDO-CHINA

Before the Second World War, Indo-China was part of France's colonial empire, comprising the colony of Cochinchina and the four protectorates of Tongking, Annam, Cambodia and Laos, the last three ranking as kingdoms. After the war these territories were reconstituted as independent states within the French Union. Cambodia and Laos, bordering Siam, became sovereign states with constitutional monarchies. Tongking, Annam and Cochinchina, bordering the South China Sea, combined in a federation of North, Central and South Vietnam, with the former King of Annam as 'Chief of the State.'

Association with France was continued through a French High Commissioner and Commander-in-Chief, with a Commissioner in each State. French troops, fighting along with the National Armies, were involved in a long and costly war to hold back Vietminh (Communist) forces, based on southern China. In the first half of 1954 the Vietminh forces made considerable headway, and in July an armistice was arranged by an international conference at Geneva, attended by representatives of not only France, the Associated States of Indo-China, and Vietminh, but the United Kingdom, the United States, and China. A military demarcation line drawn near 17°N. latitude divided Vietnam into two roughly equal areas, leaving in Vietminh occupation the northern half, including the Red River delta, the port of Haiphong, and Hanoi the capital. Vietminh troops were to be withdrawn from southern Vietnam, Cambodia and Laos. An International Supervisory Commission, with representatives of India, Poland and Canada, was appointed to see that the terms of the armistice were kept. The future government of Vietnam, Cambodia, and Laos was made dependent on free elections to be held in 1955.

These arrangements did not come to full fruition. The armistice line was drawn, dividing the Vietminh and Vietnam forces, but the Vietnam Government refused to recognise the agreement. A referendum in 1955 deposed the King of Annam as head of the State, and his successor proclaimed a republic, with himself as President. All association with France was severed, and the upshot has been the establishment of four distinct States:

- (1) The northern zone of Vietnam, in Communist (Vietminh) occupation as a Democratic Republic, recognised by the U.S.S.R. and China.

- (2) Southern Vietnam, a republic recognised by France, the United Kingdom and the United States.

- (3) and (4) The kingdoms of Cambodia and Laos.



## NORTHERN VIETNAM

The Democratic Republic of Vietnam (63,000 square miles) is a little larger than England and Wales. The population was assessed in the Second World War—the latest estimate—at 13m. The country is mountainous, rising to over 11,000 feet. Two lowland areas, the Red River delta and a section of the littoral, contain most of the inhabitants. Rice, the chief crop, yielded 2½m. tons before the war, but production dropped when the country was overrun by the Vietminh forces, and practically no statistics have since been available. Mineral resources include anthracite mines, producing over 2m. tons in 1938, but this also fell away during hostilities, and though production revived the latest estimate is down by half. Hanoi, the capital, at the head of the Red River delta, had a population of nearly 300,000 when the French withdrew in 1953, and Haiphong, the chief port, about 188,000.

## SOUTHERN VIETNAM

The southern republic (65,000 square miles) had in 1956 an estimated population of 12m., mostly settled in the Mekong delta (the old Cochin-China), where the Government has its seat in the conurbation of Saigon (1·8m.). The main products are rice (2½m. tons of paddy from 5m. acres in 1954–55) and rubber (65,000 tons from 130,000 acres in 1956). Even in a good rice year the major export is rubber. In 1954, when rice provided 39 per cent. of the exports by value, rubber provided over 40 per cent., and in 1956, when the exports of rice were under 1 per cent., rubber provided 87 per cent.

Imports are greatly in excess of exports, and are not dominated by any single class of goods. In 1956, piece goods were 15 per cent. of the total; flour, dairy produce and sugar 12½ per cent.; and machinery, electrical and non-electrical, 8 per cent. The United States supplied 28 per cent. of the imports in 1956, and Japan and the French Union each 25 per cent. French territories also absorbed two-thirds of the exports, and the United States nearly 20 per cent.

There are 820 miles of railways in working order, not as a continuous system but in sections, mostly along the coast.

## CAMBODIA

Though slightly larger (67,000 square miles) than either Southern or Northern Vietnam, the kingdom of Cambodia is much more sparsely populated (4·5m.). Between 40 and 50 per cent. of the country is forested and only 20 per cent. used for farming. It has 800,000 cattle but practically no sheep. Fisheries are important, especially in Tonle Sap (Great Lake), an immense backwater of the Mekong. A railway connects Phnom Penh with Thailand (p. 581).

Phnom Penn (population 550,000), where Tonle Sap connects with the Mekong, is the capital and chief port. A new ocean port is being built at Kompong Som, on the Gulf of Siam.

The unit of currency is the rial, worth  $2\frac{1}{2}d.$  (97-98 to the £). Imports in 1956 were valued at Rials 1,980m. (£20m.) against exports of R. 1,282m. (£13m.). A wide miscellany of imports included about 10 per cent. piece goods and 10 per cent. machinery. Rubber (43 per cent.), rice (20 per cent.), and maize (15 per cent.) were the chief exports. Hong Kong, Japan, and the French Union supplied over 60 per cent. of the imports; France and the United States took the same proportion of the exports.

### LAOS

The kingdom of Laos is the largest (91,000 square miles) and has the smallest population (2m.) of the four States in Indo-China. It is mountainous and landlocked. Under 4,000 square miles is classed as arable and rather less as pastoral, whereas 55,000 square miles is forested. Rice is grown on  $1\frac{1}{2}$ -2m. acres, yielding  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. tons. Teak and other valuable timbers are extracted from the forests and floated down the Mekong. Vietminh forces have been active in the north, and despite international agreements for their withdrawal, the position remains unsettled. The administrative capital is Vientiane (30-40,000), bordering Siam, and farther north is the royal capital, Luang Prabang, both on the upper Mekong.

### CEYLON

Ceylon ceased to be a British Crown Colony in February 1948, when it attained independence and became the smallest Dominion in the British Commonwealth. It is a pear-shaped island, broad-based in the south and tapering in the north to where it almost links on with southern India. The greatest length is 270 miles, greatest width 140 miles; with an area of 25,000 square miles and a population of 9m., it is half the size of England and supports one-fifth as many people.

The south has a massive central core, mountainous and jungle-clad, rising to over 8,300 feet at its highest, though the most conspicuous and famous summit, Adam's Peak, revered as a place of pilgrimage throughout Asia, is a thousand feet lower. A comparatively narrow plain fringes the coast in this main southern area. The smaller northern part is flat and sparsely wooded. More than half the island (54 per cent.) is classed as forest country and nearly a quarter as land in agricultural use, the remaining quarter being either waste or unused.

The most populous region is the south-west, which gets the benefit of rain from both the south-west and north-east monsoons. The northern plains are arid and require irrigation. For many centuries they have been scantily populated, but the remains of gigantic reservoirs and other extensive ruins show that at one time the population was much denser and formed part of a flourishing civilisation. The depopulation is probably the result of malaria and other fevers. Restoration of the old reservoirs began under British rule, many of them are again in working order, and ambitious new irrigation and settlement schemes have been undertaken.

The Sinhalese, who are mostly Buddhists, account for about 70 per cent. of the population; indigenous Tamils, living mainly in the north and east, number 11 per cent., and immigrant Tamils from southern India (providing labour for the tea and rubber estates) a further 12 per cent. The balance is made up of Ceylon and Indian Moors, Malays, Burghers (English-speaking people of Dutch and Portuguese descent), and Europeans. These last, though numbering only a few thousands, represent large commercial interests, particularly in the tea gardens and rubber plantations. Only about 15 per cent. of the total population is urban.

A few years after the grant of independence, a law by a new Government, making Sinhalese the sole official language, aroused strong opposition among the Tamils and threatened serious trouble, which was patched up in 1957, but remains a source of friction. Restrictions were also imposed on the British use of the naval base at Trincomalee and the air base at Katunayake, both of which were handed over to Ceylon in 1957, subject to a reasonable allowance of time for closing down. Proposals to nationalise the basic industries and set up a republic were postponed, but labour troubles led to violent disturbances and the proclamation of a state of emergency in 1958.

Economically Ceylon is largely dependent on her export trade, and it is a weakness of her position that she relies for this trade on three main products—tea, rubber, and coconuts. Ceylon has had previous experience of the danger that may lurk in dependence on a predominant crop. About the beginning of the nineteenth century, soon after the arrival of the British, coffee was introduced and by the middle of the century it had become the most important commercial crop. A disastrous leaf disease attacked the plants about 1870, and in little more than a decade had wiped out the entire production.

The place of coffee was taken by tea, which has become by far the most important of the island's exports. The tea gardens, occupying the higher elevations up to 6,000 feet, cover 565,000 acres and yield upwards of 360m. lb. of tea annually—between a quarter and a fifth of the world's production.

Rubber began to play an important part at the beginning of the present century. The plantations cover the slopes of the foothills (below 3,000 feet) and were extensively developed during the Second World War, when, after the fall of Malaya and the Netherlands East Indies to Japan, Ceylon became the principal source of supply available to the Allies. To-day Ceylon's output is not a very big factor in world supply; in 1955 it was 95,000 tons—5 per cent. of the total. The entire production is exported.

More important as a factor in the island's economy are the products of the coconut palm. Not only do these compete with rubber for second place among the exports, in such varied forms as coconut oil, copra, desiccated coconut, coir fibre and yarn, and fresh coconuts, but only half the production is exported; the other half is absorbed by home consumption. The coconut plantations lie in the plains, valleys, and lower hill terraces of the south-west, also in the extreme north, and intermittently along the coast.

Lesser agricultural exports are cocoa, cinnamon and other spices, citronella oil, and areca nuts. Paddy (unhusked rice) is an important crop to which is devoted over 1½m. acres—a larger acreage than that of any other product except coconuts. It grows in all but the higher parts, yields two-thirds of a million tons, and meets two-thirds of the home need for this staple food.

Livestock are chiefly of importance as an adjunct to agricultural operations. Cattle are the most numerous—nearly 1½m.; and the number of buffaloes exceeds three-quarters of a million. Sheep and goats (mostly goats) number over half a million.

The island has many minerals, those of chief commercial importance being gemstones (notably sapphires) and an almost pure graphite (containing more than 99 per cent. of carbon). In the north are large deposits of limestone, now being worked for the manufacture of cement. Kaolin, heavy mineral sands, and quartz are also present. Geologically a detached fragment of the ancient plateau of peninsular India, Ceylon is unlikely to yield oil or coal.

Manufacturing industries on a considerable scale are mainly restricted to the preparation of agricultural products.

The currency unit is the rupee (1s. 6d.) of 100 cents. In 1956 imports were valued at Rs. 1,629m. (£122m.) and exports at Rs. 1,652m. (£124m.). Food accounted for 42 per cent. of the imports, rice being easily the biggest item (16 per cent.). Manufactures, including machinery and transport equipment, provided another 40 per cent. As already indicated, the major exports were tea (63 per cent.), rubber (18 per cent.) and coconut products (15 per cent.), chiefly desiccated coconut and coconut oil. The United Kingdom was much the largest contributor (21 per cent.) of the imports and the biggest buyer (30 per cent.) of the exports. Other main suppliers of imports were India (13 per cent.), Burma (9 per cent.), China (8 per

in 1786 and was gradually extended over the mainland States, chiefly by treaty with the different Malay rulers, the last being with the Sultan of Trengganu in 1919. After the liberation of Malaya from Japanese occupation in the Second World War, the States were federated in 1948 under a British High Commissioner, with a nominated Executive Council, each ruler being left to govern his own State according to an agreed constitution, subject to the authority of the central government. Political aspirations increased, and in 1957 the Federation was given full independence, the 'Settlements' of Penang and Malacca being incorporated in it as additional States. The British High Commissioner was withdrawn, and one of the Malay rulers was elected to be Head of the State for five years. Provision was made for a Senate, partly elected by each State and partly nominated by the Head of the State, as well as for an elected House of Representatives. Since the war, the infiltration of Communist bands, practising terrorist activities from jungle haunts, had made conditions very unsettled, despite costly counter-measures; and when independence was granted, Britain promised to give £20m. during 1957-8, to help carry on the campaign.

The area of the Federation, just on 51,000 square miles, is practically the same as that of England, but it supports only about one-seventh as many people (6½m. in 1957). A complicating factor is the mixed character of the population. The Malays, whose country it is, are actually in a slight minority (3m.); there are 2½m. Chinese, who with the Europeans supply most of the business 'drive'; ½m. Indians and Pakistanis, and 95,000 others, including Europeans. Nearly half the Malay population is contained in the northern States of Kedah, Kelantan, and Trengganu; in the other States and in Penang the Chinese outnumber the Malays. Inter-racial jealousies add to the natural difficulties in the way of development, despite widespread recognition in responsible quarters of the need for a policy of racial co-operation.

The northern and central parts of the Federation, where the peninsula is at its widest, consist for the most part of jungle-clad mountainous country rising in outstanding peaks to over 7,000 feet, broken by the valleys of swift-flowing rivers of which the two longest, the Perak and the Pahang, on opposite sides of the peninsula, have courses of 200 miles or more. Further south, where the peninsula tapers towards Singapore, the mountains peter out and the general level is below 600 feet; but even here are patches of the central mountain chain which traverses the Federation from north to south. By far the greater part of the country is covered with dense tropical jungle or swamps. The official estimate of the forested area is 38,000 square miles—75 per cent. of the whole; and another 3,000 square miles (6 per cent.) is classed as unused but potentially productive. Built-on or waste areas account for 1,300 square miles

(2½ per cent.), leaving 16½ per cent. (over 8,000 square miles; more than 5m. acres) of arable land.

**Rubber.** Commercially the Federation is largely dependent on rubber and tin, which provide roughly four-fifths of the exports by value—in 1956, rubber 61 per cent., tin 21 per cent. Of the gainfully occupied population of nearly 2m., a third are engaged entirely or mainly in the rubber industry, half of them on the actual plantations, which occupy some 70 per cent.—3½m. acres—of the cultivable area. Estates cover 2m. acres and the other 1½m. acres under rubber is made up of smallholdings, held chiefly by Malays. In spite of difficulties of rehabilitation after the Japanese occupation, Malayan rubber production increased steadily, and with the market price rising steeply, after a temporary period of stagnation, the Federation became the largest dollar-earner among the British dependencies. Before the war production was limited under international regulation; in 1934–38 it averaged rather more than 400,000 tons. After liberation it expanded to nearly 700,000 tons, and until 1950 Malaya was the world's largest producer, but in that year Indonesia took the lead; in 1956 Malaya produced 626,000 tons against Indonesia's 685,000 tons.

The yield of Malayan rubber has been much improved in recent years by the introduction of high-yielding budded stock on the estates. While the market price remained high, many smallholders were reluctant to undertake much-needed replanting, but they too have recently begun to introduce improved methods and higher yielding stock. In the early days a yield of about 400 lb. an acre was considered satisfactory; now yields up to 2,000 lb. an acre are obtained. All possible improvements in this and other ways are especially desirable, not only to meet the drop in price which followed the post-war boom, but to compete with the synthetic product, which has become a serious rival, especially in the United States. (See under *Commodities: Rubber*; p. 218.)

**Rice and other crops.** Apart from rubber, the main agricultural crop is rice, of which Malaya produces about half of its own requirements. In the immediate pre-war years, the area under paddy cultivation averaged nearly three-quarters of a million acres, with an average yield of half a million tons. After the war, when rice was in very short supply in south-east Asia, the area under cultivation was increased considerably, and in 1949, a particularly favourable season, the paddy crop reached 700,000 tons. In 1955–56 the yield from 876,000 acres was 667,000 tons, equivalent to 420,000 tons of milled rice. Imports of rice in 1956 were 367,000 tons. The yield of rice from paddy varies in different countries, the accepted rates of calculation ranging from 60 to 73 per cent. In Malaya the recognised rate of conversion is now 63 per cent.

The area under oil palms has also increased steadily in recent

years—from a pre-war 72,000 acres to upwards of 111,000 acres in 1955, when production amounted to over 56,000 tons of palm oil and 15,000 tons of kernels. Under proper cultivation, the oil palm gives very high yields in Malaya. Unlike rubber, it has not attracted smallholders, cultivation being almost entirely confined to estates. On the other hand, coconuts are very largely grown by smallholders, only one-fifth of the estimated total acreage of 530,000 being estate planted. In all, the production of coconut oil was 108,000 tons and of copra-cake 68,000 tons. Under the stimulus of high prices, production of both copra and coconut oil has risen rapidly.

Tea is grown, mainly as an estate crop, in both highlands and lowlands. Much of it is sold locally, but exports have increased substantially. In 1956, out of a production of 5m. lb., the export was 3.6m. lb. A flourishing pre-war industry, the growing and canning of pineapples, was practically killed by the Japanese occupation, but has since been revived. Pineapples are grown throughout the Federation, but cultivation for canning is mainly in Johore, and to a minor extent in Selangor and Perak. The total acreage in 1956 was 45,000, the area devoted to production for canneries being 38,000, almost equally divided between estates and smallholdings. Deliveries of fresh fruit to the canneries amounted to 274m. lb. (122,000 tons), and 22,275 tons of canned products were exported. Other products include coffee, tobacco, bananas, areca nut, tapioca, and mixed fruits.

Development of the extensive forest resources of Malaya was delayed by the war and has since been hindered by terrorist activities; but the production of timber is increasing, and exports have bounded up in recent years. Of the total forested area (37,500 square miles), one-third (12,500 square miles) has been classed as 'reserved forest.' In 1956 over  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. tons of sawn timber (reckoning 50 cub. ft. to the ton) was produced by 387 saw-mills, and the gross production of timber, &c., was an all-time record of 77.5m. cub. ft. (round measure).

The Malayan fishing industry is also expanding, with the introduction of modern power-driven craft and more up-to-date methods of fishing and marketing. The Federation has a thousand miles of coast, employs 50,000 fishermen, and landings in 1955 were over 112,000 tons. The yield is entirely absorbed locally.

Malaya offers little scope to a livestock industry. The whole Federation can muster only about a thousand horses (pre-war as well as post-war number) and sheep are down to about 27,000 (pre-war 35,000). Cattle and pigs and goats are much more numerous; the production of meat is equal to about 100 per cent. of local requirements of fresh pork, 90 per cent. of fresh beef, and 60 per cent. of fresh mutton. The rearing of buffaloes for work in the rice-fields is of major importance, and though their numbers declined during the war, they have since more than recovered lost ground;

in 1955 they had all but reached a quarter of a million. Oxen, already numbering about that figure, are reared for both agricultural and draught purposes, and supply the main demand for fresh beef. Goat mutton is generally preferred locally to imported sheep mutton, and the number of goats, reduced during the war by fully one-half from the pre-war total of 300,000, is well on the way to reaching that total again. The pig industry has also expanded and is expected to continue to do so, as provision for rearing is being made in most of the resettlement areas. Their numbers are difficult to compute, but were estimated in 1955 at 400,000.

**Minerals.** Some of the world's richest deposits of tin ore are found among Malaya's mountain ranges, and normally the Federation is the leading country of production, surpassing the output of both Indonesia and Bolivia, the other chief sources of supply. During the Japanese occupation, production fell to a very low ebb, but afterwards the industry revived rapidly, and in spite of the difficulties of rehabilitation (particularly renewal of the giant dredgers forming part of the equipment of the big companies), output was practically back to pre-war normal by 1949. In that year production, in terms of metal content of the ore, was some 55,000 tons, and by 1956 it had increased to 62,000 tons—over a third of the world total. About 60 per cent. of this output comes from European-owned mines and 37 per cent. from Chinese mines. The industry employs nearly 90 per cent. of the total mining labour force in Malaya. The ore is smelted in Butterworth (opposite to Penang), and in Singapore, and the tin exported in the form of ingots, blocks, bars, and slabs. In the immediate post-war years demand exceeded supply and prices soared. Normally the supplies of tin available on the world's markets exceed the demand, and conditions reverted to this state of affairs in 1951, with recession of prices and other difficulties for the tin-mining industry, so newly re-established at such heavy cost. By March 1952, twenty-three Chinese mines had ceased to operate. (See also *Commodities: Tin*; p. 725.) At the end of 1957, owing to renewed difficulties, the International Tin Council imposed restrictions on the export of tin from the leading countries of supply.

Other mineral products of Malaya have been slow in recovering from the low ebb to which they fell during the war. Previously, several iron mines were operated by Japanese and the ore shipped to Japan; by 1940 their output had reached nearly 2m. tons. After the liberation under 70,000 tons were exported in 1948, but there was a gradual revival to 3m. tons in 1957. The most prosperous of the former Japanese mines is in Trengganu. In the State of Selangor are the only coal-mines in Malaya. Production in 1940 was nearly 800,000 tons, but it has since fallen to 153,000 tons (1957). Much the same is true of gold-mining in Pahang: in 1956, output was less



than half the pre-war production of 40,000 troy ounces. In the case of bauxite, which was mined by Japanese in Johore and Malacca before the war, production ceased entirely, till resumed in Johore in 1952 from deposits of over 10m. tons of high-grade marginal ore. Output increased to nearly  $\frac{1}{3}$ m. tons in 1957.

Despite its commercial importance, only about 2 per cent.—40,000—of the working population are employed in mining. An overwhelming proportion—60 per cent., nearly 1·2m. persons—are engaged in agricultural industries, including, as already indicated, nearly 300,000 on rubber plantations. Fishing occupies 60,000, transport and communications nearly 70,000, and commerce and finance over 150,000. Manufacturing industry, though not in the forefront of Malaya's economy, is scattered throughout the Federation in food factories, wood and metal works, &c., and since the Second World War there have been signs of growing interest in the possibilities of industrial development, as indicated by the formation of new companies with substantial capital, running in some cases to over £1m., e.g. for the manufacture of soap and other products from palm oil.

A through railway system connects the Federation with Singapore to the south, and with Thailand to the north. The main line traverses the western coastal belt and sends out short branch lines to the western ports. The so-called East Coast Line runs through the centre of the peninsula to the east coast at Tumpat, on the Siamese border of Kelantan. Much of it was dismantled by the Japanese, and owing to terrorist activities a gap of 100 miles still awaited reconstruction in 1952, but this was made good in 1953. The total route mileage open to traffic is over 1,000 miles. There are 2,172 miles of Federal roads, and the total road mileage looked after by the Public Works Department is 6,400. For two-thirds of that distance the surface is metalled and grouted or sealed with bitumen. Only 700 miles of roads have a plain earth surface. Registered vehicles include 2,200 omnibuses, 3,300 taxis, 60,000 private cars, and 18,000 lorries.

The unit of currency is the Malayan dollar (M\$) of 100 cents, with a sterling value of 2s. 4d. There are special complications in the trade of Malaya. The Federation and Singapore form a trade unit; imports into both countries from outside countries are recorded, also exports from both countries to outside countries, but not goods passing between the two countries. In *Malayan Statistics*, a monthly publication prepared by the Chief Statistician at Singapore, giving voluminous returns of the trade of Singapore, of the Federation of Malaya, and of the two combined, it is emphasised that the statistics relate to both Singapore and the Federation, 'and consequently, trade between these territories is excluded.' Also in the annual report on the Federation it is stated: 'All Federation imports and

exports which pass through Singapore docks and wharves are included under Singapore and classified accordingly.' Subject to this limitation, the Federation's exports in 1956 were valued at M\$1,433m. (£167m.) and imports at M\$1,054.8m. (£123m.). In the Federation's annual report an allowance for exports despatched *via* Singapore and imports received *via* Singapore increases the foregoing figures by over 50 per cent., making the exports M\$2,264m. (£264m.) and the imports M\$1,751m. (£204m.). No such adjustment is made in *Malayan Statistics*. There are other complexities in the trade returns, and we confine our analysis to the trade of the two countries as a unit, which is the form in which it is recorded in the United Nations *Year-book of International Trade Statistics*. (See under Singapore, p. 594.)

George Town, Penang, is the chief port. Declared a free port in 1946, and a city in 1957, it is a busy *entrepôt* and processing centre, trading with near-by countries. In the centre of the west coast, Port Swettenham, at the mouth of the River Klang, is the port for the Federal capital, Kuala Lumpur, which lies on the same river about fifty miles inland. Since the war, this port has grown markedly in importance, and it has been necessary to extend the facilities for shipping. On the other hand Malacca, farther south, has declined in importance as a main port, though it still handles a good deal of coastal trade. There is no considerable port on the east coast.

TOWNS IN THE FEDERATION OF MALAYA  
WITH A POPULATION OF MORE THAN 40,000 (1957 CENSUS)

Kuala Lumpur (Selangor) .	315,000	Malacca (Malacca) . . .	70,000
George Town (Penang) .	235,000	Alor Star (Kedah) . . .	53,000
Ipoh (Perak) . . .	126,000	Seramban (Negri Sembilan)	52,000
Klang (Selangor) . .	76,000	Taiping (Perak) . . .	48,000
Johore Bahru (Johore) .	74,500	Butterworth . . .	42,500

## SINGAPORE

A geographical appendix to the independent Federation of Malaya, the island of Singapore is a British dependency, exercising internal self-government since August, 1958, and now ranking as a State, but with defence and foreign affairs reserved to the Crown. Lying off the southern end of the Malay Peninsula, it is separated from the mainland by a strait only three-quarters of a mile wide, and this is crossed by a causeway carrying both a road and a railway—the main railway north through the peninsula. The island (220 square miles)—half as large again as the Isle of Wight—supports a population of nearly 1½m., of whom nearly four-fifths are Chinese and only one-eighth Malays. If Singapore were amalgamated with the Malay Federation, Chinese would have a majority over Malays in the total population.

Nearly three-fourths of the island population is gathered within the city and port of Singapore, which lies on the south coast and covers, within the limits of the municipality, some 32 square miles—one-seventh of the whole island. The island is low-lying (under 600 feet at its highest point), with patches of the original jungle but mostly covered with a light growth of secondary forest, plantations of economic crops (rubber, coconuts, pineapples, tobacco, pepper), market gardens, and ever-expanding urban areas. Mangrove swamps fringe the west coast and extend up the inlets; on the eastern side are low cliffs. Industrial activities include tin-smelting, saw-milling, and pineapple canning; but Singapore's fame rests on the double importance, strategic and commercial, of its position as—to quote an old cliché—'the Clapham Junction of the Orient.' This importance has its focal point in Singapore city, or rather in the commodious harbour round which the city has grown: the busy centre into which pours and from which is distributed much of the trade, both import and export, not only of the Malay Federation but of other near-by countries, notably Indonesia.

As already noted, Singapore and the Federation of Malaya form a trade unit. In 1957, according to *Malayan Statistics* (see p. 592), total imports amounted to M\$4,380m. (£511m.) and total exports to M\$4,171m. (£487m.). Owing to the *entrepôt* character of much of the trade, there is a good deal of overlapping between imports and exports, but the difference between the imports and exports of rubber, for instance, shows the magnitude of Malaya's own production of that commodity.

Food accounted for 21 per cent. of the imports, easily the biggest item being rice (4·5 per cent.). Crude rubber (from Indonesia, &c.) amounted to 13 per cent., petroleum and products 20 per cent., and manufactures 30 per cent. (chiefly textiles, machinery, transport equipment, and base metals).

Exports were dominated by crude rubber, which provided 47 per cent. of the total. Tin amounted to 10·8 per cent., petroleum and products 11 per cent., copra and coconut oil 3·2 per cent., palm oil and kernels 1·2 per cent., and foodstuffs 8·3 per cent.

Nearly half the imports were supplied by Indonesia (28 per cent.) and the United Kingdom (18 per cent.), and over a third by Thailand (7·5), Japan (6·1), Sarawak (4·3), Australia (4·2), U.S.A. (3·8), China (3·6), Hong Kong (2·9), Germany (2·6) and India (2·3); all these countries together providing 83 per cent of the imports.

Over a quarter of the exports were taken by the United Kingdom (14·6 per cent.) and the United States (13·4 per cent.), and just on another quarter by Japan (10·1), Indonesia (6·2), Italy (4·0) and France (4·0). Next in the scale came Germany (3·6), Australia (3·3), India (3·3), Thailand (2·7) and the Netherlands (2·5). Over two-thirds of the total exports were accounted for by these various countries.

**Christmas Island**, 220 miles south of Java, has 2,600 inhabitants in its 60 square miles, which are rich in phosphate of lime worked by an antipodean commission. It was administered by Singapore till 1958, when the British Government, in view of Singapore's approaching self-government, arranged for its transfer to Australia and New Zealand. Singapore received an *ex gratia* payment of M\$20m. for loss of revenue.

**Cocos and Keeling Islands.** A group of small coral islands (total area 5 square miles; population about 650) in the middle of the Indian Ocean. Long incorporated in the colony of Singapore, the group was transferred to the Commonwealth of Australia in 1955 by British and Australian Acts of Parliament, for use as a half-way house on the air route between Australia and South Africa. Groves of coconut palm yield nuts, oil, and copra for export.

## BRITISH BORNEO

Though Indonesia has the major part of the great island of Borneo—the third largest island in the world, excluding the continents—the British Commonwealth includes the north and north-west, forming between a fourth and a third of the whole. This British sphere comprises (1) the Colony of North Borneo; (2) the Colony of Sarawak; and (3) the protected Sultanate of Brunei. In 1958 their federation was advocated by both Governors.

**NORTH BORNEO.** Administered by the British North Borneo Chartered Company from 1882 to 1946, when it was taken over as a colony, North Borneo has an area of close on 30,000 square miles (roughly equal to that of Scotland) and a population estimated in 1956 at 390,000 (four-fifths the population of Edinburgh). The annual rainfall is from 60 to 100 inches. A mountainous interior, with a famous highest peak, Mount Kinabalu, rising to 13,455 feet, is bordered on the west by a long and fairly narrow coastal plain, containing the main rice and rubber producing areas, and on the east by much more extensive plains, comprising both paddy-growing lands and wide stretches of pastoral country. Dense forests covering most of the hills and valleys are a valuable source of timber supply, and other primary products are chiefly rubber, copra, manila hemp (abaca), tobacco, rice, and sago. Normally, with the exception of rice, these all contribute to the export trade.

Aided by the Colonial Development Corporation, the administration is pursuing a policy of economic research and experimental progress, especially in connection with rubber and abaca planting and cotton raising. Rubber is the chief crop and covers about 128,000 acres, mostly in small holdings of under 50 acres. It

provided a third of the exports by value in 1956. The unit of currency is the Malayan dollar (2s. 4d.), and the total exports in 1956 were valued at M\$120.9m. (£14.1m.). The other principal exports are timber and copra, much of the copra coming across the Indonesian border.

A metre-gauge railway 116 miles long serves the west coast region, and the colony has over a thousand miles of roads, mostly bridle paths but a quarter of them metalled. The coast line, deeply indented, also extends to nearly a thousand miles—mostly alluvial flats, creeks, and swamps—and the chief towns in the colony are the ports; in 1955 they handled nearly 850,000 tons of cargo. The main commercial centres are Jesselton, the present capital (11,700), half-way along the west coast; Victoria (2,500), off the south-west coast, on Labuan island (formerly one of the Straits Settlements, incorporated in North Borneo when the colony was constituted in 1946); and Sandakan, the former capital (14,500), on the east coast.

**SARAWAK.** For over a hundred years after a dashing young Englishman, James Brooke, was invited by the people in 1841 to become their ruler, Sarawak was famed as the Land of the White Rajahs. At the end of the Second World War the third Rajah Brooke ceded the country to the British Crown, and it was proclaimed a colony in 1946, exchanging the paternal rule which the first two Rajahs and their enthusiastic officers had developed so successfully and proudly, for the modernist outlook of the Colonial Office. A new constitution in 1956 provided for a council with an elected majority.

Stretching south-west from North Borneo, Sarawak is much the bigger country (47,000 square miles; nearly as large as England), and has a larger population, though very small for its size (626,000). A wide rampart of mountains, with peaks rising to 6–8,000 feet, borders its inland frontier—part of the backbone of Borneo as a whole. The mountains drop to an extensive belt of lowlands, reaching to the sea and mostly covered, like the mountains themselves, with dense jungle and forest, which are estimated to occupy something like 80 per cent. of the surface. With an annual rainfall of 100–200 inches, the country is traversed by wide rivers, some of which are navigable for considerable distances and provide locations for some of the chief towns, well away from the coast. Kuching, the capital, a town of 45,000 inhabitants in the south-west, lies about 25 miles up the Sarawak river, and Sibü (population 10,000), more centrally situated and well known as a river port, is about 60 miles up the Rejang.

Agriculture is the chief industry, and is practised mainly on a subsistence basis, but sago, rice, and pepper are also commercial crops, and in this last category rubber is supreme. An oilfield in the north, near Miri, producing 66,000 tons in 1957, is overshadowed by the

neighbouring field in Brunei. The trade returns reflect the dual influence. In 1956, petroleum and products amounted to 69 per cent. of the imports into Sarawak, which were valued at M\$463m. (£54m.), and to 74 per cent. of the exports (including re-exports), valued at M\$466m. (£54.5m.). Rubber and gums made up 15 per cent. of the exports, and pepper and pimento 5 per cent. Bauxite deposits, estimated at 2½m. tons, have been located in Western Sarawak, and plans made to ship 175,000 tons a year, mainly to Japan, starting in 1958.

**BRUNEI.** Comprising a couple of enclaves at the north end of Sarawak, the Brunei Protectorate has an area, all told, of under 2,250 square miles (rather larger than Lancashire) and a population of about 70,000; but it is famous for its oilfield, where an annual production of over 5½m. tons (1956) has been developed. It is linked by pipeline to a refinery on the Sarawak oilfield, from which much of the oil is shipped. In Brunei production centres around Saria, a modern town with over 10,000 inhabitants. The sultanate is mainly dependent on the output of oil both for its revenue and for its trade. The only other considerable export is plantation rubber.

Brunei town, the capital, mostly built on piles in a broad sweep of the Brunei river, has about 11,000 inhabitants.

The British Government is responsible for defence and external affairs, while local authority is vested in the Sultan-in-Council. Formerly the Governor of Sarawak was High Commissioner for Brunei, but in 1959 it was agreed to administer Brunei separately from Sarawak and to replace the British Resident in Brunei by a resident High Commissioner. Executive authority is vested in a Malay Chief Minister, appointed by the Sultan and responsible to him.

## INDONESIA

The islands of the Malay Archipelago which, before the Second World War, comprised the Netherlands East Indies now constitute the Republic of Indonesia. As a sovereign independent State, the republic was at first associated with the Netherlands under a statute of union which recognised the Netherlands Crown as the common head; but in 1954 Indonesia contracted out of this association. The republic includes all the island territories formerly belonging to the Netherlands with the exception of Western New Guinea, which the Netherlands refuses to give up. Apart from this territory, the republic has an area of 575,000 square miles with a population estimated in 1957 at 83½m.

Among the multiplicity of islands are four which contribute nearly half a million square miles, or five-sixths of the total area. These, the Great Sunda Islands, are: Borneo (Indonesia's share,

208,000 square miles; almost as large as France), Sumatra (164,000 square miles), Celebes (73,000 square miles), and Java (51,000 square miles; practically the same size as England). The remainder of the republic is made up of islands off the east coast of Sumatra (the Rioux-Lingga archipelago, Bangka, and Billiton), the Lesser Sunda Islands (stretching east of Java towards Australia, including Bali, Lombok, Soembawa, Soemba, Flores, and Timor—half of this last being Portuguese); and the Moluccas (the original Spice Islands, between Celebes and New Guinea).

By far the most important, economically and politically, is the smallest of the four main islands—Java. Though no larger than England, it has an even denser population, numbering some 55m., or about two-thirds of the population of all the islands. It contains the capital and seat of government—long famous under the Dutch as Batavia, now renamed Djakarta—and it is easily the biggest factor in production and trade. Long and narrow, traversed by a volcanic chain with peaks up to 12,000 feet, some of which are still active, it has rich volcanic and alluvial soils, combined with facilities for irrigation, which, together with the equatorial climate, make it unsurpassed as a forcing-house for the most valuable tropical products. Like other tropical countries, it is peculiarly subject to fluctuations and changes if disease should sweep through the crops or if standards of efficiency be allowed to deteriorate. At one time coffee was the staple product; it was displaced by sugar, which in turn has declined, and rubber has come to the fore. Tea, sisal, tapioca, cinchona, and tobacco are other favoured crops; and large areas are sown to rice.

Though not to be compared with Java in their development, many of the other islands have valuable resources. Sumatra, with a backbone of volcanic mountains running down its western side, has on the east a great plain 600 miles long and from 60 to 110 miles wide. This plain is low-lying, marshy near the coast, and liable to flooding in the rainy season from the rivers that wander through it; but in the north-east, where the island narrows and the highlands come near to the coast, which is traversed by a railway, the conditions are more favourable to plantation crops, and various estates have been established, largely under rubber, in the neighbourhood of Medan. Sumatra has considerable mineral resources. Coal is worked among the mountains at the back of Padang, on the west coast, which are served by a railway. Oil-fields have been opened up in the south, around Palembang, and the island is the chief though not the only source of oil supply in the republic, which produced 15½m. tons in 1957. Tin is also mined, both in Sumatra and in the outlying islands of Bangka, Billiton, and the Riouw archipelago.

Borneo has oil-fields and refineries around Bandjermasin and Balikpapan, in the south-east of the island, but in the main it is a

richly wooded, little developed country, with a mountain backbone and lateral ranges separated by wide expanses of lowlands. Celebes is still less developed, consisting almost wholly of jungle-clad volcanic mountain ridges, sprawling over the ocean like a giant scorpion, with long arms straggling out from a central mass; yet even here copra and spices are grown for export, notably around Manado, at the eastern end of the northernmost arm; and Macassar, in the south-west corner of the island, has made a double contribution to the English language; for not only has Macassar oil become a household word as a hair-dressing but the need of some protection for upholstered backs of chairs and sofas after its use led to the introduction of antimacassars.

Some of the smaller islands are of distinctive commercial interest. The Spice Islands have lost much of their medieval glamour and renown, but they still provide, normally, a considerable part of the world's supplies of the products which gave them their name—pepper, cloves, nutmegs, &c. Another example of this specialised commercial interest is found in one of the Lesser Sunda Islands, Soemba, otherwise known as Sandalwood Island.

Livestock are fairly numerous, if not only the size of the republic but its character be considered. The available returns, relating to the islands as a whole, showed heavy losses of cattle and buffaloes in the decade of 1939–49; but other livestock increased, and since the war there has been a general recovery. At the end of 1955 there were 5m. cattle, nearly 3m. buffaloes and the same number of sheep, 7m. goats, and 1½m. pigs.

Such, then, briefly, are some of the natural factors governing the commercial development of Indonesia. In recent years they have been complicated by other factors which cannot be ignored in any survey of conditions and prospects. Before the Second World War, when the country was under Dutch control, a large number of estate companies carried on a highly successful plantation industry. There was also a large production, especially of food crops, from native holdings; but the commercial crops from the estates—rubber, tea, sugar, copra, tobacco, &c.—were the backbone of the export trade.

During the war the islands were occupied by the Japanese, and the owners of estates were deprived of their properties. In the Spice Islands the pepper vines, which provided a large part of the world supply of black and white pepper, were nearly all destroyed, resulting in a world shortage of which the effects were felt on the opposite side of the globe. An autonomous Indonesian administration was set up, and, after the Japanese surrender, proclaimed its independence. This was contested by the Netherlands, and there was a further period of unsettlement, attended by fighting, which delayed the rehabilitation of the estates. It was the end of 1949 before the



republic was accorded rights of sovereignty and entered into temporary union with the Netherlands. Indonesia had been organised on the federal system, but in 1950 it was made a unitary State, a change which was not accomplished without further disturbance. In the same year it was admitted to membership of the United Nations.

When the estate companies re-entered into possession of their properties, not only had the plantations suffered from neglect and damage, but the conditions of law and order were at a very low ebb. Company reports were full of complaints, not only of excessive taxation and the complicated system of foreign exchange which has been introduced, but of inability to recover some of their properties in disturbed areas, lack of protection against robber bands, prohibitive demands from estate labourers, and wholesale pilfering of crops when land had at last been brought under cultivation again. This was the situation at its gloomiest. It has since improved, but still leaves much to be desired, especially in districts where unrest continues. Troubles are attributed, at least in part, rather to the inability than to the unwillingness of the central government to assist the companies, and the future of the plantation industry would seem to depend on the restoration of law and order.

People will not starve unnecessarily, and in a country so fertile and so densely populated as Java, production from native holdings would be large even if there were no plantation crops. Post-war trade returns show a big increase in nominal value. The unit of currency, the rupiah, is the old Dutch florin, or guilder, formerly worth nearly 2s. In 1952 the exchange rate was fixed at Rp. 31.92 to the £, giving the rupiah a sterling value of about  $7\frac{1}{2}d$ . Multiple exchange rates are in operation, and the regulations governing the transfer of profits by plantation companies to the countries which have supplied the capital are complicated and restrictive. In 1956 Indonesia valued its imports at Rp. 9,725m. and exports at Rp. 10,054m.—nominally 15 to 20 times their rupiah value in 1938. But post-war values are a deceptive guide to the growth of trade. Of 18 main exports in 1938, listed in the United Nations trade year-book, many were down in quantity in 1956. Sugar dropped from 1,196,000 tons to 318,000, copra from 565,000 tons to 262,000, palm oil from 220,000 tons to 125,000, tea from 82,000 tons to 39,000, tobacco from 50,000 tons to 11,000. On the other hand the exports of rubber (mostly grown on smallholdings) doubled—from 331,000 tons to 678,000, and the exports of petroleum and products nearly doubled—from 5.9m. tons to 10.5m., while tin ore and slag increased from 26,000 tons to 44,000.

In both years Malaya, Netherlands and the United States took over half the exports by value, and in 1956 Japan, U.S.A., and the Netherlands supplied nearly half the imports by value.

In 1956–57 a revolutionary movement extended widely among

the islands, especially in Sumatra and the Celebes, and though the central government succeeded in re-establishing its authority in 1958, outbreaks of sporadic unrest are still reported.

Djakarta (Batavia), the capital, on the north coast of Java, has a population of approximately three millions. Its modern port, Tandjong Priok, is about ten miles away. Other important towns in Java include the ports of Surabaya and Samarang on the north coast, and the inland cities of Bandoeng and Surakarta. In Sumatra the chief towns are the river port of Palembang, in the south-east; Medan, in the north-east; and Padang on the west coast. Borneo's largest urban centres are the ports of Bandjermasin and Balikpapan in the south-east, and Pontianak in the west. In Celebes the principal town is Macassar. The last census was in 1930, and estimates of town populations are of doubtful value; but the Javanese towns mentioned above, and also Palembang and Macassar, are all credited with populations of over 100,000.

**PORTUGUESE TIMOR.** Timor, an island at the south-eastern extremity of the Malay archipelago, falls within the geographical range of Indonesia; but neither the Portuguese, who started its European occupation, nor the Dutch, who came after them, succeeded in ousting the other, and the island was divided between them till the Dutch handed over their part of it to Indonesia in 1949, leaving the Portuguese still in possession of the rest.

Timor is a long narrow island with a longitudinal axis of some 300 miles, lying north-east to south-west, and an area about half as large again as Wales. Portugal has the north-east part of the island, and, by a curious arrangement, an enclave on the north-west coast of the Indonesian section; altogether, some 7,300 square miles (rather less than Wales) supporting a population of under half a million. Dilly, the capital and chief port, on the north-west coast, has some 7,000 inhabitants.

The physical characteristics of Portuguese Timor are those of the whole island, which is traversed by a volcanic range—quiescent now except for a few mud geysers—with peaks up to nearly 10,000 feet. An interesting feature is a series of raised coral beaches at an elevation of 4–5,000 feet. Monsoon forest covers most of the country, though there are stretches of savanna suitable for livestock. The arable land is not highly cultivated. Exports, including sandal wood, coffee, copra, and wax were less than £½m. in 1955; imports were nearly double. For currency see under **Macao**, p. 616.

## THE PHILIPPINES

The Philippine Islands, forming the northern extension of the Malay archipelago, were ruled by Spain for over 300 years after

their conquest in the sixteenth century; ceded to the United States for \$20m. in 1898, after the Spanish-American War of that year; granted provisional independence in 1935; occupied by Japan during the Second World War; and accorded by the United States full independence as a republic in 1946, with reciprocal trade privileges; followed in 1947 by the lease to the United States of numerous defence bases in the Philippines. Under the original constitution the exploitation of natural resources was limited to Filipinos and to companies controlled by them, but the right to engage in such activities was extended after the war to American interests.

The islands range over nearly 1,200 miles of ocean, between Formosa in the north and Borneo and Celebes in the south, and extend some 750 miles from east to west. Upwards of 7,000 islands have been charted within these limits, but under 500 exceed a square mile in extent, and eleven of these account for over nine-tenths of the total area of 115,000 square miles, while two of the eleven comprise two-thirds of the total. The largest, Luzon, at the northern end of the group, has an area of 40,420 square miles (equal to that of England without the four northern counties—Northumberland, Cumberland, Durham, and Yorkshire), and the second largest, Mindanao, at the southern end of the group, an area of 36,540 square miles (equal to the same slice of England with the further deduction of Lancashire and the greater part of Lincolnshire). The other nine main islands—namely, in descending order of size, Samar, Negros, Palawan, Panay, Mindoro, Leyte, Cebu, Bohol, and Masbate—are all very much smaller, ranging from 5,050 square miles (five-sixths of Yorkshire) in the case of Samar, to 1,260 square miles (nearly the size of Cornwall) in the case of Masbate. The total population of the whole group is about 22m., nearly half of them in Luzon, which includes Manila, the capital and seat of government, with a population of over a million. Luzon is not only the largest but much the most important island in the group, whereas Mindanao, the second largest, is the wildest and least developed, and in general is thinly populated, though it has two large ports, Davao and Zamboango.

The islands are mountainous, rising in Mindanao to a greatest height of 9,500 feet, and are subject to volcanic eruptions. Except in favoured areas the soil is not highly productive, but it is officially estimated for the United Nations that only about 5,000 square miles (between 4 and 5 per cent. of the whole) is built-on or waste. A much larger area (22,000 square miles) is described as unused but potentially productive. Over half the total (61,300 square miles) is under forests, and about a fifth (23,000 square miles) is classed as arable. Only the relatively small area of 4,500 square miles counts as permanent pastures, and the pastoral industry is inconsiderable, the number of sheep being especially small (17,000 in 1955–56).

Livestock generally declined during the Japanese occupation, but in 1956 included 3.6m. water buffaloes, 6m. pigs, nearly 1m. cattle,  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. goats, and  $\frac{1}{4}$ m. horses.

There is a considerable trade in lumber and logs from the predominant forest lands, both for home use and for export, the value of the exports in 1957 being given as £16m. A wide range of forest products—gums and resins, vegetable oils, dye woods and barks, &c.—is also a useful source of minor industries. But agriculture is the mainstay of the archipelago's economy. Crops fall into two main classes: subsistence and commercial. The chief food crops are rice (grown in 1955 on over 6 $\frac{1}{2}$ m. acres and yielding over 3 $\frac{1}{4}$ m. tons of paddy), maize (grown on over 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ m. acres and yielding 880,000 tons), sweet potatoes (800,000 tons), cassava (300,000 tons), and bananas, with a standing area of 400,000 acres but a declining production (under  $\frac{1}{4}$ m. tons in 1955). Despite these and other subsistence crops, the islands are not self-supporting in food, no small part of the home production consisting of plantation crops grown for export. Three of the commercial products are of outstanding importance—coconut products, sugar, and abaca (manila hemp). In 1938 they provided more than three-fourths of the total value of the exports other than gold, and in 1957 over two-thirds.

Before the war, sugar was the biggest contributor to these commercial crops, with 8m. tons of cane yielding a million tons of raw sugar, and an export of 800,000 tons of centrifugal plus 29,000 tons of molasses, providing 40 per cent. of the total value of the exports other than gold. There was a big drop in production of cane during the war, but by 1956 exports had more than recovered the lost ground, reaching 900,000 tons of sugar and 200,000 tons of molasses.

Abaca is another crop which suffered from the war and its aftermath. Known commercially as manila hemp, it is one of the 'hard' or 'leaf' fibres obtained from the tissue of the leaves and leaf-bases, as contrasted with the 'soft' or 'bast' fibres derived from the bast tissues of the stem. The latter are the true hemp, and are grown in Europe and Asia, especially the U.S.S.R. 'Soft' fibres also include Sunn or Indian hemp, produced only in India. The 'hard' fibres classed in trade circles as hemp include not only manila hemp (abaca) but sisal (known in Mexico as henequen) and the New Zealand phormium. Before the war, the Philippines produced and exported a larger quantity of fibres recognised by the trade as 'hemp' than any other country. The crop averaged about 170,000 tons, nearly all of which was exported. During the Japanese occupation it fell to a very low ebb, and the export has never regained the pre-war standard. Apart from the competition of man-made fibres it, has been outstripped by sisal, which even before the war had a bigger world production than manila hemp,

and since has shot ahead till in 1955 it provided two-thirds of the world supply of hard hems, with Tanganyika Territory in the position which the Philippines used to occupy as the world's leading exporter, providing 30 per cent. of the total world exports. The Philippines are still an important factor in the hard fibre trade; they are the main source of supply of manila hemp, and their share of the world exports of hard hems in 1955 was just on 20 per cent.

It is, however, in respect of copra and other products of the coconut palm that the Philippines play their biggest part in world trade. They not only competed before the war with Indonesia (then the Netherlands East Indies) for the lead over all other countries exporting such products, but since the war their lead has been unchallenged. Before the war, Indonesia exported much more copra than the Philippines but much less coconut oil. The combined products in terms of oil (taking the average oil content of copra as 63 per cent.) gave Indonesia the bigger total in 1937, but the Philippines gained the lead in 1938 with exports equivalent to 376,000 tons of oil against Indonesia's 370,000 tons. The third and fourth countries in the list, Malaya and Ceylon, came far below, with less than half the foregoing quantities. Some of the groves of coconut palms in the Philippines at the outbreak of war were not in full bearing, and with their growing maturity after the war the production of copra, so far from having to be built up again by slow degrees, almost at once took on a big increase. Total production in 1955 was over a third of the world production of 3m. tons, and exports, in terms of oil equivalent, were half of the world total, representing over 900,000 tons of copra. The coconut oil industry fell to a low ebb after the war, and the proportion of the copra crop now exported from the Philippines as oil is much less than before the war. It is to be noted that while the Philippines have gone ahead both as producers and as exporters of coconut products, their old rival, Indonesia, has lost ground (p. 600).

Mineral resources are numerous but not highly developed, and the war led to a big decline in output. Gold is found in most of the islands but is chiefly mined in north Luzon. In 1941, before the Japanese occupation of the islands, the production of gold was returned as 1·144m. fine troy ounces, and exports were valued at £17m. Since the war production has been under ½m. troy ounces—406,163 ounces in 1956, when the exports of gold were valued at £2½m. Copper mining is also pursued in north Luzon, with exports in 1956 of 88,000 tons of ore and concentrates, valued at £4·8m. At Zambales, in north Luzon, are chromite reserves said to be the largest in the world. Exports of chrome concentrates in 1956 reached 66,000 tons, valued at £600,000. Most of the islands have their specialised crops or mineral products. Luzon is of outstanding

importance. In addition to the minerals already mentioned in connection with the north of the island, the central plain north of Manila Bay is good agricultural country raising large crops of rice and sugar, while coconut groves abound in southern Luzon. Coconuts are also a feature of Leyte, sugar of Negros, abaca of Davao, rice of Panay, maize of Cebu. There are 18,500 miles of roads in the islands, about half of them listed as first-class; 50,000 motor-cars are registered, and as many lorries. Two of the islands are served by railways; Luzon has 585 miles of track, and Panay 72 miles.

Currency is tied to the United States dollar, the Philippine peso (PP.) being equivalent to fifty U.S. cents or half a dollar, with a sterling value of about 3s. 7d. The sterling values previously quoted have been calculated on that basis. Excluding gold, exports in 1956 were valued at PP.928m. (£166m.). Copra provided 29 per cent., other coconut products (chiefly oil and desiccated coconut) 8½ per cent., sugar and molasses 22½ per cent., and manila hemp and rope 8 per cent.—a total for these three major products of 68 per cent.

Imports were valued at PP.1,013½m. (£181m.). Foodstuffs accounted for 17½ per cent., the biggest items in this class being cereals and dairy products; mineral fuels, &c., absorbed another 10 per cent., and manufactures of all kinds no less than 60 per cent., chiefly machinery (20 per cent.) and textiles (12 per cent.).

The United States easily held the foremost place on both sides of the account, providing 60 per cent. of the imports and taking over half the exports. The only other outstanding country, whether as a customer (18 per cent.) or as a source of supply (10 per cent.), was Japan.

Extended inflation brought about a serious economic situation in 1958. In his report to the Legislature on the 'State of the Nation,' the President of the Republic listed the problems confronting the administration as 'food insufficiency, unemployment, rising prices, dwindling international reserves, decreasing revenue collections, and increasing budgetary requirements.'

Cities with populations of over 100,000 at the 1948 census were:

MANILA (capital: Luzon Island), 1,025,000

Cebu (Cebu Island) . . . . .	167,500	Basilan (Basilan Is.) . . . . .	110,000
Davao (Mindanao Is.) . . . . .	111,000	Zamboango (Mindanao) . . . . .	103,000
Iloilo (Panay Island) . . . . .	110,000	Bacolod (Negros Island) . . . . .	101,000

A new capital, Quezon City, is being developed immediately to the north-east of Manila. In 1948 it had a population of 108,000.

## HONG KONG

This small island (about a fifth the size of the Isle of Wight) off the south coast of China, near the mouth of the Pearl river leading up to Canton, was ceded to the British Crown in 1841. To it was added in 1860 the peninsula of Kowloon (between 3 and 4 square miles) on the mainland opposite, and in 1898 a 99-year lease was obtained of a further 360 square miles of the mainland and neighbouring islands. The New Territories, as the leased areas are called, are mostly wild and rugged, rising to heights of over 3,000 feet. Hong Kong's value lies in the original island and Kowloon, and more particularly in the strait between them, which forms a magnificent harbour. Hong Kong island itself, within its area of some 30 square miles, rises to over 1,800 feet, and boasts a cable tramway up Victoria Peak as well as an electric tramway service at lower levels. The capital city of Victoria extends for several miles along the north shore, facing the mainland, and has all the accessories of a great port. So has Kowloon, opposite, which has developed not only as a shipping centre but industrially. It is the terminus of a standard-gauge (4ft. 8½in.) railway, which, though running through British territory for only 22 miles, is continued through China to Canton and Hankow.

Hong Kong city and port, including Kowloon, is a hive of commercial and industrial activity—one of the great *entrepôts* of world-wide trade. Before the Second World War the population was estimated at about a million; the colony suffered in many ways from the Japanese conquest and occupation, but since its liberation it has become a city of refuge for Chinese from the adjoining territory and the urban population has risen to nearly 2½m. Trade recovered with remarkable rapidity, and industry, which before the war had been a minor factor, acquired new importance. An outstanding example of the new industrial development was the establishment of textile manufactures which, quickly became the colony's major industry. In 1957 they employed 19 spinning mills operating over 300,000 spindles, as well as over 600 weaving, knitting, and other mills. The impact of the exports, at relatively low prices, on the Lancashire cotton trade, seriously affected the home industry, and after prolonged negotiations agreement was reached to limit the imports into the United Kingdom.

Until the turn of the half-century, trade and industry continued to go ahead. Then new troubles arose. China is normally the dominant factor in Hong Kong's trade. The outbreak of the Korean war (p. 618) led to growing restrictions on Hong Kong's exports to China. The volume and the value of the trade alike suffered in turn, largely because of the ban on strategic exports, but partly because of other adverse trade conditions, including the revival of Japanese competition. Despite temporary setbacks, Hong Kong easily retained its position as the leading international trading centre in the Far East.

The unit of currency is the Hong Kong dollar (HK.\$), with a sterling value of 1s. 3d. (16 to the £). In 1956, imports were valued at HK.\$4,566m. (£285m.) and exports at HK.\$3,209m. (£200m.). The following table shows the principal features of the trade, amounting in the case of both imports and exports to between 70 and 80 per cent. of the total.

## HONG KONG: PRINCIPAL IMPORTS AND EXPORTS, 1956

## VALUES AND PERCENTAGES

Commodities.	Imports	Exports
	Million Hong Kong Dollars	
Food, drink, and tobacco . . . . .	1,114 (24%)	355 (11%)
Raw cotton . . . . .	255 (6%)	65 (2%)
Textiles . . . . .	812 (18%)	740 (23%)
Clothing and made-up textiles . . . . .	151 (3%)	493 (15%)
Chemicals and allied products . . . . .	280 (6%)	202 (6%)
Base metals and manufactures . . . . .	325 (7%)	256 (8%)
Machinery, and transport equipment . . . . .	285 (6%)	120 (4%)
Animal and vegetable fats and oils . . . . .	78 (2%)	35 (1%)
Pulp, paper and cardboard . . . . .	121 (3%)	73 (2%)
Petroleum products and coal . . . . .	208 (5%)	29 (0.9%)
Above commodities . . . . .	3,629 (80%)	2,368 (73%)

The gap in value between imports and exports has been growing and in 1957 amounted to over HK.\$2,000m., imports then being valued at HK.\$5,149m. against exports of HK.\$3,016m. Four countries supplied 60 per cent. of the imports—China (22 per cent.), Japan (15), the United Kingdom (13), and U.S.A. (10). Exports were more evenly distributed, eight countries dividing 64 per cent. of the total—Malaya (12 per cent.), the United Kingdom (11), Indonesia (10), Japan (8), U.S.A. (7), Thailand (6), Indo-China (6), China (4).



## CHINA

This vast country, with an estimated total area of over 3½m. square miles (larger than the United States, including Alaska), was a loosely knit empire until 1912, when the Manchu dynasty was overthrown and a republic proclaimed. After prolonged internal dissension a Nationalist Government was formed in 1928; becoming involved in war with Japan in 1937, it joined the Allies in the Second World War and shared in the final victory, but fell a victim to its own inefficiency and the rising forces of discontent, headed by the Communist Party, which gained control in 1949 and proclaimed the 'People's Republic of China,' with Peking as capital instead of Nanking. The Nationalist Government took refuge in the island of Formosa, where it survives (1959) by goodwill of the United States.

The Communist Government, supreme on the mainland, was recognised by several countries, including Great Britain but not the United States. It concluded a treaty of friendship and mutual aid with the Soviet Union, but in general pursued an anti-foreign policy, especially towards the Western Powers, including Great Britain, and gradually made impossible Western ownership and management of industrial and trading concerns, the newspaper Press, and missionary activities. Except as it finds entrance and exit through Hong Kong, sea-borne trade has suffered, while inland trade flourishes across the Chinese-Russian frontier. In the United Nations, applications for the recognition of the People's Republic as China's representative have been vetoed, and in 1959 the Nationalist Government was still recognised as officially representing the Chinese people.

This brief excursus into the political and international situation may suffice to indicate the abnormal conditions under which trade and commerce in China are developing. The present chapter, for the most part, is confined to the physical factors governing progress.

China is the only part of the mainland of Asia besides India with a population of high density. In 1954 the Peking Government announced that a census taken in the previous year gave mainland China a population of 582m. The 18 provinces of China proper (area about 1½m. square miles) alone contained 518m.; so that on an area less than Europe without Russia, China proper was supporting a much larger population (cf. p. 875). It is able to support so dense a population largely because of the seasonal rainfall distribution. Though the winter temperatures are cool even in the south, and in

the north and most parts of the interior rigorous,<sup>1</sup> the rains, occurring, as in monsoon regions generally, during the season of high temperatures, promote an enormous vegetable production. The population is especially dense in much of the eastern plain, which stretches from north of Peking to south of the Yangtse-kiang, and is mostly below 600 feet; north of the Yangtse it contains only two considerable tracts of uplands, rising to 3,000 feet, and though such uplands are much more common south of the Yangtse, and the coast opposite to Formosa is backed by a wide belt of mountainous country, both uplands and mountains are interspersed with much low-lying land. This is especially true in the far south of eastern China, where the province of Kwang-tung, extending behind and on either side of Hong Kong, is largely a deltaic alluvial plain.

West of the great eastern plain, China is for the most part elevated and to a large extent mountainous, but even the elevated regions are in some places capable of supporting a numerous population. A very densely populated region, embracing parts of eastern Szechwan and northern Yunnan, is the so-called Red Basin, which, besides great mineral wealth, has a peculiar red soil of great fertility. Where that soil is found cultivation can be pursued to a great height up the mountains; and the Chinese in eastern Szechwan cultivate the hill-sides wherever the slope is not above 30°, which is about the steepest a man can walk up unaided by his hands. To the west of this area an isolated level plain of somewhat more than 2,000 square miles in extent, formed of the bed of an old lake, has been irrigated from the waters of the Min with the utmost care for upwards of 2,000 years, and is everywhere covered with a verdure which would be monotonous were it not for the variety of shades. Towards the south-east of this plain lies the rich and populous city of Cheng-tu, seat of the administration in Szechwan.

The northern half of China is covered, and vast hollows to a great depth are filled, with a peculiar yellow soil known as loess, which is also of remarkable fertility, and rewards cultivation even at great heights. This soil is light and easy to work, but it has one great drawback. Its productiveness, though often very great, is very uncertain. The soil is so porous that water runs through it with great rapidity, and crops are thus liable to suffer from drought unless refreshed with frequent showers or supplied with water by irrigation; and so it happens that a region which, when rain falls with sufficient frequency, yields the most abundant crops, may in other seasons have its crops entirely destroyed, though the rainfall may have been plentiful enough for soils of another kind. Irriga-

<sup>1</sup> The mean January temperature at Canton, on the Tropic of Cancer, is about 55° F.; at Zikawei (Shanghai), in about 31° N., 37° F.; at Peking, in 40° N., 23° F.

tion, therefore, is practised throughout this region wherever the structure of the ground admits of it, and lands that can be irrigated are in some places of ten or twenty times the value of 'dry' fields. Many parts of China are, like certain parts of India, pitted with wells like a sieve, every field having one.

**Contrasts between N. and S. China.** While the general characteristics of a monsoon climate are found throughout China, there are necessarily considerable differences in a country which, including Manchuria, ranges in latitude from about 18° to beyond 53° N.—a distance of 2,500 miles. Differences in temperature will be taken for granted, but differences in the distribution of rainfall should also be noted. In the north and south the average rainfall shows a decided culmination in the middle of summer and is very slight at the extremes of the year, but in the Yangtse valley the summer rains are more prolonged, and while the average maximum here also is in the middle of the year, there is a second period of heavy rains in September and October.

Many years ago Baron Richthofen noted the somewhat marked contrasts, for the most part directly or indirectly due to climate, on opposite sides of the Tsinling-shan and Funiu-shan—ranges west of the great plain and south of the 35th parallel, forming an easterly continuation of the Tibetan Kunlun Mountains and constituting a main divide. North of this line of water-partings lie the great loess deposits already described, which are the result of climatic influence, inasmuch as they represent accumulations of dust brought from inner Asia by the north-west winds of the exceedingly dry winters. Filling up the hollows, these deposits give a remarkably uniform aspect to the surface features, except locally where the deposits are themselves cut by deep vertical-sided gorges. On the other hand, to the south of the divide, loess is present only in isolated patches; mountains and valleys are fully formed. Loess being unfavourable to tree growth, the mountain slopes in the north are generally bare, whereas in the south they may have luxuriant trees and shrubs as well as innumerable clumps of bamboo, and expansions of the valley bottoms are filled with fertile alluvium densely peopled. The north is the land of wheat, cotton, and pod-fruits, the south that of rice, tea, silk, tung oil,<sup>1</sup> and sugar-cane. In the north are wagon roads, in the south for the most part only narrow footpaths and tracks for pack animals. In the north, mules, horses, asses, and camels are used as beasts of burden, the first two also for draught. In the south, buffaloes work in the fields, but asses and camels are unknown, and apart from the waterways, human portage was the chief means of transport before roads and railways were built.

<sup>1</sup> A drying oil used for varnishing wood, expressed from the seeds of *Aleurites fordii* and *A. montana*.

China's great rivers are at once her blessing and her bane—on the one hand a source of her soil fertility and a means of travel and transport; on the other, an instrument of devastation and death, overwhelming the countryside with floods and shifting channels. Three rivers of outstanding magnitude cross China from east to west. In the north is the Hwang-ho or Yellow river, so called because of the yellow tinge imparted to its waters by the loess which they carry as silt. The 2,500 miles or more of its course from the Tibetan highlands to the China coast range between rapid torrents and sluggish shallows, neither of which are favourable to navigation; and the current is so heavily laden with silt that in its lower reaches the bed of the river, hemmed in by restraining dykes, has risen above the surrounding plain. So liable indeed is the river to flooding on a large scale and following a new course, often with great loss of life, that the Hwang-ho has long been known as 'China's sorrow.' Shorter by half and milder in character is the Si-kiang (1,250 miles), or West river, in south China. Rising in Yunnan it crosses the province of Kwang-si into Kwang-tung, where it unites with other important rivers (notably the Pei-kiang, or North river) and expands into a great delta, at the head of which is the city of Canton, while off the coast lies the island of Hong Kong. Canton, some 80 miles up the Pearl river from Hong Kong, is one of the great ports of China, accessible to ocean-going vessels, of which the larger find anchorage at Whampoa, eight miles downstream. The Si-kiang and the Pei-kiang are navigable by smaller craft for 200 miles or more above Canton.

Neither the Hwang-ho nor the Si-kiang can compare in commercial importance with the third and longest of China's great rivers, the Yangtse-kiang, which flows across central China for 3,200 miles in its passage from the Tibetan plateau to the China Sea near Shanghai. In the summer months (April to October) it is navigable by the largest vessels frequenting the Far East as far as Hankow, 700 miles upstream, and before the Second World War several lines of steamers plied between the two ports, while two British shipping companies maintained a service between Hankow and Europe. In the winter months the depth of water limits navigation to light-draught steamers. Beyond Hankow, steamers drawing up to 15 feet can ascend the river in the season of high water up to Ichang, over 1,000 miles from the sea. Above that point, a succession of rapids makes navigation difficult, but Ichang is at the western edge of the plain and land travel is also difficult in the mountainous country beyond, leading to the fertile and populous Red basin of Szechwan. The need for the exchange of products between the highland provinces and the provinces of the plains is insistent, and despite the difficulties of navigation there is river traffic for another 400 miles above Ichang, maintaining communications and trade with

Chungking, Szechwan's largest city. Specially built flat-bottomed steamers force their way up the rapids, while Chinese junks—a feature of the Yangtse all the way from the sea—are hauled up by gangs of coolies toiling along narrow tracks in the face of the precipitous gorges through which the river flows. So strong is the current that sometimes the junks have to be unloaded and the cargo carried to a point upstream to which the empty junks can be hauled. The return voyage from Chungking to Ichang, though accomplished in only a fraction of the time, is even more hazardous. Wrecks are not uncommon, and the cost of the traffic, not only in money but in goods and human lives, is high. Yet still the traffic goes on, to meet the compelling needs of China's huge population.

In addition to the three giant waterways thus briefly characterised, there are many rivers—minor only in a relative sense—which play an important part as vehicles of travel and transport. Canals also play their part in China's vast economy, especially in the eastern plain. One great canal—the old Imperial Canal, dating from the seventh century—extends north and south for 700 miles. Starting in the south at Hangchow, at the head of the inlet south of the Yangtse estuary, it crosses both that river and the Hwang-ho, and finishes at Tientsin, which lies some distance up the Pei-ho and serves as the port for Peking.

Owing to popular prejudice against the foreigner and all his ways, railways were a late arrival in China. The first, built to connect Shanghai with its outport, Woosung, was not opened till 1876 and was bought in the following year in order that it might be torn up. Its destruction was a last despairing effort. In 1956, China had 17,000 miles of railway, including the South Manchurian line to Dairen and the Chinese Eastern Railway across Northern Manchuria—the Chinese section of the original Russian-built Trans-Siberian Railway. These two railways extend to nearly 2,200 miles, and another 2,400 miles are covered by a continuous sequence of lines providing communication from south to north—from Canton, *via* Hankow and Peking, to Mukden, the old Manchurian capital. The many new lines built or building or planned—e.g., a 500-mile railway across Fukien province, opened in 1958; a railway from Lanchow to Lhasa, under survey in 1957; a mighty rail and road bridge across the Yangtse at Wu-han (the triple city of Hankow, Wuchang, and Hanyang)—are evidence of China's haste to make up for lost time. In 1947 her railway mileage was still only a fourth of that of India at the close of the British *raj*; in 1957 it was half of India's mileage. The building of roads for modern transport, another late development in China, has also gone ahead rapidly. The mileage of highways in 1957 was 110,000, a typical example of the demands on enterprise being a motor road 2,500 miles long from Chungking north-westwards to Chinese Turkestan (Sinkiang) and across that province to the Turkestan Siberian Railway.

**Administrative Divisions.** China proper—the ancient China protected by the Great Wall—contains 18 provinces. With these were often associated, after the Second World War, as essentially part of China, three provinces of Inner Mongolia (Chahar, Suiyuan, Ningsia) and the Tsinghai province of Eastern Tibet, making a total of 22 provinces, estimated to contain nearly 90 per cent. of China's population and widely described, even in the Yearbook of the United Nations Food and Agricultural Organisation, as 'the 22 provinces of China proper'. In addition, China controls in varying degrees an outer border of territories including Manchuria, Sinkiang (the old Chinese Turkestan) and Western Tibet.

For several years after the war the *Yearbook of Food and Agricultural Statistics* published returns both for 'the 22 provinces' and for Manchuria, but latterly the list of provinces, especially those supplementing the original 18, ceased to be realistic, owing to the many changes in their grouping (Chahar, Suiyuan and Ningsia have all disappeared as separate provinces). The F.A.O. Yearbook now confines its record to China as a whole, described as 'Mainland China' to distinguish it from Taiwan (Formosa), the home of the Nationalist Government (see p. 616).

**Crops and livestock.** Mainland China is credited with a total area of 3½m. square miles, of which 270m. acres (11 per cent.) is classed as arable land, 440m. acres (18 per cent.) as pastoral, 200m. acres (8 per cent.) as forested, and 1,488m. acres (62 per cent.) as built on or waste. Wheat and rice are the two outstanding crops, occupying half of the arable land. The respective areas cultivated are not greatly different in extent—66m. acres under wheat and 70m. acres under paddy in 1955—but the paddy crop in that year, 74m. tons, was treble the crop of wheat (23m. tons). Other food crops, even when grown on a less extensive or less productive scale, are in some cases among the leading sources of world supply of their respective products, and China may even head the list of producing countries so far as returns are known. Sweet potatoes in China yield about half the world supply of 70m. tons. More than half the world's maize is grown in the United States, but China, though far behind, ranks second among producing countries. Before the Second World War, China produced 80 per cent. (9–10m. tons) of the world supply of soybeans, and though the United States was the largest producer in 1955 (10m. tons—half the world total), China was a close second with 9m. tons. Some 30 per cent. (3·6m. tons, unshelled weight) of the world supply of groundnuts also comes from China, a proportion exceeded only by India. Cotton is another important crop, grown on 10m. acres, yielding 1½m. tons of cotton seed to nearly half that weight of ginned cotton. The production of cane sugar in 1955 was estimated at little less than ¼m. tons, and of beet sugar at much the same figure. The tobacco crop, grown on

$\frac{1}{2}$ m. acres, was under 300,000 tons—less than half the pre-war acreage, and production.

The livestock estimates add to the impression of vast size. Horses were numbered at over 7m. in 1955, donkeys and mules (mostly donkeys) at double that number, cattle and buffaloes at 45m., sheep and goats at 42m., and pigs at 88m.

**Mineral wealth**, though known to be considerable, has been little exploited. Coal-fields are found in most of the provinces, and much of the coal is of excellent quality; production in the war year 1944 reached 26m. tons, and in 1957 was estimated at 125m. tons. The main fields are in Shansi province, the southern half of which, on the loess plateau (2–3,000 feet above sea-level), has enormous deposits both of anthracite and of bituminous coal. South-east Shansi forms one of the most remarkable mineral regions in the world. The anthracite extends over an area of about 13,500 square miles, but true anthracite occurs chiefly in two groups, and most of the deposit is only half-anthracite with from 87 to 89 per cent. of carbon and much ash. While the average aggregate thickness of the coal-seams is at least 40 feet, almost everywhere is to be seen a seam of from 15 to 20 feet, and often one of from 20 to 30 feet in thickness. So frequently does the productive part of the coal-field crop out on the surface that along one line, about 200 miles in length, an opening might be made direct into a seam of great thickness almost anywhere. The stratification seems to be undisturbed, and in many places it is nearly horizontal. Where the seam of from 20 to 30 feet in thickness crops out, with an easterly slope only just sufficient for drainage, level adits could be tunnelled for miles to the west, so that once a railway had been constructed to the surface of the plateau the wagons could be run into the mines and loaded with coal for Peking or Shanghai direct.

The iron ores of Shansi are of very good quality, and have been for hundreds of years the basis of a Chinese iron industry on a small scale; but their mode of occurrence, mostly in nodules of a few pounds to a few hundred pounds in weight, is not favourable to the development of a large industry of the modern type. Elsewhere in China proper are many deposits of iron ore, notably in Hupeh and Szechwan; but the largest deposits are in Manchuria. The total production in 1957 was estimated at 16m. tons of ore. Yunnan is rich in copper, and to a less extent in silver, and has tin and other mines in the south-east of the province. Of the rarer minerals, China in 1957 was the largest producer of antimony ore, with a metal content of 15,000 tons—nearly a third of the world total. The chief source of supply was the province of Hunan. China was also the largest producer of tungsten concentrates, estimated at 22,000 tons, with a  $\text{WO}_3$  content of 13,000 tons—a third of the world total, outside the U.S.S.R. In 1957 an extensive tungsten

deposit was located in Kwangtung province, in the south-east corner of China. Oil has been located in many parts of China, especially in the north-west—Sinkiang, Kansu, and Szechwan. Production in 1957 was estimated at nearly  $1\frac{1}{2}$  million tons.

Comparatively little information is available to the Western world about the trade of China. It has not figured since 1948 in the United Nations *Yearbook of International Trade Statistics*, and information in the annual standard works of reference is fragmentary—e.g. the British Board of Trade figures for United Kingdom imports from and exports to China, and similar isolated returns for other countries, such as Ceylon, which exchanges rubber for rice, and Hong Kong (p. 607). The unit of currency is the *Jen Min Piao* (People's Bank Dollar), widely known as the *yuan*, the old name for a Chinese dollar. In 1955 the rate of exchange was reassessed at PB\$6.893 to the £, giving the *yuan* a sterling value of 2s. 11d. From time to time large increases in agricultural and industrial production are reported—e.g., steel output in 1958, over 11m. tons.

For what they are worth at the present day we repeat from the last two editions of this Handbook the chief categories of China's imports and exports in 1948, as reported to the United Nations:

At that time, the chief imports by value were raw cotton ( $12\frac{1}{2}$  per cent.), electrical and other machinery and tools (11 per cent.), iron and steel ( $6\frac{1}{2}$  per cent.), chemical and pharmaceutical products (6 per cent.), and vehicles of all kinds: aircraft, locomotives, railway and tramway equipment, motor-cars and lorries, &c. (between 3 and 4 per cent.). Exports were easily topped by cotton piece goods (30 per cent.), after which came tung oil (10 per cent.), cotton yarn (9 per cent.), and pigs' bristles ( $7\frac{1}{2}$  per cent.).

While maintaining trade relations with many countries, China has largely turned her back on the West and looks across Asia to the U.S.S.R. for the development of her main trade relations. Data are not available for even such a brief analysis of the composition and distribution of China's foreign trade as is given for other countries in this volume.

**Chief Towns.** The three largest towns rank as municipalities under the direct control of the central government. They are, with their populations at the 1953 census: Shanghai (6,204,417), Peking (2,768,149), Tientsin (2,693,831). Other cities credited with populations of over a million are Shenyang (formerly Mukden), 2.29m.; Wu-han (the triple city of Hankow, Wuchang, and Hanyang), 1.8m.; Chungking, 1.6m.; Canton, 1.5m.; Port Arthur-Dairen, 1m.; Nanking, 1m.

**Macao.** Dating from the days of Portugal's world expansion, having had its fourth centenary in 1957, Macao lays undisputed claim to be the oldest foreign colony in the Far East. It is a miniature affair, nearly 40 miles west of Hong Kong, on the opposite side of



the entrance to the Pearl river, occupying half a dozen square miles of a pleasant peninsula and including a port which attracts a good deal of small shipping, with a population of some 200,000, mostly Orientals. Tolerated by the Chinese Government, which displays towards it none of the bitterness manifested against Hong Kong, it has something of the reputation of an Eastern Monaco, practising a few manufactures, principally firecrackers and matches, and having a considerable fishing industry, but with a curiously unbalanced transit trade. With exports valued at some £7m. in 1952 Macao is credited with imports of nearly four times that value. It shares with Portuguese Timor a distinctive unit of currency, the pataca, equivalent to Escudos 5.60 (about 1s. 5d.).

### FORMOSA

Formosa ('Beautiful') or Taiwan—to use the Chinese name for the island where the former Government of China still asserts its claim to that title and maintains an administration with United States support—lies athwart the Tropic of Cancer about 100 miles from the mainland. It is nearly 250 miles long, with an average width of about one-fourth of that distance, and has an area of close on 14,000 square miles, or about twice the size of Wales. Through its length runs a magnificent mountain range, with richly wooded slopes and peaks rising to nearly 13,000 feet. On the east side of the island the coastal belt is narrow and the coast rock-bound, but on the west the lowlands are wider and are bordered by mud-banks, fed and extended by the silt brought down by the rivers in flood. The highlands and the east of the island are the home of wild tribes with Malayan affinities; the western lowlands have been settled by Chinese, Formosa having been a possession of China since 1683 except for the half-century 1895–1945, when it was held by Japan. In 1956 the population was officially estimated at over 9m., including some 300,000 of the forces which had remained faithful to the Nationalist Government when it took refuge in Formosa.

About 50 per cent. of the country is classed as forest and woodland, and 25 per cent. as built-on or waste. Practically the whole of the remaining 25 per cent., comprising over 2m. acres, ranks as arable land, only 150,000 acres being occupied with permanent meadows and pastures. The arable land is extremely fertile, so much so that Formosa used to be described, with an exaggeration which at any rate stressed its fruitfulness, as 'the granary of China.' Two harvests of the chief food crops, rice and sweet potatoes, are reaped annually, and the areas assigned to individual products in the Yearbook of the United Nations Food and Agriculture Organisation are, in the aggregate, half as large again as all the arable land (2m. acres) in the island. In 1955, 2m. tons of rice (paddy) were

reaped from over 1·8m. acres, and 2·4m. tons of sweet potatoes from 600,000 acres. In the previous year, 6m. tons of sugar-cane, yielding three-quarters of a million tons of raw sugar, were harvested from 200,000 acres. Other crops included ground-nuts (240,000 acres), tea (108,000 acres), bananas, wheat, jute, and tobacco.

Livestock include (1955) nearly 3m. pigs, 330,000 buffaloes, and 130,000 goats, but as might be surmised from the small proportion of pastures, cattle and sheep are comparatively few.

The island has extensive coal measures, and nearly 3m. tons were produced in 1957. Other mineral products include gold and silver, sulphur and copper. Narrow-gauge railways (in all, 590 miles) traverse the coastal belts on both sides, and many private lines serve the sugar estates. Ports are mostly poor and silted; the best is Ki-lung (Kürun) at the northern end of the island. It is the port for Tai-pei, the capital, which had a population of 695,000 in 1955. The chief town in the south is Tainan (230,000).

In 1956, imports were valued at US.\$114m. (£41m.) and exports at US.\$130m. (£46m.). Sugar provided nearly 60 per cent. of the exports, and rice 10 per cent. Japan took nearly half the exports and supplied over a third of the imports.

## KOREA

Korea (the Japanese *Chosen*) occupies a long and comparatively narrow peninsula (roughly 500–600 miles by 150 miles), stretching out from Manchuria towards the extreme south-western end of Japan and almost shutting off the Sea of Japan from the Yellow Sea. Under the loose suzerainty of China for centuries, though having its own sovereign, Korea became a dependency of Japan early in the present century. After the Second World War it was occupied temporarily by Allied Forces pending arrangements for establishing its independence, the northern half of the country being in Russian occupation and the southern in American occupation, with the 38th parallel as the dividing line. Failing agreement between the Allies on the prospective arrangements, two republics, North and South, were established and the foreign troops were withdrawn. In 1950 South Korea was invaded by the Northern Forces; the United Nations espoused the cause of South Korea, and there was active warfare till an armistice was arranged in 1953.

A thickly wooded mountain range forms the backbone of the country, bordering for the most part the east coast, but finally swinging round into the south-west corner of the peninsula. In the north, extensive fields of lava, one as much as 40 miles long and 100–140 feet thick, are evidence of ancient volcanic activity; and on the northern frontier the range reaches its greatest height in

Peh-tan-shan (Paik-tu-san), the Long White Mountain, rising to 8,500 feet. The east coast is rocky, with few harbours, and rivers are short and rapid; but on the western side of the peninsula the mountains drop to a fairly wide coastal plain, through which the principal rivers wind their way to the sea, here lined with mud-flats and fringed with numerous islands, ice-bound in winter and subject at other times to very high tides, which rise as much as 40 feet. The soil in the valleys and plains is fertile, growing a wide variety of crops—in the south and centre, principally rice at the lower elevations and millet, beans, wheat, maize, cotton, and tobacco in the upland valleys; while in the bleaker north the rice-fields tend to give place to barley, oats, and potatoes. A distinctive Korean crop is ginseng, a plant famed in the Far East for the medicinal properties of its root.

Minerals are widespread. South Korea leads the world in the production of graphite; its output of 145,000 tons in 1957 was about half of the total supply. Anthracite yielded 2.4m. tons from a single mine. Gold—a regular export—provided 60,000 fine ounces. South and North Korea together produced tungsten concentrates with a  $WO_3$  content of 3,400 tons—9 per cent. of the world supply.

The total area of Korea is usually reckoned as about 85,000 square miles, or little less than that of Great Britain. North Korea is the larger part, with an area according to this computation of 48,000 square miles (nearly the size of England), leaving 37,000 square miles for South Korea (rather less than Scotland and Wales combined). In the Yearbook of the United Nations Food and Agriculture Organisation, the total area is given as 85,248 square miles, with an estimated population in 1956 of 32m., of which South Korea, though the smaller part, was credited with 22m., or two-thirds of the total. A South Korean census in 1955 gave the population in that year as 21.5m.

Over two-thirds of the country is classed as forest, a fifth as arable, and the balance of a tenth as waste or built on. Rice is the biggest crop. Of Korea's 11m. acres of arable land, rice occupied 4m. acres before the Second World War (the latest period for which full returns are available), yielded an average crop of 3.7m. tons of paddy, and provided half of Korea's exports. Trade was mostly with Japan, which still dominated Korea and found in it a useful source of food supply. South Korea provided three-fourths of the paddy acreage and crop, and was still producing on much the same scale after the Second World War. Both in 1954 and in 1955 South Korea reported paddy crops of over 3m. tons from  $2\frac{1}{2}$  to  $2\frac{3}{4}$ m. acres.

Barley ranks second among the crops. Before the Second World War it was grown on  $2\frac{1}{4}$ m. acres yielding 900,000 tons, South Korea being credited with 85 per cent. of the acreage and 90 per cent. of

the crop. In 1948, the total area under barley was estimated at less than 2m. acres and the crop was down to 650,000 tons; South Korea still provided all but a small part of both the acreage and tonnage, and in 1955 it alone had nearly 1.9m. acres under barley, yielding nearly 800,000 tons.

Soybeans and millet were close rivals for third place among the crops before the Second World War, each having around 2m. acres under cultivation and yielding over half a million tons. South Korea provided half the soybeans, but North Korea was the major factor in the production of millet. In neither case were returns available for North Korea after the war, and those for South Korea were on a smaller scale—150,000 tons of soybeans from  $\frac{3}{4}$ m. acres in 1955.

Wheat is not a crop of the first importance, and is rather more widely cultivated in the North than in the South. Before the Second World War a total of over three-quarters of a million acres yielded nearly a quarter of a million tons; in 1955 South Korea produced 100,000 tons from 300,000 acres. Potatoes, a much heavier crop than wheat, though not very prolific in Korea by European standards, yielded 650,000 tons from a quarter of a million acres before the World War. Since that war, South Korea has been producing over 200,000 tons a year from rather more than 100,000 acres, and up to 400,000 tons of sweet potatoes from about the same acreage.

Cotton was grown on half a million acres before the World War, producing 70,000 tons of cotton seed and half that quantity of ginned cotton. In 1955 South Korea had 280,000 acres of cotton, producing 20,000 tons of seed and 20,000 tons of ginned cotton.

No livestock figures for the whole country are available beyond 1939. Apart from poultry, only cattle (1.7m.) and pigs (1.4m.) were then returned in large numbers (fully half in South Korea); none of the other livestock exceeded 50,000 (horses). In 1955 South Korea had  $\frac{3}{4}$ m. cattle and nearly 1m. pigs.

The unit of currency in South Korea is the hwan, now valued by agreement with the United States for most transactions at hwan 500 to the dollar (hwan 1,400=£1). In 1956 imports were valued at hwan 35,436m. (£25m.), exports at hwan 12,662m. (£9m.). Manufactures, including machinery and transport equipment, formed nearly 60 per cent. of the imports, and food 15 per cent., mostly (over half) unrefined beet and cane sugar. Crude materials formed 80 per cent. of the exports, 40 per cent. being non-porous ores and concentrates (mostly tungsten), and 8 per cent. graphite.

The United States provided 33 per cent. of the imports, Japan nearly 20 per cent., Hong Kong nearly 10 per cent. The same three countries took respectively 44, 34, and 8 per cent. of the exports. Normally North Korea is the home of such heavy industry as the country possesses, while South Korea has large numbers of small

factories, and has built up a mercantile fleet of about 1,000 small steamships.

The concentration of the population in the centre and south is emphasised by the distribution of the large cities. In 1955, Seoul, the Southern capital, had a census population of over 1½m.; Pusan, the chief port, in the south-east corner of the peninsula, over against Japan, more than half a million; and two other cities in South Korea, Taegu and Inchon, had respectively nearly ½m. and ¼m. In North Korea, the capital, Heijo (Pyeng-Yuang) had a pre-war population of 285,000.

Despite the 1953 armistice—which six years later is still only an armistice, with armies on both sides of the provisional frontier—Korea is impoverished by the widespread devastation it sustained during the war. Little information is available about the present measure of its recovery; the railway mileage (1,678) in operation in 1948, is still quoted in 1958.

## JAPAN

The island-empire of Japan, which except for the extreme north-east corner of the Soviet Union is the most easterly country in Asia—‘The Land of the Rising Sun’—has developed in a hundred years from an isolated, exclusive community, having few contacts with the Western world or knowledge of its inventions, into one of the leading world Powers. Breaking out from her seclusion and pursuing a policy of territorial expansion, embarking on a career of competitive industry and world trade, Japan was one of the victors in the First World War, had the reverse experience in the Second World War, was shorn of her extraneous possessions—Formosa, Korea, Manchuria, and various Trustee island groups in the Pacific, but was restored to the comity of nations in 1952 when peace treaties with the Western Powers became operative.

Reduced to her original island-empire, Japan now comprises four principal islands strung along an arc, whose inner curve, facing Korea and Asiatic Russia, encloses the Sea of Japan, while the outer curve confronts the open Pacific Ocean. Centrally situated along the arc, and forming nearly the whole of it, is the long and comparatively narrow island of Honshu, otherwise known as the mainland, which is as large as Great Britain (89,000 square miles) and more than half as large again as the other three islands together. To the north of it lies Hokkaido (the old Yezo), about the size of Scotland (30,000 square miles); off its south-west coast, bordering and largely forming the famous Inland Sea of Japan, is the smallest of the four principal islands, Shikoku, about the size of Wales

(over 7,000 square miles), and south of that again is Kyushu, more than double the size of Wales (16,000 square miles). At the Straits of Shimonoseki the islands of Honshu and Kyushu come close together; they have been linked by a railway tunnel since 1942 and in 1958 a road tunnel was opened which took twenty-two years to build and which runs undersea for nearly half a mile.

The total area of Japan is 142,000 square miles, carrying at the 1955 census 89m. people. One of Japan's problems is the rapid increase of the population. In 1957 the estimated total was 90·7m.—a density of nearly 640 to the square mile, against Britain's 550. Tokyo, the capital, has outstripped both London and New York as the most populous city in the world (9·1 m. in 1959).

The whole group is both mountainous and volcanic, containing upwards of fifty active, besides numerous extinct, volcanoes. The highest peak is the famous Fuji-yama (12,390 feet), whose beautiful snow-capped cone is visible from Tokyo, 60 miles away. Like other highly volcanic regions Japan is much subject to earthquakes, which often do immense damage. The surface is extremely irregular, and though the mountain passes are low, relatively to the height of many of the peaks, the slopes are generally steep. This has proved a hindrance to the construction of railways, the great majority of which are single-track lines. The total mileage in 1955 was 17,266, nearly three-fourths being state-owned. There were 15,000 miles of national roads, and 72,500 of provincial, though comparatively few were fit for heavy motor traffic. Construction and maintenance are both made difficult by the character of the climate and the natural drainage. During the rainy season the copious rains that deluge the mountain slopes cause frequent destructive floods in the numerous short rivers that descend on both sides. Many roads are then almost impassable. These conditions have hindered the growth of motor traffic. Whereas the smaller and less densely populated country of Great Britain had in 1956 about 5m. licensed motor-cars and commercial vehicles, Japan had about 1½m.

Climatic conditions vary considerably, being affected by (1) the latitudinal extent of the islands, which are spread over some 15° (from Land's End to John o' Groats is less than 9°); (2) their situation on the eastern side of the vast land mass of the Old World (see p. 46); and (3) their insular character and narrow width, fronting on the one hand the open Pacific, with its warm currents, and on the other the almost enclosed Sea of Japan, swept during the winter monsoon by north-west winds which beat on the flat and dangerous western coast and practically stop shipping. The coasts of all the islands are much indented and have an estimated length of 10,000 miles, or including the many adjacent small islands, 17,000 miles. The south-east winds of the summer monsoon, coming from the Pacific, drop their moisture on the mountainous

uplands of Japan, which everywhere has a heavy rainfall, ranging from 40 inches in the north to double that quantity in the south. There is much snow in winter, especially in the north and along the west coast; in Hokkaido, the northernmost island, mean January temperatures are well below freezing point; southward they range up to 40° or a little more. In August the mean temperature range is from 70° in the north to 80° in the south.

**Primary production.** It is not surprising that in a land with these physical characteristics, barely 14 per cent. of the whole is classed as arable country—under 13m. acres out of over 92m. acres. Built-on and waste areas account for nearly 22 per cent., but the mountains are largely wooded, and more than 60 per cent. ranks as forest. There remains only between 3 and 4 per cent. for open pastures; but the forests include a million acres—a little over 1 per cent.—of ‘wooded pastures’ as they are called, so that over 4 per cent. in all is suitable for grazing. Livestock are not a factor of prime importance in Japanese farming, though there were some notable increases after the Second World War, compared with the pre-war figures. Sheep, numbering upwards of  $\frac{3}{4}$ m. in 1955 were seven times as many as in 1938, and goats, approaching half a million, showed an increase of 75 per cent., while cattle, the most numerous of the larger livestock, had increased from 2m. to 3m. Pigs, which were mostly killed off during the war, had multiplied to nearly  $\frac{3}{4}$ m. in 1955, but were still much below their previous figure of over a million; and horses (900,000) were down by over a third.

Timber is worked on a large scale, production amounting to 19 $\frac{1}{2}$ m. cubic metres of sawnwood and 58 $\frac{1}{2}$ m. cubic metres of roundwood in 1955. But agriculture plays the biggest part in rural economy. The arable land lies in many scattered areas, chiefly around the coasts. Tokyo, on the south-east coast of Honshu (Mainland), lies in a fairly extensive plain, but for the most part the tracts of low-lying land are narrow coastal belts, mostly divided into small peasant holdings, as also are the upland valleys, with their terraced hill-sides. Some 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ m. peasant households wrest a subsistence from holdings of less than 2 $\frac{1}{2}$  acres—most of them little more than an acre. Nearly half the population is classed as agricultural, and of these nearly half, aged 14 years and over, are engaged in agricultural operations, including forestry.

The outstanding crop, occupying more than half the arable land, is rice. In 1955 the area returned as under rice was 7.7m. acres, and the crop amounted to 14 $\frac{1}{2}$ m. tons of paddy, more than the crop in Pakistan and exceeded only in China and India. The limit of cultivation is reached in northern Hokkaido, where a single crop is grown with difficulty in a year; but at the other end of Japan the fertile Kochi plain, on the south coast of Shikoku, is capable of producing two crops a year.

The next largest, though much smaller, crops are barley, wheat, and potatoes. As in the case of rice, the 1955 crops were fully up to, and even beyond, the pre-war average. Barley was grown on 2½m. acres, yielding 2.4m. tons; the area under wheat, approaching 1⅔m. acres, bore a crop of 1½m. tons; while potatoes, together with sweet potatoes and yams (the last two being lumped together in the returns of the Food and Agriculture Organisation), produced 10m. tons of tubers from 1½m. acres.

No other crops approached these in magnitude in 1950, but there was a great variety, and though for the most part they are not only relatively small but much below the pre-war standard, a few call for special mention. Soybeans were grown on nearly 1m. acres and produced a crop of half a million tons. Fruit does well, and the orange crop is particularly notable, amounting to 5-600,000 tons, rather more than half being Satsuma oranges, so-called after the district of that name in the extreme south of Japan; they are a loose-skinned variety akin to the mandarin orange, and were introduced many years ago into the United States, where they are now widespread in the Gulf States. Tea, prepared for export as green tea, is grown chiefly between 34° and 36° N. latitude, that is, in the south of Honshu (Mainland). The crop has increased by one-half from its pre-war average, production in 1955 being 72,000 tons from 100,000 acres. Tobacco more than doubled, with a crop of 150,000 tons from 185,000 acres.

Mulberry trees, grown for their leaves as silkworm feed, and planted in rows with other crops between, cover much less than their pre-war acreage. Raw silk is no longer Japan's leading export, and though its production has been steadily increasing since the war, reaching in 1956 a post-war peak of 41m. lb. (two-thirds of the estimated world total), the peak then reached was less than half Japan's pre-war production. The lacquer-tree (*Rhus vernicifera*, D.C.), which furnishes the material employed in lacquering, one of the most celebrated of old Japanese industries, is cultivated mainly in the northern part of Honshu (Mainland), between 37° and 39° N. Camphor, extracted from the stem and roots of the camphor tree, which attains to a circumference of 50 feet, is another of the ingredients used in lacquering, and is also a minor export. The camphor-tree is found mainly in the south-west of Japan.

**Fisheries and mineral wealth.** The Japanese fisheries are an asset of immense importance. A Fisheries Report to a United Nations Commission in 1945 reckoned that before the Second World War the Japanese Empire not only headed the countries of the world in its annual production of fish, but provided nearly one-third of the estimated world production of 18½m. tons of both sea- and fresh-water fish. The war has curtailed both the scope of the Japanese fishing grounds and the size of the fishing fleet, but the industry



remains one of the first importance, Japan itself producing more than any other country (see p. 249). Sardines, bonitos (mackerel family; genus *Sarda*), and herrings are prominent features of the inshore catch, while the deep-sea trawlers have for their field of operation one of the greatest demersal or ground fisheries in the world. In 1956 the fishing fleet numbered 416,000 craft, totalling 1½m. tons and including 796 vessels of 100 tons and over. The year's catch amounted to 4½m. tons. Japan plays a big part in the whaling industry. In 1955-56 her catch, mostly in the Antarctic, was 12,914 whales (a fifth of the world total), yielding 100,000 tons of whale and sperm oil. In 1959 dissatisfaction with the operation of the quota system led to the conditional withdrawal of Japan and certain European countries from the international convention regulating whale catching in the Antarctic.

The mineral wealth of the islands is varied, but not specially abundant or highly developed. Intensive production during the Second World War led to record output in many cases. This was followed by a big drop after the war, but returns increased again up to 1956, the latest year for which statistics are available. Coal is the most notable product with an annual normal output of about 45m. tons (one-fifth of the output in Great Britain), chiefly from mines in Hokkaido, the northernmost island, and around Moji and Nagasaki in north-west Kyushu, the southernmost island. Production in 1957 amounted to 51m. tons, nearly all bituminous. Iron ore is found in south-west Honshu (Mainland), and iron sand in Hokkaido. In 1957 the total production was more than 2m. tons, including over a million tons of iron sand. For the most part the iron ores are not easy of access, but iron and steel works at Wakamatsu, on the north coast of Kyushu, where only the narrow straits of Shimonoseki separate Kyushu from Honshu, are within 20 miles of both coal and iron mines. Large iron and steel works were also established before the war in Hokkaido. The industry is largely dependent, for its full development, on ores imported from China. In 1957 the production of pig-iron and ferro-alloys amounted to over 7m. tons.

High-grade copper ores are found at Ashio, near to Nikko, in central Honshu, about 75 miles north of Tokyo. Ore production in 1956, in terms of metal, was more than 77,000 tons. Altogether, Japan's primary production of copper in that year amounted to 91,000 tons and the amount of secondary metal recovered was 33,000 tons. The output of manganese ores was over 280,000 tons, with an estimated manganese content of over 100,000 tons. Other mineral products included aluminium (65,000 tons), refined sulphur (243,000 tons), silver (metal content, 6m. fine troy ounces), and gold (241,000 fine troy ounces).

**Industrial and commercial development.** Industrially, Japan has

source of widespread supply; the total installed capacity in 1956 was nearly 15½m. kW. (over 60 per cent. hydro-electric) and the production of electric energy amounted to 73½m. kWh. In 1955 nearly 4½m. people were employed in industrial establishments. According to the United Nations' system of calculation the index of production, represented by 100 in 1937 and dropping to 34 in 1946, had increased to 77 in 1950, was back to the pre-war standard in 1951, and much above it in 1956.

The decline in the value of the yen (the unit of Japanese currency) even before the war, the effects of the war on industry and commercial relations, and the post-war limitation of Japan to the four main islands, all tend to lessen the comparative value of the trade returns over a period of years. In the days of stable currencies, before the First World War, the yen was the equivalent of about 2s., or 48 U.S. cents. Between the two World Wars, in the thirties, it dropped to roughly half that value. During and after the second war there were no regular quotations till in April 1949 one cent was made equivalent to 3·6 yen for all permitted trade. At this rate 1,000 yen were worth close on \$2·78, which, later in 1949, became practically the exchange rate of the devalued £ sterling.

**Imports and Exports.** In the United Nations *Yearbook of International Trade Statistics*, the trade of Japan is recorded in American dollars. Between 1950 and 1956 both imports and exports more than trebled in value—from \$974m. to \$3,228m. in the case of imports, and from \$820m. to \$2,492m. in the case of exports. The sterling equivalent of the imports in 1956 was £1,153m. Food imports, which in former years had been from a third to a quarter of the whole, declined to one-sixth (£196m.), of which wheat (£59m.), rice (£38½m.) and sugar (£48m.) accounted for 75 per cent. Two-thirds of all the imports consisted of inedible crude materials (£758m.), the chief items constituting nearly 80 per cent. of the group—being cotton and wool, mineral fuels and related materials and mineral ores and concentrates and scrap. Raw cotton is largely imported for manufacture and re-export in the form of cotton fabrics. In 1956 the imports of cotton were valued at £171m. and of wool at £92m. Most of the mineral fuels were crude petroleum (£80m.) and products (£35m.), but 3½m. tons of coal, valued at £32m., were also imported. Ores and concentrates and scrap (£177m.) included as the biggest item iron and steel scrap (£64m.). The extent of Japan's industrial development is thrown into strong relief not only by the large proportion of crude materials among her imports, but by the relatively small proportion of imported manufactures. Manufactures of all kinds, including machinery and transport equipment (nearly half the total) amounted to about 11 per cent. of the imports. The balance (about 6 per cent.) of the imports is

made up of chemicals, animal and vegetable oils and fats, and drinks and tobacco.

Japanese exports in 1956 had a sterling value of £890m. Food contributed £63m. (7 per cent.), of which two-thirds was provided by fish, fresh and preserved. The position occupied by inedible crude materials was very different from the part they played in the import trade. All told, including mineral fuels, they accounted for only £38m. of the exports, or little more than 4 per cent. of the total, the chief items being silk (£16½m.) and timber (£10m.). Chemicals contributed another 4 per cent., and animal and vegetable oils and fats only 1 per cent. Just as crude materials dominated the imports, so manufactures were supreme in the export trade, contributing over 83 per cent. (£741m.) of the total. Manufactures valued at over £10m. were railway vehicles, £10·2m.; textile machinery, £13m.; cement, £13½m.; instruments, £13½m.; sewing machines, £14m.; plywood, £15m.; household pottery, £17½m.; electric machinery and appliances, £18m.; toys and games, £21½m.; textile yarn and thread (cotton, wool, and synthetic), £25½m.; clothing, £44m.; iron and steel, £80m.; ships and boats, £93m.; cotton fabrics, £94m.; miscellaneous fabrics (mostly synthetic), £104m.

**Distribution of Foreign Trade.** The United States takes the leading part in both the import and the export trade. In 1956 she supplied just on a third (£381m.) of the imports, this being more than four times the value of the imports from Australia (£88m.), which was second in the list. Canada came third, with imports valued at £51m., while Malaya, Saudi Arabia, Mexico and the Philippines each supplied goods valued at over £40m. On the other hand, only three countries took exports from Japan valued at over £40m. The United States again headed the list, taking between a fourth and a fifth (£197m.) of the total, was followed by Liberia (£80m.) and Hong Kong (£48m.)

The great bulk of Japan's foreign trade passes through three ports on the south coast of Honshu (Mainland), namely, Yokohama, Tokyo's great outport at the south-east corner of the island, and Kobe and Osaka, both of which are situated near the centre of the south coast. Most of the ports of Honshu are on the south and east coast, notably Nagoya, situated between Yokohama and Osaka; Hiroshima, whose port has survived the city; and Kanmon, which includes Shimonoseki, at the south-west tip of Honshu, and Moji, at the northern tip of Kyushu. The combined port constitutes the western entrance to the Inland Sea, and the two towns, facing one another across a narrow strait, are linked both by a ferry service and by a submarine railway tunnel. Niigata is the only considerable port along the west coast, which, as already explained, is subject in winter to prolonged spells of adverse winds seriously interrupting navigation. Hokkaido, the northernmost island, has

its chief port, Hakodate (243,000), at its southern end. The southernmost island, Kyushu, has, in addition to Moji, several important shipping points for coal and other minerals, notably Nagasaki.

Japan's large cities are nearly all ranged around its coasts, and many of them have been mentioned in the foregoing brief survey of leading ports. The most notable inland city is Kyoto, the ancient capital, in southern Honshu. In Hokkaido, Sapporo has an even larger population than Hakodate; and, in Kyushu, Fukuoka and Kumamoto are large cities near the west coast but not themselves constituting ports. In 1955 Japan had two dozen cities each with a population officially estimated at over a quarter of a million. They were:

	<i>Thousands</i>		<i>Thousands</i>
Greater Tokyo (see p. 621) .	8,033	Kumamoto (Kyushu) .	320
Osaka . . . . .	2,541	Nagasaki . . . . .	299
Nagoya . . . . .	1,336	Shizuoka (S.E. Honshu) .	292
Kyoto . . . . .	1,169	Yahata . . . . .	279
Yokohama . . . . .	1,137	Kanazawa (W. Honshu) .	275
Kobe . . . . .	966	Yokosuka (Tokyo Bay) .	274
Fukuoka (N.W. Kyushu) .	500	Kagoshima (S. Kyushu) .	270
Kawasaki (Tokyo Bay) .	430	Hamamatsu . . . . .	266
Sapporo (Hokkaido) .	423	Niigata . . . . .	262
Sendai (N.E. Honshu) .	372	Gifu (South Cent. Honshu) .	259
Hiroshima . . . . .	364	Himeji (W. of Kobe) .	257
Amagasaki (nr. Osaka) .	363	Sasebo . . . . .	253

**Ryukyu Archipelago.** Beyond Kyushu, still stretching in the same general arc as the main islands, and extending for several hundreds of miles from north-east to south-west, is the Ryukyu archipelago. The islands are merely the summits of a submerged mountain chain, but during the Second World War they acquired strategic importance and came into prominence when the United States occupied the largest island, Okinawa, some seventy miles long and three to ten miles wide. After the war, Japanese sovereignty over the archipelago was recognised in the San Francisco Peace Treaty, but the islands remained under American military administration, and Okinawa in particular has developed into an important American base in the Pacific, containing the biggest American airfields in the Far East, and providing a popular subject of anti-American criticism in Japan. Economically the islands have a limited importance as a field for tropical products, especially sugar cane.

## AFRICA

Of the six continents Africa is second in size (next to Asia, with an area of between eleven and twelve million square miles), and fourth in population (now estimated at some 240 million—not much less than the population of North and Central America). Commercially however, in relation to its size, Africa may be regarded as the least productive of the continents, though its external trade is not absolutely the lowest. Unfavourable factors are its backward civilisation and natural unproductiveness—the latter due largely to the want of rain. The surface, as in Spain, is made up mainly of plateaus with bordering mountains, so that the interior is in most parts reached only by winds that have been deprived of the greater portion of their moisture. The only regions with fairly abundant rainfall are certain parts of the equatorial region, narrow strips on the east and south-east coast, and part of the north coast in the neighbourhood of the Atlas Mountains. There are vast regions in the north and the south-west entirely desert, or nearly so, except where capable of irrigation. The only district possessing a really high density of population is in north-east Egypt in the lower Nile valley, and especially the Nile delta.

Apart from rainfall, the soil is often far from fertile. Large areas in the Congo basin and elsewhere are covered with poor tropical red soils, including laterite, from which the valuable plant foods have been leached by rain. Improvident methods of cultivation and stock grazing by Africans have led to widespread soil erosion.

Transport difficulties have been another hindrance. Until the end of the nineteenth century Africa was mostly dependent on porters and pack animals. A camel caravan takes about three months to cross the Sahara, covering from 15 to 18 miles a day. In tropical Africa a caravan of porters travels at the rate of about 20 miles a day, the normal load for each porter being about 50 lb., though some carry up to 120 lb. Except along the main routes, only narrow tracks connect the villages, but these have proved very suitable for bicycles, which are now widely used by Africans. The present century has seen a big extension both of railways and of seasonal motor roads, with a more gradual increase of all-weather roads. Motor services can cross the Sahara in a few days, and air services are numerous. Steamships have been placed on the great

lakes and rivers; but the rivers are interrupted by rapids and falls which destroy their value as continuous commercial highways.

Above all, development is limited by the paucity and backward condition of the people. Inter-tribal warfare, slave-raiding, famine, disease, have all kept the numbers down and held up progress in the past. The future is brighter. European control has not only established law and order and brought material development, but has lessened the ravages of disease, till now the rapid increase in the population is giving rise to economic anxiety. In general, the climate of tropical Africa is enervating and unfavourable to prolonged strenuous labour. Malaria is prevalent in the lowlands, and even the highlands are not free from it; Europeans especially are subject to it, and Africans are not immune. But the discovery by Sir Ronald Ross of the connection between malaria and mosquitoes (*anopheles*), and between mosquitoes and stagnant water, has made it possible to eliminate many sources of danger. Still more dreaded pests are the tsetse flies (various species of *Glossina*) which carry the active agent of sleeping sickness in man and the corresponding disease, *nagana*, in cattle. They range over a large part of tropical and, in the east, sub-tropical Africa—between about 15° N. and 17° S. in the west, and between 4° N. and 27½° S. in the east. The degree of responsibility of big game for the prevalence of tsetse fly is still the subject of controversy, and advocates of the wholesale slaughter of game are not lacking. Other measures are bush clearance, spraying vegetation with insecticides from the air, and the use of drugs. One of these last, Antrycide, has given useful results (cf. pages 67 and 242). Open grass-land is usually free from tsetse.

Thus, in one way and another, many of the handicaps to Africa's progress, if not yet conquered, are being reduced. Population is on the increase; Africans allowed to exercise their talents are showing new capabilities; and if the continent is not one of the wealthiest or easiest to develop, it has latent resources of farm and forest products and of mineral wealth which the various Governments are eager to turn to account. Everywhere are development and welfare schemes.

An important factor in the commercial development of Equatorial Africa has been the Free Trade Zone established by the European Powers at the Berlin Conference of 1885 in connection with their recognition of the Congo Free State (now the Belgian Congo). Nominally related to the Congo Basin, this treaty zone covers an even vaster area, extending across Africa from the Atlantic to the Indian Ocean and embracing not only the Belgian Congo and adjacent parts of French Equatorial Africa, Portuguese West Africa, and Northern Rhodesia which fall within the Congo Basin, but the whole of Kenya, Uganda, Tanganyika and Nyasaland, with parts of the former Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, Italian Somaliland, and Portuguese East Africa. The treaty has been subject to various modifi-

cations since 1885, and both import and export duties are now levied within the zone; but the vital principle of equality of treatment among the signatories has been maintained despite criticism.

## EGYPT

This country was for a long period a province of the Ottoman Empire. In 1882 began a period of British influence. At the request of the Khedive an expeditionary force was sent out to suppress a rebellion of the Egyptian army. A British protectorate was established during the First World War, when the reigning Khedive was deposed and a successor appointed with the title of Sultan, but in 1922 Egypt was recognised as an independent sovereign state, the Sultan being proclaimed King. Thirty years later, in 1952, his successor was forced to resign in favour of his infant son as the result of a military coup d'état, whose leaders announced a programme of radical reforms, including the break up of the big landed estates and their subdivision among the *fellahin*. In June, 1953, a republic was proclaimed, with the head of the army as President.

An Anglo-Egyptian Treaty in 1936 had left for discussion the defence of the Canal Zone and the future of the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan. Egypt claimed the restoration of Egyptian sovereignty in the Sudan, but accepted (February, 1953) the decision of the Sudan in favour of self-government. Egypt pressed, however, for withdrawal of the British troops from the Canal Zone, and in October, 1954, an Anglo-Egyptian Agreement provided for such withdrawal. This was completed in June, 1956. In July, disappointed in his hopes of an international loan for a gigantic extension of the Aswan Dam on the Nile, the Egyptian President took over the Suez Canal and announced his intention of using its revenues to extend the Dam, subject to compensation to the Canal Company. Later in the year, Israel, fearful of Arab attacks across her frontiers, launched a campaign against Egypt in the Sinai Peninsula; an Anglo-French ultimatum to both parties was rejected by Egypt, fighting ensued, and Egypt blocked the Canal. Britain and France withdrew in favour of a force representing the United Nations, which left again in the spring of 1957, after clearing the Canal. More or less normal conditions were gradually restored. Egypt sought the hegemony of the Arab states and developed close business relations with Russia, China and their associates. Russia promised a loan towards the extension of the Aswan Dam. Early in 1958 Egypt and Syria were federated as 'The United Arab Republic,' and a month later the Kingdom of Yemen was included in the 'United Arab States.'

Egypt extends from the Mediterranean Sea and the mouths of the Nile to Wadi Halfa in about latitude 22° N., a length roughly equal to the distance between the Scillies and the Shetlands. In the

east it extends to the Red Sea and Israel, including the Suez Canal (p. 639) and the Sinai peninsula, and in the west the boundary is an almost entirely straight line running north to south through the Libyan Desert. The area of the country is 386,000 square miles, but mostly it is uninhabited and uninhabitable. The settled area is about 13,500 square miles—between 3 and 4 per cent. of the whole; one-fourth the size of England—and of this some 6m. acres—under 10,000 square miles—are cultivated. The settled area comprises the tract capable of being irrigated by the waters of the Nile—the Nile delta and a valley varying in width from two to fifteen miles, lying between the deserts on either side—together with a few oases. On this area are crowded over 24m. people, who are almost entirely dependent upon agriculture. The density averages some 1,800 to the square mile and rises to much more in the delta region—a density almost unparalleled for an agricultural community except in China. The total population of the desert country is about 50,000 nomads.

Two thousand three hundred years ago the Greek geographer Herodotus aptly called Egypt 'the gift of the Nile.' Agriculture in Egypt certainly depends for its very existence upon the annual flooding of the Nile, for the annual rainfall at Cairo is only one inch, and at Wadi Halfa precipitation is seldom known to occur. This annual flood is the result of the summer monsoon rains occurring on the Abyssinian mountains. The perennial source of water in the lower Nile is the White Nile (Bahr-el-Abiad), a name which properly applies only to the main river from Khartoum up to Lake No (10° N.), where the Upper Nile—Bahr-el-Jebel (Mountain River)—is joined by the Bahr-el-Gazelle; but nowadays the name 'White Nile' is often loosely applied to the main river as far as the Great African Lakes. Supplementing this main supply, the annual floods are brought by the Blue Nile and the Atbara rivers, which rise in the Abyssinian mountains.

During the floods the Blue Nile has been found to be responsible for nearly 70 per cent. of the water in the Egyptian Nile, the Atbara for 17 per cent., and the White Nile for 14 per cent.; during the period of low water the White Nile provides over 80 per cent., and is thus the mainstay of the dry-season flow. The Nile in Egypt begins to rise about the end of June, growing turbid and red with the fertilising mud which it holds in suspension. By the month of September it has reached the top of its banks and begins to overflow, except where held in check by artificial embankments. In November and December it subsides again. At Cairo the rise is 20–25 feet.

The methods employed for utilising this vast volume of water for the benefit of the crops have changed considerably. But until only about one hundred years ago the sole method was that of the Pharaohs—the method described by Shakespeare in the words which he puts into the mouth of Mark Antony:



The higher Nilus swells,  
The more it promises: as it ebbs, the seedsman  
Upon the slime and ooze scatters his grain,  
And shortly comes to harvest.

It depends on the fact that thousands of annual floods have deposited silt brought down from Abyssinia to such an extent that the Nile banks in Egypt, below Aswan, are now slightly above the level of the surrounding floor of the valley. Cuts are made in the raised bank, and as the river level rises the water flows through on to the fields, which are arranged in a series of basins separated by embankments. The water remains on the land, depositing its valuable load of fertile silt, for six to eight weeks and is then allowed to run back to the river, the level of which has meanwhile fallen. The seed is then sown in the mud, and the crop is reaped before all the moisture is dried up. By this method of irrigation the soil was condemned to sterility for half the year, during which it was either under water or baked to a degree of hardness which made it impossible to grow anything. By it, too, only such crops could be grown as ripen within a short period—such as beans, clover, lentils, wheat, barley, and onions. Of far more economic importance is perennial irrigation, because it guards against the risk of a poor flood, permits of more than one crop being obtained in the year, and greatly extends the range of crops which can be grown.

Perennial irrigation of a kind has been practised from very ancient times, close to the river bank, by the use of the primitive 'shaduf,' a lever device for raising water from the river. The use of dams thrown across the river to store the water for irrigation purposes dates only from the early part of the last century. Mohammed Ali Pasha built a barrage across the Nile at the head of the delta to dam up the flood-water, which could thus be used to irrigate the fields for a much longer period than would have been possible under the old basin system. These works were extended under British influence; they consist of a pair of dams with sluices on the two main arms of the delta a little below Cairo. By their use a large part of the delta and the part of Egypt to the north-east of Cairo and the south of Zagazig have been made independent of the state of the Nile. The delta sluices are closed about February or March, and little water is allowed to escape to the sea between the time of closing and the commencement of the flood season in July. Large earthen banks called 'sudds' are built across the mouths to retain the water for irrigation. During the present century other barrages have been built at various localities on the river in Middle and Upper Egypt, the intention being to allow the water in basins belonging to a group in one part of the valley to be supplemented in a low flood by canals led from the next group higher up. The greatest is the gigantic dam at Aswan, which,

with its first subsidiary at Assiut, was opened in 1902 and has since been twice enlarged (see also p. 631). The Nile valley for 200 miles south of Aswan becomes a huge reservoir, the filling of which is accomplished between November and January. The water is drawn off into the irrigation canals between March and July.

Invaluable as these works are in distributing the fertilising waters of the Nile as the river flows through Egypt, the problem of supply goes beyond the confines of that country. As already noted, the sources of the Nile are far away to the south—those of the White Nile in the Great Equatorial Lakes, and those of the Blue Nile in the highlands of Abyssinia. The masses of vegetation known as the *sudd*, which obstruct the progress of the White Nile northward in its middle course through the Sudan, are another potent factor. The regulation of the Nile waters in these higher reaches of the river have long been the subject of engineering and political study, and developments are in progress. In 1949 an Anglo-Egyptian agreement provided for building a dam (opened 1954; see p. 681) at Owen Falls, Uganda, near the outlet of the Nile from Lake Victoria, for the production of hydro-electric power and for the control of the waters of the Nile in conjunction with other important works lower down the valley. Negotiations for these other works have been started in the Sudan and in Abyssinia, as well as in Egypt, but the national interests of the various countries are conflicting, and agreement is not yet in sight.

Before the introduction of perennial irrigation, the agricultural year in Egypt was divided into three parts, the season of inundation, from June to October; the season of cultivation, after the subsidence of the waters, from October to February; and the harvest season, varying with the individual crops, from February to June. Only one crop could be obtained each year from a single patch of ground. The fertility was amply maintained by the annual deposit of silt, supplemented in respect of nitrogen content by the growing of beans, lentils, and particularly the Egyptian variety of clover known as *bersim*. Under the present regime, many new features have been introduced. In the first place, it is now possible to obtain two crops per annum of the old staples of Egyptian agriculture, the small cereals and pulses. The winter crops occupy the ground between October and April, and the summer crops between April and October. Sometimes even an extra 'season' may be added, a quick crop of maize or millet being obtained between September and November. The following is a typical example of the succession of crops grown during a three-year period: Cotton is grown from March to the end of October, and is immediately followed by clover, of which perhaps seven cuts are taken before July; in the next eighteen months two crops of maize and one of wheat may be reaped, the wheat being grown in winter and spring; the second crop of

maize may be succeeded by clover, of which two cuts can be obtained before the ground is cleared once more at the beginning of March for cotton. Secondly, crops which require a rather longer season than was to be obtained under the old system are now able to be grown; such as cotton, now the most valuable crop of all, sugar-cane, rice, maize, and millet. Thirdly, the use of the water in irrigation canals instead of in floods over the fields has deprived the soil of its annual deposit of silt. This is the most serious drawback to perennial irrigation. The silt is now deposited in the river-bed and in the canals and reservoirs, and increased labour is involved in removing these deposits, which are piled up on the banks. This is of little moment, however, beside the loss of fertility which has resulted. Artificial fertilisers are having to be used in ever-increasing quantities in order to maintain crop yields. Egypt is fortunate in having two available sources of such material, the nitrates—known as 'tafla'—of the Nile valley between Keneh and Aswan, of local importance, and the more recently discovered and far more valuable field of phosphate rock on the Red Sea coast near Kosseir; but even so, chemical manures form an important item in the list of imports into the country, and the expense of these adds to the costs of agricultural production.

One feature of Egyptian agriculture which has scarcely been changed by the substitution of new for old methods of water supply is its comparatively primitive character. Mechanisation has obvious limitations where over two-thirds of the holdings are less than one acre in extent, and are separated by mud-banks.

The principal commercial crop in Egypt is cotton. The plant was introduced into the country a little over a century ago by Mohammed Ali Pasha, the originator of perennial irrigation, and its cultivation has extended steadily ever since, very largely owing to two factors, the high quality of the product and the increased facilities for its cultivation in areas watered by the perennial canals. There are two main varieties cultivated. The finest, called Sakellaridis (or in the trade 'Sakel') has a silky lustre and a long staple of about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches, qualities which make it second only to the famous 'Sea-Island' cotton (p. 172) of the West Indies. It is grown mainly in the delta. Of several other types the most important is Ashmouni, not so outstanding as Sakel but still a good quality fibre, and even more prolific. This is the principal variety grown in Upper Egypt.

In the quinquennium before the Second World War, the land under cotton averaged over 1·8 million acres (rather less than a third of the total cultivated area), produced a crop of some 882m. lb. of ginned cotton, and supplied from two-thirds to three-fourths of the total value of Egyptian exports. During the war, when food crops had preference, the area under cotton dropped below  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. acres. Naturally the lands retained for that crop were the best suited to,

cotton, and the average yield was more than maintained, never falling below the pre-war average of 480 lb. to the acre and usually exceeding 500 lb.; in 1942-43 it reached 570 lb. per acre, which was increased in 1948 to a peak of 580 lb. from 1½m. acres, giving a crop of 867m. lb., or almost as much as the average prior to the war. In the next few years the acreage reached over 2m., and though the yield per acre declined, heavy crops were harvested and stocks accumulated, adding to a world glut of cotton which brought down prices and stimulated unrest, amid which the Egyptian monarchy was overthrown. Subsequently restrictions were placed on the acreage devoted to cotton, and provisional returns for 1956-57 gave the planted area as under 1½m. acres, yielding less than 700m. lb. of cotton and averaging 433 lb. per acre. Formerly the United States, which produces over a third of the world's cotton, had an average yield of only about half the last figure, but in the past few years its average has also been above 400 lb. per acre. But for restricted cultivation, this would swamp the world market for cotton, and must in any case intensify competition with other countries. India averages barely 100 lb. per acre, and Pakistan's highest is no more than double that figure.

Egypt's other crops are mainly cereals and pulses—food crops whose war-time experience was the reverse of that of cotton; their acreage increased, but as the new land was not always the most naturally suited to them, the average yield tended to decline. Post-war experience varied with the crop. Wheat and maize, more or less on a par, tended to increase slightly, the 1955-56 figures being: wheat 1.6m. acres yielding 1.4m. tons (18 cwt. per acre); maize 1.9m. acres yielding 1.7m. tons (17.8 cwt. per acre). Barley not only declined from the level of war production but fell much below the pre-war average—from 280,000 acres to 140,000 acres in 1956, and from 255,000 tons to little over 100,000 tons. Sorghum, on the other hand, did better than before the war, increasing its pre-war average of 350,000 acres to over 450,000 acres in 1955, and its crop from 420,000 to 530,000 tons. Rice, though a variable crop, did better still, being grown on over 600,000 acres (50 per cent. more than pre-war), and more than doubling its pre-war production of 600,000 tons of paddy. There is a surplus of rice for export, but other cereals are insufficient for home needs, and wheat and maize have both been imported in considerable quantities since the war.

Other major crops include sugar-cane, of which 4m. tons yielding over 300,000 tons of raw sugar were produced in 1955; and broad beans, averaging over ½m. tons from nearly 400,000 acres. Onions are largely grown for export in a variety of forms (fresh, dehydrated, powdered, &c.), and potatoes are also exported. Animals are reared as part of the farming system, and in the year 1954-55 sheep, goats, cattle, asses, and buffaloes each numbered between ½m. and 1½m.,

while camels numbered 162,000. Fodder is available in the form of *bersim* (clover), grown universally as part of the crop rotation. In the oases, the more important of which are Siwah (far out in the desert west of Fayum), Kharga (west of Esna), and Farafra (west of Assiut), the same food crops are grown, and in addition dates, of which the production in 1955 was estimated at  $\frac{1}{3}$ m. tons.

Apart from its crops, Egypt's natural resources are not very considerable. Oil is found on both sides of the Gulf of Suez, and in 1957, the production of crude petroleum amounted to 2.3m. tons. It is refined at Suez, the output being mostly gas, diesel and fuel oils, in demand for shipping using the Canal. For a time after the Second World War prospecting was actively pursued, but no big development has resulted. Manganese ore, with a manganese content of 30 per cent. and an iron content of 10 per cent., is mined in the Sinai peninsula and exported mainly to Britain for use in the steel industry. Output before the War was about 150,000 tons; for a time during and after the War it almost disappeared, but in both 1955 and 1956 it was around 200,000 tons. In the latter year over 600,000 tons of phosphatic rock were produced, having a content of over  $\frac{1}{3}$ m. tons of phosphate of lime, but this was below the pre-war production. There has been a decline in the output of gold, which amounted to 7,679 fine troy ounces in 1956, this being much less than usual (in 1954 it was 17,387 fine ounces).

Industry is mainly concerned with the processing of local products, such as the milling of wheat and maize, the extraction of sugar from cane, the refining of oil, and the manufacture of cotton, woollen, and silk fabrics. There are textile factories in several towns in the Nile delta, the headquarters of the industry being Mehalla el Kubra, a town of over 100,000 inhabitants.

Notwithstanding this development, the great bulk of the cotton grown in Egypt is exported after ginning. In 1956, when Egypt's national exports had a total value of £E141m.,<sup>1</sup> the exports of raw cotton were valued at £E99m.—70 per cent. of the total. All other exports of Egyptian national produce are relatively insignificant. Next in export value to raw cotton in 1956 were rice (nearly £E9m.; over 6 per cent.), cotton yarn and fabrics (£E8m.; nearly 6 per cent.), vegetables (£E6m.; over 4 per cent.). Petroleum products were valued at £E1 $\frac{1}{2}$ m., just over 1 per cent.

Imports for home use in Egypt were valued in 1956 at £E186m. Foodstuffs accounted for £E27.7m. (15 per cent.), more than a third of that amount being required for wheat, flour and maize, and nearly a quarter for tea. Mineral fuels, nearly all petroleum and products, provided 10 per cent. (£E19m.) of the imports, chemicals another 10 per cent., with fertilisers (£E6m.) as the biggest item, and crude materials 8 per cent. (£E15m.), the biggest item being lumber

<sup>1</sup> The sterling value of the Egyptian £ is £1 0s. 6 $\frac{1}{2}$ d.

(£E5½m.). All these groups combined were not equal to the imports of manufactures, which made up just half (£E93m.) of the total and consisted chiefly of manufactured goods (£E43½m.) and machinery and transport equipment (£E44½m.). Among manufactured goods the main items were iron and steel (£E17m.), textiles (£E8m.), and paper (£E5m.) and machinery included electric machinery and appliances (£E10½m.), road motor vehicles (£E7½m.), and textile machinery (£E5m.).

More than half the imports came from half a dozen countries, three of them providing over a third—United States (£E25m.), United Kingdom (£E22m.), West Germany (£E21m.); and the next three nearly one-sixth—Italy (£E12m.), France (£E9½m.), and Russia (£E7·9m.). The only outstanding customer for the exports was Czechoslovakia (£E20¾m.), which, with half a dozen other countries, took well over half the total; these others were Japan (£E10m.), France (£E10½m.), Sudan (£E9m.), India (£E8·9m.), China (£E8½m.), and Italy (£E8·2m.).

The distribution of trade in 1957 followed a very different pattern, as a result of the new orientation of Egypt's trade policy after the Suez Canal trouble. Imports (£E182½m.) showed little change in value, but exports jumped to £E171½m. Russia took the lead from the United States, selling to Egypt goods valued at £E18·6m. and taking Egyptian exports (chiefly cotton at enhanced prices, payable in Egyptian currency) valued at £E31·3m. The balance in Egypt's favour is much more if the trade with other Communist countries be included. On the other hand, the Western world supplied to Egypt imports valued at far more than Egypt's exports to the West. On both sides the balance is a matter for adjustment, but the adjustment gives rise to economic complications which add to Egypt's financial difficulties. A point to note is that the trade of Britain and France with Egypt in 1957 fell to a combined total of no more than £E8m.

The bulk of the foreign commerce is concentrated upon Alexandria, the ancient port named after Alexander the Great, situated at the north-west extremity of the delta, away from the silt, which is swept eastwards by currents. The remainder of the trade is divided between Port Said, at the Mediterranean entrance to the Suez Canal; Suez, at the southern end of the Canal; and overland routes to and from the Sudan. The capital, Cairo, situated on the right bank of the Nile at the head of the delta, was a natural converging point in the past for caravan routes, as it now is for rail and air routes. Its port is the suburb of Bulak.

Not the least valuable of Egypt's assets, normally, is the tourist traffic, though currency restrictions have hampered it since the Second World War. The Nile plays an important part in this traffic, and commercially also it is not a negligible factor, though it presents

difficulties for navigation. Shallow-draught vessels are able to ply on it as far up as the Aswan dam, where a lock allows the ascent to Shellal, whence navigation can proceed as far as Wadi Halfa, on the Sudan border. Several canals assist navigation from the Cairo district to the sea; the chief (the Mahmudia Canal) connects the western arm of the delta with the port of Alexandria; another connects Zagazig, on the eastern side of the delta, with the Suez Canal. Some 3,000 miles of state railways have a gauge of 4 ft. 8½ in., and there are 7–800 miles of narrow gauge lines (2 ft. 6 in.), mostly privately owned and serving the agricultural districts of the delta as feeders to the standard gauge system. Railway traffic is carried across the Suez Canal on a swing bridge built during the Second World War by the British Army, a few miles south of Kantara.

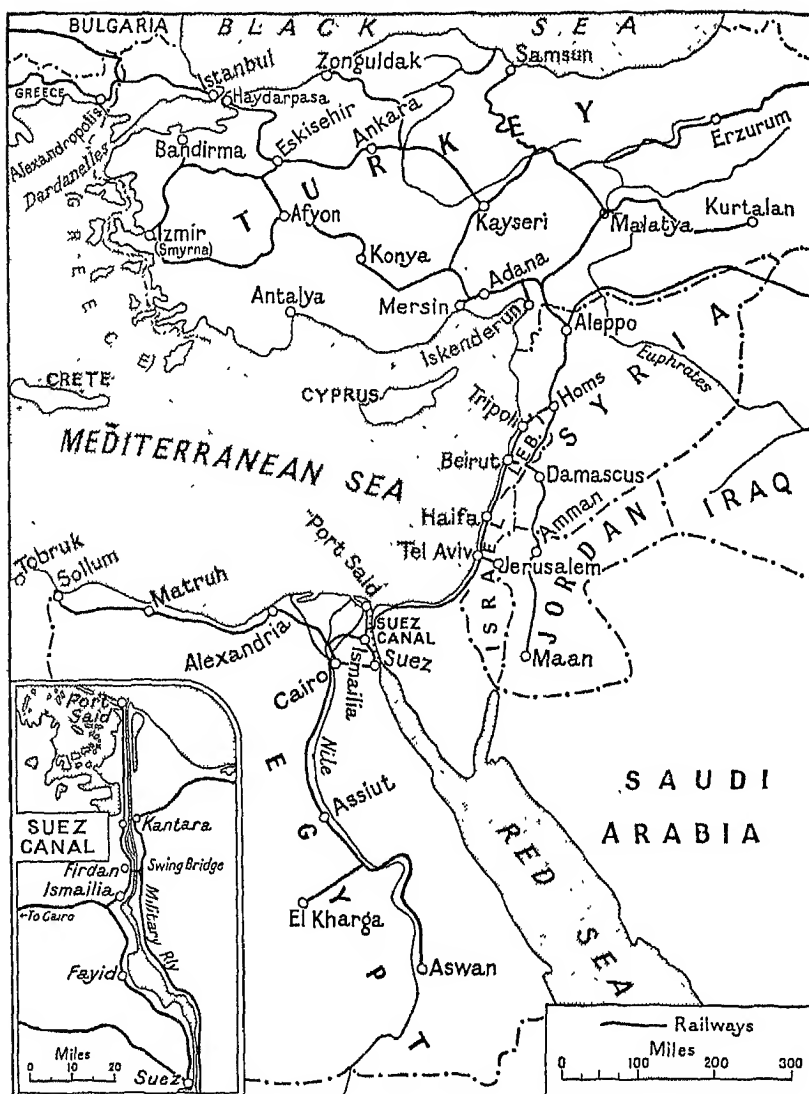
Cairo is an airport of major world importance; it is the junction of British air lines to India and South Africa, has Dutch connections to Holland and the East Indies, and local services to Alexandria, Aswan, and Israel. The Egyptian Government has built a marine airport on Lake Mariut, near the centre of Alexandria.

### The Suez Canal

A monument to the genius of the French engineer, Ferdinand de Lessep, the Suez Canal was sponsored by the then Turkish Viceroy of Egypt in the middle of last century. It was supported by France and other European countries, but not by Britain. Work was begun in 1859 and the canal was opened in 1869. In 1875 the Khedive of Egypt sold to the British Government his holding in the enterprise—44 per cent—and from then onwards France and Britain developed the canal until it was seized by Egypt.

Including approach channels to the terminal harbours, the Canal is 103 miles long. From time to time since it was opened, it has been widened and deepened. In 1950, it had a minimum depth of 40 ft., the permitted maximum draught for ships passing through it being 34 ft.—increased in 1958 to 35 ft. The general width is 400–500 ft., and the minimum at the standard navigable depth is 197 ft. Passages may be made both day and night.

By agreement between the Canal Company and the Egyptian Government in 1949, further improvements, scheduled for completion in 1954, were undertaken. They included (1) the deepening of the Canal to permit of the passage of vessels drawing up to 36 ft., and (2) the cutting of a by-pass 7½ miles long to facilitate transit in both directions. It had been agreed, prior to the Egyptian Government's seizure of the Canal, that on the expiry in 1968 of the 99-year concession the entire property should pass to the Government, but after the troubles in 1956 Egypt paid to the shareholders in 1958 compensation of £E28·3m.



EGYPT IN RELATION TO OTHER COUNTRIES AT THE EASTERN END OF THE MEDITERRANEAN, WITH INSET MAP OF THE SUEZ CANAL



The percentage of the net tonnage of British shipping passing through the Canal was, in 1900, 57·6; in 1920, 64·0; in 1938, 50·4; in 1952, 33·3; in 1958, 21·4. Total traffic in each year, 1869–1958:

NET TONNAGE IN THOUSANDS OF TONS (000 OMITTED)

Year.	No. of Vessels.	Tonnage.	Year.	No. of Vessels.	Tonnage.	Year.	No. of Vessels.	Tonnage
1869	10	6·6	1899	3,607	9,896	1929	6,274	33,466
1870	486	437	1900	3,441	9,738	1930	5,761	31,669
1871	756	761	1901	3,699	10,824	1931	5,352	30,031
1872	1,082	1,161	1902	3,708	11,248	1932	5,029	28,354
1873	1,173	1,368	1903	3,761	11,907	1933	5,416	30,674
1874	1,264	1,632	1904	4,237	13,402	1934	5,651	31,736
1875	1,494	2,010	1905	4,116	13,134	1935	5,992	32,811
1876	1,457	2,097	1906	3,975	13,446	1936	5,877	32,379
1877	1,663	2,355	1907	4,267	14,728	1937	6,635	36,491
1878	1,593	2,270	1908	3,797	13,640	1938	6,171	34,418
1879	1,477	2,263	1909	4,241	15,418	1939	5,277	29,573
1880	2,026	3,057	1910	4,538	16,575	1940	2,589	13,536
1881	2,727	4,137	1911	4,969	18,327	1941	1,804	8,263
1882	3,198	5,057	1912	5,372	16,672	1942	1,646	7,028
1883	3,307	5,776	1913	5,085	20,034	1943	2,262	11,274
1884	3,284	5,872	1914	—	—	1944	3,320	18,125
1885	3,624	6,336	1915	3,708	15,266	1945	4,206	25,065
1886	3,100	5,768	1916	3,110	12,325	1946	5,057	32,732
1887	3,137	5,903	1917	2,353	8,369	1947	5,972	36,577
1888	3,440	6,641	1918	2,522	9,252	1948	8,686	55,081
1889	3,425	6,783	1919	3,986	16,014	1949	10,420	68,862
1890	3,389	6,890	1920	4,009	17,575	1950	11,751	81,796
1891	4,207	8,699	1921	3,976	18,260	1951	11,694	80,336
1892	3,559	7,712	1922	4,347	20,861	1952	12,168	86,137
1893	3,341	7,659	1923	4,621	22,873	1953	12,731	92,905
1894	3,352	8,039	1924	5,122	25,261	1954	13,215	102,493
1895	3,434	8,448	1925	5,337	26,762	1955	14,616	115,756
1896	3,409	8,560	1926	4,980	26,060	1956 <sup>1</sup>	13,291	107,006
1897	2,986	7,899	1927	5,543	28,965	1957 <sup>2</sup>	8,576	72,248
1898	3,503	9,239	1928	6,081	31,906	1958	17,842	154,479

<sup>1</sup> First 10 months. <sup>2</sup> Second 6 months.

POPULATION OF PRINCIPAL TOWNS IN EGYPT AT 1947 CENSUS

Cairo . . . . .	2,090,654	Mehalla el Kubra . . . . .	115,738
Alexandria . . . . .	919,024	Suez . . . . .	107,244
Port Said . . . . .	177,703	Mansûra . . . . .	101,965
Tanta . . . . .	139,926	Assiut . . . . .	90,103

## SUDAN

After its reconquest in 1896–99 from the Mahdists, who for sixteen years had held tyrannical sway over it, the area lying between Egypt and Uganda was given the status of a condominium, or joint dominion of England and Egypt. Known as the Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, or simply 'the Sudan,' it was administered under the Anglo-Egyptian Convention of 1899, by a Governor-General appointed by Egypt with the assent of Britain. Its status as a condominium was reaffirmed in the Anglo-Egyptian Treaty of 1936, but in 1951 Egypt abrogated both Convention and Treaty and claimed sovereignty over the Sudan. The British Government refused to recognise this unilateral action, and in February, 1953, an Anglo-Egyptian Agree-

ment assured to the Sudanese the right to decide their own future within three years of an 'Appointed Day,' to be named by the Governor-General after a Sudanese General Election. The election was held at the end of 1953, and January 9, 1954, was named the Appointed Day. In December, 1955, the House of Representatives voted unanimously for an independent sovereign state, and a republic was proclaimed by the co-domini in January, 1956.

The Sudan covers an area of just under a million square miles, with an estimated population (1956 census) of 10·2m. in two main divisions—the Arab peoples of the northern provinces, with their distinctive civilisation, and the primitive tribes of the upper Nile. Throughout the territory the Nile valley is the main artery of trade and seat of population; but there are numerous nomadic or semi-nomadic tribes in the highlands of Darfur and the Libyan desert on the west, and in the Abyssinian foothills and the Nubian desert on the east and north-east. In the extreme north-east the territory extends to the Red Sea, which it borders for some 500 miles, forming the central section of the western shore.

Under 3 per cent. of the whole country is classed as arable, 10 per cent. as pastoral, between 30 and 40 per cent. as wooded. The remaining 50 per cent. is not of much account at present; 15 per cent. is reckoned as potentially productive; 55 per cent. is classed as 'built on, waste, and other.'

The summer rainfall, largely in thunderstorms, increases steadily from north to south. At the northern limit (22°N.) is absolute desert. Khartoum (16°N.) has 5 inches, nearly all in July and August; Lake No (10°N.) has nearly 30 inches; Mongalla (5°N., a degree from the southern frontier) has nearly 40 inches, mainly from April to October. The seasonal character of the rainfall is responsible for the annual flooding of large areas in the south, where the topography of the vast basin of the Bahr-el-Jebel, or Albert Nile, which lies at an elevation of between 1,200 ft. and 1,500 ft. above sea-level, is extremely flat. On its way north the Bahr-el-Jebel is joined at the great swamp of Lake No by the Bahr-el-Ghazal, its only considerable affluent from the highlands of Darfur, and shortly afterwards by the Sobat, which collects the drainage of the Abyssinian foothills. Beyond these the Nile receives little or no water from tributaries on either side except the two great streams from the Abyssinian mountains, the Blue Nile and—below Khartoum—the Atbara, which are responsible for the annual flooding of the Egyptian Nile (p. 632).

The natural vegetation of the Bahr-el-Jebel basin is savanna, or tropical grassland; trees are found along the water-courses only, lack of perennial water and the natural annual firing of the grass preventing much tree growth elsewhere. The streams themselves frequently flow through swamps, where papyrus, bulrushes, and

floating weeds grow in abundance. During the flood season much of this vegetation becomes detached and floats, blocking up the water channels, causing further flooding, and hindering navigation. This floating vegetation is called 'sudd.' The main stream of the Bahr-el-Jebel is regularly patrolled and kept navigable from Lake Albert to Nimule on the northern frontier of Uganda, and again, after a long stretch of rapids, from Rejaf, just south of latitude 5°N. On the Sobat and Bahr-el-Ghazal navigation is practicable only in summer, on the former to the Abyssinian town of Gambela, and on the latter to Wau. The savanna becomes drier towards the north. Acacias are the principal trees.

The southern portion of the Sudan is inhabited mainly by primitive peoples, such as the Nuer and Dinka tribes, who support life by rearing cattle, fishing, hunting the hippopotamus, and growing crops of millet or maize after the summer rains. Some cotton and coffee are also produced. Over the remainder of the territory the products are mainly vegetable. Little mineral wealth has been exploited, or indeed discovered. Some salt is obtained on the Red Sea coast, and a little gold at Gebeit, in the Red Sea hills. Gum-arabic is the most valuable collected product, the Sudan being the world's principal source of this substance. The finest quality gum is derived from the tree *Acacia vereke*, but the *Acacia arabica* is also exploited. Most of the gum comes from the central part of the territory, in the province of Kordofan. Of the cultivated crops, those used chiefly for food are the *dura* variety of millet, and dates; the latter are obtained mainly from the more desert regions of the north, the former is cultivated in almost every settlement, both with and without irrigation. Sesamum and groundnuts are also grown.

Economically the most important crop is cotton, which in 1956-1957, an unusually good crop year, was grown on over  $\frac{3}{4}$ m. acres and produced 250m. lb. (388 lb. per acre). Some American cotton is grown during the summer rains in the Nuba Mountains of Kordofan and in the Bahr-el-Jebel region, but most of the crop is Egyptian 'sakel' cotton. This was first cultivated in the north-east, on the Gash and Baraka rivers, around Kassala and Tokar, but since irrigation water has been available in the Gezira (the plain occupying the angle between the White and Blue Niles south of Khartoum), the latter area has become predominant. It is remarkably level, with a gentle slope to the west and north-west, and grows many crops. A mighty dam at Sennar, on the Blue Nile, was completed in 1925, and almost at once a quarter of a million acres of hitherto semi-arid land were brought under cultivation; further canal construction has increased the area of the Gezira Scheme to over a million acres, with  $\frac{1}{4}$ m. acres of cotton yielding 100m. lb.

As in Egypt, livestock are everywhere important. Forage crops grown in the irrigated areas provide fodder for cattle, whilst cattle

reared on the natural grasses represent the chief source of wealth for the semi-nomadic peoples of the south. The total number of cattle is estimated at over 6m. Sheep (6m.), goats (5m.), and camels (1½m.) are also reared, for milk, meat, wool, or hair, or as beasts of burden. Camel-caravan routes running across the Libyan and Nubian deserts to the Red Sea are now almost supplanted by railway and motor roads; and the old market centres of El Fasher in Darfur, Berber on the Nile, and Suakin on the Red Sea coast have lost much of their former importance.

Over 2,000 miles of 3 ft. 6 in. railway and some 2,400 miles of river-steamer routes in the flood season carry most of the trade of the Sudan. As in Egypt, rail must supplement river transport where the Nile flows over the edges of the crystalline rocks of Nubia. The main line of railway runs from Wadi Halfa (see p. 639) across the great Dongola bend of the Nile to Abu Hamed, follows the river up to Atbara and Khartoum, and then goes up the Blue Nile to Sennar. From Atbara a line goes east to Port Sudan and Suakin on the Red Sea. At Sennar the line forks: one branch goes west, crossing the Nile at Kosti, to the Kordofan market centre of El Obeid; the other east and north through country bordering on Abyssinia and Eritrea, along the Nile-Red Sea watershed, to link up with the Port Sudan line.

The White Nile—using the name in its loose sense—is navigable nearly to the Uganda frontier, and the Blue Nile in summer up to Roseires. Road communication in the south, where the seasonal rains render maintenance difficult, is in its infancy, but all-season roads are available across the southern frontier into Uganda and the Belgian Congo; there is still, however, no permanent road linking northern and southern Sudan, the river and, more recently, the aeroplane providing the only routes. Khartoum is a regular landing-ground on the air service from London to Nairobi, and Wadi Halfa, Malakal, and Juba are landing-grounds for local services.

Khartoum, which was captured from the Mahdists, together with the large village of Omdurman, in 1898, has been rebuilt as a European city and is the administrative centre. It lies at the junction of the Blue and White Niles, in the angle between them, and has derived much importance from its focal position and from the development of cotton and other crops in the Gezira. With Khartoum North, on the far side of the Blue Nile, and Omdurman, on the far side of the White Nile, it forms a conurbation of between ¼m. and ½m. people. Omdurman is essentially an overgrown African market centre, but with the continued increase of population it is beginning to develop civic character, with broad thoroughfares and a boulevard stretching for miles along the river front.

Under the condominium the Sudan currency was the same as the Egyptian. Since 1957 the Sudan has had its own currency, but

the Sudan £ is equivalent to the Egyptian (£1 0s. 6½d.). Imports in 1956 amounted to £E45m. and exports to £E65½m. The chief imports were cotton piece goods (£E6m.; 13 per cent.), machinery and transport equipment (£E4m.; 9 per cent.), sugar (£E4.6m.; 10 per cent.), coffee and tea (£E3.6m.; 8 per cent.). The dominating exports were cotton and cotton seed (£E46.4m.; 70 per cent.). Gum arabic provided 49,000 tons (£E5.4m.; 8 per cent.) and groundnuts £E3.8m. (6 per cent.). Other exports included sesame (£E2m.), cattle and sheep (£E1½m.), and hides and skins (£E¾m.). Over half the imports came from the United Kingdom (£E12¼m.), Egypt (£E6¼m.), and India (£E5½m.). A third of the exports were taken by the United Kingdom (£E22m.) and another third by India (£E8¾m.), Egypt (£E7½m.) and Italy (£E5¾m.).

More than 80 per cent. of the foreign trade passes through Port Sudan (50,000), an artificial port constructed in 1906, when the railway reached the coast, to replace the old Arab harbour of Suakin, which was unable to accommodate large vessels. Port Sudan has increased rapidly, and is a regular port of call for liners bound from Europe to East Africa, India, and the Far East.

### THE EASTERN HORN

The 'Eastern Horn' of Africa includes Abyssinia and the adjoining Red Sea and Indian Ocean coastlands of Eritrea and Somaliland.

**ABYSSINIA**, or **ETHIOPIA** as it is officially styled, is an independent sovereign state, organised on feudal lines. It has an ancient civilisation with a barbaric background, which a progressive emperor is trying to modernise. It was conquered and occupied by Italy in 1936, but was restored to independence by the British in the Second World War, with an Italian legacy of improved road communications. By resolution of the United Nations the adjoining territory of Eritrea (formerly an Italian colony; see p. 646) was federated with Abyssinia in 1952 on the basis of autonomy in local affairs. The new arrangement is important to Abyssinia as giving her access to the sea, from which she was formerly cut off. Abyssinian statistics are of doubtful value. As estimated for the United Nations (F.A.O.) the area of Ethiopia is nearly 410,000 square miles; a more usual estimate is 350,000. Eritrea has an area of about 48,000 square miles. The combined population is estimated officially at over 20m. Other estimates are much smaller. Eritrea has about 1m.

Abyssinia is a land of high mountains and plateaus, and the population is mostly resident above 5,000 ft. Addis Ababa, the capital (400,000), lies above 8,000 ft., and there are peaks rising to 14,000 ft. Lake Tsana (6,000 ft.) is the source of the Blue Nile. A

single-track metre-gauge French railway, 486 miles long, connects the French port of Djibuti with Addis Ababa, which is also reached by air from Cairo. Some forests, where coffee grows wild, occur at lower levels; much of the land between 6,000 and 9,000 ft. can be used for cultivation and pasture, producing cereals and fruits of Mediterranean type, whilst between 9,000 and 13,000 ft. there are vast areas of open pasture. Cattle are numbered at 20m. and sheep at 18m. Gold and platinum are worked.

The Ethiopian dollar, the currency unit, has a sterling value of 2s. 10d. (7 to the £). In 1956 the Federation had imports valued at Eth.\$167m. (£24m.) and exports valued at Eth.\$152m. (£21½m.). Textile manufactures, chiefly cotton goods, provided 28 per cent. of the imports, motor vehicles and accessories 10 per cent., gasoline and associated products 10 per cent. Coffee provided over half the exports, and hides and skins 10 per cent. India, Italy, the United States and the United Kingdom supplied half the imports, and nearly three-fourths of the exports went to the United States, Italy, Aden, and French Somaliland.

**Eritrea**, now linked with Abyssinia in a federation which attaches it to the Ethiopian Crown but allows it local autonomy, is nearly as large as England; it includes a narrow coastal strip, extending for more than five hundred miles along the Red Sea from the Strait of Bab-el-Mandeb northward, backed by an escarpment rising some 8,000 ft. to a plateau which falls away again to the west. Both the winter rains of the tropical lowlands and the summer rains of the temperate plateau are scanty and uncertain, and cultivation on a commercial scale calls for irrigation. A narrow-gauge railway (95 cm.; about 3 ft. 1½ in.) runs from the chief port, Massawa (population 27,000), up the escarpment to the capital, Asmara (125,000), an Italianised city where most of the Italian colonists who remain are to be found, and thence continues over the plateau to Agordat, a total distance of about 190 miles from Massawa. Roads are first class, and Asmara has regular air services to and from neighbouring countries. The small population is divided mainly between Moslems and Christians (Copts). Pearl fishing is practised along the coast, and there is a big production of salt from salt pans at Massawa (130,000 tons in 1956) and Assab, the second port. Some cotton and millet are grown, under irrigation, in the coastal strip, but the main wealth of the African population is in their flocks and herds—over a million cattle and nearly a million sheep. Hides and skins are exported.

**FRENCH SOMALILAND**, situated on the coast between Eritrea and British Somaliland, and backed by Abyssinia, occupies a commanding position immediately south of the entrance to the Red Sea. It is the smallest of the Somaliland territories, with an area of 9,000 square miles (a fifth larger than Wales) and a popula-

tion estimated (1955) at 63,000. Nearly half of these are resident in Djibuti, the capital and port of the territory, terminus of the railway to Addis Ababa (p. 646). This railway, which carries much of the external trade of Abyssinia, is French Somaliland's chief claim to economic importance. The Djibuti franc equals two French francs. Imports 1955, 7,296m. Dj. francs; exports 253m. Dj. francs.

**BRITISH SOMALILAND**, lying along the northern coast of the Horn of Africa, and looking cross the Gulf of Aden to Aden Colony and Protectorate, is itself a British protectorate, with an area of 68,000 square miles—a third as large again as England, but with a population of under a million. Like the other territories in this corner of Africa, it is largely desert and occupied by nomad tribes whose wealth is in their flocks and herds—chiefly sheep and goats (4–5m.) and camels (2m.). Among vegetable products are frankincense and myrrh. A coastal plain is backed by plateaus rising to 7,000 ft. and extending, in Abyssinia, to the Haud, home of the Ogaden Somalis. Held by Britain during the war, the Haud was restored to Abyssinia in 1954, subject to British grazing rights. The chief British port, Berbera, varies seasonally in population from 15,000 to 30,000. The capital, Hargeisa (30,000–40,000), is in the uplands. The unit of currency is the East African shilling. Imports in 1957 were valued at £4m. (mostly food and textiles) and exports at £1.36m. (sheep and goats for food, and hides and skins). There is no railway.

**SOMALIA**, formerly Italian Somaliland, fronting the Indian Ocean, was occupied by British Forces during the Second World War and remained under British administration till 1950, when it was restored to Italy by the United Nations as a Trustee Territory for ten years, with a view to its development in that time to the status of an independent sovereign state. It has an area of 190,000 square miles (two-thirds larger than Italy) and an estimated population of 1½m. It is largely desert or semi-desert, ranged by pastoral tribes owning large numbers of sheep (2m.), goats (3m.), cattle (¾m.), and camels (1½m.). The two main water-courses, the Juba and the Webi Shebeli, are in the south, and here, where Kenya ceded an area of 33,000 square miles to its northern neighbour in 1926, are extensive Italian plantations yielding commercial crops of cotton, sugar-cane, and bananas. Bananas provide over half the exports by value; in the season a regular service of banana ships conveys the crop (65–75,000 tons) to Genoa. The capital and chief port is Mogadiscio, with an estimated population of 80,000. The currency unit is the *somali* (= 1s.). Imports in 1956 were valued at *somali* 115m. (£5½m.)—more than half manufactured goods and machinery. Exports amounted to *somali* 65m. (£3½m.).

The prospect of independence in 1960, and its repercussions in other Somali lands, led to much talk of possible federations.

## LIBYA

The vast area lying between Egypt and the French territories of north-west Africa was the former Turkish province of Tripoli. It was seized by Italy in 1912 and lost by her in the Second World War. It contains three provinces, of which Cyrenaica in the east, bordering Egypt, and Tripolitania in the north-west, bordering Tunisia, came temporarily under British rule, while the third, Fezzan, a desert inland territory, bordering Algeria, was administered by France, pending decision by the United Nations on the future of Libya. In accordance with the decision finally reached, Libya was constituted, in December 1951, an independent sovereign kingdom, combining the three provinces on a federal basis, with the Amir of Cyrenaica as hereditary monarch of the whole (King of Libya), an elected Parliament of two Chambers for the whole, and a Governor for each province assisted by an executive council and a legislative council. The total area is estimated at 680,000 square miles (six times the size of Italy), of which Cyrenaica forms nearly half, Fezzan a third, and Tripolitania a fifth. On the other hand Tripolitania has some 800,000 of the total population of 1½m., Cyrenaica 400,000, and Fezzan 50,000. Tripoli and Benghazi (Cyrenaica) are joint capitals, functioning in turn. To avoid the recurrent change, a permanent 'administrative centre' is being built in the Jebel district of Cyrenaica at Beida, 1,500 ft. above sea-level, where the King has a summer residence.

Much of the country is rock or sand, desert or semi-desert, and southwards it merges into the Sahara; but the desert is interspersed with many extensive oases—Jarabub, Jalo, Kufra, Jofra, Murzuk Ghadames, Ghat, &c. In the coastal zone also are some of the richest oases in North Africa, yielding good crops of dates, oranges, olives, and other Mediterranean products. These are varied by steppe country suitable both for growing cereals and for raising livestock. Italian colonisation was especially active in the coastal region round Tripoli and on the slopes of the Barka plateau in Cyrenaica. Salt is obtained along the seashore, and sponge and tunny fisheries are carried on along the coast. Date palms are estimated at 3m., yielding 30,000 tons a year, and olive trees at 3½m., producing 16,000 tons of olives and yielding 3,000 tons of oil. In Tripolitania, 500,000 acres of barley produced 35,000 tons in 1955, and 100,000 acres of



wheat some 9,000 tons. Tripolitania and Cyrenaica are credited with 1.4m. sheep, 1m. goats, 130,000 cattle, and 125,000 camels.

Oil was found in Fezzan in 1957, near the Algerian frontier, and though the 'strike' was not an economic proposition it led to a big prospecting campaign by leading oil companies, who planned to spend nearly £20m. on the search. A surprise discovery was an abundant fresh-water supply over a wide area at a water-table level of 600–1,000 ft. below the surface of the desert.

The currency unit is the Libyan £ of 100 piastres, equivalent to the £ sterling. The country is subsidised by both Britain and the United States in return for military and air bases, and the result is reflected in the trade returns. Exclusive of Fezzan, imports in 1956 were valued at £16.6m. and exports at £3.8m. Over a quarter of the imports were for food, principally cereals (£1.9m.) and tea (£865,000). Manufactures accounted for over half, principally textiles (£1½m.), machinery (£1¾m.), and transport equipment (£1½m.). Over a quarter of the exports consisted of food, principally livestock (£573,000). Other leading exports were groundnuts (£818,000) and esparto (£403,000). Sixty per cent. of the imports came from the United Kingdom (£4.99m.) and Italy (£4.97m.), and they took 60 per cent. of the exports—Italy £1.45m., U.K. over £¾m.

Several short railway lines radiate from Tripoli (estimated population 130,000) and Benghazi (70,000). A motor road runs along the coast and a bus service links Tripoli and Benghazi. Electric power and other public utilities are being developed.

## THE ATLAS LANDS

The Atlas Lands of western North Africa, so called from their chief physical feature, the Atlas mountains, are European rather than African in their structure and climate, Asiatic rather than African in their native population. They are known to the Arabs as 'Jesirat-el-Maghreb'—the Island in the West—because they form a large habitable area enfolded by the Mediterranean and the Sahara. This area constitutes a geographical region about as large as the British Isles and France added together, with considerable variety of topography and agricultural possibilities. During the past two thousand years one empire after another has conquered the area and left its mark: Carthage, Rome, the Vandals, the Byzantines, the Arabs, and the Turks. French influence dates from 1830. Algeria was proclaimed a French colony in 1834, but several decades elapsed before economic progress began; Tunisia accepted French protection in 1881, and after a long period of warfare the Sultan of Morocco did likewise in 1912. The varying length of the period of French influence, and the varying proportion of African to European population, result in distinct differences of development. Algeria,

sometimes called 'France in Africa,' has been developed and colonised largely with a view to increasing France's material wealth and food supply; in Tunis the European population is both French and Italian; the modern development of Morocco dates mainly from the First World War. In all three territories, since the Second World War, Arab nationalist sentiment has increased, and French rule has been challenged. Morocco and Tunisia have been given independence; Algeria's future is (1959) in the melting-pot.

**ALGERIA.** Parallel chains of the Great and Little Atlas cross northern Algeria from south-west to north-east, coming from Morocco and extending into Tunisia. In Algeria the region best fitted for cultivation is a strip of lowland or land at moderate elevation between the coast and the Little Atlas, a strip known as the Tell. The region between the Great and the Little Atlas is a plateau producing little besides alfa (*esparto*). South of the Atlas is the Biled-ul-jerid, or Land of Dates. In its full extent Algeria embraces a vast tract of the Sahara—not all level sandy wastes, but broken by extensive uplands, notably the great mountain mass of Ahaggar, rising to between 6,000 and 7,000 ft. Algeria has a total area of 850,000 square miles and a population of some 10m. It is divided into North Algeria, comprising a dozen departments grouped in three prefectures (Algiers, Oran and Constantine) with special status, and Southern Algeria, composed of territories. The areas and the populations of the two divisions are in inverse ratio; Northern Algeria occupies less than a tenth of the total area and supports more than nine-tenths of the total population. It is this region, rather smaller than Great Britain, from which Algeria derives most of its economic and commercial importance.

About a tenth of the population is French; the great majority are Kabyles (Berbers) and Arabs. Since the French occupation over a hundred years ago, French communities have been established in many places, sometimes on land confiscated from rebellious Berbers and Arabs. The modern development of the country is largely due to French industry and enterprise, supported by government expenditure on public works. Roads and railways have been built, harbours constructed, new lands brought under cultivation by the sinking of artesian wells. Northern Algeria has good natural resources. There are extensive fisheries, and considerable mineral wealth, chiefly represented, in the past, by iron ore ( $2\frac{1}{2}$ m. tons in 1956) and phosphates (between half and three-quarters of a million tons). In recent years these resources have been overshadowed by growing knowledge of the latent mineral wealth of the Sahara, especially in oil and particularly in the Hassi Messaoud district south of Touggourt. The first cargo of oil left Philippeville for France in March, 1958, after being piped to Touggourt and thence conveyed by rail. Later, plans were announced for a big pipeline from Hassi Messaoud to

the port of Bougie, which has better loading facilities than Philippeville and is to be expanded to take tankers of up to 80,000 tons. It is anticipated that the pipeline will be able to carry 4m. tons of crude oil a year by the end of 1959, and 14m. tons by 1962. Also a group of oil companies intends to build near Algiers an oil refinery with a capacity of 2m. tons a year.

The Sahara extends over the hinterland not only of Algeria but of French West Africa and French Equatorial Africa; and with the new realisation of the Sahara's mineral resources France took steps in 1957, while leaving civil administrations unchanged, to co-ordinate resources in the various hinterlands under a new 'Organisation Commune des Régions Sahariennes.'

Large areas of Algeria are occupied by woodlands, often of secondary growth, but including some fine forests, among which the cork-oak is the chief commercial factor. Climate and crops are similar to those of southern Italy and southern Spain. The principal cereals grown are wheat and barley—wheat with a crop of 1½m. tons in 1955 from 4·7m. acres, barley 700,000 tons from 3½m. acres. In 1955 oats produced 86,000 tons from over ½m. acres, and potatoes, a heavy-yielding crop, 250,000 tons from 50,000 acres. Among Mediterranean fruits, grapes are outstanding; grown chiefly for wine, crops reach over 2m. tons from 1m. acres. The orange crop reaches over ½m. tons, and the production of dates is around 100,000 tons. About 20,000 tons of tobacco are also grown annually. Sheep are pre-eminent among livestock. In 1955 they numbered 6m., and goats over 3m. Cattle were estimated at 900,000, and camels at 180,000.

Communications are served by 22,000 miles of national, departmental, and main roads, and over 19,000 miles of by-roads and desert routes. Nearly 3,000 miles of railway link the principal centres of population in Northern Algeria and connect with the railway systems of Morocco and Tunisia, as well as sending out long tentacles southwards into the fringes of the Sahara—as far as Touggourt on the east and Figuig and Colomb Bechar on the west.

Since 1938 franc values have rocketed, but comparison with the pre-war figures is no criterion of real growth of trade. It is significant that whereas in 1939 exports exceeded imports in value by one-eighth, in 1956 imports exceeded exports in value by four-fifths. A quantitative study of the trade returns provides a particularly striking example of the danger of judging the post-war development of trade by values only. In 1956 the franc value of the exports of Algerian wine was over 20 times the value in 1938. But the quantity exported was actually less (13·3m. hectolitres against 16·4m.).

In 1956 the country was in a state of violent unrest, with almost continuous fighting between the Government and rebel forces. The franc stood at nearly 1,000 to the £ (for purposes of ready reckoning it is here taken as such), and while imports rose by £28m. to

£272m., exports fell by £12m. to £150m. Among the main imports were sugar, £12½m.; petroleum products, £14m.; motor vehicles and parts, £21m.; iron and steel and other metal manufactures, £23m.; machinery, £27m.; textiles and products, including clothing, £32m. These imports amounted to nearly half the total. Close on 40 per cent. of the exports were wines—£57m.; fresh vegetables provided £10m., citrus fruits £9m., and iron ore £9m. France supplied three-fourths (£200m.) of the imports and took three-fourths (£114m.) of the exports. Second among the supplying countries was the United States (£13m.), and second among the countries taking exports was the United Kingdom (£8½m.)

As showing the difference in trade returns, especially between export values in the country of dispatch and import values in the country of destination, it is noteworthy that according to the British Board of Trade returns, the U.K. imports from Algeria in 1956 included esparto (for paper-making) valued at £3·46m., metal-liferous ores and scrap (mostly iron ore) valued at £8·63m., and crude fertilisers valued at £0·27m.—a total for these three items alone of £12½m., or nearly half as much again as the Algerian total of £8½m. for exports to the United Kingdom in 1956.

The principal Algerian ports are Algiers (the capital), Oran, Mostaganem, Bône, Philippeville (the port of Constantine), and Bougie. The populations of these and other towns with 40,000 inhabitants or more in 1954 are shown below.

POPULATION OF PRINCIPAL TOWNS IN 1954

Algiers . . . .	361,000	Philippeville . . . .	70,000
Oran . . . . .	299,000	Blida . . . . .	68,000
Constantine . . . .	149,000	Mostaganem . . . .	60,000
Bône . . . . .	114,000	Sétif . . . . .	53,000
Sidi-Bel-Abbès . . . .	81,000	Bougie . . . . .	44,000
Tlemcen . . . . .	73,000	Mascara . . . . .	40,000

**TUNISIA.** A French protectorate from 1881, Tunisia was accorded internal autonomy in 1955 and independence as a sovereign state in March, 1956. In July, 1957, a constituent assembly abolished the monarchy, deposed the Bey, and elected the prime minister as president.

Though parts of a geographical whole, Morocco, Algeria and Tunisia differ in some notable respects physically as well as politically. The Great and Little Atlas extend from Algeria across northern Tunisia, but the chief area of cultivation in Tunisia is not, as in Algeria, between the coast and the Little Atlas, but between the two chains of the Atlas, where the Algerian intermediate plateau drops to the valley of the Mejerda, a river which rises on the plateau and in its lower course regularly overflows its banks during the winter rains, irrigating and fertilising the neighbouring plains. South of

the Atlas a string of shallow salt lakes (*shots*) extend from near the Gulf of Gabes inland for some 250 miles, reaching beyond the Tunisian frontier into Algeria and obstructing the passage of caravans trading between the fertile north and the desert south. These *shots* lie below sea-level, and a project was advanced to convert them into an arm of the sea, but was abandoned as uneconomic. It is estimated that there are over 3m. date palms in the southern oases, and over 22m. olive trees in the Sahel, as the south-east littoral is called.

In spite of differences, Tunisia is essentially a small edition, economically and commercially, of Northern Algeria. It is little more than half the size, with an area of 48,000 square miles (rather smaller than England) and its population (nearly 4m., including 150,000 French and 90,000 Italians) is less than half that of its neighbour. But it has much the same climatic conditions and resources. About a third of the area is classed as arable, but less than 1 per cent. is pastoral, and under 8 per cent. is forested. The other 60 per cent. is divided more or less equally between 'unused but potentially productive,' and 'built-on area, waste land, and other.' Sheep (estimated at 3m. in 1954-55) and goats (1.4m.) are the most numerous livestock. There are over  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. cattle, and more camels ( $\frac{1}{4}$ m.) than in Algeria. The chief cereal crops are wheat (up to 600,000 tons) and barley (up to 200,000 tons). Fruit crops are abundant—150,000 tons of grapes in 1955; 35-45,000 tons of dates; 45,000 tons of oranges. Wine is not the dominating factor in the export trade that it is in Algeria, but Tunisia has the greater production of olive oil. The output in 1954 was 60,000 tons, though in the following year, true to the erratic nature of the olive crop, it dropped to less than half that amount. The forests on the hill-slopes north of the Mejerda are rich in cork-oaks and another species of oak which has a valuable tanning bark. Supplies of esparto grass are also abundant. Other products which Tunisia has in common with Algeria are iron ore and phosphates. The output of phosphates (2m. tons) is double that of iron ore.

As in Algeria, trade is based on the French franc. In 1956 imports were valued at Frs.63,000m. (approximately £63m.) and exports at £37m. The largest individual item among the imports was sugar (£4m.), though motor vehicles and parts came to about the same figure, and textile yarns and fabrics and made-up goods totalled £7m. The main exports were phosphates £5 $\frac{1}{2}$ m., iron ore £4m., wheat £4 $\frac{1}{2}$ m., and olive oil £3 $\frac{3}{4}$ m. The distribution of the trade was much the same as that of Algeria.

The needs of internal transport are served by 1,300 miles of railway and 5,600 miles of roads, mostly main roads, bitumenised or otherwise metalled. Air services, both internal and external, and including freight, are developing, but foreign trade is still dependent almost entirely on shipping. Most of the Tunisian ports are open

roadsteads. Tunis itself, the capital and chief seat of foreign commerce, situated at the north-east corner of the protectorate, is at the head of a shallow lagoon, but ocean-going vessels have access to the city by a channel 21 ft. deep, which is kept open through the lagoon to La Goulette, on the coast. On the north coast, France has established a naval station at Bizerta, at the mouth of another lagoon. On the east coast, Susa (Soussa), Sfax and Gabès are ports for trade with the Sahel and the interior.

POPULATION OF CHIEF TOWNS IN 1956

Tunis . . . . .	410,000	Kairouan . . . . .	40,000
Sfax . . . . .	66,000	Menzel-Bourgiba <sup>1</sup> . . . . .	35,000
Soussa . . . . .	48,000	La Goulette . . . . .	26,000
Bizerta . . . . .	47,000	Gabès . . . . .	24,000

<sup>1</sup> Formerly Ferryville.

**MOROCCO**, an independent Kingdom, occupies the north-west corner of Africa, extending from the Straits of Gibraltar eastward along the Mediterranean and southward along the Atlantic. Formerly a sultanate whose ruler exercised absolute authority, it came under European control for much of the first half of the twentieth century. In March, 1912, France concluded a treaty with the Sultan establishing a French protectorate over the country. In November of the same year a Franco-Spanish convention recognised a Spanish sphere of influence in Northern Morocco, bordering the Mediterranean. After the First World War, France, Britain and Spain established an international zone around Tangier, and other Powers, including the United States, became associated with the administration of the zone.

After the Second World War the growth of nationalism in Morocco provoked widespread opposition to French rule, and in 1955 France recalled the legitimate Sultan, whom she had exiled. In March, 1956, she recognised the Sultan's independence; Spain followed suit in Africa by relinquishing her claims in Northern Morocco; and the Sultan's full authority in the Tangier zone was restored by the Powers in October. The Sultan set up a cabinet system with a Council of Ministers, and Morocco was admitted to membership of the United Nations as a sovereign independent state. In August, 1957, the Sultan changed his title to King, and the Shereefian Empire became the Kingdom of Morocco.

Spain has retained various places on the Mediterranean coast where she acquired sovereignty in bygone centuries, as well as the little territory of Ifni in south-west Morocco, which was ceded to her in 1860, though not occupied till 1935. Spain's possessions on the Mediterranean coast of Morocco—Ceuta, Melilla, &c.—total about 82 square miles, with a population of nearly 150,000. Though small, they have considerable commercial and strategic value. Ifni, about the size

of one of the smaller English counties, has an area of some 750 square miles, but is largely desert, with a population of only about 40,000. It has already been a bone of contention since the Sultan's restoration, and towards the end of 1957, while he was on a state visit to the U.S.A. as King of Morocco, Ifni was attacked in force by the Moroccan 'Army of Liberation,' which had previously harassed the French and was not very amenable to the Sultan's authority. After some heavy fighting, the *status quo ante* was restored.

The area of Morocco is about 160,000 square miles (nearly double the size of Britain), with a population of about 10m. It is estimated that under present conditions 20 per cent. of the land is suitable for arable cultivation, nearly 25 per cent. is pastoral, and over 10 per cent. is forested. Another 20 per cent. is classed as unused but potentially productive, and the remaining 25 per cent. as 'built on, waste, and other.' Morocco is a mountainous land. Only in occasional tracts along the coast, nowhere reaching far inland except in the valley of the Sebu, does the elevation fall below 600–700 ft. In the north the coastal range, Er Rif, rising to heights of 6–7,000 ft., is the home of semi-independent tribes. Farther south the High Atlas, whose topmost peaks rise 13–15,000 ft., run from south-west to north-east in a broad range or succession of ranges occupying most of the zone. The south-eastern flanks, exposed to the dry winds of the Sahara, are generally parched and desolate; the north-western slopes are well wooded at the lower levels. Where the mountains approach the Mediterranean they connect with the coastal range. In the angle between these ranges is a tract of uplands and lowlands stretching down to the Atlantic coast, and farther south the coast is backed by plains and uplands rising to the main range. The rivers flowing through the mountains are unnavigable, and where they cross the lower country they are apt to dry up or become much reduced in volume, except when the snows are melting on the mountains; but in many places they are well adapted for irrigation.

The Moors are strict Moslems, and until the country came under French control the Government kept largely aloof from the outside world. Foreign trade was not encouraged; there were no railways, no wheeled carts. European intervention has brought about great changes. Though many have left since France surrendered her protectorate, it is estimated that nearly half a million Europeans remain, mostly French, many of them in the towns but a large number on the land, where they have been settled on favourable terms and are developing agriculture by modern methods.

The natural resources of the country are much the same as in Algeria and Tunisia, though barley takes the place of wheat as the chief cereal crop, being grown on some 5m. acres and yielding up to 2m. tons, against 4m. acres under wheat, yielding over 1m. tons. Cultivation is very poor; the average return from wheat is only

about 10 bushels per acre. Many other cereal and root crops are grown, but none of outstanding magnitude. The most important products, after wheat and barley, are fruits. The grape crop, grown mostly for wine, was over  $\frac{1}{4}$ m. tons in 1955; oranges, 220,000 tons; lemons, 6,000 tons; dates, 95,000 tons. Olive crops of from 70,000 to 90,000 tons yield from 10,000 to 25,000 tons of olive oil. Flax is grown, for seed only (linseed), on very variable areas (up to 200,000 acres) with very variable production (up to 30,000 tons). But the big feature of the farming industry in French Morocco is the number of its livestock, which far exceed those of its neighbours. In 1955, cattle numbered  $2\frac{1}{4}$ m., sheep over 16m., goats over 10m., camels 230,000, and horses, asses and mules  $1\frac{1}{2}$ m., mostly asses. There are extensive forests, especially of cork trees, which alone cover over a thousand square miles. French fishermen have played an active part in developing the fishing industry (tunny, sardines, lobsters, &c.).

Minerals include iron ore, which has not, however, been exploited to so large an extent as in Algeria; output in 1956 was  $1\frac{1}{4}$ m. tons. As in Tunisia, production of phosphate rock is on a much bigger scale, amounting in 1956 to nearly  $5\frac{1}{2}$ m. tons. There are extensive deposits about 50 miles inland from Safi, a progressive little port about midway between Casablanca and Agadir. The mines are connected by rail (standard gauge) both with Safi (which is also a centre of the sardine fishery) and with Casablanca, and at both these ports there are special facilities for exporting the phosphates. From Casablanca also a main line connects with Rabat, Meknes and Fez, and continues eastward to the important frontier town of Ujda, where it sends out a branch southwards across the Great Atlas into the fringes of the Sahara. Beyond Ujda it links on, at the frontier, with the Algerian railway system. Altogether there are in Morocco over a thousand miles of railway, and nearly 8,000 miles of main and secondary roads.

With the transfer of the French and Spanish protectorates and the Tangier international zone to the authority of the Sultan in 1956, the overseas trade of Morocco ceased to be subject to divided control and became the concern of a unified sovereign state. Such changes take time, and the returns for 1956 are still published on the old lines. The trade of the former French zone accounts for such an overwhelming proportion of the whole that it is still of interest as a clue to future results. But in view of the changed situation it may suffice to report that in 1956 imports into the former French zone were valued at Frs.155,559m. (say £156m.) and exports at Frs.118,829m. (£119m.). Imports were of the usual miscellaneous character, exports were mainly minerals, cereals, citrus fruits and sardines. France supplied nearly half the imports (£75m.) and took over half the exports (£63m.).

Pending returns for the new Kingdom of Morocco, the British



Trade and Navigation Accounts are a useful source of information about the United Kingdom trade with that country. The British figures suggest that so far the trade of Morocco has been well maintained, allowing for the disturbed conditions and seasonal variations. Below are the returns for 1955, 1956, and 1957.

## UNITED KINGDOM IMPORTS FROM MOROCCO

Commodity	1955	1956	1957
Phosphates of Lime	Tons 682,040 £4,756,565	Tons 706,737 £5,020,134	Tons 669,014 £5,125,465
Iron Ores	Tons 449,110 £2,455,637	Tons 650,447 £3,771,320	Tons 637,029 £3,841,708
Cereals	Cwt. 221,871 £711,543	Cwt. 155,842 £561,674	Cwt. 114,703 £294,509
Fruits and Vegetables	Cwt. 147,416 £584,236	Cwt. 75,930 £385,110	Cwt. 73,046 £303,134
Wool	£293,032	£186,273	£342,520
Esparto	Tons 9,974 £193,665	Tons 7,762 £174,538	Tons 28,870 £625,935

The total value of the imports into the United Kingdom from Morocco in 1957 was £12.9m., and the total value of U.K. exports to Morocco was £6.4m.

The chief towns are along the coast and between the coast and the mountains. Rabat, towards the northern end of the coast, was the official capital of the French protectorate, and usually the Sultan's place of residence. It has been far outstripped by Casablanca, a little farther south, which has developed as the leading commercial centre and port. Inland from Rabat are Meknes and Fez, the traditional northern capital; and inland from Mogador, which is centrally situated along the coast, is Marrakesh, the traditional southern capital, though the latter is now more easily reached by rail from Casablanca. Among the ports may be mentioned Port Lyautey, formerly Kenitra, 10 miles up the Sebu river, renamed after a famous Resident-General.

## ESTIMATED POPULATIONS OF CHIEF TOWNS

Casablanca . . .	700,000	Tetuan . . .	85,000
Marrakesh . . .	220,000	Ujda . . .	85,000
Fez . . .	180,000	Safi . . .	70,000
Tangier . . .	180,000	Port Lyautey . . .	60,000
Rabat . . .	160,600	Salé . . .	50,000
Meknès . . .	150,000	Mazagan. . .	40,000

## SOUTH AFRICA

Though geographically it may be applied to a much larger region, the term South Africa is generally understood to refer to the Union of South Africa, one of the fully independent partners in the British Commonwealth. It was formed in 1910 by the union of the former self-governing colonies of the Cape of Good Hope, Natal, the Orange Free State, and the Transvaal, which became provinces of the Union, each with continued local self-government. Development has had to contend not only against the physical conditions of the country but against the differing outlooks of the Boer and British elements in the population. At variance in their conceptions of the best lines of development for the coloured races, both the white parties claim to be seeking *summum bonum*. Prominent features of Afrikaner nationalism, as developed since the Second World War, are the growing application of *Apartheid* policy to the Africans, and the openly expressed desire to become a republic.

Apart from the Sudan, which while under Anglo-Egyptian rule was in a class by itself, the Union was for long the largest African territory of the British Commonwealth and Empire, and, though now it has been slightly surpassed in size by the Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland, it is still easily the most important, both internationally, because of its independent status within the Commonwealth, and commercially. Its area is 472,500 square miles (five times that of the United Kingdom), and its population, at the census of 1951, 12½m. (one-fourth that of the United Kingdom). About one in five of the population is white. Cape Town is the legislative and Pretoria the administrative capital.

The adjacent territory of South-West Africa, formerly a German possession, has been administered by the Union since the First World War. Since 1949, all members of the local Assembly are elected, and the territory is represented in the Union House of Assembly by elected members. What are known as the High Commission Territories are three British dependencies, one (Basutoland) surrounded by Union territory and the other two (Swaziland and the Bechuanaland Protectorate) bordering on the Union; all three are administered by the British High Commissioner in South Africa.

All round the coast, the country rises rapidly to considerable

heights. From the western half of the south coast the ascent is made in well-marked terraces, the innermost of which form tablelands of 3,000 ft. or more in height. These tablelands are known by the Hottentot name of Karroos. The Little Karroo comes first, and beyond it the Great Karroo, which has a length of nearly three hundred miles from west to east and a width in many parts of seventy miles.

On the eastern side the rise in terraces is not so well marked, or at least not so regular. Here the main feature is the Drakensberg (Dragon Mountain) Range, really the high eastern edge of the plateau. It has the highest mountains in South Africa, rising to 11,000 ft. and descending to plateaus of over 7,000 ft. in Basutoland.

Together with the physical features just described, the circumstance of most importance in determining the character of the **climate** of South Africa is its situation between the trade-wind belts of the Indian Ocean and the South Atlantic, though a small portion in the extreme south-west receives winter rains from the westerly winds. The Karroos are subject to prolonged droughts, which cause them at times to present the appearance of hard, burnt-up deserts; but they are occupied by a vegetation singularly adapted to a climate of this nature—able, that is to say, to survive, though in a withered condition, the want of rain for months, and even years, so that in a week or two after the occurrence of rains the surface becomes green with herbs and bushes or richly coloured with multitudes of flowering plants. In such a climate cultivation, and even the rearing of livestock, are obviously precarious without irrigation, but development in this direction has made rapid strides. Technical and financial assistance is given by the State.

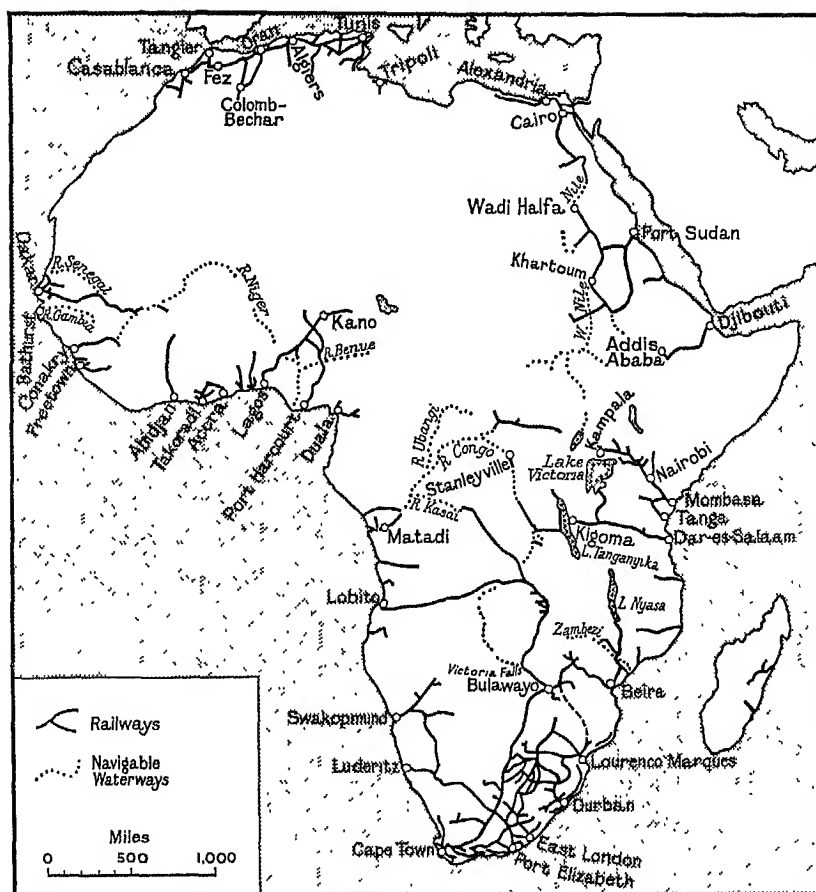
Throughout the greater part of the north-west Cape Province the annual rainfall is altogether insignificant. On a narrow strip of the south coast rains are fairly equally distributed all the year round, but the predominance of summer rains which is illustrated by the rainfall curve for Durban is the prevailing characteristic of eastern South Africa generally, owing to the fact that at that period an area of low barometric pressure in the interior greatly strengthens the trade-winds of the Indian Ocean and draws them powerfully inwards. Yet the curve for Durban, showing a high rainfall throughout the summer, is typical only for limited areas in the interior. In the greater part of South Africa, only the rains at the end of summer, culminating in February and March, fall with fair regularity and abundance. As this period of the year, in consequence of the high altitude and resulting rarity of the atmosphere, is immediately followed by a rigorous winter, those rains are useless for sowing. Only in a few parts sufficiently near the Drakensberg to get rains in August and September can wheat be grown without irrigation. Sown at the time of those rains it is reaped in December. Dry farm-

ing (see p. 64) is a partial solution. Maize and a few other crops suited to warm, rainy summers can be grown more widely.

The **rivers** of South Africa being mostly fed only by summer rains have the characteristics belonging to all tableland rivers in countries with alternating rainy and dry seasons. They flow in valleys deeply cut below the general surface of the country and having a width and slope varying with the nature of the rock in which they have been cut. In summer they are in flood, and in winter they are mostly reduced to tiny threads, which in some parts trickle between heaps of boulders filling a wide bed bordered by high bluffs. The Orange, though longer than the Rhine, is navigable for boats only a few miles up. Even the east side of South Africa is practically without navigable rivers.

So long as the development of South Africa was dependent solely on agriculture and pastoral industries the character of the climate confined the bulk of the inhabitants to the south-west and to the east. The regions first settled by Europeans lie in the south-west; the desire for further territory suitable for pastoral and agricultural development, amongst other causes, led to the great treks to the east and north. The purely British settlements of Port Elizabeth (1820) and Durban (1824) were on the south and east. In 1867 the first diamond was discovered in South Africa at Hope Town; the diamond fields of Kimberley, discovered three years later, were the cause of the first long railway line being built into the interior. A greater stimulus to railway construction was given by the discovery of the gold-fields of the Rand (Witwatersrand) in the southern Transvaal and the subsequent foundation of Johannesburg in 1886. Nearby deposits of coal, easily and cheaply mined, made it possible to work the gold-fields to advantage. Both the gold-fields and the diamond-fields attracted population. The markets which they provided stimulated, in turn, agriculture and other industries and justified expenditure on irrigation, especially for citrus fruits.

On all the **railways** into the interior the geographical features have necessitated heavy gradients, but routes have tended in that direction, partly because of the character of the coast-line. South Africa is almost entirely wanting in good natural harbours, and the points capable of being made convenient for shipping are at great distances from one another. In False Bay, east of the Cape Peninsula, there is an admirable naval station at Simon's Town, but that is not so situated as to be suitable for a commercial harbour. Cape Town is 436 nautical miles from Port Elizabeth, the latter 131 miles from East London, this again 253 miles from Durban, and Durban 300 miles from Lourenço Marques, in Portuguese territory, on Delagoa Bay; and these are the only ports at which it has been so far found worth while to provide accommodation by harbours or even long piers for the large ships of the present day, except for the small enclosed



AFRICA: PRINCIPAL RAILWAYS AND NAVIGABLE WATERWAYS

harbour at Mossel Bay. Durban (Port Natal) is the premier port commercially. It has a fine sheltered harbour but a very narrow entrance exposed to the south-east trade-winds, and vessels usually enter only in daylight. The entrance, formerly barred, has been dredged to an average low-water depth of 42 ft. Port Elizabeth has been provided with a sheltered harbour at a cost of several million pounds. At East London the river has also been specially dredged and a turning basin created, large enough for the biggest vessels calling regularly at South African ports. Cape Town lies around a bay forming partial shelter only and relies on its fine artificial harbour. Saldanha Bay, about one degree north of Cape Town, forms an excellent natural harbour, and is linked by rail with Cape Town (133 miles). It is a South African naval training base. Phosphates are worked in the neighbourhood.

In general, both railways and harbours in the Union are state-owned. Out of 14,068 miles of railway (including lines in South-West Africa), 615 miles are classed as private, mostly operated on behalf of the Rhodesia Railways (Vryburg-Bulawayo). The standard gauge is 3 ft. 6 in., and under 800 miles are of narrower gauge (2 ft.). Over 2,700 miles have been or are being electrified to facilitate traffic on steep gradients and sharp curves. About half the electrified mileage is in Natal, including the main line from Durban to the Transvaal and Orange Free State borders. Other districts which have benefited are around Cape Town and the Rand, including the line between Pretoria and Johannesburg. A large proportion of the Natal railways have a gradient steeper than 1 in 35, and there are many curves of 300–350 ft. radius. The line from Durban to Johannesburg, after ascending within sixty miles to about 3,000 ft., descends nearly 1,000 ft. to Maritzburg, then in eleven miles climbs to 3,700 ft., and thirty miles farther on is at a height of 4,800 ft. The Orange Free State branch ascends by steep gradients the whole way from Lady-smith (3,284 ft.) to about 5,520 ft. in Van Reenen's Pass. On the line from Cape Town the highest altitude south of the Orange River is under 4,300 ft. The highest point on the line into the interior from Port Elizabeth is just under 5,200 ft. (near Naaupoort), and that on the East London route nearly 5,600 ft. (three miles beyond Cyphergat). On the Delagoa Bay line the great rise is within the Transvaal; Belfast is 6,460 ft. above sea-level, the line rising 5,190 ft. in the last 112 miles, and requiring a rack as it nears Belfast.

The table opposite shows the distances from various inland centres to the leading ports; also the times required for the rail journeys, in both directions, between Johannesburg and the several ports. It will be seen that distances and times are not commensurable on all journeys, or even on the same journey in reverse. For journeys demanding speed there is a growing network of air services, extending, like the railways, far beyond the confines of the Union.

<i>Inland Centres</i>	<i>Distances in Miles by Rail to Ports</i>				
	Cape Town	Port Elizabeth	East London	Durban	Lourenço Marques
De Aar Junction .	501	340	387	770	889
Kimberley . .	649	487	526	622	702
Bloemfontein .	750	451	381	516	640
Johannesburg .	956	714	644	494	395
Pretoria . .	999	739	669	519	352
<i>Time in Hours by Rail between Ports and Jo'burg</i>					
To Johannesburg .	26½	27½	29	16½	18½
From „ .	26	26	24	16½	16½

We are indebted to the London Office of the South African Railways for the revision of the above table.

The following particulars of the individual provinces will exemplify the general characteristics and resources of the Union.

The **Cape Province** or, more correctly, the Province of the Cape of Good Hope, formerly known popularly as Cape Colony, stretches from the Atlantic to the Indian Ocean and extends northwards to the lower reaches of the Orange River in the west, beyond the Orange River to the Bechuanaland Protectorate in the centre, and to the southern borders of the Orange Free State, Basutoland, and Natal in the east. It also includes, as an integral part of the province (but administered as part of South-West Africa), an enclave of 374 square miles around Walvis Bay, the best harbour on the coast of South-West Africa and the chief port. It was formerly a whaling station, and is now a repair shop for Antarctic whaling ships.

With an area of 277,000 square miles (three times that of Britain), the province is easily the largest in the Union (over half the total area) and until the Second World War it had the most inhabitants, but the Transvaal has since held the lead. Though the population at the 1951 census (4·4m.) was more than a third of the total for the whole Union, the Cape Province is the most thinly peopled of all the provinces. As a result of the physical conditions previously described, the population is found mainly in the east, in the extreme south-west, and along a narrow strip of the south coast. Broadly, 60 per cent. are natives—Bantus, with a few Hottentots and Bushmen in the west; 20 per cent are white, mainly of Dutch, Huguenot, or British descent, with English and Afrikaans (a modified Dutch) as the principal languages; and the remaining 20 per cent. are mostly 'Coloured.' In South Africa the term 'coloured' is used in the sense of half-castes—a mixture of European stocks with the indigenous population. Most of the Boers are pastoral farmers with holdings of from 2,000 to 6,000 acres or more. The British are mostly traders living in the towns. The proportions of British and

Boers among the white population are not definitely known but have been estimated at  $\pm 60$  per cent. Afrikaans-speaking and  $\pm 35$ –40 per cent. English-speaking, with other European nationalities about 5 per cent.

Only a small proportion of the surface is adapted for agriculture. In the western half of the province irrigation is absolutely necessary for the growing of crops, except in a small district round Cape Town, where most of the products of the Mediterranean can be grown, and whence there is a large export of the characteristic fruits of that climate. In the eastern half larger areas have a sufficient rainfall for agriculture, especially south of the Stormberg and Drakensberg, but these are mostly in the hands of African natives, who grow maize (mealies) and other grain adapted to warm rainy summers. The prevailing aridity promotes a thorny vegetation which is apt to injure the quality of the wool of the sheep reared.

The pastoral industry has from the first been of much more importance than the growing of crops. At first only cattle and native sheep were reared, the latter yielding excellent mutton but only a coarse kind of hair rather than wool. The merino sheep was introduced about 1812, and thereafter wool came to be the most important export of the colony. The present wool industry of the Union has been built up by the careful selection of rams and the breeding of pure merinos. The sheep are reared partly on grass on the coast strip, partly on the Karroos, where they depend chiefly on the deep-rooted bushes. In the arid western parts of the Great Karroo, from eight to twelve acres are required on the average for the support of a single sheep, but in the eastern parts only three. The great bulk of Cape wool is exported from Cape Town, Port Elizabeth, East London, and Mossel Bay. Uitenhage, not far from Port Elizabeth, is a great wool-washing centre. Graaff Reinet is the chief centre of the most productive pastoral area of the eastern Karroo. Besides sheep and cattle, the Angora goat has been largely reared since about 1840 and the ostrich since about 1865. Oudtshoorn, a rich irrigated district in the western part of the Little Karroo, had extensive fields of lucerne entirely devoted to the rearing of ostriches. The industry reached its zenith in 1913, when feathers were exported to the value of nearly £3m. Since the First World War, demand and exports have dwindled to relatively trifling proportions (pp. 245–6).

The diamond-fields of Kimberley have been actively worked since about 1871. The industry is controlled by a company, De Beers Consolidated Mines, Ltd., combining earlier interests and regulating both the methods and the amount of the production. Kaffir labourers are hired for terms of three months, during which they are never allowed to leave the works, where they live in enclosures known as compounds. Great expansion of the industry came when the diamonds of the surface deposits were traced to their source in



the hard rock—known to the miners as ‘blue ground’: actually a volcanic rock filling the round necks or pipes of ancient volcanoes. Working the hard rock and excavating to great depths necessitated the amalgamation of interests and the beginning of the great combines which dominate the world market, associated with such names as Cecil Rhodes, De Beer, Joel, and Oppenheimer.

Other mineral resources of the Cape Province are of little account. Coal was supplied to the Kimberley mines in their early days from Molteno, Cyphergat and Indwe (in the Stormberg region), but it was of poor quality and no production is now recorded. Copper mining flourished in Namaqualand (the arid north-west of the province) in the latter half of the nineteenth century, but the industry declined with the price of copper and by 1932 all the mines had closed down. At O’okiep, the chief centre, they have been closed and re-opened several times, the last re-opening being in 1940. The copper is exported from Port Nolloth (narrow-gauge railway connection with O’okiep).

In the parts of the province beyond the Great Kei river known as the Transkeian Territories, which include Pondoland, the white population is very scanty. Here the mouth of the St. John’s river forms an exceptionally good harbour. The want in this case is a hinterland. The Drakensberg Range prevents this harbour from being a means of access to the interior, but the Territories are capable of greater development, forming one of the best parts of South Africa—fertile, well-watered, and eminently suited for pasture.

The northern extension of the Cape Province, stretching from the middle course of the Orange River up to the Molopo, includes not only Griqualand West (Kimberley), with its diamond mines, but the former Crown Colony of British Bechuanaland, with such historic centres as Kuruman, Vryburg, and Mafeking. This is not to be confused with the Bechuanaland Protectorate, north of the Molopo (see page 673).

**Natal.** The Province of Natal lies between the Indian Ocean and the Drakensberg, on the far side of which its neighbours are Basutoland and the Orange Free State. Coastwise it extends from the Cape Province to Portuguese East Africa, having also on its northern borders the Transvaal and Swaziland. Its area (35,000 square miles), a little larger than Ireland, is only about one-fourteenth of the Union, but it is the most densely populated province, with 2.4m. inhabitants at the 1951 census, or one-fifth of the Union total. The land rises rapidly from the coast to the interior, and the climate may be said to change from sub-tropical to temperate in the same direction. Near the coast are grown sugar-cane, cotton, tea, arrow-root, black wattle and other tropical and sub-tropical products. Natal is pre-eminent in the Union in two of these products: it is the sole seat of the sugar industry, which yields  $\frac{3}{4}$ m.—1m. tons of raw

sugar annually and not only supplies the Union but supports a valuable export trade; and it grows most of the Union's output of wattle (by far the most important of the minor forest products of South Africa), which supports a valuable export trade in wattle bark and tanning extract.

Further inland are grown the temperate cereals, and sheep and cattle are reared. Here also there is a large native population, mainly Zulu Kaffirs, who form the majority of the inhabitants. There are also 350,000 Indians; originally introduced as coolie labourers on the tea and other plantations, and as miners, many Indians have remained as market gardeners and traders. Durban is the chief seaport and largest town. It is the nearest port in the Union to the Rand and the coalfields of Natal and the Transvaal, and, as already noted, surpasses Cape Town in the volume of its shipping and trade. Pietermaritzburg, the capital, at an altitude of 2,200 ft., is situated amid scenes of tropical beauty, but in a hollow in which the heat is oppressive. In the extreme north of the province Newcastle and Dundee rapidly increased their production of coal, which is better than that of the other provinces, and, in spite of the long haul of 250–300 miles over a difficult railway route, is exported by sea and used as steam-coal by ocean liners. The annual production in Natal in 1956 was nearly 6m. short tons of 2,000 lb.—16 per cent. of the Union total.

The **Orange Free State**, situated between the Orange and Vaal rivers, has a population (1951 census) of just over a million in a country of 50,000 square miles (about the size of England); it is nearly as thinly populated as the Cape Province. The population is made up of Afrikaans-speaking farmers or 'Boers'. The surface is typical veld country, rolling grassy plains seamed by river beds. It has been called South Africa's prairie province. The plains vary from under 3,500 ft. in altitude in the west to 5,500 ft. in the east. Much of the country has a rainfall inadequate for agriculture without irrigation, but the north-eastern districts form part of the great 'maize-triangle'. They lack the August-October rains, but on the other hand have abundant rains from December to March. The remainder of the country is mostly sheep-farming land, but gold-fields which have sprung into fame have been discovered around Odendaalsrust, south-west of Klerksdorp. In 1956 the O.F.S. output of gold was 3·18m. fine ounces, valued at £39·5m. Other minerals include uranium (p. 669), diamonds and coal. The output of coal in 1956 was 7·9m. short-tons—21 per cent. of the Union total. The capital is Bloemfontein, on the direct railway route from Port Elizabeth to Johannesburg and Pretoria.

The **Transvaal** lies to the north of the Orange Free State: that is, beyond the Vaal river—trans-Vaal. It is second to the Cape Province in extent, first in total population, and second to Natal in

density of population. With an area of 110,000 square miles—nearly double that of England and Wales—it had 4·8m. inhabitants at the census of 1951. The surface features are similar to those of the Orange Free State, but here the geological structure, even apart from the mineral wealth, is of great importance. The Transvaal may be divided into five regions: (1) The Witwatersrand—the gold-field stretching from east to west through Johannesburg. (2) The High Veld lying to the south of the Witwatersrand, composed of undulating grassy plains at an altitude of 4,700 to 5,700 ft., with very cold dry winters, but with a rainfall from January to March rendering it suitable for the cultivation, without irrigation, of maize, potatoes, and other roots, as well as of pulses, though these last are at present neglected. (3) The Bush Veld north of the Witwatersrand, and (4) the Low Veld to the north-east, in both of which the plains are generally below 3,000 ft. in height, and hence, being in a latitude below 26°S., not well adapted for European settlement. Both are traversed by comparatively high ranges of hills. Farmers migrate (trek) from the High Veld to the Low Veld on account of the dying-down of the grasses on the High Veld in the winter. (5) The South-western District, an arid and comparatively unproductive region.

The mineral wealth of the Transvaal is enormous in amount and varied in character. The first place belongs to gold, which is found in paying quantity in many parts of the country. The possibilities attracted increasing attention in the latter half of the nineteenth century. In 1872 mining was begun in the Northern Transvaal at Eersteling, since scheduled as a National Monument. Larger and more successful operations quickly followed in the Lydenburg district of the Eastern Transvaal, one of the few districts in the Union outside the Rand where gold is still mined on a considerable scale. The next decade saw a temporary boom in the De Kaap valley, where the town of Barberton sprang up in 1886. But these ventures were rendered of minor importance by the discovery, about the same time, of the gold-fields of the Rand (Witwatersrand). On the richest part of the Rand the town of Johannesburg was founded in September 1886, and at a census held in 1896 the population of the town and district was found to have grown to upwards of 100,000, of whom about half were whites. Sixty years later (1957) the population was estimated at over a million, including nearly 400,000 whites.

The Rand is a ridge about sixty miles long, rising about 1,000 ft. above the adjacent country. The gold-bearing rocks are a conglomerate, in which the gold occurs in the form of minute particles more or less evenly disseminated through it. Hence powerful machinery is required for its extraction, and from the first this has been a capitalist's, not a poor man's, gold-field. Labour is a perennial difficulty. After the South African War, the introduction of Chinese coolies who were kept in compounds was much criticized, and they were gradually

repatriated. African labour is now recruited in nearby colonies and protectorates, and also, by agreement with the Portuguese, in Portuguese East Africa. The total number employed in 1957 was 375,000, as well as 50,000 white employees. In 1956 the output of gold in the Transvaal was 12·7m. fine ounces, valued at £170·5m.

The Transvaal is also rich in other minerals, particularly coal and iron of medium quality, and copper, of which there are large mines at Messina, on the northern border, near the Limpopo. The production of coal in 1956 was 23·2m. short tons—63 per cent. of the Union's total output—mostly from the collieries of the Witbank district, east of Pretoria, but also from the Vereeniging mines on the northern bank of the Vaal, south of Johannesburg. Vereeniging—where the peace treaty was signed in 1902 after the South African War—is now one of the leading industrial centres in the Union. It has great steel works erected by 'Isacor' (the South African Iron and Steel Industrial Corporation), many engineering and other industrial works, and the largest steam power station in the Commonwealth, owned by South Africa's Electricity Supply Commission and operated by the Victoria Falls and Transvaal Power Company, through whom it supplies electricity to a section of the Rand. Thanks to the enterprise of the Commission in this and other ways, electric power for industrial purposes in all the large centres is unlimited and among the cheapest in the world.

**Resources and Trade of the Union.** Taking the Union as a whole, it is estimated that 75 per cent. of it is pastoral country, less than 8 per cent. arable, 1 per cent. wooded, and 16 per cent. waste or built on. Small as is the percentage of arable land, it represents 22m. acres, and over a third of this is under maize, yielding a crop of 3½m. tons. Wheat is grown on 3m. acres, but the average yield is low and the crop about ½m. tons. Sugar-planting in Natal yields some 10m. tons of cane, from which, as already noted, over 1m. tons of raw sugar is extracted. Viticulture is practically confined to the Cape Province, and grapes are grown mainly for wine. The total crop in 1956 was 600,000 tons, of which only some 40,000 tons was consumed as fresh fruit. Grown chiefly in the south-west of Cape Province, the crops fall into two main categories, differing according as they are grown under natural rainfall in the coastal zone below the mountains or under irrigation in the Little Karroo. Cape wines, of many types, and Cape brandy have a reputation extending far beyond their immediate locality, and a considerable trade in them has grown up not only in the Union but overseas. Fresh grapes are also a valuable export, and fresh citrus fruits, chiefly oranges, of which the production amounts to over ¼m. tons. Among other noteworthy crops, as illustrating the variety of the Union's products, though on a smaller scale, are groundnuts (216,000 tons), sunflower seed (60,000 tons) and tobacco (33m. lb.).

As might be expected from the pastoral character of most of the country, the numbers of livestock are outstanding. In the number of its sheep (39m.) the Union vies with New Zealand and the United States. The production of wool on a greasy basis is about 140,000 tons, and on a clean basis about half that quantity. Cattle are estimated at 11.6m. and goats at 5½m.

South Africa is poorly timbered. Forests are mostly found in comparatively small patches on the seaward slopes of the mountains behind the coastal zone. The total forest production of the Union is 40m. cubic feet a year. Recently experiments in afforestation with quick-growing trees have given very encouraging results.

In contrast with this paucity of well wooded country is the Union's outstanding wealth in gold and diamonds. In 1956 the output of gold was 15.9m. fine ounces valued at around £200m., and of diamonds 2.58m. metric carats valued at £12½m. To these must now be added uranium, which is found in minute quantities in almost every mine on the Rand and in the Orange Free State. After prolonged research under Government auspices, with international support, a programme of extraction as a by-product of gold-mining operations was agreed, and the first of a series of special plants was opened towards the end of 1952. In 1956 the estimated production was 3,300 tons, with exports valued at £38.7m. Other minerals in active production in the Union are many and varied, and of one of them—platinum—South Africa is among the principal sources of world supply. Largest in quantity is coal, of which the output in 1956 was 33m. tons (37m. short tons) valued at £19m., divided among the individual provinces as already noted. Copper (46,000 tons in 1956), manganese ore (686,000 tons), asbestos (121,000 tons), and platinum (490,000 Troy oz.) were all produced on an increasing scale in the post-war years up to the half-century, and were valued in each case at some millions of pounds.

In South Africa, as in most countries, the nominal value of the overseas trade has gone up by leaps and bounds since the war, without, for most commodities, any corresponding increase in volume, and with an actual decline in some cases. In 1956, general imports were valued at £456m., against £85m. in 1938; and national exports, exclusive of gold bullion and specie, at £370m. against £28m.—thirteen times as much. The proportion is lessened by the addition of the gold exports, which are not included in the ordinary trade returns. According to the United Nations *Yearbook of International Trade Statistics*, exports of gold in 1938 amounted to £73m. and in 1956 to £193m. Exclusive of gold, the most valuable of the national exports in 1956 was wool—most of it greasy—which was exported to the value of £62m., while hides and skins and hair (angora) provided another £15m. The importance of other branches of the farming industry is shown by exports of citrus and other fruits, fresh and

preserved, valued at £31½m., maize £19m., and sugar £5m. Fish and other foodstuffs accounted for nearly £19m., and wines, spirits and other beverages for £2.2m. These foodstuffs and the livestock products previously quoted had a combined value of £154m., or over 40 per cent. of South Africa's 'national exports' other than gold.

Minerals, other than gold, provided over 30 per cent. of the total. The biggest item, £38.7m., was described in the United Nations' returns as 'fissionable material,' in the *Statesman's Year Book* as 'atomic energy material,' and in *Statistical Summary of the Mineral Industry*, issued by the British Overseas Geological Surveys, as 'uranium minerals.' Exports of diamonds, mostly uncut, were valued at £32m., after which there was a big drop to lead ore concentrates £14½m., copper £12m., asbestos £9½m., manganese ore £4m., and less valuable amounts of chrome ore, coal and antimony, bringing the total to £116½m.

Of the remaining exports the main items were machinery and parts (£9½m.), exclusive of agricultural and electrical machinery; and motor-cars, trucks, tyres and tubes (£6½m.).

Imports cover a wide range of commodities, with no very dominant item. Imported motor-cars, trucks and vans, and parts were valued at £46½m., and petroleum and products at £33m., the two together accounting for over a sixth of the total. Bigger still were the imports of cotton, rayon and woollen piece goods and other forms of textiles, including clothes, totalling nearly £85m. Agricultural machinery and implements absorbed £19m., and the import of unmanufactured wood to the value of nearly £9m. is a reminder of South Africa's paucity of forests. Only about 5 per cent. of the imports were needed for food and drink—nearly half for tea and coffee. All the tea plants in the Union have been ploughed up.

Over half the imports in 1956 were supplied by the United Kingdom (£156½m.) and the United States (£99m.). Another quarter was made up by eight countries—Germany £32m., Canada £22½m., Rhodesia and Nyasaland (17½m.), Japan £12m., Saudi Arabia £11½m., Iran £11m., Italy £10m., and Belgium £10m. Over half the exports were taken by three countries—U.K. £109m., Rhodesia and Nyasaland £55m., U.S.A. £29m.; and the next half-dozen principal buyers took another quarter—Belgium £21½m., Germany £18m., Italy £16½m., France £15½m., Netherlands £9½m., Japan £8½m.

#### POPULATION OF LARGEST TOWNS, INCLUDING SUBURBS: 1957 ESTIMATES

	White	Total		White	Total
Johannesburg	393,000	1,030,000	Germiston	95,000	213,000
Cape Town	280,000	709,000	Bloemfontein	62,000	142,000
Durban	177,000	613,000	Benoni	45,000	139,000
Pretoria	176,000	335,000	Springs	39,000	130,000
Port Elizabeth	92,000	240,000	East London	49,000	106,000
Vereeniging	60,000	201,000	Pietermaritzburg	38,000	88,000
Vanderbijl Pk.			Kimberley	22,000	70,000

**South-West Africa**, bordering the Atlantic, extends from the Cape Province northwards to Portuguese West Africa, and inland to the Bechuanaland Protectorate. Before the First World War it was a German colony. In 1920 the League of Nations vested the administration in the Union of South Africa. The mandate is still valid internationally but the Union now governs independently. The territory has a Legislative Assembly of eighteen elected members and is represented in the Union House of Assembly by six elected members. The trade returns are incorporated in those of the Union.

With an area of 318,000 square miles, the Territory supports under  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. people, including 50,000 whites. In general, the rainfall is scanty. Only in the far north is agriculture possible, to a limited extent, without irrigation. The mainstay of the country is the pastoral industry. Sheep predominate in the south, cattle farther north. Livestock include over 3m. sheep (mostly Karakul for 'Persian' lambskins), 1.9m. cattle, 600,000 goats. In 1956, 2.8m. Karakul pelts valued at £5.6m. were exported. Slaughter cattle and butter are also valuable exports. These and minerals—principally diamonds (found along the coast) and copper/lead/zinc concentrates from Tsumel, in the Grootfontein district—constitute the main commercial wealth of the Territory. The sale of diamonds is controlled by a Diamond Board, and the permitted exports vary greatly; in 1956 they were nearly 1m. carats valued at £17.6m. Copper/lead/zinc concentrates were exported to the value of £14.6m.

Windhoek, the capital, is situated in the centre of the territory at a height of 5,500 ft. At the census of 1951 it had a population of 20,490, of whom almost exactly half were of white race. It is linked with the Cape railways by a line of South African standard gauge (3 ft. 6 in.), which extends beyond Windhoek to Walvis Bay (see page 663) and is also connected with Luderitz Bay. There are 1,133 miles of standard-gauge line, and, in the north, 353 miles of narrow-gauge (2 ft.) line.

## HIGH COMMISSION TERRITORIES

(See page 658)

**Basutoland** (11,700 square miles: half as large again as Wales) had an African population of 630,000 at the 1956 census, with probably another 150,000 in the Union of South Africa. In 1959 a new constitution set up a National Council of 80 members, 76 to be African and 4 to be elected, with power to legislate in all but certain matters reserved for the High Commissions. From the western or Orange Free State border, marked by the Caledon River (tributary to the Orange), 'Lowlands' of 5-6,000 ft. rise eastward to 11,000 ft. in the Drakensberg, along the Natal border. The

mountains form a main watershed, and Basutoland is known both as the 'Switzerland' and the 'Sponge' of South Africa; on its borders rise not only the Caledon and the Orange river itself, flowing to the Atlantic, but the Tugela, flowing to the Indian Ocean. It is a pastoral country, carrying nearly 1½m. sheep, 400,000 cattle, 650,000 goats and 100,000 horses. Basuto ponies, despite some deterioration, are renowned in South Africa for their hardy qualities, but sheep and goats are the factor of prime economic importance. In 1955, wool provided 54 per cent. of exports valued at £1.8m., and mohair (Angora goats' wool) another 18 per cent. About one-sixth of the land is under cultivation and yields normally a sufficiency of cereal and leguminous crops to allow of exports—over 10 per cent. of the total in 1955. Imports (chiefly for African requirements) amounted to £3.2m. Maseru, the capital, a township of about 4,000 people (some 700 of whom are white), near the Caledon, is linked by rail with the Orange Free State.

**Swaziland** (6,705 square miles: a little smaller than Wales) has a population (1956 census) of 237,000, including 6,000 whites. Mbabane, the capital, and Bremersdorp, the former capital, in a less healthy situation, have each a white population of some 800. The Swazis are akin to the Zulus and have an elaborate social order. They have suffered from a welter of concessions granted recklessly to Europeans by former chiefs. North and west and south lies the Transvaal; to the east are Natal and Portuguese East Africa. From the High Veld (4,000 ft.) in the west the land drops through the Middle Veld to the low-lying Bush Veld. It is mixed country, with many products, but mainly pastoral; there are some 430,000 head of cattle, about one-sixth of them on European ranches, and 170,000 sheep and goats. The native pastures are overstocked and badly eroded. A large asbestos mine has an annual output of around 30,000 tons, with exports valued in 1956 at £2.4m.—62 per cent. of the total exports (£3.88m.). Another 20 per cent. was provided by slaughter stock £386,000, rice (paddy) £216,000, and seed cotton £199,000.

**The Bechuanaland Protectorate**, lying east of South-West Africa and north of the Molopo, is a country of 275,000 square miles with a population of a little over one per square mile (1956 estimate 316,000). Its distinctive feature is the Kalahari Desert, which is far from being the legendary sandy waste; a modern survey encouraged hopes of ranching possibilities. Included in the protectorate also is a wide expanse of swampy country in the north, between Lake Ngami and the Zambezi. The leading Bechuana tribe, the Bamangwato (over 100,000), is famous for its high degree of civilisation, strikingly exemplified in its former great chief, Khama, and its capital, Serowe (16,000); trouble in recent years with the British over the succession to the chieftainship has since died down. Development



is essentially on pastoral lines. In 1956 there were nearly 1½m. cattle in the protectorate and ½m. sheep and goats. Imports in 1956 amounted to £3m. and exports to £2·8m. Livestock, carcasses, hides and skins provided two-thirds of the exports. A Government abattoir is an aid to the marketing of produce. The 'Cape to Cairo' railway runs through the south-eastern borders of the protectorate for nearly 400 miles, linking Cape Province with Southern Rhodesia.

## FEDERATION OF RHODESIA AND NYASALAND

The Federation contains the self-governing colony of Southern Rhodesia and the protectorates of Northern Rhodesia and Nyasaland, under a Governor-General. It was born on September 3, 1953, after two years of critical discussion, with the approval of the white population of Southern Rhodesia, the Legislative Councils of the two protectorates, and the British Parliament. The federated territories differ in political status, resources, and development, and an earlier attempt to co-ordinate their policies and schemes of development through the medium of the Central African Council, formed in 1945, fell short of its objects. Federation is a bolder approach to the same problem. Special care has been taken to preserve the protectorate rights of the African peoples in Northern Rhodesia and Nyasaland.

Lying wholly within the Tropics, the Federation forms a block of over 480,000 square miles (five times the size of the United Kingdom) with a population of 7½m. (1957 estimate). Northern Rhodesia, the largest territory (285,000 square miles), has the smallest population (2½m.), and Nyasaland, smallest in size (48,000 square miles), has the largest (2·65m.). Southern Rhodesia, intermediate in both size and population (150,000 square miles: 2·6m. inhabitants), is the most highly developed. The inclusion of Rhodesia within the British Empire was due largely to Cecil Rhodes, from whom it took its name in 1895. He had secured from the Imperial Government in 1889 a Royal Charter for the British South Africa Company to develop and administer the territories north of Bechuanaland and the Transvaal. The Rhodesias as now known took shape during the next dozen years, the Zambezi river becoming the dividing line between Southern and Northern. In 1923 Chartered Company rule came to an end; Southern Rhodesia was given the status of a self-governing colony, and Northern Rhodesia became a British protectorate, a status enjoyed by Nyasaland since 1891. Bordered by Bechuanaland Protectorate, Transvaal, Mozambique, Tanganyika, Belgian Congo, and Angola, all three territories are shut off from the sea. Their individual characteristics are summarised below.

**Southern Rhodesia.** Much of the territory is a tableland 4–5,000 ft., above the sea, with a climate suitable for white settlers, and at the 1957 estimate the population of over 2½m., in a country three-fourths the size of France, included 193,000 Europeans. Grassy plains alternate with bush country and groups of hills, notably the Matopos, where Cecil Rhodes is buried. The largest towns are Salisbury, the capital, in the north-east (Mashonaland), estimated population 240,000, including 62,000 Europeans; and Bulawayo, in the south-west (Matabeleland), with an estimated population of 154,000, including 41,000 Europeans. The main line from Cape Town to the north passes through Bulawayo, whence another line runs to Salisbury and Beira, the Portuguese east coast port which is the ocean gateway to Southern Rhodesia. Congestion of shipping at Beira has caused many delays, and in 1955 new links were constructed between the Rhodesian and Mozambique railways, so as to provide Rhodesia with an outlet to the sea at Lourenço Marques, via Guija, on the Limpopo river. Southern and Northern Rhodesia together are served by about 2,900 miles of South African standard-gauge railway (3 ft. 6 in.)

The chief crops are maize and tobacco. The maize is needed mostly for home consumption; tobacco is the leading export. Buyers in the United Kingdom have agreed to take much of the crop. Cattle have increased to 3m. head, but there are only a tenth as many sheep; in either case a third of the stock are European-owned. A public utility corporation runs cold storage works. The dairying industry, including butter and cheese factories, is making steady progress. Citrus fruits do well under irrigation, and several large dams have been built for that and other purposes.

Mineral resources, headed by gold, are numerous and extensive; their reputation was a primary cause of the founding of the Chartered Company. In 1956 the total output was valued at £23m., of which gold accounted for nearly £6½m. Southern Rhodesia is a leading producer of asbestos, the output in 1956 being valued more highly than the gold output. The Wankie coalfield, in the north-west, with estimated reserves of 4,000m. tons, supplies the whole of South Central Africa. Chrome ore is mined around Selukwe, and during the Second World War the United Nations drew largely on supplies from this source. The War also gave a great stimulus to industrial development.

**Northern Rhodesia**, like Southern Rhodesia, is mostly a high plateau country, but more typically tropical. Both the Zambezi and the Congo rise on its northern borders, and most of the protectorate falls within the Upper Zambezi basin. The population in 1957 included 73,000 Europeans. The chief settlements are along the line of the railway, which enters the territory over a bridge across the Zambezi, just below the Victoria Falls, and runs for 500 miles

from Livingstone, on the northern bank, northwards to the Katanga (Belgian Congo). Lusaka, the capital, is rather more than half-way.

In the far west, along the Upper Zambezi, is the highly organised native kingdom of Barotseland, but elsewhere are a multiplicity of tribes speaking many languages. The settlers grow both Virginia and Turkish tobacco, mostly around Fort Jameson, on the borders of Nyasaland. Maize is largely grown, but in recent years there has been little or no surplus for export. Cattle number under 1m., and sheep and goats 132,000. Timber is worked and exported to some extent, especially in the form of railway sleepers. But these are overshadowed, commercially, by the mining industry in the 'Copperbelt,' which lies on the borders of the Congo State, and links up with the corresponding mineral area of Katanga across the frontier. Outside the Copperbelt is the mining area around Broken Hill, the oldest mining township in the protectorate, on the railway 75 miles north of Lusaka, producing zinc and lead; and elsewhere other mineral resources which are being investigated include iron and coal.

Development in the Copperbelt, which extends over a considerable area and contains several of the leading townships in the protectorate, has been prodigious. Copper and other minerals provide all but a small fraction of the exports, and have been the main factor in sending the revenue of the protectorate up to levels beyond those reached by Southern Rhodesia. But along with this wealth the Copperbelt, dependent on skilled white miners, has confronted Northern Rhodesia with serious problems in the relations of European and African labour.

Further development of the Copperbelt is hampered by shortage of coal, which at present is drawn from the Wankie mines in Southern Rhodesia. To meet this difficulty, and to serve other needs, the Federation is sponsoring big schemes for hydro-electric power works, first in the Kariba and later in the Kafue gorge. At Kariba a great dam is banking up the waters of the Zambezi in the largest man-made lake in the world, 175 miles long. Meanwhile the mines have contracted for supplies of power from Katanga.

**Nyasaland.** Though the total area is nearly equal to that of England, nearly a fourth of it is water, the land area being about the size of Scotland, with Wales tacked on. Taking its name from Lake Nyasa, the protectorate includes the greater part of that long expanse of water (nearly half as large again as Lake Erie) at the southern end of the Great Rift Valley. The territory itself is long and narrow: a strip between the western shore of the lake and Northern Rhodesia, together with a long tongue south of the lake, thrusting into Portuguese East Africa nearly to the Zambezi river. Most of the development has been in this southern section. Through it flows

the Shiré river, which issues from the southern end of Lake Nyasa and is tributary to the Zambezi, to whose level it descends in a series of cataracts about midway in its course. Plans to regulate the flow and use the power are being studied. The valley is bordered by highlands with a general level of 3–5,000 ft. and peaks rising to 8–10,000 ft. The lake level is about 1,500 ft., and the extreme depth over 2,300 ft., so that the bed of the lake is well below sea level.

In the Shiré Highlands are the principal European estates, on the lower slopes of Mt. Mlanje (10,000 ft.), as well as the three townships credited with urban populations. These are Zomba, the official capital; Blantyre, the commercial centre; and Limbe, the customs and railway headquarters. They are all small, with only a few hundred Europeans; the total white population of the protectorate in 1957 was 7,500.

Usually, in a new country, railway construction begins at the coast and extends inland. The reverse has been the case in Nyasaland, which has no outlet to the sea. Its first railway, built in the first decade of this century, connected Port Herald, on the Shiré river, with Blantyre; in the next decade, this was extended to the north bank of the Zambezi, in Portuguese territory; in the third decade, a railway was built to the opposite bank of the Zambezi from the Portuguese port of Beira; in the fourth decade the Zambezi was bridged and the railway was extended from Blantyre to Lake Nyasa, so that the lake is now in direct rail communication with Beira. The gauge is 3 ft. 6 in. A steamship service round the lake maintains touch with the lake ports, and there are good motor roads which, in conjunction with the fine scenery, attract both tourist and business traffic. Nyasaland is on the line of the shortest route by road between Johannesburg and Nairobi.

The protectorate is not a great livestock country. Cattle are estimated at rather more than  $\frac{1}{4}$ m. and there are large numbers of goats, but few sheep. Maize is grown for local food requirements. Tobacco (mainly fire-cured) is easily the most valuable commercial crop; tea is a poor second, and cotton a still poorer third. Tung oil (see page 228), a comparatively new product, has fallen short of early hopes. Tea is grown on European estates, tobacco mostly by Africans; cotton is almost wholly a native crop, grown along the lower Shiré. These three products provide nearly all the exports.

In the Federation as a whole, imports in 1956 were valued at £159m., three-fourths being for manufactures. Machinery and transport equipment accounted for £57m., manufactured goods for £43m., and miscellaneous manufactures for £20m. In addition to gold (£6 $\frac{1}{2}$ m.), exports amounted to £179m. Copper provided 63 per cent. (£114m.), asbestos 5 per cent. (£8 $\frac{1}{2}$ m.), and tobacco 15 per cent. (£28m.). Three-fourths of the imports came from the United

Kingdom (£65m.) and the Union of South Africa (£53m.), and the United Kingdom took the bulk of the exports (£106m.), the next best customers being South Africa (£17m.) and the United States (£13m.).

There was trouble in 1959 over political agitation by African Congress Leaders; Government fears of violence led to temporary states of emergency. Provision was made when the federation was formed to review the position in 1960.

## BRITISH EAST AFRICA

The countries of the British Commonwealth and Empire, and countries associated with them administratively, extend continuously from Cape Town to the borders of Abyssinia and the Sudan. North of Rhodesia and Nyasaland is the Trustee Territory of Tanganyika; on its northern borders lie Kenya Colony and Protectorate and the Uganda Protectorate; off the coast of Tanganyika lie the islands of Zanzibar and Pemba, forming the Zanzibar Protectorate. The East African unit of currency is the shilling of 100 cents (20s. = £1).

Kenya, Uganda and Tanganyika, though differing in status and having separate governments, have been drawn together by common interests. In the interval between the two world wars the East African Governor's Conference was established and developed as a consultative body with wide functions. After the second war it was expanded into the East African High Commission, comprising the three Governors, a central Secretariat and Executive, Advisory Boards, and an East African Assembly with representatives of all races and an unofficial majority. The policy is not only to co-ordinate but to bring under joint public control the inter-territorial services of East Africa within the British sphere, covering an area of over 680,000 square miles (larger than France, Germany and Italy combined), with a population of some 20m., nearly all Africans—an average of about 29 to the square mile.

Recent political development in each territory has been along the lines of multiracial government, embracing not only European but African and Asian representation. In Uganda this has been complicated by demands for an all-African state and in Buganda by the exile—since cancelled—of the Kabaka (p. 681) for failure to comply with British policy. In Kenya a reversion to barbarism on the part, chiefly, of the Kikuyu, with bestial atrocities against both blacks and whites, started in 1952 an 'Emergency' which involved extensive military operations and wholesale detention of suspects, with serious effects on the public economy, requiring financial aid from the British Exchequer. Even now (1959), seven years after the trouble developed, there are reminders that the old 'Mau Mau' spirit has not been completely exorcised.

**KENYA** is neither the largest nor the most populous of the three territories, nor are its exports equal in value to those of its neighbours; yet it is generally regarded as the leading member of the trio. This reputation it owes to the conditions which, early in the twentieth century, made it renowned as the 'White Colony on the Equator'. It is the most advanced constitutionally, being granted in 1948 an unofficial majority in its Legislative Council, with elected as well as nominated members. It has also a Council of Ministers.

A country of 225,000 square miles (rather larger than France), with a population of 6m., including 55,000 Europeans and 150,000 Asians, Kenya is crossed by the Equator along the northern slopes of snow-clad Mt. Kenya (17,040 ft.). A strip of coastal territory 10 miles wide ranks officially as a protectorate; it is part of the mainland territories formerly administered by the Sultan of Zanzibar, to whom rent is still paid for it by the British Government. Otherwise the whole of Kenya is a Colony, annexed to the Crown. The greater part of it is arid, especially in the north, where it borders on Abyssinia, and in the north-east, where it borders on Somalia. Development is mostly confined to the southern part of the Colony, and especially the south-west, where the Kenya Highlands provide conditions favourable both to farming and to European settlement.

This region was opened up at the end of the nineteenth century by the construction of a remarkable railway (metre gauge). Starting on Mombasa Island, which shelters one of the finest harbours (Kilindini) on the east coast of Africa, it crosses to the mainland over a causeway and ascends the coastal region, which varies from luxuriant tropical plantations to dry scrub. At Kiu, 270 miles from Mombasa, the line has climbed 4,860 ft., and it is only then that the settlers reckon they are passing from the tropical climate of the coast into the more temperate conditions of the Highlands. Another 60 miles and another 600 ft. of altitude bring the traveller to Nairobi (5,475 ft.), the capital. It was a collection of shanties when the line was built; now it is a city with a royal charter, wide boulevards and fine public buildings, the home of over 200,000 people, including 20,000 Europeans and 70,000 Asians.

Beyond Nairobi the line climbs to 7,830 ft.; descends the western escarpment of the Aberdare range to mixed farming country around Lakes Naivasha and Nakuru (6,000 ft.) in the Great Rift Valley; climbs the opposite side of the valley to Mau Summit (8,322 ft.), and finally drops to 3,758 ft. at Kisumu, on Lake Victoria, 587 miles from Mombasa. There it connects with a steamship service on the lake, which is the second largest fresh water lake in the world (the third if the Caspian Sea be included), nearly as large as Scotland and not much smaller than Lake Superior.

The last 135 miles of this pioneer railway are no longer part of the main line, which now continues from Nakuru round the northern

end of Lake Victoria to serve Uganda; on the way it reaches a height of 9,150 ft. The distance from Mombasa to Kampala is 871 miles, and an extension to Kasese, near the Belgian Congo, increases the length of the line to 1,080 miles. Branch lines bring the total of the Kenya-Uganda Railways to over 1,800 miles. With the Tanganyika Railways they make a unified system of nearly 3,400 route miles of single metre-gauge track. They are supplemented by nearly 2,600 miles of road services and over 6,000 miles of marine services on the Great Lakes and the Nile. An extensive network of roads has been constructed—22,000 miles in Kenya alone—and motoring is widespread.

One branch railway runs towards the Tanganyika border to Lake Magadi, famous for its deposits of carbonate of soda, which are manufactured into caustic soda for export; in 1956 the value of these exports was over £1½m. Gold is mined in the Kakamega district north of Kisumu, and there are a few other mineral products, all of comparatively small value. The chief wealth of Kenya, as at present developed, lies in its farms and plantations and associated industries.

Maize is very widely grown both by Europeans and by Africans, but is mostly consumed locally. Livestock do well in the Highlands. The Africans reckon their wealth by their herds and flocks and are estimated to have 4m. cattle, 3m. sheep and 4m. goats. But they are more concerned with quantity than quality, and the most promising factor in the livestock industry is the introduction of pure-bred cattle and sheep by the white settlers. During the Second World War there was a big development in the cultivation of pyrethrum, a daisy-like flower which, when dried and crushed, makes a powerful insecticide. In 1946, pyrethrum headed the list of Kenya's domestic exports, with a value of nearly £1·2m. out of a total of £7·1m. In 1956 it had the same export value, in the double form of pyrethrum (£390,000) and pyrethrum extract (£810,000). Kenya and Uganda are treated as a trade unit, and in the United Nations *Yearbook of Trade Statistics* their joint imports in 1956 were valued at £98m. and joint exports at £69m. They have the usual range of miscellaneous imports for growing countries, manufactures of one kind and another, including machinery (especially vehicles), forming two-thirds of the total. In both countries the exports of coffee are outstanding, rivalled by cotton in Uganda, and supplemented in Kenya mainly by tea, sisal, wattle-bark extract, pyrethrum, and hides and skins. The United Kingdom supplies nearly half the imports and takes nearly a quarter of the exports, while India takes nearly a fifth.

**UGANDA.** In 1862 the pioneer explorers, Speke and Grant, visited a country on the north-western shores of Lake Victoria in marked contrast with the primitive lands through which they had previously passed. The people, though living under a despotic

ruler, were more intelligent than their neighbours, better clothed, more highly organized. They were the Baganda of Buganda (anglicised as Uganda). Later, they were visited by the explorer Stanley, and as a result of his report both Protestant (British) and Catholic (French) missionaries went out. A new and barbarous ruler started a reign of terror. Captain (later Lord) Lugard, representing the Imperial British East Africa Company, acting under a charter, arrived at the end of 1890. A troubled decade followed, during which a British protectorate was proclaimed in 1894.

Once the *Pax Britannica* had been established, Buganda became an outstanding example of African progress, under the guidance of British rule and missionary influence. The Baganda, priding themselves on their traditions, tend to hold themselves aloof from their neighbours, and do not readily fit in with the rest of the protectorate. Buganda itself (25,000 square miles; one-third water) is a little smaller than Scotland, and the whole protectorate (94,000 square miles) a little larger than Great Britain. The total population (nearly 6m.) is about the same as that of Kenya, but the whites number only about 8,500. There are six or seven times as many Indians, who play an important part in the business life of the country. For the most part Uganda is not a white man's country; but though very different in its development from Kenya it has no less distinctive a place in British Africa. It is one of the few African territories under British rule where efforts to promote cotton-growing have met with any large measure of success. Cotton is an economic mainstay of Uganda. It is grown as a rain crop by a host of small farmers, mostly in Buganda and the Eastern Province; about 1½m. acres are planted, and 340–390,000 bales (60–70,000 tons) of cotton are produced. Practically the entire output is exported, and it was long the most valuable export. Now it has a rival in coffee. Uganda produces more coffee than any other Commonwealth country: 63,000 tons in 1955–56—between a third and a half of the Commonwealth total. It is grown by both Europeans and Africans, with the Baganda again well to the fore. The *robusta* ('hard') type has largely displaced *arabica* ('mild') coffee, which is the favoured type in Kenya. In 1956 Kenya and Uganda exported coffee to the value of £29m., and cotton to the value of £20m.—together over 70 per cent. of their total exports (£69m.).

Both in the north-east and south-west of the protectorate are pastoral areas where the tribes live by raising and trading cattle; and altogether Uganda is credited with about 2½m. cattle, as many goats, and 1m. sheep. But there is no export of meat, and hides and skins provide only 2 to 3 per cent. of the exports. Commercially, Uganda must be regarded as an agricultural country.

This is the present position; there are wider possibilities. Uganda lies at the heart of Equatorial Africa. Within its borders the infant



Nile issues from Lake Victoria at Jinja, passing over Ripon Falls, and two or three miles lower down are Owen Falls—site of a great dam and hydro-electric power station, opened in 1954 at a cost of over £10m. So great has been the demand for power that already application has been made to the World Bank for a loan to build another power station on the Nile.

On the opposite (western) side of Uganda, where it marches with the Belgian Congo, the frontier passes through Lake Albert and Lake Edward—more headwaters of the Nile—and through the fabled Mountains of the Moon, which in Ruwenzori rise to nearly 17,000 ft. Copper has been found at Kilembe, on the eastern (British) slopes of Ruwenzori, and it has been proposed to canalise a river to facilitate transport of the ore to Lake Victoria and across the lake to Jinja, for treatment at Owen Falls in smelting works run by hydro-electric power. The extension of the main line of railway from Kampala to Kasese (p. 679) links up with the Kilembe mines.

Jinja is the commercial capital of Eastern Uganda. It is on the main line from Mombasa to Kampala (see page 679), and is also connected by railway along the unnavigable reaches of the Nile northwards to Namasagali, on Lake Kioga (steamer service). Kampala is the commercial capital of Buganda and the principal town in the protectorate. It is proposed to make it the official capital of Uganda by transferring to it the seat of Government from Entebbe. Kampala is built on seven hills, each forming a distinctive part of the town. One (Mengo) is the seat of the native government of Buganda and of the Kabaka (ruler). Other hills are headquarters of the missionary enterprise which has been so great a feature of the development of Uganda, with large Protestant and Catholic cathedrals and hospitals. On yet another is Makerere College, which is to be developed into the University of East Africa. Entebbe, hitherto the capital is 25 miles away, on Lake Victoria.

**TANGANYIKA.** After the First World War, the mountainous north-west corner of German East Africa, comprising the Ruanda-Urundi country, about two-thirds the size of Scotland, was added to the Belgian Congo under mandate; the Kionga triangle, a tract about the size of a small English county in the extreme south-east, south of the mouth of the Rovuma river, became part of Portuguese East Africa; all the rest was mandated to Britain and re-named Tanganyika Territory after the great lake which bounds it on the west.

Covering 360,000 square miles (including 20,000 square miles of water), the Territory is four times the size of Britain, and carries about one-sixth as many people—some 8½m. in 1957, including 20,000 Europeans and 66,000 Asians. It shares with its neighbours parts of three of the Great African Lakes—Victoria and Nyasa as well as Tanganyika; and within its northern border, hard by Kenya, is the highest mountain in Africa—snow-capped Kilimanjaro

(19,565 ft.). It has a coastline of 500 miles bordering the Indian Ocean, backed by an irregular belt, in places reaching 200 miles and more inland, sloping up to about 1,500 ft. Behind this belt the land rises more rapidly, forming the escarpment to a broad plateau of 3-6,000 ft., dropping again in the west to the lake levels, which are like giant steps descending from north to south (Lake Victoria, 3,726 ft.; Tanganyika, 2,590 ft.; Nyasa, 1,600 ft.).

The Central Railway (metre gauge) bisects the Territory. From Dar-es-Salaam, the capital and chief port (population over 100,000), it runs westward to Kigoma, on Lake Tanganyika, a distance of 775 miles, and connects with the southern end of Lake Victoria at Mwanza by a branch line of 236 miles, running north from Tabora. The main line traverses diversified country with a wide range of products—sisal, groundnuts, cotton, rice, maize, millet in the low-lying country; millet and pulses on the plateau, where, however, there are long stretches of thorn-bush country, with little cultivation. Much of the plateau has a scanty rainfall and is better suited to grazing than to agriculture. Only about a fifth of the whole Territory is stock-raising country, the rest being infested by tsetse fly, but it is estimated that the Africans own 7m. cattle. Horses and mules are too few to be put on record, but donkeys are fairly numerous. Sheep number nearly 3m. and goats over 4m.

The railway reaches a height of 3,900 ft. at Tabora, long the chief town in the interior and now also an important airport. The height is not enough to make the plateau a white man's country in the same sense as the Kenya Highlands; but in the south-west, especially around the northern end of Lake Nyasa, where the Livingstone Mountains rise to about 10,000 ft., there are uplands for which comparable claims are made. In the north-east, a railway from Tanga (25,000), the second town and port in the Territory, winds for nearly 300 miles through rich plantation country up to Moshi (2,657 ft.) at the foot of Kilimanjaro, and on to Arusha (4,620ft.), on the slopes of Mt. Meru (15,000 ft.). A branch line 91 miles long, starting near Moshi, connects with the Kenya Railway at Voi, 104 miles from Mombasa.

Until after the Second World War the chief agricultural development of Tanganyika, regarded commercially, was located in this north-east corner of the country. Here, within 50 miles of Tanga, is the world-famous Amani Institute for agricultural research, supported by grants from the Imperial Treasury and all the East African dependencies. The Tanga Railway carries sisal and copra from the lower-lying country along its route, and coffee and tea from the highlands. Tanganyika is the world's chief source of supply of sisal, which is grown throughout the Territory, but chiefly in the north, and is easily Tanganyika's most valuable export. Over 200 works with over 20,000 employees are engaged in processing the fibre,

which is largely shipped through Tanga. In 1956 production was 185,000 tons, roughly half the world supply, and the exports (practically all the local production) were valued at £10·8m.—close on a quarter of Tanganyika's national exports (£44m.). Coffee came next, with 22,000 tons valued at £9·2m. (21 per cent.). Most of the supplies come from the Bukoba district, on the western shore of Lake Victoria, and are grown by Africans, who cultivate both the *arabica* and *robusta* types; but much coffee is also grown on the slopes of Kilimanjaro and Meru by European planters, cultivating *arabica*. Third in the list of domestic exports in 1956 was raw cotton, with 28,000 tons valued at £7½m. (17 per cent.), and fourth came unset diamonds, valued at £2¾m. (6 per cent.). Altogether these four products—sisal, coffee, cotton, and diamonds—provided over two-thirds of the exports by value.

As in other countries in the early stages of development, the bulk of the imports are manufactures; in 1956 they formed over 70 per cent. of the total, principally textiles and machinery, especially vehicles. The United Kingdom dominated both the import and the export trade, providing 45 per cent. (£14½m.) of the imports and taking 31 per cent. (£14m.) of the exports. Only three other countries provided imports valued at over £2m., while five other countries took exports valued at from £2m. to £5m.

Tanganyika, Kenya and Uganda form a trade unit for British East Africa. The total imports and exports, excluding inter-trade between the three territories, are given in the United Nations *Yearbook of International Trade Statistics* for 1957. Imports amounted to £140m. (two-thirds manufactured goods and machinery), and exports to £111m., chiefly coffee (£39·5m.), raw cotton (£24·4m.), and sisal (11·6m.). It is interesting to compare the combined figures for the three territories in 1957 with the separate figures for Tanganyika in 1956, when the totals were much the same.

Local products, both for export and for home consumption, are many and varied, with prospects of extensive development. But the case for making haste slowly has been strengthened by the outcome of a big scheme which was launched by the Imperial Government after the Second World War, to promote agricultural development based on groundnut cultivation. Large areas were allocated for the purpose in central, western, and southern Tanganyika, but after heavy losses the scheme was handed over in 1954 to a Tanganyika Agricultural Corporation. Useful legacies of the scheme are a new southern port, Mtwara, with a railway to Nachingwea (131 miles).

A large part of the Territory—about 40 per cent.—is wooded, and there are valuable timbers in the forests. The lumbering and sawmilling industry is already considerable. Tanganyika is also rich in mineral resources which, as yet, have scarcely been tapped. They include gold, diamonds, coal, iron ore, and lead. Gold was produced

in 1956 to the amount of 70,000 fine troy ounces, and the discovery of a Kimberlite pipe south of Lake Victoria in 1940 put Tanganyika on the diamond map of the world. Marketing disputes with the South African diamond interests were settled to mutual satisfaction, and after the death of Dr. Williamson, the Canadian discoverer and owner of the Tanganyika pipe, the Tanganyika Government acquired a half interest in the mine and the South African magnates secured control of the other half.

**ZANZIBAR.** Zanzibar Protectorate includes the island of that name (greatest length 53 miles, width 24 miles, area 640 square miles—about half that of Cornwall) and the island of Pemba (380 square miles), 25 miles to the north. Both islands lie off the coast of Tanganyika Territory, from which they are separated by a channel about as wide as the Straits of Dover. The Sultan rules through an Executive and a Legislative Council, and is guided by the advice of a British Resident. He is of Arab descent, of the same family as the Sultan of Muscat; both celebrated in 1944 the bi-centenary of a common ancestor who founded the dynasty. The modern importance of the fact lies in the powerful Arab element in the population and the commercial ties which keep a fleet of trading dhows in service between Zanzibar and Muscat. The protectorate population of over  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. includes some 200,000 Africans, 45,000 Arabs (the land-owning class), 16,000 Indians (the merchant class), and 300 Europeans. Zanzibar city, the capital and chief port, has nearly 50,000 inhabitants (1948 census figures).

Zanzibar is renowned as 'The Island of Cloves,' and Pemba shares its fame. Cloves are the dominating factor in the trade of the protectorate, and it has been reckoned that the two islands produce four-fifths of the world's supply. About 60,000 acres are under cloves;  $3\frac{1}{2}$ m. trees are in bearing; and over a long period of years production has averaged some 20m. lb., with a pre-war export value of around £500,000. Crops vary greatly from year to year, and the fluctuations in quantity, coupled with other factors affecting prices, notably disease, have caused great extremes in post-war trade.

In 1955 imports were valued at £5.7m. (over 40 per cent. food) and national exports at £5m. (over 80 per cent. cloves and clove oil). Copra and coconut oil were exported to the value of about £700,000 (14 per cent.). The United Kingdom supplied 25 per cent. of the imports, India over 10 per cent., and Pakistan nearly 10 per cent. Indonesia and India took most of the cloves, while other leading customers, on a lower level, were Kenya-Uganda, Tanganyika, and the United Kingdom.

## WEST AFRICA

Whereas in East Africa the various territories under British control are linked together geographically, in West Africa the four countries within the Commonwealth—Ghana, Nigeria, Sierra Leone, and Gambia—are separated one from another, each being embedded in the vast expanse of French West Africa. Lying between 4° and 14° N. latitude, they co-operated for many years by consultations within a Governors' Conference. Since the Second World War they have all developed constitutionally, but at different rates. Ghana (formerly the Gold Coast), after gaining self-government under the Crown, passed to full independence in 1957, when it assumed the name of a medieval African State which had flourished in the Middle Niger basin. Nigeria, larger and more complex, has been passing through the same process of development from self-government to full independence, which it is due to attain in 1960. Sierra Leone and Gambia, at earlier stages of development, are gradually being granted larger measures of control within their borders. There is great diversity of size and economic importance between the territories. To take the two extremes, Nigeria is over 90 times the size of Gambia, has nearly 100 times its population, and normally exports produce worth 30 to 40 times as much.

**GHANA**, prior to its erection into a fully independent state, embraced four territories: (1) Adjoining the coast—here running roughly east and west along the Gulf of Guinea—the Gold Coast Colony, about three-fourths the size of Scotland. (2) North of the Colony, and about the same in size, the African confederacy of Ashanti, annexed in 1901 after conquest, but not proclaimed a colony. (3) North of Ashanti the Northern Territories, as large as Scotland; they were proclaimed a protectorate in 1901. (4) Along the eastern border of these three territories a tract nearly twice the size of Wales, being that part of former German Togoland where Britain was trustee on behalf of the United Nations. Together these four territories formed a compact rectangular block, with an area of 91,840 square miles (a little larger than Great Britain) and an estimated population of nearly 4½m., over half of them living in the Colony proper, a fifth in Ashanti, and a fourth in the Northern Territories. For administrative purposes, British Togoland was attached partly to the Colony and partly to the Northern Territories.

Politically, a radical change in the status of the Gold Coast took

place in 1951, when large powers of self-government were granted under a new constitution. In 1952 the Government Party leader was given the title of Prime Minister, and in 1953 the Gold Coast asked for Dominion status. As a step thereto, new constitutional instruments were agreed, and in June, 1954, the Governor proclaimed internal self-government through an All-African Assembly. The Governor remained responsible for external affairs, defence, and internal security, until March 6, 1957, when Ghana attained full dominion status, with a unicameral legislature, and a Governor-General to represent the Queen as titular head of the state.

In British Togoland a plebiscite in 1956, under the auspices of the United Nations, favoured integration with the Gold Coast, and this part of Togoland is now incorporated in the new state of Ghana. The whole country is divided into five administrative regions—Eastern and Western (the old Gold Coast Colony), Ashanti, Northern, and Trans-Volta/Togoland, each with a Regional Assembly and a House of Chiefs, subordinate to the National Assembly.

The coast, some 330 miles long, is surf-bound and has, generally, a low sandy foreshore threaded by lagoons. It lacks natural harbours, though many historically famous towns are scattered along it—Axim, Sekondi, Elmina, Cape Coast, Winneba, &c. The most important towns to-day are Accra, the capital, a city of 140,000 people ably run by an African City Council with an all-African staff, but whose only harbour facility is a small breakwater providing shelter for surf-boats and lighters; and Takoradi, a town near Sekondi, with a joint population of 50,000 and a modern deep-water harbour constructed between the two world wars, capable of accommodating the largest vessels engaged in the West African trade.

Forest comes nearly down to the coast in the west, but eastward a coastal belt of rolling plains and scrub, with occasional isolated hills, widens out to a depth of 60 miles on the frontier. The coconut palm flourishes all along the coast. North of this belt the forest area extends through practically the whole of the Colony and the south-western half of Ashanti. It is broken by ridges of hills and is of inestimable value to the Gold Coast both as a protection against aridity and as a direct source of wealth. Not only does it yield valuable timbers, but here is found the oil-palm and here is the home of the dominant factor in the Gold Coast trade—the cocoa industry. This industry, which has been built up since the closing decade of the nineteenth century by the labours of peasant farmers and has largely superseded the cultivation of the oil-palm, was threatened in the 'thirties of the present century by the appearance of a new disease, Swollen Shoot, among the cocoa trees. During the Second World War the menace grew to one of the first magnitude. The only known remedy is to destroy the diseased trees, and the Government of the Gold Coast has tried to enforce such action, with limited success.

Beyond the forest, in Northern Ashanti and the Northern Territories, while the rivers are mostly bordered by dense belts of trees and scrub, in between are open woodlands and parklands, orchards and plains. Especially notable is the vast number of shea-nut trees, capable, it is estimated, of providing a  $\frac{1}{4}$ m. tons of shea-butter a year.

The general elevation of the country is not great—under 1,000 ft., but some of the hills rise to 2,000 ft. and, on the eastern border, nearly 3,000 ft. On the whole the country is well-watered, though the rivers are not navigable (except by canoes) for any great distance inland; north of the forest they are apt to flood after rains and shrink to pools in the dry season. Much the biggest river is the Volta, whose two main headstreams, the Black and the White Volta, come from afar in French West Africa and, with their tributaries, water the whole of the Northern Region, near whose southern border they unite and continue south to form the eastern boundary of Ashanti. For years past, proposals supported provisionally by the United Kingdom and Ghana Governments have been made for a big scheme of development on the lower Volta, including the building of a dam to form a great reservoir, which would serve as a source of hydro-electric power for the manufacture of aluminium from bauxite, and would extend navigation nearly to the junction of the Black and White Voltas. Favourable conditions for launching this project are awaited. Meanwhile work has been in progress on a new port, Tema, between Accra and the mouth of the Volta.

The motorable road mileage is 8,000, of which 1,360 miles have a bitumenised surface. Both Accra and Takoradi-Sekondi are connected by rail (3 ft. 6 in. gauge) with Kumasi, the capital of Ashanti, the respective distances being 190 miles and 176 miles; various branches bring the total railway mileage up to over 600. Kumasi is a town of about 80,000 inhabitants. Tamale, the chief town and administrative headquarters of the Northern Territories, contains some 16,000 people.

Forty miles inland from Takoradi the railway passes through Tarkwa (whence there is a branch to Prestea), and 125 miles inland through Obuasi (in Ashanti)—modern centres of production of the precious metal whose abundance, in the early days of African exploration, gave the Gold Coast its name. Not only gold mining but other branches of mineral production, notably manganese ore and industrial diamonds, are important factors in the export trade. In 1956 exports were valued at over £86m., including gold (£7 $\frac{1}{2}$ m.). Cocoa contributed 60 per cent. of the total; gold, diamonds and manganese ore 26 per cent., and timber 11 per cent., leaving only 3 per cent. for all other products. In view of the Volta project it may be noted that the exports of bauxite were 140,000 tons, valued at £331,000. Quantities and values of the main items were:

## PRINCIPAL EXPORTS, 1956. TOTAL, £86M.

Commodity	Quantity	Value
Cocoa . . . . .	238,600 tons	£52.0m.
Gold . . . . .	559,340 oz. troy	£7.5m.
Manganese ore . . . . .	636,000 tons	£7.0m.
Diamonds . . . . .	2.5m. carats	£7.9m.
Timber . . . . .		£9.4m.
		<u>£83.8m.</u>

Imports in 1956 were valued at £88.8m., mainly textiles and other manufactured goods and machinery and transport equipment. The United Kingdom supplied nearly half the imports (£42m.) and took over a quarter (£22m.) of the exports, the other best customers for the exports being the United States (£16m.), Germany (£14m.) and the Netherlands (£10m.).

**NIGERIA** takes its name from the river Niger. It is roughly a square block of territory, with sides of 600–700 miles, in the angle of the Gulf of Guinea where the general trend of the coast is east and west. The Niger flows in from the north-west, follows a south easterly course to near the centre, then turns and flows south to the Gulf. Its main mouth is in the centre of the coast, but the delta spreads out so far on either side and has so many channels, connecting with one another and with other rivers beyond the delta, that almost the entire seaboard is backed by a network of waterways. The rivers and creeks are separated by mangrove swamp forests, which the silt carried by the Niger is gradually extending seaward.

This coastal belt has a depth of 10 to 60 miles. Behind it lies a belt of tropical 'rain forest' and oil-palm bush, stretching north for another 50–100 miles. As the land rises, the forest changes to open woodlands, which in turn give place to grasslands with patches of scrub, until in the far north desert conditions are encountered on the verge of the Sahara. In the north-east corner is Lake Chad, which in its fullest extent (estimated at 20,000 square miles) is second only to Lake Victoria among African lakes, and is not much smaller than Lake Michigan. But it is comparatively shallow, and fluctuates greatly in size, like Lake Ngami in the Kalahari.

Near to where the Niger turns south it is joined, at Lokoja, by its great tributary the Benue, flowing from the east and forming with the Niger itself, above the confluence, a continuous line of rivers stretching across Nigeria and dividing it into two parts, northern and southern. To the north is plateau country, generally of no great height (about 2,000 ft.), but rising to over 6,000 ft. in the Bauchi Plateau, which covers some 2,000 square miles north of the Benue and is noted for its tinfields. Elsewhere the surface is broken by scattered hills, but there is little mountainous country except along the eastern border, where the Cameroons Mountain, near the coast, rises to 13,350 ft. After the First World War, most of the German



Cameroons was assigned to France, but the western strip was attached to Nigeria. These arrangements are coming to an end with the grant of independence to the Cameroons in 1960. The northern part of the British strip is merging in Northern Nigeria; the southern part proposes to secede.

The total area of Nigeria, including the trustee territory (less than a tenth of the whole), is 373,000 square miles—four times the size of Great Britain; with 34m. inhabitants (1957 estimate) it contains over a third of the population of the British colonial empire. Under the constitution of 1954, Nigeria is a federation, consisting of (1) at the western end of the coast the municipality of Lagos (267,000), formerly capital of the old Lagos colony, now ranking as the Federal capital; (2) (3), and (4), Northern, Western, and Eastern Regions, comprising practically the whole of Nigeria and having protectorate status; (5) the quasi-Federal territory of the Cameroons, forming the southern part of the Trustee strip (the northern part is joined to the Northern Region). The Northern Region is by far the largest, extending across the whole country from east to west, and from the northern boundary to 50–100 miles and more south of the Niger and the Benue. It comprises three-fourths of the total area and rather more than half the total population. The Western and Eastern Regions cover most of the remaining quarter of the federation, and contain between 40 and 50 per cent. of the total population, the Eastern Region being the smaller but the more populous. As these particulars show, the Western and Eastern Regions, though each smaller than the northern, are the more densely populated.

Pending the grant of Dominion status in 1960, each of the regions has a large measure of self-government. There is also a Federal House of Representatives and a Council of Ministers. At a Constitutional Conference in 1957 provision was made for the appointment of a Federal Prime Minister to take the place of the Governor-General in presiding over the Council of Ministers after the grant of full independence.

Peoples and resources are as diversified as the geographical conditions. The mangrove swamps along the coast yield little, their inhabitants living by fishing and trading. The forest zone yields valuable timbers, including mahogany, and the oil-palm is one of the mainstays of the export trade. In forest clearings, and in the more open country beyond, there is a good deal of cultivation. Cocoa is a major export crop, especially north of Lagos.

In the Western Region are populous native states, with influential rulers. Ibadan, the Regional capital, has nearly 500,000 inhabitants, and there are several towns numbering 50,000–150,000. The Eastern Region is more primitive, but has in addition to forest products the Udi coalfields, centring in Enugu (Regional capital)

and controlled by the Nigerian Coal Corporation, which is analogous to the National Coal Board in the United Kingdom. The annual output reached over  $\frac{3}{4}$ m. tons, mostly absorbed by the Nigerian railways and marine services; but with falling demand production in 1959 was cut by over 100,000 tons. A first shipment of crude mineral oil was made in 1958 from Port Harcourt (some 40 miles up the Bonny river) after many years of costly prospecting. Oil is being pumped in the Eastern Region through a 70-mile pipeline of mainly 10-inch diameter and will, it is hoped, provide 1,000 tons a day; but in 1959 ultimate prospects were still doubtful.

Throughout southern Nigeria fetish worship is common, despite the spread of Christian and Moslem influence. The Northern Region, though not without its complement of pagan communities in remote strongholds, is essentially Mohammedan in its civilisation. Many of the provinces are Sultanates (Sokoto and Bornu) or Emirates (Kano, Katsina, Zaria, &c.), founded by Fulani overlords who came from the East centuries ago and are of different stock from the West Coast negro. Though modified by inter-marriage they still constitute the ruling caste and form a distinct linguistic group. It is easier to distinguish the people of Nigeria by language than by race. Besides the Fulani, outstanding linguistic groups are the Hausas and, in the south, the Ibos and Yorubas.

The walled cities of the Fulani are famous, notably Kano (130,000), chief trading centre of the Northern Region, the goal of the camel caravans from the Sahara and the headquarters of Nigeria's groundnut industry. In 1955-56 there was a record groundnut crop of  $\frac{3}{4}$ m. tons, and supplies often accumulate because of transport delays on the railways. The Northern Region is, too, the main seat of the livestock industry, especially the cattle industry, which is largely banished from the south by the tsetse fly. Over 90 per cent. of Nigeria's 4-8m. cattle are found in the North, in areas free from tsetse. Cattle for meat are railed to Lagos, and there is a big trade in hides and skins—the latter chiefly from goats, the most numerous livestock, though all numbers are uncertain. Also in the North the British Cotton Growing Association has done much to introduce and encourage the cultivation of American-type cotton, with limited success. Not least in commercial importance is the alluvial tin-mining on the Bauchi Plateau, around Jos. In the process of dressing the concentrates to tin ore of shipping grade, columbite (ore of columbium) is separated as a by-product and sent to the United States, where it is used for stainless ductile steels and welding. The tin ore is sent to Britain to be smelted. Regional capital, Kaduna.

Nigerian trade has made substantial progress in recent years. As in most countries, the post-war increase in its nominal value has been very much greater than the increase in volume. In 1956, exports were valued at £132m., and general imports at £150m. Over 10 per

cent. of the imports are required for food; otherwise, machinery (largely transport equipment) and manufactured goods (largely textiles) account for most of the inward trade. The United Kingdom supplied about 45 per cent. (£68m.) of the imports in 1956 and took about 65 per cent. (£85m.) of the exports. Japan provided the second biggest share (£20m.) of the imports, while the Netherlands (£13m.) and the United States (£12½m.) were the leading purchasers after Britain. The chief items of export were:

Commodity	Quantity	Value
{ Groundnuts . . . . .	448,000 tons	£27·7m. }
{ Groundnut oil . . . . .	35,000 „	£4·1m. }
{ Palm kernels . . . . .	451,000 „	£20·4m. }
{ Palm oil . . . . .	185,000 „	£14·8m. }
Cocoa . . . . .	117,000 „	£24·0m.
Tin ore . . . . .	13,000 „	£7·3m.
Cotton . . . . .	28,000 „	£7·1m.
Rubber . . . . .	39,000 „	£6·4m.
Hides and Skins . . . . .	8,500 „	£3·0m.
Wood and Cork . . . . .	377,000 cu. metres	£3·9m.
Bananas . . . . .	68,000 tons	£2·4m.

Four Marketing Boards have been established, dealing respectively with the trade in cocoa, oil palm products, groundnuts, and cotton. The Boards have a monopoly of buying and selling their respective commodities, and the aim in each case is to regulate the price paid to the producer so as to even out the differences in world prices in good and bad years. In practice the Boards have made very large profits; in 1952 their combined reserves exceeded £70m. Under the 1954 constitution the Boards have been regionalised.

To carry the growing volume of trade Nigeria has 1,900 miles of railway; 37,000 miles of motor roads, of which 12,000 miles rank as truck roads and nearly 4,000 miles are tarred; and long stretches of navigable waterways through coastal swamps. The Niger is navigable for nearly 550 miles, up to Jebba, where the main line of railway crosses the river; and the Benue for nearly the whole of its course within Nigeria, up to Yola, 467 miles from its junction with the Niger at Lokoja, which is some 340 miles from the coast. But navigation is made difficult by shifting sandbanks, and both rivers are remarkable for the range of their annual rise and fall, which on the Lower Niger (that is, below Jebba) may be as much as 35 ft. It is only in the later months of the year that vessels of any size can ascend either river. Up to June the depth may be only 3 or 4 ft. At high water (July-October on the Niger; August-September on the Benue) vessels drawing 7 or 8 ft. can reach both Jebba and Yola.

There are two principal railways. First and foremost is a line traversing the country from south-west to north-east. From Lagos it passes via Ibadan through the thickly populated provinces of Abeokuta and Oyo into the Northern Region, crosses the Niger at

Jebba (303 miles), continues through Zungeru, Minna, Kaduna (566 miles), and Zaria to Kano (705 miles), and thence to its terminus at Nguru (847 miles), near the northern border. The general elevation is between 1,000 and 2,000 ft., the latter altitude being just exceeded at Zaria (2,100 ft.). Various branches total over 400 miles. The other main line runs north from Port Harcourt to Enugu (151 miles) for the Udi coalfields; continues to Makurdi (290 miles) on the Benue, which is crossed by a rail and road bridge half a mile long; and finally joins the line from Lagos at Kaduna (569 miles). It will be seen that Kaduna is practically equidistant by rail from Lagos and Port Harcourt.

From Kafanchan, 100 miles short of Kaduna on the Port Harcourt route, an important branch of 3 ft. 6 in. gauge connects with Jos, the 'metropolis' of the tin mines, 63 miles from the junction and 531 miles from the port. Before this railway was built, the products of the mines were carried by light railway from Jos to Zaria (133 miles) *en route* to Lagos (750 miles). The light railway is 2 ft. 6 in. gauge (it has to climb to 4,500 ft.), so that it was necessary to tranship freight at Zaria, and though the narrow gauge line is still used for the transport of locally grown cotton, it was naturally superseded for tin by the Port Harcourt line, which not only provides through transport but shortens the route to the point of shipment by over 200 miles.

Constitutionally, Nigeria is in a transition stage. A large measure of self-government of a federal character, granted in 1952, broke down over regional differences of outlook. The South pressed for early Nigerian independence; the North wished to proceed more slowly. The 1954 constitution (p. 686), agreed by the British Government with all parties, provided for greater regional autonomy. The future working of full independence, if granted in 1960 as anticipated, is now awaited.

**Sierra Leone.** The Colony and Protectorate of Sierra Leone are an outcome of the anti-slavery movement at the end of the eighteenth century. William Wilberforce and his fellow-workers founded a settlement for freed slaves at the foot of a lofty peninsula sheltering an excellent harbour; the land was ceded to them by the local chief, and they named the settlement Freetown. That was in 1788; to-day Freetown is a city of 100,000 people, the capital of a British dependency stretching along the coast for 210 miles and covering an area of nearly 28,000 square miles—almost the size of Scotland. The peninsula on which the city stands follows the general direction of the coast and is really a short mountain range, 25 miles long and 10 to 12 miles across at its widest, rising to conical peaks of 2,000 to 3,000 ft. It is a notable feature of the West African coast, which is generally low-lying, and the harbour which it shelters is also outstanding on the West Coast.

Two explanations are offered of the name Sierra Leone (Lion Mountains), which was given to the peninsula by fifteenth-century Portuguese navigators. Some attribute it to the supposed resemblance of part of the mountain crest to the figure of a lion; others think that the reverberations of thunder among the mountains suggested the roaring of lions to the discoverers. However that may be, the name has been extended in modern times to cover the British colony and protectorate which have spread from Freetown. The colony is in bits and pieces, which all told are about the size of Devon, and of these only the peninsula and certain islands are administered as a colony; other scattered areas are merged in the protectorate administration, which took a big stride forward in 1946, when a Chief Commissioner was appointed and a Protectorate Assembly instituted, with headquarters at the inland centre of Bo. There was a further development in 1951, when a new constitution provided for a Legislative Council for the whole territory, with an unofficial majority and power to legislate for both the Colony and the Protectorate. This was succeeded in 1956 by a House of Representatives and an Executive Council, and in 1958 an African Cabinet chosen by an African Prime Minister was installed. Powers are reserved to the Governor to control external affairs, defence, and internal security, but the aim is to promote eventual self-government.

Apart from the peninsula, the coast is edged with mangrove swamps and backed by rolling wooded country, varied by low ranges of hills. In the north and east the territory rises to a plateau of some 1,500 ft., with peaks of over 6,000 ft. near the frontier. This is bordered for the most part by French Guinea, but in the south-east, for about 150 miles from the coast, the negro republic of Liberia is neighbour.

In general, Sierra Leone is a country of tropical heat with torrential rains during six months of the year. Rice is the staple food of the 2m. inhabitants, and paddy is grown on  $\frac{3}{4}$ m. acres yielding  $\frac{1}{4}$ m. tons. Cassava, sweet potatoes and groundnuts are also grown extensively for home consumption. Livestock are comparatively few, rough estimates of the numbers being 150,000 cattle, 20,000 sheep, 25,000 goats, 5,000 pigs. The country is well watered by rivers, many of which are navigable for 20 to 30 miles from the coast by vessels drawing up to 7 ft.; ocean-going vessels can ascend the Sherbro river for 45 miles. Over 7,400 miles of trunk roads are classed as suitable for motoring throughout the year, and there are 650 miles of dry-weather roads. The Government has built and operates over 300 miles of narrow-gauge railway (2 ft. 6 in.). Iron ore is exported from the Marampa mines over a privately owned railway of 3 ft. 6 in. gauge, 57 miles long.

Diamonds are so plentiful in parts of the protectorate that a company holding the sole diamond concession worked only a com-

paratively small area. Diamonds could be picked up from the ground, and after the Second World War there was much smuggling, both by Sierra Leoneans and by Africans who flocked in from neighbouring countries. The company agreed to limit its concession in return for compensation, and large areas were thrown open to authorised prospecting under regulation; but regulations were difficult to enforce, and smuggling remained rampant. In 1958, illicit dealing in diamonds was officially estimated at 20 per cent. of the national product. Continued trouble in 1959 led to wholesale arrests. Both industrial diamonds and gems are produced, the latter including some of quite exceptional size from alluvial deposits—one of 530 carats in 1943 and another of 770 carats in 1945.

In 1956, while imports were valued at £23m., exports amounted to only £13m. Diamonds provided £3½m., iron ore £4m., palm kernels £2½m., coffee £660,000, cocoa £581,000. The United Kingdom took two-thirds (£8½m.) of the total, the next largest customers being Germany (£1.6m.) and the Netherlands (£1m.). Between 15 and 20 per cent. of the imports were for food, the rest mostly for textiles and machinery. Over half (£12½m.) came from the United Kingdom; Italy contributed £2m., Japan £1.2m.

The Gambia Colony and Protectorate compose the smallest British dependency on the mainland of Africa; with an area of some 4,000 square miles, the territory is about half the size of Wales. It has a distinctive character, and may be likened to a mounted thermometer, in which the tube represents 300 miles of the river Gambia, stretching inland at right angles to the coast, and the mount a strip of territory 10 miles wide on either side of the river. The waterway is the main artery of travel; shallow-draught river steamers of some hundreds of tons ply along practically the whole of the British section of the Gambia (the full length of the river is 700 miles), and ocean-going steamers ascend it for 150 miles. There is no railway, and roads are mostly dry-weather tracks. In the rains the upper river rises as much as 30 ft., and there is extensive flooding along the banks.

Just as the river is the dominating physical feature, so there is a dominating product—groundnuts. They constitute all but a minor part of the domestic exports, varying a good deal in quantity from year to year but averaging about 60,000 tons of unshelled nuts, with exports valued at £2.25m. in 1956 out of a total of £2.55m. Imports were valued at £3.73m. A new industry, the mining of ilmenite, was initiated in 1956.

As in Sierra Leone, the Colony proper is a collection of comparatively small patches of territory, chiefly at the mouth of the river, where Bathurst, the capital (20,000), is built on St. Mary's Island. There are Legislative and Executive Councils for the dependency as a whole, both with unofficial majorities. The total population

is upwards of 275,000. An annual migration, inward and outward, of 'strange farmers' constitutes a notable factor in the agricultural economy of the Gambia. Some 15-16,000 of them come regularly from the neighbouring French territories, grow a crop of ground-nuts by arrangement with the resident farmers, and then return home.

During the Second World War, Bathurst was an important sea-plane base, and at Yundum, 17 miles from the town, it has an air-field which links it with Dakar and Accra, and so with London.

### FRENCH WEST AFRICA

French West Africa is not merely a geographical term but the official designation of the largest administrative unit in the whole of Africa: it has an area of 1.7m. square miles—nearly double the size of any other African territory. It stretches continuously behind the British West African dependencies and reaches down between them to the sea. Over the whole is a High Commissioner, responsible for a General Budget, and assisted by a Grand Council of delegates from each of the territories forming French West Africa.

In a referendum on the constitution of the French Union in September 1958, all the territories voted to remain in the Union except French Guinea, which declared for independence and was given that status forthwith. The other territories may be divided into two groups. Along the coast, Senegal, the Ivory Coast and Dahomey are three colonies comparable with those of British West Africa. Behind them lie another four territories—Mauritania, which has a stretch of desert coast, and the French Sudan, Upper Volta, and Niger Colony, which are wholly inland. This second group is practically six times as large as the first, but it merges in the Sahara and, except in the Upper Volta, is much more sparsely populated. The following table gives the areas in 1955 and the populations in 1957.

Territory	Square Miles (1955)	Population (1957)
Senegal . . .	76,000	2,269,000
Ivory Coast . . .	124,500	2,485,000
Dahomey . . .	44,500	1,713,000
	245,000	6,467,000
Mauritania . . .	419,000	624,000
French Sudan . . .	465,000	3,708,000
Upper Volta . . .	106,000	3,326,000
Niger Colony . . .	459,000	2,415,000
	1,449,000	10,073,000
Total . . .	1,694,000	16,540,000

These figures show that French West Africa is between three and four times as large as all the British Commonwealth in West Africa (barely  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. square miles); but its population is less than half as large

—indeed, less than half that of Nigeria alone. Its geographical characteristics are typically West African. From a low-lying coastal zone, in places covered with tropical forest, elsewhere rich in oil palms, coconut palms and cultivated products, the land rises to open woodlands and savannas, which in turn give place to more or less desert country, merging in the Sahara. The importance of its river systems is partially indicated by the names of three of the territories—Senegal, Niger and Upper Volta. The Senegal river, over 1,000 miles long, lies wholly in French West Africa, forming in the lower half of its course the northern boundary of the colony named after it; crossing, higher up, a corner of the French Sudan; and having its main source in Guinea, among the highlands of Futa Jallon. These highlands, which rise to 5,000 ft., are not only the main orographical feature of French West Africa, but a notable watershed. As well as the Senegal, here is the source of the Gambia river (700 miles), which flows through Guinea and the Senegal colony before becoming the artery of British Gambia. Here too, are the sources of the Niger river at the outset of its long journey of 2,600 miles, during which it flows from Guinea through the French Sudan and thence across the French Niger territory before entering British Nigeria. Both the Black Volta (400 miles) and the White Volta (330 miles) rise in the Upper Volta territory and, with their affluents, water that territory before passing on to Ghana to unite and follow a further course of 310 miles to the sea. These are the dominant rivers of West Africa. Many relatively minor but considerable rivers flow more directly to the coast, and though their passage down the giant steps by which the country descends from the interior plateaus to the sea renders them unnavigable except in stretches, they are an essential factor in maintaining the fertility of the soil.

Livestock are numerous, including (with Guinea), it is estimated, 10m. cattle, 12m. sheep, and 8m. goats.

The value of the trade in francs is many times what it was before the Second World War, but true comparison is made difficult not only by the devaluation of the franc but by the institution, since the war, of an 'African franc' equivalent to two ordinary French francs. This African franc (C.F.A.—Colonies Francaises d'Afrique) is the monetary unit in all French Africa except North Africa, where the unit is still the franc of metropolitan France, and French Somaliland where the Djibuti franc is equivalent to 1.63 metropolitan francs.

In 1956 special imports into French West Africa (which then included Guinea) were valued at Frs. C.F.A. 67,199m., and special exports at Frs. C.F.A. 53,277m.<sup>1</sup> The Fr. C.F.A. was then valued (*U.N. Yearbook of International Statistics*) at 0.57 cents, or just under Frs. C.F.A. 500 to the £, so that the imports in 1956 may be valued at approximately £135m. and the exports at £107m. Imports were

<sup>1</sup> For 'special' trade see p. 18.



mostly manufactures—largely textiles, transport equipment and machinery. Groundnuts are grown on an even more extensive scale than in Nigeria, and in 1956 provided over 27 per cent. of the total exports, either as nuts (£14½m.), mostly shelled, or as groundnut oil (£15m.). Coffee was a close second, with exports valued at £27m. (25 per cent.), and cocoa came third, providing over £22m. (over 20 per cent.). These three products are the outstanding exports from French West Africa, providing nearly three-fourths of the total value. Palm kernels and palm oil provided another 5 per cent. (£5½m.) in 1956. About two-thirds of the trade, as regards both imports and exports, is with France, which is followed at a distance in the inward trade by the United States, Morocco, and Germany, and in the outward trade by the United States, Netherlands, and Algeria.

**Senegal**, half as large again as England, is the premier country of French West Africa. A large part of the interior is occupied by a sandy plateau scantily supplied with water, covered with thorn bush, and sparsely populated. But cultivated lands border the Senegal river in the north and extend beyond the narrow strip of British Gambia in the south to the fertile belt known as the Casamance. The coastal zone, too, is productive and carries a fair population. Groundnuts are the outstanding commercial product; Senegal is the chief factor in French West Africa's reputation as one of the leading sources of world supply. Dakar, the seat of the Governor-General, has 230,000 people, a well-equipped port visited in 1956 by 4,245 ships of 11½m. tons and 8,354 aircraft with 45,576 passengers. St. Louis (40,000), the capital of Senegal, near the mouth of the Senegal river, is of little account as a port; access is made difficult by a shifting river bar. But from St. Louis a service of river steamers is maintained to Podor (140 miles) all the year round, and in the flood season (August-September) steamers drawing 14 to 15 ft. of water can ascend as far as Kayes (500 miles), in the French Sudan.

A metre-gauge railway, the oldest in French West Africa, connects Dakar with St. Louis (165 miles). At Thiès, 44 miles east of Dakar, the railway forks: the original line turns north to St. Louis; a later line continues eastward across Senegal into the French Sudan, where it connects with Kayes and eventually reaches its terminus at Koulikoro; on the upper Niger, 800 miles from Dakar. Senegal and the Sudan are now linked in the Federation of Mali, which announced in September 1959 its intention to seek independence.

**Ivory Coast.** This colony, between two and three times the size of England, provides most of the cocoa and coffee exported from French West Africa. The experiences of the two industries during the Second World War were very different. Previously the Ivory Coast ranked next to the Gold Coast and Nigeria among African sources of cocoa supply, but in the war years its exports declined greatly and afterwards recovered slowly, being surpassed by those of

the French Cameroons. On the other hand its exports of coffee—a comparatively new cultivation—increased during the war to such an extent that at the close the Ivory Coast was in the front rank of African coffee-exporting countries.

Palm kernels and palm oil are also important exports. Before the war there was considerable trade in timbers from the forest belt behind the coast, and supplies are capable of great expansion. The coast is surfbound, and the ports are open roadsteads, but Abidjan, the capital (130,000), on the landward side of a lagoon, is a modern port, linked by a road and rail bridge with the coast, which has been pierced by a ship canal. A metre-gauge railway to Bobo-Dioulasso (390 miles), in the Upper Volta Territory (p. 699), has been under extension to Ouagadougou, another 256 miles.

**Dahomey.** Palm kernels and palm oil are the dominant trade factors in Dahomey. It is the smallest of the French West African colonies—smaller than England—but oil palms were planted extensively by the old kings of Abomey between the coast and their capital, about 60 miles inland, and it is estimated that now there are 30m. trees spread over 1½m. acres. The normal average production is officially put at 55,000 tons of palm kernels and 20,000 tons of palm oil. Cotton, shea nuts and shea butter are among the other exports

Porto Novo, the capital, has a population of 31,500; Cotonu, the chief port, 56,500. The ports are open roadsteads, but Cotonu has a pier a quarter of a mile long at which shore boats can land or disembark passengers and goods outside the line of surf. Dahomey has 400 miles of metre-gauge railways, including a central line from Cotonu to Parakou (273 miles), which is to be extended eventually to the northern border of the colony at Gaya, on the Niger. Abomey, the ancient capital (15,000), lies just off the central railway, but is connected with it by a line of 60cm.-gauge (approximately 2 ft.). In all there are 69 miles of these narrow-gauge lines.

**Mauritania.** The character of the greater part of this vast territory—three-fourths as large again as Senegal, the Ivory Coast and Dahomey put together—is indicated by the fact that the population averages three persons in two square miles. In the south, where the Senegal river divides Mauritania from Senegal, a fertile belt has a settled population, but elsewhere desert or semi-desert country, varied by oases of date palms, is roamed by nomad pastoral tribes in search of grazing and water for their flocks and herds. The herds of cattle and droves of camels and donkeys number hundreds of thousands, and are far exceeded by the flocks of sheep and goats, estimated at 2½m. Livestock are exported to Senegal, and there is a trade in dressed hides and skins. An active sea-fishing industry, to which boats come from the Canary Islands and from Brittany, is based on Port Etienne, which has installations for salting and drying

fish for export. Rich deposits of iron and copper are attracting attention. There has been trouble with marauding bands from Morocco, challenging French sovereignty. The administrative headquarters are not in the territory, but at St. Louis (Senegal).

**French Sudan.** (see also **Senegal**). Mention has already been made of the railway connecting Dakar with the French Sudan. From Kayes it mounts the Upper Senegal valley for some distance, then crosses to the Upper Niger at Bamako, and, by-passing a stretch of rapids, descends the Niger Valley to Koulikoro. Upstream from Bamako, the Niger is navigable for 230 miles to Kouroussa, in French Guinea; downstream from Koulikoro it is navigable for 870 miles to beyond Timbuktu and Gao. On both these long stretches a service of river steamers is maintained for about seven months in the year.

Thanks to the inclusion of these sections of the Upper Senegal and Niger valleys, the French Sudan, which is about a ninth larger than Mauritania, has a population six times as large. A wide range of crops includes groundnuts (grown extensively both for local consumption and for export), cotton and sisal. Irrigation works have been carried out along the Niger, in the Segou district. Bamako, the capital, is a town of some 85,000 people, and Kayes and Segou have each over 20,000. Timbuktu, historically the most famous centre as the terminus of caravan routes across the Sahara, now numbers 7,000.

Away from the river valleys, to the north, the country assumes more and more a desert character, similar to that of the neighbouring Mauritania. Agriculture gives place to pastoral industry. Cattle as well as sheep and goats are numbered by the million, and are sold to other colonies for slaughter.

**Upper Volta.** This reconstituted territory is at once the smallest and most densely populated of the French dependencies carved out of the remote interior of West Africa. It takes in the watershed between the headstreams of the Volta and the right-bank tributaries of the Middle Niger, and is well watered; but its northern situation—it lies north of the Northern Territories of the Gold Coast—gives it a sub-Saharan character, and both agricultural and pastoral industry are carried on. Cattle number 1½m., sheep and goats over 2m.; both live animals and raw hides and skins are among the leading exports. So are groundnuts, shea nuts and shea butter. Cotton is grown, and among the many food crops is rice.

The capital, Ouagadougou, has a population approaching 33,000, but the chief commercial centre is Bobo Dioulasso (43,500), until lately the terminus of the railway from the coast at Abidjan (see under Ivory Coast) and a centre of air and road traffic. The natural outlets for trade are through the Ivory Coast and the Gold Coast, but the Second World War gave an impetus to traffic with Senegal via Bamako.

**Niger Colony.** Among the territories of French West Africa, only Mauritania is more sparsely populated than the Niger Colony, which extends from Nigeria to Algeria and Libya. The Niger river flows across the south-west corner for 200 miles, and in the south-east the boundary with Nigeria is the lower course of the Komadugu Yobé, a seasonal torrent discharging into Lake Chad. These are the only rivers. North of Nigeria extends a belt of savanna and steppes for roughly 100 miles; beyond stretches the desert, broken by groups of oases of which the most striking is Aïr, a picturesque country thousands of square miles in extent, dominated by volcanic peaks rising to 5,000 ft.

A variety of crops is grown in the southern belt. Groundnuts are exported in large quantities (£6m.) and there is trade in cotton, gum arabic, dates and salt. Cattle are estimated at 2m. head, and sheep and goats at 5½m. Some 60,000 cattle and 240,000 sheep and goats are exported yearly 'on the hoof', and more than 1m. sheep and goat skins. Caravans numbering several thousand camels are organised in Aïr to cross the desert for the exchange of products. Niamey (13,000), the capital, on the Niger, and Zinder, in the southern belt, north of Kano, are equipped with aerodromes.

**Guinea.** The new (1958) republic of Guinea has developed on a modest scale commercially. With an area of 95,000 square miles (nearly twice as large as England) it has a population of 2½m. The lowlands yield a wide range of tropical products, among which the chief exports are palm kernels and palm oil, and bananas, while coffee and tobacco are increasing. The Futa Jallon uplands are the home of an extensive pastoral industry, including 800,000 head of cattle; hides and skins are exported. In the south-eastern extension of the colony, on the borders of Liberia and the Ivory Coast, there is true forest country, but its remoteness has hitherto prevented development of its resources. Bauxite is worked, and a dam to harness the Konkouri river falls for an international aluminium project was sanctioned before Guinea voted against General De Gaulle's new constitution and became independent.

Conakry, the capital (39,000), a modern town on an island off the coast, has the only good harbour. From it a metre-gauge railway, 412 miles long, crosses the colony to Kouroussa, limit of navigation on the upper Niger, and Kankan, limit of navigation on its tributary, the Milo.

**General.** The all but unanimous decision of France's overseas territories to remain in General de Gaulle's 'Community' was influenced by his ruling that the decision need not be final, and that the territories could have the option of becoming locally autonomous republics. The option was generally exercised. Various links between the republics have been advocated, and as noted on p. 697, Senegal and French Sudan have formed the Federation of Mali. The

richest of the French West African territories, the Ivory Coast, still advocates inter-dependence with France, but other policies are many and conflicting.

## TOGOLAND AND CAMEROONS

After the First World War, the former German territories of Togoland and Cameroons were entrusted, under mandate from the League of Nations, to Britain and France, each territory being divided so that a minor western strip went to Britain and the major eastern portion to France. The British strips were incorporated, administratively, in the adjoining British territories (see under Ghana and Nigeria). The French spheres were placed under separate administrations, headed by a Commissioner (*Commissaire de la République*) in Togoland and a High Commissioner in Cameroons. After the Second World War, the mandatory Powers became Trustees for the United Nations. A plebiscite in 1956 led to Togoland becoming an autonomous republic within the French Union. In 1958, with French approval the United Nations agreed that Togoland should become fully independent in 1960. Later it was agreed the Cameroons also should become fully independent in 1960.

**Togoland.** The French Trusteeship covers a territory of 21,000 square miles (three times the size of Wales) with a population of over 1m. Copra, palm kernels and palm oil, cotton and coffee are produced in the south, where a sandy coast fringed with lagoons is backed by a low plateau. The centre is mountainous, with peaks up to 3,300 ft., and is the home of Togoland's cocoa industry. In the north is savanna country, supporting some hundreds of thousands of livestock; elsewhere the pastoral industry is restricted by the tsetse fly. Three lines of railway, totalling 275 miles, start from Lomé, the capital and chief port (population 39,000). One runs along the coast (27 miles); another northward through the centre of the country to Blitta (174 miles), about half-way to the northern frontier; and a third north-west to Palime (74 miles), near the chief coffee-growing area. The coast is surf-bound, and Lomé has an open roadstead, but is equipped with a landing stage extending beyond the surf.

**Cameroons** has a comparatively short coastline (about 150 miles) in the angle of the Gulf of Guinea, but widens inland and extends to Lake Chad, a distance of 700–800 miles. It has an area of 167,000 square miles (nearly twice the size of Great Britain), with a population of just over 3m. From a narrow coastal plain the land rises steeply in great steps to a central plateau of 1,500–2,500 ft., carrying here and there mountains up to 7,000 ft., but falling away to the river basins of the interior; the altitude of Lake Chad is under

1,000 ft. The southern third of the territory is a vast primeval forest, opening out to the north in savannas and semi-desert tracts.

Two railways run inland from Duala, a fine deep-water port at the mouth of one of the feeders of the so-called Cameroons river, really a great estuary into which flow various rivers. One railway, starting from Bonaberi (Duala's subsidiary port, connected with it by ferry), traverses the frontier region bordering the British Cameroons for 100 miles, to Nkongsamba. European enterprise has developed the growing and drying of bananas on a very large scale in this region. The other line runs inland to Yaoundé (190 miles). Duala is the largest town (115,000) and the chief commercial centre, but Yaoundé (38,000) is the capital; it benefits as a place of residence for Europeans by standing on the central plateau, over 2,000 ft. above sea-level. Special exports in 1956 were valued at £27m., of which cocoa provided 35 per cent., coffee 20 per cent., bananas 8 per cent., and timber and cotton each about 6 per cent. Aluminium works at Edea, south-east of Duala, began production in 1957.

### FRENCH EQUATORIAL AFRICA

This territory, large as it is, may be described as a smaller edition of French West Africa. It extends along the west coast from Spanish Guinea and the Cameroons to the Belgian Congo, where it has for its southern frontier part of the lower Congo river and the Congo's great right-bank tributary, the Ubangi. On the east it has the old Anglo-Egyptian Sudan, on the west independent Cameroons to Lake Chad and thence the Niger Colony of French West Africa, and on the north, Libya. With an area of nearly 1m. square miles it comprises four republics, each with its own Governor and jointly under a Governor-General. Two of these territories, the Gabun and Middle Congo, share the seaboard; the other two, Ubangi and Chad, are wholly inland. There are marked differences in size, but practically none in the density of the population, which varies from 4 to 6 to the square mile. The following table gives particulars of each of the territories.

Territory	Area Square Miles	Population (1957)	
		European	African
Gabun . . . . .	103,000	3,981	399,800
Middle Congo . . . . .	132,000	10,424	749,300
Ubangi . . . . .	238,250	5,936	1,218,500
Chad . . . . .	495,750	4,880	2,576,200
Total . . . . .	<u>969,000</u>	<u>25,221</u>	<u>4,853,800</u>

The Gabun is the parent colony of this agglomeration of territories; the French have been installed there for over 100 years. Libreville, the capital (population 20,000), founded as a home for

freed slaves in 1849, stands on the shores of the Gabun 'river', which, like the Cameroons 'river', is a great estuary receiving the discharge of a number of streams. A commercial rival to Libreville is Port Gentil (10,000), at the mouth of the Ogowé, a river of 600 miles flowing through the heart of the territory and much in use for the transport of the Gabun's one great commercial product—timber. Almost the whole of the territory—an area larger than Great Britain—is covered with forest, and during the present century an important trade has developed in one species of timber in particular, known by the local name of *okoumé*, a soft, rose-tinged scented wood, suited especially for plywood. Oil wells have been sunk around Port Gentil, and the first shipment of oil was made to France in 1957. Plans have been made to work vast deposits of manganese ore in the upper Ogowé valley.

**The Middle Congo** also lies, to the extent of half or more of its area, within the limits of the great equatorial forest. It exports a variety of products, including palm kernels and palm oil, and coffee, and boasts the first and so far the only railway in French Equatorial Africa. Leaving the coast at Pointe Noire, near the southern frontier, the line runs inland for 318 miles, in part through very difficult country among the Mayumbe Mountains, to where the Congo river forms the Franco-Belgian frontier. The line reaches the river at Brazzaville, facing Leopoldville (the capital of the Belgian Congo) across Stanley Pool, above the rapids which obstruct the lower river, and at the gateway to long reaches of navigable waterways in the upper Congo basin. Brazzaville (87,000) is both the capital of the Middle Congo Republic and the seat of the Governor-General of French Equatorial Africa.

**Ubangi**, or Ubangi-Shari, is drained by two river systems flowing in opposite directions: the Ubangi, going south and west to the Congo and the Atlantic; the Shari, going north to lose itself in the far interior in Lake Chad. Both rivers rise in a plateau with a water-parting some 2,500 ft. above the sea, falling away to the north and south to little more than half that elevation, but carrying massifs up to 4,500 ft. in the east and west. It is wooded to some extent, but grassland predominates. The past quarter of a century has seen a striking development of cotton-growing, with its attendant ginning industry, and coffee is also doing well. Bangui, the capital, on the Ubangi river, has 67,000 inhabitants. A railway connecting it with Lake Chad is projected.

**The Chad Republic** forms fully half of French Equatorial Africa. It includes the greater part of the Shari basin and much of Lake Chad, which it shares with the Cameroons, Nigeria, and French West Africa. Northward it extends to the Libyan Desert, rising in the north-east to the Ennedi plateau (4,500 ft.) and the Tibesti highland (10–11,000 ft.). This northern half of the territory does not lend itself

to agricultural industry, except for the cultivation of the date palm in the oases, among which Borkou is especially noted for its dates. The nomad tribes follow pastoral pursuits, and the territory as a whole is credited with 1m. cattle and 2m. sheep and goats. The position in the Shari basin is different. Here, as in Ubangi, cotton-growing has developed on a considerable scale, along with cotton ginning; and groundnuts are also extensively cultivated. The capital is Fort Lamy (23,000), on the lower Shari, where it is joined by its big tributary, the Logone.

**General.** Special exports in 1956 were valued at £28½m., including gold to the value of £½m. Leading items were lumber and veneer (£10½m.), cotton (£9m.), coffee (£1½m.), groundnuts and oil (£1m.), diamonds (£1m.).

## LIBERIA AND SPANISH GUINEA

Wedged into the great mass of French West and Equatorial Africa are not only the British and former German possessions but three single territories—Portuguese Guinea (see page 709), Liberia, and Spanish Guinea.

**Liberia** is unique in Africa as a negro republic founded by American philanthropists as a home for freed American slaves (cf. Freetown, page 692) and constituted an independent State in 1847. It lies between Sierra Leone and the two French territories of Guinea and the Ivory Coast. The freed slaves have tended to become an educated dominant caste controlling the local tribes. The country has an area of 43,000 square miles—a little smaller than England—and the total population is estimated at 1m. Much of the country is dense forest, thinning out to savannas as the land rises in the interior. The coast is surf-bound, but harbour works are being carried out at the capital, Monrovia (40,000), on American lend-lease terms, based on the grant of Liberian air bases to the United States. The unit of currency is the American dollar, and the country, which has great potential resources, is closely associated with the United States. It is rich in oil palms, and is the home of a hardy type of coffee, *C. liberica*, now widespread elsewhere as *C. robusta*. The only railway, a light line for freight only, connects Monrovia with iron-ore mines 40 miles inland. The Firestone Plantation Company has planted large rubber estates, and in 1956 rubber provided two-thirds of exports valued at \$44.5m. (£16m.). Iron ore (£2.9m.) and diamonds (under £1m.) made up the proportion to over 90 per cent.

Since the Second World War, Liberia's registered shipping has become the fourth largest fleet in the world (7½m. tons) through the



growing practice of registering ships, especially tankers, under 'flags of convenience', thereby minimising financial dues and restrictive government regulations.

**Spanish Guinea** comprises a mainland territory, Rio Muni, wedged between the Cameroons and the Gabun colony of French Equatorial Africa; and a few scattered islands, of which Fernando Po, about 100 miles N.N.W., is by far the most important. The mainland territory, covering just over 10,000 square miles (one third larger than Wales), takes its name from an inlet on its southern border which, like the Cameroons and the Gabun 'rivers', is less a river than an estuary receiving the discharge of several rivers. It is typically West African, rising by steps from a coastal zone of virgin tropical forest, which gradually gives place to grassy tracts on the plateaus. In the Crystal Mountains heights of 4,000 ft. are reached. Returns of the population give a figure of nearly 160,000, but that of Bata, the chief town and port, is only about 1,000.

The Governor has his headquarters on Fernando Po, which, with an area of 800 square miles (about the size of Westmorland), is famed for its tropical luxuriance and mountain grandeur. Like the Cameroons Mountain (over 13,000 ft.) on the mainland, facing it across 20 miles of sea, Fernando Po is of volcanic origin, and though it is not so high, the culminating peak, Santa Isabel, rises to over 9,000 ft. The population is 40,000, of whom half or more live in or around the capital, Santa Isabel, beautifully situated on lofty cliffs and connected by a cog-wheel railway with a remarkable natural harbour, originally a deep crater. Cocoa (15,000 tons in 1956) and coffee (4-5,000 tons) are leading exports.

## BELGIAN CONGO

Founded as the Congo Free State by King Leopold II of Belgium in his individual capacity, recognised by the Powers at the Berlin Conference in 1885 as a philanthropic enterprise under his personal sovereignty, but afterwards severely criticized in respect of the administration, this vast territory was taken over by Belgium in 1909, the year of the King's death, and has since gained a much better reputation. It includes all the Congo basin save some subsidiary streams on the outskirts, and with an area of 900,000 square miles is comparable in size with the old Anglo-Egyptian Sudan and with French Equatorial Africa. It is less sparsely populated than either of them, the number of its inhabitants being 11.4m. There is a Governor-General, with six Provincial Governors. As elsewhere in Africa, unrest has been growing. Disturbances in 1959, centring in Leopoldville, the [capital, brought from Belgium promises] of reforms, with independence as the goal.

The northern part of the country is covered with primeval forest, opening out in the south to park-like country. Much of the Congo basin is below 1,000 ft., but the headstreams flowing from distant plateaus are often unnavigable, and even along the middle and lower courses there are occasional tracts through which the rivers have to break their way in a series of rapids. In general, however, the territory is not notably mountainous, except along the eastern border, which contains Ruwenzori (16,800 ft.) and the Mfumbiro volcanic area (14,800 ft.) north of Lake Kivu. There are long navigable stretches between the rapids both on the main river and its tributaries, of which the two outstanding are the Kasai (left bank) and the Ubangi (right bank). The total length of waterways navigated by steamers is about 7,500 miles, or two and a half times the total length of the Congo (2,900 miles). Barges up to 350 tons ply on nearly 5,700 miles of river, and up to 1,200 tons on over 1,600 miles. Altogether there are some 1,300 river steamers, totalling over 200,000 tons. Through transport on the main river is facilitated by railways (metre-gauge) which have been built round the rapids.

Though it can claim to be a maritime State, the Belgian Congo could scarcely have a shorter seaboard. Portuguese West Africa (Angola) extends up to the south bank of the mouth of the Congo river, and north of the river mouth there is an isolated patch of Portuguese territory which occupies the coast right up to French Equatorial Africa. Just at the river mouth, on the north side, the Belgian Congo has a few miles of coast, with the small seaport of Banana. Upriver is another small port, Boma, terminus of a narrow gauge railway for the export of timber, and beyond that is the chief port, Matadi, where the European steamers discharge and load their cargoes. It is about 90 miles from the open sea and is the limit of navigation for ocean-going vessels. Above it, for over 200 miles, the course of the Congo is broken by a series of falls as the river forces its way through the Crystal Mountains. The falls are circumvented by a metre-gauge railway (227 miles) connecting Matadi with Leopoldville, the capital, on Stanley Pool. The two places are also connected by a pipeline of 4 in. diameter, through which fuel oil is pumped for use by the steamers on the upper river. Above Leopoldville the Congo, sometimes miles wide, is navigable for over 1,000 miles, up to Stanleyville. There a railway of 78 miles circumvents the Stanley Falls and connects at Ponthierville with another navigable section of the river (now known as the Lualaba) extending upstream to Kindu. From Kindu another railway (275 miles) mounts the valley to Kabalo, and then strikes eastward for 170 miles to Albertville, on the Belgian shore of Lake Tanganyika, a notable connection because from Kigoma, on the opposite (British) side of the lake, the Tanganyika Central Railway gives access to the East African coast at Dar-es-Salaam. West of Kabalo, railway connec-

tion has been provided with Kamina, in Katanga, on the main line north, thus giving Katanga access to East Africa. Also the mixed gauges of the Congo railways have all been brought up to the South African standard—3 ft. 6 in.

Above Kabalo the Lualaba is navigable to Bukama, once the terminus of the through railway from Cape Town (2,590 miles). From the Copperbelt of Northern Rhodesia this line enters the Belgian Congo at Sakania and continues via Elisabethville, the provincial capital, through the highly mineralised region of Katanga, the Belgian counterpart of the British Copperbelt. The rail service to the south not only links Katanga with Cape Town (2,305 miles from Elisabethville), but, more important commercially, provides connection with the East Coast port of Beira (1,619 miles). Northward the rail service now extends 698 miles beyond Bukama to Port Francqui, on the Kasai (983 miles from Elisabethville), so that there is through communication by rail from Cape Town northwards into the heart of the Congo basin for a distance of 3,288 miles. Further extension of the line to Leopoldville, the Belgian capital, is contemplated; already there is connection by motor road, coming from Katanga. Meanwhile there is transport by river steamer from Port Francqui down the Kasai and the Congo to Leopoldville (6 days) and from there by rail (227 miles) to Matadi and its ocean-going steamers.

Another outlet from Katanga lies through Portuguese West Africa. A line branches off from Tenke, 176 miles beyond Elisabethville, runs for 323 miles to the south-west corner of the Belgian Congo, and continues through Portuguese territory for 835 miles to the coast at Benguela and Lobito Bay—a total journey from Elisabethville of 1,334 miles, covered in three days. Incidentally this service, coupled with the further service from Elisabethville to Beira, provides through railway communication across Africa from west to east. In all, the Congo has some 3,200 miles of railways.

Air services connect the principal centres within the Belgian Congo, and maintain communications with other African countries and with Europe.

Katanga is not the only source of mineral wealth in the Belgian Congo, nor is copper the only mineral product of Katanga; but copper is easily the biggest factor in the mineral production. In 1938 the output was 124,000 metric tons; during the war it went up to 166,000 tons, and after a subsequent falling off it rose in 1956 to a peak figure of 250,000 tons. The industry is controlled by the Union Minière du Haut Katanga, which has large smelting works in the region. Other minerals worked include tin, cobalt, and zinc. Uranium ores are sent to Belgium for the extraction of radium. Outside Katanga are extensive deposits of diamonds on the upper Kasai, a continuation of the neighbouring Portuguese diamond

fields. The Belgian output in 1956 was 14m. metric carats, mostly industrial. Gold is mined in various districts, chiefly at the Kilo mines in the far north-east, to the west of Lake Albert. The annual production is between 300,000 and 400,000 fine troy ounces.

The oil palm grows wild throughout the territory at the lower levels, and its crop of fruits has long been collected by the natives. Since the First World War a big impetus has been given to the oil palm industry by the cultivation of the trees in large plantations by European companies, notably the Huileries du Congo Belge (Unilever), who not only grow and buy enormous quantities of oil palm fruits but extract the palm oil from the pericarp (the outer fleshy part of the fruit) in up-to-date factories. Palm kernel oil, a different product, is not as a rule extracted locally except for local use; commercially, the kernels are exported and their oil is extracted in the importing countries. Before the Second World War the export of palm kernels from the Belgian Congo exceeded the export of palm oil, but during the war palm oil took the lead, which it retains.

Cotton is also grown on a large scale, the area under cultivation in the years 1938 to 1956 keeping around 800-900,000 acres, with production increasing to 120m. lb. There is a considerable coffee crop, and the production of rubber revived during the war. Live-stock do not thrive except on the higher lands—the plateau of Upper Katanga, rising to over 5,000 ft., and the eastern borderlands. Indeed, the only region where pastoral industry is practised on a big scale is Ruanda-Urundi, the north-east corner of the old German East Africa, for which Belgium is trustee. This highland country, bordering on Lake Kivu and the northern end of Lake Tanganyika, is nearly three times the size of Wales, and is one of the most densely populated districts of Africa—nearly 200 to the square mile. It is estimated that there are in Ruanda-Urundi 1m. head of cattle,  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. sheep, and 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ m. goats.

Contrary to the experience of some other African territories, the Second World War saw an increase in the exports from the Belgian Congo in quantity as well as in value. In 1956, when the rate of exchange stood at about 140 Belgian francs to the £, imports were valued at Frs. 20,108m. (£144m.) and exports at Frs. 26,463m. (£190m.). As usual in such countries, transport equipment and other manufactures, notably textiles, provided the bulk of the imports. Copper provided over 40 per cent. (£78m.) of the exports, coffee over 8 per cent. (£16m.), cotton 7 per cent. (£13m.), palm oil 5-6 per cent. (£10.6m.) [with palm kernels about 10 per cent.], diamonds 5 per cent (£9.6m.), rubber 4 per cent. (£7.4m.)—in all about 70 per cent of the total, exclusive of gold exports, Frs. 642m. (£4.6m.). Belgium supplied over a third of the imports and took over half the exports, exclusive of gold.

An important factor in the development of the Belgian Congo

has been its inclusion in the Free Trade Zone established by the Congo Basin Treaty, into which the Powers entered at the Berlin Conference in 1885. See page 630.

## PORTUGUESE AFRICA

Portuguese Africa falls into two main divisions—Angola, or Portuguese West Africa, and Mozambique, or Portuguese East Africa. In addition to various outlying islands (see under African Islands, page 717), there is a third mainland territory, comparatively small and seldom heard of. This is **Portuguese Guinea**, an enclave in French West Africa, shut in by French Guinea and the Casamance strip of Senegal, south of the Gambia. It has an area of 14,000 square miles (nearly twice the size of Wales), and, for Africa, a relatively dense population of 541,000 (39 to the square mile). The coast is much indented, and Bissau, the little capital and chief port has a harbour capable of accommodating the largest vessels. The country is low-lying, attaining only to some 600 ft. in the south-east, and is the northern limit of cultivation of the oil palm. Normally 12,000–14,000 tons of palm kernels are exported and 1,000 tons of palm oil. Groundnuts are also extensively grown, exports averaging about 30,000 tons of unshelled nuts. In 1954, imports were valued at £2.15m., exports at £2.3m. (exchange rate Esc. 80 = £1).

Stretching along the coast between the Belgian Congo and South-West Africa, a distance of over 1,000 miles, **Angola** partakes in the north of the tropical luxuriance of the one, and in the south of the aridity of the other. Inland it forms the entire western border of Northern Rhodesia. It is one of the bigger African territories, with an area of 481,000 square miles (rather more than half the size of the Belgian Congo), and a population in 1955 of over 4½m. (between 8 and 9 to the square mile), including over 50,000 whites. The coast itself is generally low-lying and dry. The westerly winds, cooled by their passage over the cold Benguela current, do not bring rain to the territory till they strike the high country inland. Along the northern half of the coast the rainfall is sufficient (12 inches at Luanda, the old St. Paul de Loanda) to maintain open savannas, on which the palm oil is a characteristic tree. Farther south the vegetation thins out, with welcome oases in the river estuaries, till in the far south the annual rainfall is not more than an inch, and desert conditions prevail.

Behind the coast the country rises rapidly, in the north by escarpments which catch the rainfall and are covered with tropical forest, in the south through rugged belts of 'Thirst Country'. The ascent leads to a central plateau, ranging from 3,500 ft. to 6,000 ft. in the south,

but averaging much lower levels in the north (rarely above 3,000 ft.), while eastward it dips down to the Congo and Zambezi river basins. Food crops grown by the natives include maize, beans and manioc. Both companies and individuals have developed extensive plantations of coffee, oil palms, sisal and cotton, with post-war crops considerably in excess of pre-war. At the higher levels the plateau has attracted a considerable number of white settlers, who are engaged in ranching and mixed farming. It is estimated that livestock in the territory include  $1\frac{1}{2}$ m. cattle,  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. sheep and goats (mostly goats), and  $\frac{1}{4}$ m. pigs. Rolling tracts of open woodlands and grassy plains are diversified by deciduous forests. This upland country is well watered, for the most part, by rivers flowing not only westward to the Atlantic Ocean (notably the Cuanza and Cunene) but northwards to the Kasai and eastwards to the Zambezi. It is indeed a vast watershed, reaching in its highest points levels of 8,000–9,000 ft. The Challa Mountains in the south-west, where the great scarp at the back of Mossamedes is particularly imposing, rise to over 7,000 ft.

Four lines of railway from as many points on the coast have been built inland to assist in opening up the country and marketing its produce, as well as, in one case, to facilitate communications with the copper fields of Katanga and Northern Rhodesia. These lines are separate enterprises, and are not of uniform gauge. The most northerly (metre gauge) runs from Luanda eastward for 280 miles to Malange (3,000 ft.). Luanda, founded in 1575 and capital of the colony since 1927, is by far the largest town (67,000 including 10,000 whites). It comprises a lower and an upper town (150 ft. above the sea) and has a deep-water harbour protected by an outlying island. Till lately, vessels have had to anchor in the roadstead, but new port works include over half-a-mile of quays, mostly with a depth of 35 ft. of water alongside.

The most southerly line, the Mossamedes Railway, is of 3 ft. 6 in. gauge. Starting from the little old town from which it takes its name, which has an open roadstead for port, it climbs the arid scarp of the Challa range to the Huila Plateau, where it has reached Chilamba (the old Gambos), over 200 miles from Mossamedes. Its ultimate goal is the Barotseland frontier of Northern Rhodesia. At Humpata, some 6,000 ft. above sea level, a large party of Boers settled in 1876 and remained for half-a-century, when most of them moved into South-West Africa with the help of the Union Government.

In between these two railways is a third, running 62 miles inland from Porto Amboim to hilly country, but stopping short of the final ascent to a plantation area where coffee and oil palms do particularly well. This little line was built on the 2 ft. gauge.

Of far greater importance than these lines, useful as they are, is the Benguela Railway, which is on the standard South African gauge (3 ft. 6 in.) and has a length of 835 miles in Angola, beyond which it

extends through the Belgian Congo to Katanga (see page 707) and links up with the Rhodesian railways, incidentally providing railway communication right across the continent to Beira, in Portuguese East Africa, a through journey of 2,953 miles. At the Angola end the line actually starts from Lobito Bay, some 22 miles north of Benguela. The bay is formed by a sandspit 3 miles long and 400 yds. wide, joined to the land but running parallel to the coast, enclosing an expanse of sheltered deep water nearly a mile across, constituting easily the best harbour in the territory. It has been well equipped and in 1953 over 500 vessels of 3m. gross tons entered the port. The town (which has 20–30,000 inhabitants) has a pipe-borne water supply from the Catumbela river, 8 miles away, and electric light and power from the same source. At Benguela—one of the oldest of the Portuguese settlements and slave marts, but with only an open roadstead, and now outstripped by Lobito in both size and trade—the line turns inland and mounts by degrees to the central plateau, where it reaches heights of 6,000 ft. At mile 248 is Vila Robert Williams, the old Caala, re-named in honour of Sir Robert Williams, whose enterprise and energy carried the railway to completion in face of many difficulties; and at mile 266 is New Lisbon, the old Huamba, the most important inland town in Angola: a great road centre, home of the main railway repair shops, and since 1928, when the name was changed, the capital-designate of the territory; though so far (1958) the transfer from Luanda has still to be effected. Towards the Congo frontier the line descends, and at the frontier station it is down to 3,600 ft.

As Portugal remained neutral in the Second World War, her colonies were less affected than some parts of Africa. Angola's exports increased even in quantity, while they nearly trebled in value in the ten years 1938–47. The Angolan unit of currency since 1928 has been the Angolar, equal to the Portuguese escudo, and at the exchange rate of Esc. 80 to the £ imports in 1955 were valued at £33m. and exports at £35m. Coffee provided 45 per cent. (£16m.) of the exports, diamonds 12 per cent. (£4·2m.), sisal and fibre meal each about 7 per cent. (£2½m.). Portugal supplied nearly half the imports, and divided with the United States nearly half the exports.

**Mozambique** is smaller than Angola and much less compact, but is also less sparsely populated. With an area of about 300,000 square miles and 6m. inhabitants (20 to the square mile), it extends along the coast through over 16 degrees of latitude and straggles backward and forward inland in very irregular fashion. The southern districts, north of Natal, are confined between the coast and Swaziland in a strip about 50 miles wide. In the north, between the coast and Lake Nyasa, the width is some 400 miles. Along the Zambezi, which bisects the territory, it follows the course of the river for nearly 700 miles, pushing a Portuguese wedge between Southern

and Northern Rhodesia. On the other hand, the extension of British Nyasaland south of Lake Nyasa nearly to the Zambezi thrusts a wedge of alien territory into the heart of Mozambique.

South of the Zambezi the erratic width is largely due to the varying depth of the coastal belt; for this half of Mozambique has been described as 'a Portuguese foreshore to the British South African hinterland'. It runs back to the escarpment which bounds the Southern Rhodesian plateau, but south of the Zambezi it is only in the north-west that Mozambique trenches on upland country to any considerable extent, and there the elevation is only up to 3,000 ft., except in the Gorongosa mountain group (6,300 ft.). North of the Zambezi the territory reaches back to and includes the plateau bordering the south-east shore of Lake Nyasa. Here too the general level does not exceed 3,000 ft., but there are highland tracts up to 5,000 ft., and occasional hills of which the highest, the Namuli massif, rises to 8,000 ft.

Portugal's interest in this region goes back to Vasco da Gama's famous voyage to India in 1498, when the navigator touched at Mozambique island. A settlement was formed there in 1504, and a massive fort erected which has kept the Portuguese flag flying through all the vicissitudes of the national fortunes in the Indian Ocean during the succeeding 4½ centuries. Other settlements were formed, but Mozambique held the pre-eminence. Its position corresponds, in some ways, with that of Mombasa island, and though it is farther from the coast (about 3 miles), the channel provides a sheltered harbour which is still a centre for the coasting trade. The town retains many of the features of early Portuguese settlement, and as a survival from those days is perhaps unequalled in East Africa; but it has not kept pace with modern developments, and not only had to give way in 1907 to Lourenço Marques as the capital city of Portuguese East Africa, but has been outstripped commercially by the port of Beira also.

The rise of these last two places is significant of a prime factor in the modern importance of Portuguese East Africa. The territory has wealth of its own, chiefly in plantation products, but benefits greatly by owning short approaches, from the side of the Indian Ocean, to such go-ahead and flourishing countries as the Transvaal and Southern Rhodesia. The transit trade with them, and with Northern Rhodesia and even Katanga, has given a stimulus to railway construction in Portuguese territory and to the provision of modern port facilities. Both Lourenço Marques and Beira owe their progress in the present century largely to these circumstances. In other respects they are very different. Lourenço Marques was founded in 1544 on the inner side of Delagoa Bay, which forms a magnificent natural harbour, but the site was unhealthy and there were other troubles to hamper development. The settlement was not given municipal



rank till 1887, and its big advance dates from 1895, when it was linked by railway with the Transvaal. Since then it has developed remarkably in trade and as a port, and improvements in other ways have turned it into an up-to-date seaside resort, much patronised by visitors from Johannesburg. Included in its population of 100,000 are 25,000 Europeans. The close ties between South Africa and Portuguese East Africa are further shown by the inclusion of the latter in the South African Postal Union, and by the Mozambique Convention, which provides for the recruitment of labour in Mozambique for the South African mines, the free exchange of the products of the two countries, and the apportionment to Lourenço Marques of certain ocean traffic. Apart from the railway to the Transvaal, of which 58 miles lie in Portuguese territory, Lourenço Marques is the terminus of a line to Goba (43 miles), near the Swaziland border. In 1955 a line from Lourenço Marques to Guija, on the Limpopo, was extended to the Rhodesian border to link up with a new railway in that territory, thus giving Rhodesia fresh access to the sea.

Beira (50,000), at the mouth of the Pungwe and Busi rivers, south of the Zambezi, was unknown till nearly the end of last century. It came into prominence as the coastal terminus of the Beira Railway, which crosses the coastal plain and ascends the escarpment to join the Rhodesian railway system at the frontier (196 miles). The line was built by the Mozambique Company, which administered that part of Portuguese East Africa under a Government Charter. Some of the capital was British; the company had an office in London as well as in Lisbon, and had close relations with the Rhodesian Railways. The country it administered, extending from the Zambezi to the 22nd parallel of South latitude, was larger than England. With the development of local resources went the development of Beira as 'The Gateway to Rhodesia', resulting in traffic facilities and a volume of trade, direct and indirect, not to have been achieved otherwise. Nor was this all. From being 'The Gateway to Rhodesia' Beira went on to become also 'The Gateway to Nyasaland'. British railways had been built in the Shiré valley to circumvent the cataracts and other obstacles to through navigation on the Shiré, in its course from Lake Nyasa to the Zambezi. But Nyasaland has no outlet of its own to the sea, and its railways were handicapped till in 1922 a line from Beira, 175 miles long, reached the southern bank of the Zambezi opposite to the terminus on the north bank. The bridging of the Zambezi was a formidable problem, and before it was solved some realignment of the railway was necessary on both sides of the river. The bridge—finally built near Sena, a famous centre of the sugar industry—was opened for traffic in January 1935. It is 200 miles from Beira and is the longest bridge in the world (over 2 miles).

The Mozambique Company's charter expired in 1942. It was the last to survive, and the whole territory is now under the

direct administration of the Government. From the Zambezi bridge a railway has been built along the north bank of the river up to a coalfield near Tete. Another line, now nearing Lake Nyasa, has been under construction for many years from Lumbo, a mainland harbour opposite to Mozambique island. Lumbo is not a first-class port, and the railway has been linked up with Nacala, a port in a large natural harbour 60 miles north of Lumbo. (*Cf.* Lobito and Benguela, p. 711).

In 1956, special imports into Portuguese East Africa were valued at Esc. 2,597m. (£32½m.) and special exports at Esc. 1,538m. (£19m.). The leading exports were cotton (£5½m.), sugar (£2¾m.), tea (£2m.), copra (£1¾m.), cashew nuts (£1¾m.) and sisal (£1½m.). Portugal supplied nearly 30 per cent. of the imports and took nearly 45 per cent. of the exports. Exchange rate, Esc. 80 = £1.

## OUTLYING AFRICAN ISLANDS

### BRITISH

Zanzibar (*see* page 684) and various minor islands around Africa are intimately related to the mainland. The only outlying British island of notable commercial importance is **Mauritius**. It lies 500 miles east of Madagascar, is of volcanic origin, and covers 720 square miles—the size of Surrey. Seaward it is ringed by coral reefs; inland it rises to a central plateau of 1,000–2,000 ft., fringed with peaks up to 2,700 ft. It is a picturesque, well-watered, fertile island, supporting a population of 580,000, the average density (800 to the square mile) exceeding that of England and Wales. Port Louis, the capital, has a population of 98,000. Mauritius might be a Garden of Eden but for one great drawback—it is subject to devastating cyclones.

Industry and trade centre in a single product—sugar. No other British colony produces so much cane sugar, and in the Commonwealth only Australia exceeds its exports of sugar. Quantities vary largely from year to year. In 1945, when three cyclones struck the island, the crop was 138,000 tons; in 1956 it was returned as 560,000 tons. Sugar accounts for 97 or 98 per cent. of the domestic exports. In 1956 the export value of 531,000 tons was more than £21m. Out of a cultivable area of 210,000 acres, 90 per cent. (188,000 acres) is under sugar. Most of the crop is grown and treated on big estates, though these are far outnumbered by small plantations. Currency unit: Mauritius rupee of 1s. 6d. An ancillary industry, started during the 1939–45 war, is the manufacture of sugar bags from aloe fibre; they have replaced the gunny bags previously imported from India. Tea, an expanding crop, was grown in 1956 on 3,000 acres, yielding 700 tons. Less than 10 per cent. of the colony's food requirements are grown locally.

Captured during the Napoleonic wars, when it bore the name *Ile de France*, Mauritius still preserves much of its French character among the planter class; but owing to the introduction of Indian coolie labour to work the sugar estates, two-thirds of the population is now Indian, and 90 per cent. of the rest are descended from African slaves. The population is increasing rapidly, and there is much unemployment. Constitutionally a ministerial system has been introduced, with self-government within the Commonwealth as an eventual goal. Chief of several far-spread dependencies, Rodriguez, 350 miles to the east, is the size of Jersey, in the Channel Islands.

**The Seychelles** and their dependencies, a numerous and widely scattered group of small islands north of Madagascar and south of the Equator, became British at the same time as Mauritius, of which they were a dependency. Since 1903 they have been a separate colony. The total area is 156 square miles (double that of the Channel Islands). The Seychelles proper are in about the latitude of Mombasa. The main island, Mahé (55 square miles), comprises most of the population (40,000) and is the seat of the capital and chief port, Victoria. It is mountainous (3,000 ft.) and exports copra, guano, essential oils, vanilla, &c., to the value (1956) of just on £½m. Distinctive products of the colony as a whole are coco-de-mer (a double coconut) and the giant tortoise, whose special habitat is the Aldabra group. The currency unit is the rupee (1s. 6d.).

On the other side of the Equator, far to the north, about 150 miles off the Horn of Africa, is **Socotra**. The island belongs to one of the Sultanates of the Aden Protectorate, and has an area of 1,400 square miles and a population of 12,000; it is rich in livestock, date palms, and gums, including the noted Dragon's Blood.

On the opposite side of Africa, in the South Atlantic, 1,200 miles from the west coast and 1,695 miles from Cape Town, is **St. Helena** (47 square miles, 4,650 inhabitants), an island little larger than Jersey, but rising within that narrow compass to 2,700 ft. Famous historically as the final place of exile of the Emperor Napoleon, and once an important place of call on the long sea voyage to India, it has sunk into comparative insignificance since the opening of the Suez Canal. It is still an occasional port of call, and its people eke out a meagre livelihood by selling specimens of their handicrafts to passengers. The cultivation and processing of New Zealand 'flax' (p. 152) support half a dozen small mills. Total exports in 1956 were £64,000. The currency is sterling. Practically all the trade is with the United Kingdom. The capital is Jamestown (1,500).

Between the two world wars St. Helena was given two remote dependencies—**Ascension Island** (34 square miles), 700 miles to the north-west, and **Tristan da Cunha**, 1,500 miles to the south-west. The former, mostly a waste of volcanic cinders, but redeemed from

complete barrenness by the upper slopes of Green Mountain (2,800 ft.), has importance as a cable station and by virtue of its position in mid-Atlantic, about half way between Brazil and the west coast of Africa. In the Second World War it was used as a re-fuelling base by the American air-transport service. Large numbers of turtles are caught on the island between December and May. Population 416.

**Tristan da Cunha**, one of the loneliest and bleakest of outposts, an extinct volcano rising 7,640 ft. from the sea, was garrisoned during Napoleon's exile on St. Helena, and is inhabited by the descendants (200-300) of a party of men and women who elected to stay when the garrison was withdrawn. They have been barely able to support themselves, and the island—or rather islands, for there is a group of four, though only Tristan is inhabited—remained of negligible importance till the Second World War. Then a meteorological station was established, based on South Africa. After the war an Administrator was appointed, and a South African company started a fish-canning industry. The manager and a chaplain who is maintained on Tristan are *ex-officio* members of an Island Council with 15 elected members, presided over by the Administrator.

#### FRENCH

**Madagascar** came under French influence in the seventeenth-century and was recognised by Britain as a French protectorate in 1890. As the outcome of hostilities before and after the latter date, the native (Hova) dynasty was suppressed in 1896. Nearly 1,000 miles long and with an area of 228,000 square miles (rather more than that of France), Madagascar is the only African island comparable in size with the mainland territories. Its population is 4.9m., an average of over 21 to the square mile. Much of the interior is occupied by a plateau, averaging some 4,000 ft. above sea level and carrying mountains up to over 9,000 ft. The east coast is lined for hundreds of miles with lagoons, beyond which the land rises sharply to the central plateau. The descent on the other side is more gradual, and extensive plains border the Mozambique Channel, which separates the island from Portuguese East Africa (Mozambique). The channel is wide and deep: 240 miles across at its narrowest, and having a depth below sea level as great as the height of the mountains above it. But Madagascar ranks definitely as an African island, linked with the continent by land in past geological ages.

Tananarive, the capital, seat of the Governor-General and by far the largest city (193,000), is situated on a ridge of the central plateau at a height of 4,250 ft. Tamatave (46,000), on the east coast, is the principal port; over a quarter of the trade of the island passes through it. Among other ports are Majunga (48,000), on the west coast; Diego Suarez (38,000), in the north; and Fort Dauphin (10,000), in the south. On the plateau, south of Tananarive, are

Antsirabe (17,000), noted for its thermal springs, and Fianarantsoa (33,000), seat of the Governor of the South. A metre-gauge railway connects the capital with Tamatave (229 miles) and sends out a northern branch (105 miles) to Lake Alaotra. Another line from Tananarive runs south to Antsirabe (99 miles). Fianarantsoa, the southern capital, is connected by railway with the east coast at Manakara (101 miles). In all there are 530 miles of railway, carrying normally a million passengers and 300,000 tons of merchandise a year.

Trade is based on both agricultural and pastoral industry. Rice, the staple food, yields 1m. tons of paddy from  $1\frac{1}{2}$ m. acres. Cattle number 6m., and there are big meat factories. The exports of coffee in 1956 were valued at £14m., 43 per cent. of the total exports of £32½m. Other exports included rice, £2½m. (8 per cent.), followed by cloves, tobacco, vanilla, raffia, meat, all reaching £1m. or more. Processing works and manufactories include tanneries, a shoe factory, soap works, a sugar factory, and rum distilleries.

The **Comoro Islands**, a volcanic group at the northern end of the Mozambique Channel, are a dependency of Madagascar. Including Mayotte they cover nearly 800 square miles (rather less than the combined areas of the Orkney and Shetland Isles) and have a population of about 175,000. Plantation products include vanilla, sugar, cocoa, and raw materials of perfumery (citronella, patchouli, &c.). Also ranking as dependencies of Madagascar are the scattered French islands in the south of the Indian Ocean—*Amsterdam*, *St. Paul*, *Kerguelen*, *Crozet*—used as whaling and fishing stations, and the Antarctic *Adélie Land*, south of Australia.

**Réunion**, a French colony since the seventeenth century, given the status of a Department of France on January 1, 1947, is between 400 and 500 miles east of Madagascar, on the way to Mauritius. It is volcanic, with an area of 970 square miles (about the size of Dorset). Opposite peaks of 8,600 ft. and 10,600 ft. are connected by a plateau. The population of over ½m. includes four towns—St. Denis (the capital), St. Louis, St. Pierre and St. Paul—each with from 25,000 to 40,000 inhabitants. Special imports in 1956 were valued at £16½m. and special exports at £12½m. Sugar provided nearly 90 per cent. of the exports, the balance consisting mainly of rum, vanilla, and essential oils.

#### PORTUGUESE

**Madeira** (270 square miles: nearly twice the size of the Isle of Wight) is the principal island of a small group (total area 308 square miles) to the west of Morocco. Only one of the other islands is inhabited—Porto Santo (16 square miles; population 3,000) Madeira lies 340 miles from Cape Juby, and its capital, Funchal, is a regular port of call for the mail steamers between Southampton and

Cape Town. The island, which is administered as a province of Portugal, has a population of 285,000—a much denser population than that of the Isle of Wight. About a third of the number live in and around Funchal.

Madeira is of volcanic origin, rugged and mountainous, rising in its highest peak to over 6,000 ft.; but the soil is fertile and there is a rich flora, though little evidence remains of the forests which gave the island its name (*madeira*, Portuguese for *wood*). Commercially the name now stands for the wines produced in the island from vineyards which largely took the place of sugar plantations after the abolition of the slave trade, and which in turn suffered from devastating attacks, first of a fungoid disease and then of the dread insect pest, phylloxera, which took ten years to exterminate. Bananas enter largely into the export trade in fruit and vegetables. Embroidery and wicker furniture, the product of local handicrafts, are other leading exports, while the tourist traffic, based on Madeira's attractions as a health resort, provides an invisible export of the first importance.

**Cape Verde Islands.** This group, situated some 300–400 miles west of Cape Verde, comprises ten islands and a few islets, with a total area of some 1,500 square miles (about half as large again as the Orkneys and Shetlands), the largest, São Thiago (355 square miles), being about the size of Pomona, the largest of the Orkneys. The islands are volcanic, with peaks ranging up to 9,000 ft.; and, coming under the influence of the harmattan winds from the Sahara, they partake of the nature of the desert, supporting little vegetation except in the river valleys. The population (175,000) is beyond the economic capacity of the group, and normally there is a seasonal migration of labour to South America, with the striking consequence, thanks to the earnings of the men, that the value of the imports is many times the value of the exports. These last include castor oil seed, coffee, and brandy, the coffee having the reputation of being especially rich in caffeine. But the chief commercial importance of the group lies in its coal and oil fuelling station for ships at Porto Grande, on São Vicente, which is largely used by vessels engaged in the South American trade.

**São Thomé and Príncipe** (St. Thomas and Prince's) are two islands in the Gulf of Guinea, 150–180 miles from the mainland, the first immediately north of the Equator, the other about 90 miles farther north. They are smaller editions of Fernando Po (p. 705), and their luxuriant vegetation and imposing mountain scenery have gained for them among the Portuguese the sobriquet 'The Pearls of the Ocean'. São Thomé (320 square miles), about half as large again as the Isle of Man, has an extinct volcano rising some 7,000 ft. above the sea. Príncipe (42 square miles), much the same size as Jersey, rises to about 3,000 ft. A total population of 70,000 is divided

between them in proportion, roughly, to their size. Their economic importance has dwindled with the decline of slavery. At one time coffee was paramount among the many crops grown in the prolific soil. In the nineteenth century cocoa came to the fore, and before the First World War the islands were credited with an annual production of 35,000 tons; but this too has dwindled. The exports of local produce from both islands in 1956 was valued at over £2m. São Thomé has a few miles of light railway.

#### SPANISH

**The Canary Islands** lie to the west of the Spanish sphere in Southern Morocco, the nearest island being about 65 miles from Cape Juby, and the other islands stretching west for 250 miles or more. There are seven inhabited islands, of volcanic origin, besides islets and rocks, the whole having an area of nearly 2,900 square miles (about three times that of the Orkney and Shetland Islands) and forming two provinces of Spain. The largest island, Tenerife, is about the size of Oxfordshire—a quarter of the whole group; next in size is Fuertaventura, and then comes Grand Canary, about one-sixth of the whole. Tenerife and Grand Canary are easily the best known members of the archipelago. In association with their respective capitals, Santa Cruz de Tenerife and Las Palmas, they have given their names to the two groups (constituting provinces of Spain) into which the islands are divided, and between which the total population of 860,000 (1956) is shared nearly equally. The two capitals alone are the homes of over a quarter of a million people—111,000 in Santa Cruz and 165,000 in Las Palmas.

The high density of the population, relative to the mainland territories of Africa, is all the more remarkable in view of the mountainous character of the islands—the lowest of them reaches over 2,000 ft., while the famous Peak of Tenerife attains to over 12,000 ft.—and is evidence of the favourable climatic and other conditions which account for one of the chief industries of the islands, the tourist traffic. These conditions are also conducive to agricultural industry, and in the course of time there has been a succession of outstanding products—wines till disease wrought havoc in the vineyards in the middle of last century; then cochineal, till the discovery of aniline dyes reduced the profits of the industry; and more recently, before the Second World War, fresh vegetables and fruits, especially early potatoes, tomatoes, and not least bananas—a smaller and finer fruit than the species mostly found on the market in Britain (see page 216).

## AMERICA

America, the New World, is less than one-half of the aggregate size of the three great continents of the Old World—Europe, Asia, and Africa. Its population, exceeding 350m., is to the extent of at least two-thirds of European descent. Negroes originally introduced as slaves make up rather under 10 per cent. and native Indians, now mainly in South America, about the same. Immigrant Chinese and peoples from India account for less than 1 per cent.; the remainder are of mixed origin.

The commerce of America taken as a whole has one striking feature, namely, the vastness of the scale on which it is carried on relatively to the density of the population, though this is less true than formerly. Countries are growing up and becoming more self-contained. The prevailing characteristic of the development of American resources was for long the rapid utilisation of cheap land by devoting it on a large scale to the production of the commodities for which, under existing conditions of commerce, it is best suited. Gradually, however, one country after another, especially since the First World War, is taking on the features of the countries of the Old World—the diminution in the surplus of primary materials available for export and the extension of secondary industries or manufactures. The United States has passed this stage and so, in a large measure, has Canada.

In consequence of this there has been, and to a large extent still is, a large preponderance of bulky articles (foodstuffs and raw materials) among the exports of the two continents, and this made it in general impossible to balance the outward with the inward trade as regards quantity. Large numbers of empty railway wagons had to be hauled to the producing regions of the interior. This was an inducement to the railway companies to reduce the inward rates of carriage to the lowest point, for it is obvious that in these circumstances anything earned over the cost of collecting, handling, and delivering the goods is a profit to them. In some cases, however, the conditions were reversed until the opening of the Panama Canal in 1914. The trade across the Rocky Mountains carried on by the Canadian Pacific Railway was larger inwards than outwards. Inwards were carried large quantities of lumber, shingles, and other forest products of the Pacific seaboard, besides such less bulky



articles as sugar, tea, and other products of the Pacific islands and the Orient. Since the opening of the Panama Canal, however, Vancouver has become Canada's first or second grain port for the wheat of the Prairies.

The situation of the American continent about midway between the most populous and productive parts of Europe on the one side, and Asia and Australia on the other side, is likewise noteworthy in relation to American commerce. The advantage of this position became more apparent as population increased on the west side of the continent. Nevertheless, the western market of America remains comparatively small, and such products as eastern Asia supplied or supplies are often imported by the longer, but unbroken, sea-route through the Panama Canal. Until the cessation of trade, during and after the Second World War, tea, for example, though imported into the United States almost exclusively from China and Japan, entered that country mainly by eastern ports. In 1925 as in 1886 only about one-tenth of the whole was introduced by way of San Francisco and other ports on the Pacific. The most important eastern product the greater portion of which was introduced into the United States by western ports was raw silk. Raw silk is valuable in proportion to its bulk, and therefore best fitted to bear the cost of land-carriage.

In North America the shortest trans-continental line north of the Gulf of Mexico is in Canada. Till 1914 the only railway that had a through line there was the Canadian Pacific (see below, p. 734). The wheat of the Prairies is the chief product carried eastwards by this route, and the arrangement of the long lakes Winnipeg, Manitoba, and Winnipegosis, must force all the traffic from the Prairies to the south of those lakes. That is why most of the lines of the Canadian Prairies converge on Winnipeg, and why the town has grown with such rapidity.

There are several routes from the eastern seaboard to the interior of North America which run partly through Canada and partly through the United States. The short line of the Canadian Pacific through Maine is mentioned below (p. 735). The Sault Ste. Marie-Minneapolis branch of the same railway is re-connected with the main line a little to the west of Regina by a line which re-enters Canada at Portal, and which brings down vast quantities of Canadian wheat to be milled at Minneapolis. By another route New York is connected with Chicago by a line which passes over the Niagara river at Buffalo into Canada, and then re-enters the United States by Windsor and Detroit.

The trans-continental lines which lie entirely within the United States have to cross both the Appalachian system and the Rocky Mountains, which necessitate great windings and steep gradients. In the east railways on both flanks of the Hudson run northwards for

more than 140 miles to take advantage of the same breach in that system, the Mohawk valley, as is made use of by the Erie Canal in proceeding westwards to Buffalo and Chicago (New York Central). This deviation raises the distance between these two points to upwards of 980 miles. A shorter route by the Pennsylvania Railroad, 912 miles in length, connects the two places by way of Philadelphia (90 miles) and Pittsburgh (444 miles), but in one part this route has an average gradient of 1 in 60 for 11 miles, and some very severe curves.

The termini both of the West Shore line running up the right bank of the Hudson and of the line belonging to the Pennsylvania Railroad Company through Philadelphia to Chicago formerly had to be reached by ferry from New York, but a large terminal station was constructed by the Pennsylvania Railroad Company in the heart of the city and tunnels have been pierced under the harbour to connect the city, including Brooklyn, with the New Jersey shore. These tunnels, however, serve only for passenger traffic. A vehicular tunnel under the Hudson has also been completed, in addition to the George Washington Bridge. The New York Central Lines have been brought into the very heart of New York (Grand Central Terminal) by tunnels through which the trains are drawn by electric engines.

The connection of Chicago, and thus of the eastern seaboard with San Francisco (or rather with Oakland on the east side of the Bay of San Francisco) by the completion of the Union and Central Pacific Railroad, through Des Moines and Omaha, was effected in 1869, and this was the first trans-continental connection north of the Isthmus of Panama. The total distance by this route between New York and San Francisco *via* Philadelphia is 3,270 miles. After the first connection in 1869 other trans-continental rail links soon followed though the Western Pacific was opened as late as 1909. Though this line has easier gradients than the Central Pacific, it is considerably longer.

The Northern Pacific and the Great Northern railways, both have for their eastern terminus St. Paul, 410 miles by rail north-west of Chicago. The distance by the Northern Pacific from St. Paul to Tacoma, on Puget Sound, is 1,912 miles, to Portland 2,056 miles, those from New York by Philadelphia 3,234 and 3,378 miles respectively. By the Great Northern Railway the distance of Seattle, on Puget Sound, from St. Paul is 1,823 miles, from New York 3,145 miles.

The Atchison, Topeka, and Santa Fé Railway and the Southern Pacific both establish connections with San Francisco by way of the southern half of the Californian valley. The former completes a trans-continental connection by way of St. Louis, where the Mississippi has been bridged since 1874.

Only a comparatively small number of commodities are conveyed by these trans-continental lines from the western to the eastern seaboard. Great quantities of Californian fruit and of hops and apples from Oregon, Washington, and British Columbia are carried far eastward by rail, but the large timber of British Columbia and the States of Washington and Oregon is now carried largely through the Panama Canal. The great bulk of the commodities conveyed over these lines are the products of the Prairies east of the Rockies—living animals (mainly for the slaughter-houses of Chicago), grain to the lake ports of Chicago, Duluth, Superior, and Fort William, or for farther transport eastwards by rail, and other agricultural products, besides ores and metals from mines in the mountains. Westwards are carried chiefly coal and manufactured goods, but in Canada the export of grain through the permanently ice-free port of Vancouver has become increasingly important. Before the opening of the Panama Canal considerable quantities of Hawaiian sugar were imported at San Francisco to be again dispatched by sea at Galveston for eastern ports, but this was exceptional. It is for this kind of traffic, however, that the Tehuantepec railway (the international importance of which largely disappeared with the opening of the Panama Canal), the Panama railway, and the Panama Canal are designed. An important advantage of all these last connections between the Atlantic and Pacific is the fact that the great circle route from their Pacific termini to Japan and northern and middle China nearly follows the trend of the coast of North America as far as California, and even San Francisco is not very far out of such a direct course. On the Atlantic side again there is the advantage that from Bishop's Rock, Scilly Isles, at the entrance to the English Channel, the route is not greatly lengthened for the Atlantic termini of the Panama Canal by a call at one or other of the eastern ports of the United States. The direct route from Bishop's Rock to Colon is 4,356 nautical miles; the route by Hampton Roads little more than 250 miles farther.

Until 1948 the only trans-continental railway route in South America, unless we include that from Buenos Aires through north-western Argentina and Bolivia to Arica or Antofagasta in Chile or through Bolivia with a steamer link across Lake Titicaca to Mollendo, was that which connects Valparaiso in Chile with Buenos Aires, with a length from sea to sea of 883 miles, opened May 25, 1910, but destroyed by flood in January 1934 and later relaid. Between Los Andes on the Chilean side of the mountains and Mendoza on the Argentine side it passes beneath the Uspallata Pass in a tunnel nearly two miles long with a summit level of 10,469 feet, now converted to a road and rail tunnel. The mountain section of this railway, 153 miles in length, is on the metre gauge, the remainder on the Argentine standard gauge (5ft. 6in.).

The opening of the Panama Canal in August 1914 brought about many changes in ocean routes, and, contrary to the expectations of many, the net tonnage of the shipping making use of the Canal increased till, a few years after the First World War, it was about equal to the net tonnage passing through the Suez Canal. The two continued to invite comparison till the outbreak of the Second World War, with the Suez Canal rather more than holding its own, whereas from 1924 to 1939 there was little change in the annual tonnage passing through the Panama Canal (ranging for the most part from 25m. to 27m. tons). With the delayed entry of the United States into the War, the Panama Canal took the lead for a year or two, but then the Suez Canal went ahead again, and in the post-War years the figures of its shipping have gone up by leaps and bounds, far outstripping those of the Panama Canal, whose progress, however, if less spectacular, has been substantial and steady. (See pp. 641 and 798.)

In general, the Panama Canal would not seem to have such fundamental advantages as the Suez Canal. The latter canal greatly shortened all the voyages between the most important ports of the East and West, the West including the eastern seaboard of North America. In a minor but still important degree, it also shortened the distance from Australia to Europe. On the other hand, the Panama Canal effects no shortening of distance between Europe and the East or Europe and Australia. It does not even make the distance from New York to Shanghai (that is, the Yangtse valley) shorter than that from Liverpool or London by the Suez Canal. Its most important effect was to bring the western side of America nearer to the Atlantic, and that side of America has, of recent years, greatly increased its productivity. The early rapid increase in traffic through the Panama Canal was due mainly to the growth of the carriage of Californian oil to the Atlantic side, and second to oil came Puget Sound timber. It is noteworthy that the cargo tonnage from the Pacific to the Atlantic was much more than that in the reverse direction though the difference grew steadily less till it was reversed in 1957.

A great change has been effected in the North American continent by the development of all-weather motor highways. The United States has two-thirds of the total number of motor vehicles in the world and the volume of passenger and goods traffic is enormous. It is difficult to realise how recent is the development of these metalled or concrete motor-roads. Although by 1934 there were several good motor highways from coast to coast, in each case a short length of each route remained to be adequately metalled. In 1958 Canada had not yet a coast to coast highway. During the Second World War American Army engineers constructed the highway known as the Alcan or Alaskan Highway through Canada to Alaska. The great project of the Pan-American Highway from

Canada to Argentina was complete in 1952 in the United States and Mexico, but not in Central and South America.

The American countries, especially the United States, have waged a constant war aiming at the conquest of distance. A most successful weapon has been the aeroplane. Regular air routes link all the larger cities and the journey from the Atlantic coast of the United States to the Pacific is covered in less than 12 hours—4½ hours by 1958 jet aircraft. In South America, the regular services encircle the continent and link its capitals with New York.

An important aspect of the American transport system is now the number of long-distance and branch pipelines for oil and natural gas. They are frequently owned by companies independent of the producers and can convey at different times oil or even gas belonging to different groups.

## NORTH AMERICA

Including the West Indian Islands, this division of the New World comprises more than half the area and nearly three-fourths of the population belonging to the whole.

The surface is made up mainly of plains and tablelands, and the great mountain chains have a more or less southerly trend. In the west a series of lofty mountains stretches through the entire length of the continent, rising from a tableland, 4,000 feet or more in height, which at its widest (about lat. 40°) extends over fully one-third of the breadth of the United States, and east of the mountains slopes very gently downwards to a great plain. The mountain chain which rises above this tableland in the east is the Rocky Mountains, in the stricter application of that name. There are also a great number of shorter mountain ranges, which vary the surface of the tableland, and nearly all of which trend north and south, or in a direction which does not greatly deviate from that. The Cascade Mountains and the Sierra Nevada are the principal mountain chains that border the tableland in the west, in the wider part of the continent; and still farther west are lower mountains, known as the Coast Range. Towards the south, in the narrower part of the continent in Mexico, the tableland stretches almost from sea to sea. Several railways now cross these mountains. Those in the middle part of the system, where the traffic is most active, do so at passes varying from about 5,300 to upwards of 8,000 feet in height. The only other great mountain system of North America is that of the Appalachians or Alleghany Mountains, which extend in long parallel chains roughly in the same direction as the Atlantic coast.

A chain of magnificent lakes, Lakes Superior, Michigan, Huron, Erie, and Ontario, is drained by the St. Lawrence into the Atlantic,

and together with that river forms an invaluable means of internal communication. The great rivers of the plain are, or at least have been, likewise of the highest service in this respect.

The general correspondence between the **climate** of the west of North America and that of western Europe, and between the climate of the eastern side of the continent and that of eastern Asia, has been referred to in the paragraphs relating to climate generally (p. 24). Here two features in that correspondence may be recalled to mind—first, the more equable climate of the temperate zone in the west than in the east, and secondly, the dearth of rain in the west, south of the parallel of 37° or 38° N.; and it is only necessary to add some particulars regarding the effect of some of the great physical features on the climate of the continent.

Important climatic effects are due to the direction of the mountain chains. The western mountains, shutting off the moisture from the Pacific, cause a large part of the interior of the United States to be too dry for agriculture without irrigation. It is mainly from this cause that the greater part of the area of the United States west of 100° W., with the exception of a portion of the maritime strip, has this arid character (see p. 40). Further, the open plains and gently rising ground between these mountains and the Appalachians allow even the most southerly points of the United States, as well as the east coast of Mexico, to be swept from time to time by keen winds from the north, so that ice forms at the mouth of the Mississippi in lat. 30° N.; and even in the extreme south of Texas (lat. 26° N., about the same latitude as Patna in Bengal) as much as 14° of frost has been experienced. In some years severe frosts may seriously injure a large proportion of the trees in the orange-groves of Florida, and the recurrence of frosts extinguished for a time orange-growing in all the Gulf States. Even below St. Louis (38½° N.) the Mississippi navigation is partly closed by ice for 33 days a year on the average.

Other important effects on the climate are due to the great gulfs in the north and south, Hudson Bay and the Gulf of Mexico, as well as the Great Lakes, the aggregate area of which is larger than that of Great Britain. Besides exercising through the agency of winds an equalising effect on the temperature, they are all sources of moisture, especially during the summer months, when moisture is most needed. It is in a large measure from this cause that north and east of the arid region of the continent the plains are supplied with rain enough at least for the growth of pasture grasses and other herbage. These plains form the prairies of North America. They are for the most part treeless, except in the valleys along the water courses.

For a long period after the discovery of America, the only important commodities furnished by North America were the precious metals derived from the West Indies and Mexico and cod

from the Grand Bank of Newfoundland. The West Indies and Mexico were entirely in Spanish hands. The feeble Indians of the islands were easily subjected at the time of their discovery in 1492 and the years immediately following, and the Aztec empire in Mexico was overthrown by Cortez in 1519-21. The mines of the precious metals in the West Indies were soon exhausted, but those of Mexico have never ceased to be extremely productive. Though the first English voyage to America, that which set sail from Bristol under the Venetian, John Cabot, in search of a north-west passage to India, was made in 1497, and though it was in virtue of that voyage that the English afterwards laid claim to a great part of the coast of North America, the first settlements in the temperate latitudes of that continent were made by the French. The banks of the St. Lawrence were explored by Jacques Cartier in 1533-43; but the most successful French settlements were due to the efforts of Samuel Champlain (1602-35). He founded Quebec in 1608, and a few years after his death Montreal was founded in 1642. French explorations and a few isolated French settlements were made higher up, but the rapids above Montreal put a limit to continuous settlement by the French. All the territory on both banks of the St. Lawrence below Montreal continued to be French till the capture of Quebec by General Wolfe in 1759. Meantime settlements were made by other countries elsewhere. The first attempted settlement of the English was a failure. It was made on Roanoke Island in Pamlico Sound at the suggestion of Sir Walter Raleigh in 1585, but the survivors of the settlement were brought back to England by Sir Francis Drake in 1586. The first successful English settlement, known as Jamestown, was made in 1607 on a promontory of the James River, at the mouth of Chesapeake Bay. This former promontory is now an island in the river, on which the relics of the settlement are carefully preserved by the government of the United States. The next English settlements were made in Massachusetts—at Plymouth in 1620, and on Massachusetts Bay in 1628-30. In 1612 the Dutch began to trade at the mouth of the Hudson, a river ascended by the English navigator of that name when in Dutch service (1609), and in 1623 the first regular colony was founded by the Dutch West India Company on Manhattan Island. This formed the nucleus of New Amsterdam, whose name was changed to New York when it was taken by the English in 1664. Forest produce, hemp, and in the southern settlements tobacco, formed the principal articles of export trade among these communities. Early in the seventeenth century, however, furs began to reach Europe from Hudson Bay, and in 1670 this trade became a monopoly of the English Hudson's Bay Company. Sugar, coffee, and cotton gradually came to be important products of the West Indies, but it was not till after the severance of the English

colonies from the mother country in the American Revolution or War of Independence (1776-83) that cotton came to be extensively cultivated on the mainland. But the great commercial development of North America was that which followed the introduction of steamships and railways. By that means bulky produce of the far interior, such as grain and provisions, could for the first time be conveyed to Europe at a sufficiently low cost to allow of the growth of an immense trade in these commodities.

### GREENLAND

A dependency of Denmark, Greenland has an area of 840,000 square miles—nearly three times the size of Scandinavia; but five-sixths of it is under ice, and the coastal fringe is the home of Eskimos. Ninety per cent. of the population of 25,000 are found on the west coast; under 1,500 are Europeans. A Council meets at Godthaab the capital, and two representatives have seats in the Danish Parliament. Greenland is the home of cryolite, the primary source of aluminium before bauxite came into use, and from 40,000 to 70,000 tons are still exported annually. Large deposits of lead ores, located in 1948, are estimated at a million tons. The spread of aviation has given strategic importance to Greenland, and the United States has acquired from Denmark the use of bases for joint defence.

### CANADA<sup>1</sup>

Canada is situated to the north of the United States, from which it is separated partly by the middle line of Lakes Superior, Huron, Erie, and Ontario, partly (west of the Lake of the Woods) by the parallel of 49° N. The inhabitants are mainly of British origin and Protestant in religion; but French Roman Catholics make up more than one-third of the population, chiefly in Quebec, where the first colonists were French. There are about 160,000 Indians, most of whom are hunters, roaming over the northern and western forest regions, and living by the sale of furs to the fur-trading companies. About 10,000 Eskimos inhabit the far north and north-east. The islands of the Arctic Archipelago are of interest in the history of commerce, from the fact that a north-west passage to eastern Asia was for centuries sought in vain among the channels that separate them. A passage was at last effected by MacLure in 1850-53, but the route is too much encumbered by ice to be of any use commercially.

Modern Canada was born in 1867, through the union of separate colonies. It has a general government and parliament for the common affairs, but it has ten provinces (some of which correspond with old colonies) with separate parliaments, empowered to deal with matters of local concern. These provinces are Nova Scotia,

<sup>1</sup> We are greatly indebted to Professor J. Lewis Robinson, of the University of British Columbia, for comments on this section.



Prince Edward Island, New Brunswick, Quebec, Ontario, Manitoba, Saskatchewan, Alberta, British Columbia, and Newfoundland, the last named joining in 1949. In addition to these there is a vast territory to the north-west of Hudson Bay, not yet so organised. The Yukon territory was separated in 1898 and the three Prairie Provinces as well as Ontario and Quebec have been enlarged at the expense of the North-west Territories which, since 1920, have been divided into the three provisional districts of Franklin, Keewatin, and Mackenzie. The seat of the general government is Ottawa, in the province of Ontario.

The extent of Canadian territory is upward of 3·8m. square miles, but the more populous portions of this vast area are confined to the region south of the St. Lawrence west of the city of Quebec, the land on the north adjacent to that river and to the Great Lakes from Quebec to the eastern shores of Lake Huron, the southern parts of the three Prairie Provinces and the south-west of British Columbia. The whole of the more populous area lies farther south than southern England.

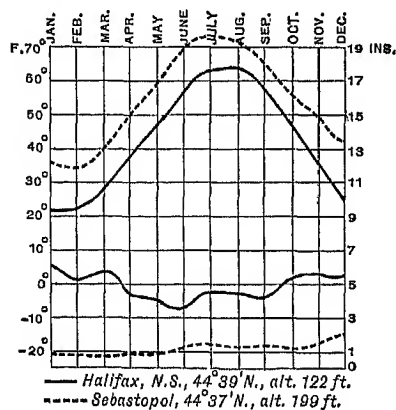
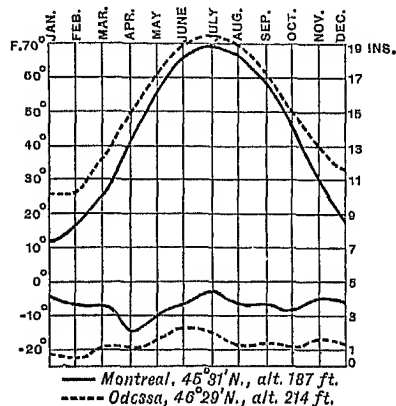
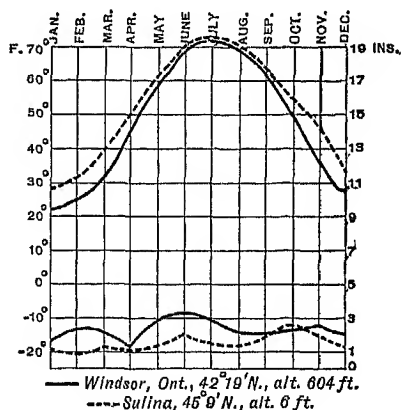
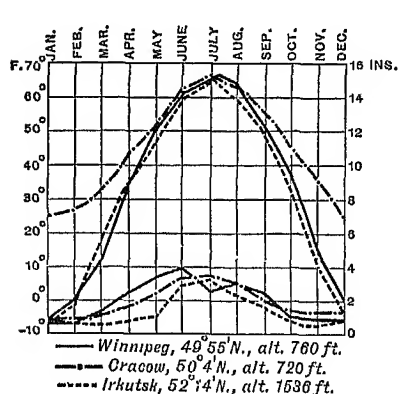
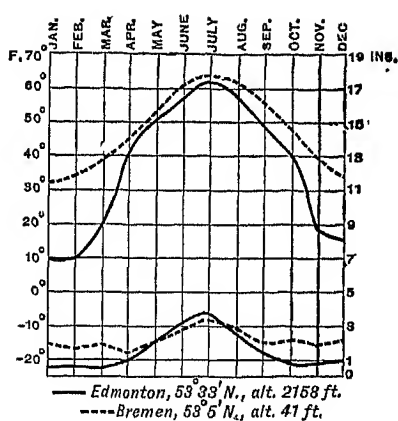
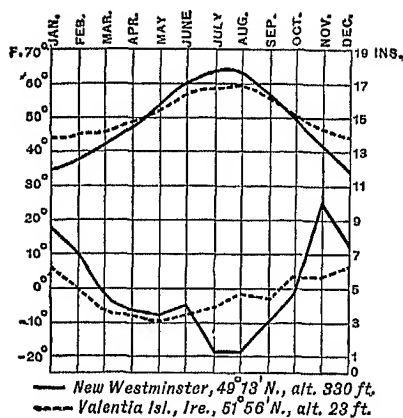
The surface east of the Rocky Mountains is made up principally of plains and undulating lowlands. Tundras, similar to those of northern Russia and Siberia, cover large tracts in the north, descending in the east to about 58° N. on the western shore of Hudson Bay, and still farther east extending along the whole coast of Labrador. Southwards follows a range of vast forests, chiefly of spruce, a region that embraces the whole of the country east of Lake Winnipeg, except the tundra area and the limited agricultural area in the south. Farther to the west, this forested region is succeeded to the south by the prairies, which extend farthest north on the gently sloping tablelands immediately to the east of the Rocky Mountains. The nearly treeless prairies here extend about 3½ degrees north of the United States frontier, and the area with less than 20 per cent. of forest land reaches about 10 degrees north of that frontier, between the Rocky Mountains and Lake Athabasca. In the development of Canada in the present century this prairie region has been of the highest importance, for it contains vast areas now under the plough, with soil of the richest description, and a climate admirably adapted for agriculture, though very different from that of England. In this prairie region there is a rise on the whole from east to west, and this rise takes place in such a manner as to form what are known as the three prairie levels or steps. The lowest level in this region is that of the Red River valley, between 700 and 800 feet. West of that plain the surface rises to about 15,00 feet, and this terrace stretches westwards for about 250 miles. The ground then rises to about 3,000 feet, and then the rise is more gradual to the foothills of the Rocky Mountains.

In the eastern half of the Dominion, the **geological structure** is of peculiar geographical importance. It is of such a nature as

must for ever forbid extensive agricultural settlement. From the banks of the St. Lawrence, some little distance below Quebec, to the Red River valley and north-westwards to the Mackenzie River, there extends an enormous region of ancient crystalline rocks—the Canadian Shield—protruding in many places in naked masses, in other places having only a thin covering of soil supporting forests of spruce and pine. The principal exception to this character is the area already referred to as the most populous of Canada, but there are also many larger or smaller isolated valleys with a deep and fertile soil.

The general similarity between the climate of North America and that of corresponding latitudes in Europe and Asia is noticed on p. 46, but some details are of importance (see the accompanying diagrams). East of the Rocky Mountains the climate of Canada generally is characterised by those extremes of temperature which prevail in the same latitudes in the northern hemisphere everywhere, except in regions exposed to south-westerly winds from the ocean. But an important difference between western Canada and Europe is due to the fact that the whole area between the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific coast is mountainous, and that the mountains run throughout parallel to the coast and nearly at right angles to the prevailing winds. Hence great contrasts, in respect of both rainfall and temperature, begin within a short distance of the Pacific. At New Westminster, at the mouth of the Fraser, the mean temperature of the coldest month of the year is  $36^{\circ}$  F., of the hottest about  $63^{\circ}$  F., and the total precipitation<sup>1</sup> is 65 inches; at Lillooet, higher up the Fraser valley but behind the Coast Mountains, the corresponding figures for temperature are  $22^{\circ}$  F. and  $68^{\circ}$  F., for rain- and snow-fall about 13 inches. To the east of the Rocky Mountains the total precipitation is scanty, though it begins to increase again in eastern Saskatchewan. But as affecting the cultivation of grains, two considerations must be borne in mind. First, it is important that the great bulk of the total precipitation takes place during the summer, especially the early summer, months. (See p. 42.) Second, throughout Canada a considerable proportion of the precipitation takes place in the form of **snow**, the amount of which, however, is much greater in the east than in the west. At Montreal the average of the thirty years previous to 1914 was over 120 inches; at Toronto, the average of the same period, 58 inches; and even in  $42^{\circ}$  N., in the extreme south of Ontario, the same latitude as the northern frontier of Portugal, in a district in which grapes are grown for wine-making in summer, the average of fourteen years was 57 inches. At Winnipeg, in Manitoba, the average of thirty

<sup>1</sup> Including both rain and snow. The meteorological office of Canada reckons ten inches of snow as equal to one inch of rain (of course only a very rough average).



## COMPARISON OF METEOROLOGICAL DATA, CANADA, EUROPE AND SIBERIA.

Mean temperature curves above, rainfall below.

Degrees F. numbered on left, inches of rainfall on right.

Canadian curves continuous, European or Asiatic dotted or broken lines.

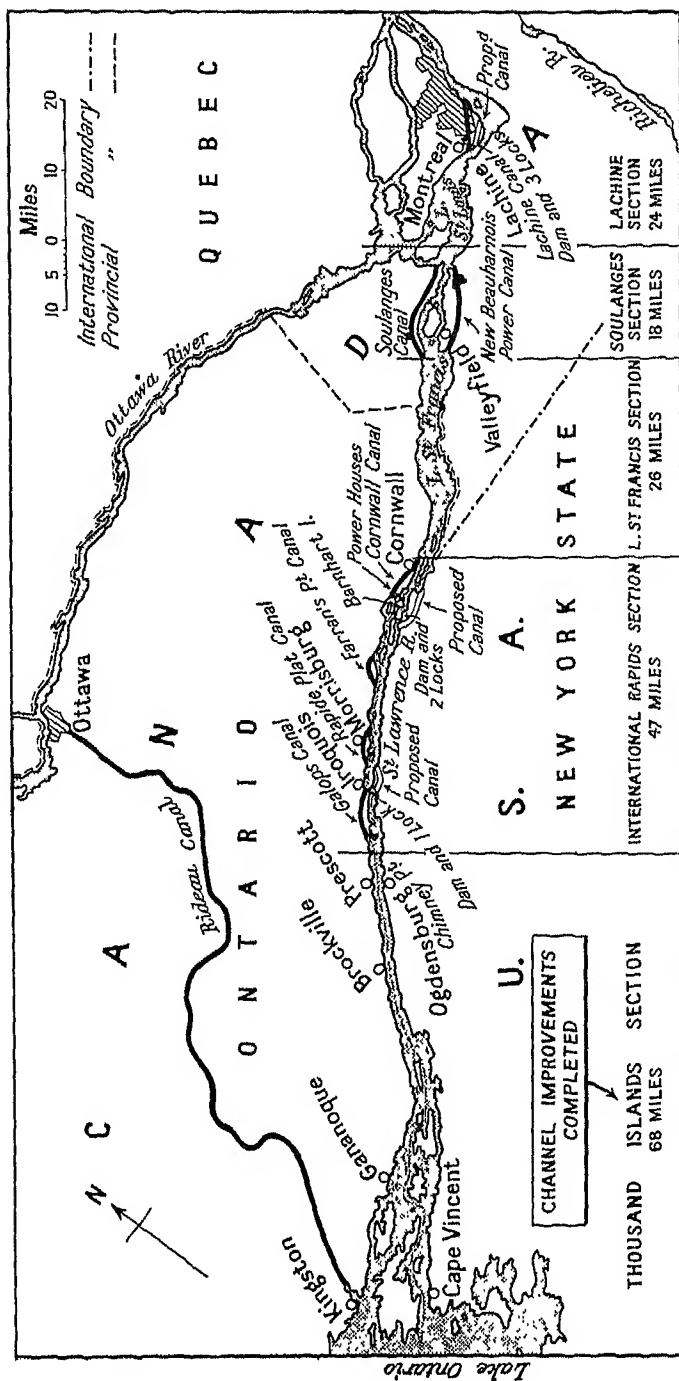
years (1885-1914) was only 49 inches. Two advantages for wheat-growing accrue from this snowfall, one experienced principally in the eastern half of Canada, the other in the west. In the east the total precipitation is ample, and is fairly equally distributed throughout the year, and there the great advantage of the snow as regards wheat-culture is that it protects the ground against the severe frosts. There accordingly winter wheat (or, as it is called in America, fall wheat) can be regularly grown, whereas in all the Prairie Provinces the frost comes before the snow, and hence only spring wheat can be cultivated. But in this part of Canada it is important that the melting in spring of water frozen underground furnishes moisture just when it is wanted. In the more arid parts of the prairies, however, **irrigation** is necessary—in the southern parts of Saskatchewan and Alberta. The Canadian Pacific Railway Company has constructed and operated in the Province of Alberta three large projects known as the Eastern, Western, and Lethbridge sections. The water is obtained from the Bow River and the St. Mary River. There are other important schemes in Alberta as well as many hundred small schemes in Saskatchewan and Alberta.

In those parts in which wheat is most largely grown, it is not the total amount of the annual rainfall that determines the amount of the produce. The annual precipitation in Manitoba for example has varied from 12 to 22½ inches and the average yield of wheat per acre between 9 and 28 bushels, but there is no marked correspondence between the rainfall and the yield, though the rains of May and June seem to be particularly significant. (See the rainfall diagram for Winnipeg, p. 731.) The chief disadvantage of the Canadian climate for wheat-growing, and especially in the north-west, is the liability to the occurrence of frost before harvest, but this risk is being greatly reduced by the careful selection of seed and the cultivation of hardy varieties of wheat, which ripen quickly, and, as it happens, yield hard wheats of exceptionally high value. The use of these quick-maturing wheats has made possible the settlement of the Peace river area as a sort of extension of the prairies. The correspondence between some temperatures of Canada and those of Eurasia is indicated on p. 731, but it must be remembered that the summers that follow the cold but dry, invigorating, healthy, and pleasant winters are remarkably bright as well as warm. The whole of Canada, with the exception of near the coast in British Columbia, is favoured with more sunshine than any portion of Great Britain, Germany, Holland, or northern France. In winter the temperature in districts adjacent to the great mountain ranges is greatly mitigated by warm, dry, or moist winds, from the south-east, south or south-west, west of the Rocky Mountains, and from the south-west, west or north-west to the east of the Rocky Mountains, those in the latter case being such as are experienced in all parts of

the world on the lee-side of mountains exposed on the weather-side to copious rains. In Canada they are known as chinook winds. In southern Alberta they cause the cold of winter to alternate with spells of bright warm weather, in which the ground is swept bare of snow and the pasture grasses are revived, and they thus help to make the rearing of livestock the characteristic industry of this part of the prairies.

With regard to the **internal communications** of Canada, it is noteworthy, in the first place, that the St. Lawrence River and the Great Lakes, supplemented by a number of short canals (the longest is about 27 miles), form a system of internal navigation for sea-going vessels unparalleled in any other continent. The first of the canals to be constructed was the Lachine Canal immediately above Montreal, opened in 1824, and other canals between Montreal and Lake Ontario were completed by 1843. The Welland Canal, which runs parallel to the Niagara River and avoids the Falls of Niagara between Lakes Erie and Ontario, and is the longest, was constructed in 1824-29. It has been reconstructed several times, finally as the Welland Ship Canal opened in 1931. The difference of 325 feet in the level of the two lakes was overcome by seven locks 800 feet by 80 feet. Vessels drawing up to 23½ feet can pass through and in 1954 work was begun on the St. Lawrence Seaway (see map overleaf) to enable vessels drawing 25 feet to pass from the Great Lakes to tidal waters at Montreal. American co-operation, favoured by successive United States Governments but opposed by rival commercial interests, was later agreed. The shortest, but perhaps the most important of the Canadian canals is the Sault Ste. Marie ('Soo') Canal between Lakes Superior and Huron, which was constructed between 1889 and 1895. It is little more than a mile in length, and has only one lock. Since 1855 there had been a canal on the United States side at the same place. The traffic through these canals, since reconstructed, is in the forefront of the world's canal traffic—much greater than that through the Panama Canal. In 1855 the registered tonnage that passed through the United States Canal was little more than 100,000 tons; in 1875, above 1m. tons; in 1890, above 9m. tons. The actual freight carried in 1913 was 42·7m. tons, of which close upon 5m. passed through the Canadian lock. In 1934 over 18m. tons of freight passed through Canadian canals alone, and the total reached 25·5m. tons in 1950.

By this series of **waterways**, small sea-going ships may already pass inland for 2,250 miles from the straits of Belle Isle, in the north of Newfoundland, to Fort William on Lake Superior, within only about 1,900 miles by rail from Vancouver, the seaport at the Pacific terminus of the C.P.R. On the United States side they are carried up a distance of 2,400 miles to Duluth, at the very head of Lake Superior, within 1,890 miles by rail of the nearest Pacific port,



THE ST. LAWRENCE SEAWAY

Showing the existing state of navigable channels in 1953 and the proposals for improvements to convert the whole into a 'seaway' usable by ocean liners. Work was undertaken on the seaway in 1954 and completed in 1959.

The St. Lawrence navigation is usually open from about the end of April to near the end of November, or even the first week in December. The route from the mouth of the St. Lawrence, round the north of Newfoundland (by the straits of Belle Isle), is closed for a longer period than that by Cabot Strait, round the south of Newfoundland, which adds about 160 miles to the distance to Liverpool. With a view to extending the Great Lakes navigation, so as to develop a bigger export of grain through Dominion channels, ice-breakers are available where they are required—Port Arthur, Fort William, the Sault Ste. Marie Canal, and elsewhere. All the lights on Lake Superior, Lake Huron, Georgian Bay, Lake Erie, and Lake Ontario are kept in operation until the end of December, or later, if possible.

Besides the leading highway for ships, the Canadian Dominion possesses other less important inland waterways. The River Ottawa is continuously navigable, with the aid of a few canals, as far as the city of Ottawa; and thence there is a navigable though little used connection by the Rideau River and Canal with Kingston on Lake Ontario.

Above Lake Superior, navigation can be continued with canoes and motor-boats by Rainy Lake and River, Winnipeg Lake and River, and the North Saskatchewan River to near the base of the Rocky Mountains. The Assiniboine and Red River, which both belong, like the Saskatchewan, to the basin of Lake Winnipeg, are likewise navigable by very shallow draught boats, but the Nelson, the outlet of Lake Winnipeg to Hudson Bay, is too much obstructed by rapids to be of any service as a waterway. In the summer there are regular services on the Mackenzie and Yukon rivers.

In the more populous parts of Canada there is a tolerably complete network of **railways**, and since November 1885, when the Canadian Pacific Railway was completed, there has been uninterrupted railway communication from ocean to ocean within Canadian territory. The tables overleaf exhibit some of the more important elements in the comparison of this railway, as a trans-continental means of communication, with the chief trans-continental routes of the United States. It will be observed that the Canadian Pacific has an advantage over both its older rivals, the Northern Pacific and the Union and Central Pacific, in the lower height of its passes, and the shorter length of route at high levels. The Great Northern Railway, the main line of which was completed in 1893, has, however, as favourable a route on the whole as that of the Canadian Pacific. The Canadian Northern Railway, which was begun in 1896, is now part of the Canadian National system. It extends from ocean to ocean, and operates trains between Quebec and Montreal in the east and Winnipeg, Edmonton, and Vancouver in the west. Between Edmonton and Vancouver it uses the Yellow-

head Pass and the through line was completed in 1915. Another line runs to the Pacific port of Prince Rupert. The company got into financial difficulties, and, like the Grand Trunk Railway, passed under government ownership and operation.

TABLE I

*Railways across Rocky Mountains and Pacific Coast Ranges.*

Railway.	Height in feet of Summits.	Maximum Gradient expressed as percentage of Rise for a Given Length.		Date of Completion.
		Westbound.	Eastbound.	
Canadian Pacific . . . .	5,344	1.2	2.2	1885
Canadian National (Grand Trunk Pacific) . . . .	3,712	0.5	0.4	1914
Canadian National (Canadian Northern) . . . .	3,700	0.5	0.4	1915
Great Northern . . . .	5,202	2.2	2.2	1897
Northern Pacific . . . .	5,569	2.2	2.2	1883
Chicago, Milwaukee, and Puget Sound . . . .	6,350	0.3	0.3	1909
Union and Central Pacific . .	8,247	2.0	2.2	1869
Union Pacific and Oregon . .	8,247	2.2	2.0	1884
Santa Fé . . . .	7,510	3.5	3.3	1883
Denver and Rio Grande . .	10,239	1.4	2.3	1871
Western Pacific . . . .	5,712	1.0	1.0	1909
Southern Pacific . . . .	4,610	2.0	2.0	1883
San Pedro, Los Angeles, and Salt Lake . . . .	6,060	1.6	3.0	1905

TABLE II

Railway.	From	Length in Statute Miles.	Length in Nautical Miles from respective Pacific or Atlantic Ports to			Total Ocean Route Liverpool to Hong Kong.
			Yokohama.	Hong Kong.	Liverpool.	
C.P.R.	Vancouver . . . .	{ To Port Arthur . 1,915	4,330	5,890	2,800	8,690
	Vancouver by all Canadian route. . . .	{ " Montreal . 2,908				
	Vancouver, by Short Line (through Maine, U.S.) (Opened 1889) . . . .	{ " Halifax . 3,742				
	Vancouver, by shortest connections . . . .	{ " " . 3,595				
N.P.R.	Seattle, by shortest connections . . . .	{ " New York . 3,162	4,330	5,890	3,030	8,920
	Portland, Oregon, by shortest connections . . . .	{ " Duluth . 1,915				
	San Francisco, by shortest connections . . . .	{ " New York . 3,251				
	San Francisco, by shortest connections . . . .	{ " Duluth . 1,890				
U.&C.P.	San Francisco, by shortest connections . . . .	{ " New York . 3,235	4,250	5,810	3,030	8,840
	San Francisco, by shortest connections . . . .	{ " Chicago . 2,356				
		{ " New York . 3,270	4,510	6,070	3,030	9,100



The construction of a railway direct from the grain-growing areas of Manitoba to Churchill, on Hudson Bay at the mouth of the Churchill river, was begun in 1911. Until 1927 it was intended to make Port Nelson the terminus on Hudson Bay, but the silting of the inlet there rendered the port site unsuitable. By 1929 the track was laid to Churchill, and in the autumn of 1931 the first shipment of grain to the United Kingdom by this route was made. The importance of this railway arises from the fact that it forms the shortest route for the products of the Canadian Prairies to England, but its value depends in a great measure on the navigability of Hudson Bay and Hudson Strait. The difficulties of navigation are almost confined to the strait, which is 500 miles in length, and for the greater part of the year is obstructed by ice. The strait is open, however, for at least two or three months every year, and in some years, at least for steamers of suitable build, considerably longer. The ocean length of this route from Liverpool is 2,936 nautical miles to Churchill. A hindrance to the extensive use of the route is the high cost of insurance on the vessels against the risks of ice. For these reasons the route has not proved the success which was hoped, whereas the shipment of grain *via* the ever-open Pacific port of Vancouver and through the Panama Canal to Europe has greatly increased.

The **minerals** of most importance commercially at present are (approximately in order of value of output) petroleum, copper, uranium, nickel, iron ore, gold, zinc, asbestos, coal, lead, silver and natural gas. Others occupying a smaller but significant place include cadmium, cobalt, magnesium, palladium, platinum, selenium, titanium, tungsten and tin; also barite, fluorspar, gypsum, lithia, dolomite, quartz and salt. Even this list is far from exhaustive but is sufficient to illustrate the wide range of resources.

Though Canada has coal-fields which are enormous in extent, production has been declining from the peak of 19,139,000 tons in 1950. About a third is good-quality bituminous coal from the Sydney field of Nova Scotia where some of the mining involves following the seams under the sea. There are other small fields in the east in New Brunswick but it is 2,000 miles from there to the fields of the Rocky Mountain foothills. No coal is found near the industrial and populous regions of southern Ontario and Quebec, hence the import of United States coal across the Great Lakes and the great importance of the new supplies of Canadian oil and natural gas being brought in by pipeline. Fortunately these parts of eastern Canada have great **water power** resources, extensively used. The province of Alberta is underlaid to the extent of about 17,000 square miles with bituminous and semi-bituminous coal and lignites of varying quality and anthracite is known in western Alberta. Four-fifths of Canada's total proved reserves are in Alberta (coal and anthracite).

In British Columbia a coal-field producing coal of good quality though somewhat powdery, immediately to the west of the Crow's Nest Pass, began to be worked as soon as the branch of the Canadian Pacific Railway through the pass was opened. There are some small fields along the west coast of Canada and coal has been worked at Nanaimo on Vancouver Island since 1840.

In contrast to the declining importance of coal, most other minerals are on the upgrade. The economic position of Canada has been greatly changed by the discovery of very rich oil-fields in the Prairie Provinces—especially near Edmonton in Alberta, where the fields of Leduc, Redwater and Pembina proved so productive as to warrant construction of pipelines direct to the Great Lakes and Vancouver. In addition to the older Turner Valley field near Calgary, rich fields have been proved also in south-eastern Saskatchewan. Iron ore is met with in many places, but for long it seemed that Canada had no resources to rival those of the United States near Lake Superior occurring in rocks which are an extension of the Canadian Shield. Despite various small deposits, no iron ore was mined in Canada from 1921 to 1936, and the iron and steel industry depended upon imported ore. Then came the opening up of the Steep Rock and other deposits near Lake Superior and the discovery of vast ore bodies in the Ungava region of northern Quebec and Labrador. A railway from the shores of the lower St. Lawrence was begun after the Second World War to reach these deposits which occur in an area where climatic conditions are very severe. There was a jump in production, when these ores were tapped, from 7m. tons in 1954 to 17m. in 1955. Gold is obtained in largest quantity from the old rocks of the Canadian Shield at Porcupine and Kirkland Lake and numerous newer localities in Ontario and Quebec, and also in Manitoba, Saskatchewan, Nova Scotia, and in British Columbia and the Yukon. The production from the once famous alluvial deposits of the latter has dwindled to a very small figure. Since 1938, however, there has been an important mine at Yellowknife in the Northwest Territories. Of great strategic importance is the discovery and development of uranium ores in the region of Blind River and Beaverlodge Lake—one of the great romances of the fifties. The silver production of Canada comes chiefly from the rich silver-cobalt ores of northern Ontario and from mixed ores in British Columbia. In 1955 and 1956 copper topped the list of metallic minerals in value—mainly from the Sudbury area of Ontario, new mines in the Gaspé, and from British Columbia. Ontario provides the bulk of the world's supply of nickel and cobalt, and also much palladium, platinum, selenium, and tellurium. Quebec is one of the world's largest producers of asbestos and has a large output of other minerals. A recent development is in non-metallic minerals, notably for cement. Aluminium is electrically reduced

from imported bauxite and it was for this purpose that the great Kitimat scheme in British Columbia was undertaken.

The tables on pp. 742-3 show the principal features of the **external commerce** of Canada. Wheat and wheat-flour from the Prairies remain a great staple export, but are now surpassed in value by the exports of wood pulp and newsprint, the outstanding value of the latter (one-seventh of all Canada's exports) being a notable example of the growth of manufacturing industry. Most of the newsprint is exported to the United States. Lumber (conifer) is also a major export, and in this respect minerals rival forest products. The exports show clearly however the rapid rise of Canada as a great manufacturing country. The high place taken by aluminium, copper and nickel as well as iron ore and petroleum shows also the great mineral resources. Relatively foodstuffs such as meats and dairy produce have declined. Of the imports, iron and steel goods, including machinery and vehicles, now hold the first place, far exceeding in value the textile group including the cotton and woollen manufactures. British shipping still takes the lead in the sea-borne traffic of Canada, and no small portion is conveyed by the Canadian Pacific Steamship services (British registration). Canadian vessels handle over half the trade with the United States but only 3 per cent. of that with other countries—together making rather over a third of the total.

The more important **manufacturing industries** at first were naturally those which consist in subjecting the raw materials of the country to the simplest processes, preparatory to sending the products to a home or foreign market—flour-milling, saw-milling, the manufacture of wood-pulp, paper, and various articles made of wood, the making of boots and shoes, and other industries connected with leather—but in recent years there has also been a very rapid development of rubber, cotton, and woollen manufactures and other industries depending on imported raw materials and in the manufacture of agricultural implements, automobiles, machinery, and a wide variety of factory products. An attempt was made to stimulate the iron industry of Canada by bounties as far back as 1883, but the most important act with this view was that of 1897, under which bounties were granted on every stage of the iron industry from the raising of the ore to the manufacture of the steel. Under this encouragement iron and steel works were established at Sydney, N.S., Hamilton, Sault Ste. Marie, Port Arthur, and elsewhere. The bounties ceased at the end of 1910 except for wire-rod (fencing wire entering Canada duty free) and pig-iron made by electrical processes. The development of hydro-electric power has had an enormous influence on the industrial progress. Manufacturing is now by far the leading occupation and Canada, the sixth amongst the countries of the world in value of industrial output, is as industrialized as the United States.

A new feature was introduced into the external commerce of Canada by the adoption under an act of 1897 of a preferential tariff in favour of British goods. There have been many subsequent changes but the general principle remains. Under the Ottawa Agreement of 1932 Empire preference was further developed and extended in 1937. After the Second World War the position was complicated by the division of the free world (outside the U.S.S.R. and its satellites) into the 'sterling bloc' and the 'dollar bloc.' This strengthened ties between Canada and the United States, but cut the free movement of goods and capital between Canada and Britain.

Three-quarters of all the foreign trade of Canada are with the United States and the United Kingdom. In inter-war years the exports went almost equally to the two countries, but the United States sent three times as many imports as the United Kingdom. The percentage value of the imports into Canada from the United Kingdom reached its maximum, 58·57 per cent., in 1871-72. After that year the percentage of the United States rose from 33·09 to 60·96 per cent. in 1900-01. In that year, however, more than 50 per cent. of the value of the imports from the United States was duty free, as against only 26·3 per cent. from the United Kingdom. In 1913-14 the percentage value of the imports from the United Kingdom was 21·35 as against 64·0 from the United States. Inevitably the First World War told adversely on British imports, which in 1917-18 sank to 8·5 per cent. of the total, in the following year to less than 8 per cent. In the competition the United States has these advantages among others: (1) that transport can be effected without break of bulk; (2) that the ports at which British goods must be transferred from ocean ships to railways or some other means of carriage were, until 1959, at a great distance from the populous parts of the country (Montreal 335 miles from Toronto, 1,424 miles from Winnipeg); (3) that the large and highly protected market of the United States greatly favours the economies of large-scale production; and (4) the similarity of tastes and needs of the two countries is favourable to mutual commercial intercourse. In 1929-30 15 per cent. of the imports came from the United Kingdom, 68 per cent. from the United States. Of the exports 35 per cent. went to the United Kingdom, 46 per cent. to the United States. The trend was strengthened inevitably during the Second World War. In 1956 only 8·5 per cent. of imports came from the United Kingdom against 73 from the United States. Of exports, 16·7 per cent. went to Britain—unable to find dollars to buy more—and 57·8 per cent. to the United States.

Even before the Second World War Canada had become the fourth country in world export trade, fifth in total trade, and fifth in value of manufactures produced.

**Provinces and towns.**—(1) *Nova Scotia* is a province including both the peninsula of that name and the island of Cape Breton to the north; in all it is about two-thirds of the size of Scotland. The

fertile land, not a quarter of the whole, is mainly situated towards the west. The valleys of Annapolis and Cornwallis on the west side parallel to the coast are the most favoured districts in respect of soil and climate, and above all noted for their apple orchards. The fisheries of this province furnish a large proportion of the Canadian output of cod and lobsters. The capital, Halifax, on the east coast, is situated at the head of a fine natural harbour, which in most years is free from ice all the winter through. It is the principal naval station of Canada. The city and harbour are defended by fortifications. There are iron and steel works at

CANADA  
SPECIAL IMPORTS f.o.b.

	Percentages of Total Value					
	1924.	1926-30.	1931-35.	1938.	1951.	1957.
<i>Raw materials, etc.</i>						
Coal and coke . . . . .	7.9	5.5 <sup>2</sup>	6.6	5.5	4.4	2.3
Petroleum and gasoline . . . . .	4.8	5.1	7.9	7.5	8.7	6.1
Silk and silk products . . . . .	2.5	2.6	1.8	0.9	0.2	—
Cotton and products (raw cotton) . . . . .	7.4	4.3	5.9	4.0	4.5	2.0
Wool and products . . . . .	(3.1)	(2.3)	(2.5)	(1.8)	(2.4)	(0.9)
Other textiles . . . . .	6.0	4.3	4.0	3.4	4.0	1.1
Chemicals . . . . .	1.7	1.8	4.7	4.0	3.4	3.2
	3.1	3.1	5.7	4.8	4.7	5.4
<i>Foodstuffs</i>						
Fruits, nuts, vegetables . . . . .	—	3.8	4.4	4.1	3.6	3.9
Alcohol . . . . .	2.4	3.5	3.3	1.0	0.5	0.4
Sugar . . . . .	5.3	3.0	3.7	2.8	2.1	1.6
<i>Manufactures</i>						
Iron and steel (raw and manufactured) . . . . .	12.9	10.1 <sup>3</sup>	7.9	4.4	5.6	8.0
Machinery, non-electric . . . . .	—	7.1 <sup>3</sup>	3.6	7.8	12.8	25.7
Electrical appliances . . . . .	—	2.8 <sup>3</sup>	1.7	1.8	2.9	5.0
Cars . . . . .	3.2	5.0	3.6	5.4	6.9	7.2
Textiles (see above) . . . . .						
<i>Total</i>						
value in million \$ <sup>1</sup>	797	1,116	449	737	4,085 <sup>4</sup>	5,623 <sup>4</sup>
<i>Countries<sup>5</sup></i>						
United States . . . . .	64.0	66.8	57.4	57.7	68.8	71.3
United Kingdom . . . . .	19.0	17.2	21.4	16.2	10.3	9.3
France . . . . .	2.3	2.2	1.7	0.8	0.6	0.6
Germany . . . . .	0.9	1.5	2.1	1.3	0.8	1.7

<sup>1</sup> Par rate of exchange 1924-35 £1 = \$4.867. In 1949 the £ was devalued and has since been subject to slight fluctuations. Rate of exchange in February, 1959, £1 = \$2.73.

<sup>2</sup> Figures for coal only, 1926-28 and 1931-35.

<sup>3</sup> Merchandise only.

<sup>4</sup> Figures for 1928-30 only.

<sup>5</sup> In 1957 Venezuela supplied 4.4 per cent. of the imports and Japan 1.1 per cent.

Sydney in Cape Breton Island, where coal of excellent quality for smelting purposes and limestone for flux are both found in abundance close beside the admirable natural harbour formed by the Bras

d'Or Channel. The ore is obtained from Newfoundland. Nova Scotia furnishes a third of Canada's output of coal, and there are paper mills and other factories.

(2) **Prince Edward Island**, about the size of the county of Norfolk, is situated in the bay of the Gulf of St. Lawrence between New Brunswick and Nova Scotia. From the nearest point of New Brunswick it is distant nine miles. The capital, Charlottetown, is on a large, deep, and well-sheltered harbour. Fox-farming is a less important industry than formerly. The rich red soil is well suited to potatoes, fruits, oats, hay, and dairy farming, hence the name 'the Garden of the Gulf.'

CANADA  
SPECIAL EXPORTS f.o.b.

	Percentages of Total Value.					
	1924.	1926-30.	1931-35.	1938.	1951.	1957.
<i>Raw materials</i>						
Wood . . .	10.2	8.1	6.4	7.1	10.6	7.0
Wood pulp . . .	3.9	3.8	4.1	2.9	9.3	5.9
Furs . . .	1.6	1.7	2.2	1.5	0.8	0.6
Chemicals . . .	—	1.5	2.2	2.1	3.4	4.7
Copper ore and products . . .	1.2	1.0	3.5	5.6	2.2	3.2
Nickel ore and products . . .	1.0	1.5	3.5	5.6	3.5	5.0 <sup>1</sup>
<i>Foodstuffs</i>						
Wheat . . .	23.5	27.4	21.4	9.5	11.3	7.7
Milled wheat . . .	6.6	4.9	3.2	1.9	3.0	1.2
Whisky . . .	—	1.7	2.2	1.1	1.4	1.4
Fishery products . . .	3.1	2.8	3.7	2.8	3.0	2.5
Meats . . .	2.1	2.0	2.2	3.8	1.9	0.9
<i>Manufactures</i>						
Newsprint . . .	8.6	10.2	14.5	11.1	13.7	14.5
Cars . . .	2.4	2.7	2.1	2.7	2.1	1.0
Total value in million \$	1,069	1,256	599	943	3,914	4,934 <sup>2</sup>
<i>Countries<sup>3</sup></i>						
United States . . .	39.1	39.0	35.3	36.7	58.7	59.7
United Kingdom . . .	37.0	32.9	37.8	36.0	16.1	15.2
Germany . . .	2.3	2.8	1.3	1.9	0.9	3.1
Japan . . .	2.1	2.7	2.4	2.2	1.9	2.9
France . . .	1.0	1.2	2.2	1.0	1.2	1.2

<sup>1</sup> Also aluminium 4.6 per cent., iron ore and iron 5.9 per cent., and petroleum 2.9 per cent.

<sup>2</sup> Merchandise only. New gold production available for export in 1957 was valued at \$146m.

<sup>3</sup> The analysis of exports by countries is based on National Exports, amounting in 1957 to \$4,841m.

(3) **New Brunswick**, rather less than Scotland in size, is very rich in forests, and also possesses valuable fisheries. The capital is Fredericton, but the largest town and chief seaport is Saint John, occupying a fine harbour on the Bay of Fundy, at the mouth of the river of the same name. The harbour is open all the year round, is safe, easy of access, and capable of accommodating vessels of

thirty feet draught, and since the port has been connected with Montreal by the 'Short Line,' a great trade in livestock, dairy produce, and bulk-handled grain has been developed. The province is fairly rich in minerals, but there has been but little development. Of the minerals known to occur only coal, gypsum, natural gas, and petroleum are actively mined. Coal production is associated largely with electrical power development. Gypsum is produced from Hillsboro' quarries.

(4) **Quebec**, on both sides of the St. Lawrence, mostly east of the Ottawa, is a province approximately six times the size of Great Britain, but with the limited inhabited area above indicated. In the settled south the winter is long, snow generally covering the ground (sometimes to a depth of more than three feet) from December to April; but the summer is warm enough to grow not merely the ordinary crops of the British Isles but also maize and tobacco. About four-fifths of the inhabitants of the province are of French origin and still speak French. Of late years they have spread into the so-called Eastern Townships, on the south bank of the St. Lawrence, where the bulk of the settlers were originally English. Numbers have also emigrated to the New England states, where they work in textile factories or carry on farming. Canada's asbestos comes from great quarries at Thetford and Black Lake in Eastern Townships. Copper ores are mined now in the scenic Gaspé peninsula but the spectacular development is that of iron ore on the Quebec-Labrador border.

The capital of the province is Quebec, situated at the confluence of the Charles river with the St. Lawrence, and now the lowest point at which the river is bridged. Once the head of navigation for large vessels, it has had its growth checked by the deepening of the river above the city, and by other causes; for though trans-Atlantic passengers sometimes prefer to land or start here, goods show their usual tendency in favour of water carriage without transshipment as far into the heart of a country as possible. This circumstance has accordingly favoured the rise of Montreal, now the chief seat of commerce in Canada. The relative growth is shown in the accompanying table:

	1861.	1881.	1901.	1911.	1921.	1931.	1951.
Quebec	60,000	62,500	69,000	78,000	95,000	131,000	164,000
Montreal	90,000	141,000	270,000	470,000	619,000	819,000	1,002,700

Montreal stands on an island in the St. Lawrence, at the confluence of the Ottawa, 180 miles (by river) above Quebec. All the improvements in the communications below the port tend to increase its shipping and population. In 1906 the ship-channel up to this point had a depth of  $27\frac{1}{2}$  feet, but this was increased to 30 feet in 1912 and further deepening followed. The trade of Montreal was greatly stimulated by the freeing of the Canadian canals from tolls in 1903. In that year nearly 20 per cent. of the shipments of

grain from Chicago and Duluth passed through Canadian territory. It is now after Vancouver, its western rival, the greatest grain port in Canada. The water-power resources of the province are enormous and have been developed especially on the St. Maurice, Saguenay, Lievre, Ottawa, and St. Lawrence Rivers. Many important storage dams have been built. The La Loutre on the St. Maurice was at the time of its construction one of the largest artificial reservoirs in the world, with a capacity of 160,000m. cubic feet, and a water area of 300 square miles. The storage permits a permanent flow of 12,000 cubic feet per second at Shawinigan over the famous falls; in round figures, 2m. permanent h.p. are now available on this river. The Gouin dam on the river is one of the country's largest. As a result of this hydro-electric power development power lines link all important centres on the St. Lawrence lowlands, and Quebec has become the second manufacturing province (after Ontario). A great copper smelting town has grown up at Noranda. Three Rivers, at the mouth of the St. Maurice, has become a considerable town and port. The St. François dam on the river of the same name materially assisted the numerous pulp and other mills along its course; Shipshaw is even more important.

(5) **Ontario**, about four and a half times the size of Great Britain, is the province to the west of Quebec, extending along the north of the Great Lakes. The populous region, which is the most southerly part of the whole of the country, has a much shorter winter than that of Quebec. In the south, wine is produced from native grapes, and a strip running eastwards from Hamilton and bordering Lake Erie is known as 'the garden of Canada,' from its being so peculiarly adapted to the cultivation of table grapes, peaches, and other soft fruits. Despite the rapid development of the other areas Ontario still produces more than half of all fruit grown in Canada, and the province about one-half of the milk, cheese, butter, and casein of Canada. Forests cover huge areas of the north. Ottawa, the seat of the Dominion government, stands on the river of the same name, about ninety miles above its confluence with the St. Lawrence. It is a centre of the lumber, pulp, and paper industries of the province, and has some of the largest paper-mills in Canada. The capital of the province is Toronto, near the western end of Lake Ontario, on which it has a fine harbour, and is so situated as to form the centre at which the railways running from the east, parallel to Lake Ontario, begin to diverge in different directions through what has been called the Lake peninsula. The town has become a great seat of manufactures and has grown almost as rapidly as Montreal from under 100,000 in 1881 to 671,000 in 1951. Steel-works and other manufacturing industries are carried on at Hamilton at the western end of Lake Ontario; at Sault Ste. Marie are paper-mills and steel-works utilising power from the rapids. Hydro-electric power has been developed especially on the Nipigon and Ottawa



River and above all at Niagara. Hydro-electric stations on or near the Niagara River utilise the difference of level between Lakes Erie and Ontario (about 330 feet) for power development and the great works at Queenstown have turbines subjected to a head of 305 feet—130 more than the maximum near the falls. Sudbury, Timmins, and Kirkland Lake are large centres of mining and metallurgy. Fort William and Port Arthur on Lake Superior are great centres for the shipment of western grain. Midland, Collingwood, Goderich, and Port Colborne are now also important wheat-reception ports where the wheat of the west is received and then railed, in the form of wheat or flour, largely to Montreal. Cobalt, near Lake Temiscaming, in northern Ontario, was formerly famous for cobalt and silver. Windsor, like Detroit in the United States, is devoted to the manufacture of motor-cars, and other manufacturing centres include Ottawa and London. Oshawa and Midland have shared some of the expansion of Toronto.

(6) **Manitoba**, the rich, flat, farming province in the west, is nearly three times the size of Great Britain. The capital is Winnipeg, situated at the confluence of the Red River and the Assiniboine, which comes from the west. This city is now also the place of convergence of numerous railways, and has grown rapidly as the trade centre for the wheat fields of the Prairies. Its population in 1881 was 8,000; in 1891, 26,000; in 1911, 136,000; in 1921, 180,000; in 1931, 219,000, and in 1951, 234,000. In 1881 the area under wheat in Manitoba was 51,000 acres; in 1902, 2,040,000; in 1903, 2,443,000; in 1908, 2,851,000; in 1918, 2,984,000; in later years 3m. acres was exceeded. But some of the wheat lands are now being converted to more intensive forms of agriculture, including dairying. Of the 25m. acres in Manitoba classed as suitable for arable farming about one-third is so used. The northern two-thirds of the Province lies on the Canadian Shield and has gold-zinc mines at Flin Flon and nickel at Lynn Lake. There has been much development of hydro-electric power. Manitoba has now its own ocean port in Churchill, linked by rail with the wheat lands.

(7) **Saskatchewan** was created a province only in 1905. It is still mainly a wheat-growing province, especially in the southern half; the northern half is a forest and mining region. In 1905, the area under wheat was 1,130,000 acres; in 1915, 8,929,000; in 1919, 10,587,000; in 1929, 14,445,000 (spring wheat only, winter wheat trifling). Now the total area under cultivation is 20m. acres—three-quarters under wheat. The manufactures, although still relatively unimportant, increased fifteen times in value between 1905 and 1926. Flax-growing has been encouraged, both for seed and fibre. The most important centres are the capital, Regina, Saskatoon, Moose Jaw, and Prince Albert. Important oil-fields are now being developed; the south has vast lignite fields, the north has pitchblende in the Lake Athabasca region.

(8) **Alberta**, which lies mainly on the higher levels of the great plains but extends westwards so as to include a most beautiful part of the Rockies, was also made a province in 1905. It originally owed its settlement to the advantages of cattle ranching offered by the natural pastures to the east of the Rocky Mountains, but has attracted agricultural settlers who grow oats as well as wheat, at first largely winter wheat. In 1905, the area under wheat was 107,000 acres (of which 32,000 winter wheat); in 1915, 2,138,000 wheat (40,000 acres winter); in 1919 the total wheat, 4,283,000 (41,000 winter); in 1929, 7,551,000 (128,000 winter). The latter figure is being maintained. No doubt the region benefits from the chinooks. In the south sugar-beet is grown under irrigation. The capital is Edmonton, on the Saskatchewan river, and at a point to which railways are giving increased importance. It had less than 5,000 people in 1901; in 1951, 159,000. As the oil-boom town its present growth is very rapid. The province is rich in coal, which is mined near Edmonton, at Anthracite, Mountain Park, Drumheller, Canmore, Lethbridge, and elsewhere. Natural gas is abundant and is used extensively, but oil is now the dominant interest. Calgary is now an industrial centre. Canada has paid much attention to the tourist industry and has established vast national parks. In the mountains of this province are the world-famous Jasper and Banff National Parks—the latter with the universally known resorts of Banff and Lake Louise.

(9) **British Columbia** is a province four times the size of Great Britain, comprising on the mainland the area from 350 to 400 miles in width between the coast and the Rocky Mountains, composed of high tablelands and lofty mountain ranges separated by deep and narrow valleys, but also including Vancouver Island and the coastal archipelago to the north as far as the Queen Charlotte Islands inclusive. Its wealth consists chiefly in minerals, forests, and fisheries. British Columbia produces about 10 per cent. of the mineral output of all Canada, a third of the forest output, and nearly a third of the fishery output. The discovery of gold first brought a rush of settlers here in 1856, but the deposits then discovered were worked out. Since 1895, however, gold, silver, copper, lead, and zinc mining have all been carried on. Lead, silver, and zinc are now mined in East and West Kootenay; copper near Howe Sound (Britannia mine) and near Princeton; auriferous copper ores are worked in the Rossland and Boundary district near the southern border of British Columbia; gold is however no longer worked in any of the once famous old localities. Coal is mined and converted into coke at Fernie in the Crow's Nest coalfield for use in the smelters, refineries, and fertiliser plants at Trail. Copper is also found on Texada Island, where there exist also deposits of iron ore. The oldest and most important coal-mines of the province are those of Nanaimo on the east side of Vancouver Island, and Cumberland, further north. Coal is also mined in the Nicola Valley

and in the country traversed by the Tulameen and Similkameen rivers. The province has vast water power resources. Special interest attaches to the Kitimat scheme, not only because it is creating an aluminium smelting town in what was formerly almost uninhabited forest country but also because the water is brought through a tunnel in the coast mountains. British Columbia is steadily advancing to the front as an agricultural province with the aid of irrigation. The rich valleys and lowlands in the interior offer favourable conditions for fruit-growing and dairying. Of these the Okanagan valley contains the largest area of fruit lands in the province. Apples of excellent quality are exported in large quantities to the English and other markets, and peaches, plums, apricots, and vines are successfully grown. The forests of the Coast Mountains, composed of gigantic Douglas fir, cedar, and other trees, are among the grandest in the world. The capital of the province is Victoria, on a beautiful harbour at the south-east end of Vancouver Island. It has a considerable *entrepôt* trade. Any vessel passing through the Straits of Juan de Fuca on its way either to Vancouver or Seattle must pass Victoria and the majority call. Esquimalt, on an excellent harbour adjacent to that of Victoria, has an arsenal and graving dock. Vancouver, whose harbour, formed by Burrard Inlet, can accommodate the largest liners alongside the wharves, and New Westminster, near the mouth of the Fraser river, are the western termini of the two great trans-continental railways. The quickest sea-land route from London and New York to the Far East is *via* Vancouver. New Westminster, a lumber port, suffers from the sand bar which persists in forming across the mouth of the Fraser River, giving only a few feet of water at low tide. Since the opening of the Panama Canal Vancouver has become a centre for shipment of lumber and metals as well as prairie wheat for Europe and the east of America, later also to eastern Asia (the Orient) as the following table shows:

WHEAT EXPORT FROM VANCOUVER IN MILLIONS OF BUSHELS

	1920-21.	1921-22.	1922-23.	1927-28.	1952.
Europe . . .	0.5	4.06	14.86	} 79.0	117.36
South America . . .	—	—	0.33		
Orient . . .	—	3.44	3.83		

Vancouver in 1891 had a population of only 14,000. By 1911 this had increased to 100,000, and now the population of 'Greater Vancouver' is over 531,000 (1951). Its mild climate, huge natural harbour and latterly the receipt of oil and gas by pipe-line have encouraged many industries in the fastest-growing city in Canada. Prince Rupert, the port on Kai-En Island, is a terminus of the Canadian National Railway (formerly Grand Trunk Pacific). A large dry dock was opened here in 1921. It is about 3,860 nautical miles from Yokohama, 500 miles nearer than any other Pacific port. Recent developments include the new process of fish freezing.

(10) **Newfoundland.** Newfoundland was formerly a separate British Dominion, to which belonged not only the island of that name but also the dreary coast and a considerable inland tract of Labrador. Owing to financial difficulties the government of the United Kingdom assumed responsibility for the government and finances of Newfoundland in 1933. Later, in 1949, the country joined Canada as the tenth province. The present population (under 450,000) is chiefly settled on the coast and includes many fishermen. The island has very extensive forest resources. The mill at Corner Brook is the largest integrated newsprint and pulp mill in the world and there is another very large mill at Grand Falls. There are unworked coal-fields, situated in the south-west, being a continuation of those in Cape Breton Island. A railway has been made from St. John's, the capital of the island, on the east coast, through country adapted for agricultural settlements as well as through the coal-fields, to the west coast. Iron ore of excellent quality is now mined with remarkable ease on the small island known as Bell Island in Conception Bay, within eighteen miles of St. John's. These Wabana deposits, as they are called, contain on the average about 54 per cent. metallic iron, and are comparatively free from deleterious ingredients. They pass from the island under the sea, and the amount of ore on the island has been estimated to exceed 3,000m. tons. Other minerals worked include lead, zinc, copper and fluorspar.

**Northern Canada.** The remainder of Canada is divided into the Northwest Territories—three separate districts of Franklin (the northern islands), Keewatin, and Mackenzie—and the Territory of Yukon. They all yield fur, and the Yukon territory is rich in gold and silver. It is here that the Klondike gold-field, on which Dawson City now stands, was discovered in 1896. Access to the region is facilitated by a mountain railway from Skagway, over the White Pass, to a navigable river of the Yukon basin. The gold occurs both in alluvial deposits and in quartz, but the most easily worked deposits are exhausted, and the production has fluctuated greatly. It increased in value from £60,000 in 1896 to £4½m. in 1900, at the time of the rush; declined to £136,000 in 1930, but reached £850,000 in 1953. The population fell from 27,000 in 1901 to 4,000 in 1931, but was over 9,000 in 1951; Dawson City had dropped to 783, but Whitehorse (now the capital) numbered 2,600. Oilfields were discovered in the Mackenzie river district in 1921. There are some who are convinced of the value of Canada's 'Arctic Prairies' and herds of reindeer were driven into this area from Alaska in the years 1932-36.

The great north is developing in other ways. There are silver-lead mines at Mayo, radium, uranium and silver deposits near Great Bear Lake, and gold-fields at Yellowknife. The ubiquitous aeroplane and caterpillar tractor now link all developed centres in this northern region.

During the Second World War United States Army engineers constructed the Alcan or Alaskan Highway from the Peace River area (and so from Edmonton) to Alaska through the mountainous heart of the northern forests and across southern Yukon.

#### TOWNS OF CANADA, 1951

Montreal . . . . .	1,003,000	Edmonton . . . . .	159,000
Toronto . . . . .	671,000	Calgary . . . . .	127,000
Vancouver . . . . .	531,000	Windsor . . . . .	121,000
Winnipeg . . . . .	234,000	Victoria . . . . .	104,000
Ottawa . . . . .	202,000	London . . . . .	93,000
Hamilton . . . . .	192,000	Halifax . . . . .	86,000
Quebec . . . . .	164,000	Regina . . . . .	71,000

**ST. PIERRE AND MIQUELON.** A group of rocky French islands off the south coast of Newfoundland; total area 93 square miles. The population (5,000) is dependent mainly on the cod-fishery, with fox-farming as a secondary industry.

#### BERMUDA

The Bermudas are a group of small islands about 750 miles to the south of Nova Scotia lying in the path of the Gulf Stream and hence producing tropical and temperate fruits and vegetables, and frequented by invalids for the sake of their equable climate. Indeed, a great development of the Bermudas as health and pleasure resorts has taken place in recent years. They lie within two days of the United States coast (677 miles from New York) or a few hours by air. Their strategic position is obvious, hence the lease of land to the United States for naval and air bases in addition to those of Britain. The area is about 21 square miles.

#### UNITED STATES<sup>1</sup>

The compact territory of the United States, between Canada and Mexico, extends over an area of about 3m. square miles, or more than thirty-three times the area of Great Britain. Physically this territory is a continuation of that of Canada. In the west the mountains of British Columbia are prolonged into Washington, Idaho, and Montana. In the middle the plains and prairies are similar in the two countries, and the south-eastern highlands of Canada form the northern extremities of the Appalachians. Almost the entire population of the United States is of non-American origin, being composed either of immigrants or descendants of immigrants from Europe, or of descendants of African negroes originally introduced as slaves on the southern plantations. It is in a large measure due to this cause, and to the fact that the development of the population has from the first depended in a great measure on commerce with Europe, that the density of population is still greatest in the east,

<sup>1</sup> We are greatly indebted to Dr. G. M. Wrigley for comments on this section.

and above all in the vicinity of the great seaports from Massachusetts Bay to Chesapeake Bay. There is, however, a steady movement of the centre of gravity of the population towards the west and the movement was one degree of longitude or more for each decennial census from 1810 to 1901. It is now as far west as Indiana.

Until recently there was no other region in the world with so vast a field for immigration under the existing economic conditions, and hence no other state has had its population steadily reinforced by so abundant a stream of foreign settlers. In the ten years 1877-86 the total number of immigrants was upwards of 4.2m. and in one year (1882) the number approached 800,000. In two years the number of immigrants from Europe exceeded 600,000. Till near the end of the eighteenth century the United Kingdom furnished the largest contingent of immigrants from the earliest date from which statistics are obtainable, but from about the middle of the nineteenth century the German total approached and occasionally exceeded the British. In later years a change took place in the character of the immigration. In the ten years ending June 30, 1890, the United Kingdom and Germany together furnished rather more than 55 per cent. of the immigrants; in the ten ending June 30, 1910, less than 14 per cent.; the contingents supplied by Austria-Hungary, Italy, and Russia (including Poland) in the latter period were equal to 24½, 23, and 18 per cent. of the total respectively. In the four decades ending with June 30, 1880, 1890, 1900, and 1910, the total number of immigrants in millions was 2.8, 5.2, 3.8, and 8.8. In the last five years before the First World War, that is, the five ending with June 30, 1914, the number of immigrants was 5.2m., in the next five, 1.2. Immigration of any nationality was restricted for 15 months beginning April 21, 1921, to 3 per cent. of the population of that nationality in the country at the census of 1910. Under the quota thus initiated the last inter-war year of large immigration was 1923-24 (241,709). During the great depression with consequent unemployment which followed, immigration fell greatly—to a minimum of 23,068 in 1932-33, a figure far exceeded by the emigrants. After the Second World War there was a large influx of 'displaced persons' from Europe. The position is illustrated by 1949-50 when 249,187 alien immigrants were admitted against 27,598 leaving. Of the arrivals 58 per cent. were German and Austrian, 7.5 British and Irish, 5 Italian. Between 1820 and 1950 a total number of 39,325,500 alien immigrants entered the United States. A large number of the non-European immigrants are from Canada, and hence in the first instance likewise of European origin. Chinese immigration was at one time considerable (380,000 were admitted between 1820 and 1934), but is now practically prohibited. The same was true of the Japanese of whom 277,000 were admitted but many were repatriated. The negro popula-

tion, though not recruited by immigration, is multiplying rapidly by natural increase (excess of births over deaths), but the small native Indian population is dwindling away or becoming absorbed. In 1900 the negro population of the United States (almost confined to the south-east) was 8,841,000, as against 7,489,000 in 1890; in 1910, 9,828,000, both showing a lower rate of increase than the general average of the population. In 1920 the figure was 10,463,000, the rate of increase 1910-20 being 6.5 per cent. The natural increase of the white population (excluding immigrants) was 11.6 per cent. for the same decade. In 1930 the total was 11,891,000 against 108,864,000 whites and 2,020,000 other races (mainly Mexicans and Indians). In 1940 the total population of the continental United States reached 131,669,275 and in 1950 150,697,000 (135,215,000 whites and 14,894,000 negro). The 1940-50 intercensal increase of 19,027,725 was the largest ever recorded and included 1,035,039 immigrants. Rapid growth by natural increase and immigration continues: the total population exceeded 175,000,000 in 1958. The influx of Puerto Ricans, who are U.S. citizens and can move freely, has caused difficulties, especially in New York.

In relation to the commerce of this vast region, it is highly noteworthy that there are special circumstances both in the history of the country and in the physical features of its territory, that have favoured the unity of its government. In consequence of this unity there is free trade here, as in Canada, from ocean to ocean; and though the individual states have each legislative powers within certain limits, there could be no more striking illustration of the importance to commerce of the central government than the passing, in February 1887, of the Interstate Commerce Act, which may be briefly described as an Act prohibiting local and individual preferences on the greater highways of commerce throughout the length and breadth of a territory four-fifths the size of Europe.

If we look at this unity of government from an historical point of view, there are several important considerations to bear in mind. The separate 'plantations' or colonies that ultimately formed the first United States grew up independently from several convenient starting-places, like the Australian colonies and the republics of South America. They grew up under English influence indeed, and with a common language, but this would not in itself have sufficed to make them one, and it was perhaps fortunate that when they had become strong enough, they were united in a common war against the mother country; fortunate, too, that, when that war was over, the common burdens which it entailed necessitated a common government, and that the great state thus formed held such a preponderance in the middle of the continent that it easily acquired in course of time all the present territory by settlement, purchase, or conquest. And it was likewise fortunate that, when the practice of

slavery in the southern states threatened a permanent division, the North should have been strong enough, in virtue of its more rapid development by immigration, to conquer the South by mere force of wealth and numbers (1861-65). In the course of this war the slaves of the seceding states were declared free by proclamation of the President of the Republic, and immediately after the conclusion of the war an amendment to the constitution of the United States abolishing slavery throughout their territory was adopted.

Physically the circumstance most favourable to union is the fact that the central region is one great plain communicating freely with other plains and lowlands in the east, and in the west sloping imperceptibly up to the tableland which forms the base of the Rocky Mountains, and that this great central plain is traversed by some of the grandest navigable rivers in the world. Though this factor became of minor significance after the development of the railways, it was of the greatest significance earlier. The eastern and larger portion of this central region, from about 100° or 101° W., has a fertile soil and adequate rainfall, so that everything has combined to favour continuous and progressive settlement. As settlement went on nearly every part of it has had the great advantage of easy communication with other neighbouring settled districts.

The Mississippi, the great waterway running north and south through this region, is continuously navigable for steamers of considerable size to Minneapolis at the lower end of the rapids below the Falls of St. Anthony, on the parallel of 45°, that is, to within four degrees of the northern frontier. The portion of the river from this point to St. Louis is spoken of as the Upper Mississippi. The river traverses a region in which the products of temperate and sub-tropical climates are brought closer together than in any other part of the world, and, before the introduction of railways, formed the principal channel of communication between districts with the diverse wants due to diversity of production. To-day there is little traffic and it is difficult to believe that in the year 1887 more freight was carried on the Upper Mississippi in eight months than any of the three great trunk lines of railroad carried in a year, and at about one-third the rate. The navigation of the lower river was naturally even more important, especially below Cairo at the confluence of its great left bank tributary the Ohio, which is navigable for steamers drawing up to 9 feet at all times in the year, as high as Pittsburgh (in about the same latitude as New York), where the river is formed by the union of two other navigable streams. There is only one interruption in the form of rapids, avoided by a short canal at Louisville, and for small steamers these rapids are not insurmountable. To St. Louis, about 1,270 miles above New Orleans (though only 600 miles direct), vessels drawing 16 feet can ascend during the high stage of the river, which usually



begins in May or June and lasts for about three months, but the bulk of the business was done in boats of 8 feet draught or less. Besides the disadvantage of a very winding course the river suffers from unstable banks. Even in the quietest state of the river landslips are constantly occurring, and the population on its immediate banks is relatively small. On the other hand, traffic was promoted by heavy cargoes collected on the banks of the river and its feeders—Pittsburgh coal, as already indicated, and elsewhere timber, for which St. Louis and Cairo were great storage places. In illustration of the importance of this navigation it may be mentioned that a 'tow-boat' (or stern-wheel steamer used for propelling cargo boats) has been known to proceed down the stream from Louisville, pushing before it thirty-seven barges with a total cargo (including that of the propelling steamer) equal to nearly 26,000 tons, and by this system coal used to be carried from Pittsburgh to New Orleans, a distance of 2,000 miles, at the cost of about 60 cents, say 2s. 6d., per ton, equal to .015d. per ton per mile. The river traffic dwindled in face of railway competition, but later the Federal government resolved to promote the revival of river traffic as a relief to the then congested railways. In 1918 it voted 8m. dollars for the improvement of the Lower and 3.6m. for that of the Upper river. Unfortunately the bulk of the internal commerce now moves from east to west, whereas the river flows from north to south.

The Cumberland and the Tennessee, on the left of the Ohio, and the Wabash on the right, have likewise considerable stretches of navigable water. The Red River, the Arkansas, and the Missouri, the great right-bank tributaries of the Mississippi, are also all navigable for hundreds of miles, the Missouri for more than two thousand miles, steamers being able to ascend it uninterruptedly to the Great Falls, about 100 miles below the gorge known as the Gate of the Rocky Mountains. With the advent of railways traffic declined and there has, actually, been no commercial traffic on the Upper Missouri since the nineties of last century. In the same great plain, but outside of the basin of the Mississippi, the Red River of the North, which flows northwards into Canada, is navigable for steamers to Fargo, a point about 200 miles in a direct line from the limit of continuous navigation on the Mississippi.

The Appalachian Mountains in the east, and the Rocky Mountains and other chains in the west, form an interruption to communication in this, among other ways, that they cause the rivers which cross them to have their navigation interrupted by rapids. It is partly on this account, partly on account of their smaller size, that the rivers of the Atlantic coast are of less importance than those of the great plain as navigable streams; but it must be remembered that some of them (the Hudson, Delaware, Susquehanna, Potomac, and James river) are of great value to commerce as forming, like

the rivers of the British Isles, fine harbours in their estuaries; and the inland navigation of the Hudson, a broad, deep river, navigable for large steamers to the latitude of the Catskill Mountains, for smaller ones to the falls at Troy, is of great importance, and was the first cause of the growth of the greatest of all American seaports (New York).

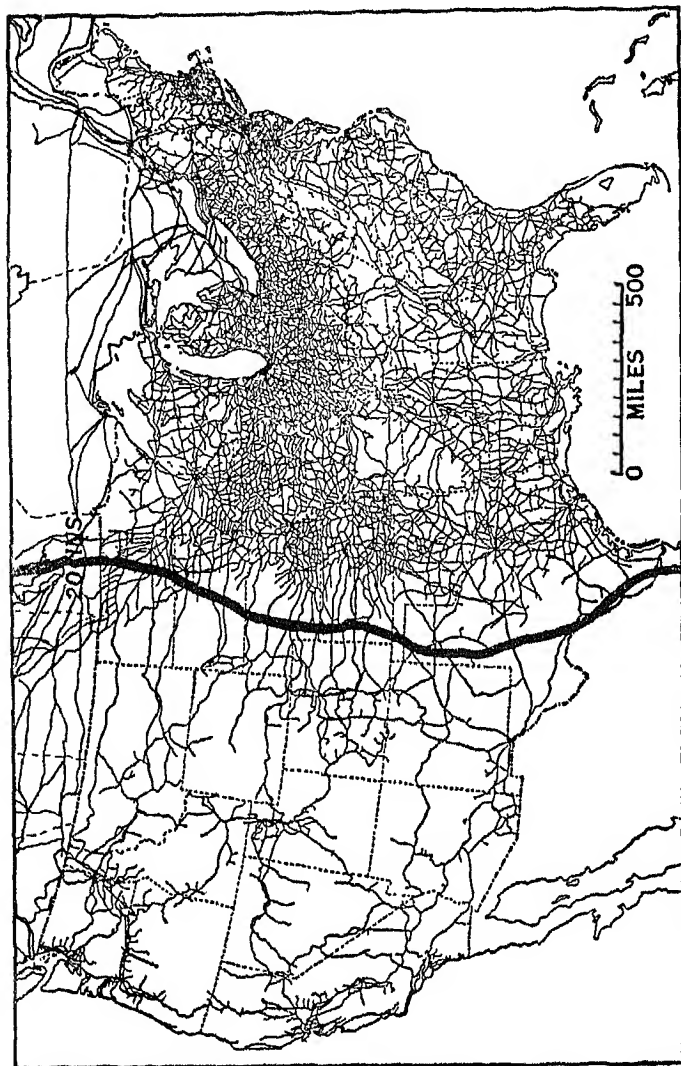
The Columbia river, the principal navigable stream belonging to the Pacific drainage of the United States, has its navigation frequently interrupted by falls and rapids, and so too has its chief United States tributary, the Snake River. On the main stream, the lowest interruption of this nature is the Cascades, 165 miles from the mouth, but costly works allow of navigation being continued past this obstruction.

The obstacles presented to the laying of railways by the great mountain chains in the east and west are less perhaps than might have been expected from the extent and height of the mountains. The gradual slope of the ground up to the base of the Rocky Mountains facilitated the laying of railways to the foot of the passes, and several routes were found by which railways could be advantageously laid across these and other western mountains (cf. p. 735).

In the case of the Appalachian Mountains (that name being now used as a general term for all the mountain ranges in the east), it is an important physical feature of the United States that in the north-east—precisely where population is densest, coal and anthracite most abundant, the connections between east and west most important—that system breaks up into a great number of smaller mountain ranges with many gaps between them, facilitating railway and canal construction. In the southern part of the Appalachian system, that to which the name of Alleghany Mountains is sometimes confined, the ranges are higher and more continuous, and there is still a stretch of nearly 300 miles with only one railway across it, and immediately to the west of that stretch there lies one of the most sparsely peopled districts of the eastern states.

Today, a change is taking place in the railway network depicted overleaf. Many branch lines are being closed down and the rails taken up. Other lines now have no passenger services, being used for freight only. In large measure this is due to road competition, reinforced by airline competition for both passengers and goods, and also pipeline competition. Even as long ago as 1939 out of all the freight moved in the United States, measured in ton-miles, the railways were only handling 50 per cent. compared with coastwise shipping 25 per cent., Great Lakes shipping 10 per cent., pipelines 7 per cent., highways 6 per cent., and inland waterways 2 per cent. In recent years the railways have lost further ground and new developments are in progress, such as the movement of powdered coal suspended in water by pipeline, and the use of long conveyor belts. Air transport has gained enormously.

To the northern Appalachian system belong several of the most serviceable canals of the United States, among others the Erie and Champlain Canals. The Erie Canal, laid through the Mohawk



RAILWAYS OF THE UNITED STATES AND CANADA. NOTICE THE NETWORK IN THE WETTER EAST

valley, serves to connect the navigation of the Great Lakes with New York, starting from Buffalo at the eastern end of Lake Erie, and proceeding eastwards to Troy and Albany on the Hudson. It was opened in 1825, and the fact that New York then first came to exceed Philadelphia in population, will serve to give an idea

of its importance at that date. Its largest dimensions on the old route admitted of barges of at most 250 tons. The new Erie Canal, 12 feet deep, passing through Oneida Lake, adapted to barges of 1,000 tons, was opened in 1918. Its western termination on Niagara river is at Tonawanda, from which point connection is established with Buffalo, partly by the river, partly by the Black Rock Canal, which has a depth of 22–23 feet, opened in 1914. The Champlain Canal connects the eastern end of the Erie Canal (now called the New York State Barge Canal) with the head of Lake Champlain, and thus completes the waterway between New York and the St. Lawrence. The Cape Cod Canal, opened in 1914, cutting across the hook-shaped peninsula in the east of Massachusetts, reduces the distance between Boston and New York from 334 to 272 miles, and enables vessels to escape the risks of the voyage round the Cape where wrecks used to average 35 a year. Its depth at mean low water is 25 feet.

After the construction of the Erie Canal the fertile lowlands of the Mississippi basin had the advantage of two great waterways in communication with the ocean, and more or less competing with one another and affecting the competition of railways running in different directions. Although the grain traffic by the old Erie Canal declined very rapidly,<sup>1</sup> this did not prevent it from having a great influence on the cost of carriage.

The physical features that favoured the construction of the two waterways from New York are still of great importance for the railway connections of that port. The Hudson and Mohawk valleys allow of railway connections with easy gradients between New York and Chicago (the 'sea-level' route of the New York Central Lines), and at one time this was the only route for the great expresses between these two cities, even although in following this route one has to run for 140 miles north before turning westwards. This route still competes easily with the more direct but more difficult route through the Alleghany Mountains. It is these physical features which no doubt have enabled New York to beat Boston in competing for the bulk of the traffic with the important hinterland of which Chicago is the centre. Boston is cut off from that hinterland by the Hoosac Mountains in the west of Massachusetts, through which there was no railway tunnel till 1875. Even now that route appears to be a difficult one, for a large part of the traffic

<sup>1</sup> In 1886 the cost of carriage of a bushel of wheat from Chicago to New York was 16·5 cents by an all-rail route, 12 cents by lake and rail, and only 8·71 cents by lake and canal. In that year upwards of 45 millions of bushels of grain and flour were carried through the Erie Canal. In 1900, the corresponding rates were 9·98, 5·05 and 4·42 cents, but the total movement of wheat on all the New York State Canals (of which the Erie Canal is one) declined from 37·6 millions of bushels in 1862 to 4·6 millions in 1900.

of Boston with the west passes through New York. While the Hudson and Mohawk valleys afford an easy route between New York and the west, the Hudson, Lake Champlain, and Richelieu valleys afford an equally easy route running almost in a straight line due north between the Adirondacks and the Green Mountains to Montreal.

With regard to **climate**, we have in the United States, as in Canada, to note differences as well as resemblances in comparing different parts of the country with corresponding parts of Asia and Europe. The continuous territory of the continental United States, that is, the territory belonging to it on the mainland of North America exclusive of Alaska, may be divided into four climatic regions with characteristic products, two east and two west of the meridian of 100° W., though the boundaries must be recognised as more or less arbitrary.

The main agricultural products of the United States are mentioned under the four sections into which this vast country is divided below, but two general observations may here be introduced. Professor Russell Smith has pointed out long ago that both in the north and south of the United States, crops like maize, cotton, and tobacco are widely grown, which, unlike the prevailing European cereals, do not cover the surface, and thus leave much soil between the plants liable to be washed away. The problem of soil erosion and of the disastrous floods which result from the rapid run off from the eroded surfaces has become a matter of the most serious import in the last few decades, so that the Federal government set up a special service to deal with soil conservation. The development of agriculture in the United States during the twentieth century is in marked contrast to that in the nineteenth. In the nineteenth century we saw an expansion, a movement westwards, especially after the Civil War of 1861-65. In the twentieth century the progress has been along three lines: (1) reclamation by drainage, irrigation, and other means; (2) the more active and constant use of good land already worked; but the elimination of farms established in unfavourable positions on 'sub-marginal' land, *i.e.* beyond the pioneer 'fringe'; and (3) more intensive cultivation and organisation. In the nineteen-twenties the late O. E. Baker distinguished a number of agricultural regions, now partly outdated, which may, however, be grouped roughly together in Chisholm's old four main divisions.

**A. The North-east.** This region lies north of the Ohio and Delaware Bay, and comprises, among others, the New England States. It corresponds with the same latitudes of eastern Asia chiefly as regards extremes of temperature, for it has not the typically dry winters of the corresponding parts of Asia. In this region the inhabitants are almost all of European origin, and the products

are similar to those of Europe. The eastern portion of it is the most densely peopled part of the United States, and that in which manufacturing industries have long been most highly developed. The western half of it is the great maize- and wheat-growing portion of the country; the north-west including the Red River valley. According to Baker's scheme, it includes a north-eastern hay and dairying region and then the great corn belt, with a belt of intensive vegetable or 'truck' farming along the Atlantic coast.

**B. The South-east** is a region in which cotton, maize or corn, and tobacco are grown as staples. The climate, though not generally good for wheat, is well adapted for maize and warm temperate or even sub-tropical plants, including the ground-nut, or, as it is more commonly called in America, the pea-nut, the American representative of the walnut known as the pecan nut,<sup>1</sup> and, in the far south, in spite of occasional disaster, even the orange. Negroes in this region form a large proportion of the population in the states on both sides of the Lower Mississippi, even outnumbering the people of European descent. Here the correspondence with the same latitudes in the east of Asia as regards rainfall is closer. There is for the most part a decided preponderance of summer rains, though the winters are far from rainless. The difference as regards temperature in the parts exposed to northerly winds is already noted on p. 726. The growth of arable farming in the sandy 'pine barrens' as they are called, which occupy a large portion of the coastal plain from North Carolina to the Lower Mississippi (a process of reclamation facilitated, by the neighbouring supplies of phosphatic fertilisers), is a notable feature. This region comprises Baker's sub-tropical belt, along the shore of the Gulf of Mexico and covering Florida, then his great cotton belt which is succeeded to the north by the corn and winter wheat belt.

**C. The region between 100° and 120° W.** (mostly tableland), comprising an area of about 1·2m. square miles, may be described as the arid region of the United States, inasmuch as throughout its extent except in the neighbourhood of mountains, and near the northern frontier, the rainfall is too scanty for agriculture without irrigation. Here, therefore, we find the great majority of the numerous and large irrigation schemes of the United States. This region corresponds in the north to the southern part of Western Siberia, and in the south to the arid and almost rainless tracts of Asia forming Soviet Central Asia. The part of this region lying east of the Rocky Mountains and sloping gently eastwards is known to American geographers as 'the plains' or short-grass prairies. It is a sheep and cattle rearing region. The western part, consisting of mountains and tablelands, is rich in metallic minerals.

<sup>1</sup> The fruit of a species of hickory, genus *Carya*, which is closely akin to the walnut, genus *Juglans*.

**D. The Pacific Coast** has a climate very closely corresponding to that of the same latitudes in the west and south of Europe and northern Africa. In the north the rains are very abundant west of the mountains, and the climate compares with that of north-western Spain or France. As we pass southwards we come to a climate closely resembling that of the Mediterranean region, the summers nearly rainless, the winters mild. The difference between the coastal climate with low summer temperatures due to the prevalence of fogs, and the climate of the Great Valley of California with a lower rainfall but higher temperatures, should be carefully noted. Gold, which first attracted a large population to this part of the world, is still an important product, but the fine Californian valley, watered by the Sacramento in the north and the San Joaquin in the south, now teems with wheat, barley, grapes, and southern fruits, and excellent wheat is also grown on both sides of the Columbia River, and on the Snake River Plateau, as well as in the valley of the Willamette, between the Coast and Cascade Ranges. In southern California various fruits and even wheat and barley are grown by irrigation, the water for which is obtained mainly by means of canals, though some water is obtained from wells. The earliest recorded canal was opened in 1835; the first in the Anaheim district in 1856. Nearly all the oranges and other citrus fruits are grown above the valley floors, which are less liable to fogs and frosts than the low grounds. The fruits of California—oranges, grapefruit, lemons, apricots, prunes, raisins, and dried peaches—furnish, along with rice, vegetables, and wool, the great bulk of the eastward traffic of the middle and southern trans-continental railways. On the mountains the forest scenery is highly remarkable. Dense forests of giant conifers cover the slopes, and a great timber trade has grown up round Puget Sound (Washington), at Seattle, Tacoma, Bellingham, and other ports.

The changing **foreign trade** of the United States will be most conveniently studied in detail with reference to the tables on pages 775–6. In examining these tables two considerations must be borne in mind. In the first place, the foreign commerce of the country is greatly affected by the maintenance of a customs tariff calculated to foster native industries, in consequence of which there is an immense amount of manufacturing industry for home consumption of which these tables give no idea. Secondly, it must not be inferred that because certain agricultural products are largely imported into the United States, they could not be home-produced. The high cost of labour in the country excludes or limits the production of certain commodities, such as sugar (to some extent), tea, and raw silk, for which the climate of the United States in some part of their territory is in no way unsuited.

A study of the exports suggests the inference that the United States remained on the whole pre-eminently an agricultural country, at least till the First World War, and this is still largely true notwithstanding the immense increase in recent years in the number of those engaged in manufactures and mechanical and mining industries. A comparison of the period 1881-85, the first after the Civil War in which figures could be obtained fairly comparable with those of other countries, with the period of four years ending June 30, 1914, shows that the exports of machinery, iron and steel wares, leather and cottons increased from an aggregate of 5.6 per cent. of the total value of the exports to 21.6 per cent. of that value. By 1926-30 manufactures had increased to 54.9 per cent. of the exports. But the years of the Second World War and after forced the United States to realise that a hungry world needed the food she could easily produce by a more intensive use of land.

The area under wheat in the United States as a whole remained practically stationary for the years from 1880 to 1896, whilst the area under maize grew rapidly. The extent of land occupied by this crop in 1909-13 was more than twice as great as that under wheat, and its produce about three times as much as that of the latter. The acreage of wheat then began to expand rapidly and now is not far short of that of maize. The much smaller export of maize than of wheat is due to the fact that the bulk of the former crop is employed in the United States in feeding swine and other animals, so that the production and export of bacon, hams, lard, cattle, and beef, as well as maize, may all be regarded as representing this branch of American agriculture. The development of 'hybrid corn' in the nineteen-thirties and forties led to a spectacular increase in yield.

The timber export of the United States takes place mainly from the Pacific states of Washington and Oregon. In the other forested areas, cut now exceeds growth, and large timber is practically exhausted. Pensacola, 55 miles east by south of Mobile, is the chief place of export of famous pitch-pine from the sandy 'pine-barrens' of Florida and the neighbouring states.

Cattle are most numerous in the United States east of the meridian of 100° W., especially in the states occupying the northern part of the basin of the Mississippi. Dairy farming is carried on in New England and south of the Great Lakes, notably in Wisconsin; pig-rearing in the maize belt south and west of Chicago. It is in the western states, however, that sheep are most numerous relatively to population, the drier climate there prevailing being favourable to the rearing of that animal, but the total number of sheep is limited. Sheep, moreover, are now being reared more for meat than wool, and the merino is tending to disappear.

Among the agricultural deficiencies of the United States, which the import table betrays, attention may be drawn to two, sugar and



coffee. Until the nineteen-twenties sugar had held the first place among the imports of the United States for over a century. There is now a very large home production, especially in Louisiana, of cane-sugar, and beet-sugar in various states such as Colorado and Michigan. The ordinary fruits of the colder temperate climates flourish in the United States as well as in any part of the world, and are produced in sufficient abundance to leave a surplus for export. There was formerly a large import of Mediterranean fruits; of these a large supply is now home-grown in California and Florida and the surplus has become a very important item of export. It is indeed characteristic of development in the United States that, one by one, commodities previously imported have been replaced by home production. Where home production has not proved possible substitutes have been developed, *e.g.* artificial rubber for natural rubber, rayon for silk, and so on. On the other hand bananas are imported in large quantities from Central and South America and the West Indies. Coffee has always been a leading import since Americans are essentially coffee drinkers and not tea drinkers. A good deal of rice is grown in the swamps of Louisiana and latterly under irrigation in southern California.

The **mineral resources** of the United States are enormous. Besides coal and petroleum, the United States now produce more iron, copper, zinc, lead, and aluminium, than any other country, in addition to being second or third amongst the producers of gold and silver.

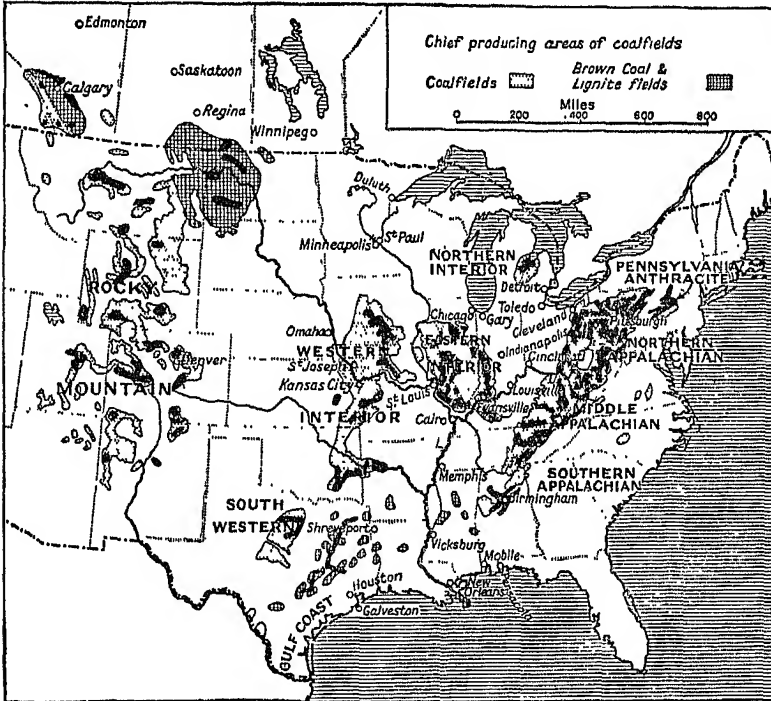
Reference is made elsewhere (see pp. 111 and 287) to the fact that the major industrial regions have grown up for the most part away from coalfields. This trend continues. Amongst the significant developments associated with the Second World War was, and since the War has been, the growth of manufacturing on the Pacific Coast. Los Angeles has grown with extreme rapidity and handles a very great variety of both heavy and light industries. Special interest attaches to the great aircraft industry of California. In the north-west Seattle has also been developing rapidly.

Another area of very marked development in varied manufacture has been in the Gulf states of the South.

Any account of American industry based on the exploitation of minerals and the use of power ignores what is probably the greatest of all industries—the tourist industry. However remote they may be, the great National and State parks of special scenic beauty and interest are visited by tens of thousands annually, and it is the private automobile, not the freight truck, which necessitates ever-increasing road development.

**Coal** is produced both in the form of anthracite and bituminous coal, as well as lignite. The total production increased with very rapid strides during the latter part of last century. The production of 1886 was more than three times that of 1870, and more than

seven times that of 1860. In the present century the output has remained relatively constant owing to increased competition of oil and water-power. The great Appalachian fields, lying in the eastern states, yield 70 per cent. of the output which, apart from the years of depression, averages 500m. tons or 30 per cent. of the world's total. The largest producing state is Pennsylvania with a quarter of the coal and most of the anthracite. Anthracite is produced in several small fields in the east of the state, the centre of the region of produc-



THE COALFIELDS OF THE UNITED STATES

tion being about 200 miles from New York and 125 miles from Philadelphia. Access is afforded to the productive region by the valley of the Delaware, with those of its tributaries, the Schuylkill and the Lehigh, and in all of these valleys there is water communication (by canal or river), as well as, of course, abundance of railways. Bituminous coal is produced chiefly in the west of Pennsylvania, the large manufacturing town of Pittsburgh being situated about the centre of production. To this region belongs most of the coal used in making coke in the United States; a leading centre of coke-making being Connellsville, about 40 miles south-south-east of Pittsburgh.

The Clearfield coal-field, situated to the north-east of the Pittsburgh area nearly due west of New York, supplies the best steam-coal in the neighbourhood of the northern Atlantic ports. The bituminous coal region of western Pennsylvania likewise extends into the adjoining states of West Virginia and Ohio, in the latter of which quantities of coal are produced in the neighbourhood of the Ohio River. The Pocahontas coal-field, on the borders of Virginia and West Virginia, furnishes the best of all American steam-coal, to a limited extent exported by way of Norfolk and Newport News. Farther west another productive coal region extends from the west of Indiana through Illinois to the east of Iowa; and Illinois ranks after Pennsylvania and West Virginia in the total amount of its production. Among the Appalachian ranges in eastern Kentucky and Tennessee and northern Alabama, are other coal-fields or actually other parts of the great Appalachian field, with considerable production, and many others are scattered over different parts of the United States territory. It will be noted that the Pittsburgh coal is conveniently placed for shipment over the Great Lakes to Canada, but not one of the United States fields is situated so conveniently for the export of coal as those of Britain. For utilisation of coal see p. 258.

The **iron ores** of the United States are likewise very abundant and very widely distributed. Many of them also are of excellent quality. But the chief supplies of ore are at a great distance from the smelting fuel. Nowhere in the country are the best steel-making ores found in proximity to smelting coal. The Lake Superior region, which in recent years has yielded five-sixths of the iron ore produced in the United States, is, however, conveniently situated to the Great Lakes, which facilitates cheap transport by water. Of the iron-ore ranges near that lake the first discovered was the Marquette Range in Michigan. It has been worked since the year 1885. The Menominee Range, a little to the south, was discovered in 1877, the Vermilion Range in Minnesota, in 1884, the Gogebic in Wisconsin in 1885, and the Mesabi in Minnesota not till 1892. This last discovery is the most important on account of the extraordinary facility with which the ores can here be worked. The deposits were originally covered merely with a skin of glacial drift. This having been removed, railway lines are laid to the ores, and these having been loosened by blasting when necessary, are then dug and loaded on the trucks by steam-shovels. There is then a short downhill haul to the lake ports of Duluth, Superior, and Two Harbors. The development of these areas, together with that of the wheat region to the north-west, led to the huge traffic through the Sault Ste. Marie canals.

Despite huge reserves the Lake Superior ores are not inexhaustible and the United States is now much interested in the development of the Canadian Ungava-Labrador deposits.

For smelting, the general rule prevails in the United States, as elsewhere, that the ore is brought to the fuel, rather than the fuel to the ore. It is for this reason that the great centre of the iron industry of the United States is Pittsburgh, which in the early stages of the industry had the advantage of local supplies of ore as well as coal; and had likewise the advantage of being situated where two navigable streams unite to form the Ohio. Some of the local supplies were long ago exhausted, and their total amount is scanty, but Pittsburgh still has the advantage of fuel in a higher degree than any other town in the United States; for not only is it within easy reach of the Connellsville coke, but it was likewise one of the early centres of the trade in petroleum. For several years also its iron, glass, and other industries dependent on fuel had the advantage of natural gas, which issues from the ground in the vicinity, and was conveyed to the city by pipes. With the increase in price this gas was mainly used for domestic purposes and now finds its greatest use in the localities where found. Pittsburgh produces about one-fourth of the pig-iron made in the United States, and carries on all branches of the iron and steel industry to a greater extent than any other city in the country. The chief supplies of ore to Pittsburgh are now brought from the Lake Superior region. Pittsburgh was an early witness of large-scale amalgamations. In 1900-01 numbers of the most important iron and steel-working companies were united in a great trust with a capital of above £230m.—the great United States Steel Corporation. There were no fewer than thirty-eight plants belonging to this trust at different points on twenty-six miles of navigable water (the Ohio, Allegheny, Monongahela, and Youghiogheny) with Pittsburgh as a centre, and there were numerous other plants belonging to it on the borders of the states of Pennsylvania, New York, and Ohio between Pittsburgh and Lake Erie. The trust also owns vast coal-fields, including the Pocahontas coal-field, extensive deposits of ore in the iron ranges in the United States round Lake Superior, railways connecting these ranges with the lake, railways connecting establishments belonging to the trust in and round Chicago, and a railway connecting Pittsburgh with the lake-ports of Conneaut (Ohio) and Erie (New York). In the making of glass the employment of natural gas was as beneficial to the quality of the product as in the making of iron, and from the same cause, the absence of sulphur. At a trial of window-glass made from coal and from gas-fuel at Pittsburgh it was found that newspaper print could be read through eighteen sheets of gas-made glass placed behind one another, whereas nothing could be seen distinctly through six sheets of similar coal-made glass.

Next to Pennsylvania in the production of pig and rolled iron, and the larger iron manufactures, comes the Erie lakeside region of Ohio and then the Chicago-Gary lakeside region of Illinois and

Indiana, which are readily accessible to supplies of the Lake Superior ores, and have coal-fields within easy reach to the south. In the south-east the iron industry of the United States has developed rapidly on the coal-field of northern Alabama, which is situated in the midst of large supplies of iron ore suitable for the manufacture especially of foundry iron. This ore lies in limestone valleys which supply abundance of flux. From the combination of these advantages, together with that of cheaper labour than in other iron-working districts of the country, this is the district in which pig and cast iron can probably be produced most cheaply, and hence has grown here with rapid strides the town of Birmingham, with similar associations to those of the Birmingham of older and wider fame. In the same state are Sheffield, Bessemer, Anniston, and other towns engaged in the same industry. Anniston has the most extensive manufacture of cast-iron pipes in the United States. It is this district that might be expected to compete mostly keenly in foreign countries with the iron-producing districts of Great Britain; but it is an important element in the comparison that its centre lies, roughly speaking, about 400 miles by rail from the seaport of New Orleans, about 260 from that of Pensacola, on the Gulf of Mexico. An extensive plant for the carrying out of all kinds of iron and steel industries was erected by the United States Steel Corporation at Duluth, one of the chief shipping points of the Mesabi ores, but it was not successful.

In New England, which in colonial days, along with other parts of the Atlantic coast, supplied pig and bar iron to the mother country, the making of pig-iron is almost extinct, but some of the cities still retain a reputation for their manufacture of iron and steel articles of high quality, such as tools and cutlery. It is in the Atlantic states that most of the imported iron ore (nearly all ore of high quality, from Spain, Algeria, and Cuba) is utilised. The principal steel-working establishments on this coast are at Sparrow Point on Chesapeake Bay, nine miles from Baltimore, and at South Bethlehem on the Lehigh river in Pennsylvania.

Notwithstanding the disadvantages of the United States for carrying on an export trade in iron and iron products (except with Canada, and to a smaller degree with other parts of America), the rapid expansion of the iron industry is easy to understand in view of the great development of the American railway system, then the extensive use of machinery of all kinds, and later the enormous use of structural steel in building skyscrapers. And the fact must not be omitted that the United States carry on a widespread export in certain finished articles containing iron, such as automobiles, agricultural implements, sewing machines, typewriters, steel bridges, machinery, locomotives, &c. In the manufacture of all these articles the iron and steel manufactures have the advantage from one cause

or another of an enormous home market, favouring production on a large scale and by the most economic methods. In shipbuilding, in which the Americans have not the same advantage, the fortunes of industry have varied. In 1900 only one steel steamship was built in the United States for the foreign trade. During the First World War American shipbuilding came to the front, but the tonnage built in 1920, 2.7m. tons, showed a great decline on the figures of 1919 (4.7m. tons), while the output of British yards increased from 1.9m. tons in 1919 to 2.1m. tons in 1920. After 1920 there was a rapid decline. In the year ending June 30, 1925, only 125,000 tons were built; in the year ending December 31, 1930, 232,000 tons. With the coming of the Second World War there was an enormous rise in shipbuilding, especially of standard type welded ships, and a considerable proportion of the building took place for strategic reasons on the west coast. Currently shipbuilding has again decreased.

The precious metals of the United States are chiefly produced among the mountains in the west; gold principally on the Californian side of the Sierra Nevada and in many of the Rocky Mountain States as well as in the Black Hills of South Dakota. The mining of gold has fluctuated but is of continuing importance. Silver is principally from the Rocky Mountains, in Utah, Colorado, Montana, and Nevada. For quicksilver see p. 276, and aluminium, p. 290.

Copper is produced largely in the peninsula of Keeweenaw, which juts north-eastwards into Lake Superior (Michigan), in the south-east of Arizona, and in Montana. In this last state the copper ore is almost entirely obtained from the small district containing the mining and smelting towns of Butte and Anaconda, where metallic copper of exceptional purity is produced by the electrolytic process, which yields at the same time considerable quantities of silver as well as gold. The chief lead-producing centre of the United States is now amongst the Ozark Mountains in Missouri. Lead is also mined in the Rocky Mountains (in Idaho, Montana, Utah, and Colorado). Among other important economic minerals of the United States may be mentioned the phosphate rock of South Carolina, Florida, and Tennessee, which forms a valuable manure. Natural gas occurs not only in the part of western Pennsylvania already referred to, but also in many other places; the areas of most abundant production being in Texas, California, Oklahoma, and Louisiana. As early as 1901 there were 21,848 miles of pipe for the supply of natural gas in the United States, and the quantity produced was estimated to be equivalent in the production of heat units to 8½m. tons of coal. The production of petroleum is considered elsewhere (pp. 266-7).

There is only one metal of importance in which the United States are almost entirely deficient, and that is tin. Hence the large import of tin and tin ores, and formerly of tin-plate; the latter being

a much-needed commodity in consequence of the large employment of 'tins' or 'cans' for American products of agriculture. The heavy import duties on tin-plate first imposed by the McKinley tariff in 1890, aided by the increasing facilities for the production of iron, succeeded in establishing a great tin-plate industry in the United States. The production of tin-plate in the country increased from next to nothing in 1891 to upwards of 399,000 tons in 1901. Meanwhile, the import of this commodity, almost entirely from the United Kingdom, sank from about 325,000 tons to less than 53,000, and on the average of the three years before the First World War was less than 33,000. This is another example of the replacement of a former import by the home-produced article. Building stones, lime, cement, and other building materials are too widely distributed to be particularised, but a few special building stones such as the oolitic limestones of southern Indiana have a nation-wide or even international reputation.

With regard to the manufacturing industries of the United States in general, it is noteworthy, in the first place, that they were to a very large extent carried on with the aid of direct water-power. Later coal became more important and still remains the chief source of power, but hydro-electric power has now become very extensively used. The total amount of water-power theoretically available in the United States has been estimated at upwards of 54m. horse power on an average throughout the year, and of which 20m. horse power have been utilised. Among the manufacturing towns which have benefited by the presence of water-power (in some cases called into existence by its presence when that power was used direct for the operation of mills) may be mentioned Lowell, Fall River, and Waltham, in Massachusetts; Nashua, in New Hampshire; Paterson, in New Jersey; Dayton and Akron, in Ohio; and Troy, in New York; the last being one of a group of manufacturing towns (including West Troy, Lansingburg, and Cohoes) which have grown up round the falls that interrupt the navigation of the Hudson. In flour-milling water-power has been used to a very large extent. The Falls of St. Anthony, on the Mississippi river, were the chief means of making Minneapolis (Minnesota) one of the largest wheat markets and probably the greatest flour-grinding centre in the world, though the industry has now grown far beyond the capacity of the falls as a source of power. Numerous flour-mills were driven by the Falls of the Genesee at Rochester (New York), by the Spokane Falls in the state of Washington, and the Falls of the Willamette above Oregon City, in Oregon. Now water-power is utilised essentially indirectly for the creation of electric energy. This power can be transmitted economically up to 300 or 350 miles from the centre of generation—hence the wide influence of the great Niagara works.

The association of water-power development with the creation and improvement of waterways has been mentioned elsewhere. Here may be mentioned an early instance of this kind on the Upper Mississippi at Keokuk, at the mouth of the Des Moines River, about midway between Chicago and Kansas City, where a dam was built across the river on a bed of smooth hard limestone. Above the dam a deep pool upwards of 40 miles in length and more than a mile wide is thus formed. For navigation a single lock available for vessels of much larger size than those formerly plying on this part of the river replaced the former canal of  $11\frac{1}{2}$  miles in length passing round the rapids above Keokuk. At the same time the dam allowed of the development of 300,000 horse power in a region embracing a population of over 300,000, within a radius of 200 miles. Much of the power is transmitted to St. Louis, 137 miles away.

The same general principles have been followed in the great modern developments. Thus the works in the Tennessee Valley under the Tennessee Valley Authority aim both at the improvement of the navigation of the Tennessee river (despite doubts as to the economic expediency of such work) and the provision of power. The great schemes such as Boulder Dam in the more arid west are primarily for irrigation, secondly for power. Reference must also be made to the greatest of all such schemes—that of the Columbia river with the Grand Coulee Dam (1941).

Reference has already been made to the fact that few great American towns have grown up on coal-fields (see p. 287). Most Americans towns have owed their origin to commercial advantages, and a very large number of them to those arising from their situation on waterways. This is applicable even to those which have developed as manufacturing towns through the utilisation of water-power, for this advantage coincides in a great many instances with a situation at the head of river navigation. In the table on pp. 770–1, which includes all the towns in the United States having at the census of 1950 a population of at least 175,000, and certain of the older though now smaller towns of New England, the column giving the chief manufacturing industry must not be understood as indicating the basis of the town's prosperity. In many of them the chief industry is the work of distribution.

Chicago (Illinois), the largest inland town, is the lake-port for the maize-growing and hog-rearing region to the south-west (the famous Corn Belt), but is still more important as lying at the corner of Lake Michigan and a terminal point for all the railways serving the wheat-growing and cattle- and sheep-rearing region of the west and a terminal point for the steamer lines of the Great Lakes. Both circumstances have combined to make the town a great centre of attraction for railway traffic in other directions. It is significant that the site of Gary (Ind.), the iron and steel manufacturing town



of the United States Steel Corporation, was selected at the extreme south of the same lake, the first point touched in coming from the east or south-east.

St. Louis (Missouri), situated a short distance below the confluence of the Missouri and the Mississippi, and till the last decade

Town.	Population in Thousands.					Chief Manufacturing Industry.
	1880	1900.	1920.	1930.	1950.	
Boston, Mass. .	360	560	750	781	791	Clothing; sugar
Lowell, Mass. .	60	95	110	100	—	Cottons
Worcester, Mass.	60	120	180	195	202	Iron wares; boots and
Fall River, Mass.	50	125	120	115	112	Cottons [shoes
Lynn, Mass. .	40	70	100	102	—	Boots and shoes
Springfield, Mass.	—	60	130	150	163	Meat packing; iron
						[wares
Providence, R.I.	105	180	240	253	248	Worsted; rubber goods
Hartford, Conn. .	40	80	140	164	177	Iron wares; small arms
New Haven, Conn.	65	110	160	163	163	Hardware
New York, N.Y.	1,200	3,440	5,600	6,930	7,835	Clothing; various
Jersey City, N.J. <sup>1</sup>	120	200	300	317	300	Sugar; tobacco
Newark, N.J. <sup>1</sup> .	140	250	415	442	438	Leather
Paterson, N.J. <sup>1</sup> .	50	105	135	139	139	Silk
Albany, N.Y. .	90	95	115	127	134	Metal wares; textiles
Syracuse, N.Y. .	50	110	170	209	220	Clothing [steel
Buffalo, N.Y. .	155	350	510	573	577	Meat packing; iron and
Rochester, N.Y.	90	160	300	328	331	Clothing, boots & shoes
Philadelphia, Pa.	850	1,300	1,800	1,951	2,065	Various
Reading, Pa. .	45	80	110	111	109	Steel
Scranton, Pa. .	45	102	140	143	125	Silks
Pittsburgh, Pa. .	240	450	590	670	674	Steel; glass
Akron, O. .	—	45	210	255	273	Rubber tyres
Cleveland, O. .	160	380	800	900	906	Iron and steel
Toledo, O. .	50	130	240	291	301	Foundry work
Columbus, O. .	50	125	240	291	375	Foundry work
Dayton, O. .	40	85	150	201	243	Cash registers
Cincinnati, O. .	255	325	400	451	501	Electrical; chemicals
Youngtown, O. .	—	—	—	170	168	Iron and steel
Louisville, Ky. .	125	205	245	308	367	Tobacco
Detroit, Mich. .	115	285	1,000	1,569	1,839	Motor cars
Grand Rapids, Mich. .	32	90	140	169	176	Saw-milling; furniture
Flint, Mich. .	—	—	—	156	163	—
Indianapolis, Ind.	75	170	315	364	425	Meat packing
Chicago, Ill. .	500	1,700	2,700	3,376	3,606	Meat packing
Milwaukee, Wis.	115	285	460	578	633	Malt liquors
Minneapolis, Minn. .	47	205	380	464	517	Flour milling
St. Paul, Minn. .	41	165	235	272	309	Fur goods; publishing

<sup>1</sup> All these towns are in the immediate neighbourhood of New York Harbour. New York now includes Brooklyn on Long Island.

Town.	Population in Thousands.					Chief Manufacturing Industry.
	1880.	1900.	1920.	1930.	1950.	
St. Louis, Mo. .	350	575	770	822	853	Tobacco; malt liquors
Kansas City, Mo.	55	165	325	400	453	Food processing
Omaha, Neb. .	30	105	190	214	247	Brewing; distilling
Baltimore, Md. .	330	510	735	805	940	Canning; clothing
Washington, D.C.	180	280	440	487	798	—
Richmond, Va. .	65	85	170	183	230	Tobacco
Atlanta, Ga. .	37	90	200	270	327	Cottons
New Orleans, Louisiana .	215	290	390	459	567	Sugar
Birmingham, Ala.	—	40	180	260	299	Iron and steel
Memphis, Tenn..	35	100	160	253	394	Cotton-seed products
Nashville, Tenn..	—	—	118	154	173	—
San Antonio, Tex.	—	55	160	232	407	Trade centre
Dallas, Tex. .	—	45	160	260	434	Various
Houston, Tex. .	—	—	138	292	594	Various
Fort Worth, Tex.	—	—	106	164	277	Various
Denver, Col. .	37	140	260	288	413	—
Seattle, Wash. .	—	80	315	366	462	Flour milling
Portland, Or. .	—	90	260	302	371	Wood
San Francisco, Cal. .	235	345	510	634	761	Sugar
Oakland, Cal. .	—	70	215	284	381	—
Los Angeles, Cal.	—	100	580	1,238	1,958	Fruit packing; motion [pictures]
Oklahoma City, Ok. .	—	—	91	185	242	—
San Diego, Cal. .	—	—	75	148	321	—
Miami, Fla. .	—	—	—	110	247	Resort
Long Beach, Cal.	—	—	—	142	244	Resort
Jacksonville, Fla.	—	—	92	130	203	—
Norfolk, Va. .	—	—	116	130	188	Port
Salt Lake City, Utah. .	—	—	118	140	182	—
Tulsa, Okla. .	—	—	72	141	181	Oil
Des Moines, Iowa	—	—	126	143	177	Food processing

The above table includes all towns with more than 175,000 people in 1950 and also a number of others to show diminishing relative importance of some eastern centres.

of the nineteenth century at the lowest place at which the latter river was crossed by a bridge, has long been the chief town on one of the great western high-roads. The twin cities of Minneapolis and St. Paul grew up later after wheat-growing became widespread in the north-west. The mills of Minneapolis have already been noticed. St. Paul arose as the head of continuous navigation on the Mississippi. Cincinnati (Ohio), situated at the north of the great northerly bend of the Ohio River, was the first of the great pork-packing towns. Favoured by excellent water communications, both above

and below, as well as by railways, its general business and importance have continued to grow. Other great railway centres are Indianapolis (Indiana); Milwaukee (Wisconsin), the second in importance of the ports on Lake Michigan and the former focus of German immigration, now famed for its beer; Omaha (Nebraska), on the Missouri, a little above the confluence of the Platte or Nebraska River, at the crossing place of the great line of railway from New York to San Francisco; and Kansas City (Missouri) at the confluence of the Kansas River with the Missouri.

As may be seen from the table on p. 771, the towns most rapidly increasing in population in the United States are situated principally in the west, and chiefly engaged in handling western products. The case of Chicago has long been known. Founded in 1833 it contained only a few huts. The site of Omaha was first marked out for settlement in 1854. Duluth in Minnesota, the Lake Superior terminus of the Northern Pacific Railroad, had in 1875 a population of 2,500. Being the lake-port for the United States portion of the Red River valley, its receipts of wheat are in excess of those of Chicago. It is likewise a place of shipment for much of the iron ores of north-eastern Minnesota. Remark may also be made on the rapid growth of Detroit, Akron, and Dayton, whose leading industries may be taken as illustrations of the more or less arbitrary selection of particular sites for manufactures of a certain type spoken of on p. 110. It may be mentioned, however, that the leading Detroit industry (automobiles) came as a natural successor to the manufacture of wooden vehicles favoured by the abundant supplies of hardwood timber and the favourable situation for distribution. It scarcely needs to be pointed out that the rubber tyre industry of Akron developed hand in hand with Detroit's automobile manufacture.

Recent decades have been marked by three major changes in American industry. The first is the shift westwards and the relative decline of New England coupled with the upsurge especially of the West Coast centres of Los Angeles, San Francisco and Seattle, together with the great cities of Texas. The second is the diversification of industry. Machinery, electrical apparatus, cars and aeroplanes represent almost a third of the total industrial output whereas textiles, with an emphasis on man-made fibres, and clothing have dropped, relatively, to 10 per cent. The third is the enormous increase in the export of manufactured goods (see table, p. 776) and its world-wide distribution coincident with the emergence of the United States as the major world power.

Over much of the United States climatic conditions are severe and there has been a marked tendency for people to retire or to spend long vacations in the most favoured states, notably Florida and California. This accounts for the phenomenal population increase in

size of such towns as Miami (247,000), Long Beach (244,000), San Diego (321,000) and Pasadena (104,000).

At the close of the nineteenth century the following were the ten leading seaports in order of importance as determined by the amount of tonnage entered and cleared in the foreign trade: New York, Boston, Philadelphia, New Orleans, Baltimore, Puget Sound, San Francisco, Galveston, Newport News, and Mobile. In respect of the amount of its foreign commerce New York is without a rival. At the time mentioned the tonnage entered from foreign countries at that port was 48 per cent. of the whole; that cleared for foreign countries rather more than 46 per cent. Although the opening of the Panama Canal in 1914 led to a great growth in the trade of the Pacific ports, New York is still without a rival. Measured in terms of the total foreign trade the leading ports in 1931-35 were New York, New Orleans, Galveston, San Francisco, Philadelphia, Boston, Seattle, Los Angeles. In 1949-50 the same ten ports held the lead, though in slightly different order, and Galveston-Houston considered as one. New York still held over 20 per cent. of the trade.

The physical conditions present great difficulties in the way of providing commodious harbours at all the ports on the Gulf of Mexico. The hinterland of New Orleans is one of the largest in the country, and has been made much more valuable by the development of railways by means of which the great bulk of the traffic is now carried on. At this port the difficulties were admirably surmounted. A channel of 36 feet in depth is maintained as high as New Orleans (and, indeed, as high as Baton Rouge, 25 miles up) from the south-west Pass. Five canals with a minimum depth of 5 feet connect it in different directions with the neighbouring lakes and bayous. There are huge grain elevators and cotton warehouses and the city is the largest market in the United States for gunny cloth, rice, bananas, cotton, and molasses, and has a great sugar-refining industry. The structure of the Appalachian system has facilitated the construction of railways connecting it with New York, but a much more important connection is established by the Central Illinois Railroad with Chicago, 912 miles distant, nearly due north. By this line there is a large trade from New Orleans in bananas and other imported fruit, as well as in garden produce grown in the neighbourhood of New Orleans in the early months of the year (from January onwards), and from July onwards the same kind of produce is carried the other way—from the northern states to New Orleans. Galveston, on a sandspit, has with difficulty been provided with a navigable channel across the bar. Having the advantage of being only 2,130 miles from San Francisco, as against 2,480 miles, the distance between that port and New Orleans, it became the principal Gulf port of the great railway system of the Southern Pacific Railroad. Later Houston on the shores of the neighbouring

lagoon was made accessible and the two really form a twin outlet for Texan oil and other products. Before the opening of the Panama Canal large quantities of Hawaiian sugar were conveyed from San Francisco to Galveston even for New York and other eastern seaports.

Among the minor seaports of the United States may be mentioned Newport (Rhode Island), Washington (D.C.), Richmond (Virginia), a great tobacco port, Wilmington (North Carolina), Pensacola (Florida), chiefly a timber port, Portland (Oregon), a great wheat port of rising importance; Tacoma (Washington), on Puget Sound, one of the termini of the Northern Pacific Railroad. Pensacola has one of the best harbours on the Gulf. Tampa, on the west coast of Florida, is a great seat of cigar factories and a place of export of rock phosphate. Key West on a small island at the southern end of Florida, forms the southernmost of a chain of keys 140 miles long. In January 1912 a remarkable railway was completed connecting Key West with the mainland and making it the starting-point of a train-ferry to Havana. Later the viaducts constructed for the railway were used for a fine motor road which has succeeded it.

The shipping at American seaports was formerly mainly under foreign flags, the United States flag being represented on the average of the five years 1881-85 by barely 20 per cent. of the whole. By far the largest share belonged to the British flag; those of Germany, Norway, and Italy then coming next after that of the United States itself. Formerly no vessel was allowed to be registered as belonging to a United States owner unless built in the United States. This disability was removed by an Act of Congress in August 1914, but the higher wages of American crews remained an obstacle to competition with other countries in the carrying trade to and from foreign countries. The percentage of the imports and exports of the United States carried in vessels registered in the country amounted in the year ending June 30, 1860, to 66·5; in 1870 to 35·6; in 1880 to 17·4; in 1900 to 9·3; and in 1914 to 9·7. In consequence of the great development of shipbuilding during the First World War already noted, the percentage of imports and exports carried in American ships rose in the year ending June 30, 1918, to 21·9; and in that ending December 31, 1919, to 36·4 per cent. These figures include the shipping of the Great Lakes. The figure later dropped but was roughly one-third in the inter-war years. The total amount of shipping engaged in the foreign trade flying the American flag reached in the year ending June 30, 1914, less than 1·1m. gross tons; in 1919, 6·67m.; in 1925, 8·15m.; in 1930, 6·30m. By 1935 this figure had dropped to 4·59, but this excludes the 10m. tons engaging in coastal trade and fishing. There was again a big rise during the Second World War. In 1951 the United States merchant marine, including ships of the

tion of the large excess of exports over imports, which was typical of the periods before the First World War. The cost of transmarine carriage must be borne to a larger extent by the United States than by foreign countries, and this extra cost is represented by the excess of exports. The position was, of course, completely changed by the First World War which converted the United States from a debtor nation to the chief creditor nation, and this position has remained.

## UNITED STATES: NATIONAL EXPORTS f.o.b.

—	Percentages of Total Value.					
	1924.	1926-30.	1931-35.	1936-40.	1950.	1957.
<i>Foodstuffs</i> . . . . .	19.8	14.9	10.6	9.1	12.6	10.8
Fruits and nuts . . . . .	2.2	2.6	4.3	2.3	0.9	1.2
Wheat and flour . . . . .	7.3	4.9	2.0	1.7	4.5	4.1
Lard and substitutes . . . . .	—	2.1	1.6	0.6	1.1	0.3
<i>Raw materials, etc.</i> . . . . .	45.1	22.5	25.2	18.6	17.4	22.8
Cotton (raw) . . . . .	21.1	16.2	19.0	8.7	9.5	5.1
Petroleum (refined) . . . . .	8.7	10.0	9.0	10.6	4.6	3.8
Tobacco (raw) . . . . .	3.6	3.1	5.2	3.4	2.3	1.7
Wood, and manufs. of . . . . .	3.2	3.2	2.8	1.9	0.7	0.7
Coal . . . . .	2.5	2.5	2.4	2.1	2.6	4.0
Copper . . . . .	3.4	3.0	1.7	2.7	0.8	1.1
<i>Manufactures</i> . . . . .	31.3	54.9	47.6	69.9	63.7	62.3
Iron and steel . . . . .	10.4	5.1	4.4	8.3	4.4	5.4
Cars and parts . . . . .	5.2	8.5	7.1	8.4	6.7	6.9
Electric machinery and apparatus . . . . .	1.9	2.2	3.1	3.3	4.0	4.6
Agricultural ditto . . . . .	—	2.4	1.2	2.1	1.0	0.6
Other machinery and apparatus . . . . .	—	6.1	6.0	14.3	18.1	15.1
Cotton goods . . . . .	3.0	2.6	2.3	1.9	2.4	0.8
<i>Gold and silver, specie and unmanufactured</i> . . . . .	3.7	5.9	15.0	0.8	5.0	4.1 <sup>a</sup>
<i>Total value in 1,000 million \$<sup>1</sup></i> . . . . .	4.7	5.1	2.4	3.2	10.8	20.6 <sup>a</sup>
<i>Countries:<sup>2</sup></i> . . . . .				4	4	4
United Kingdom . . . . .	21.4	17.6	18.5	18.7	5.0	5.3
Canada . . . . .	13.6	17.1	14.5	15.9	19.4	18.5
Japan . . . . .	5.5	5.1	8.4	7.4	4.1	5.9
Germany . . . . .	9.6	8.3	6.5	2.4	4.3	4.6
France . . . . .	6.1	5.2	5.9	5.4	3.2	2.8
Italy . . . . .	4.1	3.0	3.0	1.9	3.3	3.2
Netherlands . . . . .	3.3	2.8	2.6	2.3	2.2	2.7
Belgium . . . . .	2.5	2.2	2.5	2.0	2.6	2.0 <sup>b</sup>
Mexico . . . . .	2.9	2.6	2.4	2.7	5.0	4.3
Cuba . . . . .	4.4	2.8	2.0	2.5	4.4	3.0

<sup>1</sup> Par rate of exchange (1924-49) £1 = \$4.866; from September 1949, £1 = \$2.80.

<sup>2</sup> Gold bullion, coins, &c., \$168m., general trade in silver \$12m.

<sup>3</sup> Merchandise only.

<sup>4</sup> Figures below are percentages of merchandise exported, i.e., excluding gold and silver.

<sup>5</sup> Belgium-Luxembourg.

<sup>6</sup> In addition to the countries listed, Venezuela took 5 per cent. of the exports in 1957, and Brazil and India each over 2 per cent.

The United States possesses the **outlying territories** of Alaska, the Hawaiian Archipelago, Puerto Rico, the Panama Canal zone, some of the Virgin Islands, and the small Pacific Islands of Guam and Tutuila, the latter in the Samoan group. Puerto Rico<sup>1</sup> was acquired from Spain after the Spanish-American War in 1898, and in the same year the Hawaiian Archipelago was acquired. The greater number of the Virgin Islands were purchased from Denmark in 1917.

**Alaska**<sup>2</sup> lies to the north-west of Canada and was purchased from Russia in 1867. It has an area of 571,000 square miles (more than six times that of Great Britain), with a 1950 population of 129,000, and is traversed by a magnificent river, the Yukon. It produces commercially furs, salmon, timber, and minerals. Gold deposits occur at Nome on the north side of Norton Sound nearly opposite the mouth of the Yukon, on Douglas Island (the Treadwell Mine), opposite Juneau in 58° 15' N. (where quartz-mining was long carried on and which at one time before flooding stopped working was the largest gold-mine in the world), and elsewhere. Copper is a leading mineral product. Coal is known to exist on several of the islands fringing the mainland to the south of the fifty-eighth parallel of latitude, but is little worked. Alaska has a large potential output of pulp-wood, and recent developments in the rearing of fur-bearing animals (blue fox, reindeer, and seals) should be noted.

## MEXICO

South of the United States is Latin America, containing twenty countries in which the dominant influence is Spanish, Portuguese, or that of some other European people, but in which the masses of the people except in the temperate south of South America are partially or wholly American Indian in blood.

The first of these is Mexico, a land more than eight times as large as Great Britain, nearly three times the area of Texas, tapering southwards from the boundary of the United States into the tropics, and then expanding again where it embraces the peninsula of Yucatan. It is nearly 2,000 miles long, its frontier with the United States extends for over 1,500 miles, and there are 6,000 miles of coastline.

The population of 31·5m. (1957) is only about 10 per cent. of European origin and 30 per cent. of pure Indian origin, the balance of 60 per cent. being mestizo (mixed Indian and European). The government is nominally like that of the United States. In form it is a federal republic with a constitution providing for universal manhood suffrage, but probably 65 per cent. of the population are illiterate, and Mexico has developed only under strong dictators.

<sup>1</sup> Technically described as a 'Commonwealth associated with the United States.' <sup>2</sup> Became the 49th State in 1959; Hawaii the 50th later in the year.

Of the total area of 760,000 square miles it is estimated that 34 per cent. is covered by pastures, against 10 per cent. by arable land, with forests accounting for 20 per cent., potentially useful land for 4 per cent., and waste land for 32 per cent. Landed property developed in Spanish colonial days under a system of large feudal estates, *haciendas*, and many of these still survive; but more common to-day are the *ejidos* (communal farms or villages) for which 65m. acres of land (over 100,000 square miles) had been expropriated up to 1945 and distributed among more than 2m. families. Rather less than half the land workers are settled on these *ejidos*.

The several regions of which the country is made up are for the most part separated by mountain barriers and it is mainly the pre-eminent importance of one of the regions, the Central Plateau, which has caused the whole to form one political unit for hundreds of years, a unit physically separated from the United States by an area of desert or semi-desert, in the eastern part of which the Rio Grande forms a convenient line of demarcation.

**Regional survey.** The Central Plateau, the favoured highland area about Mexico City, though only about one-sixth of the area of Mexico, contains more than half the population, and by far the larger proportion of the white population, mainly Spanish, many of them the descendants of those who, under Cortez, here overthrew the old Aztec Empire in 1519-21. It lies at the height of about 7,000 feet above sea-level, is bordered east and west by rugged mountains, and is made up of a number of basins separated by mountains of volcanic origin, including some cones towering to heights of eternal snow, and containing a few surviving lakes, notably in the great valley of Mexico. Although in the tropics, these basins enjoy a climate more truly temperate than that of most of the temperate zone. There is no hot summer or cold winter, but an average temperature of between 55° and 65° F. for every season of the year. Days are warm and nights cool; the sun is hot at mid-day, and occasionally there are frosty nights. The rainfall, on the average about 30 inches per annum, occurring mostly between April and October, is sufficient for agriculture, though crops suffer in dry seasons. Irrigation is practised where streams fed by the heavier rains and melting snows of the encircling mountains reach the basins.

Maize, the principal crop and staple food, occupies as much land as all other crops together—a greater proportion of the crop land than in any other large country. Other crops conspicuous in the central region are wheat and barley, beans and potatoes, and—as fodder for cattle—alfalfa (lucerne). Much of the pasture land is on the less fertile lower slopes of the mountains, where the soil is apt to be dry, and on these slopes also are grown the agaves, the most distinctive crop of the Central Plateau, drought-resisting plants



native to Mexico, with long, sharp, fleshy leaves, of which the century plant is an example. Most of these are raised for their sap, which is used in the making of *pulque*, a favourite fermented beverage. A distilled beverage, *mescal*, is also made from the root. Part of the crop is used to yield the long, strong maguey fibre to make woven mats and other articles.

Mineral wealth, too, associated partly with the volcanic rocks, has long been important in central Mexico. The silver and gold mines of the Aztecs were the chief attraction for the Spanish conquerors, and Mexico still leads the world in the production of silver, providing in 1956 about 20 per cent. of the world total.

Manufactures date back to the bygone civilisation, but the old industries, the making of pottery, textiles, and other articles, have somewhat declined since the rise of factories financed by foreign capital; besides having the advantages of local labour, a local market, and water-power furnished by streams from the Sierra Madre Oriental, these are promoted by import restrictions and prohibitions. Cotton factories using raw material from northern Mexico are the most important. Tobacco factories, flour mills, breweries, plants for the extraction of vegetable oils, and other establishments supplying the domestic market and having the additional advantage of more or less raw material produced locally, are also to be noted. Wartime conditions so stimulated industrial production that by 1947 the output of the leading industries had increased nearly fourfold over that for 1940.

Each basin of the Central Plateau has an important town as its centre, and the most important, the city of Mexico, is the centre of the richest of all the basins, the valley of Mexico. With a population estimated in 1954 at 3½m., this city is not only the political capital but also the financial, commercial, industrial, and cultural centre of the country.

The Northern Plateau is a continuation of the Central Plateau, with similar land-forms and without any marked physical breach, but distinguished by its smaller rainfall and a consequent difference in vegetation and distribution of the population. Without irrigation, crop cultivation is impossible, and cattle-rearing on large ranches is the prevailing economic feature. In the basins, dry bush and grassland furnish the fodder, especially from June to October, when the rainfall is somewhat more plentiful. Here fibre is obtained from several wild plants, chiefly two kinds of ixtle, and this region is also the source of guayule (a type of rubber). The basin known as la Laguna, at the intersection of the International and Central railways, is irrigated by the control of the floodwaters of the Rio Nazas, and in it is grown the major part of the Mexican cotton crop.

Mines are important in the Northern Plateau. The cities are mainly centres of mining areas producing, in addition to silver and

gold, copper, lead, zinc, iron, and coal. These latter industries are modern, the copper production in particular being an extension of the Arizona industry into Mexico.

The state of Sonora, in the north-west of the country, sinks down to low levels, and is, in the main, desert, especially where it approaches the frontier. Farther south, where higher mountains promote greater rainfall, more streams descend to allow of irrigation settlements. A railway running parallel to the east shore of the Gulf of California into the United States, and several small ports along the coast, furnish outlets for the mines on the mountain slopes as well as for the irrigation settlements.

The narrow, mountainous peninsula of Lower California is also desert for the most part, though there are a few patches of irrigated land. There are also a few mines, notably a large copper-mine on the east coast, and a little fishing.

The sierras bordering the plateaus east and west present some marked contrasts. The Sierra Madre Occidental, being on the lee side with reference to the prevailing rain-bearing winds, the trade-winds, has a scantier rainfall than the eastern range, though enough to maintain green pastures below and pine forests above. Its chief wealth is in its mines. It forms a marked barrier, an unbroken wall in which the valleys are mostly narrow gorges without utility as passes.

The Sierra Madre Oriental is less high and continuous, and has several lines of valleys through which run railways to the Gulf ports. The most important of these is the series followed by the railway from Mexico City to Vera Cruz. The way is steep, but the valleys are flat-floored and productive, the products changing in the descent from grain to coffee and tobacco, and still lower to sugar-cane, bananas, and tropical forests. On the middle slopes of the depression leading down to Vera Cruz the temperature is always pleasantly warm, and the rainfall in many places averages 100 inches or more in a year. Here, also, manufactures are carried on. Orizaba is the leading centre of textile factories in Mexico.

At the foot of the Eastern Sierra is a coastal lowland, *tierra caliente*, hot country. Most of it is unimportant at present, but in it are three places or districts of outstanding importance: the port of Vera Cruz; the petroleum fields near Tampico; and the sisal district of Yucatan.

Vera Cruz is on a desolate shore, and has a poor natural harbour, but it is the terminus of the route from the Central Plateau, and has been converted into a good port, with modern equipment.

Indications of petroleum have been found in many parts of Mexico, but nearly all the production has been in the state of Vera Cruz, west and south of Tampico. Most of the petroleum is heavy and has an asphaltic base. The product of the oil-fields on the

northern coast of the Isthmus of Tehuantepec, the narrow waist of Mexico, is light and has a paraffin base, but the amount is small compared with the total production. The wells of the Vera Cruz districts in general are not exceptionally deep and a fairly large proportion of them have been successful. They include some of the largest and most sustained gushers known, but the production of the whole has dropped greatly since 1921—from the peak of 195m. barrels in that year to 91m. barrels in 1956, the highest intervening figure. There was a slight falling off again in 1957, when production was returned as 89m. barrels. The industry developed in foreign hands, mainly American and British, but in 1938 the oil-fields were expropriated by the State, with the exception of a single concession which was bought out in 1950. Most of the oil is refined within the country, one refinery in the vicinity of Mexico City being supplied by pipeline from the wells. Tampico, the chief town and port of the oil-fields, has been improved so as to allow modern tankers and freighters to berth along the waterfront. A coastal lagoon with connecting canals provides a sheltered shallow waterway 85 miles southwards to Tuxpam, another oil port, where a submarine pipeline conveys oil to tankers lying about a mile off-shore.

The other important lowland area is in the northern part of the Yucatan Peninsula. The rainfall here is scanty and the dryness is accentuated by surface conditions. The soil is underlain by a highly soluble limestone, in which sink holes are numerous, and there is no surface drainage. Maize and other supply crops can be raised, and in prehistoric times the Maya Indian civilisation flourished here. Modern commerce and foreign capital have brought a new prosperity to the district. Nowhere else in the western world can sisal be grown under conditions at once so favourable to production and so accessible to the United States market. Henequen, as the fibre is here called, is grown on over a third of a million acres yielding a crop of over 100,000 tons, much of which is made locally into rope and twine. Railways radiating from the inland centre of Merida, supplemented by tramways running through the large plantations, convey the product to the north Yucatan port of Progreso, where a new pier  $1\frac{1}{4}$  miles long, ending in a large wharf, provides berthing for vessels of moderate draught. The southern part of the peninsula is the chief source of chicle, the basis of American chewing-gum, obtained by tapping the zapote tree (*Achras Sapote*, Linn.).

The narrow lowlands on the Pacific coast east and west of the Isthmus of Tehuantepec are similar to those on the Atlantic side, moist in some places, and dry in others, wooded, slightly developed. The isthmus itself is a low, hilly area.

Southern Mexico has, for the most part, a population out of the reach of railways. More people live in the highlands than in

the lowlands. The Sierra del Sur is a highland region separated from the Central Plateau by the great gorge of the Rio Balsas. Round the head of the Balsas Valley a ridge allows of a railway from the plateau entering the sierra, but the region is so dissected that communities within it, mostly of Indians, are isolated from each other and contribute little or nothing to world trade. Indian languages and ways of living still persist.

The highlands of Chiapas, running into Guatemala, are less dissected. There is a rather dry highland valley in which grain crops are raised and cattle and sheep pastured, and there are moist slopes below on which coffee is grown for export. The people are largely Indian and primitive in their mode of life. There is more trade with Guatemala than with other parts of Mexico, and the region forms the northernmost of the Central American highlands.

**Production and trade.** The following table gives the principal crop returns for Mexico as a whole in 1956 and the corresponding figures in 1950, showing the big advances in the interval in all but bananas, which reached their peak in 1937 and have since fallen away.

Crop	1950		1956	
	Acres	Metric Tons	Acres	Metric Tons
Maize . . .	9,563,000	3,122,000	15,370,000	4,515,000
Wheat . . .	1,310,000	587,000	2,258,500	1,100,000
Barley . . .	495,000	162,000	608,000	197,000
Dry Beans . . .	2,190,000	250,000	3,605,000	459,000
Cotton (Ginned) . . .	1,357,000	259,000	2,157,000	403,000
Sugar (Raw) . . .	500,000	705,000	650,000	1,079,000
Coffee . . .	358,000	66,000	531,000	102,000
Rice (Paddy) . . .	267,000	187,000	284,000	235,000
Bananas . . .	60,000	257,000	50,000	207,000

Methods of cultivation are often crude, and though the crop of maize is so big the yield averages only about 10 bushels per acre—a third of what it is in the United States. The future of Mexico's agricultural development lies largely in the extension of irrigation works. A great deal has been and is being done in this direction, but much more irrigated land is needed before Mexico can become self-supporting in the matter of food. On the other hand there is a surplus of other than subsistence crops, and these 'cash crops' figure largely in the foreign trade. About half the production of ginned cotton—a record amount in 1955, nearly a fourth more than in 1956—is exported; and in 1955 cotton provided for over one-fourth of the value of all exports. In recent years there has been also a substantial surplus of sugar for export (322,000 tons in 1955), and

among other export crops are coffee and bananas. The importance of henequen (sisal) in Yucatan has been noted in the regional survey.

Livestock run to big numbers—20m. cattle, 5m. sheep, 8½m. goats, 8½m. horses, mules, and donkeys, 7m. pigs. They tend to be concentrated in the central states, and the livestock industry could well be expanded, possibly at the expense of some of the less productive maize land; but a discouraging factor has been widespread foot and mouth disease.

Summary particulars of the producing oil-fields, which are practically limited to the state of Vera Cruz, have been given in the regional survey. Mines are mostly foreign-owned. The output of silver, though the biggest factor in world production, declined by nearly half during and after the Second World War, and was under 50m. fine ounces in 1956. Mexican production of gold in that year was 350 fine ounces. The recoverable quantity of lead from ore was estimated at 196,000 tons (fourth in the list of world supplies); of zinc, 245,000 tons (fifth in the list of world supplies); and of copper 82,000 tons. Much of the lead and zinc are refined locally before being exported. The metal content of the iron ore produced in 1956 amounted to 481,000 tons, and there are very large reserves of this ore. Monterrey is the centre of the iron and steel industry. The only important coal-field, near the Rio Grande, does not produce enough for home consumption; the total mined in 1956 was less than 1½ million tons, and bunkers cannot be replenished with coal at Mexican ports, though there is no lack of fuel for oil-burning ships.

The great preponderance of the trade is with the United States. The unit of currency is the peso of 100 centavos, with an exchange rate of 35 pesos to the £. In 1956, when imports amounted to 13,395m. pesos (£383m.), the United States' share was just on 80 per cent., while Germany, which came second in the list, supplied under 5 per cent. Exports were valued at 8,245m. pesos (£236m.), with the States taking nearly 75 per cent., and Japan, the next best customer, taking under 6 per cent. In 1955 between 40 and 50 per cent. of the imports were machinery, and transport equipment, and manufactures of all kinds, including the foregoing, were over 60 per cent. of the total. Leading exports were cotton (nearly 30 per cent.), lead, copper, silver and zinc (over 20 per cent.), and coffee (12½ per cent.).

Besides the ports already mentioned, Puerto Mexico, the Atlantic terminus of the Tehuantepec Railway, and Salina Cruz, the Pacific terminus, handle a good deal of traffic, though inevitably much less than before the opening of the Panama Canal. The Pacific coast generally has better harbours than the Atlantic, but suffers from the lack of tributary areas with convenient means of communication. Acapulco, at the foot of the Sierra del Sur, has the best

natural Mexican harbour, but insignificant commerce. Even Manzanillo, the only Pacific port having direct rail connection with the Central Plateau, draws very little except local trade. Mazatlan, formerly the chief port of the Pacific coast, has lost most of its sea-borne trade, being no longer a regular port of call for any shipping line, and visited by tramp steamers only when cargo is offered.

CENSUS POPULATION OF PRINCIPAL TOWNS (1950)

Mexico City, 2,235,000 (1957 estimate, 4,227,000)

Guadalajara . . .	378,000	Vera Cruz . . .	101,000
Monterrey . . .	333,000	Tampico . . .	94,000
Puebla . . .	211,000	Aguascalientes . . .	93,000
Merida . . .	142,000	Chihuahua . . .	87,000
Torreon . . .	129,000	Saltillo . . .	70,000
San Luis Potosi . . .	125,000	Mexicali . . .	65,000
Leon . . .	122,000	Morelia . . .	63,000
Ciudad Juarez . . .	122,000	Toluca . . .	53,000

## THE WEST INDIES

These islands form an archipelago over 1,600 miles long, curving south-eastwards from near the coast of Florida to the shores of Venezuela. Enclosing the Caribbean Sea, they lie across the trade routes to the Gulf of Mexico and the Panama Canal. Together they have an area slightly larger than that of Great Britain and support a population of nearly 17m.

The four largest islands—Cuba, Hispaniola, Jamaica, and Puerto Rico—form the Greater Antilles and lie in the west of the group; they account for nine-tenths of the total area and only a slightly smaller fraction of the population. The very numerous small islands to the east and south form the Lesser Antilles, while to the north are the Bahamas, a group which is not properly within the West Indies but may conveniently be considered here.

The Bahamas are coral islands, as are some of the outer islands (Anguilla, Barbuda, Antigua, and Barbados) of the Lesser Antilles. All the other islands are mountainous, and the higher parts of the surface generally are covered with dense forests. The Lesser Antilles are, in most cases, the peaks of a largely submerged line of mountains; many of them are of volcanic origin.

The population is almost entirely descended from natives of other continents, the aboriginal Caribs (themselves the descendants of Mongolian migrants) having been almost exterminated within a short period of the discovery of the islands by Columbus. A large proportion of the inhabitants are the descendants of African slaves, and these are rapidly increasing their numbers. So are the descend-

ants of East Indian and Chinese coolies, who were introduced as labourers after the liberation of the negroes, because of the unwillingness of the free negroes to work on the plantations.

Some of the islands are to-day very densely peopled. Barbados, for instance, has more than 1,400 inhabitants to the square mile, Martinique 570, and Puerto Rico 650. These figures contrast with much lower densities on the largest islands: Cuba 130, Hispaniola 200, Jamaica 360. On the other hand, many of the smallest islands are inhabited either sparsely or not at all, and the lowest density of all these territories is found in the Bahamas (23). In spite of much progress achieved during and since the Second World War, the living standards of the majority of the people are low, the demand for labour being to a large extent seasonal. Overcrowding and under-employment remain serious problems.

As primary producers, the islands export sugar and other commodities to Europe and North America, receiving manufactured goods in return. But the economic history of the area has been one of great fluctuations, as the price of sugar has risen and fallen on the world market. Over-production has played its part in the story, and the competition of beet-sugar grown in Great Britain and the United States has been seriously felt. The banana industry has had its own troubles, in the form of widespread disease. Hurricanes also provide a serious setback from time to time, much devastation being caused. Recovery takes perhaps a year in the case of bananas, two years or longer in the case of sugar, and as long as ten years in the case of coconuts. Irregular rainfall is another drawback in many parts, particularly in the north-east, where there is too much rain on the windward side and too little on the leeward.

Many of the islands are dependent upon a single export commodity, so that the effects of failure or of a drop in price are felt severely. The general policy of concentrating on cash crops for export has furthermore tended to discourage the growing of food which is much needed for the rapidly increasing indigenous population. Sugar is pre-eminently a plantation crop, but apart from the large estates a good deal is also grown on small holdings, which are particularly numerous in Trinidad.

The development of close relations between the territories has always been handicapped by the great number of islands involved and by the distances separating them. Lack of easy communication has caused the islands to grow up apart, each developing its own characteristics and traditions. There is not even a common language. The introduction of air services has done something to break down the barriers of isolation, but has not fundamentally changed the situation. Moreover, shipping problems are aggravated by the fluctuating and varied demands of the traffic: refrigerated ships are

required for the conveyance of bananas, tankers for the transport of oil, while passenger traffic is to a large extent seasonal. Navigation, too, is sometimes rendered dangerous by hurricanes in the period from July to October, and especially in September, when the sea is at its warmest and the winds are very variable.

**Political divisions.** Cuba is an independent republic. Two other republics—Haiti and the Dominican Republic—share the island of Hispaniola. Puerto Rico and some of the Virgin Islands belong to the United States. The remaining islands are colonial territories of Great Britain, France, and the Netherlands, those owing allegiance to Britain being by far the most numerous and important.

Most of the British islands were linked in a Federation in 1956–1957 (see under British West Indies, p. 789).

A modern development has been a form of regional co-operation through what is known as the Caribbean Commission, representing the Powers with territories in the West Indies. It acts as consultant and adviser in all matters of economic co-operation and social welfare. It has been responsible for bringing into being a regional assembly known as the West Indian Conference, consisting of delegates from each of the numerous territories. Though with obvious limitations, since they lack executive power, both the Commission and the Conference provide a valuable forum for the exchange of views.

**CUBA** is almost as large as all the other islands put together, with an area of 44,164 square miles (nearly nine-tenths the size of England) and a population (mostly white) of 6½m. It lies just within the tropics and is 760 miles long by 36 to 195 miles across. After its discovery by Columbus it remained under Spanish rule until 1898, thereafter receiving the guardianship of the United States until 1934, when it became politically independent. The island is still dependent economically on the United States.

Much of the interior is upland and hilly, but the only important mountain range is that which rises from the south coast in the east, the Sierra Maestra, reaching a height of nearly 8,000 feet. There is a considerable extent of coastal swamp in the south, but much of the northern part of the 2,000-mile coastline is formed by coral reefs, in which the action of small rivers has formed a number of excellent and almost landlocked harbours. About half the land area is devoted to agriculture and of this one-third is arable and two-thirds pasture. Over 10 per cent. is forested and nearly 40 per cent. is made up of waste land and built-on areas.

Cuba is predominantly an agricultural country, having a great deal of good soil, a growing season lasting the whole year, and ample labour. Sugar is the principal crop, and with an annual output of 5m.–6m. tons of raw sugar Cuba is the world's foremost producer and the largest exporter: from a third to a half of the



sugar entering international trade. The cane is grown in fertile areas throughout the island, but especially in the centre and east, where less rainfall is received than in the west. In certain regions in the centre and west sugar gives place to tobacco, Cuba's second staple crop, which forms the basis of a flourishing cigar industry.

Other main products are fruit (chiefly bananas and pineapples) and coffee, most of which is grown in the mountainous districts of the south-east. Extensive plains, or savannas, with natural pasture throughout the year but a poor soil, are characteristic of the east-central part of the island, and here cattle-ranching has been actively developed. The well-forested mountain slopes yield cabinet woods and other forestry products. Mineral deposits are both valuable and varied, but only manganese, chrome, iron, and copper have been seriously exploited.

Cuba's unit of currency, the peso of 100 cents, is nominally equal to the United States dollar, or in sterling 7s. 2d. (P. 2.80 to the £). In 1956 imports were valued at P. 649m. (£230m.) and exports at P. 666m. (£238m.). As usual, rice was the most valuable import. Sugar provided close on 75 per cent of the exports by value, and mineral ores 5 per cent. The United States supplied 75 per cent. of the imports and took 65 per cent. of the exports.

Havana, the capital, situated on a natural harbour on the north-west coast, is connected with the rest of the island by a well-developed system of public railways (3,714 miles) and double that length of private lines. Roads have as backbone a 700-mile central highway traversing the island from east to west.

#### CUBAN CITIES WITH A POPULATION OF OVER 100,000 (1953 CENSUS)

Havana . . . . .	788,000	Santiago . . . . .	167,000
Marianao . . . . .	230,000	Santa Clara (Las Villas) . .	145,000
Holguin . . . . .	227,000	Cianfuegos . . . . .	99,000
Camaguey . . . . .	191,000		

**HAITI.** The Republic of Haiti, about a third as large again as Wales, occupies the western third (10,714 square miles) of Hispaniola. It was a French colony before 1804, when the slaves revolted and founded the world's first negro republic; only a few hundred of the 3m. inhabitants are white. In spite of the mountainous terrain nearly a third of the area is classed as arable or pastoral country; a fourth is forested, another fourth is potentially productive, and less than a fifth is reckoned as waste or built on. Early methods of farming led to some impoverishment of the soil, deforestation, and erosion; measures to restore productivity are now in hand. Coffee is the principal crop (70 per cent of the exports in 1956), followed by sisal and sugar. Cotton and bananas have dwindled. Bauxite and copper are being developed. Trade is

chiefly with the United States. The unit of currency is the gourde of 100 centimes (5 gourdes to the \$, 14 to the £). Imports and exports in 1956 were each valued at some 232m. gourdes (£16½m.) Port-au-Prince (population 200,000) is the capital and only large city.

**THE DOMINICAN REPUBLIC**, occupying the eastern two-thirds (19,332 square miles) of Hispaniola, was formerly under Spanish rule and has had a separate existence since 1865. Its population in 1955 (census) was 2½m. The mountainous interior includes the highest ground (10,500 feet) in the West Indies. Nearly three-quarters of the whole area is forested, most of the remainder being divided nearly equally between cultivated land and pasture land. The forests, largely untouched, yield cabinet woods and dye-woods. As in Haiti, mineral deposits, await development. The unit of currency, the peso, is equated with the American \$. Imports in 1956 were valued at P. 108m. (£38½m.) and exports at P.124m. (£44m.). Sugar provided nearly half the exports, and coffee over a quarter. The United States and United Kingdom are the principal customers; imports are mostly from the United States. Ciudad Trujillo, the capital, has over ½m. inhabitants.

**PUERTO RICO**, with an area of 3,435 square miles (somewhat smaller than Devon and Cornwall), and a population, mostly of Spanish descent, of 2½m. (double that of Devon and Cornwall), is the smallest and most easterly of the Greater Antilles. Ceded by Spain to the United States in 1898, it was given an increasing measure of self-government, subject to the approval of local legislation by the United States Congress; and even this restriction was abolished in 1952 when Puerto Rico acquired the status of a self-governing 'free commonwealth' in close association with the United States. The mountainous interior rises to over 4,000 feet and is fringed by coastal plains varying up to 12 miles in depth. Rainfall is adequate for successful agriculture in most parts of these plains, but in the south it has been necessary to develop irrigation schemes. Lands devoted to agriculture account for three-quarters of the total, comprising over 1,300 square miles classed as arable and nearly 1,300 square miles classed as pasture. Over 400 square miles are forest-covered, and of the remaining 400 square miles half is potentially productive. Compared with many other West Indian islands Puerto Rico enjoys a high standard of living, based on its agricultural exports. Cultivation has been so intensive that the soil has become seriously deficient and is kept fertile only by imported fertilisers. Sugar forms the backbone of the economy, more sugar being produced than in all the British, French, and Netherlands West Indies combined—a supremacy gained since the beginning of the century at the expense of coffee, which is still grown on the hill-sides for export. The former forest lands were denuded during the nineteenth century and attention is now being devoted to re-affore-

station. Tax exemption has encouraged industrial enterprise. The American dollar is the unit of currency, and imports in 1956-57 were valued at \$709m. (£253m.—89 per cent. from the United States) against exports of \$444m. (£159m.—95 per cent. to the United States). The capital, San Juan, on the north coast, had a population of 224,000 at the 1950 census, and to this was added in the following year another 132,000 by merging in the capital the town of Rio Piedras. In the south the chief town is Ponce (127,000).

To the east of Puerto Rico are the fifty small islands and cays forming the **American Virgin Islands**, with an aggregate area of 132 square miles. A third of this is arable and pasture land (mostly the latter), and a half is clad with forest, leaving a sixth which is barren. The islands have little rainfall and are mostly uninhabited, but the three principal islands—St. Thomas, St. Croix, and St. John—support about 25,000 inhabitants and produce rum. St. Thomas was once the leading slave market and trading centre of the Antilles. It has a magnificent harbour at Charlotte Amalie (11,500), the capital of the group, which is a free port and still does business in fuelling and servicing ships.

**BRITISH WEST INDIES.** For purposes of administration the British islands are grouped into six colonies, namely, in geographical sequence from north to south and east: the Bahamas, Jamaica, Leeward Islands, Windward Islands, Barbados, and Trinidad and Tobago. The total area is little more than 12,000 square miles (about the size of Belgium), the total population over 3m. The federation of all these islands, apart from the Bahamas and the Virgin Islands, was agreed among themselves in 1956 and enacted by the British Parliament in 1957. A Federal Legislature has its headquarters in Trinidad. The first Governor-General took office in 1958.

The islands are widely scattered—Jamaica is 1,000 miles from Barbados—and there is an intense local patriotism in each of the islands. Shipping services with the United Kingdom are limited. Canada provides an important market, but the fact that it is a dollar country and the islands belong to the sterling area has caused some interference in post-war years with traditional trade relations. Sterling is widely used as the legal currency, but in 1951 the British Caribbean Territories, Eastern Group (Trinidad, Barbados, etc.), adopted a unified currency of B.W.I. dollar notes, the dollar being valued, like the pre-war American dollar, at 4s. 2d. (B.W.I. \$4.80 to the £).

The absence of adequate mineral resources in most of the islands—Trinidad, with its supplies of oil, provides a notable exception—weakens their position economically, but the possibilities of industrialisation have not been overlooked and a number of promising secondary industries have been set up in Jamaica and

Trinidad. The climate encourages winter tourist traffic, which is an important industry; there are first-class hotels in the Bahamas, Jamaica, Barbados, and Trinidad. By an arrangement made with Britain during the Second World War, the United States obtained the right to establish six bases for defence in the Bahamas, and others in Jamaica, Antigua (Leeward Islands), St. Lucia (Windwards), and Trinidad.

**The Bahamas** are a chain of some thirty islands, with many hundreds of uninhabited cays and rocks, extending south-east 700 miles through the Atlantic from near the coast of Florida; lying mainly outside the tropics, they have a less intense climate than the West Indies proper. Their area is 4,400 square miles—equal to that of Jamaica—and their population 117,000. Only one-ninetieth (50 square miles) of the whole is cultivated; there are 1,250 square miles of forest, but little else of potential value, the coral soils being porous, dry, and not well suited to agriculture. Where favourable conditions exist, tomatoes, sisal hemp, pineapples, bananas, and vegetables are grown, and a small export trade is carried on, mostly with the United States and Canada. The collection of sponges, once the predominant industry, suffered from a fungus disease in the sponge beds, and these were closed, but have been re-opened. Nassau, the capital, lies on the island of New Providence, where nearly half the population live. Its development as a tourist resort of Americans is the mainstay of current prosperity.

**Jamaica** is by far the largest island in the British West Indies, and the most advanced politically, with an area of 4,400 square miles (rather more than half the area of Wales) and a population of over 1½m. The main axis of the island runs east and west and is traversed by a mountain range culminating in the east in the Blue Mountains, which rise to over 7,000 feet. Indeed, the whole island is mountainous and the trade winds, striking the north and east coasts, cause a very heavy rainfall in those areas, accounting for a great contrast in vegetation and products between that side of the island and the south and west, where rainfall is often inadequate. Occasionally hurricanes bring devastation, that of 1951 having been a serious setback to post-war development. Rather more than a third of the island is devoted to agriculture (670 square miles to cultivation and 920 square miles to pasture); forests cover another 780 square miles and there are 1,400 square miles of potentially productive land, leaving a balance of over 600 square miles for built-on areas and waste.

Bananas, grown on the lower and wetter ground, supplied nearly half the exports before the Second World War; production then fell disastrously through leaf disease, but energetic research work helped to put the industry on its feet again. Sugar, now the main crop, is grown in plantations away from the areas of greatest rainfall and

is the basis of a thriving output of rum. Tobacco, (chiefly in the form of cigars), coffee (grown in the Blue Mountains), pimento, cocoa, ginger, oranges, and grapefruit are also exported. Bauxite, for the manufacture of aluminium in British Columbia, has become a large-scale product. The currency is sterling; imports in 1956 were valued at £58m., national exports at £37m. Sugar provided a third of the exports, bauxite 28 per cent., and bananas, 14 per cent.—75 per cent. between them. Britain took nearly half, Canada over a quarter, and U.S.A. 17 per cent.—over 90 per cent. between them.

Kingston, the capital (parish population 158,000 in 1956), accommodates the University College of the West Indies, which it is proposed (1958) to merge with the Imperial College of Tropical Agriculture (Trinidad). The small Turks and Caicos Islands, yielding particularly good salt, and the Cayman Islands, with a turtle fishing industry, are former dependencies of Jamaica, lying respectively some hundreds of miles north-east and north-west of the main island.

**The Leeward Islands**, bounding the Caribbean on the north-east, are a somewhat scattered group of tiny islands divided administratively into four colonies: Antigua (with Barbuda and Redonda); St. Christopher-Nevis (consisting of St. Christopher—usually called St. Kitts; Nevis, and Anguilla); Montserrat; and the British Virgin Islands. Antigua (108 square miles; three-fourths the size of the Isle of Wight) is the largest, and during most of the year the Governor lives there. The group has a total area of 420 square miles and an estimated population (1957) of 132,000. A third of the land is arable, 10 per cent. pastoral, 18 per cent. forested, and over 40 per cent. waste. Antigua and St. Kitts are sugar islands and also produce useful quantities of Sea Island cotton, which in the case of Nevis and Montserrat is the principal crop. The sparsely populated British Virgin Islands raise livestock and vegetables which they sell in the nearby American Virgin Islands; in most of them agriculture is hampered by inadequate rainfall.

**The Windward Islands** extend southwards from the Leeward Islands towards Trinidad. They have much more rain than the Leewards, are mountainous, volcanic, and heavily forested, and are distinguished by their great beauty. They have a combined area of 826 square miles, of which a third is forested. Over a third is arable land, and only 4 per cent. (confined to St. Lucia) is classed as pastures. Over a quarter is unused, but much the greater part of this is potentially productive. Some of the islands were once French possessions, and French culture is still evident. The four major islands of the group are Dominica (with a big production of bananas), St. Lucia (producing sugar, copra, cocoa, and bananas), St. Vincent arrowroot, Sea Island cotton, copra, and bananas), and Grenada (cocoa and nutmegs). Dominica, with 304 square miles, is the

largest of the islands, but the beautifully situated little port of St. George's (6,000), in Grenada, is the capital. The chief town and port in Dominica is Roseau (13,000); the biggest town and port, Castries (24,000), is in St. Lucia. The total population, which includes the last survivors of the original Caribis, is about  $\frac{1}{2}$ m.

**Barbados** is the most easterly of the West Indies and is closely cultivated, the soil being rendered very fertile by an admixture of volcanic dust. It is little larger (166 square miles) than the Isle of Wight, and has approximately  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. people making it the most densely populated part of the West Indies. The interior is nowhere mountainous, the land rising to not much more than 1,000 feet, with the result that nearly 80 per cent. of it is devoted to farming. A great deal of pioneer scientific work has been done in the plantations, and the Central Sugar Cane Breeding Station is located here, doing valuable work in producing varieties with a higher extraction rate. In 1956, sugar, molasses and rum provided 85 per cent. of exports valued at £7 $\frac{1}{2}$ m. The United Kingdom took over half the exports and Canada nearly a quarter. Imports were valued at £12 $\frac{1}{2}$ m., of which the United Kingdom supplied nearly 40 per cent. and Canada over 15 per cent. The chief town and port, Bridgetown (estimated population 20,000), is on the western or leeward side of the island. Barbadians are almost entirely of negro descent.

**Trinidad** (1,864 square miles; about the size of Lancashire) and **Tobago** (116 square miles) are the southernmost of the West Indian islands; they support a population of about  $\frac{1}{2}$ m., of whom Trinidad has all but some 35,000; about a third of the total are of East Indian descent. The larger island lies opposite the mouths of the Orinoco, and is only a few miles from the coast of Venezuela; a continuation of the mainland coastal range runs through the north of the island. On the west coast, facing the mainland and forming one side of the almost enclosed Gulf of Paria, are the chief port and capital, Port of Spain (120,000), and good anchorage generally. Elsewhere the island is devoid of harbours and almost unapproachable by shipping, though hurricanes are almost unknown.

Over a third (696 square miles) of Trinidad and Tobago, nearly all arable land, is suitable for farming, and nearly half (900 square miles) is forested; most of the balance of 390 square miles is waste. Near Port of Spain is the Imperial College of Tropical Agriculture, founded in 1921 as a training ground for Commonwealth students. Sugar (from the arid western side of Trinidad) and cocoa are the principal agricultural products, but these are far surpassed in value by the island's mineral wealth. Trinidad is one of Britain's major oil-producing territories, with an output of 4.1m. tons of crude oil in 1956, and also has the famous 100-acre Pitch Lake, a deposit of natural asphalt used by Drake for caulking his ships in the sixteenth century and now a source of asphalt for macadamised roads. Both

the oil wells and the Pitch Lake are in the southern part of the island. Besides producing and refining its own oil, Trinidad refines crude oil imported from Venezuela. The unit of currency is the British West Indian dollar (p. 789). Imports in 1956 were valued at B.W.I. \$301m. (£63m.) and exports at B.W.I. \$330m. (£67m.). Petroleum and products provided 80 per cent. (£54½m.) of the exports, sugar 8 per cent., and cocoa 3 per cent. The United Kingdom supplied a third of the imports and Venezuela nearly a quarter. Over a third of the exports were taken by the United Kingdom.

Tobago, 21 miles to the north-east, produces sugar, but only about a quarter of the island is devoted to agriculture. It is hilly and rugged, and about half the surface is clothed with forest. Scarborough, the chief town and port, has about 1,500 inhabitants.

**THE FRENCH ISLANDS** of the Caribbean are Guadeloupe (688 square miles) and Martinique (425 square miles), with a few smaller islands and half of St. Martin (shared with the Netherlands), all of them situated in the general area of the Leeward and Windward groups. Each of the two main islands has a population of about ½m. Nearly 40 per cent. of Guadeloupe is forested and 33 per cent. is utilised for farming, the rest being waste or unused. Martinique is divided about equally in four categories: arable, pasture, forest, and waste. Sugar, rum, and bananas are the chief products, but here, as in Jamaica and elsewhere, leaf-spot disease has seriously affected the banana plantations. The capital of Martinique is Fort-de-France (66,000); of Guadeloupe, Basse-Terre (12,000). A larger town in Guadeloupe, with a fine harbour, is Pointe-à-Pitre (30,000). Martinique and Guadeloupe were raised to the status of departments of France in 1947.

**NETHERLANDS WEST INDIES.** These are in two groups, with a total area of 383 square miles and a population of nearly 200,000. The largest islands—Curaçao, Bonaire, and Aruba—lie off the Venezuelan coast. A few fragments—St. Martin (shared with France), St. Eustatius, and Saba—are sandwiched among the Leeward Islands over 500 miles away. Known collectively as the Netherlands Antillas, they gained local autonomy in 1954. The rainfall in the larger islands is scanty, and only about 5 per cent. of the land is cultivated. The chief importance of the islands lies in the development of Curaçao and Aruba as refining centres of crude oil from the Venezuelan oil-fields; the refineries are among the largest in the world; over 38m. tons of the products were exported in 1956. The capital, Willemstad, on Curaçao, has some 45,000 inhabitants and a good harbour.

## CENTRAL AMERICA

South-eastward from Mexico the continent tapers off in the narrowing isthmus of Central America, which has a total area less than a third of that of Mexico, and considerably less than that of Texas. There is less variety than in Mexico, and certain characteristics persist throughout. There is a backbone of highlands. The highest peaks are volcanic cones, a number of them active. Lava flows and ash deposits are widespread. Towards the Caribbean Sea the highlands are older mountains, deeply dissected, and worn-down hills. On the coast of this sea there are broader lowlands than on the Pacific—swamps and alluvial lands instead of mountains sloping to the sea.

The temperature of the lowlands is high all the year, with a greater range between day and night than between season and season. The average for every month is about 80° F., the result of a range from about 70° F. by night to 90° F. by day. At 3,000 feet altitude the temperature is very agreeable, averaging about 70° F. The rainfall varies greatly from place to place in accordance with the exposure and the topographic structure. As in Mexico, the trade winds are the chief rain-bearers, and on the Atlantic side, where there is direct exposure to those winds, there is no dry season and the rainfall averages above 100 inches. Lowlands and mountain slopes are clothed with tropical rain forest. On the Pacific coast and in the interior highlands the rainfall is considerably less; there is a dry season between December and April, when the trees in many places shed their leaves, and there is much scrubby and thorny vegetation. The racial elements are like those in Mexico, but with the addition of some English-speaking negroes on the Caribbean coast.

Almost throughout the territory there are similar resources, similar problems of development, similar people and common interests, yet the conditions are not favourable to political unity. There is no continuity of population, but rather a congeries of population groups each gathered round one chief nucleus and separated from its neighbours by miles of almost impassable country. None of the isolated population groups is strong enough to control the others, with the result that the area is divided up into



six independent republics—Guatemala, El Salvador, Honduras, Nicaragua, Costa Rica, and Panama, besides a British colony (British Honduras), and the Panama Canal Zone, which is controlled by the United States. To a large extent travel, even between adjacent countries, is by sea. Moreover, these population islands lack the advantage of true islands, that of being circumnavigable, so that travel from coast to coast of the same country is in some cases by a roundabout sea and land route.

These difficulties are being lessened by the spreading network of air routes, which already link all the important towns with Mexico, on the one hand, and South America on the other, while direct routes run to Florida and the West Indies. The position will also be much improved when the Inter-American Highway is completed. This great project, part of a larger scheme to link the countries of North and South America by a road system to be known as the Pan-American Highway, involves the construction of a through route from the Texas-Mexican frontier to Panama City—a distance of more than 3,000 miles. The work of construction was speeded during the Second World War, the countries concerned receiving aid from the United States, but recent progress has been slower. By 1951, 61 per cent. of the highway had been finished and another 30 per cent., though unpaved, was usable. There remained an impassable gap in western Guatemala, and others in Costa Rica and Panama, together totalling some 250 miles. Central America has been called a connecting link between North and South America; but so far it has been rather a barrier.

Agriculture is the chief industry in Central America, although less than 10 per cent. of the surface is cultivated. The more advanced Indian communities were agricultural before the Spanish occupation, and in large measure still carry on the same methods and cultivate the same crops. As in Mexico, maize occupies more land than any other crop. Sugar-cane, beans, and various starchy root crops are common.

In modern times certain commercial crops have become important, but the most important of all as an export commodity, coffee, occupies a very small proportion of the surface, and the exacting requirements of this crop (cf. p. 197) limit it to certain districts, the best of which are plateaus or high basins mantled with volcanic ash. The high quality of the product causes it to be in great demand in continental Europe. The industry is a Central American one, but European and United States interests have a strong hold on it.

Bananas (see p. 216) are second among the exports of Central America, but the cultivation of this fruit as now carried on is of modern and foreign origin. It demanded, for its inception, large amounts of capital and a high degree of organisation. Until comparatively recent times the Caribbean coast, where all the banana

estates lie, was an uninhabited wilderness. The inhabitants of the temperate highlands of this region had never tried to subdue the dense, fever-ridden forests of the rainy lowlands. Individual enterprise was helpless in the face of such obstacles. In a banana district it was necessary to build a network of railways radiating from a newly equipped port, to clear the forest, to plant and tend thousands of acres of bananas, to harvest the crop week by week in perfect condition on scheduled time, to be transported successively by man, mule, tramway, railway, and special refrigerating ocean liner to a United States or European port, and thence to be distributed by special railway cars. Thousands of negroes were brought as labourers from the West Indies, particularly Jamaica, and these have had to be housed, supplied with their everyday needs, protected against disease, and in some cases governed and policed. English and not Spanish is the language of the banana districts. The United Fruit Company of the United States is the largest of the organisations concerned.

Other crops are sugar-cane, principally for the domestic market, cacao, oil-seeds, and coconuts. Cacao is a commercial crop that has been growing in importance, particularly in Costa Rica. It replaced bananas in some of the older districts, where a banana blight, spreading uncontrollably, had infected the soil. Central America is a rather important source of supply of coconuts for the United States, being near enough to ship fresh nuts instead of the less bulky copra for oil only. Of the miles of coconut palms fringing the well-drained, well-watered beaches of the Caribbean coast, some belong to fruit companies and some to coastal Indian tribes.

Mineral industries play a minor part. Precious metals were mined in prehistoric times, and the Spaniards were mainly attracted to the mining districts; but large rich deposits are lacking, and small primitive workings are the rule, except in Nicaragua, which in 1956 exported 216,000 fine ounces of gold (£2.7m.).

Forest industries are widespread, though their importance is not commensurate with the proportion of tree-covered land, which occupies about one-half of the whole area. Mahogany, Spanish cedar, rosewoods, and other less important cabinet woods, as well as dyewoods (such as logwoods), grow in various places on the Caribbean slope, and in some relatively moist forests on the Pacific slope, but the valuable trees are widely scattered among those of little value. There are unmixed stands of pine, suitable for structural timber, on sandy ridges of the Caribbean slope, but their isolated situation does not favour easy working. Dyewood exploitation continues in dry as well as moist forests, although adversely affected by coal-tar dye competition. Rubber-gathering has declined. Chicle is gathered in forests adjacent to the Mexican chicle territory. Of the numerous other forest resources, some, such as Peruvian balsam, have been known and utilised for centuries.

Manufacturing industries have made much progress in the last two decades and are now both numerous and diverse, though they do not challenge the paramount position of agriculture. With the exception of factories concerned with the processing of coffee and other raw materials they are mostly confined to the production of goods for the home market, such as textiles, shoes, furniture, soap, cigarettes, and matches. Household industries survive in communities which preserve an Indian culture.

The bulk of the trade, both import and export, of the whole region is with the United States.

**GUATEMALA** is the most populous and productive of the six republics. It has a 200-mile coastline on the Pacific and one of 70 miles on the Caribbean, and meets at its frontiers four other countries: Mexico in the north and west, Honduras and El Salvador in the south, and British Honduras (to which it has laid claim for over a century) in the east. Mountains rising to nearly 14,000 feet occupy two-thirds of the land, other physical features being a large and undeveloped northern plain and low coastal strips. Both highlands and lowlands are densely forested, trees and jungle growth covering 45 per cent. of the whole area, which extends to 42,000 square miles (four-fifths the size of England). Arable land and pastures occupy 20 per cent., and about 35 per cent. is waste or built on. The 3½m. people are largely concentrated on the Pacific side, on fertile slopes 1,000–5,000 feet above sea-level, and here is situated the capital, Guatemala City, which is the home of some 300,000 people. Only small numbers are found on the Caribbean side (in spite of some important coffee and banana interests) and still fewer on the northern plain. The pure-blooded Indians, who constitute over half the population, are descendants of the Mayas and Aztecs, of whose distant civilisations there are numerous remains.

The best coffee is grown between the 2,000 and 5,000 feet contours. It accounts for over three-fourths of the value of the exports, bananas making up nearly another 10 per cent. Large acreages are devoted to other crops for domestic consumption, notably sugar, maize, beans, wheat, rice, tobacco, and essential oils. Livestock include over a million cattle, three-quarters of a million sheep, and a third of a million pigs. The unit of currency is the Quetzal, on a par with the U.S. \$. Imports in 1956 reached Quetzales 137m. (£49m.), exports Q.106m. (£38m.). The United States supplied two-thirds of the imports and took three-fourths of the exports.

**BRITISH HONDURAS** shuts off the undeveloped northern part of Guatemala from the Caribbean and is itself bordered on the north by the Mexican peninsula of Yucatan. The most sparsely populated political division of Central America, the territory has

within its 8,870 square miles (a little larger than Wales) some 82,000 inhabitants, of whom a third live in the capital and chief port, Belize. The coastal areas tend to be swampy and inland there is a gradual rise to a height of several thousand feet. Much of the interior is inaccessible. Officially nearly a quarter of the country is classed as agricultural, 60 per cent. as under Crown forests, and the balance as built on or waste; but other estimates reckon that over 90 per cent. is forested. Logging and lumbering, especially of mahogany and pine, provide most of the exports. The unit of currency is the British Honduras dollar (B.H. \$4 to the £). In 1955, general imports amounted to B.H. \$14m. (£3.5m.) and national exports to B.H. \$7m. (£1.75m.). Lumber provided 63 per cent. of the exports, fruits 12 per cent., and chicle 8 per cent. The United Kingdom and the United States each supplied about 35 per cent. of the imports, and each took around 30 per cent. of the exports.

**HONDURAS**, with an area of over 43,000 square miles, is nearly five times the size of British Honduras. It has an east-west coastline of 330 miles on the Caribbean, and its land frontiers converge southwards to the Pacific, where the coastline is less than 50 miles. The republic therefore looks to the Atlantic rather than the Pacific, which carries only  $6\frac{1}{2}$  per cent. of its maritime trade. Its population of 1.7m. (chiefly mestizo) is a good deal scattered, but its capital, Tegucigalpa, has over 100,000 inhabitants. In its coastal plains and elevated interior Honduras follows the pattern of its neighbours. Over 40 per cent. is forested, nearly 30 per cent. arable or pastoral country (mostly the latter), and the rest built on or waste, etc. The unit of currency is the Lempira, valued at half a dollar (L. 5.60=£1). Special imports in 1954 were valued at L. 103m. (£18.4m.) and special exports at L. 109m. (£19.5m.) Bananas provided 57 per cent. of the exports, coffee 23 per cent., lumber 5 per cent. and silver  $3\frac{1}{2}$  per cent.—nearly 90 per cent. between them. The United States supplied over two-thirds of the imports, and took over three-fourths of the exports. In the north, large foreign corporations own extensive banana plantations. On higher ground the chief product is coffee, grown by small farmers.

**EL SALVADOR**, smallest of the Central American republics (7,720 square miles—rather less than Wales) is the most densely-populated ( $2\frac{1}{2}$ m., largely mestizo). Its frontier is confined to the Pacific—a disadvantage partly offset by an arrangement with Guatemala for free access to the Caribbean port of Puerto Barrios, with rail connection.

Over a third of the country is forested, over another <sup>1</sup>/<sub>3</sub> third is pastoral, and over a fourth is agricultural. High quality coffee provides 80 per cent. of the exports. Secondary exports are cotton, sugar and gold. Much of the cotton goes to feed a textile industry, providing a further 15 per cent. of the exports in 1956. Cattle number

nearly 1m. and pigs  $\frac{1}{3}$ m. Outstanding among forest products is balsam; Salvador is the main source of world supply of this medicinal gum. The unit of currency is the Colon, with an exchange value of Colones  $2\frac{1}{2}$  to the U.S. \$ (C.7=£1). Special imports in 1956 were valued at C.261 (£37.4m.) and special exports at C.281 (£40m.). The United States supplied half the imports and took 45 per cent. of the exports, while Germany took 30 per cent. and Japan over 10 per cent.

San Salvador, the capital (over 200,000), is nearly 20 miles inland from its port, La Libertad. Thirty-five miles north-east a 200-ft.-high dam and hydro-electric power works, on the Lempa river, were opened in 1954; in 1956 the output was 120 kWh.

**NICARAGUA** (57,000 sq. miles) is the largest state in Central America. The volcanic Central American chain, broken in the south by a low isthmus once considered as an alternative route for the Panama Canal, divides the country so that about three-quarters drains into the Caribbean and a quarter into the Pacific. The land area of the Pacific slopes is further reduced by two large lakes with a combined area of nearly 3,500 square miles. Yet on the Pacific side are found most of the agricultural land and nearly 70 per cent of the population (mostly mestizo) of  $1\frac{1}{2}$ m. On the shores of the smaller lake, is situated the capital city of Managua (200,000), rebuilt after an earthquake in 1931.

Over 43 per cent. of the country is forested and a third is water and waste. Only 6 per cent. is suitable for crops and 4 per cent. for pasturage, but 21 per cent. is classed as potentially productive though not in present use. Cotton and coffee are the most valuable exports accounting respectively for 43 and 39 per cent. of the exports in 1955. Other exports included oil seeds and nuts (7 per cent.) and lumber (5 per cent.) Sugar is produced on the Pacific side, but not to such an extent as the favourable climatic conditions make possible, coffee being more popular. Out of over 1m. cattle, the largest herds are on the Pacific side. But forestry is carried on in the east, along some of the principal rivers, though production is falling. Mineral wealth is largely confined to gold (see p. 796). Communication between the two coastal areas has been aided by a road, which links up with the Inter-American Highway; before the route came into use surface travel was by way of the Panama Canal. Work has been proceeding on a project to link the two coasts by a waterway across the low southern isthmus, canalising the waters of the River San Juan, which separates Nicaragua from Costa Rica.

The unit of currency is the Cordoba, which for ordinary transactions has an exchange value (1958) of about a shilling, having been devalued in 1955 to the rate of 7 cordobas=U.S.\$1. But foreign trade is recorded in 'gold cordobas', equivalent to dollars. General imports in 1955 were valued at 69.6m. gold cordobas, exports at

72m. (approximately £25m. and £26m.). The United States supplied two-thirds of the imports and took 35 per cent. of the exports, while Germany took 18 per cent., and Mexico and Japan each around 15 per cent.

**COSTA RICA** (19,700 square miles; two-thirds the size of Scotland) is sandwiched between Nicaragua and Panama at a part of Central America where the mountains and coastal strips are confined within a minimum breadth of about 70 miles. The heart of the country is a plateau or high basin bordered by volcanic peaks. Rivers are numerous on both sides of the central range and, besides feeding hydro-electric power stations, add valuable alluvial material to a soil already enriched by volcanic ash. An unusually high proportion (78 per cent.) of the country is under forest, and nearly 20 per cent. is available for farming (1,370 square miles arable; 2,410 square miles pastoral), leaving only about 2½ per cent. unworkable. Agriculture is mostly in the hands of smallholders and follows the familiar pattern of coffee on the uplands, bananas and sugar-cane on the lowlands, with the addition of abaca (manila hemp) and cacao on the Caribbean side, rice and maize on the Pacific side. Cattle number 800,000.

The unit of currency is the Colon, with an official sterling exchange rate of nearly 16 colones to the £ (free rate, over 18). Imports in 1956 were valued at U.S. \$91m. (£32½m.), exports at U.S. \$63½m. (£22½m.) Coffee provided 53 per cent. of the exports, bananas 34 per cent., cocoa 5 per cent., manila hemp under 2 per cent. The United States supplied over half the imports and took nearly half the exports, while Germany took nearly a third.

The Caribbean port of Limon and the Pacific port of Puntarenas share most of the trade. Both are connected by rail with the capital, San José, which lies on the central plateau and has a third of the total population of 1m. Most of the people are of European descent.

**PANAMA**, nearly as large as Scotland, is a rugged, jungle-clad neck of land, 490 miles long and nowhere a quarter as wide. It is crossed by the Panama Canal, and joins on to South America in the republic of Colombia, from which it broke away in 1903. Of its 28,750 square miles, less than 4,000 are arable and pastoral. Cattle number over ½m. The unit of currency is the Balboa, equal to the U.S. dollar. Special imports in 1956 amounted to \$83m. (£30m.) and special exports to \$17m. (£6m.). Bananas provided two-thirds of the exports, and fish a quarter. The United States supplied 60 per cent. of the imports, the Canal Zone 10 per cent. The States took practically all the exports. Services to the Canal Zone offset the excess imports. The population of about 1m. include 150,000 in the capital, Panama City, close to the Pacific terminal of the canal, and 60,000 in Colon, at the Caribbean terminal. Both cities are enclaves, excluded from the Canal Zone and are linked by rail.

The Panama Canal Zone is a strip about ten miles wide running from north-west to south-east across the centre of the republic. It was granted in perpetuity by Panama to the United States in 1903 in return for a lump sum of \$10m., and an annual payment now standing at \$1.93m. The canal, built by the United States and opened in 1914, is 50 miles long from deep water to deep water. The passage takes 7 to 8 hours; three sets of locks have to be negotiated. A plan to convert the canal into a sea-level waterway has been under consideration. The administration was reorganised in 1951. Government is exercised by the Canal Zone Government, and commercial management is in the hands of the Panama Canal Company, which took over, with enlarged powers, the Panama Railroad Company. The headquarters of the Company are at Balboa, at the Pacific terminal of the canal, not far from Panama City. The civilian population of the zone is about 40,000. The table below shows how traffic has varied since 1914, and its pronounced upward trend since the Second World War.

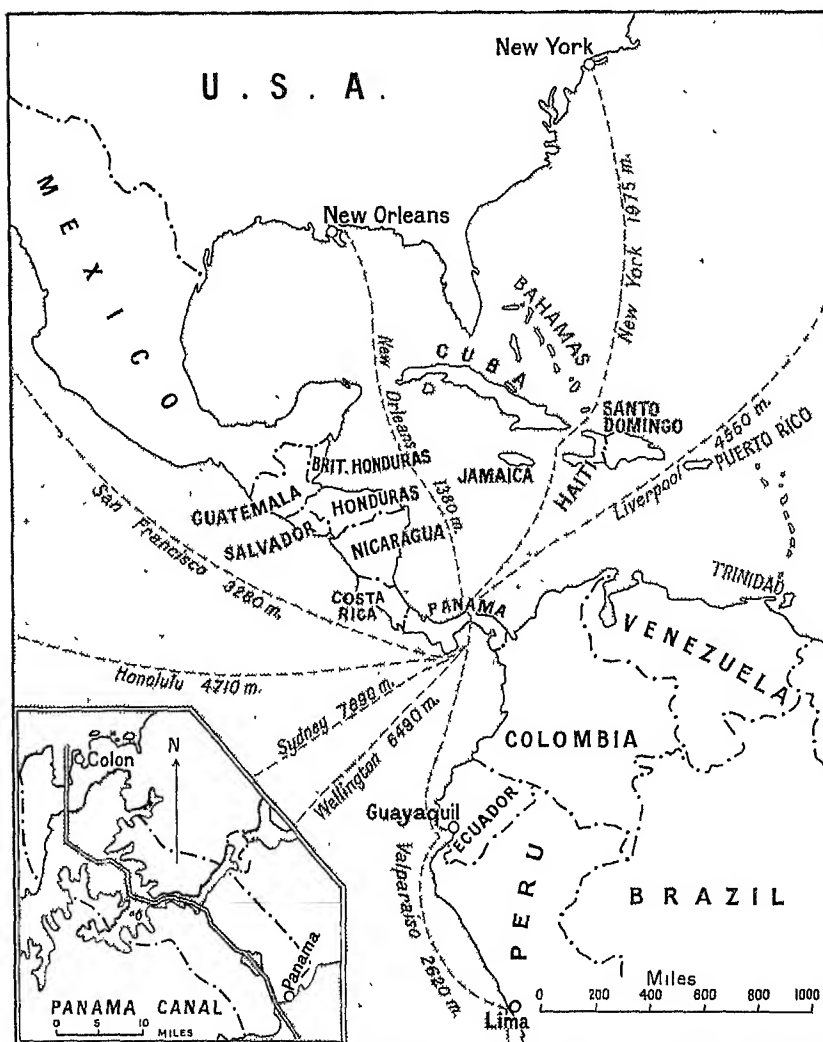
RETURN OF SHIPPING AND TONNAGE THROUGH THE  
PANAMA CANAL

OCEAN-GOING TRAFFIC ONLY; TONNAGES IN THOUSANDS

Fiscal year ending June 30.	Vessels.	Net Tonnage <sup>1</sup> (thousands)	Cargo Tonnage (thousands)	Fiscal year ending June 30.	Vessels.	Net Tonnage <sup>1</sup> (thousands)	Cargo Tonnage (thousands)
1915	1,058	3,507	4,888	1939	5,903	27,170	27,866
1916 <sup>2</sup>	724	2,212	3,093	1940	5,370	24,144	27,299
1917	1,738	5,357	7,054	1941	4,727	20,642	24,950
1918	1,989	6,072	7,525	1942	2,688	11,010	13,607
1919	1,948	5,658	6,910	1943	1,822	8,233	10,599
1920	2,393	7,898	9,372	1944	1,562	6,073	7,003
1921	2,791	10,550	11,595	1945	1,939	8,380	8,603
1923	3,908	17,206	19,566	1946	3,747	17,516	14,977
1925	4,592	21,134	23,956	1947	4,260	20,233	21,670
1927	5,293	24,245	27,733	1948	4,678	22,902	24,117
1929	6,289	27,585	30,647	1949	4,793	23,473	25,305
1931	5,370	25,690	25,065	1950	5,448	28,013	28,872
1932	4,362	21,842	19,798	1951	5,593	27,180	30,073
1933	4,162	21,094	18,161	1952	6,524	30,674	33,610
1934	5,234	26,410	24,704	1953	7,410	36,768	36,095
1935	5,180	25,720	25,309	1954	7,784	38,027	39,095
1936	5,382	25,923	26,505	1955	7,997	38,643	40,646
1937	5,387	25,430	28,108	1956	8,209	41,273	45,119
1938	5,524	25,950	27,385	1957	8,579	43,714	49,702

<sup>1</sup> Net tonnages based on Panama Canal measurement rules.

<sup>2</sup> Canal closed by landslides for 7 months.



### THE PANAMA CANAL AS A GEOGRAPHICAL AND COMMERCIAL CENTRE

Showing its situation in relation to North and South America and its attraction as a nodal point for worldwide shipping services.



## SOUTH AMERICA

This, the smaller half of the New World, has at least four-fifths of its area within the tropics, and hence yields chiefly tropical products; but here as elsewhere the temperate area, relatively to its extent, furnishes a greater abundance of commercial commodities, and it is in this part of the continent that the rate of increase in the production of such commodities and the development of means of distribution for them have been most rapid, and European immigration has been most constant. The most powerful South American country, Argentina, lies almost wholly in temperate latitudes.

The lofty chains of the Andes, on the west side of the continent, form an important climatic barrier. They extend for a distance of between 4,000 and 5,000 miles throughout the entire length of South America, rising to heights of over 20,000 ft. and reaching their culmination at the back of Valparaiso in Mt. Aconagua, which has an elevation of over 23,000 ft. In the latitudes in which trade winds prevail they arrest the moisture-laden winds from the Atlantic, draining the moisture out of winds that have already been partly drained in their course over the continent farther east. The western slopes of these mountains, on the other hand, receive in these latitudes no rain from the Atlantic, and as far as 33°S. little or none from the Pacific. On that side the tendency of the wind is to blow away from the land, and the rarefaction of the air on the narrow strip west of the Andes is not enough to counteract that tendency. There is also, flowing northwards along the west coast the cold Humboldt or Peruvian current, which is accompanied by much upswelling of cold bottom water. The air over this current is cold and, if moving towards the land, is not likely to deposit any moisture over the warmer land surface. Hence the absolute desert frequently entirely rainless, is along the actual sea coast. The Andes also constitute a great obstacle to communication between the east and west coasts. More than one railway reaches a height of upwards of 14,000 feet before attaining the tablelands between the principal chains of the mountains.

Some of the mighty rivers to the east of the Andes form excellent waterways. The Orinoco, in the north of the continent, is navigable for steamers continuously for nearly a thousand miles.

The Amazon is navigable without interruption to the base of the Andes, a distance of 2,600 miles from its mouth, and many more thousands of miles of navigation are afforded by its tributaries great and small; ocean liners regularly reach Manaus, 1,000 miles from the mouth. Many of these tributaries, however, have their navigable course greatly obstructed by falls and rapids. The value of the navigation of the Amazon is diminished by the paucity of population and products in the region through which it flows and by the similarity of the products in nearly the whole of its navigable course. The sole important article of trade is rubber. The inland waterway which is of most importance and likely to remain most useful is outside the Amazon basin; it flows from north to south in the upper Paraguay and the lower Parana, a waterway which is uninterrupted from near the source of the former river, and which, like the Mississippi, brings hot and temperate climates into direct communication.

In general the populous areas are well served by railways, which in some cases also provide communication between adjoining states. In recent years rather more attention has been devoted to the development of roads, particularly the Pan-American Highway system, a scheme which aims ultimately to link all the countries of Central and South America with a master network of first-class motor routes. Much work remains to be done on this large and costly project, but its completion will undoubtedly have a considerable effect on cultural and commercial relations throughout the continent.

In the twenty years 1937-56 the population rose by more than 50 per cent., as against 10 per cent. in Europe and 36 per cent. in North and Central America, but it is still comparatively scanty except in a few areas such as the pampas of Argentina and the coffee lands of Brazil: 1956 estimate, 127m. On this estimate, and reckoning the area of the continent at rather less than 7m. square miles, the average density of the population is about 18 per square mile. Whites of pure blood form only about four-tenths of the whole, negroes about one-tenth, and the remainder are either native Indians or people of mixed race. The white population in Brazil is of Portuguese origin, and Portuguese is there the official language; but elsewhere, except in Guiana, the whites are mainly of Spanish descent, and Spanish is the official language.

One effect on Latin America of the Second World War was to cut off the supplies of manufactured goods on which she relied. In consequence, internal industries have developed. A wide range of agricultural products has also been introduced in the attempt to achieve greater economic self-sufficiency. Inter-state trade within the continent has been increased and foreign investment affected. By 1949 British investments (totalling nearly £600m.) were only half

what they were ten years earlier, and trade with Britain had also declined. Trade with the United States and Canada, on the other hand, showed a very large increase compared with pre-war years. Another feature has been the restoration of trade with Germany, which is striving with some success to regain her pre-war position in this respect.

## BRAZIL

A federal republic with an area of 3.3m. square miles, Brazil is nearly as large as all the other states and territories of South America put together. It has frontiers with all of them except Ecuador and Chile, and an Atlantic coastline of some 5,000 miles. It is the world's fourth largest country, being exceeded in size only by the U.S.S.R., China, and Canada. Over 60 per cent. (2m. square miles) is under forest and over 20 per cent. ( $\frac{3}{4}$ m. square miles) is classified as built-on or waste, while only  $2\frac{1}{4}$  per cent. (but this is an area comparable with Uruguay) is arable land, and  $12\frac{1}{2}$  per cent. (415,000 square miles, an area larger than Bolivia) is permanent pasture; the residue of 4 per cent. (132,000 square miles, larger than the British Isles) being assessed as potentially productive though not in present use. In the north, are the broad, sparsely populated plains of the Amazon basin, crossed by the equator and covered with dense, swampy, tropical rain forest. Southward they rise to the central tablelands (*campos*), 1,000–3,000 feet above sea-level, which cover nearly a quarter of the country with savanna vegetation. Here also the land is very thinly peopled, since the coastal ranges to the east cut off the Atlantic moisture and give little opportunity for a profitable livelihood. Southward again the plateau rises into rolling hill country culminating in ridges which reach a maximum height of over 9,000 feet before dropping sharply to the sea. It is in this third area, crossed by the Tropic of Capricorn, that the centre of economic and political activity is found; in this area, comprising only about a sixth of the republic, live more than half the population of 60m. (1956). Most of the remainder are scattered along the coastal regions to the south and north. Politically, the country is divided into five regions, comprising twenty states, five federal territories, and a federal district in which is situated the capital, Rio de Janeiro.

Brazil is important both as a manufacturing country and as a source of agricultural products. The latter are of primary concern, since they not only provide employment for a far greater number of people but contribute much of the raw material required by industry, so helping to maintain a high degree of economic self-sufficiency.

The increasing demands of industry have, however, caused a drain on rural labour to the detriment of agriculture, and a movement back to the land is now being encouraged.

Coffee is the great crop; it grows so luxuriantly in the *terra roxa* (red soil) of the south-eastern region that the production is unsurpassed by any other country and the difficulty is one of limiting supplies to preserve an economic price. During the 1930s a drastic policy of burning the surplus output resulted in the destruction in all of 77m. bags.<sup>1</sup> In post-war years a state approaching equilibrium has been maintained, but controls of various kinds are still applied to safeguard against a repetition of the earlier experience. In 1956 the coffee plantations yielded a crop of over a million tons from 8½m. acres and provided nearly 70 per cent. of the total value of the exports. The normal annual crop is now over a million tons. The south-east devotes nearly as great an acreage to maize as to coffee, but this staple cereal, of which Brazil is one of the leading producers, is grown not only there but in most parts of the country as a subsistence crop, the total yield in 1956 being 7.6m. tons from 15m. acres.

Cotton, long established in the north-eastern bulge of Brazil, began to receive serious attention in the south-east when coffee slumped in the 1930s, and output in the latter area has so increased that in 1956 it contributed more than half the total yield of 400,000 tons (from an overall area of 6.5m. acres). Raw cotton has become the second export commodity, its value representing 16 per cent. of the whole. Very considerable areas are also devoted to rice (6m. acres, yielding 4m. tons of paddy), beans (6m. acres), cassava (2.9m. acres), sugar (2.8m. acres) and wheat (2.3m. acres). Other products, cultivated on a smaller scale, include cocoa, potatoes, tobacco, ground-nuts, and fruit. Most of these are grown to meet the needs of the home population, but cocoa, which flourishes along the east coast, is third in the list of exports (4½ per cent. of the total) and makes Brazil second only to Ghana as a producer, its crop in 1956 being 165,000 tons from 900,000 acres, against Ghana's 264,000 tons from 1.6m. acres. There are exportable surpluses of tobacco (1½ per cent.), sisal (1 per cent.), rice, sugar, and fruit. Production of wheat was greatly increased under the stimulus of war but is still far from sufficient to meet home needs; and wheat and flour figure largely among the imports.

The pastoral industry is of special importance in the extreme south, in the region adjoining the grasslands of Uruguay, but other concentrations of livestock occur in the states of the south-east and north-east, as well as in the *campos* of the central plateau, which are used as breeding areas whence cattle are moved to the seaboard states for fattening. Cattle number 66m., pigs 40m., sheep 18m.,

<sup>1</sup> Nearly 5m. tons. A bag of Brazilian coffee is reckoned as 60 kilos, so that seventeen bags are just over a ton.

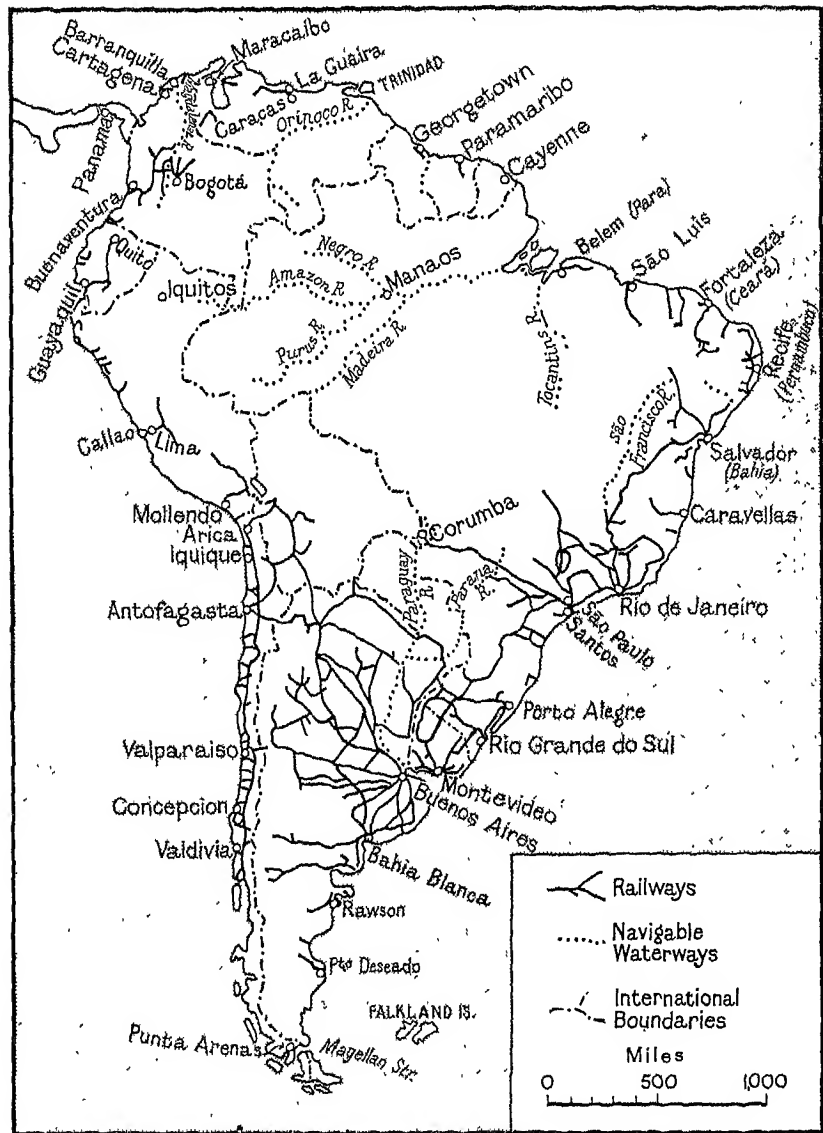
goats 10m., and horses 7.5m. Only India, the United States, and U.S.S.R. have larger herds of cattle. These great numbers of livestock, besides supplying meat and dairy produce for home consumption, form the basis of a diminishing export of chilled and canned meat and hides. The wool clip, from the sheep farms in the far south, goes mostly to Brazilian textile mills.

The extensive forest lands, though furnishing many valuable commercial products, lie comparatively undeveloped, particularly in the case of Amazonia. Some timber is floated down the Amazon to its mouth, but most of the timber supplies come from the pine-woods of the Rio Parana. Rubber is of some importance in the Amazon region, though it no longer enjoys the world supremacy it had before the development of the Malayan and Indonesian plantations. Exports are small. Carnauba wax (used for making gramophone records), vegetable oils (of which the Amazon valley is probably the world's largest source), maté tea. Brazil nuts, balata gum, reptile skins, and sisal fibre are other products of the forests. Plantations of tung trees are coming into commercial production.

The mineral deposits are of great variety and in some cases of very considerable size, but exploitation has been slow. Iron ore of good quality is mined on the surface in the south-east, production in 1956 being 4m. tons. Reserves have been estimated at a quarter of the world's supply. Coal of not very good quality is mined in the southernmost states at the rate of about 2m. tons annually. Gold, manganese, bauxite, mica, and diamonds are secondary minerals worked in the south-east, and farther north oil has been found, though not in great volume.

Except for engineering products, local industries now go a long way towards meeting home requirements for manufactured goods. Before the Second World War, Brazil was already the foremost manufacturing country of South America, and the disappearance of foreign competition during the war years did much to aid the consolidation and expansion of her industries. Those concerned with the processing of food and the production of cotton and woollen textiles are the most flourishing, the mills providing an important export of cotton piece goods. Iron and steel mills and rubber factories have also seen a great expansion. Hydro-electric power resources are being developed; in 1956 consumption was 11,000m. kWh.

In many regions capable of development, lack of communications is still a barrier to progress. Nearly 23,000 miles of railways provide an excellent network over the populous regions of the south-east and south, and in the north-east around Recife (Pernambuco), but in other coastal areas there are only varying lengths of disconnected track and in the main central mass none at all. Distances are great and the terrain does not favour a widespread develop-



SOUTH AMERICA: PRINCIPAL RAILWAYS AND NAVIGABLE WATERWAYS

ment of railways. Plans have therefore been made to link isolated parts of the country with good highways. Energetic progress is being made to that end, but the fulfilment of the whole plan must be regarded as a very long-term project. Meanwhile, most of Brazil's roads (290,000 miles) are of unimproved dirt. Coastal shipping is naturally of great importance and the volume of traffic shows a steady increase. There is also a great deal of regular traffic on the navigable waters (22,000 miles) of the great rivers, but these do not effectively serve the main centres of population. The growth of air transport has been as notable as in other South American countries.

Brazil has received a steady flow of immigrants from Portugal, Italy, and Spain, and there is a large number of German settlers in the southern highlands. More than half the people are white. Rio de Janeiro, long the capital<sup>1</sup> and chief seaport, famous for the beauty of its harbour, has been displaced as the largest city by Sao Paulo, in the adjoining state of that name, not far from the coast but at an elevation of about 3,000 ft.; it is the commercial capital of the coffee industry, and is connected by rail with the port of Santos, which surpasses Rio in the export of coffee. Salvador (Bahia) and Recife (Pernambuco) are seaports of the north-east region where cocoa, sugar, tobacco, and cotton are produced; Manaus (a thousand miles up the Amazon) and Belem (Para) serve the Amazon region. The ports of the temperate southern region yielding varied animal products are Rio Grande do Sul, Pelotas, and Porto Alegre, all of which are accessible only to vessels of small draught, on account of the bar at the entrance to the shallow lagoon on which they all stand. Everywhere the ports are inadequate; dredging and other improvements figure largely in Government works.

The Brazilian unit of currency, the Cruzeiro, has an official exchange rate of 52·7 to the £, giving it a value of about 4½d.; but there is also a free market in which the cruzeiro has been obtainable for as little as between 1d. and 1½d. In the United Nations *Yearbook of International Trade Statistics*, Brazil's general imports in 1956 are recorded in cruzeiros (Cr.23,224m., or, at the official exchange rate, (£440m.), and national exports in U.S. dollars (U.S. \$1,482m. or £529m.). The chief imports are machinery and vehicles; the chief exports have been indicated earlier in this section. The United States supplied nearly 30 per cent. of the imports, Venezuela nearly 10 per cent., and Germany nearly 7 per cent. Half the exports were taken by the United States and nearly 7 per cent. by Germany, the second-best customer. The United Kingdom, which took Germany's place after the war, has again fallen far behind.

<sup>1</sup> A law of 1956 provided that before the end of 1960 the capital should be transferred from Rio de Janeiro to a new inland site, Brasilia, in the state of Goias.

## POPULATIONS OF PRINCIPAL TOWNS IN BRAZIL (1957 ESTIMATES)

Sao Paulo . . . . .	3,150,000	Fortaleza (Ceara) . . . . .	280,000
Rio de Janeiro . . . . .	2,940,000	Belem (Para) . . . . .	261,000
Recife (Pernambuco) . . . . .	704,000	Santos . . . . .	254,000
Salvador (Bahia) . . . . .	533,000	Curitiba . . . . .	232,000
Porto Alegre . . . . .	513,000	Niteroi . . . . .	222,000
Bello Horizonte . . . . .	501,000	Manaos (1950 census) . . . . .	90,000

## THE GUIANAS

The only portions of the mainland of South America now remaining as possessions of European Powers are the Guianas—British, French, and Dutch—ranged along part of the north coast of the continent and extending inland till they reach the watershed of the Amazon basin. Broadly speaking, each comprises a strip of fertile lowland along the coast, and one or more river valleys affording access to the interior, which consists of huge blocks of the forested, undeveloped Guiana massif.

**BRITISH GUIANA** has an area of about 83,000 square miles—nearly the size of Great Britain—and is almost as large as the other two Guianas combined. It is split into two parts by the Essequibo river, which traverses the length of the territory from south to north but is interrupted by rapids. As much as 77 per cent. (64,000 square miles) of the whole is forested, and 6–7 per cent. (over 5,000 square miles) is arable or pasture land. Another 8 per cent. (nearly 7,000 square miles), though now unused, is potentially productive, and the remaining 8–9 per cent. (7,000 square miles) is built on, waste, or unknown. Agricultural production is almost wholly confined to the lowland zone, which extends up to 30 miles in depth along the 270-mile coastline and is largely below sea-level. Behind this zone a second belt, about 100 miles deep, provides most of the territory's mineral and forest wealth. The remaining hinterland, partly mountain, partly savanna, produces hardly anything at present.

The unit of currency is the British West Indian dollar (4s. 2d.). Imports in 1956 amounted to B.W.I. \$99.9m. (£20.8m.), exports to B.W.I. \$94.7m. (£19.7m.). Food accounts for 20 per cent. of the imports by value, manufactured goods and machinery for 60 per cent. The staples of the export trade are sugar (grown on 75,000 acres and yielding over  $\frac{1}{4}$ m. tons of raw sugar) and bauxite (mined for despatch to Canada for manufacture into aluminium). Exports of sugar and rum in 1956 provided 48 per cent. of the total value, and of bauxite 31 per cent. Rice, grown on around 150,000 acres, is primarily a subsistence crop, but exports in 1956 provided 10 per cent. of the total.



Coconuts, grown on 32,000 acres, are almost entirely for internal consumption. Smaller acreages are devoted to coffee and cocoa, fruit, and ground provisions. The livestock industry is capable of great expansion, for though the potential grazing land is extensive the number of cattle reared at the present time is less than 200,000. In the forests, balata is collected and some of the timber, notably greenheart, is worked, providing 3 per cent. of the exports in 1956. Much more valuable are the mineral products. The importance of bauxite has already been noticed. Gold and diamonds are extracted from alluvial workings in the river valleys, and in 1956 diamonds were exported to the value of over £4m.

Nearly half the population of 500,000 (1956) are East Indians, who supply most of the labour for the sugar plantations. Georgetown, the capital, at the mouth of the Demerara river, has a population of 120,000. As in the case of British Honduras, the small population and generally undeveloped nature of the territory have led to suggestions that British Guiana might relieve overcrowding in the British West Indies, but it does not seem likely that the colony will make a home for many immigrants in the near future. A new constitution in 1956 instituted a Legislative Council of which at least half the members must be elected.

**NETHERLANDS GUIANA**, or **SURINAM**, is defined as an autonomous territory of the Kingdom of the Netherlands, having obtained self-government in 1950. Covering an area of about 55,000 square miles (nearly the size of England and Wales), it is similar in character to British Guiana, with a corresponding low coastal zone and a rising hinterland covered with forest and jungle growth. It lacks, however, the broad central valley that distinguishes British Guiana, but has a smaller area of 'waste'—under 4,000 square miles, about a fifteenth of the whole. Forests (40,000 square miles) cover nearly all the rest of the country. Arable and pastoral areas are estimated at only 150 square miles (100,000 acres), the balance of over 10,000 square miles, though potentially productive, is not in present use. The cultivated area, producing a variety of tropical products, chiefly paddy, is in the coastal zone, where the rivers are navigable.

Bauxite is the only big item of the export trade. It exceeds British Guiana's output in both quantity and value, and provided 80 per cent. of the exports in 1956. The unit of currency is the Surinam florin or guilder, with an exchange value of about 3s. 9d.—5½ to the £. Special imports in 1956 were valued at Fl.62½m. (£11.7m.) and special exports at Fl.58m. (£10.9m.). The bauxite exported amounted to 3,450 tons valued at Fl.45.5m. (£8½m.). Most of the ore is sent to the United States for refining.

About half the population of 250,000 are Asiatics. Paramaribo, with 100,000 inhabitants, is the capital and chief port, and the only

large town. It lies on the Surinam river a dozen miles from its mouth. This river and others form a convenient means of communication with parts of the interior, but navigation of the upper reaches is prevented by rapids.

**FRENCH GUIANA** is the smallest and least developed of the three territories, with an area of about 35,000 square miles—about a sixth the size of France, of which it is an overseas department. About 95 per cent. of the territory is covered with forest; only some 7,000 acres are under crops, and under 200 square miles are classed as pastoral. The mineral structure includes a good deal of gold, but the deposits are widely scattered and not easily worked. Cayenne the capital and chief port, has nearly half the total population of 29,000. The notorious Devil's Isle is no longer used as a penal settlement.

## VENEZUELA

The United States of Venezuela comprise 20 autonomous states, two territories, and a federal district, constituting a federal republic in the north of the continent, bordering Colombia in the west, Brazil in the south, and British Guiana in the east. Its 2,000-mile coastline looks northward, mostly to the Caribbean but also to the open Atlantic. There are four well-defined regions: the main mass of the Guiana Highlands in the south-east; the central plains, or *llanos*, occupying the basin of the Orinoco; the northern highlands, formed by the Andean and coastal ranges; and the lowlands around the great lake or lagoon of Maracaibo, in the extreme north-west corner.

The Guiana Highlands, rising towards the south to about 10,000 feet, occupy about half the total area of 352,000 square miles (four times the size of Great Britain) and are heavily forested, but have been little explored or exploited. The grassy central plains cover a quarter of the country and support about 20 per cent. of the population of 6m., while the northern highlands (reaching an altitude of over 16,000 feet in the Andes and nearly 9,000 feet along the coastal range) support about 65 per cent. Another 10 per cent. of the population inhabit the Maracaibo lowlands, which are the smallest of the four regions but the chief source of the country's wealth.

Venezuela is to-day the world's second oil producer, and it exports more crude petroleum than any other country. The industry has grown very rapidly; the 1956 yield of 129m. tons (904m. barrels) was more than twice that of 1946, six times that of 1934, and nearly fifty times that of 1925. In 1957 the yield was estimated at 145m. tons. Oil now provides over 90 per cent. by value of all Venezuela's exports. It is found in three areas, of which the basin of Lake

—in addition to the oil refineries—sugar and textile mills, cement works and leather tanneries.

Caracas, the capital, lies 3,000 feet up on the southern slopes of the coastal range, 23 miles from its port, La Guaira. The latter is centrally situated on the coastline and through it enters the greater part of the imports. Exports, on the other hand, leave chiefly from the oil port of Maracaibo. The unit of currency is the Bolivar, with variable rates of exchange. The official rate is B.3.35 to the United States \$—about B.9½ to the £. Imports in 1956 amounted to B.3,438m. (£368m.) exports to B.7,107m. (£761m.). Oil provided £712m. (93 per cent.) of the exports. Half the balance was accounted for by exports of iron ore; coffee and cocoa were the only other notable items. In the United Nations *Year Book of International Trade Statistics*, iron ore, coffee and cocoa are the only three exports listed other than oil. Nearly a third of the exports by value go to the oil refineries in the Dutch island of Curaçao and Aruba, which lie off the coast of Venezuela, and nearly 40 per cent. went to the United States. The States supplied nearly two-thirds of the imports, prominent among which are iron and steel manufactures, machinery and motor vehicles.

#### ESTIMATED POPULATION OF PRINCIPAL TOWNS 1956

Caracas . . .	1,102,000	Barquisimeto (Northern Highlands) . . .	165,000
Maracaibo . . .	390,000	Valencia (Northern Highlands) . . .	124,000

## COLOMBIA

This republic, which is more than twice the size of France, occupies the north-western corner of South America, bordering upon Venezuela and Brazil in the east, Peru and Ecuador in the south. In the north and west its 2,000-mile coastline is broken near its centre by the narrow land mass of Panama, so that one part (the longer) is washed by the Caribbean and the other by the Pacific. The chain of the Andes, following the Pacific coast closely as it sweeps up from the south, spreads out northward into three roughly parallel ranges—the Western, Central, and Eastern cordilleras—which maintain a height of 10–14,000 feet. In the valleys between, in the adjoining coastal areas, and particularly on the healthy tablelands of the Eastern cordillera, live 96 per cent. of the total population of 13m. The remainder of the people are dispersed over the greater area to the east—a broad, little-developed plain consisting of grassland in the north and tropical forest in the south.

The equator passes through the southern extremity of the country, but because of its varied altitudes Colombia offers considerable

climatic diversity, including a tropical zone (up to 4,500 feet), a sub-tropical zone (4,500–7,500 feet), and a temperate highland zone (7,500–10,000 feet), while in the highest regions there is perpetual snow. Dry (*verano*: summer) and wet (*invierno*: winter) seasons usually alternate every three months, but this is not the experience everywhere. The great range of climate gives rise to a correspondingly great range of crops.

About 18,700 square miles (12m. acres), or over 4 per cent. of the total area of 440,000 square miles, is cultivable, the most fertile soil occurring in the Andean valleys in areas inconveniently remote from the sea, so that access is slow. In the sub-tropical zone and in the higher parts of the tropical zone, and especially in the Cauca valley, the most important crop is coffee, of which Colombia is the world's second largest source of supply, producing about a third (330,000 tons) of the amount grown in Brazil. The yield is of fine and mild quality, and the quickly recurrent seasons mean that picking can go on almost throughout the year. On the higher ground of the temperate zone wheat and other grains are common, but primitive methods of farming are the rule. In the lowlands, maize and rice, sugar-cane, cocoa, and bananas are grown. To all these products may be added a host of others: plantains, potatoes, beans, tobacco, fibres, cotton, oil-seeds, coconuts, and rubber.

Nearly an eighth of Colombia consists of natural grazing land and in consequence the livestock industry is important. There are over 13m. head of cattle as well as over a million each of sheep, pigs, and horses. But the greater part of the country (60 per cent.) is covered with forests which are little developed, and the balance, 23 per cent is classed as waste. The mineral wealth is great, including gold and silver, whilst petroleum is also important.

The development of hydro-electric resources has given an impetus in recent years to the establishment of industries, some of which are concerned with the processing of raw materials such as coffee and sugar, while others, like the textile and steel industries, help to reduce the country's dependence on foreign supplies.

The rivers in the populous region flow northwards to the Caribbean and form Colombia's main outlets: the Magdalena is navigable for 800 miles and its tributary the Cauca for 155 miles. But in spite of the paramount importance of the Magdalena as a means of communication it is not without its disadvantages, for droughts sometimes render it unnavigable and shifting sandbanks are prevalent. In the less populous region in the east the rivers flow out of the country and into the Orinoco and the Amazon.

The terrain does not facilitate the development of railways and roads, and the problems are formidable in the case of lateral communications. The communities therefore tend to be isolated from one another. There are nearly 1,900 miles of railways, but they

consist to a large degree of short lines connecting highland areas with their river ports. Motor roads extend over a network of 16,500 miles but are not always good, though they include three main north-south highways forming part of international systems. In one mountain area the problem of freight conveyance has been solved by an aerial cableway of 45 miles (the longest in the world); in another there is a similar cableway of 29 miles for both passengers and freight. Air development has made striking progress, and frequent services now link remote areas with the main centres.

Bogotá, the capital, is within five degrees of the equator, but, by virtue of its situation 8,600 feet above sea-level, enjoys a healthy climate. It is 750 miles from the Caribbean ports of Barranquilla and Cartagena and 450 miles from the Pacific port of Buenaventura, with which it is connected by a somewhat roundabout rail route. In spite of its remote situation and indifferent communications it is the largest commercial and distribution centre.

In 1948 Colombia joined with Ecuador, Panama, and Venezuela in forming a commercial and economic union. All four territories were formerly united in the great but shortlived Republic of Colombia founded by Simon Bolivar in 1819. The unit of currency is the Colombian peso, of variable exchange value. In the International Monetary Fund, to which Colombia belongs, it ranks officially as 51 U.S. cents (about 3s. 6d.), but its legalised free market value is only about 1s. In the United Nations *Year Book of Trade Statistics*, imports and exports are quoted in pesos valued at 40 cents (2s. 10d.). Special trade imports in 1955 were returned as P.1,673m. (£239m), and exports at P.1,460m. (£208m.). Coffee provided 83 per cent. of the exports by value, petroleum and products 11 per cent., and bananas 3 per cent. Most of both the imports and the exports came from or were taken by the United States, and nearly half the petroleum exported went to the Netherlands Antilles for refining.

#### POPULATION OF PRINCIPAL TOWNS (1951)

Bogotá . . . . .	648,000	Cali . . . . .	243,000
Medellin . . . . .	358,000	Cartagena . . . . .	129,000
Barranquilla . . . . .	280,000	Bucaramanga . . . . .	112,000

## ECUADOR

Ecuador is the smallest of the four republics sharing the Pacific coast of South America. It is bordered on the north by Colombia and on the east and south by Peru, with whom it had to accept a settlement in 1942 favourable to Peruvian claims in a long-standing dispute over the ownership of a large tract of territory east of the Andes—Ecuador's Region Oriental. The term 'Region Oriental' survives with doubtful meaning at the present day. Estimates of the area of Ecuador are extraordinarily diverse. One calculation, officially adopted, puts it at 273,000 square miles, including two provinces said to constitute the Region Oriental and credited with 219,000 square miles, leaving only 57,000 square miles for the rest of the republic. United Nations publications give the area as 104,500 square miles, excluding 'Oriente Province.' Other estimates intermediate between 106,000 and 273,000 square miles add to the variety of choice. The first census, taken in 1950, met with active opposition from the tribes of the interior. The returns showed a population of something over 3m. Latest estimate, nearly 4m.

Ecuador owes its name to the fact that its capital, Quito, is almost on the equator, where it lies at a height of 9,500 feet. Bordering the Pacific are undulating plains from 20 to 90 miles wide and about 400 miles long. Behind these is a highland area formed by two parallel chains of the Andes. East of these is the much disputed Oriente, now confined, according to cartographical representation of the 1942 settlement, to a small and almost uninhabited corner of the upper Amazon basin in the far north-east of Ecuador. Of the 104,000 square miles credited to the republic in United Nations statistics, over 60 per cent. is covered with forest. Another 21 per cent., though potentially productive, is not in use. Though only a small proportion is in active farming use—over 4 per cent. arable and 8 per cent. pastoral—agriculture is the mainstay of the republic's economy. Under 6 per cent. is classed as waste.

The two cordilleran chains, rising to over 20,000 feet, are separated by a valley which lies 8,000–10,000 feet above sea-level and is divided into ten basins or pockets by lava ridges formed by the neighbouring volcanic heights. Each of these basins is a centre of population, and between them they hold the greater part of the total population of 4m. In this highland zone the main agricul-

tural occupations are the raising of livestock and the growing of cereals, fruit and vegetables for home consumption. Livestock include 1.6m. cattle; 2m. sheep; 1m. each of pigs and horses. The sheep are confined to the highlands, while other livestock are scattered throughout the country generally.

Tropical farming is pursued in the coastal zone with the aid of irrigation, and this region is responsible for almost all the exports. Cocoa was for long the outstanding product, but the incidence of witchbroom disease caused output to decline greatly. During the Second World War cocoa was overtaken by rice, in spite of the primitive methods of rice cultivation and the low yield; and more recently coffee and bananas have come to the fore. In recent years Ecuador has led the world in exports of bananas, though Brazil is far and away the biggest producer.

The Ecuadorean forests are the world's principal source of supply of that extraordinarily light wood, balsa. Other forest products include rubber, kapok, hardwood logs, tagua or ivory nuts (for the manufacture of buttons and collar studs), cinchona bark and the straw of the toquilla palm (of which Panama hats are made).

Oil is found, but output in 1956 was under  $\frac{1}{2}$ m. tons. Gold, silver, copper, and lead are also worked.

Manufacturing industries are on a small scale and include—in addition to textiles, sugar refining and oil refining—the making of Panama hats, so named because they reach the U.S. and European markets by way of Panama. It is a declining industry, suffering from competition from Japan and the Philippines.

The unit of currency is the sucre, with an official rate of exchange of 15 sucres to the U.S. \$., or 42 sucres to the £. (Rate in the free market, about 53 sucres to the £.) Imports and exports are analysed by the United Nations in U.S. dollars, imports in 1956 amounting to \$80m. (£28 $\frac{1}{2}$ m) and exports to \$94m. (£33 $\frac{1}{2}$ m.). Bananas provided 40 per cent. of the exports, coffee 31 per cent., cocoa 19 per cent.—90 per cent. between them. The United States supplied over half the imports, Germany 12 per cent., the United Kingdom 6 per cent., The States took 60 per cent. of the exports, Germany 12 per cent., Columbia, Belgium and Italy each took 4 or 5 per cent., the United Kingdom only 2 per cent.

Guayaquil, the chief port, is connected with Quito, situated in one of the highland basins, by a railway which rises to 11,653 feet; but communications generally are not greatly developed.

#### ESTIMATED POPULATION OF PRINCIPAL TOWNS (1955)

Quito	.	.	.	.	237,000	Guayaquil	.	.	.	296,000
-------	---	---	---	---	---------	-----------	---	---	---	---------

**Galapagos Islands.** To Ecuador belong the Galapagos (Tortoise) Islands, a group situated on the equator about 600 miles from the

coast, with an aggregate area of some 3,000 square miles and a population of about 1,500. Guano and orchilla moss (for purple dyes) are exported, and the group is a centre for commercial fisheries.

## PERU

Peru is third in size of the republics of South America, its 482,000 square miles giving it an area over five times that of Great Britain. The 10m. inhabitants, of whom rather more than half are whites or mestizos, and rather less than half are Indians, are distributed unevenly: most of the whites live along the coast, where the cool Humboldt Current tempers the tropical heat, and most of the Indians inhabit the mountains of the south as they have done since the days of the Inca civilisation. The Andes here form a broad belt, 200–250 miles wide, of plateaus and mountain chains dissected by deep longitudinal valleys and rising to over 20,000 feet in some of the loftiest heights in South America. The main watershed, the western cordillera, rises steeply from a narrow and arid coastal strip to form an unbroken barrier which hinders communication and hardly drops below 14,000 feet. On the landward side the heavily forested Andean slopes give way to the hot tropical lowlands of the Amazon basin in a vast, sparsely inhabited region which covers half the country.

Forests comprise about 56 per cent. of all Peru, waste and built-on areas another 33 per cent. The balance of 11 per cent. is suitable for farming— $1\frac{1}{2}$  per cent. for cultivated crops and  $9\frac{1}{2}$  per cent. (mostly rough grazings) for livestock. There are no broad fertile plains, and arable land is confined to strips developed along the river valleys. The dry, 1,400-mile ribbon of the coastal zone, 25–50 miles wide, is crossed by the courses of over 50 rivers; most of them dry up from time to time, but wherever the volume of water is sufficient irrigation is practised and the land intensively cultivated. Production for the export trade occurs chiefly in the northern sector of this zone, where cotton, sugar, and rice are the staple crops. In the central sector, cotton is supplemented by fruit and market-garden produce, while the southern sector specialises in subsistence crops for the local Indian population. Subsistence crops—wheat, maize, barley, oats, and potatoes—are grown more extensively in some of the valleys of the *sierra*, or highland region, corresponding to the concentrations of Indian population. The pastures of the *sierra*, though of indifferent quality, support large numbers of sheep (16½m.), cattle (3½m.), llamas, alpacas, &c. (3½m.), goats (2¼m.), and pigs (1½m.). The llama is the traditional beast of burden.



Agricultural development of the trans-Andean region, or *montana*, is on a small scale, though there are extensive areas which are considered suitable for cultivation and stock raising. Difficulties of transport and the hot climate have militated against development, and the valuable timbers of the area remain largely untouched, though a great variety of useful products—rubber, balata, quinine, kapok, and medicinal plants—come from the forests of this region.

The Humboldt Current teems with fish, which attract a prolific bird life; and the extensive deposits of guano on the islands along the coast are a great asset to Peru's agricultural industry.

The republic is exceptionally rich in mineral resources, which include petroleum in the northern extremity of the coastal zone (2½m. tons in 1956), and copper, gold, silver, lead, zinc, iron, coal, and vanadium, often mined in remote workings high up in the Andes. The production of vanadium has fallen away in recent years, but some of the copper mines have been worked for centuries, and Peru is the fourth largest producer of silver in the world. Minerals do not, however, challenge the leading position of agriculture in the economic life of the country, since most of the proceeds of the oil-fields and mines go to foreign operators. Raw cotton and sugar remain of foremost importance. The bulk of the cotton is of the Tanguis variety, a long-staple type which is native to Peru and in great demand in world markets. Total production in 1956 was 113,000 tons. Sugar production in that year amounted to 700,000 tons. Secondary agricultural exports are fish, coffee, hides, and skins, and wool.

Cotton mills employ several thousand workers and other industrial establishments include woollen mills and rayon factories, iron and steel works, and a petroleum refinery. A number of industries produce consumer goods, nearly all of them centred in and around Lima, the capital, which lies midway along and behind the coast, close to its excellent modern harbour, Callao. Most of the imports for the whole country are brought in through Callao, but exports leave through a string of smaller ports situated nearer the centres of production, while the products of the Amazon region find their outlet through the river port of Iquitos to the Atlantic.

The unit of currency is the Sol, with a free market exchange value of about 4½d. (19 soles to the U.S. \$, 53 soles to the £). Special imports in 1955 were valued at S.5,794m. (£110m.), and special exports at S.5,146m. (£97m.). Raw cotton provided 25 per cent. of the exports, sugar (crude and refined) 14 per cent., fish 3 to 4 per cent., coffee 3 per cent.—45 per cent. between them. Minerals made up 44 per cent. of the total, including lead 12 per cent., copper 10 per cent., petroleum and products 8 per cent., and zinc over 5 per cent. Half the imports were supplied by the United States and nearly 9 per cent. each by Germany and the United Kingdom. The United

States took 36 per cent. of the exports. Chile over 13 per cent., and the United Kingdom over 10 per cent.

The seaports are linked by coastwise services which play an important part in the communications system. Because of the nature of the terrain, road and rail routes have been developed primarily to link the centres of production with the nearest ports. There is now a highway extending along the coastal zone (the Pan-American Highway), and another, 522 miles long, crosses the *sierra* to connect Lima with the navigable headwaters of the Amazon; but out of about 20,000 miles of roads, the greater part are unsurfaced. The railways, grouped separately in the northern, central, and southern regions and comprising 2,600 miles of track, have been largely instrumental in opening up the mineral resources of the country. Two of the routes, by which the tablelands of the Andes are reached, are among the most remarkable in the world. The Lima-Oroya line attains in its passage through the western cordillera a height of 15,665 feet. The other Andes railway rises from the southern seaport of Mollendo by way of Arequipa to Lake Titicaca, attaining on the way an altitude of 14,688 feet. Lake Titicaca, itself situated at 12,500 feet, is the largest lake in South America, with an area variously estimated at 4,000–4,500 square miles, and is shared between Peru and Bolivia. The railway from Mollendo is one of the chief means of access to the latter republic, which has no coast of its own.

POPULATION OF PRINCIPAL TOWNS (1957 ESTIMATES)

Lima . . . . .	1,136,000	Arequipa . . . . .	117,000
Callao . . . . .	126,000	Cuzco . . . . .	68,000

## BOLIVIA

Bolivia, twice the size of France, is the most thinly populated of the South American republics; its 424,000 square miles support round about 3½m. people—7½ to the square mile. Up to the time of its war with Chile in 1879–82 it had the advantage of a coastline on the Pacific, but since then it has been wholly an inland state, hemmed in by Brazil, Paraguay, Argentina, Chile and Peru.

The western part of the country consists of a high plateau, covering 6,500 square miles and maintaining an average height of 13,000 feet, flanked on either side by the two main chains of the Andes, with peaks rising to over 21,000 feet. In the south the plateau is semi-desert; the northern part, which is better watered and contains the only substantial concentration of population, terminates in the shallow depression which holds Lake Titicaca and carries the frontier with Peru (*q.v.*). The eastern cordillera—split by fertile

valleys known as *yungas*—drops sharply beyond the plateau to the forested lowlands of the Amazon basin (with its northward-flowing rivers) and descends in a series of gently falling *sierras* to the valley of the Paraguay (with its southward-flowing rivers). These eastern lowlands, constituting about two-thirds of the whole country, are difficult of access and remain virtually undeveloped. Their tropical climate contrasts with the sub-tropical temperatures of the *yungas* and the cool or cold temperatures of the plateau.

Less than 3 per cent. (12,000 square miles) of the total area is classed as arable land, and most of that is lying fallow. On the plateau there is a limited production of potatoes and the hardier cereals; other cereals, cocoa, and coffee are grown in the *yungas*; and sugar, rice, and cotton are cultivated on the few developed patches of the eastern plains. Forest products from these plains include a fluctuating yield of rubber and a good deal of quinine and quinine bark. Livestock include 2½m. cattle, and 6½m. sheep, as well as many llamas (used as pack animals), and alpacas (providing a small export of wool). Stock-raising is carried on in cleared areas in the Amazon basin, from which three refrigerating plants send their meat to La Paz by air.

It is estimated that two-thirds of the population gain their livelihood from agriculture and only 2 per cent. from mining, but commercially the mines are the dominant factor, providing over 90 per cent. of the exports in 1956. The main focus of activity is tin, which is found in the mountain area and alone provided 55 per cent. of the exports. Bolivia ranks next to Malaya and Indonesia as a producer of tin, supplying 26,421 tons (15 per cent.) in 1956, against Indonesia's 29,579 tons (17 per cent.), and Malaya's 62,296 tons (35 per cent.), out of a world total of 175,000 tons, exclusive of the U.S.S.R. The Government has acquired the principal mines. Silver has been mined on the plateau since the Spaniards discovered the Potosi deposits in the sixteenth century. Lead, antimony, copper, wolfram, and zinc are found in the upland districts, and some petroleum is produced near the Argentine frontier. There are signs that some of the deposits may be nearing exhaustion, and attempts are being made to put Bolivia's economy on a more stable footing. Long-term projects aim at providing new rail and road communications which will give the potentially fruitful eastern regions convenient access to the centres of population on the plateau.

The unit of currency is the Boliviano, with a free market rate early in 1958 of B.8,850 to the U.S.\$, or nearly B.25,000 to the £ (9d. per 1,000 bolivianos). Trade returns are published by the United Nations in dollars—imports \$84m. (£30m.) in 1956, exports \$108m. (£38½m.).

Various railways, covering close on 1,700 miles and attaining to heights of over 15,000 feet, extend from Lake Titicaca to Argen-

tina, and link up with Chilean lines which climb steeply up the western cordillera from the free ports of Arica and Antofagasta. Much the greater part of Bolivia's foreign trade passes through these ports. Another outlet is the Peruvian port of Mollendo, reached first by steamer across Lake Titicaca and then by rail. Roads cover more than 6,000 miles, but not all of them are passable in wet weather. In the north-east lowlands are broad, navigable rivers, tributaries of the Madeira whose rapids on the Brazilian side of the frontier are by-passed by railway. In the south-east, Bolivia is reached from Buenos Aires by river steamers which follow the course of the Paraguay.

Sucre, in the south of the plateau, is the legal capital, with a population of 40,000, but the seat of government and virtual capital is La Paz, not far from Lake Titicaca. Cochachamba is an agricultural centre, and Oruro a tin-mining centre.

#### CENSUS POPULATION OF PRINCIPAL TOWNS (1950)

La Paz . . . . .	321,000	Oruro . . . . .	63,000
Cochachamba . . . . .	81,000	Potosi . . . . .	46,000

## CHILE

The Republic of Chile comprises the whole of the Pacific coast south of Peru, together with the islands that fringe the coast, including part of Tierra del Fuego and the entire length of the Straits of Magellan. It is 2,800 miles from north to south but nowhere more than 200 miles wide, and in parts no wider than 40 miles—a pencil-like strip of territory that would just fit comfortably across the North Atlantic from Land's End to Nova Scotia. For the greater part of its length, the long frontier with Argentina follows the watershed of the Andes, whose slopes fill over half the width of the strip to an average height of 10,000 feet and culminate in the northern part in peaks exceeding 22,000 feet. A range of lesser heights (6–7,000 feet) along the coast is separated from the main cordillera by a longitudinal trough.

The northern portion of the country is a continuation of the desert strip along the coast of Peru; this gives place in the middle portion, between Coquimbo and Concepcion, to a 'Mediterranean' region which contains the bulk of the population, while further south again is a region which suffers progressively from an excess of wind and rain. The extremes of climate combine with the physical structure to render barren 60 per cent. of a country which occupies 286,000 square miles, or three times the area of the United Kingdom. Another 10 per cent., potentially productive, is still unused. About 22 per cent. in the southern region, forms a forest zone, and

the remaining 8 per cent. is shared between arable land (14m. acres) and permanent pasture (1m. acres).

The agricultural products are mainly wheat, barley, oats, potatoes, and southern fruits—similar in fact to those of Spain and California. The temperature, however, is somewhat lower, so that oranges are not grown as a commercial product. Most of the agricultural production occurs in the central zone, particularly in the longitudinal valley, and in those areas to the north where it is assisted by extensive irrigation. Crops fluctuate greatly from year to year. Wheat is the most widely grown, and normally yields up to 1m. tons, followed by potatoes (over half a million tons), and barley, oats, beans, and rice, each yielding 50–100,000 tons a year. Some 4,000 tons of hemp fibre are also produced. Small quantities of several agricultural products are exported.

The livestock industry, including about 2½m. cattle and 6½m. sheep, is the source of small exports of fresh and frozen meat, as well as of a considerable quantity of wool, but large imports of beef cattle are made from Argentina across the passes of the Andes. The district around Valdivia, about 40° S., is largely given over to cattle, while more than half the sheep are reared in the extreme south—in Chilean Patagonia and Tierra del Fuego—where British settlers are responsible for much of the farming.

In Chile, however, as in most other countries on the western side of South America, mineral wealth is the dominating commercial factor. Minerals, mainly from the northern provinces, provide over four-fifths of Chile's exports by value. Copper alone accounted for 70 per cent. in 1955; its output is surpassed only by the U.S.A., and the reserves of copper ore are estimated to be about a third of the world total. Nitrates from the northern desert provided 12 per cent., and other minerals 5 per cent. Early in the century Chile enjoyed a virtual monopoly of this fertiliser, and although the competition of synthetic nitrogenous fertilisers has greatly reduced the dependence on Chile, the industry remains a very important one and supplies over an eighth of the value of all the exports. Two-thirds of the world's iodine is produced as a by-product of the nitrate works. Large deposits of iron ore are worked in the province of Coquimbo, while in the neighbourhood of Concepcion is found one of the few South American sources of coal, with an output of 2m. tons annually. Among a great many lesser mineral products may be mentioned gold and silver, manganese, molybdenum, borax (half the world's supply comes from Chile), sulphur, salt, and oil. Oil was struck in Tierra del Fuego in 1945 and in 1957 production reached over ½m. tons. Guano is plentiful along the coast, but, as in Peru, exports are prohibited.

Manufacturing industries have made tremendous strides in the last few decades, strong contributing factors being the development

of abundant hydro-electric power and the diversity of raw materials. Textiles, leather goods, chemicals, flour, iron and steel goods are among the wide range of products. The textile industry employs more than a fifth of the working population; all the wool used is indigenous, but large quantities of imported raw cotton are consumed. The installed electric capacity is over 1m. kW.

Most of the internal trade is carried in coastwise shipping, which, however, suffers from a lack of good harbours in those parts where the population is most concentrated, though sheltered inlets and natural harbours are plentiful enough farther south. The railways consist of one long central line—following the longitudinal valley and linking the centre with the north and south—with many short arms reaching out to the sea or into the mountains. Two arms extend across the Andes into Argentina, one to link Valparaíso with Buenos Aires, the other to join Antofagasta with Salta. There are about 5,200 miles of track on five gauges; a fourth of the mileage is private, and mostly British-owned. The road system of 40,000 miles (motor roads 23,000) is also based on main routes following the longitudinal valley.

The population of 7m. is 40 per cent. European and 60 per cent. mestizo. The capital, Santiago, is an inland city, and its port is Valparaíso, on a fine bay looking to the north. Here is received the great bulk of the imports, but exports are mainly from the northern ports of Antofagasta and Iquique, nearer the centres of mineral production. Punta Arenas, on the stormy Straits of Magellan, is the southernmost city in the world.

The unit of currency is the Chilean peso, with many rates of exchange. The official rate, registered with the International Monetary Fund, is 110 to the U.S. dollar (308 to the £). Towards the end of 1957 the middle rate on the London market was 1,815 pesos to the £ (about 11s. per 1,000 pesos). Imports and exports are still valued as 'pesos de 6d. oro', now worth 20·6 U.S. cents (nearly 1s. 6d.). Special imports in 1957 amounted to 2,142m. 'pesos de 6d. oro' (£159m.), and special exports to 2,224m. 'pesos de 6d. oro' (£164m.). The United States supplied 50 per cent. of the imports, and Germany 12 per cent. Over 40 per cent. of the exports went to the United States, and 15 per cent. to the United Kingdom. The big share of minerals in the exports has already been noted.

#### POPULATION OF PRINCIPAL TOWNS (1956 ESTIMATES)

Greater Santiago (1952) . . . . .	1,628,000	Talcahuana . . . . .	76,000
Valparaíso . . . . .	262,000	Talca . . . . .	75,000
Concepción . . . . .	159,000	Antofagasta . . . . .	74,000
Temuco . . . . .	109,000	Valdivia . . . . .	73,000
Vina del Mar . . . . .	108,000	Iquique . . . . .	48,000
Chillán . . . . .	79,000	Punta Arenas . . . . .	45,000

## ARGENTINA

Argentina, or the Argentine Republic, comprises a territory of more than a million square miles—nearly a sixth of the whole South American continent, whose 'tail' it shares with Chile. Extending half the length of the continent it exhibits a corresponding diversity of climate: from the tropical zone of the Chaco plains in the north, through the temperate zone of the central grasslands, or pampas, to the cool temperate zone of the Patagonian plateau (6–7,000 feet above sea-level) in the south. The frontier with Chile follows the main watershed of the Andes, which reach well over 20,000 feet, and give place eastwards to a broad and dry sub-Andine belt before dropping to the northern and central lowlands.

The district in which the bulk of the population of 20m. is established is the pampa region, stretching fan-wise around Buenos Aires for a distance of some 350–400 miles from that city. Here there are not only the greatest facilities for commerce but the climate is most favourable to production and suited to peoples of European stock; the soil is rich and deep. There is generally an ample rainfall in the eastern districts, but towards the interior the rainfall diminishes and irrigation becomes necessary for cultivation. To the north of this fertile and populous zone the forest-covered lowlands of the Gran Chaco, extending into Bolivia and Paraguay, form a vast, little-developed area with great potentialities. Swampy in summer, it has a dry winter season, the climate combining with the remoteness to hinder settlement. The sparse population is largely Indian. The undulating ground between the Chaco and the frontiers with Uruguay and Brazil has been described as a 'mesopotamian' region, from the position it occupies in the fork of the great rivers Parana and Uruguay.

In the present century the republic has undergone a rapid development, parallel with that in the United States and Canada. Streams of agricultural settlers have entered the country, principally from Italy and Spain. During the Second World War the numbers fell to a trickle, and though later they rose again, the increase has not been stable. Economic development has been predominantly agricultural. To-day just over half the total area is classed as agricultural and ranching land, permanent pastures covering 41 per

cent. and arable land nearly 11 per cent., while forests occupy another 32 per cent. and the remaining 16 per cent. is waste or built-on.

Argentina stands among the great food-exporting countries of the world. It has become identified particularly with the production of meat, but the yield from crops is hardly less important. Cereals alone contribute about a third of the value of all the exports. Wheat is the main crop. It is grown on over 13m. acres in the drier parts of the pampas, the wheat lands forming a gigantic crescent from Rosario to Bahia Blanca, and the yield in normal seasons is 5-7 million tons. Sometimes, not only wheat but crop production generally suffers a setback by reason of prolonged droughts. During such a period, around the turn of the half-century, the 1951-52 wheat crop was returned as only 2m. tons. Maize, which is grown in the wetter and warmer areas of the northern pampas, and before the war averaged nearly 8m. tons a year from 10m. acres, was reduced in 1949-50 to less than a million tons from 5m. acres. It is now grown on about 5m. acres, yielding from 2½m. to 3½m. tons. Barley, oats, and rye each produce between half a million and a million tons a year.

Apart from cereals, the crop of outstanding importance is alfalfa, or lucerne, which flourishes widely in varying conditions of climate, and by providing excellent cattle food is a basic factor in the live-stock industry; about 14m. acres are devoted to it. Flax is cultivated for seed, and linseed has been one of Argentina's most valuable crops, averaging before the war nearly 1½m. tons from nearly 6½m. acres; but the 1955 crop was only 235,000 tons from 1.1m. acres, and in 1956 the crop—one of the best since the war—was 610,000 tons from 2.5m. acres. Exports are in the form of both linseed and linseed oil. While linseed has declined from its pre-war eminence, sunflower-seed, which has gained in favour as a source of edible oil, has gone rapidly ahead, from an average pre-war crop of 150,000 tons to 500,000 tons in 1955. In the meantime the area devoted to sunflower-seed has increased from under ½m. acres to 2½m. acres.

Olive trees flourish, notably in the Mendoza district in the west, and the vine and sugar-cane are both cultivated—the vine on irrigated fields in the 'oasis' pockets of Mendoza and San Juan, near the base of the Andes, and sugar around Tucuman and Salta in the north-west. The elevation of Tucuman is only about 1,500 feet, but Salta lies nearly 4,000 feet above sea-level, and the cane-fields, although so near to the tropics, have been known to suffer damage from frost, which more frequently injures the grain crops.

Cotton is grown on over a million acres, mostly on the edge of the Chaco lowlands, yielding about 100,000 tons of ginned cotton; and enough rice is grown in the north to meet internal needs. Potatoes come both from the pampas and the sub-Andine belt in sufficient quantities to allow, in some years, a good margin for



export. From the northern forests the most important commercial product is quebracho, which yields an extract now very largely used in the tanning industry. Argentina is the world's chief source of supply of this commodity.

The cattle-rearing industry began intensive development when refrigerated sea transport was introduced in the 'eighties of last century. Imported pedigree cattle, especially Shorthorns and Herefords from England, have greatly improved the stock, and to a large extent the natural pastures have been superseded by alfalfa, with its superior fattening properties. Cattle now number 54.4m. They are concentrated in the damper parts of the pampas, within the arc formed by the wheat belt, and particularly in the 'mesopotamian' region between the Parana and the Uruguay, but to a lesser degree they are raised all over northern Argentina, where, however, harder conditions result in poorer qualities. The great estancias of earlier days have largely been replaced by mixed farms.

Within the past decade the number of sheep has fallen away from 55m. to 44m. The farms extend not only over the cattle country but over the whole of the Patagonian plateau as well, where the rainfall is insufficient for cattle rearing; there are considerable numbers also in Tierra del Fuego. Lincolns and Merinos predominate, and supply both wool and meat, the wool clip amounting to about a twelfth of the world's supply, a proportion surpassed only by Australia and New Zealand. But sheep-farming has declined in favour of cattle and cereals: in 1895 there were 30m. more sheep than there are to-day. Other livestock figures include 6m. horses, and 4m. pigs.

The mineral wealth of Argentine is not great and such deposits as exist are usually too inaccessible for economic exploitation. Petroleum—newly nationalised—is an exception. It is found at Rivadavia (on the Patagonian coast) and in the northern foothills of the Andes; production in 1956 was 4m. tons—much below the consumption. In the absence of mineral resources, and especially of adequate supplies of iron and coal, the manufacturing industries are primarily concerned with the preparation of agricultural products. Meat refrigeration (centred in Buenos Aires, but with plants as far afield as Patagonia and Tierra del Fuego) is the largest single industry, followed by flour milling. Woollen and cotton textile mills produce goods for the home market, and sugar-refining and leather-tanning are also active industries.

No other South American country is so well served by railways. There are over 27,000 miles of them, though they suffer the disadvantage of being on four separate gauges. As in the United States, they were the means used to promote the commerce on which immigration depended. Most of the construction was carried out by British capital, but in 1948 all the British-owned railways were

transferred to the Argentine Government. The grasslands are particularly well served and there is through rail communication with Chile, Bolivia, Paraguay, and Uruguay. The absence of stone from the pampas has greatly hindered the making of roads, but latterly progress has been made with concrete highways and with the improvement of an extensive system of earth roads. In all, the roads make a network of over 250,000 miles. Distant parts of the country are being increasingly opened up as a result of the modern expansion of air services.

Among inland waterways, the Parana is navigable by sea-going vessels to Rosario (220 miles up-river from Buenos Aires) and Santa Fé (312 miles up-stream). River steamers can ascend to above the confluence of the Paraguay as far as the limit of the Argentine frontier. On the Uruguay river, along the eastern frontier, sea-going vessels can reach the Uruguayan town of Paysandu (300 miles from Montevideo), and river steamers continue to the falls near the Uruguayan town of Salto. The Pilcomayo, on the northern frontier, is navigable for 240 miles, and the Rio Negro, in the north of Patagonia, affords 300 miles of navigation.

The capital of the republic is Buenos Aires, which stands on the River Plate and is the largest city in the southern hemisphere. The Plate, formed by the combined waters of the Parana and Uruguay, is here more than 30 miles wide and is so shallow that only continuous dredging makes the passage of large ocean vessels possible. Modern harbour works have made Buenos Aires the chief port of the country, and more than half the foreign trade passes through it. Bahia Blanca, whose fine natural harbour serves the southern pampas, vies for second place with Rosario, serving the northern pampas from its position on the Parana.

Despite her wealth of resources, Argentina's economic future is beset by many difficulties. A policy of national self-sufficiency in a welfare state has been actively pursued. Foreign-owned railways and other public services have been expropriated and nationalised. In 1950 the whole of the livestock industry was placed under state control, from ranch to refrigerator. Four-fifths of the total meat production is absorbed locally, and the consumption per head is the largest in the world—240 lb. against 144 lb. in the United States. Meanwhile, industrial and trade problems have multiplied. A feature of the foreign trade in post-war years was the bulk buying and selling of imports and exports; but Argentina had difficulty in fulfilling her contracts to supply beef to the United Kingdom, traditionally her largest customer, though the pre-war supply of 400,000 tons a year was received again in 1957. The question of price has been a source of trouble, with complaints of exorbitant demands on the one side and of unwillingness to pay the world rates on the other—not merely the mutual complaints natural to bargaining, but serious disputes

threatening a deadlock and significant of weakness in the commercial situation. One of the advantages enjoyed by Argentine beef before the war was that it was shipped in a chilled, not frozen, condition. This was not practicable during the war; since then it has been agreed to revert to the dispatch of chilled beef, but the change-over was delayed, on account of technical difficulties and dispersal of the skilled craft. Critics allege that the 'new deal' has favoured the urban worker at the expense of the land worker and encouraged a drift away from the land. A complicating factor in all trade arrangements has been the adoption of multiple exchange rates for imports and exports, according to the classification of goods as basic, preferential, and non-essential. The currency unit is the Argentine peso, whose official par value in 1958 was 18 to the U.S. dollar, making the sterling value nearly 5d. per pcso. Actual exchange values ranged between 2d. and 5d. Until 1954 the trade

## SPECIAL IMPORTS c.i.f., 1954-56. PRINCIPAL COMMODITIES

Main Groups	Total, 1954 Pesos 7,116m.	Total, 1955 U.S. \$1,172m.	Total, 1956 U.S. \$1,113m.
Foodstuffs . . .	P.769m. (10.8%)	\$ 82m. (7%)	\$79m. (7.1%)
Timber and products . . .	P.674m. (9.5%)	\$136m. (11.6%)	\$82m. (7.4%)
Fuels and lubricants . . .	P.917m. (12.9%)	\$203m. (17.3%)	\$250m. (22.5%)
Chemicals . . .	P.675m. (9.5%)	\$91m. (7.8%)	\$78m. (7.0%)
Textiles . . .	P.472m. (6.6%)	\$48m. (4.1%)	\$25m. (2.2%)
Iron and manufactures . . .	P.1,136m. (16.0%)	\$186m. (15.9%)	\$161m. (14.5%)
Other metals . . .	P.397m. (5.6%)	\$78m. (6.7%)	\$64m. (5.8%)
Machinery and vehicles . . .	P.1,402m. (19.7%)	\$215m. (18.3%)	\$262m. (23.5%)
	(90.6%)	(88.6%)	(90.0%)

## SPECIAL IMPORTS, c.i.f. 1954-56. PRINCIPAL COUNTRIES OF ORIGIN.

Imports from	Total, 1954 Pesos 7,116m.	Total, 1955 U.S. \$1,172m.	Total, 1956 U.S. \$1,113m.
United States . . .	P.1,006m. (14.1%)	\$154m. (13.1%)	\$230m. (20.7%)
Germany . . .	P.628m. (8.8%)	\$69m. (5.9%)	\$107m. (9.6%)
Brazil . . .	P.867m. (12.2%)	\$110m. (9.4%)	\$85m. (7.6%)
Venezuela . . .	P.245m. (3.4%)	\$55m. (4.7%)	\$74m. (6.6%)
Japan . . .	P.361m. (5.1%)	\$75m. (6.4%)	\$74m. (6.4%)
Netherlands Antilles . . .	P.211m. (3.0%)	\$48m. (4.1%)	\$71m. (6.4%)
Italy . . .	P.279m. (3.9%)	\$60m. (5.6%)	\$56m. (5%)
United Kingdom . . .	P.530m. (7.4%)	\$76m. (6.5%)	\$53m. (4.8%)
Netherlands . . .	P.186m. (2.6%)	\$38m. (3.2%)	\$49m. (4.4%)
Total above countries	(60.5%)	(58.9%)	(71.5%)

returns were quoted by the United Nations in pesos; in 1955 onwards, in American dollars. The tables on this and the facing page give the comparative figures for 1954, '55, and '56. It will be seen that the United States supplies the biggest share of Argentina's imports, and that the United Kingdom is the best customer for Argentine's exports.

## SPECIAL EXPORTS, f.o.b., 1954-56, PRINCIPAL COMMODITIES

Main Groups	Total, 1954 Pesos 6,757m.	Total, 1955 U.S. \$928m.	Total, 1956 U.S. \$944m.
Cereals and lin-seed . . .	P.2,100m. (31.1%)	\$323m. (34.8%)	\$316m. (33.5%)
Other agricultural products . . .	P.875m. (12.9%)	\$72m. (7.8%)	\$65m. (6.9%)
Meat . . .	P.1,354m. (20.0%)	\$205m. (22.1%)	\$241m. (25.5%)
Dairy produce . . .	P.305m. (4.5%)	\$30m. (3.2%)	\$29m. (3.1%)
Wool . . .	P.758m. (11.2%)	\$124m. (13.4%)	\$124m. (13.1%)
Hides and skins . . .	P.455m. (6.7%)	\$55m. (5.9%)	\$66m. (7.0%)
Pastoral by-products . . .	P.253m. (3.7%)	\$29m. (3.1%)	\$36m. (3.8%)
Forested products	P.305m. (4.5%)	\$27m. (2.9%)	\$26m. (2.8%)
	(94.6%)	(93.2%)	(95.7%)

## SPECIAL EXPORTS, f.o.b., 1954-56, PRINCIPAL COUNTRIES OF CONSIGNMENT

Exports to	Total, 1954 Pesos 6,757m.	Total, 1955 U.S. \$928m.	Total, 1956 U.S. \$944m.
United Kingdom . . .	P.1,220m. (18.1%)	\$201m. (21.7%)	\$212m. (22.5%)
United States . . .	P.926m. (13.7%)	\$118m. (12.7%)	\$118m. (12.5%)
Germany . . .	P.647m. (9.6%)	\$54m. (5.8%)	\$115m. (12.2%)
France . . .	P.315m. (4.7%)	\$34m. (3.7%)	\$71.3m. (7.6%)
Italy . . .	P.212m. (3.1%)	\$70m. (7.5%)	\$70.7m. (7.5%)
Brazil . . .	P.624m. (9.2%)	\$129m. (13.9%)	\$65m. (6.9%)
Netherlands . . .	P.383m. (5.7%)	\$37m. (4.0%)	\$55m. (5.8%)
Japan . . .	P.264m. (3.9%)	\$19m. (2.1%)	\$36m. (3.8%)
Total above countries	(68.0%)	(71.4%)	(78.8%)

The latest figures for the populations of the chief towns, mostly estimates at various dates since the census of 1947, are:

Buenos Aires . . .	3,674,000	Santa Fé . . .	220,000
Rosario . . .	551,000	Mar del Plata . . .	149,000
Cordoba . . .	511,000	Mendoza . . .	115,000
La Plata (now Eva Peron) . . .	352,000	Bahia Blanca (1947) . . .	93,000
Tucuman . . .	245,000	Parana (1947) . . .	84,000

## URUGUAY

Uruguay is not only the smallest of the South American republics (roughly half as large again as England), it is also the most thickly populated and the most consistently low-lying. On the map its comparative smallness is emphasised by the fact that it is driven, wedge-like, between the two largest republics—Brazil to the north-east, Argentina to the west. From a broad base on the shores of the River Plate and the Atlantic Ocean the land frontiers converge northwards to form the tip of the wedge, the frontier with Argentina following uninterruptedly the course of the Uruguay river. The population of 2½m. is predominantly of European origin; about a third of the total live in Montevideo, the capital, which is one of the great cities of South America and has a first-class modern harbour, handling nearly all the country's foreign trade. In the interior the population presses more thickly upon the cultivated belt than upon the pastoral regions; over the whole country the average density is 36 to the square mile. About 65 per cent. of the total area of 72,000 square miles consists of pastures, 12 per cent. is arable, and 9 per cent., though unused, is potentially productive. Nearly 12 per cent. is classed as waste or built-on, leaving only 2–3 per cent. for forests—a remarkably low proportion for a South American country. The forests occur chiefly in riparian strips.

Lying well outside the tropics, in latitudes corresponding with those of Morocco, Uruguay is favoured with a warm and pleasant climate marking a transition between the sub-tropical and temperate zones. The undulating grassy terrain nowhere reaches 2,000 feet above sea-level and is ideally suited to pastoral occupations, which dominate the life of the country. Over two-thirds of the total area of 72,000 square miles consists of pastures; cultivated land occupies another 7½ per cent. of the total, and the proportion of land built on or lying waste is about 21 per cent. Areas covered by forests occur chiefly in riparian strips and amount to only 3 per cent. of the whole—a remarkably low proportion for a South American country.

Cattle-raising and sheep-raising vie with each other in claiming the greater share of the pastoral industry, and between them they usually account for about three-quarters of the exports, though the proportion rose to about 90 per cent. in 1950, when wool provided

as much as 60 per cent. of the exports, meat 17 per cent., and hides and leather 11 per cent. Wool is much the more valuable product. In 1956 there were about 7½m. cattle and 23m. sheep. In recent years there has been a tendency to favour production of wool because of the high prices it has fetched. The pre-war emphasis was on cattle, and the government is trying to stimulate meat production by various means, among others by subsidising the transport of livestock from regions distant from the meat-packing stations.

Normally, agricultural products add more than 20 per cent. to the pastoral exports. In general the soil is not of good quality for easy crop production, and cultivation on a large scale is confined to an east-west belt behind the coastline of the River Plate. Production of wheat has been assisted by government price guarantee, and a yield of upwards of ½m. tons is harvested from under 2m. acres—enough to meet all internal needs and give an exportable surplus. Other main crops are maize, linseed, and sunflower seed. Before the war, maize averaged over half a million acres yielding 140,000 tons. The area planted has been maintained, but crops are very variable—218,000 tons in 1955, 100,000 tons in 1956. Flax, for linseed, has tended to decline; it is grown on variable areas—in recent years 200–300,000 acres, yielding 50–70,000 tons. The seed yields 25–30 per cent. of its weight in oil, and practically all the crop is exported in that form. As in Argentina, sunflower seed came rapidly into favour, rivalling linseed, but this crop also has tended to decline.

Other crops grown on a comparatively small scale and fluctuating in yield include barley, ground-nuts, rice, alfalfa (lucerne), beans, potatoes, sugar-beet, and tobacco. A great deal of excellent fruit, including grapes for the making of wine, is also produced; oranges are especially prolific. Minerals are scanty, and coal and oil have to be imported. There are deposits of marble, granite, sand, and talcum, and gold is worked on a small scale.

Meat-packing plants are the oldest and most important of the industrial establishments, and the extent of the business has made the small towns of Fray Bentos and Paysandu, on the Uruguay, well known throughout Europe. In addition to preparing frozen and chilled meat, canned meat and meat extract, the factories deal with a multitude of by-products. The dressing of hides and skins is similarly of long standing. Newer industries, mostly developed after 1939 under the impetus of wartime shortages, include the manufacture of textiles and leather goods, chemicals, and cement, but the range of consumer goods is wide. Not only raw wool but worsteds are among the main exports. Industries of all kinds are nursed by government controls and subsidies, even where the cost of production might be regarded as uneconomical, and nearly every manufactured export has to be protected by a subsidy to make

it saleable abroad. Uruguay prides itself on being the most advanced welfare state in South America; in 1952 it abolished the office of President and entrusted all executive authority to a National Council.

The republic is well provided with communications, no part of it being difficult of access. The Uruguay river is navigable as far as Salto (see under Argentina), and also gives access to its big tributary, the Rio Negro, which flows across the country from east to west. The railways radiate from Montevideo in a standard-gauge system covering over 1,900 miles; most of them were British-owned until the end of 1948, when they were acquired by the State. The road network (about 25,000 miles), is perhaps the best in South America.

The unit of currency is the Uruguayan peso, which is linked with the £ sterling and the U.S. \$ at multiple exchange rates, giving it an average value of about 3s. The trade returns are quoted by the United Nations in American dollars—special imports in 1956, \$206m. (£74m.); special exports \$211m. (£76m.). The imports cover a wide range of goods, easily the most valuable item being crude petroleum, \$27m.—over an eighth of the whole. Motor vehicles and accessories form a distinctive group, and another is agricultural and industrial machinery. The United States, Brazil, the United Kingdom, Netherlands and Germany supplied, in that order of value, over half the imports. The chief commodities furnishing the export trade have already been indicated. The chief buyers in 1956, taking two-thirds of the whole, were in order of their purchases, the Netherlands, the United States, Brazil, the United Kingdom and Germany.

#### POPULATION OF PRINCIPAL TOWNS (ESTIMATES)

Montevideo	.	.	.	850,000		Salto	.	.	.	48,000
Paysandu	.	.	.	50,000		Mercedes	.	.	.	33,000

## PARAGUAY

Like its northern neighbour Bolivia, Paraguay is an inland republic; its other neighbours are Argentina, on the west and south, and Brazil on the east. But, unlike Bolivia, it has no really high ground, and the only range of hills, running from north to south through the eastern part of the country, rarely exceeds a height of 2,000 feet. The Tropic of Capricorn crosses the centre of the republic, dividing it almost equally into tropical and temperate zones. A more effective division, however, is that created by the Paraguay river, which flows from north to south and forms a tangible line of demarcation between the Oriental, the habitat of over 95 per cent. of the population, and the little developed Occidental, or Paraguayan Chaco. Of a total area of 157,000 square

miles the Oriental accounts for 61,700 square miles (an area somewhat larger than England and Wales) and the Occidental for 95,300 square miles (a little larger than the whole of the United Kingdom). The total population is about 1.6m., mostly mestizo.

Half of the whole country is forested, and another 46 per cent. is classed as waste. The Chaco is flat, and large parts of it are subject to flooding in the summer months. Only about 1.3 per cent. (1¼m. acres) of the republic is reckoned to be arable, and 1.7 per cent. (1½m. acres) pastoral. Rather more than 1 per cent., though unused, is potentially productive. The arable land consists for the most part of forest clearings in the Oriental, where the soil of decomposed sandstone is remarkably fertile; for stock-raising there are tracts of savanna in both the eastern and the western zones.

Stock-raising is an important industry, and in 1957 cattle were estimated at 3¼m., but these were the only large numbers of livestock; sheep were under ¼m. The forests, the greater part of which are still untouched, yield excellent timbers, and a valuable source of supply of quebracho extract (produced chiefly in the Chaco and used in the tanning trade). Yerba maté, widely famed as a strongly flavoured tea, is also a forest product as well as a plantation crop. A type of early maturing American upland cotton is grown on over 100,000 acres, yielding 10,000 tons of lint.

To a large extent, Paraguay is self-supporting in foodstuffs. Maize is the principal subsistence crop, and rice, sugar, and soya are also grown. Attempts are being made to promote wheat-growing; 5,000 acres were sown in 1957, and a crop of 1,600 tons was forecast. The considerable mineral wealth, particularly in the form of deposits of iron ore, manganese, kaolin, and copper, has not yet been seriously exploited. Industry is also on a small scale, and, with the exception of meat-canning factories, saw-mills, and plants for quebracho extract, serves internal requirements only.

The unit of currency is the Guarani. In 1957, a free exchange system was introduced, under which the rate of exchange in the following year kept around Gs. 306 to the £, giving the Guarani a sterling value of about four-fifths of a penny. But information is so scanty that the United Nations Trade Yearbook lacks any list of imports into Paraguay, while two lists of exports, in Guaranis and American dollars, are stated to be from different and not strictly comparable sources. Special imports in 1956 were valued at \$24.6m. (£8.8m.) and exports at \$36.7m. (£13m.). The chief exports were wood (\$11.8m.; £4.2m.), quebracho extract (\$6.5m.; £2.3m.), raw cotton (\$5.6m.; £2m.), and meat and products (\$4.6m.; £1.6m.). Argentina, the United States, and Netherlands Antilles supplied over half the imports, and Argentina, the United States and the United Kingdom took two-thirds of the exports.

The Parana and Paraguay rivers, which enclose the southern



part of the country and meet at its south-western extremity, provide the most valuable means of communication. Asuncion, the chief port and capital, stands on the Paraguay and receives annually some 4,000 steam vessels with a draught of up to 12 feet. These vessels make the journey from Buenos Aires, a thousand miles to the south, in five days. Asuncion is also linked with Buenos Aires by rail. The railways are privately owned and total 713 miles. Roads suitable for all-weather traffic cover about 3,000 miles.

POPULATION OF PRINCIPAL TOWNS (ESTIMATES)

	Asuncion . . .	206,000		
Encarnacion . . .	38,000		Concepcion . . .	34,000

### FALKLAND ISLANDS

These islands, situated 300 miles to the east of the Straits of Magellan, have been in continuous British occupation since 1833. They consist of two main islands—East and West Falkland—separated by a long channel and surrounded by numerous small islands. East Falkland (2,580 square miles) is about the same size as the English county of Devon; West Falkland is smaller by about a fifth. Both have a deeply indented coastline and in each the highest land rises to upwards of 2,000 feet. The climate is not a great deal colder than that of London, with which the islands correspond in latitude, but because of the prevalent strong winds conditions are considerably more rigorous. Vegetation is sparse and the soft peaty soil is covered mainly with grass. Almost the sole occupation is the rearing of sheep, which number over 600,000 and produce about 4½m. lb. of wool for export. Tallow, obtained by boiling the carcasses is a useful secondary product. The export of frozen mutton has been proposed, but has not been found practicable so far. The population is almost wholly of British descent and number about 2,300, of whom about half live in Stanley, the capital, at the head of a fine harbour in East Falkland. There are no roads apart from those in Stanley.

The colony has a number of scattered dependencies far to the south and east: South Georgia, South Shetlands, South Orkneys, and the South Sandwich Islands, besides a big sector of Antarctica which includes Graham Land. Much of this territory is the subject of overlapping claims by Argentina and Chile. Whaling is carried on by the chief maritime Powers under international regulations. Over 200,000 barrels of whale and seal oil, valued at £2.6m., were exported in 1956, and other whale products to the value of £857,000. The whalers, many of which are Scandinavian and Japanese, use bases in South Georgia and the South Orkneys. Disputes arose in 1959 over the renewal of the international convention.

## AUSTRALIA AND POLYNESIA

### AUSTRALIA

The vast island continent of Australia has an area of nearly 3m. square miles, and is accordingly almost exactly equal in extent to the United States of North America, exclusive of the territory of Alaska. A good deal more than one-third of it lies within the tropics, but the great bulk of its population is to be found in the region outside of that belt. Most of the inhabitants, moreover, are found within two or three hundred miles of the coast, and from the nature of the climate this can never be otherwise.

The coastline of this vast island is remarkable for its long stretches of uniform character, without inlets that can be made use of by shipping even for shelter. The principal exceptions to this character are on the eastern side, and in some parts of the north-west.

To the north of Hervey Bay, on the east coast, numerous coral reefs rise to the surface of the water, making the seas somewhat dangerous to shipping, and about one degree north of the Tropic of Capricorn there begins a series of coral reefs such as are to be seen nowhere else in the world over the same extent of sea. These form together what is known as the **Great Barrier Reef**, which extends for a distance of about 1,200 miles, advancing into the latitudes of Torres Strait, which it nearly closes. Its widest part is in the south, where it extends for about 100 miles from east to west, and in that part also it lies farthest from the coast. As it narrows towards the north it comes nearer to the coast, being in many places within ten miles of the land, opposite the promontories, and generally not more than fifteen or twenty miles distant. At low tide the surface of the reef is just about the level of the surface of the water, and at all states of the tide the border of the reef can be distinguished by the strong breakers that wash over it. The reef, however, is not continuous. It is broken up by many deep channels, some of which are narrow, others from ten to twelve miles wide. To seamen these channels are of great importance, since they allow of a choice of routes between the seaports in the east of Australia and Torres Strait. The route within the Barrier Reef along the Australian coast has the advantage of a calm and beautiful sea owing to the protection which the reef affords, and is that now generally used. But this route is one that requires careful navigation, and above all

at night, when the reef cannot be made out at a greater distance than half a mile. By day it is visible at a distance of four miles from the bridge and seven miles from the rigging.

Even to the west of the Barrier Reef the navigation of **Torres Strait** has been made difficult by the coral-builders. The hundred miles of sea between Cape York and the south coast of New Guinea, besides being studded with numerous small islands, is crowded with coral reefs and sandbanks, which leave only one or two safe channels for shipping between them. The channel most used is that which lies immediately north of the Prince of Wales group of islands, on one of which, named Thursday Island, there is a much-frequented calling station for shipping.

The **surface** of Australia is for the most part fairly level, consisting of either plains or plateaus of great extent. In the east, however, a continuous range of highlands runs at no great distance from the coast from north to south, and then bends with the coast westwards, terminating in the south-east of the state of South Australia. The general name of **Dividing Range** is given to the whole of this series, since it separates the low-lying coast valleys and small plains from the big plains of the interior. In New South Wales the flat-topped ranges west of Sydney are called the **Blue Mountains**. In the south-east the **Dividing Range** forms a regular mountain chain, the **Australian Alps**, culminating in **Mt. Kosciusko** (7,313 ft.). Here, in the **Snowy Mountains**, the Australian Government is carrying out a gigantic engineering scheme to construct 85 miles of tunnels, 17 hydro-electric power stations, and 17 dams for irrigation works in the **Murray** and **Murrumbidgee** plains. The first of the power stations was opened in April, 1955.

The **Dividing Range** was long the chief obstacle in the establishment of **railway communication** with the interior—an obstacle which was overcome in some places, especially in New South Wales, only by great engineering skill. The map opposite shows that there is no railway connection of the coast with the interior between Melbourne and Sydney, and a careful study of physical maps shows that this is a natural consequence of the superficial configuration, which is thus disadvantageous for both the states to which these ports belong, but at the same time favourable to the ports themselves, as concentrating upon each a greater amount of traffic than would otherwise have fallen to them.

The plateau in the east of Australia attains at its widest a breadth of rather more than one hundred miles, and gradually sinks on the west to the low level plains, which occupy the greater part of the middle of Australia. The western half of the island consists mainly of a great plateau about 1,000 feet in height.

The series of highlands above described is appropriately called the **Dividing Range**, not only on account of the contrast presented

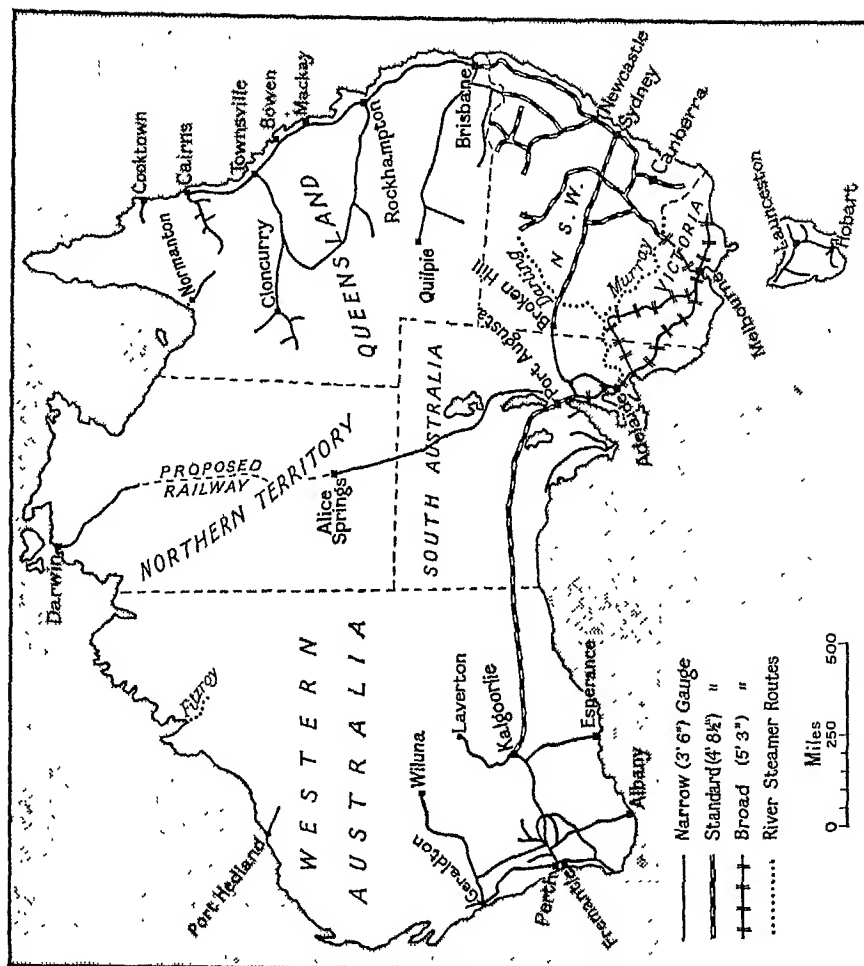
2E\*

# AUSTRALIA

## PRINCIPAL RAILWAYS AND NAVIGABLE WATERWAYS

A great drawback to railway transport in Australia is the lack of uniformity in gauge, a defect which has engaged the earnest attention of successive Federal Governments and is becoming more serious every year as the inter-state traffic increases.

The adjoining map distinguishes between the three gauges on which lines have been built in the Commonwealth. Unification has been officially accepted in principle, and until this can be achieved the policy has been to make a number of through connections on the standard gauge.



by the surface on different sides of it, but also because of the influence which it has upon the **climate**. The chief rain-bearing winds of Australia blow more or less from the east, since the island lies mostly in latitudes in which the south-east trade wind prevails, and the causes which give rise to that wind have a great effect on the direction of the air-currents even on the land. Hence, in the western half of the island the prevailing tendency of the winds is seawards. The period of the year in which this tendency is mostly overpowered is the summer, when the excessive heat of the interior brings about great rarefaction of the air, but at the same time tends to prevent much of the vapour brought from the sea from being condensed into rain. The extreme north of Australia, being within  $12^{\circ}$  of the equator, has conditions of heat and moisture approaching the equatorial. As to the climate of the extreme south-west see p. 40. The highlands on the east, however, have their usual effect on sea-borne vapours, and their eastern slopes are copiously watered at all seasons of the year, but in the tropical and sub-tropical latitudes chiefly in summer. The interior plains and plateaus, on the other hand, receive less and less rain the farther they are distant from the sea, and almost all parts which are more than two hundred miles from the coast receive much less rain in the course of the year than the driest parts of England. This rain, too, falls in latitudes in which the heat and consequent evaporation are greater than in the British Isles, so that in summer the ground is everywhere parched and cracked, and the grass withered, and none but winter crops can be grown, even where the rainfall is sufficient to grow crops at all. And even if the average rainfall is adequate for the crops usually grown and for the wants of the livestock reared, it is in many parts very precarious, years of flood alternating with years of drought, leading to great variations in the yield of the crops and the number of sheep and cattle that can be reared in a given area.

Between the northern part of Australia which lies within the tropics, and the southern part, from 10 to 15 degrees beyond the tropics, there are of course great differences in the temperature; but in all parts of Australia there is in the low grounds no winter of snow and frost to interrupt the labours of the field or to make it necessary to provide shelter for horses and cattle.

The nature of the climate of Australia explains that of the Australian **rivers**. Most of those which enter the sea on the east and south-east of the Dividing Range are comparatively short, but are generally well supplied with water all the year round. They vary greatly in their depth according as the weather is dry or rainy, and they are in many cases apt to overflow their banks. Many of them are navigable for a shorter or longer distance; but they bring down so much sediment from the neighbouring highlands in which they take their rise, or from which they derive their feeders, that bars

are formed in many cases at their mouths, and the entrance of large vessels is thus prevented or impeded.

All the great rivers of Australia take their rise on the inner slopes of the tableland, and flow towards the west or south-west. Only one of these, the Murray, enters the sea by an independent mouth. Before entering the sea this river turns nearly due south and flows through a large shallow sheet of water called Lake Alexandrina, which communicates on the south with Lake Albert, and a long shallow lagoon known as the Coorong, separated from the sea by a broad line of sand-dunes. The longest tributaries of the Murray are those which it receives on its right bank, the Murrumbidgee and the Darling, the former of which receives on the right another great tributary, the Lachlan. These rivers might all be ranked among the great rivers of the world if we considered only their length (the Murray and the Darling being both much more than 1,000 miles long), but the climate of the region through which they flow causes them to be very scantily supplied with water. The Darling even dries up in summer in many parts of its course into a chain of small lakes.

Nevertheless all these rivers are navigable by steamers of shallow draught for a long distance into the interior. In ordinary circumstances the Murray can be ascended to Albury, 1,700 miles up, where the river is crossed by the railway from Melbourne to Sydney. Unfortunately, however, this river navigation cannot be continued into the sea. The line of sand-dunes which separates the Coorong from the sea is continued in the form of a bar across the mouth of the Murray, where it leaves Lake Alexandrina, so that goods must be laid down or taken up at some point in the course of the river and carried the rest of the distance by land. Under the Murray Waters Agreement which came into force in 1916 works were undertaken involving the construction of twenty-six locks on the Murray and nine on the Murrumbidgee, with a view to improving the navigation and increasing the facilities for irrigation. The Hume Reservoir and Lake Victoria storage are part of the scheme. Apart from providing permanent navigation for river vessels for 1,250 miles, the total area irrigated is 1.4m. acres (2,000 square miles—an area as large as Norfolk).

Of the other long rivers which are to be seen on maps traversing the plains in the interior of Australia, the greater number are hardly rivers at all in the proper sense of the term. They are merely watercourses which may be filled at times with running water, but which are often empty except for a few days in the year. Many of them after a longer or shorter course dry up and disappear, their water having all sunk down into the porous sand which forms their bed, or evaporated under the heat of the sun. The most important of the streams that end in this way is the Diamantina, which enters

South Australia from the south-west of Queensland. Others empty themselves into large shallow lakes, which in summer shrink greatly in dimensions. There are several such salt lakes in the lower parts of Australia, the chief being Lake Torrens and Lake Eyre, into the latter of which flows at certain seasons the Barcoo river, or Cooper's Creek, the longest of these feeders of inland lakes. In the dry period of the year this river in its lowest part creeps on more and more slowly, and in the end dries up like the Diamantina, though the course which it follows in times of flood, when it swells to a breadth of two miles and increases in depth to twenty feet, can still be distinguished by the grass and trees bordering it.

The use of the few great rivers of the south-eastern Australian plains as navigable highways and for the watering of flocks has long been known, and the gradual slope of the plains over which they flow admits of many large tracts being irrigated by their means. The irrigated areas are mainly in the Murray Basin. In Queensland, New South Wales, Victoria, and South Australia a valuable source of water is from the famous artesian basins—especially the Great Basin and the Murray River Basin. The former, extending over 670,000 square miles and underlying two thirds of Queensland, has been pierced by thousands of bores. The water is excellent for stock but owing to a considerable proportion of salts cannot be used for irrigation. Supplies are diminishing, but are not expected to dry up.

**Vegetation.** On the tableland and plains of the interior the Australian 'bush' is open and easily traversed either by a horseman or even by motors; between the trees or bushes plenty of space is left for grass and herbage on which sheep may be pastured. The forests which clothe the wetter margins become thinner and thinner the scantier the rainfall. In many of the more arid parts large stretches of ground are occupied by dense masses of low bushes difficult to penetrate and difficult to destroy, these patches being well known as 'scrub'; and in more arid regions still the bushes forming the scrub are often armed with strong sharp spines, which tear the clothes and the flesh of those who try to force their way through. Even some of the grasses, notably the well-known spinifex, have sharp-pointed leaves. In tussocks this grass covers by itself vast areas in the deserts of the west. Most of the native grasses of Australia are nutritious, and among these the tall kangaroo grass is notable for its power of withstanding long drought. And even where the climate is so dry that grasses do not thrive, there are certain herbs which will still thrive and yield food for sheep and cattle. The most valuable of all these is the salt-bush, an ugly grey shrub about two feet high, which, as its name indicates, flourishes on a saline soil, such as is apt to be found where rain is scarce and evaporation great, but which is all the better for sheep on that account, since the sheep that are fed on a saline herbage are reported

to furnish the finest wool, and are free from certain diseases to which they are liable in other districts. Owing to the variations in rainfall there is thus usually a ring of forest round the continent which gives place to open forest, bush, and scrub and finally to semi-desert and desert in the dry heart of the continent. There is not the difference one would expect between the tropical and temperate parts of the continent owing to the highly peculiar character of both flora and fauna. The most typical trees are the eucalyptus or gum trees and species of acacia, whilst the typical animals are the marsupials, notably the kangaroo. The danger of upsetting the 'balance of nature' by introducing wild or semi-wild plants and animals into a country where they are free from hereditary enemies is well seen in the case of the prickly pear (which has overrun thousands of acres) and the rabbit.

**People.** The aboriginal Australians belong to a very old type of humanity (allied to the fossil neanderthal man of Europe), are few in numbers, and appear to be fast dying out. The level of their material culture is low though their social organisation is complex. They were never numerous, perhaps 150,000 when Cook landed, and their total number is estimated now at under 50,000. The majority live in the north and west, as do also the 27,000 half-castes. The first inhabitants sent from the British Isles to Australia were convicts, and the first ship containing convicts sailed in 1787, and arrived at Botany Bay, in New South Wales, early in 1788. Soon free settlers began to arrive. These were mainly from the British Isles, but there were also many Germans. Chinese (these nearly all men) and Polynesians were introduced into Queensland as labourers on the tropical plantations, but under the legislation of the Commonwealth not only is the introduction of all coloured labour prohibited, but even that of white labourers under contract, unless it can be shown that the labour which these supply is of a kind that cannot be obtained in the Commonwealth. Under the Pacific Island Labourers' Act no Pacific Islanders were allowed to enter Australia after March 31, 1904, or were to be allowed to remain there after the end of 1906. However, the bulk of the immigrants throughout Australian history have been free British citizens attracted by the possibilities of a great new land. Other Europeans are now arriving in larger numbers, but they are still a small percentage of Australia's 10m. people. The 'White Australia' policy is still firmly adhered to, although some have grave doubts whether tropical Australia can ever be adequately developed without the help of coloured labour.

**A comparison between Australia and South Africa.** An interesting comparison may be made between Australia and South Africa so far as they correspond in latitude, both in respect of resemblances and differences. The northernmost latitude of Australia corres-



ponds to that of the mouth of the Rovuma in South Africa, but Australia (excluding Tasmania) extends, in the south-east, four degrees beyond South Africa. These areas both lie between two oceans, and are so far similar in structure that they both have ranges of mountains running parallel to the east coast and then turning west to face the south coast, and have a large extent of high plains in the interior; but they differ in various respects, for the eastern mountains are much higher in Africa than in Australia; the southern mountains are found only in the east of Australia, but extend along nearly the whole width of South Africa with terraces intervening between the mountains proper and the sea; the higher plains of Africa are towards the east, those of Australia (mostly much lower) towards the west; and in Australia a broad belt of low plains intervenes between the higher elevations of the west and east. There is the further notable difference that Australia is an island, South Africa only part of a much larger continent. This latter difference probably contributes, along with the higher altitudes of the African mountains, to explain the somewhat striking contrasts in the seasonal distribution of the rainfall between places in corresponding latitudes on the eastern side, which in both countries is the side which has on the whole the more abundant rainfall.

The proportion of winter rains in South Africa is small compared with that at the corresponding Australian stations. The higher winter rainfall in Australia is no doubt largely due to the fact that situation and structure leave the east side of that continent open to vapour-bearing winds both from the north and south; and this again will go far to account for the fact that the pasturage of Australia is more succulent and freer from injurious thorny and prickly vegetation than that of South Africa, and that the Australian continent on the east side has much larger areas suited for wheat than the same side of Africa. In the areas of Mediterranean climate Perth is 2° farther north than Cape Town, a latitude at which on the west side of South Africa the rainfall of the year is quite negligible, which explains why in this part also Australia has a much greater area suited to wheat than South Africa. In temperature, it should be noted, there is little difference between the corresponding stations in spite of differences in altitude. Another very important difference resulting from Australia being an island is that there is no such native question there as forms such a serious problem in South Africa; in Australia the white man can and does work with his hands without the sense of lost dignity.

The **Australian Commonwealth** was constituted under an Act of the United Kingdom Parliament passed in 1900, and was proclaimed at Sydney on January 1, 1901. The six former colonies of Victoria, New South Wales, Queensland, South Australia, Tasmania, and West Australia formed the six original states of

this Commonwealth. The legislative powers of the Commonwealth Parliament include taxation, currency and coinage, bills of exchange and promissory notes, bankruptcy and insolvency, insurance and banking (other than state), copyrights, trade marks and patents, immigration and emigration, naturalisation, the influx of criminals, invalid and old age pensions, marriage, divorce, and matrimonial causes, foreign corporations, external affairs, external and interstate trade and commerce (but so as not to affect the freedom of interstate trade, commerce and intercourse), postal and similar services, naval and military defence, public borrowing, and other incidental matters.

The Commonwealth capital city was given the name of Canberra on March 12, 1913, when the work of laying it out was officially inaugurated. The capital city is part of a 'Capital Territory' of 939 square miles in the south-east of New South Wales, which ceded the Territory to the Commonwealth on January 1, 1911. Canberra itself stands at an elevation of from 1,800 to 2,000 ft. above the sea. It has already been connected by rail with the New South Wales railway system, and a railway is also to be laid connecting it with Jervis Bay, where other land has been ceded to the Commonwealth for the formation of a commercial port and naval station. The government departments were gradually removed to Canberra from Melbourne, which was the temporary seat of the general government. The Parliament Houses were opened in 1927 by the Duke of York, later King George VI.

**Animal products.** The native land mammals, nearly all of which belong to the same peculiar group as the kangaroo (marsupials), yield furs of comparatively small value in the aggregate, and from a commercial point of view destroy a great deal more than they produce. The same is true of the dingo, or native dog, the only large native mammal that is not a marsupial. The most valuable of the introduced animals is the sheep, wool holding normally the first place in value among the objects of production in the Commonwealth. The wool production of Australia in general is treated of elsewhere (see p. 156), but here it may be added that no part of the world has shown itself better suited for the production of fine (merino) wool (see p. 154) than the treeless grassy plains with a saline soil bordering the Murray river and its tributaries in Victoria and New South Wales. As to frozen mutton and beef see p. 240, and as to rabbits see p. 239. A later development is the export of *chilled* beef. Exports of dairy products—especially butter, cheese and eggs—despite fluctuations, largely recovered the ground they lost during the Second World War.

**Cultivated crops.** In the states of the mainland in which, as is shown in the last column of the table overleaf, there was the greatest extent of land under cultivation, wheat is the chief crop.

States and Territories of the Commonwealth.	Area in thousands of square miles.	Ratio to Great Britain.	Population in thousands.					Population per square mile.		
			1871.	1901.	1921.	1936.	1954. <sup>2</sup>	1954. <sup>2</sup>	Sheep.	Millions, 1956-57.
Victoria . . .	88	1	732	1,208	1,532	1,843	2,452	27.9	25.8	2.8
New South Wales . . .	309	3½	504	1,360	2,100	2,656	3,424	11.1	67.7	3.9
Queensland . . .	671	7½	120	503	756	972	1,318	2.0	23.2	7.5
South Australia . . .	380	4½	186	366	495	586	797	2.1	15.0	2.5
Western Australia . . .	976	11	25	195	332	447	640	0.7	14.9	0.6
Tasmania . . .	26	2	102	173	214	230	309	11.8	2.9	1.0
Northern Territory . . .	524	6	—	—	4	5	16	0.03	0.03	0.4
Federal Capital Territory . . .	1	—	—	—	2.5	9	30	32.3	0.3	1.2
Commonwealth . . .	2,975	33	1,669	3,805	5,435	6,750	8,987	3.0	149.8	0.01
Papua . . .	91	1	—	—	—	275 <sup>1</sup>	452 <sup>3</sup>	5.0 <sup>3</sup>	—	—
New Guinea (Trust Territory) . . .	93	1	—	—	—	265 <sup>1</sup>	1,286 <sup>3</sup>	13.8 <sup>3</sup>	—	—
New Zealand . . .	104	1½	256	816	1,320	1,466 <sup>1</sup>	2,174 <sup>4</sup>	21.0 <sup>3</sup>	40.3	5.9
										20.0 <sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> 1933.<sup>2</sup> Census.<sup>3</sup> 1956.<sup>4</sup> 1956.<sup>5</sup> 1956-57 was a year<sup>6</sup> Area under cultivation,

The estimated population at the end of 1957 was just on 9½m. of drought in Eastern Australia; in the previous year the area under crops throughout the Commonwealth was 22½m. acres, including sown grasses in 1956.

Till the end of last century South Australia was the chief wheat-growing part of Australia, but the movement for closer settlement has brought about a great increase in wheat cultivation in all the states extending into higher latitudes, and before the First World War New South Wales had come to have the greatest area under this crop though not always the highest production. The area under wheat in the Commonwealth has followed a pronounced zigzag course during the present century. The acreage rose from 6m. in 1900-01 to 12½m. in 1915-16, fell again to 6½m. at the end of the First World War, rose in the next decade to 18m., gradually declined to 8m. in the Second World War, was up to 14 m. at the end of the war, only to drop to 8m. in 1956-57. These fluctuations are mainly due to Australia's recurrent droughts, though such vicissitudes do not encourage the stability of wheat farming.

The vine receives most attention in Victoria and South Australia. Sugar-cane is cultivated in Queensland and a variety has been found to succeed far beyond the tropics, and is grown even in the north-eastern valleys of New South Wales. The fruit-growing industry of the Commonwealth is now very important especially for apples in the cooler parts of Victoria and Tasmania, oranges in the warmer lands of Western Australia, South Australia, and the Murray basin. Large numbers of Australians served in the Second World War and in the resettlement which took place after that war there was a marked move to the towns. Despite improved mobility by car and plane and the invaluable source of contact by wireless, life in the back blocks is not popular. There is a disturbing tendency for agricultural land to decrease in area and production to fall.

The **mineral wealth** of the states already commercially available is enormous. Hitherto by far the most important of the mineral treasures has been gold. It has been found more or less in all of them, but most abundantly in the three eastern states and Western Australia. Victoria heads the list; from 1851 (when gold was first discovered in the colony) to the end of 1956, production amounted to 73·5m. fine ounces, or 43 per cent. of the Commonwealth total output (174·5m. fine ounces). Gold is so eagerly searched for in districts known to be rich in it, that (in the case of alluvial gold) the amount yielded by any district soon begins to diminish. In 1851-60, Australia's production of gold totalled nearly 25m. fine ounces. In each of the next three decades it declined. The last decade of the century witnessed the remarkable series of discoveries in Western Australia which made that state the leading producer of gold and brought up the aggregate production in 1901-10 to over 33m. fine ounces. But the new boom, like the original, was short-lived; in the decade after the First World War production dropped to less than 6m. fine ounces, and though there was some revival after the devaluation of the Australian currency in 1935, output soon fell

again, and in 1956 the total production in the Commonwealth was little more than 1m. fine ounces, of which Western Australia provided 80 per cent.

Other minerals include copper in Queensland, Tasmania, South Australia and New South Wales; tin in all the eastern states and Tasmania; silver, lead, and zinc in New South Wales (Broken Hill District); silver and lead also in Queensland and Tasmania; wolfram in Queensland. Important supplies of uranium are being developed in Queensland and the Rum Jungle district of the Northern Territory. Ores of iron are in large quantity in almost all the states, and some of the most important deposits are now utilised under government encouragement in the development of iron and steel industries. Of these the most important is the Iron Knob, a hill of iron ore, containing a high percentage of iron, situated about 40 miles W.S.W. of Port Augusta (South Australia) and smelted and worked up into iron and steel products at Newcastle (New South Wales). Magnet Mountain is another South Australian deposit. Coal, mainly from New South Wales, is now by far the most valuable mineral product of Australia. Annual output, 'black' and 'brown,' is 20-30m. tons. By far the most important field is that of New South Wales—the largest coal basin in the Southern Hemisphere. The field is at present worked mainly near the outcrops—in the north at Newcastle, in the west at Lithgow, in the south at Illawarra. There is a large field in the Dawson River Basin of Queensland. Brown coal is specially important in Victoria where the Morwell deposits are worked at Yallourn and electricity is generated to supply Melbourne. The search for oil is widespread, but so far has met with little success. Australia is famed for opals.

**Commerce.** On this matter the tables that follow may be allowed very largely to speak for themselves. The marked advance in the trade of Australia with foreign countries as compared with a stationary or declining proportion of the trade carried on with the United Kingdom since the period 1881-85 is not to be wondered at, when it is considered that it is mainly since the beginning of that period that direct trade has been opened up with foreign countries. Direct trade with Germany began in 1879, with Belgium in 1881, with France in 1883. The last of the regular sailing vessels, so long famous in the Australian trade, ceased to operate only in 1951. Since the Second World War in particular, trade has been beset by many difficulties. At times, imports have been officially restricted, because they were increasing at a rate which upset the balance of trade, despite the natural restraint imposed by the growth of Australian manufacturing industry. On the other hand, difficulty has sometimes been experienced in marketing agricultural produce, especially wheat, because of the vast increase in world production.

Throughout Australia there are uniform customs duties but

trade between the states is free. In the last fifty years various efforts have been made to encourage inter-Imperial trade. A reciprocal customs tariff was in operation between Australia and South Africa from 1906 to 1926; similar agreements have been

AUSTRALIA

GENERAL IMPORTS (INCLUDING BULLION AND SPECIE)

	Percentages of Total Value.						
	1904-05.	1911-13.	1924.	1931-35.	1938-39.	1951-52.	1956-57.
<i>Raw materials:</i>							
Petroleum . . .	—	—	3.6	8.4	7.1	7.5	11.9
Wood . . .	3.0	4.2	3.8	1.7	2.1	2.7	2.4
Paper and manfs. . .	2.6	2.5	4.5	7.2	4.3	5.2	5.9
Tobacco . . .	—	—	2.0	1.6	1.9	1.8	2.0
<i>Foods:</i>							
Tea . . .	2.1	1.7	2.4	3.1	2.5	1.1	2.0
<i>Manufactures:</i>							
Machinery . . .	5.9	6.0	8.4	7.8	13.8	12.0	18.8
Cars . . .	0.3	2.1	8.6	3.2	7.5	9.2	9.6 <sup>a</sup>
Iron and steel	6.1	9.1	2.8	2.6	3.3	7.0	4.1
Other metals and manufactures . . .	—	—	8.6	5.8	20.5	9.2	4.4
Silk or synthetic silk goods . . .				5.2	2.6	2.6	1.1
Cotton goods . . .	8.0	6.3	19.5	8.5	4.5	6.3	4.5
Yard and cordage . . .				6.0	1.2	1.6	1.7
Bags and sacks . . .	—	—	1.9		1.5	2.7	1.4
Chemicals . . .	1.8	1.2	2.8	5.7	5.6	2.8	4.2
<i>Total</i> £A. million <sup>1</sup> . . .	37.7	75.0	140.6	58.3	99.9	1,053.4	719.0
<i>Countries:</i>							
United Kingdom . . .	53.0	50.3	45.2	41.1	40.5	44.2	41.3
United States . . .	13.1	13.7	24.6	31.5	14.7	10.4	13.3
Indonesia <sup>2</sup> . . .	0.8	1.2	3.3	6.2	7.1	2.4	3.7
India . . .	3.7	3.4	3.4	5.7	2.9	4.5	2.9
Japan . . .	1.0	1.2	2.5	5.6	4.1	4.2	1.8
Germany . . .	7.9	9.1	1.0	3.2	4.1	3.1	4.3
Canada . . .	1.0	1.2	3.6	4.1	7.7	2.2	3.1
France . . .	3.5	3.0	2.9	2.0	1.0	2.1	1.3
New Zealand . . .	5.9	3.6	1.7	—	2.2	0.7	1.6

<sup>1</sup> Values in Australian pounds, which were formerly equivalent to sterling. From 1935 £1 sterling = £A.1.25.

<sup>2</sup> Dutch East Indies till after Second World War. <sup>3</sup> Motor-cars and other vehicles and parts.

in force with New Zealand, Canada, and other parts of the Commonwealth. There has been a preferential tariff in favour of the United Kingdom since 1907; the Customs Tariff Act, 1933, gave effect to the 'Ottawa Agreement' of the preceding year increasing the preference.

All the states, and even the ports of the north-west coast of Western Australia, are now in regular steam communication with Europe. Different routes are followed, but most of the ships pass through the Suez Canal and along the south coast of Australia. Since 1872 Australia has been connected by telegraph with the

AUSTRALIA  
GENERAL EXPORTS (INCLUDING BULLION AND SPECIE)

—	Percentages of Total Value.						
	1904-05.	1911-13.	1924.	1931-35.	1938-39.	1951-52.	1956-57.
<i>Raw materials:</i>							
Wool . . . . .	32.3	33.2	50.0	39.8	30.4	47.9	48.7
Hides and skins . .	3.0	5.5	4.8	3.3	2.9	2.5	2.4
Lead . . . . .	1.5	1.9	3.0	2.5	3.1	3.8	3.2
<i>Foods:</i>							
Wheat . . . . .	8.3	10.1	12.4	15.1	6.2	8.3	6.0
Wheat flour . . . .	—	—	4.7	4.0	3.2	4.9	2.2
Butter . . . . .	4.2	4.9	4.4	9.2	9.2	0.8	2.6
Meat . . . . .	2.9	5.4	2.3	6.9	8.4	5.3	5.1
Mutton and lamb	—	—	1.0	3.2	3.4	0.3	0.6
Beef . . . . .	—	—	1.2	2.2	3.1	1.8	2.3
Sugar . . . . .	—	—	—	2.1	3.0	1.0	2.9
Fruits . . . . .	—	—	—	4.3	4.5	2.9	2.6
<i>Bullion and coin</i>	27.6	12.8	53.0	—	13.5	1.4	2.0
<i>Total £A. million<sup>1</sup></i>	—	—	112.4	95.9	140.5	675	993
<i>Countries:</i>							
United Kingdom . .	47.5	42.8	38.1	48.9	48.9	30.8	28.4
France . . . . .	8.4	10.9	12.5	5.7	6.7	8.6	9.4
Japan . . . . .	1.0	1.4	9.7	9.7	3.5	7.2	14.2
Germany . . . . .	6.6	8.8	3.7	5.0	1.9	3.0	4.8
Belgium . . . . .	4.8	8.5	5.5	4.9	4.0	3.7	3.6
United States . . .	2.9	2.6	6.0	2.3	13.9	11.4	6.8
Italy . . . . .	—	—	3.9	3.2	0.9	5.6	5.4
New Zealand . . . .	2.7	3.1	4.2	2.9	4.8	5.5	5.2
India . . . . .	5.5	3.2	—	—	1.4	2.5	2.9
Ceylon . . . . .	9.6	6.0	—	—	0.9	1.6	1.1

<sup>1</sup> See footnote to table on p. 849.

rest of the world through the completion of the overland line which crosses the state of South Australia and the Northern Territory between Adelaide and Port Darwin and is there connected with a line which passes under the sea to the island of Java. The cable from Vancouver to Queensland and New Zealand by Fanning, Fiji, and Norfolk Islands was completed in November 1902. The first wireless station was erected in 1905 for demonstration purposes, and the first official stations opened for business in 1912. Direct beam wireless service with London was established in 1927 and with

Farther south large areas of the plains have been reclaimed for wheat cultivation by clearing them of what is known as the mallee scrub, that is, thickets of the *Eucalyptus dumosa*, brittle-stemmed trees growing to the height of from 12 to 20 feet; but the yield of the crops, like the rainfall, is apt to be somewhat precarious. Sugar-beet is cultivated at Morwell, 80 miles east of Melbourne. The output of brown coal (mined only in Victoria) is being developed and has doubled in ten years; in 1956 it reached 10½m. tons.

The capital and chief seaport is Melbourne, situated on the Yarra, a short distance above its mouth in Port Phillip Bay. The Yarra is navigable up to the city by vessels of considerable size, including all those engaged solely in the coastal trade; but the harbour of Melbourne for the largest ocean steamers is formed by Hobson's Bay, the upper part of Port Phillip. On this bay stand Port Melbourne (formerly Sandridge) and Williamstown. Port Phillip itself is a shallow sheet of water, which affords a large extent of safe anchorage, but has a narrow and difficult entrance. On a western arm of this bay stands the port of Geelong, a town that has long carried on the manufacture of woollen tweeds, &c., which are supplied to all the Australian states. In the interior, north-west of Melbourne, is Ballarat, the centre of the richest alluvial gold-field ever opened up, but which is to a large extent exhausted, gold being now mainly obtained not by digging but by the crushing of quartz-rock. In a more northerly direction from Melbourne lies Bendigo (Sandhurst), the chief centre of quartz-crushing. On the Murray, Wodonga, opposite the New South Wales town of Albury, is at the head of the ordinary navigation, where the river is crossed by the railway to Sydney; lower down is Echuca, where the river makes a sharp bend to the north-west, and there another railway crosses into New South Wales. Above and below Echuca, extensive tracts are irrigated from the Goulburn Weir and Loddon river works.

New South Wales was so called by Captain Cook, who was reminded of the Wales of Great Britain by the appearance of the mountains which he saw from off the coast. It was in this state that the first permanent settlement was founded in Australia, namely, on the magnificent natural harbour of Port Jackson, the harbour of Sydney, which has few rivals in the world for either beauty or convenience. Throughout the state the Dividing Range forms a more continuous barrier between the coast lowlands and the interior plains and tablelands than it does in Victoria, and it was long before the settlers found a way across the Blue Mountains, as the part of the Dividing Range behind Sydney is called. The route at last found in this quarter is now traversed by a railway, which finally pierces the mountains in a tunnel 3,700 feet above sea-level. In the south-east of the state, among the highest mountains of the Australian Alps,



are being carried out the gigantic works of river diversion and power development known as the Snowy Mountains hydro-electric scheme (see p. 838). North of Sydney the New England Range, trending north and south (crossed by rail, on Ben Lomond, at a height of 4,473 feet), and the Liverpool Range, trending east and west, shut off the part of the tableland known as the Liverpool Plains, which contain the headwaters of the Namoi, or Peel river, one of the tributaries of the Darling. It is in New South Wales that the steepest railway gradients in Australia occur. The interior of New South Wales generally is traversed by the chief tributaries of the Murray, and the treeless plains noted for their wool lying to the north of that river are hence known as the Riverina. The population of New South Wales increased at a much more rapid rate than that of Victoria, which it now exceeds by about a million. It is, however, much more widely distributed over the surface, so that there is no part of New South Wales where the railways are so thickly crowded together as they are in part of Victoria. The reason of this is that the mineral treasures of the state are more widely distributed, and the population engaged in agriculture is similarly scattered over the large area of the interior plains where wheat and sheep farming are possible. Some of the coast strip is rather sterile, but south of Sydney is much dairying, and northwards, along the line of the Brisbane to Sydney coast railway, are lands wet enough and warm enough for sugar-cane and there is much dairy farming.

Lord Howe Island lying to the north-east of Sydney is a dependency of New South Wales. Norfolk Island, nearer New Zealand, is administered by the Commonwealth. They both contain a small number of inhabitants, grow fruits, and are popular tourist resorts. Production of Kentia Palm seeds is, however, the chief industry of Lord Howe Island.

The capital of the state and chief seaport of all Australia is Sydney. With a metropolitan population of 2m. Sydney has over half the population of the state. The residential suburbs are scattered round the shores of the harbour, and Sydney has been linked since 1932 with North Sydney across an arm of the harbour by the largest single-arch bridge in the world, costing over £10m. At the head of the so-called Parramatta river, which is in reality a prolongation of the inlet of Port Jackson, stands Parramatta, in a district noted for its oranges. North of Sydney, on the estuary of the Hunter river, stands Newcastle, the chief coal-mining town and place of export of coal. The coal is now exported not only to all the other Australian states, but also to foreign countries. Newcastle is the centre of important manufacturing industries—iron, steel, and engineering. Another important coal-port is Wollongong, to the south of Sydney, the port of the Illawarra coal-field. In this district Port Kembla is rapidly developing into a leading manufacturing city—with iron,

steel, and metal refining works. Bathurst, on the tableland behind Sydney, is the centre of the chief wheat-growing district of the state; Deniliquin, that of the pastures of the Riverina, and the starting-place of the railway by which the wool of that district is dispatched for export to Melbourne (not to Sydney); Broken Hill and Silverton, near the western frontier, are the chief towns of the Barrier Range, a silver-lead-zinc yielding area, amongst the richest in the world. The water-supply of the silver-mining district was at first a difficulty, but is now obtained from local rivers. Most of the ore is conveyed to Port Pirie in South Australia, for smelting purposes, though the district is now accessible by rail from Sydney. A portion of the zinc concentrates produced is treated at Risdon, Tasmania, and the balance exported overseas.

**Queensland**, the state to the north of New South Wales, was once, like Victoria, a dependency of New South Wales, from which it was separated in 1859. It includes all the islands in the narrowest part of Torres Strait. The surface consists mainly of land above 1,000 feet in height, and the district in the south-east known as the Darling Downs, on which are the finest pasture grasses in the state, is about 2,000 feet high, and thus has a comparatively cool climate for its situation, within five degrees of the Tropic of Capricorn. Extending far into the tropics, Queensland has more varied products than the more southern states. Among the tropical and sub-tropical products are cotton, bananas, pineapples, and melons, but at present the chief is sugar-cane, which is largely grown in the low river valleys on the coast. The yield of unginned cotton increased from 27,000 lb. in 1919 to 27m. lb. in 1934; later it fell away, and in 1957 was under 4m. lb. The output of raw sugar in 1954-55 was a record—1.3m. tons; in the next two years it averaged 1.15m. tons. In the warmer, wetter parts of Queensland maize is the chief grain, wheat on the cooler lands.

Queensland is the most important cattle-raising state in the Commonwealth, having vast areas of some of the finest grazing lands in the world, with ample room for expansion in the production of chilled and frozen beef for export purposes. The wool industry is the most valuable of all the state's activities, practically the whole output being of fine merino wools. The state had, in 1936, 18,060,000 sheep and 6,033,000 cattle; in 1957 the totals were 23m. and 7.4m.

Gold is found in many places, but most abundantly at Mount Morgan. Other famous fields include Charters Towers and Gympie. Tin is found in several widely separated districts. One of these is on the tableland in the extreme south of the state, in a district adjoining the New South Wales tin-field, the centre of this district being Stanthorpe. Another, which is the more productive, is round Heberton, near the east coast, in about  $17\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  S. lat. A very rich

copper district lies round Cloncurry, in the north-west of the state, to the south of the Gulf of Carpentaria, and in January 1908 this was connected by rail with Townsville. Another rich copper-field is Chillagoe. More than 2m. ozs. of silver and 42,000 tons of lead were produced at Mount Isa in 1934. Besides metals, Queensland is very rich in coal, but it has not, like New South Wales, a coal-field accessible to ocean-going vessels. The chief collieries are in the basin of the Brisbane and Bremer rivers. In the north-west, a township, Mary Kathleen, has grown up around plant for the extraction of uranium oxide. (See p. 848.)

The capital of the state is Brisbane, 500 miles north of Sydney, situated on both sides of the Brisbane river, at the head of navigation for large sea-going vessels. Toowoomba, on the tableland to the west of Brisbane, is the chief town on the Darling Downs. Next in size, third in population in the state, is Rockhampton, close to the Tropic of Capricorn, at the head of navigation of the Fitzroy river. It is the outlet for a rich and extensive pastoral district as well as for districts producing gold and copper. Townsville is the outlet for several large mining fields, including that of Cloncurry, and also for a large area of pastoral country, so that it has become an important seaport. Brisbane, Rockhampton, and Townsville are the starting-points of three lines of railway which have been laid westwards for a distance of from 400 to 600 miles into the better parts of the tableland. The harbours of Bowen and Gladstone are naturally two of the best on the coast. The coast towns as far north as Cairns are linked with Brisbane by rail and it has long been planned to join Darwin with Cloncurry and so with the whole Australian system. A good motor road, however, was eventually built instead during the Second World War.

**South Australia** does not answer to its name, though the name is somewhat more appropriate since the separation of the Northern Territory. It was founded in 1834 by an Act of the British Parliament, and was then expected ultimately to include the territory belonging to Victoria. Most of the inhabitants of the state are confined to a district about the size of England, chiefly the part of the state that receives a minimum of 10 inches of rain per annum, mostly in winter. This district lies mainly to the east and west of Spencer Gulf and the Gulf of St. Vincent, where it is traversed by the Mount Lofty Range and the Flinders Range of mountains. Among agricultural products wheat is the most important. The sheltered slopes of the Mount Lofty Range are well suited to the vine and the state produces three-quarters of Australia's wine. From an early date copper was its chief mineral, but the excellent iron ore obtained from Iron Knob, Magnet Mountain, and elsewhere is now the most valuable. Irrigation is practised in the drier parts of the state, especially in the lower part of the Murray basin. At Renmark

similar irrigation works to those of Mildura in Victoria have been carried out, and there is a large production of fruit (for sale fresh, for canning and drying). The extension of sheep runs—the production of wool is of great importance—and stock rearing has been made possible over some of the drier areas by the use of water, for watering the animals, from artesian wells. The north-east of the state lies in the Great Basin. The land round Lake Eyre (38 feet below sea-level) is the lowest-lying part of Australia. Most of this ‘lake’ is now dry except for swamps at the southern end. Further north the telegraph line passes through many well-grassed regions which may some day be settled, and other grassy tracts are now known to border some of the river courses of this region. Little settlement, however, resulted from the construction of the railway to Oodnadatta. In 1931 this line was extended to the more promising grassland around Stuart (Alice Springs) in the Northern Territory; later, connection (road and part rail) was made with Darwin.

The capital of the state is Adelaide, situated near the east side of the Gulf of St. Vincent. It was founded in 1837 and named after the queen-consort of William IV and laid out on spacious lines which embody many of the principles of modern town-planning. About seven miles from the city stands Port Adelaide, on a small inlet opening out of the Gulf of St. Vincent. An outer harbour with a depth of 30 feet, opened at this port in January 1908, first provided accommodation for large ocean steamers. From the completion, in 1887, of the series of railways from Adelaide to Melbourne and Sydney, the port of Adelaide became the place at which all the mails were collected and landed by vessels following the south coast route; but was displaced by Fremantle after the opening of the trans-continental line from Port Augusta in South Australia to Kalgoorlie in Western Australia, a line which, along with various state lines, completes a through rail connection between Brisbane on the east and Fremantle on the west. Much of the mail landed at Fremantle is now taken by air to the eastern states, while the direct air mail from Europe comes *via* Darwin. Burra Burra, about one hundred miles north of Adelaide, was the seat of the chief inland copper-mines, but the principal copper-mines in the colony were those of Moonta, on the peninsula between Spencer and St. Vincent Gulfs. As to Iron Knob see p. 848. Port Augusta is a wheat-port at the head, Port Pirie another on the east side, of Spencer Gulf, and Port Lincoln a third, near the south end of Eyre’s Peninsula.

**Western Australia** is the largest but least populous of the mainland states. The vast deserts belonging to it will always cause it to be more imposing in extent than population, and even in the principal settled area, the district in the south-west, which receives autumn and winter rains brought by the north-west winds, corresponding

to the south-west winds of Western Europe, the population is still sparse. This is largely owing to the character of the country. Though there is much good soil, the fertile districts are scattered, and the best land for European settlers is far from what was, till the construction of the excellent harbour of Fremantle, the only good harbour of the settled district, that of King George's Sound. After the development of the gold-fields, however, population rapidly increased, and all the industries for which the state offers advantages, including agriculture, were stimulated. Wheat acreage increased from 34,000 in 1890-91 to 1.7m. in 1915-16, a wartime maximum. It is now normally close on 3m. acres. Fine hard timber from the moist south-west has always been an important product of this state. The most productive gold-fields are those of Kalgoorlie in about 31°S., but so far in the interior that the industry was at first greatly hindered by the lack of water. A plentiful supply has, since January, 1903, been pumped from a reservoir about 25 miles from Perth at a distance of 350 miles from Kalgoorlie. Before the discovery of the Coolgardie gold-field in 1891 the population of Western Australia did not exceed 50,000 (cf. p. 846). Other gold-fields of the state have never been great producers. In the south-west, on the Collie river, are important deposits of coal, which is exported from Bunbury, a place of export also for the hard timber of the state. In the northern parts of Western Australia pearl-fisheries have long been carried on along the coast, but this industry was threatened by the legislation of the Australian Commonwealth against the employment of coloured labour. It was adversely affected by the cultured pearls of Japan. Gold also exists in the interior of this part of Western Australia, and good pasture-lands have attracted a few settlers. The chief pastures are in Kimberley District, along the banks of the Fitzroy river, which flows into King Sound, about 17½°S. This is cattle-ranch country but development is hampered by lack of communications. The cattle deteriorate greatly as they are driven on foot great distances to the ports. The hopes raised by a strike of oil in 1953 have not been realised. The capital of the state is Perth, on the Swan river, about twelve miles above its port, Fremantle, on the west coast. Albany, on King George's Sound, 260 miles from Perth, is where the first settlement was made on West Australian territory (in 1826).

**Tasmania.** This state consists of the island so called, together with the smaller islands adjacent. It is separated from Victoria by Bass Strait. Like Victoria and Queensland, the state was originally a dependency of New South Wales, and the first settlement upon it was a convict establishment formed in 1803. It became a separate colony in 1825. The surface of the main island is in great part high. A bleak tableland, from 2,000 to 3,000 feet in height, occupies the middle and a large part of the western half of the island, and is

crowned by mountains, and cleft by deep chasms through which issue the torrents which come to form the rivers of the west coast. To the east of this tableland lies a tolerably level and open district, which forms the great grazing-ground of the state. Elsewhere the colonists have had to contend with land more or less heavily timbered. The climate is somewhat warmer than that of England, very suitable for all English crops, and specially well adapted for fruits. Copper (at Mount Lyell in the west), silver-lead (at Mount Zeehan), tin (at Mount Bischoff in the north-west and elsewhere), and gold are important minerals, and coal-mines and oil-shale (the latter near Latrobe in the north) are also worked. The capital is Hobart, at the end of the island furthest from Australia, an inconvenience which is, however, outweighed by the excellence of its harbour, formed by the estuary of the Derwent. The electric power that is available has enabled several important industries to be worked such as carbide manufacture, woollen goods, &c. One of the largest electrolytic zinc treatment works in the world, at Risdon, near Hobart, treats ores sent there from other states on the mainland in addition to those from Tasmania itself. These ores, being zinc-blende, contain sulphur which is used in the manufacture of sulphuric acid, and that again in converting Nauru phosphates into superphosphates. The waters of the Great Lake and other catchment areas on the Central Plateau are used for generating power. Launceston is at the head of navigation on the Tamar, forty miles from the mouth of the estuary known as Port Dalrymple, on the side nearest to Australia. A deep-water port has been formed at Bell Bay on the Tamar.

**The Northern Territory** of Australia, embracing more than half a million square miles, was separated from South Australia and transferred to the Commonwealth on January 1, 1911. In 1927 the Northern Territory was divided into North Australia (centre at Darwin) and Central Australia (centre Alice Springs), but from 1931 the whole was placed again under one administrator at Darwin. Its southern limit being lat.  $26^{\circ}\text{S}$ ., by far the greater part of the area lies within the tropics. It is only in the peninsular portion to the north that there is a copious rainfall—40 inches and upwards per annum, occurring, of course, almost entirely in summer, so that conditions here resemble the 'monsoon lands' of Peninsular India. Towards the interior, here as elsewhere in Australia, the precipitation becomes very scanty, the area with as much as 20 inches of rain annually not apparently extending beyond  $18^{\circ}\text{S}$ . The part with good rains should be well adapted for the growth of the vegetable products of the tropics, but the rainfall tends to be unreliable and soils would appear often to be naturally poor. Mineral output, chiefly copper ore and gold, increased in value to £A.2½m. in 1956. The livestock industry is at present the most important, cattle (about

1½m.) numbering a dozen times as many as all other stock. Towards the south of the Territory are some well-grassed stretches, suitable for sheep, bordering the Finke and other rivers descending from the Macdonnell Ranges (on the Tropic of Capricorn) now accessible from railhead at Alice Springs, some 200 miles within the Territory, terminus of a narrow-gauge line from Adelaide. In the north, a similar line runs south from the coast at Darwin, the capital, to Birdum (316 miles), about 60 miles north of Daly Waters. Birdum and Alice Springs, 640 miles apart, are linked by Stuart Highway, a wartime enterprise. Another highway connects with Queensland in lieu of a railway (see p. 855). During the First World War meat-preserving works were erected near Darwin, but the cattle-rearers find it easier to send their stock overland to Queensland or to Wyndham in Western Australia. Population of Darwin 10,000; of the Territory 35,000, including 16,000 aborigines.

CHIEF AUSTRALIAN TOWNS: ESTIMATED URBAN POPULATIONS 1957.

Sydney	1,975,000	Wollongong	107,000	Toowoomba	46,000
Melbourne	1,677,000	(N.S.W.)		Rockhampton	43,500
Brisbane	543,000	Hobart	104,000	Townsville	43,000
Adelaide	529,000	Geelong	83,000	Ipswich	42,000
Perth <sup>1</sup>	376,000	Launceston	54,000	Bendigo	39,000
Newcastle	190,000	Ballarat	51,000	Broken Hill	33,000

<sup>1</sup> Metropolitan District; includes Fremantle, 30,500.

## DOMINION OF NEW ZEALAND

New Zealand, a British colony first settled in 1840, and proclaimed a Dominion in September 1907, consists mainly of two large islands situated about 1,200 miles south-east of Australia. Long and mostly narrow, they lie tandem-wise along a curve extending from north to south-west for over 1,000 miles. They are known simply as the North Island (a little smaller than England) and the South Island (a little larger than England), and support a population of over 2m., almost wholly of British descent. Cook's Strait, which separates them, is not quite so wide at its narrowest as the Straits of Dover. An interesting tail-piece is Stewart Island, famous for its oyster-fisheries, lying south of South Island, from which it is separated by Foveaux Strait; it is about half the size of Cornwall. The three islands have an area of 103,044 sq. miles.

Besides these main islands, the Dominion of New Zealand comprises several groups of small islands in the Pacific Ocean. Some of them, like the Chatham Islands to the east and the uninhabited Auckland Islands to the south, are within the official limits of the Dominion; others are dependent territories lying far to the north and east, in some cases as much as 2,000 miles away. In the latter

category are the important Cook Islands, Niue, the Tokelau or Union Islands, and the Kermadec group. New Zealand also includes within her sphere the Ross Sector of the Antarctic regions, to the south of the Dominion, as well as the Trust Territory of Western Samoa, while it shares with the United Kingdom and Australia responsibility for administering a second Trust Territory—the phosphate island of Nauru, just below the equator.

The coastline of New Zealand is in most places high and rocky, especially on the west coast. In the extreme south-west it is broken up by numerous inlets with very steep and lofty cliffy shores, resembling the fiords of Norway. Almost the whole surface of the Dominion is mountainous. One long succession of mountains runs through both the main islands. Less than a quarter of the total area is below 650 feet in elevation, and nearly two-thirds is between 650 feet and 3,500 feet. In the North Island, which is characterised by its volcanoes, both active and extinct, in association with innumerable hot springs and geysers, the highest peak is Ruapehu (9,175 ft.). In the South Island, where the mountains lie for the most part close by the west coast, the central part of the range is called the Southern Alps; it includes 17 peaks rising to over 10,000 ft., culminating in Mount Cook (12,349 ft.). Like the Alps of Europe, they are crowned by perpetual snow, and have their higher valleys filled with large glaciers, their lower valleys occupied by large and picturesque lakes. So difficult are these mountains to cross, that for more than a hundred miles there is no road connecting the east and west coasts of the South Island. The West Coast Road between Christchurch and Hokitika passed through a difficult defile known as the Otira Gorge, and across Arthur's Pass, more than 3,000 feet high, but this road has, since 1923, been largely replaced by a railway with gradients of 1 in 33 passing under Arthur's Pass in a tunnel (the Otira or Arthur's Pass Tunnel) 5.3 miles long, rising from 1,585 feet at its western to 2,435 feet at its eastern end.

The most extensive plains in New Zealand are the Canterbury Plains, which occupy the middle of the South Island on the eastern side, extending for upwards of a hundred miles from north to south, with a varying breadth. Rivers in both islands are numerous, but the longer ones are for the most part unfit for navigation. Those of the South Island are mostly rapid torrents, fed in summer by the melting snows and glaciers of the Southern Alps. The longest, the Molyneux or Clytha (210 miles; the length of the Thames), is a noble stream, draining south-eastwards three of the chief lakes at the base of the Southern Alps. In the North Island, the chief navigable river is the Waikato which drains the largest lake in the Dominion, Lake Taupo (238 square miles). As long as the Severn, it flows from the lake 220 miles north to the west coast.

Half the total area of the Dominion is classed as arable or

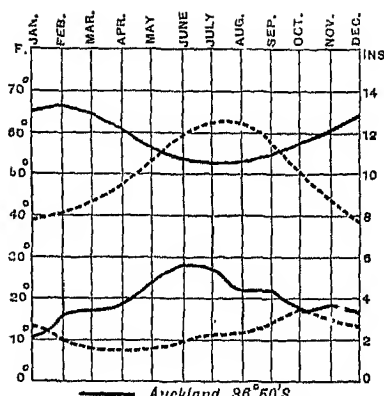


pasture land, but only a small share of this is arable land—less than 2 per cent. of the total, against 47 per cent. pastures. Even of the 2 per cent. arable (1½m. acres) not half is under crops, most of the remainder being in use as temporary meadows. Forests and woodlands cover a third of the Dominion, and the remaining sixth is classed as built-on, waste, &c.

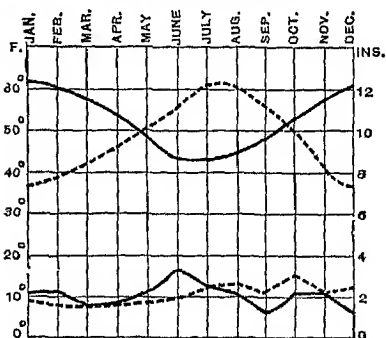
The climate of New Zealand is not characterised by the liability to droughts from which so much of Australia suffers. The winds that carry the most plentiful rains blow from the north-west, as in the south-west of Australia, so that the western slopes of the mountains and the plains at their base are plentifully supplied with rain, whereas the plains on the east have a much smaller rainfall. Hence the forests are chiefly on the west side of the mountains, and the Canterbury Plains on the east are the chief pastoral and agricultural region in the Dominion. For the same reason the mountains form a rough and ready division between the sheep and cattle areas. Although there is much overlapping, the main sheep country lies to the east of the mountains, the wetter cattle country to the west. This division results in a preponderance of sheep farms in the South Island, where, as already noted, the mountains are close to the west coast, and in roughly equal areas for sheep and cattle in the North Island, where the mountains are central.

The temperature, especially in summer, resembles that of England more than that of Italy, with which New Zealand corresponds in latitude. (See diagrams, overleaf.) Grapes are grown in the open air in the northern districts, but wine is rarely made from them. Wheat and oats are the chief corn crops, rivalling one another in total acreage; but much of the oats is cut for chaff or fed-off, comparatively little being threshed, while the area under both crops has declined since the war. In contrast there has been a notable though fluctuating increase in the growth of barley. In spite of the small proportion of arable land, New Zealand is practically self-supporting agriculturally; imports of foodstuffs are negligible, apart from tropical products and wheat. The high average yield of wheat in New Zealand is shown on p. 126; but it is the pastoral industry which predominates. The more abundant rain of New Zealand causes the pastures to be richer than those of Australia, and English cultivated grasses thrive remarkably well. Indeed, the area under sown grasses is nine times that of all crops combined. A further interesting illustration of the resemblance between the climate of New Zealand and that of England is presented by the success with which the various breeds of English sheep are reared on the New Zealand pastures.

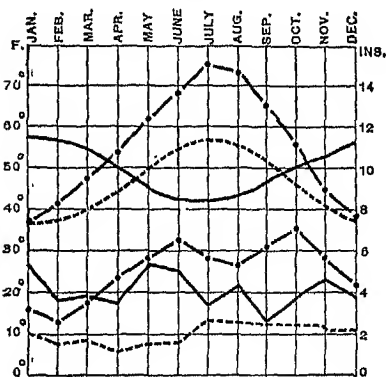
Wool became the staple export at an early stage, and though its fortunes have suffered from time to time it is still in the forefront of the Dominion's exports. But it was the development of refrigera-



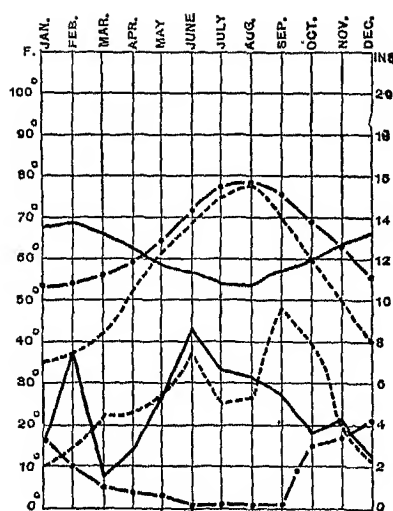
— Auckland, 38°50'S.  
 --- Brighton, Eng., 50°40'N.



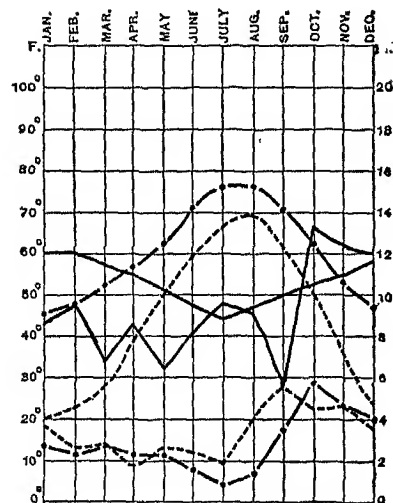
— Christchurch, 43°32'S.  
 --- Hull, Eng., 58°46'N.



— Invercargill, 45°17'S.  
 --- Nairn, Scot., 57°35'N.  
 ... Udine, Italy, 46°4'N.



— Mangarui, 35°11'S.  
 --- Tokyo, 35°41'N.  
 ... Malta, 35°55'N.



— Hokitika, 42°42'S.  
 --- Sapporo, Japan, 43°4'N.  
 ... Leghorn, Italy, 43°33'N.

# **METEOROLOGICAL DATA OF STATIONS IN NEW ZEALAND,** compared with data for stations (a) in Great Britain, (b) others in corresponding latitudes in the Northern Hemisphere.

Mean temperature curves above, rainfall below.

Degrees F. numbered on left, inches of rainfall on right.

tion, making it possible to transport foodstuffs long distances through the tropics, that gave New Zealand its present-day economy. The first cargo of frozen meat was dispatched in 1882. As the trade in mutton increased, a change took place in the breeds of sheep employed, and to-day it is the dual-purpose, cross-bred animals, giving both good wool and good meat, that are characteristic of New Zealand. Some 10m. sheep of distinctive breeds are classified, more than half of them being Romneys; but New Zealand has over 42m. sheep, and the other 30m. or more are lumped together as 'flock-sheep'—cross-breeds and others not specially enumerated.

More important still, the advent of refrigeration laid the foundations of the present-day large-scale dairy farming industry, with emphasis on high-grade butter and cheese; dairy produce exported in 1957 was nearly two-thirds the value of the wool exported, and not far short of the value of the meat exports.

As these changes took place, the large farms tended to become split up, and New Zealand has since developed as a country of small and medium-sized farms. The few large holdings that remain are devoted to sheep raised for wool only and are found mainly in the high country. Freezing works for lamb and mutton are the largest industrial plants in the Dominion, which is the world's largest exporter of this meat and now ranks as third among wool-producing countries. New Zealand is also the largest exporter of dairy produce, and this industry owes much of its economic success to the fact that the 5½m. cattle can mostly be grazed on open pastures the whole year round, with only a limited reliance on fodder. The butter and cheese factories are operated on a co-operative ownership system. Pigs number over 600,000, and the raising of stock for chilled beef is on the increase.

The minerals of New Zealand are of minor importance, the chief being gold and coal. In the 1860s and again at the turn of the century gold-mining was a booming industry, but it has since declined. The quantity of gold mined in 1956 was 26,000 troy ounces; South Island was responsible for all of it. The production of coal, which is found in limited areas in both islands, amounted to over 2½m. tons in 1957; this does not meet local needs, and the balance comes from Australia. Iron ore is present in two areas, but exploitation has so far been on a small scale. Kauri-gum, the fossilised resin of former kauri forests, was formerly of considerable value.

The high relief and plentiful rainfall have made the development of water-power an easy matter throughout the country, and hydro-electric installations provide 95 per cent. of the total electric power generated by public utilities. In 1945 a State Hydro-electric Department was established. In 1955 the capacity of public utility generators was nearly 1m. kW. The principal source of power in the North Island is the Waikato river, which drops 1,170 ft. from

Lake Taupo to the sea, and will have ten power stations. With the Waikato are linked the Lake Waikaremoana and other schemes. In the South Island the Lake Coleridge scheme, begun in 1911, still serves Christchurch and the Canterbury plains; but the chief source of power is the Waitaki river, with an installed capacity in 1955 of 105,000 kW. and a projected development of another 480,000 kW. In June 1957 a Government report recommended doubling the capacity of New Zealand's power stations by 1970 at a cost of £235m., the North Island and South Island stations being linked by a submarine cable across Cook Strait.

The natives of New Zealand, called the Maori, are the most intelligent of all the natives in Australasia. They are a brown-skinned, well-formed people, fond of tattooing themselves. Most of them live on the North Island. Their number, formerly decreasing, increased from 82,000 in 1936 to 135,000 at the 1956 census, when the population of the Dominion was 2,174,000.

Despite its dependence on pastoral industry, rather more than half the 2m. people of New Zealand live in 'urban areas,' and something like a quarter in the four principal cities: Wellington and Auckland in the North Island, Christchurch and Dunedin in the South Island. None of the other towns can compare with these four, or has more than about 40,000 inhabitants—except Hutt (urban area, 90,000) which is really an extension of Wellington beyond the head of the harbour.

The capital of the Dominion, wind-swept Wellington, is in the south of the North Island, on the slopes of an inlet from Cook Strait, forming a safe and commodious harbour (Port Nicholson) with depths alongside the wharves of from 16 to 41 feet. Auckland, on a narrow isthmus (six miles wide) at the base of the long north-western peninsula of the North Island, is the largest city and the foremost commercially; it was once the seat of government. It is a calling-station for steamers from San Francisco and the Panama Canal to Sydney, and as it lies on the east side of the isthmus (the west side having only a shallow harbour), vessels from Auckland bound for Sydney have to sail round the northern end of the island. Auckland is also the principal airport. Other noteworthy, though much smaller, centres in the North Island include Napier, on Hawke's Bay, outlet for an extensive farming district back of the east coast; New Plymouth, on the opposite side of the island, focus of the Taranaki dairy farms; Wanganui, also on the west coast, at the mouth of the Wanganui river, a centre of education and art; and inland, Palmerston North, hub of the Manawatu sheep and dairy farms, and Hamilton, capital of the Waikato dairying district.

In the South Island the chief towns are Christchurch and Dunedin. Christchurch is the principal town on the Canterbury Plains. It is situated a few miles from the east coast, and separated by a

tunnelled hill from its port, Lyttelton, situated on one of the inlets of Banks Peninsula. Dunedin, farther south, is the port for the old province of Otago and stands at the head of the long Otago Harbour. Large ocean-vessels have to stop at Port Chalmers, half-way along the inlet. Invercargill is the chief town on Foveaux Strait; its port, for large vessels, is Bluff Harbour. Greymouth and Westport are the ports of the principal New Zealand coal-fields, on the west side of the South Island. The coal obtained from the Brunner mine and dispatched from Greymouth is of high quality.

The trade returns show that New Zealand's exports derive essentially from her farming industry—wool and mutton from her sheep; butter and cheese from her cattle. Two-thirds of the exports go to the mother country and over half the imports come therefrom; there has been a preferential tariff in favour of the United Kingdom since 1903. In 1957 imports were valued at £NZ.296.5m. and exports of New Zealand produce at £NZ.273.6m. (wool, nearly 40 per cent.; lamb, mutton and beef 20 per cent.; butter and cheese 20 per cent.). The £NZ. is now equivalent to the £ sterling.

#### ESTIMATED POPULATIONS OF LEADING CITIES,<sup>1</sup> 1958.

Christchurch . . . . .	148,000	Dunedin . . . . .	72,000
Auckland . . . . .	140,000	Lower Hutt . . . . .	52,000
Wellington . . . . .	122,500	Hamilton . . . . .	38,000

<sup>1</sup> The much larger figures sometimes quoted for New Zealand's cities are for 'urban areas,' including not only the cities and adjacent boroughs, but urbanised portions of adjacent counties.

## THE PACIFIC ISLANDS

### BRITISH TERRITORIES

**FIJI**, the premier British Crown Colony in the Pacific, is a group composed mainly of heavily wooded and volcanic islands situated more than a thousand miles to the north of New Zealand. The total land area of just over 7,000 square miles (nearly the size of Wales) is divided among more than 250 islands, most of them quite small and uninhabited; but Viti Levu, the largest of them, embraces more than half the land surface, and Vanua Levu, the second largest, occupies two-thirds of the remainder. The islands were ceded to Britain in 1874 by their native king, but even before that time people of European origin had established plantations of tropical crops.

Plantation sugar was introduced soon after the start of British rule, and the Indian labourers who were brought to Fiji to work on the plantations have multiplied to such an extent that they now outnumber the native Fijians. Sugar is the principal export, providing  $\pm$  150,000 tons a year, valued at about 60 per cent. of all the local exports. Copra and coconut oil provide around 25 per cent.

Gold-mining developed in the Second World War, and though gold does not figure in ordinary trade returns it is a useful adjunct, being exported to the value of around £1m. a year. Fiji's national exports in 1957 were valued at Fijian £<sup>1</sup>11.7m., including sugar, £F.7.8m.; copra and coconut oil, £F.2.6m.

The chief towns are seaports with fine harbours protected by coral reefs. Suva, the capital (a city of 37,000 people at the 1956 census), and Lautoka are both on Viti Levu; Levuka, a former capital, is on a small island east of Viti Levu. Fiji is an important centre of air communications. The group population in 1956 was 346,000, including 148,000 Fijians, 169,000 Indians, and 6,400 Europeans. The Fijians are an advanced people, sharing with the Indians in professional and political as well as business pursuits.

Fiji has its own administration and Governor. All the other British island territories described below come under the jurisdiction of the High Commissioner for the Western Pacific, whose headquarters are at Honiara, in the Solomon Islands.

**THE BRITISH SOLOMON ISLANDS PROTECTORATE** includes all the Solomon Islands except the most northerly, which lie within Australia's trust territory of New Guinea. Separated from Australia by the Coral Sea and dispersed over a quarter of a million square miles of ocean, the Protectorate has a land area of about 11,000 square miles (roughly the size of Belgium), with a population of around 100,000 (mostly Melanesians) and a few hundred Europeans. The islands are largely of volcanic origin, mountainous and forested. Guadalcanal, the biggest, has an area of 2,500 square miles, and three others (Ysabel, Malaita, and San Cristoval) are each in excess of a thousand square miles. Economically the group has been only partially exploited, and primitive conditions still widely obtain, the Missions playing an active part in the welfare work of the communities. Some of the islands saw fierce and destructive fighting in the Second World War and the work of reconstruction has been going on ever since. Trading is in Australian currency, the principal export being copra, with timber well behind; in 1956 the value of the exports was less than £A.2m. The capital is Honiara, on Guadalcanal. The outlying Santa Cruz Islands are included within the Protectorate.

**THE NEW HEBRIDES** are a condominium jointly administered by Britain and France. Like the Solomons to the north-west they are volcanic and mountainous, and the native people, numbering 55,000, are Melanesians. But in total land area (under 6,000 square miles) the group is only about half the size of the British Solomons. The largest islands are Espiritu Santo (1,500 square miles), Malekula (450), Eromanga (330), and Efate (300), and there are about 60 lesser islands. The fertile soil produces luxuriant vegetation and

<sup>1</sup> The Fijian £ is worth just over 18s. £F.111 = £100 sterling.

encourages agricultural industry, which provides a large export of copra and small exports of cocoa and coffee, the whole being valued in 1956 at £1½m. Two-thirds of the small European population are French; the largest plantations are French-operated, and most of the exports go to France; Denmark takes the next largest share. The seat of administration is Vila, on the island of Efate in the centre of the group.

**THE GILBERT AND ELLICE ISLANDS COLONY** is an administrative unit formed by the five island territories and groups described below, spread out over 2m. square miles of ocean and crossed both by the equator and the international date line. With the single exception of Ocean Island, all the islands are low-lying atolls—each a ring of coral enclosing a lagoon and offering little opportunity for agricultural production. Their combined areas amount to barely 400 square miles, and more than half of this is contributed by Christmas Island, the largest atoll in the Pacific. The inhabitants eke out a sometimes precarious existence on the fruit of the coconut and pandanus palms, supplementing these staple foods with fish. Copra is produced for export.

**The Gilbert Islands**, forming the north-western part of the Colony, consist of 16 atolls with a land area of 114 square miles and 30,000 inhabitants (Micronesians). Periodic droughts add to the problems of supporting so dense a population, some of whom migrate annually to the copra plantations of the Line Islands. The headquarters of the Colony are on the island of Tarawa.

**The Ellice Islands**, to the south of the Gilberts, are nine in number, with a total area of only 9½ square miles and a population (Polynesian) of about 5,000.

**Ocean Island** is the westernmost outpost of the Colony and an important source of high-grade phosphate, which is worked by the British Phosphate Commissioners, more than 100,000 tons being produced annually. This isolated patch of land, less than 2½ square miles in extent, had a population at the end of 1956 of 2,446.

**The Phoenix Islands** lie well to the east and comprise eight atolls together making 11 square miles. Formerly uninhabited, they have been used since 1937 to take part of the surplus population of the Gilberts and now have well over a thousand people. Their remote situation has given them a new importance as landing grounds for aircraft on trans-Pacific flights, a fact which was responsible for an agreement in 1939 between Britain and the U.S.A. for joint control of two of the islands—Canton and Enderbury.

**The Northern Line Islands**, in the north-eastern part of the Colony, comprise the detached islands of Fanning (12½ square miles), Washington (3), and Christmas (223). Their population is only about 500, Christmas contributing a particularly small number (50), and some of the Gilbertese are being settled there. On

Fanning is established a station on the cable link between Canada and Fiji.

**THE TONGA ISLANDS**, also known as the Friendly Islands, lie 400 miles to the east of Fiji and constitute the only surviving independent kingdom in the Pacific, British protection being limited to foreign affairs and financial matters. The islands are in three groups or districts: Tongatabu in the south, Vavau in the north, and Ha'apai in between. The northern and southern groups are mostly volcanic and the centre group consists of atolls. All told there are more than 150 islands, with a combined area of 270 square miles. The Tongan people (who are not British subjects as are, for example, the people of Fiji) numbered 57,000 at the 1956 census. About half the population live on the island of Tongatabu (100 square miles), where the capital, Nukualofa, is situated. They are a friendly and intelligent people, and for over 40 years have had a beneficent sovereign in Queen Salote. They grow subsistence crops and export copra and bananas. The Tongan £ is on a par with the Australian. Exports in 1956 were valued at £T.1·625m.

**PITCAIRN ISLAND**, its area of 2 square miles making it barely larger than Gibraltar, is midway between America and Australia. Its scanty but hardy population of 134 are descended from the *Bounty* mutineers (who occupied the island in 1790) and engage in farming and fishing; they produce for export a small quantity of oranges and pineapples. The uninhabited islands of Henderson, Ducie, and Oeno (from 65 to 290 miles away) are annexed to Pitcairn.

## AUSTRALIAN TERRITORIES

**TERRITORY OF PAPUA AND NEW GUINEA.** This single administrative unit combines two distinct regions with separate status: the Australian territory of Papua (south-eastern New Guinea) and the Trusteeship Territory of New Guinea (consisting of the former German possessions of north-eastern New Guinea, the Bismarck Archipelago and the northernmost Solomons). It may be noted that, including the western half—a remnant of the former Netherlands East Indies which has not been handed over to Indonesia—the island of New Guinea covers over 300,000 square miles and is the second largest island in the world (excluding the continents); it ranks next to Greenland. The portion administered by Australia is just over half the whole, and with the associated islands totals 183,500 square miles—twice the size of Great Britain. The estimated total population is 1½m.

The surface of New Guinea is in many parts mountainous. The whole of the narrow south-eastern extremity (lying mostly in



Papua) is traversed by chains of mountains, known as the Owen Stanley Range, with peaks upwards of 13,000 feet high. Lying within the monsoon area, the whole island receives copious rains during about half the year, and, like other tropical countries with an abundant rainfall, is covered with dense forests, which are one of the chief causes why the interior remained so long unexplored. Two great navigable rivers serve as highways into the interior. One of these, the Fly, forms a large delta on the western side of the Gulf of Papua; the other, the Sepik, enters the sea near the middle of the north-eastern coastline. Neither of these rivers, however, served as the means of gaining much knowledge of the land beyond its banks; the exploration for minerals, often with the help of the aeroplane, has been necessary for that, and even to-day the full mineral resources of the island have not been adequately prospected.

Easily cultivated food crops such as bananas, yams, sago, sugarcane, coconut and taro are grown in both Territories, though in recent years introduced-crops, including coffee and cocoa, have been added both for local consumption and for export. Alluvial gold-fields are worked in both Territories, but are now of little importance in Papua. In the Trust Territory, Government-aided factories turn out 8-10,000 tons of coconut oil from copra and over 40m. square feet of high-grade plywood and veneer. The seat of administration of the combined territories is at Port Moresby, which lies to the east of the Gulf of Papua, sheltered behind a long barrier reef that skirts the whole of this part of the coast, access to it being obtained by one of the numerous deep channels by which this reef, like the Great Barrier Reef of the neighbouring coast of Australia, is crossed.

**Papua** has an area of 90,600 square miles and a population of about 450,000. In 1955-56, domestic exports, mostly copra and rubber, were valued at nearly £A.3m. Islands forming part of the Territory include the d'Entrecasteaux and Louisiade groups, with an area of nearly 3,000 square miles.

**North-eastern New Guinea**, with its associated islands, covers 93,000 square miles of land, of which about 70,000 square miles is mainland territory. The population is about 1.3m. The value of the exports in 1955-56 amounted to £A.9.2, mostly coconut products, timber and plywood, and gold. The largely undeveloped Bismarck Archipelago contributes 19,200 square miles to the total area and includes New Britain (14,100 square miles), New Ireland (3,340 square miles), Lavongai (460 square miles), and the Admiralty Islands (800 square miles); the population is about 150,000. The fine port of Rabaul, on New Britain, was formerly the seat of administration of the whole territory of north-eastern New Guinea; destroyed in the Second World War, it is now being reconstructed. The principal Solomon Islands included in the territory are Bougainville (3,880 square miles) and Buka (220 square miles).

**NAURU**, an island of 8 square miles just south of the equator, was formerly held by Germany and is now a trusteeship territory for which Great Britain, Australia, and New Zealand are jointly responsible, the functions of administration being in fact exercised by Australia by common consent. Like Ocean Island, in the Gilbert and Ellice Islands Colony, Nauru is important for its deposits of high-grade phosphate, rights in which are vested in the British Phosphate Commissioners. Over 1½m. tons of phosphates were exported in 1955-56, when a fluctuating population numbered 39,000.

**NORFOLK ISLAND** (13 square miles), with a population of about 1,000, is over 900 miles to the north-east of Sydney and is administered by the Commonwealth Government. Fruit is the chief product. A modern whaling station was opened in 1956.

**LORD HOWE ISLAND** (5 square miles) lies midway between Sydney and Norfolk Island and is a dependency of New South Wales. It exports seeds of the kentia palm and has a population of about 250.

## NEW ZEALAND TERRITORIES

**THE COOK ISLANDS**, lying in the central Pacific 1,600 miles from New Zealand, have a total land area of under 100 square miles and a population of about 17,000. The 15 islands of which they are composed are in two groups, Lower and Northern, the former being the more extensive and containing the main island of Rarotonga (26 square miles). The exports, amounting to about £½m., consist of citrus fruits, copra, pearl-shell, and tomatoes, the trade being mostly with New Zealand.

**NIUE**, or Savage Island, 600 miles west of Rarotonga, is an outlier of the Cook group but is separately administered. It is 100 square miles in area and has a population of about 4,750. There are small exports of bananas and copra.

**THE KERMADEC ISLANDS** (13 square miles), 600 miles to the north of New Zealand, have a meteorological and radio station and under half a score of inhabitants.

**THE TOKELAU ISLANDS**, or Union Islands, over 3,000 miles from New Zealand and half-way to Hawaii, are a group of three atolls with 4 square miles of land and 1,700 people.

**WESTERN SAMOA**, which New Zealand administers as a United Nations trusteeship territory, consists principally of two large islands—Suvaii (703 square miles) and Upolu (430 square miles)—lying a few hundred miles nearer to New Zealand than the Tokelaus. The islands are mountainous and fertile, and Upolu contains the harbour of Apia. There are about 100,000 people and

the Samoan population is on the increase. Copra, cocoa, and bananas are produced and exported to the value of about £2m.

## FRENCH TERRITORIES

**NEW CALEDONIA** and its dependencies form one of the overseas territories of France. They mostly lie between the New Hebrides and Queensland, being distant from the latter by about 700 miles. They have an estimated area of 7,200 square miles, including about 1,000 square miles in outlying groups, chiefly the Loyalty Islands (800 square miles) lying 60 miles to the east. More remote is the Wallis Archipelago (40 square miles), no less than 1,300 miles to the north-east. The group population is 70,000 of whom New Caledonia itself has about 50,000, the Loyalty Islands 14,000, and Wallis Archipelago 6,000. Cigar-shaped and mountainous, the main island is about 250 miles long and 30 miles broad. The climate is favourable for European settlement and a third of the population are French. The native Melanesians form half the total, but their decline in number is shown by once-cultivated terraces that now lie abandoned. In France's constitutional referendum in September, 1958, New Caledonia decided by an overwhelming majority (26,085 to 500) in favour of continued association with France. Coconuts (copra) and coffee are the main agricultural products for export, other crops being bananas, yams, manioc, taro, maize, wheat, rice, and sweet potatoes. Large areas of savanna assist the pastoral industry, and there are over 100,000 head of cattle. But it is its great wealth of mineral resources for which New Caledonia is chiefly remarkable. The island is the world's second source of nickel (11 per cent. in 1956, Canada 60 per cent.), as well as an important source of chromium. Iron ore and manganese are plentiful, and several other metals are found, but competition and distance from consumers hinder development. Total exports in 1956 were valued at about £10m.

The capital of the territory is Noumea (population 22,000), on a fine harbour in the south-west of New Caledonia. It is the seat of the South Pacific Commission, an international advisory body formed in 1947 to promote the economic and social welfare of the island peoples. The members of the Commission are Britain, Australia, New Zealand, the United States, France, and the Netherlands, and a conference organisation has been established of which representatives of all the island territories are members.

**FRENCH POLYNESIA** comprises the remaining French possessions in the Pacific. The islands are widely dispersed over the eastern (Polynesian) Pacific, with a total land area of about 1,500 square miles and a population (1956) of 73,000. Exports in 1956

(copra, vanilla, mother-of-pearl, and phosphates) were valued at about £3½m. The main group is that of the Society Islands, in which the chief island is Tahiti (600 square miles), with a census population of 36,000 at the end of 1956. Tahiti has a mountainous interior with a fertile littoral. It contains the French Polynesian capital, Papeete, with a population of over 17,000. Other groups included in French Polynesia are the Marquesas Islands (480 square miles), the Tuamotu Group (76 atolls stretching for 1,000 miles), the Leeward Islands (Îles sous le Vent), the Austral and Rapa Group, and the Gambier Group.

## UNITED STATES TERRITORIES

**THE HAWAIIAN ISLANDS** (formerly known in Britain as the Sandwich Islands) are an important group of volcanic islands in the North Pacific, belonging since 1898 to the United States. Over 2,000 miles south-west of California, they are conveniently placed on the trade and air routes across the Pacific. In area they are rather smaller (6,400 square miles) than the Fiji Islands, which they resemble in the nature of their products, but they have a population (575,000) nearly twice that of Fiji. Only 8 of the 24 islands are inhabited. Native Hawaiians and part-Hawaiians now constitute only 16 per cent. of the people; Japanese form the largest element (32 per cent.), and Caucasians contribute 14 per cent.; Filipinos (10 per cent.) and Chinese (5 per cent.) are also numerous. The largest island is Hawaii (4,030 square miles), on which the extinct volcano of Mauna Kea rises to a height of nearly 14,000 feet. Maui and Oahu (728 and 604 square miles respectively) are next in size.

Over a third of the total area is pasture land, on which beef cattle and sheep are reared, and nearly a third is forested. Only 7½ per cent. is under cultivation, but the crop yield is high because of the fertile soil and favourable climate. The emphasis is on export products, and most of the cultivated land is devoted to sugar and pineapple plantations, though coffee and bananas are also grown for export. In 1956 the production of raw sugar was over a million short tons (the American short ton of 2,000 lb.). Sugar refining and pineapple canning are chief among a number of manufacturing industries. Exports to the United States in 1956 were valued at \$270m. (£96½m.).

Much of the prosperity of the islands arises from their popularity as holiday resorts. The capital, Honolulu, on Oahu, is an important ocean and air junction, with a population of nearly 300,000. Close by is Pearl Harbour, the attack on which by Japan in December 1941, was the immediate occasion of bringing the United States into

the Second World War; the Harbour is the headquarters of the U.S. Pacific fleet, which also has establishments on Midway, 1,300 miles to the west. Hawaii became the 50th state of the U.S.A. in 1959.

**GUAM**, in the north-west Pacific, is 1,500 miles east of Manila. Although it is the largest of the Marianne Islands (one of the groups of the North Pacific Trust Territory; see below) it is under separate administration, having been an American possession and naval base since 1898. It has an area of just over 200 square miles and an estimated population in 1956 of about 37,000, exclusive of defence forces. A variety of tropical crops is grown, but the importance of the island is as a strategic naval and air base. Foreign vessels may not enter the port without permission from the Navy Department.

**AMERICAN SAMOA** is not a trusteeship territory as is Western Samoa. It has been under American administration since 1899, when the Samoan Islands were divided between Germany and the United States, the interest of the latter being in the use of the great natural harbour of Pago Pago as a naval base. There are five islands, mountainous and forested, with a total area of 76 square miles and a census population (1956) of 20,000, the main island of Tutuila (on which is Pago Pago) accounting for more than half of the area and 85 per cent. of the people. Cultivation is almost entirely confined to coconuts, and over 1,000 tons of copra is produced for export.

**NORTH PACIFIC TRUST TERRITORY.** At the conclusion of the First World War, the German possessions in the North Pacific were placed under Japanese mandate. Following the Second World War they have become a United Nations trusteeship territory for which the United States has assumed responsibility. They cover an ocean area of 3m. square miles and consist of over 2,000 islands and islets (of which 98 are inhabited), making a total land area of less than 700 square miles. The combined populations number 67,350, the indigenous inhabitants being Micronesians. The islands fall into three groups—the Marianne or Ladrone Islands, the Carolines, and the Marshalls. Copra, sugar-cane, and cotton are produced, and in the Carolines important deposits of bauxite and phosphate are worked. Atomic bomb experiments in the Marshalls have made famous the names of Bikini and Eniwetok.

**RYUKYU ARCHIPELAGO.** See p. 628.

## NETHERLANDS TERRITORY

**WESTERN NEW GUINEA**, claimed by Indonesia but still retained by the Netherlands (see pp. 597 and 868), has an area of 160,000 square miles and an estimated population of  $\frac{3}{4}$ m. It is largely mountainous, with peaks rising to 15,000 ft., and is still little developed, but oil has been located and is beginning to be exported. Other exports are mainly forest products.

# APPENDIX

## COUNTRIES OF THE WORLD BY CONTINENTS

AREAS AND POPULATIONS BASED ON THE UNITED NATIONS STATISTICAL  
YEAR BOOK FOR 1957, PUBLISHED 1958

*Areas converted from square kilometres into square miles,  
with slight adjustments*

*Populations mid-year estimates, 1956*

In the few cases where the areas in this table differ substantially from those in the text, the variation may be attributed to conflicting estimates, or to the inclusion or omission of disputed territories and/or outlying dependencies. The same considerations affect the estimates of population.

Country	Area: sq. miles	Popula- tion in thousands	Country	Area: sq. miles	Popula- tion in thousands
<b>EUROPE</b>			<b>Europe (cont.)</b>		
Albania . . .	11,100	1,421	Monaco . . . (368 acres)		20
Andorra . . .	175	6	Netherlands . . .	13,448	10,888
Austria . . .	32,375	6,983	Norway . . .	125,065	3,462
Belgium . . .	11,780	8,924	Svalbard . . .	24,100	1
Bulgaria . . .	43,048	7,626	Poland . . .	120,360	27,819
Czechoslovakia . . .	49,366	13,224	Portugal . . .		
Denmark . . .	16,618	4,466	(with Azores) . . .	35,080	8,570
Faeroes . . .	540	35	Roumania . . .	91,700	17,579
Finland . . .	130,120	4,291	San Marino . . .	24	14
France . . .	212,823	43,648	Spain (with . . .		
Germany:			Balearics) . . .	191,590	29,203
Western . . .	95,725	53,818	Sweden . . .	173,623	7,316
Eastern . . .	41,490	17,715	Switzerland . . .	15,940	5,039
	137,215	71,533	Utd. Kingdom:		
Berlin <sup>1</sup> . . .	341	3,350	England . . .	50,325	42,060
Gibraltar . . .	2	25	Wales . . .	8,015	2,607
Greece . . .	51,180	8,031	Scotland . . .	30,405	5,145
Hungary . . .	35,920	9,906	Gt. Britain . . .	88,745	49,812
Iceland . . .	39,768	161	N. Ireland . . .	5,470	1,397
Ireland:			U.K. . .	94,215	51,209
Irish Republic . . .	27,135	2,898	Isle of Man . . .	220	56
N. Ireland . . .	5,470	1,397	Channel Is. . .	75	102
Italy . . .	116,305	48,279	Vatican City . . . (109 acres)		1
Liechtenstein . . .	60	15	Yugoslavia . . .	98,767	17,886
Luxembourg . . .	998	312			
Malta . . .	122	314	<b>Europe<sup>2</sup></b> . . .	1,903,500	412,000

<sup>1</sup> Included in total for East and West Germany.

<sup>2</sup> Exclusive of U.S.S.R. in Europe, and Turkey in Europe.

<i>Country</i>	<i>Area: sq. miles</i>	<i>Popula- tion in thousands</i>	<i>Country</i>	<i>Area: sq. miles</i>	<i>Popula- tion in thousands</i>
<b>ASIA</b>			<b>Asia (cont.)</b>		
Aden (Colony) .	80	143	Syria . . .	71,228	3,970
(Protectorate) .	112,000	660	Thailand . .	198,500	20,686
Afghanistan . .	251,000	12,000	Trucial Oman .	32,280	80
Bahrein Is. . .	230	122	Turkey . . .	300,000	24,797
Bhutan . . . .	19,000	628	Vietnam . .		80
British Borneo:			(N. & S.) . .	127,400	26,600
Brunei . . . .	2,225	66	Yemen . . .	75,250	4,500
N. Borneo . .	29,390	383			
Sarawak . . .	47,070	626	<b>Asia<sup>1</sup></b> . .	10,494,000	1,514,000
Burma . . . .	261,760	19,856			
Cambodia . . .	67,570	4,358	<b>AFRICA</b>		
Ceylon . . . .	25,330	8,929	Algeria . . .	919,600	9,800
China: mainl'd	3,768,750	609,000	Angola . . .	481,350	4,317
Formosa . . .			Basutoland .	11,716	634
(Taiwan) . .	13,885	9,240	Bechuanaland		
Cyprus . . . .	3,572	526	Prot. . . . .	275,000	327
Hong Kong . .	391	2,440	Belgian Congo	905,570	12,806
India (including			Ruanda-		
Kashmir) . .	1,269,845	387,000	Urundi . .	20,920	4,433
Portuguese			Br. Somaliland	68,000	640
India . . . .	1,619	645	Cameroons . .	166,800	3,187
Indonesia . .	575,896	84,000	Canary Is. . .	2,808	847
Portuguese			Cape Verde Is.	1,560	178
Timor . . . .	5,762	472	Egypt . . . .	386,000	23,410
Iran . . . . .	629,350	21,977	Ethiopia . . .	410,000	} 20,000
Iraq . . . . .	171,600	4,842	Eritrea . . . .	48,000	
Israel . . . .	7,990	1,813	Fr. Equatorial		
Japan . . . .	142,770	90,000	Africa . . .	970,000	4,824
Jordan . . . .	37,300	1,471	Fr. Somaliland	8,500	63
Korea (N. & S.)	85,250	31,800	Fr. West Africa	1,694,000	16,540
Kuwait . . . .	6,000	206	Gambia . . . .	4,000	318
Laos . . . . .	91,500	1,450	Ghana . . . .	91,850	4,691
Lebanon . . .	4,010	1,450	Guinea (repub.)	95,000	2,500
Macao . . . .	6	203	Kenya . . . .	224,960	6,150
Malaya:			Liberia . . . .	43,000	1,250
Federation .	50,690	6,252	Libya . . . .	679,360	1,118
Singapore Is.	224	1,264	Madagascar .	227,800	4,905
Christmas Is.	62	2	Comoro Is. .	840	171
Maldiva Is. .	115	82	Madeira . . .	308	270
Mongolian			Mauritius with		
People's Re-			Dependencies	810	569
public . . .	591,000	1,000	Morocco . . .	170,000	10,000
Muscat and			Mozambique . .	297,725	6,105
Oman . . . .	82,000	550	Nigeria and		
Nepal . . . .	54,000	8,432	Br. Cameroons	373,250	31,834
Pakistan . . .	364,800	83,603	Portuguese		
Philippines . .	115,600	22,265	Guinea . . .	13,950	547
Qatar . . . .	8,500	40	Réunion . . .	965	295
Saudi Arabia .	617,000	7,000			

<sup>1</sup> Exclusive of U.S.S.R. in Asia and Netherlands New Guinea.

<i>Country</i>	<i>Area: sq. miles</i>	<i>Popula- tion in thousands</i>	<i>Country</i>	<i>Area: sq. miles</i>	<i>Popula- tion in thousands</i>
<b>Africa (cont.)</b>			<b>N. and C. America (cont.)</b>		
Rhodesia and Nyasaland Fed:			Canada .	3,851,000	16,081
S. Rhodesia .	150,333	2,480	Costa Rica .	19,650	988
N. Rhodesia .	288,130	2,180	Cuba .	44,220	6,410
Nyasaland <sup>1</sup> .	49,177	2,600	Dominican Republic .	18,816	2,608
	487,640	7,260	El Salvador .	7,700	2,268
St. Helena and Dependencies .	162	5	Greenland .	840,000	27
São Tomé and Príncipe .	362	58	Guadeloupe .	690	245
Seychelles .	156	40	Guatemala .	42,040	3,349
Sierra Leone .	27,925	2,100	Haiti .	10,715	3,350
Somalia .	178,200	1,300	Honduras .	43,280	1,711
Spanish Guinea .	10,830	209	Martinique .	425	253
Spanish Sahara (Rio do Oro, etc.) .	102,700	84	Mexico .	760,340	30,538
Sudan .	967,500	10,226	Netherlands W. Indies .	370	185
Swaziland .	6,700	237	Nicaragua .	57,140	1,282
Tanganyika .	362,690	8,456	Panama .	28,750	934
Togoland .	22,000	1,100	Panama Canal Zone .	550	55
Tunisia .	48,330	3,783	Puerto Rico .	3,435	2,275
Uganda .	93,980	5,593	St. Pierre and Miquelon .	93	5
Union of S. Africa .	472,360	13,915	United States (incl. Alaska .	3,608,800	168,387
South-West Africa .	318,100	496	Virgin Islands (U.S.) .	586,400	213
Zanzibar and Pemba .	1,025	280		133	24
			<b>N. and C. AMERICA</b> .	9,359,000	244,200
<b>Africa .</b>	<b>11,810,000</b>	<b>220,000</b>			
<b>NORTH AND CENTRAL AMERICA</b>			<b>SOUTH AMERICA</b>		
Bermuda .	20	42	Argentina .	1,072,750	19,486
Br. Honduras .	8,870	82	Bolivia .	424,160	3,235
British West Indies:			Brazil .	3,287,220	59,846
Bahamas .	4,400	108	Br. Guiana .	83,000	499
Barbados .	166	228	Chile .	286,400	6,944
Jamaica .	4,410	1,564	Colombia .	439,520	12,939
Cayman Is. .	93	8	Ecuador .	104,500	3,795
Turks and Caicos Is. .	200	7	Galapagos Is. .	3,030	1,550
Leeward Is. .	420	130	Falkland Is. .	4,620	2
Trinidad and Tobago .	1,980	743	S. Georgia .	1,450	1
Windward Is. .	826	320	Fr. Guiana .	35,135	29
			Paraguay .	157,050	1,601
			Peru .	482,260	9,651
			Surinam .	55,200	221

<sup>1</sup> Including 12,000 square miles of Lake Nyasa.



<i>Country</i>	<i>Area: sq. miles</i>	<i>Popula- tion in thousands</i>	<i>Country</i>	<i>Area: sq. miles</i>	<i>Popula- tion in thousands</i>
<b>S. America</b> ( <i>cont.</i> )			<b>Oceania (<i>cont.</i>)</b>		
Uruguay .	72,175	2,615	Netherlands		
Venezuela .	352,150	6,006	N. Guinea .	159,375	700
			New Hebrides	5,700	55
			New Zealand .	103,474	2,178
<b>S. America</b> .	6,856,000	129,000	N.Z. Islands .	195	24
					{ under 1,000; about 150
<b>OCEANIA</b>			Pitcairn .	2	
Australia .	2,974,580	9,475			
Norfolk Is. .	13	1	Samoa:		
Br. Solomon Is.	11,500	103	West (N.Z.) .	1,130	97
Fiji .	7,055	346	American .	76	21
Fr. Oceania .	1,544	70	Tonga .	270	58
Gilbert and			U.S. Trust Is. .	690	65
Ellice Is. .	370	39			
Guam .	206	38	<b>Oceania</b> .	3,281,000	15,100
Hawaii .	6,423	575			
Nauru .	8	4	<b>U.S.S.R.</b> .	8,650,000	200,000
New Caledonia	7,200	66			
New Guinea:			<b>WORLD</b>		
Papua and			<b>TOTAL</b> .	52,253,000	2,737,000
Australian			(U.N. figures)		
Trust .	183,540	1,739			

# INDEX

The numbers refer to pages; those in black type are to passages that contain more than an incidental mention of the subject of reference.

- AACHEN (Aix-la-Chapelle), 392, 418  
Aalborg, 464  
Aaov, 513  
Aar, R., 433  
Aarhus, 464  
Abaca (Manila hemp), 595, 603, 800, 801  
Abadan, 550  
Aberdare Mts., 678  
Aberdeen, 251  
'Abfold,' 446  
Abidjan, 698  
Abruzzi, 482  
Abu Hamed, 644  
Abyssinia (Ethiopia), 198, 632-4, **645-6**; area, 645; foothills, 642; foreign trade, 646; physical features, 645; population, 645  
*Acacia arabica*, 643  
*Acacia pycnantha*, 296  
*Acacia senegal*, 232  
*Acacia vereke*, 643  
Acapulco, 784  
Accra, 690  
Accrington, 338, 351  
*Acer saccharinum*, 211  
Adam's Bridge, 571  
Adam's Peak, 584  
Adana, 319, 525; plain of, 524  
Addis Ababa, 646  
Adelaide, 856  
Aden, 101, **543-5**; agriculture, 544; area and population, 544-5; irrigation, 544; oil refinery and port, 543; trade, 543, 544; federation, 544  
Admiralty Islands, **869**  
Afghanistan, **551-3**; agriculture, 552; climate, 551; crops, 552; foreign trade, 552; hydro-electric power, 551; principal towns, population of, 553; relief, 551  
Africa, 24, 37, 39, 40, 43, 77, 188, 199, 201, 203, 217, 270, 274, **629 et seq.**, communications, 629; the Eastern Horn, 645; Free Trade Zone, 630-1; pests and diseases, 630; physical features, 629; soil and soil erosion, 629  
Africa, British Central, **673-7**; Federation, 673; hydro-electric schemes, 676; Nyasaland, 673, 674, **676-7**; Rhodesia, N., 673, 674, **675-6**, Rhodesia, S., 673, **674-5**  
Africa, British East, 244, **677-85**; constituent countries, 677-8; hydro-electric power station, Owen Falls, 681; prospective university, 681  
Africa, British West, **685-95**; constituent territories, 685  
Africa, French Equatorial, **702-4**; exports, 704; territories, area and population, 702  
Africa, French Trusteeship Territories, **701-2**  
Africa, French West, 203, 225, **695-700**; constituent territories, 695; areas and population, 695; currency, 696; foreign trade, 696-7; physical features, 696  
Africa (Guinea) Company, 359  
Africa, High Commission Territories, **672-3**  
Africa, Portuguese, **709-714**  
Africa, South, **658-72**; Apartheid in, 658; area and population, 658; Cape Province, **663-5**; climate, 659-660; diamonds, 660, 664; European settlement, 660; gold, 660, 666, 667; High Commission Territories, 658, Natal, **665-6**; Orange Free State, 666; physical features, 659; railways, 660, 661, **662-3**; resources and trade, 668-71; rivers, 660, 661; Transvaal, **666-8**; uranium, 669  
Africa, S.W., **671-2**; minerals, 671  
Africa, W., chief source of world supplies of cocoa, 203; yams a staple food, 206; exports of groundnuts, 225; Guinea oil palm, 226  
African franc, 696  
Afsbeiddijk, 399  
Agadir, 656  
*Agave rigida*, 214  
Agaves, 778  
Agra, 572  
Agricultural implements, 342

- Agricultural machinery, 348  
 Agriculture in the Tropics, 191  
 Ahaggar, 650  
 Ahmädäbad, 562  
 Aircraft industry, 348, 762  
 Airdrie, 345  
 Aire gap, 84  
 Air-masses, 31  
 Airships, 102  
 Aigun, Treaty of, 504  
 Akaba, 534; Gulf of, 531  
 Akron, 768, 772  
 Akyab, 576  
 Alabama, 173, 764, 766  
 Åland Islands, 466  
 Alaska, 25, 777  
 Alaskan (Alcan) Highway, 724, 750  
 Alban Hills, 481  
 Albania, 491-2; area and population, 491; agriculture, 491; industrial development, 491  
 Albany, 756, 857  
 Albert canal, 395  
 Albert Docks, 370  
 Albert, Lake, 681  
 Alberta, 268, 729, 738, 739, 746-7  
 Albulä Pass, 435  
 Albury, 841  
 Alcohol, 311  
 Aleppo, 319, 528  
 Alès, 383  
 Alewife (fish), 250  
 Alexandria, 638, 639  
 Alexandroupolis, 319  
 Alfa (esparto), 153, 298  
 Alfalfa (lucerne), 63, 778, 827  
 Algeria, 147, 148, 291, 649, 650-2; area and population, 650; ports and towns, 652; wine in, 651  
 Algiers, 101  
 Alicante, 474  
 Alice Springs, 859  
 Aligarh, 572  
*Allos*, 52  
 Alkalies, 306  
 Allahabad, 565, 572  
 Alleghany Mts., 725, 755  
 Allen, Lough, 374  
 Alloo, 328  
 Almaden, New (Calif.), 276  
 Almelo, 400  
 Almonds, 143  
 Alpaca, 158, 160, 342, 819, 822  
 Alpine pastures, 49  
 Alps, 379, 432, 438; tunnels through, 387, 435-6  
 Alps, Southern, 860  
 Alsace, 384, 385  
 Alsace-Lorraine, 149  
 Alta Vera Paz, 200  
 Altyn Tagh Mts., 519  
 Alum, 308-9  
 Aluminium, 290, 435, 498, 625, 691, 739, 748, 762, 767; chief producing countries, 290; in aircraft production, 290  
 Amani Institute, 682  
 Amazon basin, 33  
 Amazon R., 804, 819, 820  
 Amber, 233  
 Amberg, 247  
 America, 720 *et seq.*; air routes, 725; communications, 720 *et seq.*; development of, 720 *et seq.*; motor highways, 724; railways, 720-4  
 America, Central, 199, 217, 794-803; agriculture, 795; climate, 794; communications, 795; forest industries, 796; manufacturing industries, 797; minerals, 796; physical features, 794; population composition, 794; republics of, 795  
 America, North, 24, 39, 40, 42, 43, 238, 239, 240, 725 *et seq.*; climate, 726; exploration and settlement, 727-8; lakes and mts., 725; surface, 725  
 America, South, 36, 37, 39, 40, 41, 42, 47, 199, 217, 268, 803 *et seq.*; climate, 803; communications, 804; language, 804; population, 804; Portuguese in, 804; Spanish in, 804; trade, 805; waterways, 804  
 Amiaata mines, 276  
 Amman, 534  
 Ammonia, sulphate of, 307, 310  
*Amelodesma tenax*, 153  
 Amritsar, 562  
 Amsterdam, 401, 402, 403  
 Amu Daria (Oxus), R., 515, 516  
 Amur, R., 497, 503, 504  
 Anaconda, 767  
 Anatoliantable-land, 524  
 Anchovy, 252  
 Ancona, 484  
 Andes Mts., 42, 803, 814, 817, 819, 821, 823  
 Andizhan, 516  
 Angers, 390  
 Anglo-Egyptian Convention, 1899, 641  
 Anglo-Egyptian Treaty, 631  
 Anglo-Iranian Oil Co., 270, 550  
 Angola, 709-11  
 Angora goat, 158, 664, 672  
 Angoulême, 387  
 Anguilla, 784, 791  
 Animal oils, 246  
 Animal products, minor, 245-6  
 Animals, vegetable-eating, 37, 42; carnivores, 37, 42; domestic, 43  
 Aniseed, 235  
 Ankara, 523  
 Annaberg, 417  
 Annam, 575, 582  
 Annapolis Valley, 741  
 Anniston, 766  
 Annonay, 387  
 Antananarivo, 716  
 Anthracite, 256, 360, 439, 614-15, 762, 763  
 Anthracite (mining town, Alberta), 747  
 Anti-cyclones, 45  
 Anti-Trades, 45  
 Antigua, 784, 791  
 Antilles, Greater, 784  
 Antilles, Lesser, 784  
 Antimony, 289, 822  
 Antofagasta, 823, 825  
 Antwerp, 317, 358, 382, 394-5, 396, 421, 436  
 Anzin, 383  
 Apatite, 497  
 Apennines, 479  
 Apia, 870  
 Appalachian coalfield, 763  
 Appalachian Mts., 725, 754, 755  
 Appenzell, 435  
 Apples, 46, 140, 847  
 Apricots, 142, 760, 851

Apuan Hills, 482  
 Arab League, 528  
 Arabia, 39, 198, 390,  
     **540-7**; Felix, 542;  
     physical features, 540;  
     political divisions, 540  
 Arabian-American Oil  
     Company, 541  
 Arabic, 116  
*Arachis hypogaea*, 138  
 Arakan, 578  
 Arakan Yoma, 576  
 Aral, Sea of, 515, 576  
 Aramco, 541  
 Ararat, Mt., 524  
 Arber, Mt., 411  
 Arcachon, 253  
 Archangel, 501  
 Arctic Prairies, 49, 749  
 Ardee, 350  
 Ardennes, 393  
 Ardrossan, 328, 345  
 Arequipa, 820  
 Argentina, 43, 85, 151,  
     157, 228, 240, 241,  
     243, 244, 268, 271,  
     296, **826-31**; agricul-  
     ture, **827-8**; area,  
     826; climate, 826;  
     communications, 828-  
     829; foreign trade,  
     **829-31**; manufacturing  
     industries, 828; miner-  
     als, 828; principal  
     towns, population of,  
     831; settlement, 826  
 Arica, 823  
 Arizona, 273, 767  
 Arkansas R., 754  
 Arkwright, 180  
 Arlberg tunnel, 436  
 Armenia, 496, **514**  
 Armentières, 386  
 Army-worm, 75  
 Arnheim, 400  
 Arno, R., 480  
 Arrowroot, 206, 792  
 Arsenic, **290**, 461, 738  
 Artesian wells, 62  
 Arthur's Pass, 860;  
     Tunnel, 860  
 Artificial teeth, 522, 531  
 Aruba, 793  
 Asansol, 556  
 Asbestos, **293**, 522, 672,  
     738, 739  
 Ascension Island, **715**  
 Ashio, 624  
 Ashton, 342  
 Asia, 24, 275, 299, 300,  
     **518-21**; boundaries,  
     518; climate, 518-19;  
     desiccation in, 519;

population density,  
     518; relief, 519; re-  
     nunciation of rights  
     by Western powers,  
     520; trade routes, 519  
 Asmara, 646  
 Asphalt, 265, **271**, 546,  
     793, 813  
*Aspidosperma Quebra-*  
*cho*, 296  
 Ass, 79  
 Assam, 164, 194, 269  
 Assiniboia, 746  
 Assiniboine R., 735, 746  
 Assiut, 634  
 Astrakhan, 509, **513**  
 Asuncion, 835  
 Aswan, 635  
 Aswan dam, 634  
 Atbara, R., 632, 642, 644  
 Athabasca, L., 746  
 Athabasca, 746  
 Athens, 319, 489, **490**  
 Atlas Lands (Jesirat-el-  
     Maghreb), **649 et seq.**;  
     history, 649  
 Atlas, the Little, 650  
 Atmospheric pressure, 22  
 Atolls, 867, 868  
*Attalea funifera*, 215  
 Attar of roses, 229  
 Auckland, **864**  
 Auckland Islands, 859  
 Aue, 417  
 Augsburg, 419  
 Austral and Rapa Group  
     of Islands, **872**  
 Australia, 24, 39, 40, 42,  
     43, 148, 157-8, 240,  
     241, 243, 244, 263,  
     273, **837-59**; animal  
     products, 845; Cen-  
     tral, 858; climate, 840,  
     851 *et seq.*; coastline,  
     837; commerce, 848-  
     851; Commonwealth  
     of, 844-5; communi-  
     cations, 853; com-  
     pared with S. Africa,  
     843-4; crops, 845-7,  
     854; Dividing Range,  
     838, 851; inland  
     waterways, 839, 840-  
     842; irrigation, 842,  
     851, 855, 856; manu-  
     factures, 854; mineral  
     wealth, 847-8, 853;  
     North, 858; Northern  
     Territory, 858; popu-  
     lation, 843; principal  
     towns, population of,  
     859; railways, 838,  
     **839**; South, 844, 848,

**855-6**; States and Ter-  
     ritories, area, popula-  
     tion, agricultural stat-  
     istics, **846**; surface,  
     838; trade and tele-  
     graph routes, 850-1;  
     vegetation, 842-3;  
     Western, 844, 856-7;  
     'White' policy, 843  
 Australian Alps, 838, 851  
 Austria, 263, 406, 420;  
     435, **438-41**; area, 438;  
     communications, 440;  
     foreign trade, 440;  
     land use, 439; live-  
     stock, 439; machinery,  
     440; minerals, 439-40;  
     occupation zones, 438;  
     principal towns, popu-  
     lation of, 441  
 Austro-Hungarian Em-  
     pire, 438  
 Autobahnen, 411, 412  
 Automobiles, 507, 772  
 Auvergne, 379  
 Aviation, 102-4  
 Avocado pears, 143  
 Aylesbury, 352  
 Ayr, 343  
 Ayrshire, 345  
 Ayrshire coalfield, 328  
 Azores, 477  
 Azov, Sea of, 513  
 Aztec Empire, 727, 778  
 Aztecs, 797  
 Azerbaijan (Azerbaijan),  
     492, 496, 514  
  
 BABASSU kernels, **228**  
 Bacup, 351  
 Baden, 406, 418, 433,  
     434  
 Baden, Margraves, 419  
 Baganda people, 680  
 Baghdad, 319, 527, 538  
 Bahamas, 784, 789, 790  
 Bahawalpur, 559  
 Bahia Blanca, 829  
 Bahrain Islands, 270,  
     541, 546-7  
 Baikal, Lake, 511  
 Baize, 342  
*Bajra*, 561  
 Baker, Dr. O. E., 758  
 Baku, 269, 508, 513, 514  
 Baku oilfield, 498  
 Balata gum, 220, 807,  
     820  
 Balboa, 803  
 Balearic Islands, 474  
 Balikpapan, 598, 601

- Balkan Mts., 485  
 Balkhash, L., 575  
 Ballarat, 852  
 Ballast cargoes, 97  
 Balsa, 818  
 Balsam, 799  
 Balsam, Peruvian, 797  
 Balsas Valley, 782  
 Baltic coast, 406  
 Baltic sea, 408, 410  
 Baltic States, 492-3  
 Baltimore, 251, 772  
 Baluchistan, 573, 557  
 Bamangwato tribe, 673  
 Bananas, 215-16, 472, 529, 562, 572, 603, 647, 698, 702, 718, 719, 762, 780, 783, 785, 787, 788, 791, 793, 795, 797, 798, 799, 800, 801, 808, 854, 865, 868, 869, 870, 871, 872; chief producing countries, 216; conditions for growth, 216  
 Bandar Shah, 550  
 Bandjermasin, 598, 601  
 Banff, 747  
 Banff National Park, 747  
 Bangalore, 573  
 Bangkok, 570, 581  
 Bangui, 703  
 Banias (Caesarea Philippi), 270, 528  
 Bank-notes, 119  
 Banks Peninsula, 865  
 Baobab, 299  
 Baraka, R., 643  
 Barbados, 784, 785, 789, 792  
 Barbuda, 784, 791  
 Barcelona, 470, 473, 474  
 Barcoo, R., 842  
 Bari, 484  
 Barks (tanning), 296  
 Barley, 38, 46, 47, 135-6; in Algeria, 650; in America, S., 824, 827; in Austria, 439; in Bulgaria, 486; chief producing countries, 136; in China, 613; conditions for growth, 135; in Cyprus, 522; in Czechoslovakia, 442; in Denmark, 464; in Egypt, 636; in Greece, 488; in Hungary, 446; in Indian sub-continent, 560; in Iraq, 536; in Italy, 481; in Japan, 623; in Korea, 619; in Lebanon, 529; in Libya, 649; in Malta, 484; in Mexico, 778; in Morocco, 656; in New Zealand, 861; in Norway, 456; in Persia, 548; in Roumania, 452; in Spain, 471; in Syria, 527; in Turkey, 524; in U.K., 324-5; in U.S.A., 760; in U.S.S.R., 506; yield, 135; in Yugoslavia, 448  
 Barnaul, 508  
 Barnsley, 342, 344  
 Barotseland, 675  
 Barranquilla, 816  
 Barrow, 344, 345, 349  
 Basel (Basle), 168, 319, 433, 434, 435, 436  
 Basic slag, 292  
 Basra, 319, 538, 547  
 Bass Strait, 857  
 Bassein, 578  
 Basutoland, 672  
 Bata, 705  
 Bata shoe factory, 444  
 Batavia (Djakarta), 598, 600  
 Bath stone, 293  
 Bathurst (Gambia), 694  
 Bathurst (N.S.W.), 854  
 Batley, 342  
 Baton Rouge, 773  
 Batum, 513  
 Bauchi Plateau, 686  
 Bauxite, 290, 447, 451, 453, 482, 487, 489, 691, 739, 788, 791, 807, 811, 873  
 Bavaria, 301, 405  
 Bavarian Alps, 420  
 Beans, 137, 453, 710, 778, 795, 797, 798, 801, 806  
 Bear Island, 458  
 Beaucaire, 252  
 Bechuanaland Protectorate, 673  
 Beduin, 534  
 Beech, 238  
 Beer, 443  
 Beeswax, 230  
 Beet, 150  
 Beira, 674, 677, 712, 713  
 Beirut, 319, 527, 529  
 Bekaa Valley, 528  
 Belem (Para), 809  
 Belfast, 152, 343, 349  
 Belgian Congo, 276, 311, 396, 630-1 (Free Trade Zone); 705-9; communications, 706-707; mineral resources, 707; physical features, 706  
 Belgium, 46, 152, 305, 390, 391-6; agriculture, 391-2; coal, 392; Customs duties, 394; industries, 393-4; languages, 391; manufactures, 393; minerals, 392; overseas trade, 396; population density, 391; ports, 395-6; principal crops, 391; principal towns, population statistics, 396; size, 391; surface, 391  
 Belgrade, 319, 450, 451  
 Belize, 798  
 Bell Bay, 858  
 Bell Island, 749  
 Belle Isle, 733  
 Bellingham, 760  
 Belt of Calms (Doldrums), 33  
 Benares, 189, 561  
 Bendigo, 852  
 Benelux, 394, 401  
 Bengal, 164, 194, 212, 213  
 Bengal Iron & Steel Co., 555  
 Benghazi, 648  
 Benguela, 711  
 Bensoin, 233  
 Bentheim oilfield, 416  
 Benue, R., 686  
 Berbera, 647  
 Bergen, 457, 458  
 Berkeley Ship Canal 352  
 Berlin, 320, 404, 408, 409, 411, 418, 419, 420, 423  
 Berlin Conference (1885), 630  
 Berlin-Stettin Canal, 409  
 Bermuda, 750  
 Berne, 433, 436  
 Berwick-on-Tweed, 357  
 Besançon, 387  
 Bessarabia, 492  
 Bessemer ores, 330  
 Bessemer process, 347  
*Beta vulgaris*, 150  
 Bctel, 233  
 Bethlehem, 530  
 Bethlehem, South, 766  
 Bethnal Green, 344  
 Beveland, South, 402  
 Bienne, 434

Bihar, State of, 572  
 Bikini, 873  
 Bilbao, 102, 470, 472, 474  
 Biled-ul-jerid (Land of Dates), 650  
 Billingham - on - Tees, 265, 350  
 Billingsgate, 252  
 Bills of exchange, 119-120  
 Bingen, 410  
 Birds' nests, 248  
 Birdum, 859  
 Birmingham, 346, 347, 348, 349, 350  
 Birmingham (Ala.), 766  
 Biscay, Bay of, 384  
 Bischoff, Mt., 858  
 Bismarck Archipelago, 868  
 Bismuth, 290, 738  
 Bitumen, 265  
 Bizerta, 654  
 Blackburn, 338, 347  
 'Black Country,' 346  
 Black Earth, 501, 505  
 Black Forest, 407, 408, 410, 419  
 Black Hills, 767  
 Black lead, 292  
 Black Rock Canal, 757  
 Black Sea, 454, 509, 513  
 Blankets, 342  
 Blantyre, 676  
 Bleaching powder, 307  
 Bloemfontein, 666  
 Blue Mts. (Australia), 838  
 Blue Mts. (Jamaica), 791  
 Bluff Harbour, 865  
 Bo, 693  
 Bobo-Dioulasso, 698  
 Bochetta Pass, 483  
 Bochnia salt mines, 429  
 Boekelo, 400  
 Bogota, 816  
 Bohemia, 311, 442  
 Bohemian Forest, 407, 411  
 Bohol, 602  
 Bolan Pass, 573  
 Bolivar, Simon, 816  
 Bolivia, 275-6, 289, 291, 821-3  
 Boll-weevils, 75  
 Bolton, 338, 347  
 Bolzano (Bozen), 441  
*Bombax Ceiba*, 215;  
*malabaricum*, 215  
 Bombay, 562, 568, 569  
*Bombyx mori*, 162

Bonaire, 793  
 Bones, 244  
 Bonitos, 624  
 Bonn, 404, 410  
 Boom, 392  
 Boots and shoes, 342  
 Borax, 292, 482, 824  
 Bordeaux, 252, 387, 389, 436  
 Borkou, 704  
 Borneo, 597, 598;  
 British, 595-6  
 Borrowdale, 292  
 Boryslaw oil-wells, 427  
 Bosnia, 448, 450, 451  
 Boston, 757, 772, 773  
 Botany Bay, 843  
 Bothnia, Gulf of, 466, 467  
 Bougainville, 869  
 Boulder Dam, 769  
 Boulogne, 317  
*Bounty* mutineers, 868  
 Bournville, 347  
 Bowen, 855  
 Bradford, 162, 341-2, 347  
 Brahmaputra, R., 554, 564  
 Braila, 454  
 Brandenburg, 418  
 Brasov, 452  
 Brass, 274  
 Bratislava (Pressburg), 444  
 Brazil, 198, 199-200, 203-5, 228, 236, 293, 805-10; agriculture, 806; area, 805; communications, 807-9; crops, 806; currency, 809; foreign trade, 809; forest products, 807; hydro-electric power, 807; immigrants, 809; land use, 805; manufacturing industries, 807; mineral resources, 807; political divisions, 805; ports, 809; principal towns, population of, 810  
 Brazil nuts, 807  
 Brazzaville, 703  
 Breckland, 322  
 Breda, 400  
 Bremen, 406, 408, 411, 421-2, 419  
 Bremer, R., 855  
 Bremerhaven, 421-2  
 Brenner Pass, 411, 421, 441

Breslau (Wroclaw), 407, 411, 419, 427  
 Brest, 389  
 Brest-Litovsk, 427  
 Bridgetown, 792  
 Bridgewater Canal, 352  
 Briey, 383, 385  
 Brindley, James, 354  
 Brisbane, 855  
 Brisbane, R., 855  
 Bristol, 357, 369, 372  
 Britain, 46, 161-2, 251 *et seq.*, 321 *et seq.* (*see also* British Isles and United Kingdom); Highland, 321; Lowland, 321  
*Britain and the British Seas*, 334  
 British Borneo, 269, 595-7  
 British Columbia, 45, 251, 729, 738, 739, 747-8  
 British Commonwealth, 363  
 British Cotton-Growing Association, 178  
 British European Airways (B.E.A.), 103  
 British Honduras, 238, 797-8  
 British Isles, 45, 116, 321-74; agricultural statistics, 325; agriculture, 323-6; banking and insurance, 362; beet-sugar, 325; canals and waterways, 352; climate, 322-3; coal and iron in, 328, 329 *et seq.*, 360-1; communications, 352; cotton manufactures, 331, 336 *et seq.*; definition, 321; development of water power, 333; earthenware and porcelain, 350, exports, 357 *et seq.*, history of, 357, statistics, 365; farming decline, 323, in wartime, 324, farms, size of, 324; food industries, 347; foreign trade, 357-68; furniture-making, 351; glass, 350; glove-making, 351; imports, 363-368, statistics, 364; industries, 336-52, cotton, 336 *et seq.*, woollen, 341-4; influence

- of geographical factors in, 326 *et seq.*;  
iron manufactures, 346, 363; iron smelting in 344; land shortage in, 334; land use, 321; metalliferous mining, 349; National Coal Board, 330, 361; oil-refining, 351; overseas investments, 362; population, 334-6; population in principal towns, 373; ports, 331; railways, 356 *et seq.*; road haulage, 357; rubber industry, 347; seaports, 368-74; shipbuilding in, 348, 361, 371; smelting, 349; transport and communication, 352-357; wheat in, 324
- British North Borneo Company, 359, 595
- British Overseas Airways Corporation (B.O.A.C.), 103
- British Phosphate Commissioners, 595, 867, 870
- British South Africa Company, 359, 674
- British Transport Commission, 87
- Brno (Brünn), 443, 444
- Broach (Barugaza), 569
- Broadcloth, 160, 342
- Broken Hill (New South Wales), 848, 854
- Broken Hill (Northern Rhodesia), 675
- Bromsgrove, 346, 350
- Bronze, 274
- Brooke, James, 596
- Broussonetia papyrifera*, 299
- Bruges, 358, 395, 396
- Brugg, 433
- Brunei, 269, 597
- Brunswick, 418
- Brussels, 319, 396
- 'Brussels' carpets, 343
- Bucharest, 319, 454
- Buckingham Canal, 560
- Buckwheat, 136-7, 383
- Budapest, 318, 448
- Buenaventura, 816
- Buenos Aires, 102, 825, 829
- Buffalo, 757
- Buffaloes, 79, 450, 52..
- 529, 538, 561, 581, 586, 590, 610
- Bug, R., 509
- Buhrstones, 292
- Building stones, 293, 768
- Buka, 869
- Bukhara, 515, 516
- Bukovina, 492
- Bulawayo, 674
- Bulgaria, 485-7; agriculture, 485-6; area and population, 485; collective farming, 486; land use, 485; livestock, 486; relief, 485; silk-worm industry, 165, 486
- Bunbury, 857
- Burgan oilfield, 547
- Burgundy Canal, 380; Gate, 380
- Burma, 269, 520, 575-9; area and population, 576, 578-9; climate, 577; communications, 579; crops, 578; Dry Belt, 576, 578; independence of, 576; Indians in, 579; irrigation in, 578; minerals in, 577; physical features, 576; principal towns, population of, 579
- Burnley, 338, 347
- Burntisland, 328
- Burra Burra, 856
- Burslem, 302, 350
- Bury, 338, 342, 347
- Butane, 268
- Butte, 767
- Butter, 243, 512, 739
- Buttons, 346, 523
- Bytom (Bouthen), 429
- CABINET woods, 237, 788, 796
- Cabot, John, 727
- Cabot, Sebastian, 359
- Cacao, 202-3. See also under Cocoa
- Cadiz, 470, 474
- Caen, 384, 385
- Cæsalpinia brasiliensis*, 238
- Cæsalpinia coriaria*, 296
- Caffeine, 235
- Caicos Islands, 791
- Cairo, 39, 632, 633, 638, 639
- Cairo (U.S.A.), 753
- Calais, 311, 319, 357, 387
- Calamine, 274
- Calcutta, 213, 563, 9
- Calder Canal, 352
- Caledon, R., 672
- Caledonian Canal, 354
- Calicut, 566
- California, 40, 57, 148, 205, 267, 762, 767
- California, Gt. Valley of, 760
- Calgary, 747
- Callao, 820
- Caltanissetta, 482
- Cambodia, 520, 575, 582 *et seq.*
- Cambrai, 152, 386
- Cambric, 152
- Camels, 80, 522, 524, 527, 534, 538, 544, 545, 549, 644, 647, 651, 653, 656, 699, 700
- Camel's hair, 158-9, 160
- Cameroons, 216, 686, 688
- Cameroons, Republic, 701-2
- Camphor, 229, 623
- Campine coalfield, 391, 392, 395
- Campos, 805, 806
- Canada, 43, 48, 57, 151, 236, 242, 243, 250, 263, 268, 273, 275, 277, 291, 293, 296, 300, 311, 728 *et seq.*; area, 729; climate, 730-2; communications, 733-8; geological structure, 729-30; 'Garden of,' 745; hydro-electric power, 745; irrigation, 732; manufacturing industries, 740-1; minerals, 738-9, 747; population, 728; provinces, 728-9; provinces and towns, 741-50; railways, 735-8; surface, 729; trade, 739, 742, 743; waterways (inland and St. Lawrence Seaway), 733-5; tonnage carried, 733; wheat, 732
- Canadian National Rys., 735-7, 748
- Canadian Northern Rly., 735-6
- Canadian Pacific Rly., 85, 732, 735 *et seq.*

- Canadian Shield, 739, 746  
 Canals, irrigation (inundation and perennial), 62; navigable, 89-90; inter-oceanic, 90; advantages and disadvantages, 90; attempts to increase speed, 90; locks and alternatives, 91. See also under names of individual canals  
 Canary Islands, 216, 719  
 Canberra, 845  
 Candelilla wax, 230  
 Candles, 223, 246  
 Canmore, 747  
*Cannabis sativa*, 152  
 Cantabrian Mts., 473  
 Canterbury Plains, 860, 861, 864  
 Canterbury Province, 864  
 Cantley, 325  
 Canton, 611, 612  
 Canvas, 152  
 Cape Breton island, 741, 742  
 Cape Province, 148, 659, 663-5; area and population, 663; diamonds, 664; sheep, 664  
 Cape Town, 102, 660, 662, 664  
 Cape Verde Is., 718  
 Capital, 113  
 Caracas, 814  
 Caravans, 80  
 Caraway, 235  
 Carbide, 309  
 Carcassonne, Gap of, 380  
 Cardamom Hills, 565  
 Cardamoms, 235  
 Cardiff, 345, 360  
 Caribbean Sea, 784  
 Caribs, 792  
 Carmarthen, 357  
 Carnauba wax, 230, 807  
 Carnotite, 311  
 Carobs, 522  
 Carolina, N., 186; S., 186, 767  
 Caroline Islands, 873  
 Carpathians, 428, 452  
 Carpentaria, Gulf of, 855  
 Carpets, 160, 342, 385, 549, 562  
 Carrack, 96, 97  
 Carrara, 482  
 Cartagena, 472, 473, 474, 816  
*Carthamus tinctorius*, 236  
 Cartier, Jacques, 727  
 Cartwright, 181  
 Casablanca, 656, 657  
 Casamance, 697  
 Cascade Mts., 725  
 Cashmere, 160; shawls, 562  
 Cashmere (Kashmir) goat, 158  
 Cassava, 603, 806  
 Cassia lignea, 234  
 Cassiterite, 276  
*Castilleja elastica*, 217  
 Castor-oil, 561  
 Castres, 386  
 Catania, 482, 484  
 Catgut, 248  
 Catskill Mts., 755  
 Cattle, 46, 453, 455, 506, 524, 527, 529, 534, 544, 549, 561, 581, 586, 590, 622, 651, 653, 669, 688, 708, 759, 761, 783, 787, 797, 800, 806, 818, 819, 822, 824, 828, 832, 835, 854, 857, 858, 861, 872  
 Cattle rearing, 43  
 Cauca, R., 815  
 Caucasia and Trans-Caucasia, 514  
 Caucasus, 492  
 Caucasus Mts., 269, 496, 498  
 Causses, 385  
 Caviare, 502  
 Cayenne, 812  
 Cayman Islands, 791  
 Cebu, 602  
*Cecidomyia destructor*, 75  
 Cedar, 238; red, 238; Spanish, 796; white, 238  
 Cedarwood oil, 229  
 Celebes, 597, 598, 601  
 Cement, 293, 791  
 Cenis, Mont., 483; tunnel, 436  
 Central Illinois Railroad, 773  
 Central Provinces (Madhya Pradesh), 231  
 Central Sugar Cane Breeding Station, 792  
*Ceratonia siliqua*, 138  
 Cetinje (Titograd), 457  
 Ceuta, 654  
 Cevennes, 379  
 Ceylon, 32, 75, 201, 211, 212, 235, 292, 520, 584-7; area and population, 584, 585; communications, 587; foreign trade, 585; manufacturing industries, 586; principal towns, population of, 587  
 Chaco plains, 826, 827, 835  
 Chad, Lake, 686, 701  
 Chad Territory, 703-4  
 Chair-making, 357  
 Challa Mts., 710  
 Chambers of Commerce, 12-13  
 Chamois leather, 297  
 Champagne (region), 386  
 Champlain Canal, 756  
 Champlain, Samuel, 727  
 Chancellor, 359  
 Chardzhou, 516  
 Charleroi, 392, 393, 396  
 Charles R., 744  
 Charleville, 374  
 Charlotte Amalie, 789  
 Charlottetown, 743  
 Charter air services, 103  
 Chatham, 349  
 Chatham Islands, 859  
 Cheb (Eger), 411  
 Cheese, 243, 479; Gorgonzola, 479; Parmesan, 479; Stracchino, 479  
 Chelyabinsk, 511  
 Chemical fertilisers, 59-60  
 Chemical industries, 306 *et seq.*  
 Chemicals, 394, 625; manufacture of, 418  
 Chemnitz, 418  
 Cheques, 119  
 Cherbourg, 387, 389  
 Chernozem, 56  
 Cherries, 140  
 Chesapeake Bay, 251, 751  
 Chester, 352  
 Chesterfield, 344  
 Chesterfield Islands, 871  
 Chestnut trees, 480  
 Chestnuts, 143  
 Cheviot Hills, 321  
 Chicago, 757, 765, 769, 772, 773  
 Chicago Convention, 103  
 Chick-peas, 137  
 Chicle, 781, 796, 797, 798  
 Chicory, 391  
 Chile, 40, 45, 60, 274



- 291, 823-5; agricultural products, 824; climate, 823; manufacturing industries, 824-5; minerals, 824
- Chillagoe, 855
- Chillies, 233
- Chiltern Hills, 321, 351
- China, 44, 45, 157, 164, 190, 192 *et seq.*, 227, 229, 234, 291, 299, 303, 608-16; area, 608; communications, 612; communism in, 521; contrasts between N. and S., 610; crops, 613-14; crops and livestock, 613-14; foreign trade, 615; land use, 613; livestock, 614; mineral wealth, 614-15; physical features, 609; population, 608; principal towns, population of, 616; rivers, 611
- China clay, 97, 293, 297, 440
- China grass, 214
- Chindwin, valley, 576
- Chinook winds, 733, 747
- Chittagong, 213, 568
- Chkalov, 508, 516
- Cholera, 77
- Cholon, 584
- Chota Nagpur, 555
- Christchurch (N.Z.), 860, 864
- Christmas Island (Indian Ocean), 594
- Christmas Island (Pacific Ocean), 867
- Chrome, 522, 675, 787, 871
- Chrome ore, 525, 693
- Chromite, 556, 604
- Chromium, 296, 289-90
- Chronometers, 92
- Chungking, 612
- Churchill, 746
- Churchill R., 738
- Cicer arletinum*, 137
- Cigar industry, 787, 791
- Cigarettes, 189, 538
- Cigars, 188
- Cilician Gate, 524
- Cinchona, 797; bark, 818; importing countries, 212; producing countries, 211
- Cinchona calisaya*, 211; *ledgeriana*, 211; *offi-*
- cinalis*, 211; *succirubra*, 211
- Cinnamati, 771
- Cinnamon, 234; bark oil, 229; leaf, 229
- Cinnamomum camphora*, 229, *loureirii*, 234; *zeylanicum*, 234
- Citron, 141
- Citronella, 229
- Citrus aurantium*, 141; *japonica*, 141; *limetta*, 141; *limonum*, 141; *medica*, 141
- Citrus fruits, 41, 450, 480, 481, 522, 529, 531, 546, 669, 811, 870; oils, 229
- Ciudad Bolivar, 813
- Ciudad Trujillo, 788
- Civil Aviation Act, 103
- Civitavecchia, 481
- Clays, 293
- Clearfield coalfield, 764
- Clements, F. E., 31
- Cleimont-Ferand, 379
- Climate, 22-51
- Climatic control in plant growth, 25
- Climatic regions, 31 *et seq.*; Cold Desert or Tundra, 48; Cold Temperate or Sub-Arctic, 47-8; Cool Temperate Oceanic, 45-9; East Coast Margins, 46-7; Ecuador type, 33; Equatorial, 32-6, high latitudes, 45-9, highland, 49-51; Hot Desert, 38-40; low latitudes, 32-40; Mediterranean, 40-1; middle latitudes, 40-5; Mid-latitude Desert, 41-2; Mid-latitude Grassland, 42-3; Monsoon, 36-8
- Clove oil, 229
- Cloves, 234, 684
- Clutha R., 860
- Clyde basin, 328
- Clyde, Firth of, 322
- Clyde, R., 349, 371
- Clydeside, 349
- Coal, 97, 112-13, 280, 306, 322, 256-64; in Africa, Central, 675; in Africa, S., 669; in America, S., 807, 820, 824; in Australia, 848, 853, 855, 857; bituminous, 256; Brit-
- ish exports, 360; in Canada, 738, 747; in China, 614; consumption, 258; hydrogenation of, 265, 310; in Indian sub-continent, 555; in Japan, 624; lignite, 256; in Mexico, 780; in New Zealand, 863; in Norway, 457, 458; production, 260-2; in relation to town growth, 110-12; in Spain, 472; in Sweden, 459, 461; in Turkey, 525; in U.K., 257, production, 258-259; in U.S.A., 754, 762 *et seq.*, use of, 257; in U.S.S.R., 497; world reserves, 262
- Coal Industry, nationalisation 197, 259
- Coal Industry, Royal Commission on, 257-258
- Coal tar, 308; dyes, 418
- Coalfields, in Belgium, 392; in Britain, 328 *et seq.*; in Czechoslovakia, 443; in Germany, 415 *et seq.*; in Holland, 400; in Hungary, 447; in Roumania, 453; in Yugoslavia, 450
- Coaling stations, 101
- Coast Range (North America), 725
- Coatbridge, 345
- Cobalt, 290, 707, 738, 739
- Cobalt (Ont.), 746
- Coca shrub, 235
- Cocaine, 235
- Cocanáda, 571
- Cochachamba, 823
- Cochin-China, 575, 582
- Cochineal, 236, 719
- Cocoa, 202-3; in Africa, 203; beans, 202; processing, 202; butter, 202; cocoa-nibs, 202; conditions for growth, 202-3; consumption, 203; exports, 203; production, 203, 687, 688, 691, 694, 697, 698, 701, 702, 705, 788, 791, 792, 796, 800, 801, 806, 813, 815, 818, 822, 867, 871
- Coconut, desiccated, 586; oil, 225, 586, 589

- Coconuts, 585, 586, 589, 605, 685, 785, 789, 796, 798, 801, 810, 811, 867, 869, 873
- Cocos and Keeling Islands, 595
- Cod, 250, 251, 252, 473, 741
- Cod-liver oil, 247
- Coffea arabica*, 197; *liberica*, 201; *robusta*, 201
- Coffee, 36, 50, 73, 75, 197-202, 542, 585, 679, 680, 683, 697, 698, 701, 702, 703, 705, 708, 711, 717, 718, 762, 780, 782, 783, 787, 788, 791, 795, 797, 798, 799, 800, 806, 811, 813, 815, 820, 822, 867, 870; in Africa, 201; in America, Central and S., 199, 200; Blue Mountain, 200; in Brazil, 198, 199-200; conditions for growth, 197-8; consumption, 199; growing countries, 199-201; in India, 201; in Jamaica, 200; in Java, 201; processing, 198; in U.S.A., 199, 200
- Coir, 215; fibre, 586; yarn, 586
- Coire, 435
- Coke, 256, 280, 763, 765
- Cola acuminata*, 235
- Colchester, 252
- Coleridge Lake, 864
- Collie R., 857
- Collingwood, 746
- Cologne, 319, 409, 411
- Colombia, 200, 211-12, 216, 268, 814-16; climate, 815; communications, 815-16; crops and land use, 815; foreign trade, 816; minerals, 815; principal towns, population of, 816
- Colombo, 101, 587
- Colonial Development and Welfare Fund, 523, 630
- Colorado, 273, 311, 762, 767
- Colorado beetle, 75
- Columbia R., 755, 760, 769
- Columbite, 688
- Columbus, 92, 216
- Colza, 383
- Comino, 484
- Commerce, geographical controls of, 8, historical background, 2-3; promotion of, 12-13; results of, 1
- Commercial attachés, 12
- Commercial countries, 115
- Commodities, 123 *et seq.*; dependent on climate, 123 *et seq.*; in temperate zone, 123 *et seq.*; fisheries, 249 *et seq.*; manufactures from various materials, 795 *et seq.*; mineral products, 256 *et seq.*; products of various climates, 221 *et seq.*; sub-tropical products, 170 *et seq.*; tropical products, 198 *et seq.*
- Commonwealth Air Transport Council, 103
- Commonwealth Economic Committee, 210
- Como, Lake, 483
- Comoro Islands, 717
- Conakry, 698
- Concepcion, 824
- Concepcion Bay, 102
- Congo river, 706; basin, 33, 630; Belgian dependency, 705-9 (see also under Belgian Congo)
- Congo Free State (Belgian Congo), 630
- Coniferous forests, 47, 48, 500
- Connellsville, 764, 765
- Constance, Lake, 433
- Constanta, 454
- Consuls, 12
- Convection, currents, 26
- Cook, Captain, 852
- Cook Islands, 859, 870
- Cook's Strait, 859, 864
- Coolgardie, 857
- Copaifera copallifera*, 231
- Copal (gum), 231
- Copenhagen (Köbenhavn), 318, 463, 464
- Copper, 273-4, 349, 450, 453, 461, 473, 556, 605, 615, 669, 671, 681, 707, 708, 738, 739, 747, 762, 767, 780, 783, 787, 788, 820, 822, 824, 835, 848, 855, 856, 858
- Copper ores, 624
- Copia, 225, 586, 589, 595, 599, 603, 683, 715, 792, 865, 866, 867, 868, 869, 870, 871
- Coquimbo, 824
- Coral, 247, 248
- Coral Sea, 866
- Corallium rubrum*, 248
- Corby, 345
- Corchorus*, 212
- Cordilleras (Andine), 814
- Cordoba, 470
- Corfu, 489
- Coriander, 235
- Corinth, Canal, 488, 490; Gulf of, 488; Isthmus, 489
- Cork, 357, 374, 475, 651, 653
- Cork-oak, 41
- Corn. *See* Maize
- Corn Belt, 133
- Corn, hybrid, 761
- Corn Laws, 323
- Cornwall, 293, 321
- Cornwallis Valley, 741
- Corozo nuts, 245
- Correa, 570
- Corset-making, 347
- Corsica, 379, 480
- Cort, Henry, 278
- Cortez, 727
- Corunna, 474
- Cos, 490
- Cossacks, 502, 503
- Costa Rica, 216, 796, 800
- Côte, d'Or, 380
- Cotonu, 698
- Cotton, 38, 43, 44, 45, 73, 170-9, 476, 488, 506, 513, 516, 522, 525, 527, 535, 538, 544, 549, 552, 555, 559, 561, 578, 581, 610, 619, 625, 635-6, 643, 647, 680, 682, 683, 688, 698, 703, 764, 708, 759, 782, 791, 792, 799, 806, 819, 820, 822, 827, 835, 854; Ashmouni, 635; belt, 173; boll weevil, 173; caravonica, 172; chief producing countries, 170; conditions for growth, 172; cultivation limits, 170; in

- Egypt, 177-8; in India and Pakistan, 175-7; pests, 173; production, 178-9; Sakellariadis (Sakel), 635, 643; Sea Island, 172, 635; in U.S.A., 172-5; in war, 178; world acreage, 171  
 Cotton manufactures, 179-86; in Africa, W., 696; in America, S., 807; in Asia, 184; in Britain, 336 *et seq.*, 359, 363; in Ceylon, 586; consumption, 185; in England and United Kingdom, 181-2, 183, 185, 186; in Europe, 184; exports, 182, 183-4; in France, 386; in Germany, 419; in Greece, 488; in Holland, 400; in Hungary, 447; importers, 183; in Indian sub-continent, 562; in Italy, 482; in Japan, 627; machinery for, 180-1; in Mexico, 779; in Spain, 472; in Switzerland, 434; trade, 182; in U.S.A., 184  
 Cottonseed oil, 223; production, 223; uses, 223  
 Council of Europe, 387  
 Courtrai, 386, 391, 393  
 Coventry, 344, 348  
 Cow-hair, 245  
 Cowrie-shell, 117  
 Coypus, 239  
 Cracow, 429  
 Crater, 544  
 Crawfish, 790  
 Crete, 487, 490  
 Crewe, 85  
 Crimea, 222  
 Crinan Canal, 354  
 Croatia, 448  
 Crompton, 180  
*Crotalaria juncea*, 215  
 Crow's Nest Coalfield, 747  
 Crow's Nest Pass, 738  
 Cryolite, 290, 728  
 Crystal Mts., 705, 706  
 Cuba, 188, 206, 238, 784, 785, 786-7; principal cities, population of, 787  
 Cubebs, 233  
 Culex, 77  
 Cumberland, 328, 330  
 Cumberland (B.C.), 747  
 Cumberland R. (U.S.A.), 754  
 Cummin, 235  
 Cunard Line, 93  
 Cunard White Star Line, 362  
 Cupreous pyrites, 523  
 Curaçao, 793  
*Cucina tinctoria*, 236  
 Currants, 142, 488  
 Currants (raw), 140  
 Currency, 4  
 Customs duty, 148  
 'Cutch', 578  
 Cutlery, 462  
 Cuxhaven, 421-2  
 Cyclones, 45  
*Cypraea moneta*, 117  
 Cyprus, 521-3; area, 521; climate, 522; foreign trade, 523; land use, 522; languages, 521; minerals, 522; population, 521; relief, 522; towns, 523; electric power, 522; treaty, 522  
 Cyrenaica, 648  
 Czechoslovakia, 149, 152, 263, 301, 305, 317, 430, 442-5; agriculture, 442-3; area, 442; glassmaking, 444; industries, 443; land use, 442; livestock, 443; minerals, 443; People's Democratic Republic, 442; population, 442; porcelain, 444; principal towns, population of, 445  
 Dacca, 573  
*Dactylopius coccus*, 236  
 Dagenham, 348  
 Dahomey, 698-9  
 Dairy-farming, 761  
 Dairy produce, 324, 743, 745, 853, 863  
 Dakar, 697  
 Dakota, S., 767  
 Dalmatia, 450, 451  
 Daltonganj, 555  
 Daly Waters, 859  
 Daman, 574  
 Damascus, 527, 528  
 Dammam, 541  
 Dammar, 233  
 Damodar valley, 555  
 Dannemora, 460  
 Danube basin, 438  
 Danube, R., 316, 408, 446, 452, 454  
 Danzig, 427, 430  
 Darfur highlands, 642  
 Darjeeling, 211, 572  
 Darling, R., 841  
 Darling Downs, 854, 855  
 Darlington, 347  
 Dartford (Kent), 299  
 Darwen (Lancashire), 351  
 Darwin (Australia), 856, 858, 859  
 Dasht-i-Kavir, 548  
 Dasht-i-Luft, 548  
 Dates, 538, 545, 546, 549, 643, 648, 649, 653, 704  
 Davos, 436, 602  
 Dawson City, 749  
 Dawson River Basin, 848  
 Dax, 384  
 Dayton (Ohio), 768, 772  
 Dead Sea, 530, 531, 533  
 De Beers Consolidated Mines Ltd., 664  
 Deccan, 557, 558  
 'Deccan Traps', 555  
 Delagoa Bay, 660, 712  
 Delaware, R., 754  
 Delaware, Valley of, 763  
 Delft, 303, 400  
 Delfzijl, 403  
 Delhi, 572  
 Demavend, Mt., 548  
 Demerara, R., 811  
 Deniliquin, 854  
 Denmark, 242, 243, 430, 462-5; agriculture, 463; area, 462; climate, 463; communications, 463; dairy farming, 463, 464; fishing, 464; land use, 463-4; livestock, 464; population, 462; principal towns, population of, 465; relief, 463; soils, 463  
 Denton, 342  
 Derby, 344, 348, 350  
 Derg, Lough, 374  
 Detroit, 772  
 Deutscher Zollverein, 405  
 Devastating agents, 73-78  
 Devil's Isle, 812  
 Devon, 293, 321  
 Devonport, 349  
 Dewsbury, 342

Dhofar, 545  
 Diamantina, R., 841  
 Diamond-cutting, 394  
 Diamonds, 660, 664, 671, 684, 692, 693, 707, 708, 711, 807, 811  
*Dichopis Gutta*, 220  
 Dieppe, 317, 387  
 Diesel oil, 265  
 Digboi oilfield, 556  
 Dijon, 380, 390  
 Dingos, 845  
 Dinka tribe, 643  
*Dioscorea*, 206  
*Diospyros Ebenum*, 238  
 Diseases, 76-8; insect borne, 76  
 Diu, 574  
 Divi-divi, 296  
 Djakarta (Batavia), 598, 600  
 Djibuti, 647  
 Dnieper, R., 497, 509  
 Dnieprosges Dam, 509  
 Dniester, R., 497, 509  
 Dobruja, the, 453  
 Dodecanese, 490  
 Doeskin, 160  
 Dogs, 79  
 Doldrums, 33  
 'Dollar bloc,' 740  
 Dominica (Br. W. Indies), 792  
 Dominica, Republic of, 207, 786, 788  
 Dominion Line, 362  
 Don (Donetz) basin, 497, 507  
 Don, R., 317, 497  
 Donawitz, 440  
 Donkeys, 481, 484, 524, 527, 529, 538, 549, 610, 783  
 Dordogne, R., 380, 381, 389  
 Dordrecht, 402  
 Dortmund, 317  
 Dortmund-Ems Canal, 317  
 Douro, R., 476  
 Dover, 317, 372  
 Dresden, 411  
 Drogheda, 357  
 Drohobycz oilwells, source of ozokerit, 271; transferred from Poland to Russia, 427  
 Droitwich, 350  
 Drought, 73  
 Drumheller, 747  
 Drumouchter Pass, 322

Duala, 702  
 Dublin, 357, 374  
 Dubrovnik (Ragusa), 451  
 Ducie, 868  
 Dudley, 346, 350  
 Dugong, 247  
 Duisburg-Ruhrort, 409  
 Duluth, 733, 764, 766, 772  
 Dumbarton, 349, 351  
 Dumfries, 343  
 Dunbar, 322  
 Dundee, 152, 212, 343, 344, 349  
 Dunedin, 864, 865  
 Dunfermline, 152, 344  
 Dunkerque (Dunkirk), 357, 382, 387, 389  
 Dura or Durra, 205, 643  
 Durban, 102, 659, 660, 662, 666  
 Durrës (Durazzo), 491  
 Düsseldorf, 409  
 Dutch East Indies, now Indonesia (q.v.)  
 Dwina R., Northern (flowing to Arctic Ocean), 497, 510  
 Dwina R., Western (flowing to Baltic), 497, 513  
 Dyeing, 351  
 Dyestuffs (Coal Tar Products), 308 (U.K.), 418 (Germany), 435 (Switzerland)  
 Dyestuffs (Vegetable), 235-6, 788, 796  
 Dye-works, 308  
 Dysart, 328

EARTHENWARE and porcelain, 301-3, 349  
 Earthquakes, 74  
 Earthworms, 55  
 East India Company, 96, 164, 192, 359, 570  
 East Kent coalfield, 330  
 East London (S.A.), 664  
 Eastern Townships, 744  
 Eastham, 338  
 Eastland Company, 359  
 Ebbw Vale, 345  
 Ebonite, 217  
 Ebony, 238  
 Ebro, R., 470, 471  
 Echuca, 852  
 Economic Co-operation Administration, 488

Economic Recovery Plan, 439  
 Ecuador, 268, 817-19  
 Ede, 400  
 Edinburgh, 343, 354, 374  
 Edmonton (Alberta), 735, 739, 747  
 Education Acts, 67  
 Edward, Lake, 681  
 Efate, 866  
 Eger, R., 444  
 Eggs, 242-3; uses of, 243  
 Egypt, 177, 179, 519, 631-41; agriculture, 632, 634 *et seq.*; area and population, 632, 634; boundaries, 631-632; communications, 639; cotton, 635-6; foreign trade, 638; historical background, 631; industries, 637; irrigation, 633 *et seq.*; land use, 632; minerals, 637, principal towns, 641; federation with Syria and Yemen, 631  
 Eindhoven, 400  
 Eire, 242  
 Eisenerz, 439  
*Ejidos*, 778  
 Elastic webbing, 342  
 Elba, Isle of, 482  
 Elbasan, 491  
 Elbe, R., 317, 408, 410, 421  
 Elbeuf, 385  
 Elblag (Elbing), 411, 421, 430  
 Elburz Mts., 548  
 Electrical engineering, 348, 394  
 Electricity, 72-3  
 Elephant, 79  
 Elephantiasis, 76, 77  
*Elettaria cardamomum*, 235  
 El Golea, 38  
 Ellice Islands, 867  
 Elm, 238  
 El Obeid, 644  
*Eloeis guineensis*, 226  
 El Salvador, 200, 798-9  
 Emden, 317, 403, 408, 7421  
 Emeralds, 815  
 Empire Cotton-Growing Assn., 178  
 Empire preference, 332  
 Employers' Liability Act, 67  
 Ems, R., 317, 408

- Florida, 207, 759, 767  
 Flounders, 250  
 Fluorspar, 293  
 Flushing (Vlissingen), 402  
 Flux, 280  
 Fly, R., 869  
 Folkestone, 317, 372  
 Fontainebleau, 303  
 Food and Agriculture Organisation, 125  
 'Food, cheap,' 323  
 Ford Motor Co. (G.B.), 348  
 Formentera, 474  
 Formosa (Taiwan), 229, 616-17  
 Fort-de-France, 793  
 Foit Lamy, 704  
 Fort William, 733, 746  
 Forth and Clyde Canal, 354  
 Fourmies, 385  
 Foveaux Strait, 865  
 Fox, black and silver, 239  
 France, 46, 165-6, 167, 231, 252, 269, 285, 290, 291, 297, 300, 302, 303, 379-91, 396, 430; agriculture, 390; Central Plateau, 379; climate, 382; crops, 382; fisheries, 383; franc, fluctuations in value, 390; iron ore, 383; manufacturing industries, 384; minerals, 383; principal towns, population, 391; rivers and inland waterways, 380-2; seaports, 387; trade, 387 *et seq.*, 390; surface, 379; wine, 389  
 Frankfort - on - Main, 319  
 Frankfurt, 406, 410, 411  
 Frankfurt-Höchst, 418  
 Frankincense, 233, 647  
 Franklin, 729, 749  
 Fraser, R., 748  
 Fraserburgh, 252  
 Fray Bentos, 833  
 Fredericton, 743  
 Freetown, 692  
 Fremantle, 856, 857  
 French, 116  
 Friendly Islands (Tonga), 868  
 Frodingham, 345  
 Fronts, 31  
 Frost, 51, 73  
 Frost pockets, 27, 28  
 Fruits (Temperate Zone), 140-3  
 Fruits, 471, 472, 486, 522, 524, 529, 590, 648, 651, 656, 669, 741, 748, 760, 762, 787, 806, 824, 833, 847, 851, 856, 858  
 Fruits, citrus, 141-2; producing countries, 142  
 Fuji-yama, 621  
 Fukuoka, 628  
 Funchal, 718  
 Fundy, Bay of, 292  
 Funen (Fyn), 463  
 Fungi, 74-5  
*Funtumia elastica*, 218  
 Furs, 48, 239-40, 501, 512, 749, 777, markets, 239; types, 239-240  
 Fur farms, 240  
 Furnaces, blast, 281; electric, 281  
 Furness, 330  
 Fürth, 411  
 Fustic, 235  
 Futa Jallon highlands, 696, 698  
 GABES, Gulf of, 246  
 Gabun, The, 702-3  
 Gainsborough, 348  
 Galapagos Islands, 818-819  
 Galashiels, 343  
 Galati (Galatz), 454  
 Galena, 273  
 Galilee, Sea of, 530  
 Galveston, 772, 773  
 Gambia, R., 694  
 Gambia, The, 694-5  
 Gambier (tanning substance), 296  
 Gambier Islands, 872  
 Gamboge, 236  
 Ganges Valley, 62, 212, 554, 557, 564  
 Ganister, 293, 330  
 Garancine, 236  
 Garonne, R., 379, 380, 389, 390  
 Gary, 765, 769  
 Gas, natural, 268, 747, 765, 767  
 Gash R., 643  
 Gävle, 462  
 Gdynia, 430  
 Gebeit, 643  
 Gedser, 318  
 Geelong, 852  
 Gellivara, 460  
 Genck, 392  
 Gendorf, 420  
 Genesee, Falls of, 768  
 Geneva, 433, 436  
 Geneva, Lake of, 433  
 Genoa, 388, 436, 483  
 Georgetown, 811  
 Georgia, 173, 174, 186, 492, 496, 514  
 Geranium oil, 229  
 German language, 116  
 Germany, 46, 148, 149, 152, 168, 263, 264, 269, 285, 287, 290, 297, 300, 302-3, 304, 311, 317, 390, 396, 403, 404-26, 430; area, 404, 423; chemical industry, 418; climate and agriculture, 412-15; coal, 415; Democratic Republic, 404; Eastern, 404, 422 *et seq.*; Federation (Deutscher Bund), 404; Confederation, North, 406; Federal Republic of, 404, 409, 410; foreign trade, 421-2, 424-6; hydro-electric power, 408, 420; industrial development, 417-21; inland waterways, 408-10; iron and steel production, 417-18; jewellery, 419; leather, 420; livestock, 414-15; mechanical instruments, 419; metallic ores, 416; mineral deposits, 415-17; Occupation Zones, 404, 406; oil resources, 416; optical and machine tools, 419; Political Development, 404; population, 404; population changes, 422-4; porcelain, 419; postwar partition, 404, 423; railways, 410-11; roads, 411-12; salts, 416, 418; shipbuilding, 421; soils, 406; surface features, 406; textiles, 418-19; Western, 404, 412, 422 *et seq.*; Berlin crisis, 404

- Geysers, 465, 860  
 Gezira irrigation scheme, 178, 643-4  
 Ghana (former Gold Coast), 203; 685-8; communications, 687; crops, 686; exports, 687; mineral resources, 687; constitution, 685-6  
 Ghâts, Eastern, 554, 558  
 Ghâts Western, 554, 557  
 Ghent, 393, 395, 396  
 Ghi, 244  
 Gibraltar, 101, 477; Straits of, 92, 101  
 Gijon, 473, 474  
 Gilbert and Ellice Islands, 867-8  
 Gilbert Islands, 867  
 Gilsonite, 271  
 Ginger, 234, 694, 791  
 Gioja, Flavio, 92  
 Gippisland Hills, 851  
 Giridih, 555  
 Girgenti, 482  
 Gironde, R., 389  
 Gladstone, 855  
 Glarus, 434  
 Glasgow, 343, 345, 347, 350, 369, 371-2  
 Glass, 303-5, 350, 387, 394, 444, 765; annealing, 304; Bohemian, 304; English flint, 304; Jena, 304; plate, 304; Venetian, 305, 482  
 Glass sands, 392  
 Glinka, 57  
 Gliwice (Gleiwitz), 429  
 Glomfjord, 458  
*Glossina morsitans*, 77; *palpalis*, 77  
 Glossop, 342  
 Glove-making, 387  
 Glucose, 207  
 Glue, 245, 246  
 Goa, 570, 574  
 Goats, 79, 158, 450, 484, 488, 506, 522, 524, 527, 529, 534, 538, 544, 549, 590, 644, 647, 651, 653, 669, 708, 783, 807, 818, 822  
 Godavari, R., 560, 571  
 Goderich, 746  
 Gogebic Range, 764  
 Gold, 118, 271 *et seq.*, 453, 461, 498, 499, 556, 591, 604, 625, 637, 660, 666, 667, 675, 679, 683, 692, 707, 738, 739, 746, 747, 749, 760, 762, 767, 777, 779, 783, 798, 799, 800, 807, 811, 813, 820, 824, 847, 852, 854, 857, 858, 863, 865, 866, 869; 'banket,' 272; producing countries, 272  
 Gold-beater's skin, 248  
 Gold Coast, see Ghana  
 Gold-standard, 119  
 Goodyear, 217  
 Goole, 108, 354, 371  
 Gooseberries, 140  
 Gorinchem (Gorkum), 402  
 Gorky (Gor'kiy), 507  
 Görlitz, 419  
 Gorton, 348  
*Gossypium*, *arboreum*, 171; *barbadense*, 171, 172; *herbaceum*, 171; *hirsutum*, 171  
 Göta canal, 461; river, 461  
 Göteborg (Gothenburg), 462  
 Gouin dam, 745  
 Goulburn Weir, 852  
 Gozo, 484  
 Graff Reinet, 664  
 Graham Land, 836  
 Gram (chick-pea), 137, 561  
 Gramophone records, 223, 232  
 Grampians, 322  
 Gran Chaco, 826  
 Grand Canary, 719  
 Grand Coulee Dam, 769  
 Grand Union Canal Co., 354  
 Grangemouth, 328, 350  
 Granites, 293  
 Grant, 680  
 Grantham, 348  
 Granton, 374  
 Grapefruit, 141, 760, 791  
 Grapes, 142, 525, 527, 529, 549, 669, 760, 851, 861  
 Graphite, 292, 440  
 Grassland, 37  
 Graz, 440  
 Great Barrier Reef, 837  
 Great Bear Lake, 739, 749  
 Great Belt, 463  
 Great Falls, 754  
 Great Lakes, 725, 733  
 Great Northern Rly. (Canada), 735  
 Great Torrington, 352  
 Greece, 165, 487-90; agriculture, 488; area, 487; islands, 487; merchant fleet, 490; minerals, 489; population, 487; principal towns, population of, 490; relief, 487  
 Greenheart, 811  
 Greenland, 49, 290, 728  
 Greenock, 349, 351  
 Grenada, 203, 792  
 Grenchen, 434  
 Greymouth, 865  
 Grimby, 251, 331, 369, 371  
 Grindstones, 292  
 Grossenbrode, 318  
 Groundnuts, 138, 224-5, 529, 561, 643, 669, 682, 683, 687, 694, 697, 700, 701, 709, 806; chief producing areas, 224  
 Grozny oilfield, 269, 498  
 Guadalcanal, 866  
 Guadalquivir, R., 470, 474  
 Guadeloupe, 793  
 Guam, 777, 873  
 Guano, 60, 291, 820, 824  
 Guatemala, 200, 797  
 Guatemala City, 797  
 Guayaquil, 818  
 Guayule (rubber), 779  
 Guianas, The, 810-12  
 Guiana, British, 207, 290-1, 810-11; crops, 810; land use, 810; mineral resources, 811  
 Guiana, French, 812  
 Guiana, Netherlands (Surinam), 290-1, 811-812  
 Guiana Highlands (Venezuela), 812  
 Guinea corn, 205  
 Guinea, republic, 695, 700  
 Guinea oil palm, 226  
 Guinea, Portuguese, 709  
 Guinea, Spanish, 705  
 Gulf Coast Oilfields (Texas), 267  
 Gulf States, 44, 762  
 Gulf Stream, 45  
 Gulf Stream Drift, 457, 466  
 Gum arabic, 232, 643, 700

Gum tragacanth, 232  
Gums, 231 *et seq.*  
Gunny cloth, 212  
Gur, 207  
Gurkhas, 574  
Gutta-percha, 220  
Gwador, 545  
Gypsum, 292, 522, 744

HA'APAI, 868  
Haardt Mts., 407  
Haarlem (Holland), 399  
*Haciendas*, 778  
Haddock, 250, 252  
Hadramaut, The, 544  
*Hæmatoxylon campechianum*, 235  
Hague, The (*Den Haag* or *'s Gravenhage*), 403  
Haidar Pasha, 319  
Haifa, 319, 532  
Hail, 73  
Haiphong, 584  
Haiti, Republic of, 786, 787-8  
Hake, 250  
Hakodate, 627  
Halibut, 250  
Halibut-liver oil, 247  
Halifax (Eng.), 341, 342  
Halifax (N.S.), 25, 741  
Hall, 440  
Halle, 409  
Hallein, 440  
Halmstad, 462  
Hälsingborg, 462, 463  
Hamburg, 107, 318, 406, 408, 409, 411, 421-2  
Hamburgh Company, 358  
Hamilton (Ont.), 740, 745  
Hamilton (N.Z.), 864  
Hammerfest, 457  
'Handelsorganisation', 427  
Handling of goods, 97-98, 104-5  
Hanley, 350  
Hanoi, 584  
Hanover, 406, 409  
Hanseatic League, 358  
Harbin, 511  
Harbours, 96  
Hard-pan, 52  
Hardstoft, 269  
Hardwoods, 236, 237, 238-9  
Hare, 239  
Hargeisa, 647  
Hargreaves, 180

Harlingen, 403  
Harrison, John, 92  
Hartlepoons, 349  
Hartz Mts., 407, 417  
Harwich, 317, 369, 372  
Hastings, 303  
Hausa, 116  
Havana, 188, 773, 787  
Haverton, 350  
Havre, 317, 436  
Hawaii, 872  
Hawaiian Archipelago, incorporated in American Union, 777; 872-3  
Hawick, 343  
Hawke's Bay, 864  
Heberton, 854  
Hebron, 530  
Heckmondwike, 342  
Hecla, Mt., 465  
Hedley, 84  
Hejaz, Kingdom of, 541  
Hejaz Rly., 534, 541  
Helder, 402  
Heligoland, 406  
Hellevoetsluis, 401  
Helsingor (Elsinore), 463, 465  
Helsinki (Helsingfors), 466, 469  
Hematite, 283; producing countries, 283  
*Hemileia vastatrix*, 75  
Hemisphere, Northern, 25, 39, 42, 47  
Hemisphere, Southern, 25, 42, 43, 44, 45, 47  
Hemp, 152-3, 383, 449, 480, 506, 824; commercial and true hems, 603-4; abaca (manila hemp), 152, 214 (conditions for growth), 595, 603-4, 800, 801; Deccan, 152, 215; gambo-, 215; henequen, 603-4, 781; phormium, 152-3, 715; sisal, 152, 214-215, 598, 679, 683, 788, 790, 807; sunn-, 152, 215; U.S.S.R. production, 604  
Henderson, 868  
Henequen, 603-4, 781  
Hengelo, 400  
Herbertson, A. J., 31  
Hereford, 351  
Herefordshire, 149  
Herodotus, 170  
Herring, 250, 251, 252, 624  
Herzegovina, 440  
Hesse, 418

Hesse-Darmstadt, Grand-Duchy of, 405  
Hessian, 344  
Hessian depressions, 410  
*Hevea brasiliensis*, 217  
*Hibiscus cannabinus*, 215  
Hides and skins, 244, 646, 673, 679, 683, 688, 698, 699, 807, 820, 832, 833, 835  
High Commission Territories, 658, 672  
High pressure areas, 24  
High Wycombe, 351  
Hildesheim, 409  
Hilversum, 400  
Himalayas, 44, 557, 558, 579  
Hindu Kush, 552  
Hindustani, 116  
Hinterlands, 107-8  
Hiroshima, 627  
Hispaniola, 784, 785, 786  
Hobart, 858  
Hobson's Bay, 852  
Hodeida, 543  
Hofu, 542  
Hokitika, 860  
Hokkaido, 621, 624, 627  
Holland, 242, 243  
Holland (Rotterdam), 115  
Holstein, 418  
Holy Land, 541  
Holy Roman Empire, 404  
Honduras, 798  
Honduras, British, 238, 797-8  
Honey, 230  
Hong Kong, 101, 234, 606-7; foreign trade, 607; population, 606  
Honiara, 866  
Honiton, 352  
Honolulu, 102, 872  
Honshu, 621, 624  
Hooghly, R., 555, 572  
Hook of Holland, 317, 401, 402  
Hoosac Mts., 757  
Hop-pickers, 149  
Hops, 149-50, 391, 413, 443  
'Horizontal' factory layout, 113  
Horns and hoofs, 245  
Horses, 79, 453, 460, 481, 484, 486, 506, 524, 527, 529, 538, 783, 867  
Horse-hair, 245  
'Horse latitudes', 99

- Hosiery, 419  
 Hot lakes (springs), 465  
 (Iceland), 860 (N.Z.)  
 Houston, 773  
 Howe Sound, 747  
 Huddersfield, 342, 347,  
 350  
 Hudson Bay, 735  
 Hudson R., 754, 755, 768  
 Hudson's Bay Co., 117,  
 240, 359  
*Huertas*, 471  
 Huguenots, 168, 344  
 Hull (Kingston-upon-  
 Hull), 108, 223, 251,  
 318, 331, 349, 369,  
 370-1  
 Humboldt current, 803,  
 819, 820  
 Hungary, 148, 188, 445-  
 448; agriculture, 446;  
 fisheries, 447; Five-  
 Year Plan, 445; for-  
 eign trade, 447-8; land  
 use, 446; livestock,  
 447; minerals, 447;  
 population, 445-6;  
 principal towns, popu-  
 lation of, 448  
 Huntsman (cutler), 347  
 Hupeh, 615  
 Huron, L., 725, 733  
 Hurricanes, 785  
 Hyde, 338  
 Hydro-electric power, 70  
 Hydrogen, 310  
 Hyderābād, 555, 573  
*Hyphaene thebaica*, 245  
 Hwang-ho (Yellow R.),  
 611  
  
 IBADAN, 687  
 Ibiza (Iviza), 474  
 Iceland, 465-6; fishing,  
 466  
 Ichang, 612  
 Idaho, 273, 750  
 Idria mines, 276  
 I.G. Farben-Industrie,  
 418  
 Ijmuiden, 400, 402  
 IJssel, 401  
 IJsselmeer (IJssel Lake),  
 399, 402  
 Ill, R., 515  
 Ilkeston, 344  
 Ilawarra, 848  
 Illinois, 267, 764, 765  
 Immigration, 68  
 Immingham, 86, 371  
 Imperial Airways, 103  
 Imperial British East  
 Africa Company, 359  
 Imperial Chemical In-  
 dustries, 265, 306, 310,  
 350  
 Imperial College of Trop-  
 ical Agriculture, 793  
 Index numbers, 17  
 India, Republic of, 520  
 (*see also* Indian sub-  
 continent); area and  
 population, 571; cities  
 and towns, 572, 574,  
 coal resources, 555;  
 communications, 562  
*et seq.*; foreign trade,  
 566  
 Indian sub-continent—  
 India and Pakistan,  
 37, 44, 151, 152, 157,  
 164, 175-7, 179, 184,  
 189, 193 *et seq.*, 199,  
 201, 207, 211, 212,  
 227, 231, 244, 296,  
 363, 554-74; agricul-  
 ture, 560; canals, 559;  
 climate, 557; coal-  
 fields, 555; communi-  
 cations, 562; cotton,  
 561; foreign trade,  
 566, 567; geological  
 structure, 554-5;  
 hydro-electric power,  
 559; industries, 562;  
 irrigation, 558-60;  
 minerals, 555; parti-  
 tion, 563, 571-2;  
 physical features, 554-  
 555; population, 554;  
 possessions of Euro-  
 pean Powers in, 574;  
 principal towns, popu-  
 lation of, 574; sea-  
 ports, 568-71; tanks,  
 558; towns and cities,  
 572 *et seq.*  
 Indiana, 267, 766  
 Indianapolis, 772  
 Indigo, 235  
*Indigofera tinctoria*, 235  
 Indo-China, 102, 165,  
 582-4; area and popu-  
 lation, 582; communi-  
 cations, 584; com-  
 munitism in, 582; crops,  
 583; livestock, 583;  
 minerals, 584; physi-  
 cal features, 582-3;  
 political, 582; timber,  
 583; towns, 584  
 Indo-Chinese Peninsula,  
 575  
 Indigotin, 236  
 Indonesia (formerly  
 Dutch East Indies),  
 32, 195, 199, 200-1,  
 205, 226, 269, 275,  
 276, 400, 403, 520,  
 597-601; foreign  
 trade, 600, livestock,  
 599; mineral re-  
 sources, 598; political  
 unrest, 599-600  
 Indus, R., 554, 559, 564;  
 valley, 557  
 Industrial Revolution, 85  
 Industry, localised, 109  
 Influenza, 78  
 Infusorial earth (tripoli  
 powder), 292  
 Inland Water Transport,  
 88-9  
 Innerleithen, 343  
 Innsbruck, 319, 441  
 Insect white wax, 230  
 Insects, 75  
 Inter-American Coffee  
 Convention, 200  
 Inter-American High-  
 way, 795, 800  
 Internal combustion en-  
 gine, 264  
 International Civil Avia-  
 tion Organisation, 103  
 International Court of  
 Justice, 403  
 International Labour  
 Office, 14, 436  
 International Mercantile  
 Marine Co., 361  
 International Postal  
 Union, 105  
 International Refugee  
 Organisation, 436  
 International Tea Agree-  
 ment, 194  
 International Telecom-  
 munications Union,  
 436  
 Interstate Commerce  
 Act (U.S.A.), 752  
 Invercargill, 865  
 Iodine, 824  
*Ipomoea Batatas*, 206  
 Ipswich, 348  
 Iquique, 825  
 Iran, 41, 165, 232, 269  
 548-50  
 Iraq, 270, 529, 535-39;  
 agriculture, 536-8;  
 historical background,  
 535; land use, 536;  
*liwas*, 536; oilfields,  
 538; Petroleum Co.,  
 270, 538; physical fea-  
 tures, 535-6; principal



- towns, population of, 539; trade and communications, 539
- Irbid, 534
- Irbit, 508
- Ireland, 152, 357
- Irish Free State (Saorstát Éireann), 375
- Irish Republic (Poblacht na h-Éireann), 374-8; agricultural produce, 375, 376; area, 375; farming practice, 378; livestock in, 375; population, 375-6; principal towns, population statistics, 378; surface, 374; trade, 375, 376-8, statistics, 377
- Irkutsk, 512; basin, 499
- Iron, 112, 277-88, 762; cast-, 278; manufactures, 346; pig-, 278, 288; processing, 282 *et seq.*; puddling, 278; smelting, 279 *et seq.*, 344; uses, 277, 279; wrought-, 278
- 'Iron Curtain', 492
- Iron Gate, 454
- Iron industry, 284 *et seq.*; in France, 285; in Germany, 285, 287; in Sweden, 280, 286, 288; in U.K., 285; in U.S.A., 285, 287; in U.S.S.R., 285
- Iron Knob, 848, 855
- Iron ore, 278; in Africa, W., 693, 694; in America, S., 813, 824, 835; in Australia, 848, 855; in Austria, 439; in Belgium, 392; in Britain, 330; in Canada, 739, 749; in China, 615; in Cyprus, 522; in France, 383-4; in Germany, 416; in Indian Sub-continent, 555; in Japan, 624; in Mexico, 780, 783; in New Caledonia, 871; in New Zealand, 863; in Norway, 457; in Poland, 429; in Spain, 472; in Sweden, 460-461; in Tunisia, 653; in Turkey, 525; in U.S.A., 764 *et seq.*; in U.S.S.R., 497 *et seq.*; W. Indies (Cuba), 787; world production, 285; in Yugoslavia, 450
- Iron Resources of the World, The*, 288
- Iron and steel industry, 400, 482, 507, 625, 739, 740, 745
- Irrawaddy, R., 576
- Irrigation, 61-4, 536, 541, 549, 610; tanks for, 558
- Irwell, R., 352
- Isa, Mt., 855
- Isinglass, 246
- Ismailia, 639
- Isotherms, 28
- Israel, 521, 528, 530-2; agriculture, 531; communications, 532; immigrants, 531; industries, 531; principal towns, population of, 532; provisional frontiers, 530; relief, 530-531; water shortage, 531
- Issyk Kul, L., 515
- Istanbul (Stamboul, Constantinople), 319, 523, 526
- Italian language, 116
- Italy, 152, 165, 167, 478-484; agriculture, 479; area, 478; coal, 481; crops, 480; foreign trade, 478; hydro-electric power, 481-2; land use, 480; livestock, 481; minerals, 481; population, 478; principal towns, population of, 484; relief, 478-80; rivers, 480; wine, 480
- Ivanov, 507
- Ivory, 245; types of, 245; vegetable, 245
- Ivory Coast, 698
- Izmir (Smyrna), 525, 526
- JACOBAD, 38
- Jacquard loom, 168
- Jaffa, 532
- Jaffna, 586
- Jakarta, 101
- Jamaica, 200, 235, 784, 785, 789, 790-1
- James R., 754
- Jamrud, 564
- Jamshedpur, 556
- Jan Mayen Island, 458
- Japan, 44, 164, 184, 227, 229, 292, 299, 300, 303, 521, 568, 620-28; cities, 627; climatic conditions, 621-2; currency, 626; fisheries, 624; foreign trade, 626; hydro-electric power, 625; industrial and commercial development, 625; islands and population, 621; land use, 622; minerals, 624-5; ports, 627; primary production, 622-4; principal towns, population of, 628
- Japanese wax, 230
- Jarrah, 239
- Jasper National Park, 747
- Jatropha Manihot*, 205
- Java, 211, 597, 598
- Jebba, 689
- Jedburgh, 343
- Jeddah, 541
- Jerez de la Frontera, 148
- Jerusalem, 530
- Jervis Bay, 845
- Jesselson, 596
- Jherria coalfield, 555
- Jihlava (Iglau), 443
- Jinja, 681
- Johore, 587
- Jonköping, 462
- Jordan, 529, 530
- Jordan, The Hashemite Kingdom of the, 533-535; boundaries, 533; communications, 534-535; currency, 533; foreign trade, 534; industry, 534; land use, 534; relief, 533
- Jos, 689
- Jowar, 561
- Juba, 644
- Juba, R., 647
- Jubbulpore, 572
- Jumna, R., 572
- Jura, French, 379, 380
- Juniperus bermudiana*, 238; *oxycedrus*, 238; *virginiana*, 238
- Jute, 212, 299, 344, 562, 568; in India, 213; in Pakistan, 213; and partition of India, 213; U.K. imports, 213; principal foreign markets, 213
- Jutland, 462

- KABUL, 552  
 Kafta, 513  
 Kafue Gorge, 676  
 Kalahari Desert, 39, 673  
 Kalgoorlie, 856, 857  
 Kalinin (Tver), 507, 509  
 Kampala, 681  
 Kandy, 587  
 Kangaroos, 845  
 Kanmon, 627  
 Kano, 687  
 Kanpur (Cawnpore), 572  
 Kansas, 267  
 Kansas City, 772  
 Kansk basin, 499  
 Kaolin, 302  
 Kapok, 215, 818, 820  
 Karāchi, 568, 570, 573  
 Karakoram Pass, 573  
 Karakul sheep, 552, 671  
 Karaya gum, 232  
 Karelia, 466  
 Karens, 578  
 Karharbāri, 555  
 Karikal, 574  
 Karlovy Vary (Karlsbad), 444  
 Karri, 239  
 Karroo, Great, 659;  
     Little, 659  
 Karst (Carso), 449  
 Karun, R., 548  
 Kashmir, 562, 573-4  
 Kassala, 643  
 Katanga, 274, 311, 676,  
     707, 711  
 Kātmāndu, 574  
 Katowice, 429  
 Kauri gum, 232-3, 863  
 Kavalla, 489  
 Kazakhstan, 515  
 Kazanlik, 486  
 Kedah, 587  
 Keewatin, 729, 749  
 Keighley, 342, 347  
 Kelantan, 587  
 Kelimnos, 490  
 Kendal, 342  
 Keneh, 635  
 Kennet, 351  
 Kent, 149, 351  
 Kentia Palm seeds, 853  
 Kentucky, 186, 764  
 Kenya, 49, 201, 678-9;  
     communications, 678-  
     9; products, 679  
 Kenya, Mt., 678  
 Keokuk, dam at, 769  
 Kerch, 513  
 Kermadec Islands, 860,  
     870  
 Kerosene, 265  
 Key West, 773  
 Keykjavik, 466  
 Khabarovsk, 511  
 Khanagin, 538  
 Kharkov, 506, 508  
 Khartoum, 632, 642,  
     644  
 Khaur oilfield, 556  
 Kherson, 509  
 Khiva oasis, 515  
 Khyber (Khaibar) Pass,  
     553, 564, 573  
 Kiakhta, 512  
 Kicking Horse Pass, 84  
 Kidderminster, 342  
 Kiel, 317, 421  
 Kiel Bay, 410  
 Kiel Canal, 317, 409  
 Kiev, 507  
 Kilimanjaro, Mt., 682  
 Kilindini, 678  
 Kilmarnock, 343  
 Kilmore Gap, 851  
 Kimberley (S. Afr.), 664  
 Kimberley District (W.  
     Aus.), 857  
 Kinabulu, Mt., 595  
 King George's Sound,  
     857  
 King's Lynn, 303  
 Kingston (Jamaica), 791  
 Kingston - upon - Hull,  
     370 (see also Hull)  
 Kirghizistan, 515  
 Kirkenes iron mine, 457  
 Kirkland Lake, 739, 746  
 Kirkuk, 270, 538  
 Kirunavara, 460  
 Kismayu, 647  
 Kisumu, 678  
 Kitimat scheme, 748  
 Kiu, 678  
 Kivu, L., 708  
 Klagenfurt, 440  
 Klingental, 419  
 Klondike goldfield, 749  
 Kobe, 627  
 Kochi plain, 623  
 Kokand, 515, 516  
 Kola nuts, 234-5  
 Kola peninsula, 497, 508  
 Kolobrzeg (Kolberg),  
     430  
 Königsberg (Kalinin-  
     grad), 411, 421  
 Kootenay, East and  
     West, 747  
 Köppen, W., 31  
 Kordofan, 643  
 Korea, 291, 292, 617-20;  
     area, 618; crops, 618;  
     livestock, 619-20;  
     minerals, 618; physi-  
     cal features, 618;  
     population, 618, 620;  
     war in, 618, 620  
 Kosciusko, Mt., 838  
 Kosti, 644  
 Kotor, 451  
 Koumiss, 244  
 Kowloon, 606  
 Kra, Isthmus of, 575  
 Krasnovodsk, 516  
 Krefeld, 168, 418  
 Krivoi Rog, 288, 497,  
     507  
 Kronstadt, 501, 513  
 Kuala Lumpur, 592  
 Kumamoto, 628  
 Kurdistan, 536  
 Kuwait, 270 (oilfield),  
     547  
 Kuybyshev (Samara),  
     508, 510  
 Kuznetzk coalfield, 498,  
     507-8  
 Kyoto, 627  
 Kyushu, 621, 624, 627  
 Laos, Kingdom of, 520,  
     575, 582 *et seq.*  
 Labour, 64 *et seq.*, 110;  
     cost of, 64-5; coolie,  
     68; forced, 69; slave,  
     69  
 Labrador, 739  
 Lac, 231  
 Lace, Leicester, 342;  
     Murano, 483  
 La Chaux de Fonds, 434  
 Lachine Canal, 733  
 Lachlan R., 841  
 La Condamine, 217  
 Lacquers, 232  
 Lacquer-tree, 623  
 Lagos, 686  
 La Guaira, 814  
 Laguna, la, 779  
 Lahore, 573  
 Lake District, 321  
 Lake peninsula, 745  
 La Libertad, 799  
 La Loutre dam, 745  
 La Louvière, 393  
 Lanarkshire, 345  
 Lancashire, 350  
 Land of a Thousand  
     Lakes, 467  
 'Länder', 422  
 Landes, the, 52, 379  
 Language, 116  
 La Pallice, 387, 389  
 La Paz, 822, 823  
 Lapps, 462  
 Lard, 225  
 La Rochelle, 387, 389

Las Palmas, 102  
 Latakia, 527, 528  
 Laterites, 56, 629  
 Latex, 217  
 Latrobe, 858  
 Latvia, 492, 493  
 Laudanum, 189  
 Lausanne, 319, 436  
 Lautoka, 866  
 Lavender, oil of, 230  
 Lavongai, 869  
 Lawn, 152  
 Lead, 273, 304, 349, 450,  
 453, 461, 482, 498,  
 671, 738, 739, 747,  
 762, 767, 780, 783,  
 820, 822, 848, 855,  
 858; red, 273; white,  
 273  
 League of Nations, 190,  
 406  
 Leather, 295-7, 394,  
 420; cordova (cord-  
 wain), 297; Morocco,  
 297; Russian, 297;  
 tanning, 295-6; wash  
 (chamois), 297  
 Leather manufactures,  
 297, 507  
 Lebanon, 521, 528-30;  
 agriculture, 529;  
 'cedars of', 529; com-  
 munications, 529; for-  
 eign trade, 529; princi-  
 pal towns, population  
 of, 530; relief, 528;  
 size and population,  
 528, 529  
 Leblanc process, 306  
 Le Creusot, 383, 384  
 Leduc oilfield, 739  
 Leeds, 341, 347  
 Leek, 169, 344  
 Leeward Islands (West  
 Indies), 789, 791  
 Leeward (Pacific) Is-  
 lands, 872  
 Leghorn, 484  
 Leghorn straw, 480  
 Legnica, 429  
 Le Havre, 387, 388  
 Lehigh R., 763  
 Leicester, 342, 347, 351  
 Leighton Buzzard, 303  
 Leine valley, 410  
 Leipzig, 239  
 Leith, 252, 318, 328, 369,  
 371, 374  
 Leitz Works, 419  
 Lek, R., 402  
 Le Locle, 434  
 Le Mans, 252  
 Lemon oil, 229

Lemons, 480, 481, 760  
 Lena basin, 499  
 Lena, R., 497  
 Leninabad (Khodzhen),  
 515, 516  
 Leningrad, 501, 505,  
 507, 509, 511, 513  
 Lens, 383  
 Lentils, 138  
 Leontes (Litani), R., 529  
 Leopoldville, 706  
 Leprosy, 78  
 Lerwick, 252  
 Lethbridge, 747  
 Levant (Turkey) Com-  
 pany, 359  
 Leverkusen, 418  
 Levuka, 866  
 Leyland line, 362  
 Liberec, 443  
 Liberia, 704-5  
 Libreville, 702  
 Libya, 648-9; oases in,  
 648  
 Lichens, 500  
 Liechtenstein, 435  
 Liège, 392, 393-4, 396  
 Liegnitz, 419, 429  
 Lièvre, R., 744  
 Lift, hydraulic, 91  
 Lignite, 256, 263-4, 415,  
 439, 447, 762  
 Lille, 385, 386  
 Lima, 820  
 Limagne, the, 379  
 Limbe, 676  
 Limburg coalfield, 400  
 Lime, 141, 142, 293;  
 carbonate of, 306;  
 phosphate of, 291  
 Limerick, 374  
 Limes, 546, 792; oil of,  
 229  
 Limestone, 330  
 Limmat, R., 433  
 Limoges, 387  
 Limon, 800  
 Limonite, 440  
 Lincoln, 348  
 Lincolnshire, 345  
 Line Islands, 867  
 Linen, 150, 343, 344,  
 391, 393  
 Linen industry, 152, 386  
 Linen manufactures, 400,  
 435  
 Liners, largest, 94-5  
 Lingua franca, 116  
 Linoleum, 224  
 Linseed, 150, 223-4, 560,  
 561, 827, 833; chief  
 producing countries,  
 223

*Linum usitatissimum*, 150  
 Linz, 318, 319, 440  
 Lisbon, 115, 477  
 Lisburn, 343  
 Litharge, 273  
 Lithgow, 848  
 Lithographic stone, 292  
 Lithuania, 492, 493  
 Litmus, 236  
 Liverpool, 339, 340, 349,  
 351, 363, 368, 370  
 Liverpool Plains  
 (N.S.W.), 853  
 Liverpool Range, 853  
 Ljubljana, 450, 451  
 Llamas, 79, 819, 822  
 Llanelly, 347, 349  
 Llanos, 812  
 Lloyd Barrage, 559  
 Lloyd's Register of Ship-  
 ping, 98  
 Lobito Bay, 711  
 Lobsters, 251, 741  
 Locomotive, steam, 84  
 Locusts, 75  
 Locusts (carob-tree  
 pods), 138  
 Lodève, 386  
 Lodz, 429  
 Loess, 56, 609  
 Lofoten Islands, 457  
 Logging, 48  
 Logroño, 470  
 Logwood, 235, 796  
 Loire, R., 380, 390  
 Lokoja, 686  
 Lolland Island, 463  
 Lombardy plain, 478,  
 483  
 Lomé, 701  
 London, 239, 302, 349,  
 351, 369-70; Greater,  
 369  
 London (Ont.), 746  
 Long Beach, 772  
 Longton, 350  
 Longwy, 383  
 Lord Howe Island, 853,  
 870  
 Lorient, 390  
 Lorraine, 384  
 Los Angeles, 267, 762,  
 773  
 Louise, L., 747  
 Louisiana Islands, 869  
 Louisiana, 207, 762, 767  
 Louisville, 753  
 Lourenço Marques, 660,  
 712  
 Louviers, 385  
 Lowestoft, 251  
 Low pressure areas, 23  
 Loyalty Islands, 871

- Lualaba, R., 706, 707  
 Lübeck, 411, 436  
 Lucerne, 546  
 Lucknow, 572  
 Ludhiana, 562  
 Ludwig Canal, 408  
 Ludwigshaven, 310, 409, 418  
 Lugard, Lord, 680  
 Lugo, 472  
 Lulea, 456, 460  
 Lumber, 625, 745, 748  
 Lüneberg Heath, 292  
 Luossavara, 460  
 Lupines, 138  
 Lusaka, 675  
 Luxembourg, Grand -  
   Duchy of, 390, 397, 403, 406  
 Luzon, 602, 605  
 Lvov, 427  
 Lydda, 319  
 Lycll, Mt., 858  
*Lygeum spartum*, 153  
 Lynn Lake, 746  
 Lyons, 167-8, 380, 386  
 Lyttelton, 865
- MA'AN, 534  
 Maastricht, 395  
 Macadam, 81  
 Macao, 616  
 Macaroni, 388, 481  
 Macassar, 599, 601  
 Macclesfield, 169  
 Macdonnell Ranges, 859  
 Mace, 234  
 Macedonia, 448  
 Machinery, 69-73, 346;  
   coal cutting, 71;  
   manufacture of, 434;  
   for textiles, 347  
 Mackenzie (District),  
   729, 749  
 Mackenzie R. Oilfields,  
   749  
 Mackerel, 250, 252  
 Mackinder, Sir Halford,  
   334  
 McKinley Tariff, 768  
 Mackintosh, 217  
 Macon, 390  
 Mád, 446  
 Madagascar, 292; African  
   franc, 696; 716-17  
 Madder, 236  
 Madeira, 102, 477, 717-  
   718  
 Madhya Pradesh (Central  
   Provinces), 555, 572
- Madras, 201, 558, 566,  
   568, 570-1  
 Madrid, 470, 474  
 Magadi, Lake, 679  
 Magdalena, R., 815  
 Magellan, Straits of,  
   823, 825  
 Maggiore, Lake, 483  
 Magnet Mt. (U.S.S.R.),  
   498  
 Magnet Mt. (S. Aus.),  
   848, 855  
 Magnitogorsk, 498, 507  
 Maguey fibre, 779  
 Mahānadi, R., 565  
 Mahé, 715  
 Mahmudia Canal, 639  
 Mahogany, 238, 796,  
   798  
 Mahon, 474  
 Maidstone, 351  
 Maikop oilfield, 269, 498  
 Main, R., 408, 409, 419  
 Mainz, 407  
 Maize (Corn), 38, 45,  
   46, 132-4; in Africa,  
   674, 679, 682, 710;  
   in America, Central,  
   795, 797, 798, 799, 800,  
   801; in America, S.,  
   806, 815, 827, 833; in  
   Australia, 854; in  
   Austria, 439; in Bul-  
   garia, 486; in Canada,  
   744; chief producing  
   countries, 133; in  
   China, 614; conditions  
   for growth, 132-3; in  
   Dominican Republic,  
   788; in Egypt, 635,  
   636; in Greece, 488;  
   in Hungary, 446; in  
   Indo-China, 583; in  
   Italy, 480; in Mexico,  
   778, 781, 782; in New  
   Caledonia, 871; in  
   the Philippines, 603;  
   in Portugal, 475; in  
   Roumania, 452; in  
   Spain, 471; in Sudan,  
   643; in Turkey, 524;  
   in U.S.S.R., 506; in  
   U.S.A., 759, 761, 769;  
   uses of, 133-4; in  
   Yugoslavia, 448;  
   world production, 132
- Majolica, 303  
 Majunga, 716  
 Makerere, 681  
 Malacca, 587  
 Malaga, 472, 473, 474  
 Malaita, 866  
 Malakal, 644
- Malakand Hills, 559  
 Mälaren, 461  
 Malaria, 76, 523, 630  
 Malay language, 116  
 Malaya, 32, 33, 226,  
   228, 275, 276, 575,  
   587-93; area, 588;  
   communications, 592;  
   crops, 588-90; Federa-  
   tion of, 587; foreign  
   trade, 592; land use,  
   588; minerals, 590;  
   physical features, 588;  
   population, 588, 591;  
   main towns, 593  
 Malay Peninsula (source  
   of camphor), 229  
 Maldive Islands, 117, 587  
 Malekula, 866  
 Mali, Federation of, 697,  
   700  
 Mallorca (Majorca), 474  
 Malmö, 318, 462, 463  
 Malta, 484-5; strategic  
   importance, 484; land  
   use, 485; unbalanced  
   trade, 485; post-war  
   changes, 484  
 Manado, 599  
 Managua, 799  
 Manama, 547  
 Manaos, 36, 804, 809  
 Manar, Gulf of, 248, 571  
 Manawatu, 864  
 Manchester, 109, 337 *et*  
   *seq.*, 340, 347, 369,  
   370  
 Manchester Ship Canal,  
   338-40, 350, 351, 355  
 Manchuria, 43, 47, 225,  
   610, 612 (railways),  
   613, 614, 615  
 Mandalay, 579  
 Manganese, 289, 461,  
   498, 556, 625, 637,  
   669, 692, 738, 787,  
   807, 824, 835, 871;  
   chief producing coun-  
   tries, 289  
 Mangel-wurzel, 150  
 Mangolds, 140, 150, 383  
 Manila, 102, 602  
 Manila hemp (abaca),  
   214, 603-4. See also  
   under Hemp  
 Manioc, 205, 710, 871  
 Manitoba, 728, 738, 739,  
   746  
 Mannheim, 409  
 Mansfeld, 273  
 Mansfield, 351  
 Manure, 60-1  
 Manzanillo, 784

- Maori, 864  
 Maple, 238; sugar, 238  
 Maracaibo, 814  
 Maracaibo, Gulf of, 268, 813  
 Maracaibo, L., 812, 813  
*Maranta arundinacea*, 206  
 Marble, 293, 482  
 Margarine, 221, 224, 225, 243, 247  
 Margelan, 516  
 Marianne (Ladrone) Islands, 873  
 Maria Theresa dollar, 546  
 Marica (Maritsa) river basin, in Bulgaria, 486; in Greece, 488  
 Marine engines, 95  
 Marine insurance (early policy), 97  
 Mariner's compass, 92  
 Maritume Provinces, 47  
 Markets, 110  
 Markham, Sir Clements, 211  
 Marktneukirchen, 419  
 Marlborough Downs, 321  
 Marne-Rhine Canal, 380  
 Marquesas Islands, 872  
 Marquette Range, 764  
 Marsilles, 101, 387-8, 436  
 Marseilles-Rhone Canal, 380  
 Marshall Islands, 873  
 Marsupials, 845  
 Martinique, 785, 793  
 Marÿ (Merv), oasis, 515, 516  
 Maryborough, 855  
 Maryport, 328  
 Masbate, 602  
 Maseru, 672  
 Massa, 482  
 Massachusetts, 303, 768, 727  
 Massachusetts Bay, 751  
 Massawa, 646  
 Massicot, 273  
 Mastix, 233  
 Matches, 461-2  
 Maté tea, 807  
 Matopo Hills, 674  
 Matozinhos, 476  
 Matra, 447  
 Mattrah, 545  
 Maui, 872  
 Mauna Kea, 872  
 Mauritania, 699  
 2G\*
- Mauitius, 207, 235, 714-15  
 Maya Indian civilization, 781  
 Maya Indians, 797  
 Mayo, 749  
 Mayurbhanj, 556  
 Mazamet, 385, 386  
 Mazatlan, 784  
 Mbabane, 672  
 Meat, 240-2; canned, 241; chilled, 240; frozen, 240; producing countries, 240; U.K. imports, 240-2  
 Mecca, 114, 541  
 Medan, 601  
 Medina, 542  
 Mehalla el Kubra, 637  
 Meissen, 301, 303, 419  
 Mejerda, R., 652  
 Meknes, 656  
 Mekong, R., 580, 583  
 Melanesians, 866  
 Melbourne, 845, 852, 854  
 Melilla, 654  
 Melons, 854  
 Memel, 493  
 Menakha, 542  
 Menam, R., 580  
 Mendoza, 827  
 Mengo, 681  
 Menhaden, 247, 250  
 Menominee Range, 764  
 Menorca (Minorca), 474  
 Mercator's projection, 100  
 Merchant Adventurers, 358-9  
 Mercury (quicksilver), 276-7, 482; producing countries, 276; uses of, 277  
 Merida, 781  
 Merseburg, 418  
 Mersey, R., 350, 352  
 Mersey Tunnel, 354  
 Merwede Canal, 402  
 Mesabi Range, 764  
 Mesaoria, 522  
 Meshed, 550  
*Mescal*, 779  
 Messageries Maritimes, 388  
 Messina, Straits of, 480, 484  
 Mestizos, 777, 798, 834  
 Metal manufactures, 346, 625  
 Metz-Thionville, 383  
 Meuse (Maas), R., 392, 400, 401
- Mexico, 200, 227, 292, 273, 275, 276, 289, 777-84; area, 777; Central Plateau, 778-779; Chiapas highlands, 782; climate, 778; communications, 781; crops, 778, irrigation, 782; land use, 778; Lower California, 780; manufactures, 779, 780; mineral resources, 779; Northern Plateau, 779-80; oilfields, 780; population, 777; principal towns, population of, 784; production and trade, 782-4; Regions, 778-82; Sierra Madre Occidental, 780; Sierra Madre Oriental, 780; Sierra del Sur, 782; Spanish in, 778; *tierra caliente*, 780  
 Mexico City, 779, 780, 781  
 Mexico, Gulf of, 102  
 Mezquite, 139  
 Miami, 772  
 Mica, 557, 807  
 Michigan, 292, 762, 764  
 Michigan, L., 725  
 Micro-climates, 27  
 Micronesians, 867, 873  
 Middle Congo (French Dependency), 703  
 Middlesbrough, 283, 344, 345, 350  
 Middle West, 85  
 Middlewich, 350  
 Midland, 746  
 Midlothian, 351  
 Midway, 873  
 Milan, 319, 482, 483  
 Mildura, 855  
 Mile, nautical, 100  
 Milford, 252  
 Milk 324; condensed, 243-4  
 Millet (Guinea corn), 38, 44, 205, 561, 614, 619, 635, 636, 643, 682  
 Milwaukee, 772  
 Mindanao, 602  
 Mindoro, 602  
 Mineral manures, 291  
 Minneapolis, 753, 768, 771  
 Minnesota, 764  
 Minusinsk basin, 499  
 Mississippi R., 89, 174; 'bottoms', 753-4;

- Upper and Lower river, 759  
 Missouri, R., 754  
 Missouri (State), 767  
 Mistral, 382  
 Mittelland Canal, 317, 409, 417  
 Mianje, Mt., 676  
 Mobile, 772  
 Mocha, 542  
 Mogadiscio, 647  
 Mohair, 158, 160, 672  
 Mohawk Valley, 756  
 Mo-i-Rana, 458  
 Moisture, 29  
 Moji, 624, 627  
 Molasses, 207, 209, 792  
 Moldavia, 452  
 Mollendo, 821, 823  
 Molotov (Perm), 510  
 Moluccas (Spice Islands), 598, 599  
 Molybdenum, 290, 824  
 Molyneux R., 860  
 Monazite, 293, 557  
 Mongolia, 43, 613  
 Mons, 392  
 Monsoon, 24, 519, 557, 558; countries and their dependencies, 554 *et seq.*; regions, 29  
 Montana, 273, 750, 767  
 Mont Cenis, 379  
 Montenegro, 448  
 Monterey, 783  
 Montevideo, 834  
 Montreal, 46, 108, 727, 735, 744  
 Montserrat, 791  
 Moon, Mts. of the, 681  
 Moonta, 856  
 Moosejaw, 746  
 Moravian Gate, 411, 428, 442  
 Mora-wood, 235  
 Morbihan, Bay of, 253  
 Morgan, Mt., 854  
 Morley, 342  
 Morocco, 291, 649, 654-657; French Zone, 655-657; Spanish Zone, 654-655; Tangier Zone, 654  
 Morocco leather, 297  
 Morphia, 189  
*Morus alba*, 162; *tinctoria*, 235  
 Moscow, 320, 495, 501, 506-7  
 Mosel, R., 408  
 Mosquitoes, 76; *Anopheles*, 76, 630  
 Mossel Bay, 664  
 Mosses, 500  
 Mosul, 319, 538  
 Mother - of - pearl, 248, 872  
 Motor cars, 346, 348, 434, 483, 746  
 Motor omnibus, 83  
 Mouflon, 154  
 Mount Lofty Range, 855  
 Mountain Park, 747  
 Mountain sickness, 51  
 Mozambique, 711-14  
 Mozambique Co., 713  
 Mtwarra, 683  
 Muharraq Island, 546  
 Mulberry, Black (fruit), 143  
 Mulberry, White (tree for silkworm culture), 162-4, 383 (France), 479 (Italy), 623 (Japan)  
 Mulberry Moth, 164  
 Mulches, 64  
 Mule(cottonmachinery), 180  
 Mules, 79, 481, 485, 527, 529, 610, 783  
 Mulhouse, 384  
 Multan, 573  
 Mun, Thomas, 570  
 'Mungo', 160  
 Munich, 411, 419  
 Munjeel, 236  
 Murcia, 473  
 Murmansk, 510  
 Murray R., 841, 851  
 Murray-Darling basin, 42  
 Murrumbidgee R., 841  
 Murshidābād (Bengal), 562  
*Musa Cavendishii* or *chinensis*, 216; *paradisica*, 216; *sapientum*, 216; *textilis*, 214  
 Muscat, 545  
 Muscat and Oman, 545-546; boundaries, 545; currency, 546; foreign trade, 546  
 Muscovy Company, 359  
 Musk-rats, 239  
 Mustard, 235, 561  
*Myristica fragrans*, 234  
 Myrobalans, 296  
 Myrtle wax, 230  
 Myrrh, 233, 647  
 Mysore, 201, 557, 573  
 NABLUS (Shechem), 530  
 Nagana, 77, 242, 630  
 Nagasaki, 101, 624, 627  
 Nagoya, 627  
 Nagpur, 572  
 Nairobi, 678  
 Naivasha, Lake, 678  
 Nakhichevan republic, 514  
 Nakuru, Lake, 678  
 Namoi or Peel R., 853  
 Nanaimo, 747  
 Nancy, 383, 384  
 Nantes, 387, 389  
 Nan-Shan (Mts.), 519  
 Naples, 480, 483  
 Narbadā, R., 565, 569  
 Nari Pass, 573  
 Narvik, 456, 458, 460  
 Nassau (former German Duchy), 406  
 Nassau (Bahamas), 790  
 Natal, 296, 662, 665-6; coal, 666; products, 665  
 National Insurance Act, 67  
 Nauru, 860, 869  
 Navigation, steam, 93-97; history, 93-4  
 Neath, 347  
 Nebraska R., 772  
 Neckar, R., 408, 409  
 Needles, 346  
 Negev, 531  
 Negri Sembilan, 587  
 Negros, 602  
 Negroes, 750, 752, 759  
 Neisse, R., 427  
 Nejd, State of, 541  
 Nelson, 338  
 Nepal, 574  
 Nera, R., 482  
 Nerchinsk, Treaty of, 503  
 Netherlands, The (Holland) 46, 398-403; area, 398; cattle, 398; coal and oil, 400; Court, 403; currency, valuation, 403; dairy produce, 398; internal waterways, 401, 402; iron and steel, 400; land reclamation, 399; manufacturing industries, 399-400; mineral production, 398; overseas trade, 403; principal towns, population of, 403; population, 398; salt, 400; sea-ports, 401; shipbuilding, 400-1; textile manufactures, 400;

- vegetable, flower, bulb production, 399
- Netherlands East Indies. *See* Indonesia
- Neuchâtel, 271
- Neuhausen, 433
- Neva, R., 509
- Nevada, 273, 767
- New Amsterdam (New York), 727
- New Britain, 869
- New Brunswick, 251, 268, 728, 743-4
- Newcastle, 292, 318, 347, 357, 360
- Newcastle, (N.S.W.), 848, 853
- New Caledonia, 871
- New England, 761, 766
- New England Range, 853
- New Forest, 321
- Newfoundland, 251, 729, 748-9
- New Guinea (Austrian), 868-9
- New Guinea, Western (Dutch), 873
- New Hampshire, 768
- Newhaven, 317, 372
- New Hebrides, 866-7
- New Ireland, 869
- New Jersey, 768
- New Orleans, 772, 773
- New Plymouth, 864
- Newport (Mon.), 283, 345, 360
- Newport (Rhode Island), 773
- Newport News, 102, 764, 772
- New Providence, 790
- New South Wales, 844, 848, 852-4
- Newsprint, 299
- New York, 239, 755, 756, 772, 773
- New York State Barge Canal (Erie Canal), 757
- New Waterway (Holland), 402
- New Westminster (B.C.), 748
- New Zealand (Dominion of), 45, 157, 240, 243, 244, 859-65; agriculture, 861-5; climate, 861, 862; communications, 860, 864; dependencies, 859-60; farms, sizes of, 863; foreign trade, 865; hydro-electric power, 863-4; islands, 859; land use, 861; minerals, 863; physical features, 860; population, 864; principal cities, population of, 865; rivers, 860; sheep, 863
- Niagara Falls and R. (hydro-electric power), 291, 745, 768
- Niagara R., paralleled by Welland Canal, 733; western terminus, Erie Canal, 757
- Niamey, 700
- Nicaragua, 796, 799, 800
- Nickel, 290, 497, 498, 738, 746, 871
- Nicola Valley, 747
- Nicosia, 522, 523
- Nicotiana*, 186; *tabacum*, 186
- Nienhagen oilfield, 416
- Niger Colony, 700
- Niger, R., 686, 696
- Nigeria, 203, 234, 244, 276, 686-90; area and population, 686, 687; communications, 689; constitution, 689-90; exports, 688; Marketing Boards, 688; physical features, 686
- Nigerian Coal Corporation, 687
- Niigata, 627
- Nikolskoye, 511
- Nile, R., 62, 631, 632 *et seq.*, 638
  - Bahr-el-Ghazal (River of Gazelles), 632, 642; Bahr-el-Jebel (Albert), 642, 643; Blue, 632, 634; control of, 633-4; floods, 632-3; hydro-electric power, 634; navigation, 643; White (Bahr-el-Abiad), 632, 634
- Nilgiri Hills, 194, 211, 573
- Nimule, 643
- Nipigon R., 745
- Nish, 319
- Nitrate of potash (salt-petre), 304, 307, 557
- Nitrate of soda, 291, 307, 824
- Nitrogen, 57, 58
- Niu-chang, 512
- Niue (Savage Island), 859, 870
- Nizhniy - Novgorod (Gorky), 508
- Nkongsamba, 702
- No, Lake, 632, 642
- Nomads, 39, 43
- Nome, 777
- Noranda, 745
- Norfolk (U.S.A.), 102, 764
- Norfolk Island, 853, 870
- Normandie*, 389
- Normandy, 384
- Norrköping, 462
- Northampton, 351
- Northamptonshire, 345
- N. & S. Staffs. coalfield, 330
- Northern Ireland, 343
- Northern Line Islands, 867
- Northern Pacific Rly., 735, 773
- North Sea, 408, 410
- North Sea Canal, 402
- North Shields, 252
- Northwest Territories, 729, 749-50
- Northwich, 350
- Norway, 25, 252, 291, 455-8; area, 455; fishing, 457; forests, 456; hydro-electric power, 456; industries, 457; land use, 455; livestock, 456; minerals, 457; outlying territories, 458; population, 455; railways, 456; relief, 455; rivers, 456
- Norwich, 342, 348, 351
- Nottingham, 340, 347
- Noumea, 871
- Nova Scotia, 251, 728, 739, 741-2
- Novi Sad, 451
- Novo-Sibirsk, 504, 507, 513
- Nuba Mts., 643
- Nubian desert, 642
- Nuer tribe, 643
- Nukualofa, 868
- Nuernberg, 318, 319, 420
- Nutmegs, 234, 792
- Nutria, 239
- Nyssa, Lake, 676, 677
- Nyasaland, 188, 228, 676-7; railways, 676-677; Central African Federation, 673-4
- Nylon, 166, 309, 344, 434

- OAHU**, 872  
**Oases**, 39  
**Oats**, 39, 46, 47, 134-5, 238; in Algeria, 650; in America, S., 824, 827; in Austria, 439; Bulgaria, 486; chief producing countries, 134; in Czechoslovakia, 443; in Denmark, 464; in Germany, 414; in Greece, 488; in Holland, 399; in Italy, 481; in New Zealand, 861; in Norway, 455; in Roumania, 453; in Sweden, 460; in Turkey, 524; uses of, 135; in U.S.S.R., 506; yield, 134  
**Ob, R.**, 497, 512  
**Ocean Island**, 867, 870  
**Ocean trade routes**, 97-102; great circle, 100-101; old, 99; present, 100-2  
**Ocean Transport**, 91  
**Oceania**, French Settlements in, 871-2  
**Odense**, 464  
**Oder, R.**, 408, 427  
**Odessa**, 513  
**Oeno**, 868  
**Oerlikon**, 434  
**Offenbach**, 420  
**Ofoten Fjord**, 457  
**Ohio, R.**, 753, 764, 765  
**Ohio (State)**, 267, 292, 764, 765  
**Odium Tuckeri**, 145  
**Oil-cake**, 228  
**Oilfields**, world survey, 266-70; in America, S., 807, 812, 820, 824; in Australia, 848, 857; in Burma, 577; in Canada, 738, 739, 747, 749; in Egypt, 637; in Germany, 416; in Holland, 400; in Hungary, 447; in Indian sub-continent, 556; in Indonesia, 598; in Iraq, 538-9; in Jordan, 534; in Kuwait, 547; in Mexico, 780-1; in Middle East, 537; in New Guinea, Western, 873; in Persia, 549-50; in Persian Gulf, 546; in Roumania, 453; in Sarawak and Brunei, 597; in Saudi Arabia, 541-2; in Trinidad, 793; in U.S.A., 762; in U.S.S.R., 498 *et seq.*, 508  
**Oil palm**, 36, 226, 589, 671, 694, 704, 708, 709  
**Oil pipelines**, 267 *et seq.*, 537-9, 542  
**Oil-seeds**, 38, 561, 796  
**Oil seeds, cake**, 221 *et seq.*  
**Oil shales**, 265; in Tasmania, 858  
**Oil-tankers**, 93, 99  
**Oiling-bases**, 101  
**Oils, essential**, 717, 797  
**Oils, mineral**, distilled varieties and end products, 264-5; 'cracking', 264; batching oils, 265; extraction from oil shales and coal, 265; increasing use of fuel-oil by shipping, 93, 95, 264, 360; displacement of vegetable and animal oils for lighting and lubricating, 265  
**Oils, vegetable**, 221 *et seq.*, 807; cooking, 221; lighting, 221; uses, 221  
**Okanagan Valley**, 748  
**Okinawa**, 628  
**Oklahoma**, 267, 767  
**Okoumé**, 703  
**Old age pensions**, 67  
**Oldham**, 338, 347  
**Olhao**, 476  
**Olive oil**, 221-3, 450, 472, 476, 481, 488, 522, 529, 649, 653; chief producing countries, 223; Lucca, 480; production, 222-3; yield, 221  
**Olive trees**, 41; chief producing countries, 222; conditions for growth, 222; in Argentina, 827; in California, 221; in Italy, 222; in Spain, 222; in Tunisian Sahel, 222; in Yugoslavia, 450  
**Omaha**, 772  
**Oman, Gulf of**, 545  
**Omdurman**, 644-5  
**Omsk**, 505, 508, 513  
**Oneida L.**, 757  
**Onions**, 140, 637  
**Ontario**, 268, 728, 730, 739, 745  
**Ontario, L.**, 725, 733, 735  
**Oodnadatta**, 856  
**Oolitic limestones**, 768  
**Ootacamund**, 573  
**Opals**, 848  
**Opava (Troppau)**, 443  
**Opium**, 189-90; in China, 190; in India, 189; producing countries, 189-90; production, 190  
**Oporto**, 148, 477  
**Oppeln**, 407  
**Orange Free State**, 666  
**Orange, R.**, 672  
**Oranges**, 472, 522, 531, 648, 669, 760, 789, 791, 851, 853, 868  
**Oregon**, 761, 768  
**Oriente Province**, 817  
**Orinoco R.**, 803, 812, 813  
**Orissa**, 231  
**Orizaba**, 780  
**Orleans**, 390  
**Orontes, R.**, 527, 529  
**Orsk**, 507  
**Ortsteine**, 52  
**Osaka**, 627  
**Osipenko**, 513  
**Oslo**, 458  
**Oslo Fjord**, 456  
**Osnabrück**, 409  
**Ostend**, 317, 395  
**Ostia**, 483  
**Ostrava (Moravská-Ostrava)**, 444  
**Otago Harbour**, 865  
**Otago, Province of**, 865  
**Otira Gorge**, 860  
**Ottawa**, 745, 746  
**Ottawa Agreement (1932)**, 740  
**Ottawa, R.**, 735, 744, 745  
**Ouagadougou**, 698, 700  
**Oudtshoorn**, 664  
**Oulu (Uleåborg)**, 469  
**Ouse, R.**, 352  
**Owen Falls**, 681  
**Owen Stanley Range**, 869  
**Ox**, 79  
**Oxford**, 348  
**Oxus, R.**, 552  
**Oxygen**, 310



- Oysters, 241, 252  
Ozark Mts., 767  
Ozokerit, 270-1
- PACIFIC Island Labourers' Act, 843  
Pacific Islands, 865-73 ;  
  Australian, 868-70 ;  
  British, 856-8; French, 871-2; Missions in, 866; Netherlands, 873; New Zealand, 870-1; U.S.A. in, 867, 872-3; in World War II, 866  
Pacific Trust Territory, North, 873  
Pago Pago, 873  
Pahang, 587, 592-3, 601  
Pahang, R., 588  
Paisley, 340  
Pakistan, 175-7, 520  
  (see also Indian sub-continent); area and population, 571; cities and towns, 573, 574; foreign trade, 567; railways, 564  
Palawan, 602  
Palembang, 601  
Palermo, 484  
Palestine Potash Co., 531  
Palm, date, 211, 538, 545-6, 549, 649, 653, 704; coconut, 211, 215, 225, 691; oil, 226; Palmyra, 211; sago, 205-6, 211; toddy, 211  
Palm kernel oil, 226  
Palm kernels, 694, 697, 698, 701  
Palm oil, 226, 688, 691, 694, 697, 698, 702, 703, 708, 711  
Palma, 474  
Palmerston North, 864  
Pambam (Paumben) Passage, 571  
Pamir Plateau, 515  
Pampas, 42, 43, 804  
Pan-American Highway, 795, 820  
Panama Canal, 102, 724, 800, 802; shipping and tonnage, 801; Zone, 777, 801, (Govt.) 803  
Panama Canal Company, 803  
Panama City, 801, 802  
Panama hats, 818  
Panama Railroad Co., 803  
Panama, Republic of, 800-1  
Panay, 602  
*Pandanus odoratissimus*, 215  
Pandanus palm, 867  
*Papaver somniferum*, 189  
Papete, 872  
Paper, 297-300, 394, 745, 749; consumption, 300; making, 153, 298 *et seq.*; manufactures, 351, 473; mechanical pulp for, 299  
Papua, 868-9  
Papua, Gulf of, 869  
Papyrus, 299  
Paraffin, medicinal, 265  
Paraffin oil, 264; wax, 230, 265  
Paraguay, 296, 834-6; land use, 835; livestock, 835; mineral resources, 835  
Paraguay R., 804, 822, 823, 829, 834  
Paramaribo, 812  
Parana R., 804, 829  
Parchment, 248, 299  
Paria, Gulf of, 792  
Paris, 318, 319, 382, 385  
Parramatta, 853  
Pasadena, 772  
Passau, 319, 408, 411, 440  
Pasteur, 165  
Patagonian Desert, 41  
Patagonian plateau, 826, 828  
Patna, 189, 561, 572  
Patras, 488, 489  
Pauillac, 389  
Paysandu, 829, 833  
Peaches, 142, 760, 851  
Pearl fisheries, 546, 646, 857  
Pearl Harbour, 872  
Pearls, 248  
Pearl-shell, 869, 870  
Pears, 46  
Peas, 137, 140  
Peat, 264  
Pecan nuts, 759  
Pechelbronn, 269  
Pechili, Gulf of, 25  
Pécs, 447  
Peel R., 853  
Pegu Yoma, 576  
Peh-tan-shan (Paik-tu-san), 618  
Pei-ho, 612  
Pei-kiang R., 611  
Peking, 44, 612  
Peloponnese, 488  
Pelotas, 809  
Pemba, 229, 234, 684  
Pennines, 321, 352, 355, 370  
*Pennisetum typhoideum*, 205  
Pennsylvania, 267  
Pennsylvania coalfield, 763  
Pensacola, 761, 773  
Pepper, 233, 570, 599; cayenne, 233; long, 233  
Peppercorns, 233  
Peppermint oil, 229  
Perak, 587  
Perak, R., 588  
Perekop, 513  
Perilla seed, 228  
Periyar, R., 560  
Perlis, 587  
Permafrost, 49  
Pernambuco (Recife), 807  
Persia (Iran), 548-50 ; agriculture, 548-9 ; area, 548; boundaries, 548; carpets, 549 ; irrigation, 549; land use, 548; livestock, 549; oil, 549; principal towns, population of, 550; relief, 548; transport, 550  
Persian Gulf, 248, 520, 535; pearl fisheries, 546  
Perth, 343, 351  
Perth (W. Australia), 857  
Peru, 207, 268, 819-21; industries, 820; crops, 819; forest products, 820 ; mineral resources, 820  
Peruvian current, 803  
Peshawar, 553, 559  
Pests, 74-6  
Peter the Great, 503  
Peterhead, 252  
Petchora Coalfield, 497  
Petchora, R., 497  
Petroleum, 264 *et seq.*, 762; chief producing countries, 266; world production, 266  
Pforzheim, 419  
*Phaseolus vulgaris*, 137  
Philadelphia, 756, 772, 773

- Philippines, The, 226,  
601-5; agriculture,  
603; foreign trade,  
602-4; islands and  
population, 602; min-  
eral resources, 605  
Philips (Holland), 400  
Phnom-Penh, 584  
Phoenicians, 92  
Phoenix Islands, 867  
*Phormium tenax*, 152-3  
Phosphates, 291, 637,  
652, 653, 656, 662,  
767, 858, 867, 870,  
872, 873  
Phosphoric acid, 58  
Phosphorus, 278, 460  
Phylloxera, 75, 145, 383  
*Phytelapha macrocarpa*,  
235  
Piacenza, 479  
Piassava, 215, 694  
'Pidgin' English, 116  
Piettermaritzburg, 666  
Pigs, 450, 453, 459, 460,  
481, 484, 486, 506,  
529, 590, 622, 761,  
769, 783, 797, 806,  
863; bristles, 245  
Pilchard, 250, 251, 252  
Pilcomayo R., 829  
Pillars of Hercules, 92  
Pilsen (Pilsen), 443  
Pimento (all-spice), 235,  
791  
Pine, pitch-, 761  
Pineapples, 590, 603,  
787, 789, 854, 865,  
868, 872  
Pines, 236, 346  
Pioneer fringe, 64, 758  
Piræus, 490  
Pirates, 96  
Pistachio nuts, 143  
Pitcairn Island, 868  
Pitch Lake, 271, 793  
Pitchblende, 746  
Pittsburgh, 86, 753, 763,  
765  
Plague, 77  
Plaice, 252  
Plantain, 216  
Plate, R., 829  
Platinum, 290, 669, 738  
Platte, R., 772  
Plauen, 419  
Pleven, 487  
Plovdiv, 487  
Plumbago, 292  
Plums, 140, 851  
Plunkett, Sir Horace, 375  
Plymouth (Mass.), 727  
Pneumatic tyre, 217  
Po, R., 89, 483  
Po valley, 482  
Pocahontas coalfield,  
764, 765  
Podor, 697  
Podsols, 57, 500, 501  
Pointe Noire, 703  
Poland, 242, 317, 404,  
427-31, 492; agricul-  
ture, 428; area, 427;  
foreign trade, 430-1;  
frontiers, 427; indus-  
trialisation, 428-9;  
manufactures, 429;  
population, 427; prin-  
cipal towns, popula-  
tion of, 431; railways,  
429; relief, 427-8  
Polders, 398  
Pollack, 250  
Polynesians, 867  
Pomegranate, 143, 472,  
546  
Ponce, 789  
Pondicherry, 574  
Pontianak, 601  
Pontresina, 436  
Poonac, 229  
Poppy-seed, 228  
Porcelain, 301-3, 349,  
387, 444  
Porcupine, 739  
Porkkala, 466  
Pori (Björneborg), 469  
Poirentuy, 434  
Port, 148  
Port Arthur (Soviet  
Union), 511  
Port Arthur (Ontario),  
740, 746  
Port Augusta, 856  
Port-de-Bouc, 387  
Port Chalmers, 865  
Port Clarence, 350  
Port Colborne, 746  
Port Dalrymple, 858  
Port Elizabeth, 660, 664  
Port Jackson, 852, 853  
Port Kembla, 853  
Port of London Author-  
ity, 369  
Port Melbourne, 852  
Port Moresby, 869  
Port Nicholson, 864  
Port Phillip, 852  
Port Pirie, 854, 856  
Port-au-Prince, 788  
Port Said, 101, 638, 639  
Port of Spain, 792, 793  
Port Sudan, 645  
Port Swettenham, 592  
Port Talbot, 345  
Portimao, 476  
Portland (Oregon), 773  
Portland cement, 293  
Portland stone, 293  
Porto Alegre, 809  
Porto Novo, 698  
Portsmouth, 347, 349  
Portugal, 41, 148, 231  
291, 475-7; agricul-  
ture, 475; area, 475;  
climate, 475; fishing,  
476; land use, 475;  
livestock, 475, 476;  
minerals, 476; popula-  
tion, 475; welfare,  
476  
Portuguese voyages, 92  
Posts and Telegraphs,  
105-6  
Potash, 58, 291, 304,  
307, 416, 534  
Potatoes, 139-40, 383,  
384, 399; in Algeria,  
650; in America, S.,  
806, 822, 824, 827;  
in Austria, 439; in  
Cyprus, 522; in  
Czechoslovakia, 443;  
in Denmark, 464; in  
Finland, 467; in Ger-  
many, 413; in Japan,  
623; in Korea, 619;  
in Lebanon, 529; in  
Malla, 484; in  
Mexico, 778; in Po-  
land, 428; in Portugal,  
475; in Roumania,  
453; in Sweden, 460;  
in Switzerland, 432;  
in Yugoslavia, 448;  
Potatoes, sweet, 206,  
603, 871  
Potomac R., 754  
Potteries, the, 302  
'Pottery towns', 350  
Poultry, 447, 459  
Power, sources of, 71-2  
Power-loom, 181  
Prague, 318  
Praha (Prague), 443, 444  
Prairie Provinces, 130,  
729, 739  
Prairies, 42, 43  
Preesall, 350  
Preston, 338, 348  
Pribilof Islands, 240  
Prices, stability of, 4, 5, 9  
Prickly pear, 143, 843  
'Primeurs', 383  
Prince Albert, 746  
Prince Edward Island,  
728, 742-3  
Prince Rupert, 736  
Principe, 203, 718

- Production, large scale, 110; small scale, 110  
 Progreso, 781  
 Prome, 579  
 Propane, 268  
 Propeller, screw, 90  
*Prosopis dulcis*, 139  
 Prunes, 760  
 Prussia (Norddeutscher Zollverein), 405  
 Puerto Barrios, 799  
 Puerto Mexico, 783  
 Puerto Ricans, 752  
 Puerto Rico, 777, 784, 785, 786, 788-9  
 Puget Sound, 760, 772  
 Pulp, 749  
 Pulpwood, 236  
*Pulque*, 779  
 Pulses, 137-9, 561  
 Punjab, 175, 194, 269, 561, 562  
 Punjab, Salt Hills of, 557  
 Punta Arenas, 825  
 Puntarenas, 800  
 Pusan, 620  
 'Puszata', 446  
 Pyrenees, 379  
 Pyrethrum, 679  
 Pyrgos, 488
- QATAR, 270, 546  
 Quebec (P.Q.), 108, 727, 735, 744  
 Quebec Province, 728, 739, 744-5  
 Quebracho, 296, 828, 835  
 Queen Charlotte Islands, 747  
*Queen Elizabeth*, 362  
*Queen Mary*, 362  
 Queensland, 844, 848, 854-5  
 Queenstown, 745  
 Quetta, 573  
 Quicksilver, 767  
 Quinine, 211, 212, 797, 820, 822  
 Quito, 817, 818
- RABAT, 656, 657  
 Rabbits, 75, 239, 843  
 Raciborz (Ratibor), 429  
 Radiation, 26, 28  
 Radium, 311, 738, 749  
 Radium ores (pitchblende), 417  
 Rafa, 319
- Railways, 83-8; general factors, including gauges, 87; gradients, 84; altitudes, 84; rack-railways (Abt system), 85; tunnels, 84; size of wagons, 86; light railways, 87; electrification, 88. Differing functions in new and old countries, 85. Influence on towns, 114. *See also* under individual countries  
 Railways, international and transcontinental: Arlberg-Orient Express, 319; Italian-Scandinavian Express, 318; Nord Express, 318; Orient Express, 318; Ostend-Vienna Express, 318; Simplon-Orient Express, 319; Taurus Express, 319; Trans-Siberian, 320; connections with China, 320; India and Pakistan, 564; Malaya and Siam, 592; trans-African, 710-11; Canada and U.S.A., 721, 736; Argentina, Chile, Bolivia, Paraguay, Uruguay, 829  
 Rain forests, 44  
 Rainfall, 29-31, 32 *et seq.*  
 Rainy L., 735  
 Rainy R., 735  
 Raipur, 556, 565  
 Raisins, 142, 760  
 Ramie, 214  
 Rand, the, 667  
 Ranen Fjord, 457  
 Rangoon, 578, 579  
 Rāniganj, 555  
 Rape, 561  
 Rapeseed, 226-7, 614  
*Raphia vinifera*, 215  
 Rarotonga, 870  
 Ras al Mishaab, 530  
 Rate of exchange, 120  
 Ratisbon (Regensburg), 316, 408  
 Rats, 76  
 Rawalpindi, 556, 573  
 Raw materials, influence in locating industry, 111  
 Rayon, 168, 309-10, definitions of, 309; world production, 310; in Holland, 400; in Germany, 419; in Switzerland, 434; in Italy, 482; in Japan, 625  
 Recife (Pernambuco), 807  
 Red R. (Canada), 735, 746  
 Red R. (Indo-China), 583  
 Red R. (U.S.A.), 754, 759  
 Red Sea, 519  
 Redditch, 346  
 Redonda, 791  
 Redwater oilfield, 739  
 Regensburg (Ratisbon), 316, 408  
 Reggio, 484  
 Regina, 746  
 Reichenberg, 443  
 Reindeer, 79, 749  
 Reindeer moss, 500  
 Renmark, 855  
 Reptile skins, 807  
 Resin, 231 *et seq.*, 799  
 Resources, development of, 5  
 Réunion, 235, 717  
 Rhea, 214  
 Rheims, 385, 386, 390  
 Rheinfelden, 433  
 Rhenish Bay, 407  
 Rhenish Massif, 407  
 Rhine, R., 89, 148, 317, 380, 400, 401, 407, 408, 409, 433  
 Rhine - Main - Danube Canal, 408  
 Rhine-Marne Canal, 317  
 Rhodes, 490; Colossus of, 490  
 Rhodes, Cecil, 674  
 Rhodesia and Nyasaland Federation, 673-7  
 Rhodesia, Northern, 675-6; 'copperbelt', 675  
 Rhodesia, Southern, 188, 674-5; crops, 675; mineral resources, 675  
 Rhodope Mts., 487  
 Rhone, R., 316, 380, 433  
 Rhone-Rhine Canal, 380  
 Rhone valley, 387  
*Rhus coriaria*, 296; *verniciifera*, 623  
 Rice, 38, 44, 203-5, 471, 475, 488, 529, 536, 561, 578, 580, 583, 589, 595, 603, 605

- 610, 613, 619, 623, 635, 637, 694, 717, 760, 797, 798, 799, 800, 801, 806, 810, 811, 815, 818, 819, 822, 827; in Asia, 204; for Britain, 205; in Burma, 205; conditions for growth, 203-204; eating countries, 204; growing countries, 204; in India, 205; in Italy, 205; in U.S.A., 205; yield, 204
- Rift Valley, Great, 676, 678
- Riga, 493, 501, 513
- Rijeka (Fiume), 478
- Rimini, 479
- Ring - spinning - frame, 181
- Rio Balsas, 782
- Rio Grande, 778
- Rio Grande do Sul, 809
- Rio de Janeiro, 200, 805, 809
- Rio Nazas, 779
- Rio Negro, 829, 834
- Rio Tinto, 473
- Ripon Falls, 681
- Risdon, 854, 858
- Rivadavia, 828
- River floods, 74; pollution, 252
- Rivers, navigable, 89, 108-9
- Riverina plains, 853, 854
- Riviera, 382
- Riyadh, 541
- Road metal, 293
- Road traffic, statistics, 82-3
- Road transport, 82-3
- Roads, 80-3
- Roanne, 386
- 'Roaring forties', 99
- Robber economy, 218
- Robinia pseudacacia*, 446
- Robinson, Prof. J. Lewis, 728
- Rochdale, 338, 342
- Rochefort, 390
- Rochester (N.Y.), 768
- Rockhampton, 855
- Rocky Mts., 84, 729, 747, 754
- Rocky Mts., Gate of, 754
- Rodriguez, 235, 715
- Rome, 480, 483
- Ropeways and Cableways, 88; types, 88
- Rosario, 829
- Rosefish, 250
- Roseires, 644
- Roses, attar of, 486
- Rosewood, 238, 796
- Rosin, 231
- Ross Sector (Antarctic), 860
- Rostov, 507, 513
- Rosyth, 349
- Rotherham, 349
- Rotterdam, 394, 401-2, 421, 436
- Rotuma, 866
- Roubaix, 162, 385
- Rouen, 386, 387, 389
- Roumania, 451-54; agriculture, 452; area, 452; climate, 452; communications, 454; historical background, 451-2; land use, 452; livestock, 453; minerals, 453; People's Republic of, 452; population, 452; principal towns, population of, 454; relief, 452
- Rove canal, 388
- Royal Niger Company, 359
- Ruanda-Urundi, 708
- Rub' al Khali, 542, 543, 545
- Rubber, 32, 36, 216-20; 348, 394, 581, 583, 585, 588-9, 595, 600, 702, 704, 708, 797, 801, 804, 807, 818, 822, 869; effect of Korean War, 219; in Africa, 218; in Asia, 218; in Assam, 217; Ceará, 217; in Ceylon, 218; collection of, 217; in Dutch East Indies, 218; 'early uses', 217; in Malaya, 218; Pará, 217; plantation, 218, 219, depression, 219, production, 218-19; prices, 219; producing countries, 218; development of synthetic, 218-19; wild, 218
- Rubia cordifolia*, 236; *tinctorum*, 236
- Ruhr, 411, 415, 417
- Rum, 717, 789, 791, 792, 793
- Runcorn, 339
- Russe, 487
- Russia, 43, 48, 236, 268, 273, 285, 317, 320 (see also U.S.S.R.)
- Russian language, 116
- Russo - Japanese War, 504
- Ruwendzori, Mt., 681
- Rye, 46, 136, 383, 391; in Austria, 439; in Bulgaria, 486; in Czechoslovakia, 442; in Denmark, 464; in Germany, 413; in Holland, 399; in Hungary, 446; in Italy, 481; in Poland, 428; in Sweden, 460; in Turkey, 524; in U.S.S.R., 506; in Yugoslavia, 448
- Ryukyu Archipelago, 628
- SAALE, R., 409
- Saar, 380; basin, 415, 417; escarpment, 407; territory, 406, 426-7
- Saba, 793
- Sable, 239
- Sacks, 344
- Sacramento R., 760
- Safflower, 236
- Safi, 656
- Sago, 205-6, 595, 869
- Saguenay R., 744
- Sagus Rumphii*, 205
- Sahara, 39; oil, 650-1
- Saida (Sidon), 530
- Saigon, 584
- Saint Anthony, Falls of, 753
- Saint Christopher-Nevis (Saint Kitts), 791
- Saint Cloud, 385
- Saint Croix, 789
- Saint Dié, 386
- Saint Etienne, 383, 385, 387
- Saint Eustatius, 793
- Saint François, 745
- Saint Gallen, 435
- Saint George's, 792
- Saint Gotthard, 483
- Saint Gotthard road, 435
- Saint Gotthard tunnel, 387, 411, 435
- Saint Helena, 715
- Saint Helens, 350
- Saint Imier, 434
- Saint John (N.B.), 743
- St. John's (Newfoundland), 749
- Saint John (Virgin Is.), 789

- Saint Lawrence, Gulf of, 25, 743; R., 89, 725, 727, 733, 744; Seaway, 734; Valley, 47  
 Saint Louis, 753, 770  
 Saint Louis (Senegal), 697, 699  
 Saint Lucia, 792  
 Saint Malo, 317  
 Saint Martin, 793  
 Saint Maurice R., 744  
 Saint Michael, 102  
 Saint Moritz, 436  
 Saint Mazaire, 387, 389, 436  
 Saint Paul, 771  
 Saint Petersburg (Leningrad), 503  
 Saint Pierre and Miquelon, 750  
 Saint Quentin, 386  
 Saint Thomas, 102, 789  
 Saint Vincent (C. Verde Is.), 102  
 Saint Vincent (B.W.I.), 206, 792  
 Saint Vincent (S. Aus.), Gulf of, 855, 856  
 Sakania, 707  
 Sal, 37  
 Salamanca, 470  
 Salamorias, R., 488  
 Salina Cruz, 783  
 Salisbury, 674  
 Salmon, 250, 251, 777  
 Salonica, 319  
 Salsette island, 569  
 Salt, 433, 451, 498, 544, 557, 643, 648, 790, 824, 288-9; chief producing countries, 289; rock-, 384; sea-, 384  
 Salta, 827  
 Saltaire, 342  
 Salto, 829, 834  
 Saltpetre (nitrate of potash), 557  
 Salts, 416  
 Salvador, 809  
 Salween, R., 577  
 Salzburg, 319, 411  
 Salzkammergut, 440  
 Samar, 602  
 Samarang, 601  
 Samarkand, 299, 515, 516  
 Sambre valley, 392  
 Samoa, American, 873  
 Samoa, Western, 870-1  
 Samsun, 525  
 Sana, 543  
 San Cristoval, 866  
 Sandakan, 596  
 Sandarach, 233  
 Sandbach, 350  
 San Diego, 772  
 Sandur, 556  
 Sandwich Islands, 872-3  
 San Francisco, 102, 772, 773  
 San Joaquin R., 760  
 San José, 800  
 San Juan, 827  
 San Juan, R., 800  
 San Salvador, 799  
 San Sebastian, 474  
 Santa Cruz Islands, 866  
 Santa Fé, 829  
 Santander, 474  
 Santiago, 825  
 Santos, 200, 809  
 São Tomé, 203, 718  
 Saône, R., 380  
 São Paulo, 809  
 Sapporo, 627  
 Sarajevo, 451  
 Sarandë (Porto Edda), 491  
 Saratov, 508  
 Sarawak, 269, 596-7  
 Sarda works, 559  
 Sardine, 250, 252, 253, 473, 476, 477, 624  
 Saidinia, 480  
 Saskatoon, 746  
 Saskatchewan, 268, 729, 739, 746  
 'Satellites', 492  
 Saudi Arabia, 270, 540-542; agriculture, 540; communications, 540; oil, 541-2  
 Sault Ste. Marie, 740, 745  
 Sault Ste. Marie ('Soo') Canal, 733, 764  
 Savanna, 37, 642  
 Savona, 482  
 Saxony, 154, 405, 418, 419  
 Scandinavia, 48, 300  
 Scania, 459, 462  
 Schaffhausen, 433  
 Scheldt, R., 395, 401  
 Schleswig-Holstein, 406  
 Schoonebeek oilfield, 400  
 Schramberg, 419  
 Schuman Plan, 400  
 Schuylkill, R., 763  
 Scilly Isles, 92  
 Scotland, 265, 322 *et seq.*, 328, 340, 343, 356  
 Scunthorpe, 345  
 Scurvy, 78  
 Seals blubber-, 239; fur-, 239-40; Newfoundland fisheries, 247; Falklands, 836  
 Sealing wax, 232  
 Sea-otter, 239  
 Seattle, 760, 762, 773  
 Seaweed, 299  
 Sedan, 385, 386  
 Seedlac, 231, 232  
 Seine, R., 380  
 Selangor, 587  
 Selb, 420  
 Selenium, 738, 739  
 Selkirk, 343  
 Selvas, 32  
 Semmering Pass, 411, 441  
 Senegal, 697  
 Senegal R., 696  
 Sennar, 643, 644  
 Sénones, 386  
 Seoul, 620  
 Sepik R., 869  
 Serbia, 448  
 Serowe, 673  
 Sesame, 561, 799; seed, 227, 527, 614  
 Sesamum, 38, 643  
*Setaria italica*, 205  
 Sète, 380, 388  
 Setubah, 476, 477  
 Sevan (Gokcha), L., 514  
 Sevastopol, 513  
 Severn barrage, 333; coalfield, 330; R., 352; Tunnel, 354  
 Seville, 470, 472, 473, 474  
 Sèvres, 303  
 Sewing-machine, 168  
 Seychelles, 235, 715  
 Shaduf, 633  
 Shamels, 545  
 Shan plateau, 577, 578  
 Shanghai, 101  
 Shannon Power Scheme, 374  
 Shannon, R., 374  
 Shansi, 615  
 Shap, 84  
 Shatt-al-Arab, 550  
 Shea-nuts, 691, 698  
 Sheep, 38, 42, 46, 79, 450, 453, 455, 459, 480, 484, 486, 488, 506, 522, 524, 527, 529, 534, 538, 544, 549, 552, 586, 622, 644, 647, 651, 653, 664, 669, 708, 759, 761, 783, 797, 806, 818, 819, 822, 824, 828, 832, 835, 836

- 845, 854 *et seq.*, 861, 872  
 Sheep, crossbred, 157, 863  
 Sheep (for wool), 154 *et seq.*, in Australia, 157; in Britain, 155; merino, 154; statistics, 156; types, 154  
 Sheffield, 346, 347  
 Sheffield (Ala.), 766  
 Shellac, 231, 232  
 Shellal, 639  
 Shellhaven, 351  
 Shengiiin (San Giovanni de Medua), 491  
 Sherry, 148, 472  
 Shields, North, 360; South, 360  
 Shikoku, 621, 623  
 Shilka, R., 511  
 Shimonoseki, straits of, 624  
 Shipbuilding, 507, 625  
 Ship-repairing, 349  
 Ships, fuel used, 95-6; number and gross tonnage, 99; safety of, 96; speeds of, 94; types of, 93-4, 96, 98; Flags of Convenience, 99  
 Shiré, R., 676; Highlands, 676  
 'Shoddy', 160, 342  
 Shoes, 357, 435, 444  
 Shorts, 653  
 Siam, 275  
 Siberia, 42, 48, 492, 504; chief towns, 512-13; immigration to, 512; trade from, 512  
 Siberia, Central, 499; Eastern, 496; Plain of West, 498  
 Siberian Lowlands, West, 496  
 Sibi, 573  
 Sibir, 503  
 Sicily, 480, 484  
 Siderite, 440  
 Sierra Leone, 234, 692-694; agriculture, 694; climate, 693; communications, 693; diamond mining, 694; physical features, 693  
 Sierra Madre Oriental, 779  
 Sierra Maestra, 786  
 Sierra Morena, 222, 276  
 Sierra Nevada (Spain), 470  
 Sierra Nevada (U.S.A.), 725, 767  
 Si-kiang, 611  
 Silesia, 407, 408; coal and other minerals, 415, 417, 429; industrial centres, 429-30  
 Silica, 303  
 Silk, 44, 162-7, 549, 610, 623, 625, 627; coarse, 164; cotton trees, 215; producing countries, 164-6; spun, 167, 169; tussore, 164; wild, 164; world trade, 166-7  
 Silk manufactures: in Britain, 342, 344; chief producing countries, 167-9; in France, 386; in Germany, 418; in Indian sub-continent, 562; in Italy, 479, 482; in Japan, 625; in Spain, 473; in Switzerland, 434  
 Silkworm, 162-3, 486; rearing, 163-4, 165-6  
 Silver, 271 *et seq.*, 273, 453, 461, 556, 625, 738, 739, 747, 749, 762, 767, 779, 783, 798, 820, 822, 824, 848, 854, 855, 858; chief producing countries, 272-3  
 Silverton, 854  
 Silvertown, 350  
 Similkameen, R., 748  
 Simon's Town, 660  
 Simplon, carriage road, 435; railway and tunnel, 411, 435-6, 483  
 Singapore, 101, 575, 592, 593-4  
 Singareni, 555  
 Singhbhum, 556, 557  
 Sinkiang, 613  
 Sisal, 152, 214-15, 598, 679, 682, 683, 780, 781, 788, 790, 807; producing countries, 215  
 Sitra, 546  
 Sittang, R., 577  
 Sittingbourne, 351  
 Size (adhesive), 246  
 Skagway, 749  
 Skewen, 351  
 Skoplje, 451  
 Slate, 293  
 Slave trade, 359  
 Slavery, 753 (U.S.A.), 785 (West Indies)  
 Sleeping sickness, 76  
 Slovenia, 448, 450  
 Smith, Prof. Russell, 758  
 Snake, R., 755; Plateau, 760  
 Snow, 51  
 Snowdon railway, 85  
 Snowy Mts. scheme, 638  
 Soap, 223, 224, 225, 226, 246, 305-6  
 Society Islands, 872  
 Society of Motor Manufacturers and Traders, 82  
 Socotra, 715  
 Soda, carbonate of, 303, 306, 679; nitrate of, 291; sulphate of, 303  
 Sodium chloride, 306; nitrate, 60  
 Sofia, 486  
 Softwoods, 236, 237  
 Soil, erosion, 50, 61, 629; preservation, 57-61; profile, 57  
 Soils, 53-64; acclimatic, 57; chemical, 54-7; physical characteristics, 53-4  
 Solenhofen, 292  
 Soles, 252  
 Solomon Islands, 869  
 Solomon Islands, Protectorate, British, 866  
 Solvay process, 306  
 Somalia (Italian Somaliland), 647  
 Somaliland, British, 647  
 Somaliland, French, 646-7  
 Sonneberg, 419  
 Sonora, 780  
 Sorghum, 205, 544, 614, 851  
 Sorghum *vulgare*, 205  
 South Africa, see Africa, South  
 South Carolina, 173  
 South Georgia, 836  
 South Orkneys, 836  
 South Sandwich Islands, 836  
 South Sea Islands, 206  
 South Shetlands, 386  
 South Shields, 350  
 Southampton, 86, 317, 349, 357, 369, 372  
 Southern Pacific Railroad, 773  
 Soviet Central Asia, 495, 496, 499, 501, 514-16  
 Soviet Union (use of that term, also of

- U.S.S.R. and Russia), 493, footnote  
 Soya or soybeans, 137-138, 225-6, 619, 623, 835  
 Spain, 154, 165, 276, 469-74; area, 469; climate, 470-1; *huer-tas*, 471; hydro-elec-tuic power, 473; *Instituto de Coloniza-cion*, 473; *Instituto Nacional de Industria*, 473; land use, 471; minerals, 472-3; population, 469; prin-cipal towns, popula-tion of, 474; railways, 470; rivers, 470; tex-tile industry, 473; *vegas*, 471  
 Spanish language, 116  
 Sparrow Point, 766  
 Sparrows, 75  
 Spearmint, 229  
 Speke, 680  
 Spencer Gulf, 855, 856  
 Spermaceti, 247  
 Sperm oil, 247  
 Spezia, 484  
 Spices, 570, 599  
 Spices, Stimulants and Condiments, 233 *et seq.*  
 Spiegeleisen, 282  
 Spinning jenny, 180  
 Spitalfields, 344  
 Spitsbergen archipelago, 458  
 Split, 451  
 Sponges, 246, 488, 490  
 Sprats, 252  
 Springs, 52  
 Squirrel, 239  
 Srinagar, 573  
 Stryctensk, 511  
 Stafford, 350, 351  
 Staffordshire, coal and iron ore, 328, 330, 345  
 Stalingrad (Tsartsyn), 506, 510  
 Stanedge Tunnel, 352  
 Stanley, Henry M., 680  
 Stanley (Falklands), 836  
 Stanleyville, 706  
 Stanthorpe, 854  
 Staple towns, 357-8  
 Staplers, The, 358  
 Stassfurt, 418  
 Statistics, 16, 21; uses of, 16 *et seq.*; com-mercial, in England, 19  
 Stavanger, 457, 458  
 Steamboats, 90  
 Steel, 93, 112, 279; Bessemer process, 282; cast, 282; chief producing countries, 286; chrome, 284; for cutlery, 281; high-speed, 284; mangan-ese, 284, nickel, 284; Siemens-Martin pro-cess, 282; stainless, 284  
 Steelyard, The, 358  
 Steep Rock, 739  
*Stegomyia fasciata*, 76  
 Stellite, 290  
 Stephenson, 84  
 Steppelands, soils of, 501  
 Steppes, 42  
 Sterling area, 121, 122  
 'Sterling bloc', 740  
 Stettin (Szczecin), 404, 408, 411, 421, 427, 430  
 Stewart Island, 859  
 Steyr, 440  
 Sticklac, 231  
*Stipa tenacissima*, 153  
 Stirling, 343  
 Stroat, 239  
 Stockholm, 318, 460, 462  
 Stockport, 338, 342  
 Stoke-on-Trent, 349, 350  
 Stonehaven, 322  
 Stoneware, 302  
 Storms, 73  
 Stornaway, 252  
 Stourbridge, 346, 350  
 Strasbourg, 318, 387, 390, 409  
 Strawberries, 141  
 Stroud, 342  
 Struma, R., 488  
 Stuart Highway, 859  
 Sturgeon, 502, 513  
 Stuttgart, 318  
 Suakin, 644, 645  
 Subsidies, 11  
 Sudan, 227, 232, 641-5; area, 642; boundaries, 642; climate, 642; communications, 644; political status, 641; cotton in, 643; crops, 643; foreign trade, 645; livestock, 644; population, 642, 643  
 Sudan, French, 699-700  
 Sudbury (Ont.), 746  
 'Sudd', 634, 642  
 Sudds, 633  
 Süddeutscher Zollverein, 405  
 Sudeten Mts., 428  
 Suez, 638, 639, 657  
 Suez Canal, 101, 639-641; vessels and ton-nage, 641  
 Suez Canal Zone, 631  
 Sugar, centrifugal, 207; non-centrifugal, 207; raw, 209; refining, 351, 507 (*see also below*)  
 Sugar (beet-), 150, 209; in Belgium, 391; in Britain, 325-6; in Canada, 747; in Czechoslovakia, 443; in Denmark, 464; in Germany, 413, 414; in Holland, 399; in Italy, 481; in Persia, 549; in Poland, 428; in Roumania, 453; in Sweden, 458; in U.S.A., 762; in U.S.S.R., 506; in Uruguay, 833; in Yugoslavia, 448  
 Sugar (cane-), 206-7; in Australia, 847, 854; Brazil, 806; B.W.I., 791 *et seq.*; British Guiana, 810; Cuba, 206-7, 787; Dominica, 788; Formosa, 617; Hawaii, 872; India, 561; Java, 598-600; Mauritius, 714; Peru, 819; Philippines, 603; Puerto Rico, 789; U.S.A., 207, 762; limits of cultivation, 206; processing, 209; producing countries, 206-7. *See also* addi-tional references to countries in Asia (529, 581, 583, 587, 610); in Africa (637, 647, 665-6, 668, 714, 717); in N. America (780, 782); in West Indies (785, 788, 793); in Central America (795 *et seq.*); in S. America (811, 813, 815, 818, 822, 827, 835); in Pacific Islands (865-6, 869, 873)  
 Sugar industry, 207-11; beet and cane, com-parison, 208, 209-10; Britain, 351; Ukraine, 507

- Sugar-maple, 210  
 Sukkur, 559  
 Sulina, 453  
 Sulphate of ammonia, 60  
 Sulphur, 291, 482, 625, 824, 858; world resources, 288  
 Sulphuric acid, 306, 307, 858  
 Sulphur pyrites, 461  
 Sultanas, 142, 488  
 Sumac or Sumach tree, 230, 296  
 Sumatra, 597  
 Sunda Islands, Great, 597; Lesser, 598  
 Sunderland, 360  
 Sunflower seed, 227, 450, 827, 833  
 Superior, L., 725, 733, 739, 764, 767  
 Surabaja, 601  
 Surat, 569  
 Surinam R., 812  
 Surinam, 811  
 Sušak, 478  
 Susquehanna R., 754  
 Sutlej Valley Canals, 559  
 Suva, 866  
 Suvaii, 870  
 Svalbard, 458  
 Swahili, 116  
 Swally (Suwali) Roads, 569  
 Swan R., 857  
 Swansea, 274, 345, 347, 349, 350, 360  
 Swaziland, 672-3  
 Sweden, 227, 396, 436, 459-62; area, 459; fisheries, 460; hydro-electric power, 461; industries, 461-2; land use, 439; livestock, 459; mining, 460-1; population, 459, 461, 462; principal towns and population of, 462; timber, 461  
 Swedes, 140  
 Swedish Lapland, 460  
 Swindon, 86  
 Swinemünde (Swinoujscie), 404  
 Switzerland, 168, 271, 390, 396, 420, 431-8; agriculture, 432-3; area, 432; chemicals, 435; climate, 432; commercial centres, 436; communications, 435; crops, 432; dairy pro-  
 duce, 433; foreign trade, 437-8; hydro-electric power, 433-4; livestock, 433; manufacturing industries, 433-5; population, 432; principal towns, population of, 438; shoes, 435; textile manufactures, 434-5; tourist traffic, 436  
 'Swollen shoot' disease, 203, 691  
 Sydney, 852, 853, 854; Bridge, 853  
 Sydney, N.S., 740, 742  
 Symi, 490  
 Syr Daria (Jaxartes), R., 515, 516  
 Syria, 521, 526-8; communications, 527; foreign trade, 528; land use, 527; livestock, 527; size and population, 527; chief towns, 528; federation with Egypt and Yemen, 526  
 Syrian Desert, 527  
 Szechwan, 611-12, 615  
 Tachardia lacca, 231  
 Tacoma, 760, 773  
 'Tafla', 635  
 Taganrog, 513  
 Tagua (ivory nuts), 818  
 Tagus, R., 476  
 Tahiti, 872  
 Taiga, 47, 48  
 Tajikistan, 515  
 Takoradi, 690  
 Tallinn (Reval), 493, 513  
 Tallow and stearine, 246  
 Tamar, R. (Tasmania), 858  
 Tamatave, 716  
 Tampa, 773  
 Tampere (Tammerfors), 469  
 Tampico (Mexico), 780, 781  
 Tancarville Canal, 389  
 Tandjong Priok, 601  
 Tanga, 683  
 Tanganyika, 215, 681-4; area and population, 682; crops, 683; foreign trade, 683; mineral resources, 684; physical features, 682; railways, 682  
 Tanganyika, L., 706  
 Tapioca, 205, 806  
 Tāpti, R., 569  
 Tāpti valley, 561  
 Taranaki, 864  
 Tarawa, 867  
 Tariffs, 10, 19, 110  
 Tarmacadam, 82  
 Tarnowskie Gory, 429  
 Taro, 869, 871  
 Tarsus, plain of, 524  
 Tashkent, 515  
 Tasmania, 45, 844, 848, 875-8  
 Tata Iron and Steel Co., 555-6  
 Taunton, 351  
 Taupo, L., 860  
 Taurus range, 524  
 Tawing, 297  
 Tea, 36, 44, 190-6, 585, 590, 610, 623, 679, 714; in Ceylon, 194; in China, 192 *et seq.*; conditions for growth, 190 *et seq.*; consumption, 195-6; 'flat', 193; importers, 195-6; in India, 193 *et seq.*; in Indonesia, 195; minor producing countries, 195; processing, 193; production, 191; yield, 194  
 Teak, 37, 238, 578  
 Teddington Lock, 369  
 Tedzhen, 516  
 Tees, R., 349  
 Tegucigalpa, 798  
 Tehran, 548, 550  
 Tehuantepec, Isthmus of, 781  
 Tehuantepec Rly., 783  
 Tel Aviv, 532  
 Telegrams, pneumatic transmission of, 88  
 Telephones, 105  
 Telford, 81  
 Tell, the, 650  
 Tellurium, 738, 739  
 Tema, 691  
 Temperate Deciduous Forests, 46  
 Temperature, 24, 26-29, 32 *et seq.*  
 Temperature, inversion of, 27  
 Temperate zone, 24, 25  
 Tenasserim, 578  
 Tenerife, 102, 719  
 Tennessee, 186, 764, 767  
 Tennessee, R., 754



- Tennessee Valley Authority, 769  
 Teini, 482  
 Teiuel, 472  
 Terylene, 344  
*Terra ioxa*, 806  
 Terrace cultivation, 63  
 Texada Island, 747  
 Texas, 173, 174, 267, 767  
 Textile manufactures, 386, 400, 418-19, 429, 434-5, 443, 482, 507, 508, 625, 637  
 Thailand (Siam), 580-1; agriculture and principal crops, 581; area and population, 580; timber, 581  
 Thāl Ghāt, 565  
 Thames, R., 352  
*Theobroma cacao*, 202  
 Thessaloniki (Salonika), 489  
 Thornthwaite, 31  
 Three Rivers, 745  
 Throstle, 180  
 Thurgan, 435  
 Thuringian, 405  
 Thuringian Bay, 407; Forest, 407, 411, 419  
 Thursday Island, 838  
 Thurso, 322  
 Tiber, R., 480  
 Tibet, 519, 613  
 Tientsin, 512, 612  
 Tierra del Fuego, 823, 824, 828  
 Tiflis, 508, 514  
 Tigris, R., 535  
 Tilbury, 318, 400  
 Timber, 97, 236 *et seq.*, 461, 468, 501, 506, 508, 590, 595, 702, 754, 760, 761, 777, 797, 807, 866  
 Timmins, 746  
 Timor, Portuguese, 601  
 Tin, 275-6, 688, 707, 822, 848, 854, 858; extraction, 276; producing countries, 275  
 Tin ore, 590-1  
 Tin plate, 226, 347, 556, 768  
 Tipperary, 374  
 Tirana, 491  
 Tirol, The, 441  
 Tisza, R., 446  
 Titanium, 738  
 Titicaca, L., 821, 822  
 Tobacco, 13, 186-9, 391, 443, 450, 453, 486, 488, 508, 522, 525, 527, 538, 549, 581, 595, 674, 675, 677, 680, 744, 759, 780, 787, 788, 789, 791, 797, 798, 806, 813, 835, 851; importers, 188-9; in medicine, 186; producing countries, 188-9; production and exports, 187, 188  
 Tobago, 789, 792-3  
 Tosing, 420  
 Togoland (Ghana), 685-686; independent republic, 701  
 Tokar, 643  
 Tokay, 148, 446  
 Tokelau (Union) Islands, 859, 870  
 Tokyo, 621, 622  
 Tomatoes, 140, 790, 870  
 Tomsk, 508, 512  
 Tonawanda, 757  
 Tonga Islands, 868  
 Tongatabu, 868  
 Tonking, 575, 582  
 Tonle Sap, 583  
 Tonnage, 94; definition of, 94; types of, 94  
 Toowoomba, 855  
 Toquilla palm, 818  
 Toronto, 745  
 Torre del Greco, 248  
 Torrens, L., 842  
 Torres Strait, 838, 854  
 Toulon, 390  
 Toulouse, 380, 390  
 Tourcoing, 385  
 Tournai, 393  
 Tours, 390  
 Tow, 150  
 Towns, commercial and industrial, 106-115; growth of, 106, 108  
 Townsville, 855  
 Trade commissioners, 12  
 Trade statistics, British, 364-7  
 Trade Unions, 67-8  
 Trade-winds, 23, 29  
 Trafford Park, 339  
 Trail, 747  
 Train-ferries, 85, 317-18, 357, 463  
 Tramways, 87-8  
 Trans-Caspian Rly., 516  
 Trans-Caucasia, 496  
 Transport, 78-105; animal, 79-80; human porters, 78-9; of perishable goods, 98  
 Trans-Siberian Railway, 511  
 Transvaal, 271, 666-8; geological structure, 667; gold, 667; minerals, 668  
 Transylvanian Alps, 452, 454; Basin, 452  
 Travancore, 293, 560  
 Treaty of London, 250  
 Trees, hardwood, 33, 46, 49; softwood, 46, 47  
 Trengganu, 587  
 Trent, R., 352  
 Trento (Trent), 441  
 Trenton (H. J.), 361  
 Trevithick, 84  
 Trichinopoly, 562, 573  
 Trieste, 319, 448, 478  
 Trincomalee, 587  
 Trinidad, 203, 268, 271, 785, 789, 792-3  
 Tripoli, 270, 292, 319, 529, 648  
 Tripolitania, 648  
 Tristan da Cunha, 716  
 Trolley-buses, 88  
 Tromsø, 457  
 Trondheim, 457, 458  
 Troodos, Mt., 522  
 Troon, 328  
 Tropical fruits, 215 *et seq.*  
 Tropical vegetable fibres, 212-5  
 Trostberg, 420  
 Trowbridge, 342  
 Troy, 756  
 Troyes, 386  
 Trucial Sheikhdoms, 546  
 'Truck' farming, 759  
*Trypanosoma*, 77; *gambiense*, 77; *rhodesiense*, 77  
 Tse-tse fly, 38, 77, 242, 630, 682, 701  
 Tuamotu Group of Islands, 872  
 Tucuman, 827  
 Tudela, 470  
 Tula, 507  
 Tulameen, R., 748  
 Tuna, 250  
 Tundra, 49, 500  
 Tung oil, 228, 677  
 Tungsten, 290, 291, 557  
 Tunisia, 291, 649, 652-4  
 Tunny, 253, 473  
 Tunstall, 350  
 Tuolluvara, 460  
 Turbot, 252

- Turin, 483  
 Turkey, 523-6; area, 523; agriculture, 524; boundaries, 524; communications, 524; foreign trade, 525; land use, 524; minerals, 525; principal towns, population of, 526; timber, 525  
 Turkistan, 492  
 Turkmenistan, 515  
 Turks Islands, 791  
 Turk - Sib (Turkistan - Siberian) Rly., 516  
 Turku (Åbo), 469  
 Turmeric, 236  
 Turn Severin, 316  
 Turnips, 140  
 Turpentine, 229  
 Turnpike Trusts, 81  
 Turtles, Ascension Is., 716  
 Turtle fishing, Cayman Is., 791  
 Tuticorin, 571  
 Tutuila, 777, 873  
 Tuxpam, 781  
 Tweeds, 160, 343  
 Two Harbors, 764  
 Tyne, R., 349; gap, 84; ports, 360  
 Tyumen, 510
- UBANGI (Ubangi-Shari), 703  
 Ubangi, R., 703  
 Udi coalfield, 687  
 Ufa, 510  
 Uganda, 679-81  
 Uitenhage, 664  
 Uida, 656  
 Ukraine, 492, 498  
 Ukraine—Don Region, 507  
 Ulm, 318  
 Umarfa coalfield, 555  
 Underground water supplies, 52  
 Ungava, 739  
*Unio margaritifera*, 248  
 Union & Central Pacific Rly., 735  
 Union Islands, 860  
 Union Minière de Haut Katanga, 707  
 U.S.S.R. (see also Russia and Soviet Union), 48, 223, 227, 228, 274, 493-517; agriculture, 506; air routes, 510; animal life, 501; area, 495; boundaries, 495-6; climate, 495, 499-500; communications, 509-513; fisheries, 501, 513; Five-Year Plans, 504, 505; foreign trade, 516-17; frontier changes, 493-4; historical background, 493; industries, 506-9; inland waterways, 509 *et seq.*; land use, 505-506; minerals, 497-99, reserves, 499; people of, 501-6; physical features, 496-7; political development, 503-504; population, 495; principal towns, population of, 517; railways, 510 *et seq.*; rivers, 497; seaports, 513; soils and vegetation, 500-1; towns, 508 *et seq.*; wheat and other grains, 131-6  
 Union of S. Africa, 157, 158, 244, 245, 658-672. For details see Africa, South  
 United Arab Republic, 631  
 United Arab States, 631  
 United Fruit Co. of the U.S., 796  
 United Kingdom (U.K.), 168-9, 182, 183, 195, 199, 285, 297, 300, 308, 390, 396, 403, 430, 568, 670, 740  
 United Nations Organization, 436  
 United Nations, Statistical Office of, 18  
 United Provinces, 175 (see also Uttar Pradesh)  
 United States of America (U.S.A.), 47, 71, 151, 157, 169, 172-5, 184, 199, 231, 241, 243, 271, 273, 274, 275, 285, 287, 296, 300, 303, 362, 363, 390, 396, 403, 430, 627, 750-77; agricultural regions, 758 *et seq.*; area, 750; The Arid Region, 759; Civil War, 753; climate, 758; coalfields, 762-4; communications, 753 *et seq.*; Corn Belt, 769; cost of labour, 760; customs tariff, 760; depression in, 751; foreign trade, 760 *et seq.*, 775-6; government, 752; hydro-electric power, 768-9; iron and steel industry, 760 *et seq.*, 769; irrigation, 759, 760, 769; manufactures, 762, 766-8; metals, 767; minerals, 759, 762 *et seq.*; The Northeast, 758; outlying territories, 777; The Pacific Coast, 760; physical features, 753; 'The Plains', 759; population, 750 *et seq.*; principal towns, population and industries, 769-72; railways, 755 *et seq.*; seaports, 772, 773; settlement and immigration, 751; shipbuilding, 767, 774; shipping, 774-7; soil erosion, 758; The South-east, 759; tourist industry, 762; towns using water power, 768; War of Independence, 727, 752; waterways, 753 *et seq.*, 769  
 United States Steel Corporation, 765, 766  
 Universal Postal Union, 436  
 Upolu, 870  
 Upper Swat Canal, 559  
 Uppsala, 461  
 Ural Mts., 496, 498  
 Uranium, 311, 669, 707, 749  
*Urcenla elastica*, 217  
 'Urstromtåler', 406  
 Uruguay, 43, 832-4; crops and industries, 833; foreign trade, 834  
 Uruguay R., 829, 833  
 Ust Dvinsk (Dünämünde), 513  
 Utah, 273, 767  
 Uttar Pradesh (United Provinces), 194, 559, 561, 562, 572  
 Uzbekistan, 515  
 VAASA (Vasa), 469  
 Valдай Hills, 496

- Valdivia, 824  
 Valencia, 299, 470, 473, 474  
 Valetta, 485  
 Valladolid, 470  
 Valonia, 296  
 Valparaiso, 825  
 Vanadium, 311, 820  
 Vancouver, 268, 311, 735, 748  
 Vancouver Island, 747  
 Van, Lake, 524  
 Vänern, 461  
 Vanilla, 235, 717, 872  
*Vanilla planifolia*, 235  
 Vanua Levu, 865  
 Vardar, R., 488  
 Varna (Stalin), 487  
 Varnishes, 232  
 Vasco da Gama, 92, 520, 570  
 Vaseline, 265  
 Vatna Jökull, 465  
 Vättern, 461  
 Vaud, 271  
 Vavau, 868  
 Vegas, 471  
 Vegetables in California, 760  
 Veld, 43  
 Vellum, 248  
 Venezia Giulia, 445, 448  
 Venezuela, 199, 268, 812-14; agriculture, 813; climate, 813; communications, 813; land use, 812; manufacturing industries, 814; minerals, 813; oil, mineral, 812-13; physical features, 812; political division, 812; principal towns, population of, 814  
 Venice, 115, 319, 482, 483  
 Vera Cruz, 780  
 Verdon, 389  
 Vermilion Range, 764  
 Verona, 441  
 Versailles, Treaty of, 384, 427  
 Verviers, 393  
 Vester Dal, R., 460  
 Vetches, 138  
 Vicua (vacoua), 215  
 Vicuña, 158  
 Victoria (Australia), 844, 847, 851-2  
 Victoria (Borneo), 596  
 Victoria (B.C.), 748  
 Victoria (Hong Kong), 606  
 Victoria, Lake, 679, 681  
 Vienna, 318, 319, 441  
 Vienna Congress, 404  
 Vienne, 385  
 Viet-Minh, 582  
 Viet-Nam, 520, 575, 582  
 Viipuri (Viborg), 466  
 Vila, 867  
 Vine, 41, 75  
 Vine cultivation: in  
   Algeria, 148, 651; in  
   American, 146; in  
   America, S., 827; in  
   Australia, 148, 847,  
   855; in Austria, 439;  
   in Bulgaria, 486; con-  
   ditions for growth,  
   145; cultivation limits,  
   144; in Czechoslo-  
   vakia, 443; diseases  
   of, 145; in France,  
   146; in Germany, 413;  
   in Hungary, 446; in  
   Italy, 480, 481; in Mad-  
   eira, 718; in Malta,  
   484; in Morocco, 656;  
   in Roumania, 453; in  
   Spain, 471; in Switzer-  
   land, 433; in Turkey,  
   525; in Yugoslavia,  
   450  
 Virgin Islands, 777, 786,  
   789, 791  
 Virginia, 186  
 Virginia, W., 764  
 Viscaya, 472  
 Vistula, R., 427  
 Viti Levu, 865, 866  
 Vizagapalam, 565, 571  
 Vizcacha, 76  
 Vlaardingen, 402  
 Vladivostok, 25, 46, 495,  
   511  
 Vlonë (Valona), 491  
 Vojvodina, 450  
 Volcanoes, 74, 621  
   (Japan), 860 (New  
   Zealand)  
 Volga, R., 317, 496, 497,  
   502, 509, 510, 513  
 Volga-Ural, 269  
 'Volkseigene Betriebe',  
   426  
 Volos, 480  
 Volta, R., 691; Black, R.,  
   696; Upper, R., 696,  
   700; White, R., 696  
 Voorne, Island, 401  
 Vorderberg, 440  
 Vorkuta, 497  
 Vosges, Mts., 379, 380  
 Vreeswijk, 402  
 Vulcanising, 217, 220  
 WAAL, R., 402  
 Wabash, R., 754  
 Wadi Halfa, 631, 639,  
   644  
 Waikato R., 860, 864  
 Wakamatsu, 624  
 Wakefield, 341, 342  
 Walchensee Power  
   Works, 420  
 Walcheren, 402  
 Waldenburg basin, 415  
 Waldhof, 419  
 Wales, 322 *et seq.*,  
   345  
 Wales, South, coalfield,  
   328, 330, 360  
 Wallachia, 452  
 Wallis Archipelago, 871  
 Walney Island, 350  
 Walnuts, 143  
 Walnut tree as timber,  
   238  
 Walsall, 346  
 Wanganui, 864  
 Wankie coalfield, 675,  
   676  
 Warsaw (Warszawa),  
   318, 429  
 War, effects of, 11-12,  
   13  
 Wardhā valley, 555  
 Warorā coalfield, 555  
 Warrington, 347  
 Washington, 750, 761  
 Washington Island, 867  
 Washington, Mt., 85  
 Wash leather, 297  
 Watch and clock mak-  
   ing, 434  
 Watenstedt - Salzgitter,  
   409  
 Water frame, 180  
 Water power, 70  
 Water table, 52  
 Waterford, 357-374  
 Watt, James, 84  
 Wattle bark and extract,  
   296, 666  
 Waxes, 230  
 Wax-palm, 230  
 Wear, R., 349  
 Webi Shebeli R., 647  
 Wedgewood, 302  
 Wednesbury, 346  
 Welland Canal, 733  
 Wellington, 864  
 Weser Mts., 407  
 Weser R., 317, 408  
 West Bromwich, 346  
 West Friesian Islands,  
   403  
 West Indian Confer-  
   ence, 786

- West Indies, 207, 216, 234, 784-94; British, 789-93; climate, 785, 790; communications, 786; exports, 785; federation, 786; foreign trade, 788; French, 793; hurricanes, 785, 790; islands of, 784; minerals, 787, 788; Netherlands, 793; oil, mineral, 792; oil refinery, 793; political divisions, 786; population, 784-5; tourist trade, 790; University College of, 791; U.S. air bases in, 790
- Western Ghats, 201
- Western Pacific, High Commissioner for, 866
- Westphalian Bay, 407
- Westport, 865
- Wetzlar, 419
- Whales and whaling, 246-7; in Norway, 457-8; Faeroes, 465; Japan, 624; South Georgia, 836
- Wheat, 28, 38, 44, 46, 123-32; in Afghanistan, 552; in America, Central, 797; in America, S., 806, 824, 827, 833; in Argentina, 129; in Atlas Lands, 650, 653; in Australia, 129, 845, 847, 855; in Austria, 439; in Belgium, 391; in British Isles, 324; in Bulgaria, 486; in Canada, 129-30, 732, 739, 746 *et seq.*; in Ceylon, 587; in China, 610, 613; in Cyprus, 522; in Czechoslovakia, 442; date of harvest, 132; in Denmark, 464; in Egypt, 635, 636; in France, 382, 390; in Greece, 488; in Hungary, 446; in India, 131; in Indian sub-continent, 560-1; in Iraq, 536; in Italy, 480-1; in Japan, 623; in Lebanon, 529; in Malta, 484; in Mexico, 778; in New Zealand, 861; in Norway, 456; in Pacific Islands, 871; in Persia, 548; in Portugal, 475; in Roumania, 452; soil, 124; sources of supply, 128; in Spain, 471; in Sweden, 460; in Syria, 527; in Turkey, 524; in United Kingdom, 127-8, 129; in U.S.A., 128-9, 130-1, 759, 760, 761, 768, 771; in U.S.S.R., 505; varieties, 123-4; world production, 131; in Yugoslavia, 448
- 'White Coal', 384
- Whitehaven, 328
- White Pass, 749
- White Sea Canal, 317
- White Star Line, 362
- Whiting, 250
- Whitstable, 252
- Wick, 252, 322
- Wickersley, 292
- Wide Bay, 855
- Widnes, 350
- Wieliczka salt mines, 429
- Wieringermeer, 399
- Wigan, 338
- Wilberforce, W., 692
- Willamette R., 760
- Willamette, Falls of, 768
- Willemstad, 793
- Williamstown, 852
- Willis, J. C., 191
- Willoughby, 359
- Wilton, 342
- Wimmera, 851
- Windhoek, 671
- Wind power, 70
- Winds, 22-24, 73
- Windsor (Ont.), 746
- Windward Islands, 789, 791
- Wine, 143-9, 432, 472, 475, 651, 656, 668, 855; production by countries, 147; Bordeaux, 146; burgundy, 146; champagne, 146; Chianti, 147, 480; claret, 146; Côte d'Or, 147; in Germany, 148; in Greece, 488; in Italy, 147; in Portugal, 148; Saône, 147; in Spain, 147; in U.S.A., 148; vintage, 146; in war, 146
- Winnipeg, 735, 746; L., 735; R., 735
- Winsford, 350
- Winter sports, 436
- Wireless, 105
- Wirksworth, 349
- Wisconsin, 761, 764
- Witchbroom disease, 818
- Witwatersrand, 272, 667
- Wolfe, General, 727
- Wolfram, 291, 822, 848
- Wolframite, 476
- Wolverhampton, 346
- Wollongong, 853
- Wooden articles, 625
- Wood-pulp, 48, 298, 461, 468
- Woodstock, 351
- Wool, 538, 549, 552, 664, 670, 672, 718, 760, 807, 820, 832, 836, 845, 853, 854, 861, 863; carding, 160; chief producing countries, 155, 156, 157; clothing, 160; combing, 160; production, 156; worsted, 160
- Woollen cloths, types, 160; hosiery, 343
- Woollen manufactures, 159-62; in Australia, 852; in Belgium, 393; in Britain, 337 *et seq.*, 341-4, 359; in Czechoslovakia, 443; in France, 385-6; in Germany, 418; in Holland, 400; in Italy, 482; in Japan, 625; in Sweden, 462
- Worcester, 350, 351
- Workington, 328, 344
- World Health Organisation, 436
- World Meteorological Organisation, 436
- Wrigley, Dr. G. M., 750
- Wroclaw (Breslau), 427, 430
- Wuppertal, 418
- Württemberg, 405, 419
- YABLONOIYE Mts., 512
- Yak, 79, 158
- Yakutsk, 25, 503
- Yallourn, 848
- Yams, 206, 869, 871
- Yangtse-kiang, 611
- Yarmouth, 251
- Yaroslavl, 507
- Yearbook of Inter-

- national Trade Statistics* (U.N.), 447  
*Yearbook of U.N. Food and Agriculture Organisation*, 452  
 Yellow fever, 76  
 Yellowhead Pass, 736  
 Yellowknife, 739, 749  
 Yemen, 542-3; agriculture, 543; area and population, 542; coffee, 542; foreign trade, 542-3; federation with Egypt and Syria, 526, 631  
 Yenesel, R., 497  
 Yeovil, 352  
 Yerba maté, 835  
 Yermak, 503  
 Yokohama, 101, 627  
 Yonne, R., 380  
 Yorkshire, 345  
 Yorks., Derby and Notts. coalfield, 330  
 Yorkshire Moors, 321  
 Ysabel, 866  
 Yucatan, 214, 780; peninsula, 781  
 Yugoslavia, 276, 430, 448-51; agriculture, 448-50; area, 448; communications, 451; Federal People's Republic of, 448; foreign trade, 451; industrial development, 451; land use, 448 *et seq.*; languages, 448; livestock, 450; minerals, 450; population, 448; principal towns, populations of, 451; relief and soils, 448  
 Yukon, R., 777  
 Yukon Territory, 729, 739, 749  
 Yundum, 695  
 Yungas, 822  
 Yunnan, 615  
 ZAANDAM, 402  
 Zaborski, Professor Bogdan, 493  
 Zagazig, 639  
 Zagreb, 450, 451  
 Zambales, 605  
 Zambezi, R., 674, 676, 712  
 Zamboango, 602  
 Zanzibar, 229, 234, 684-685  
 Zapote tree (*Achras Sapote*, Linn.), 781  
 Zara, 448  
 Zaragoza (Saragossa), 470  
 Zealand (*Sjælland*), 463  
 Zebu, white humped, 561  
 Zeebrugge, 395  
 Zeehan, Mt., 858  
 Zeeland, 395  
 Zhdanov, 513  
 Zinc, 274-5, 461, 482, 498, 671, 707, 738, 739, 746, 747, 762, 780, 783, 820, 822, 848, 854; ore, 450, 453; plate, 347  
 Zinc-blende, 858  
 Zincspar, 274  
 Zinder, 700  
*Zingiber officinale*, 234  
 Zistersdorf, 269, 440  
 Zlatoust, 510  
 Zomba, 676  
 Zonguldak, 525  
 Zubair, 538  
 Zuiderzee, 399, 402  
 Zürich, 168, 319, 434, 436  
 Zwickau - Chemnitz basin, 415